



SECOND YEAR LATIN

Anne Sophia Sumner,
136 Madison St.,
Roughkeeree
N.Y.

BARTLETT

148

Ethel Bartlett
Proving.

1903


1903

Ethel Bartlett

Pine Grove Ranch,

Barrow, Alaska!

Aug. 27, 1901



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2025



THE GODDESS ROMA.

SECOND YEAR LATIN

PART I

MISCELLANEOUS SELECTIONS OF EASY LATIN

PART II

SELECTIONS FROM CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

EDITED BY

JAMES B. GREENOUGH

BENJAMIN L. D'OUGE AND M. GRANT DANIELL

BOSTON, U.S.A.

GINN & COMPANY, PUBLISHERS

The Athenæum Press

1900

COPYRIGHT, 1899
By GINN & COMPANY

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

P R E F A C E.

THIS book is intended to follow any First Latin Book. It is adapted to the wants of those pupils who have some little knowledge of inflexions and of the easiest constructions, and embraces some ninety pages of easy Latin, followed by selections from Cæsar's *Gallic War* (about equivalent in amount to the first four books), making along with the beginner's book a sufficient course in Latin for two years. It is hoped that thus a somewhat freer and wider course may be found for young students than the unvaried reading of Cæsar's Commentaries, and a more interesting one as well. About ten pages of easy poetry have been included in the selections, with a hope of giving a slight hint at the poetic literature of the Romans. This may be read in course or may be left until near the close of the second year. Much of the material of Part I is modern Latin, prepared for such uses by modern scholars. Due credit is given to these in the proper place.

Among the shorter selections are extracts from Pliny the Younger, Cicero, Valerius Maximus, and other ancient writers. To these are added three stories from Erasmus, who may almost be regarded for our purpose as a classic author, but who from his position between ancient and modern life fails nowadays to receive the attention he deserves.

In the pages devoted to biography and mythology the "Story of Ulysses" from Ritchie's *Fabulæ Faciles* has been included. This, though modern Latin, has been given a peculiar aroma by a clever imitation of Cæsar's style, so that it is a most valuable

preliminary to the study of that writer. Two lives are given from the famous modern classic *Viri Romæ*, those of Caius Marius and Julius Cæsar, reading peculiarly appropriate as introductory to the Commentaries. These are followed by the "Life of Hannibal," from Nepos.

It seemed wise to give a varied course of reading from Cæsar rather than the first four books. Parts of these books are unusually difficult, and parts are lacking in interest. By making selections from the seven books, both of these obstacles to successful work have in large measure been overcome. All the features that have proved so attractive and helpful in the *New Cæsar* have been retained in this volume.

In the explanatory notes on Part I we have varied from the conventional methods in a direction suggested by experience. The attempt has been made to follow the methods of personal *viva voce* instruction, and to take the point of view of the pupil rather than that of the instructor, so as to teach him to read the Latin as if he wanted to read it, rather than to make it a vehicle for learning other things not then felt to be necessary. We have therefore constantly endeavored to answer the question what the words or constructions meant rather than why they were so. It is hoped that the book will be found a practical and practicable one in actual use. The views of the editors in regard to reading have been repeated in so many forms that we deem it unnecessary to give them anew. The directions in our *Cæsar* are reprinted in this book.

A considerable number of oral exercises for turning English into Latin in the form of question and answer, and some exercises for oral and written translation, all founded on the miscellaneous matter, have been inserted, so that the writing and speaking of Latin may go on along with the efforts to read.

CONTENTS.



	PAGE
LIST OF MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS	ix

PART I.

I. STORIES, FABLES, AND LETTERS:

1. A Letter. <i>Meurer</i>	I
2. Cock-fighting. <i>Meurer</i>	2
3. Gladiators. <i>Meurer</i>	2
4. The Horse and the Ass. <i>Perthes</i>	3
5. The Wonderful Deliverance of Simonides. <i>Perthes</i>	3
6. The Roman Dinner. <i>Meurer</i>	4
7. Augustus and the Veteran. <i>Meurer</i>	5
8. The Wolf and the Dog. <i>Old Fable</i>	5
9. The Lion and the Mouse. <i>Old Fable</i>	6
10. The Dancing Horses. <i>Perthes</i>	6
11. Augustus and the Raven. <i>Perthes</i>	7
12. The Wolf and the Lamb. <i>Perthes</i>	8
13. The Wolf and the Lamb. <i>Phædrus</i>	8
14. The Rivalry of Two Painters. <i>Perthes</i>	9
15. The Fox and the Monkey. <i>Perthes</i>	9
16. The River-God and the Golden Axe. <i>Perthes</i>	10
17. The Husbandman and his Sons. <i>Old Fable</i>	11
18. Demosthenes and the Judges. <i>Perthes</i>	11
19. The Death of Pompey. <i>Cæsar</i>	12
20. Niobe and her Children. <i>Oehler, Schubert, and Sturmhoefel</i>	14
21. Cræsus, King of Lydia. <i>Oehler, Schubert, and Sturmhoefel</i>	15
22. An Epitome of Roman History. <i>Perthes</i>	17
23. The Omen of the Puppy. <i>Cicero (adapted)</i>	18
24. Scipio Æmilianus. <i>Valerius Maximus</i>	18
25. The Battle of Thermopylæ. <i>Oehler, Schubert, and Sturmhoefel</i>	19
26. A Roman Maiden. <i>Pliny the Younger</i>	20

	PAGE
27. Æmilius Paulus and his Sons. <i>Valerius Maximus</i>	21
28. Androclus and the Lion. <i>Oehler, Schubert, and Sturmhoefel</i> .	23
29. Two Letters of Cicero to his Wife. <i>Cicero</i>	24
30. A Roman Ultimatum. <i>Valerius Maximus</i>	25
31. The Haunted House. <i>Pliny the Younger</i>	26
32. An Eclipse Foretold. <i>Livy</i>	27
33. Anthony and the Usurer. <i>Erasmus</i>	28
34. A Practical Joke. <i>Erasmus</i>	29
35. The Priest, the Vender, and the Impostor. <i>Erasmus</i> . .	31

II. BIOGRAPHY AND MYTHOLOGY :

1. Cyrus, King of Persia. <i>Oehler, Schubert, and Sturmhoefel</i> .	33
2. The Story of Ulysses. <i>Ritchie</i>	40
3. Life of Caius Marius. " <i>Viri Romae</i> "	55
4. Life of Caius Julius Cæsar. " <i>Viri Romae</i> "	63
5. Life of Hannibal. <i>Nepos</i>	75

III. POETICAL SELECTIONS :

1. The Stag. <i>Phædrus</i>	86
2. Friends and Fortune Fly Together. <i>Ovid</i>	86
3. Epitaph of a Roman Matron. " <i>Corpus Inscriptionum Latinarum</i> "	87
4. Dæmones's Dream. <i>Plautus</i>	87
5. The Death of the Pet Sparrow. <i>Catullus</i>	88
6. How to Train Children. <i>Terence</i>	88
7. The City Mouse and the Country Mouse. <i>Horace</i> . . .	89
8. The Enchantress Circe. <i>Virgil</i>	90
9. The Golden Age. <i>Tibullus</i>	90
10. The Shortness of Life. <i>Horace</i>	91
11. The Joys of Country Life. <i>Horace</i>	92
12. Live while you Live. <i>Horace</i>	92

PART II.

INTRODUCTION :

I. Life of Cæsar	97
II. Roman Military Affairs	113
III. Gaul and the Gauls	129

	PAGE
IV. The Britons	136
V. The Germans	137
VI. The Campaigns in Gaul	138
VII. Directions for Reading	139

SELECTIONS FROM CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR:

General Description of Gaul, I. 1	143
The Belgian Confederacy, II.	144
The Campaign against the Veneti, III. 7-16	174
The First Invasion of Germany, IV. 1-19	183
The Second Invasion of Germany, VI. 9-29	196
The First Invasion of Britain, IV. 20-36	209
The Second Invasion of Britain, V. 1-23	221
General Uprising of Gaul, VII. 1-15	238
The Siege of Avaricum, VII. 16-30	248
The Siege of Alesia, VII. 68-90	260

NOTES	279
GROUPS OF RELATED WORDS	457
LATIN COMPOSITION	467
VOCABULARY.	

NOTE: The modern authors mentioned in the foregoing list are Meurer (*Lateinisches Lesebuch, für Sexta*), Perthes (*Lateinisches Lesebuch, für Sexta*, also *für Quinta*), Oehler, Schubert, and Sturmhoefel (*Übungsbuch für den grammatischen Unterricht im Lateinischen, für Sexta*), and Ritchie (*Fabulae Faciles*).

LIST OF MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

ABBREVIATIONS.

Babelon. — Description historique et chronologique des Monnaies de la République romaine. 1885.

Baumeister. — Denkmäler des klassischen Altertums. 1885-8.

Bertrand and Perrot. — Revue archéologique, 3^e Série, Tome X.

Cohen. — Description générale des Monnaies de la République romaine, etc. 1857.

Fleury. — Antiquités et Monuments du département de l'Aisne, etc. 1877-8.

Froehner. — La Colonne trajane d'après le surmoulage exécuté à Rome en 1861-2, reproduite en phototypographie par Gustave Arosa. 1872.

Grasset. — Costumes de Guerre de l'âge du bronze et de l'ère gauloise. 1886.

Guhl and Köhner. — The Life of the Greeks and Romans, described from Antique Monuments. 1875.

Head. — A Guide to the Principal Gold and Silver Coins of the Ancients. (Br. Mus.) 1881.

Jeuffrain. — Essai d'Interprétation de Types de quelques Médailles muettes, émises par les Celtes-Gaulois. 1846.

von Kampen. — XV ad Caesaris de Bell. Gall. Commentarios Tabulae. 1879.

Lindenschmidt. — Tracht und Bewaffnung des Römischen Heeres während der Kaiserzeit, etc. 1882.

Oehler. — Bilder-Atlas zu Caesars Büchern de Bell. Gall. 1890.

Rheinhard. — C. Iulii Caesaris Commentarii de Bell. Gall. 1896.

Schreiber. — Atlas of Classical Antiquities.

Visconti. — Iconographie romaine. 1817-24.

FIG.	PAGE
1. Symbolical head of the Goddess Roma. Bust in the Louvre, Paris. Brunn, <i>Denkmäler Griechischer und Römischer Sculptur</i>	<i>Frontispiece.</i>
2. Map of the Roman Empire	xii
3. View of Naples and Vesuvius. <i>Photograph</i>	1
4. Gladiators. <i>Baumeister</i>	2
5. Coin of Bruttium, showing Castor and Pollux. <i>Head</i>	4
6. Coin of Augustus. <i>Head</i>	5
7. Tibiae. <i>Rich's Dictionary</i>	6
8. Personification of the River Tiber (showing also Romulus and Remus with the wolf). In the Louvre, Paris. Brunn, <i>Denkmäler Griechischer und Römischer Sculptur</i>	10

FIG.	PAGE
9. Pompey. Ancient statue. <i>Visconti</i>	13
10. Niobe. Bust from the statue of Niobe and her children . .	14
11. Cræsus on the funeral pile. <i>Baumeister</i>	16
12. Coin of Æmilius. Obverse: veiled head of woman with diadem. Reverse: captives (prob. Perses and his sons) opposite a figure erecting a trophy. TER, i.e. having thrice enjoyed a triumph. <i>Cohen</i>	18
13. A Roman maiden. Ancient statue. <i>Photograph</i>	20
14. A triumphal chariot. From photograph of the walls of the capitol at Rome	22
15. Peristyle of a Pompeian house. <i>Photograph</i>	26
16. A record of Cyrus the Great. British Museum. <i>Photograph</i>	34
17. Tomb of Cyrus the Great	39
18. Head of a Cyclops. From a gem in the British Museum. Copied from Butcher and Lang's <i>Odyssey</i>	42
19. Ulysses under the ram. Winckelmann, <i>Monumenti Antichi</i>	46
20. Opening the wind bag. Winckelmann, <i>Monumenti Antichi</i>	49
21. Ulysses at the house of Circe. <i>Baumeister</i>	52
22. Map of Italia Superior }	between 55 and 56
23. Map of Italia Inferior }	
24. Gaius Marius. From a coin. <i>Visconti</i>	55
25. Soldiers with packs. "Marius's Mules." <i>Froehner</i> . . .	58
26. L. Cornelius Sulla. Bust in the Vatican at Rome. Uncer- tain. Bernoulli, <i>Römischer Ikonographie</i>	60
27. Coin of Sulla. Obverse: head of Diana Tifatina. ·FAVSTVS (name of Sulla's son). Reverse: L. Sulla seated; Bocchus, king of Mauretania, delivers to him Jugurtha as a captive; FELIX (surname assumed by Sulla). <i>Visconti</i>	60
28. Coins of Marius. (1) Cimbric trophies of Marius. (2) Marius triumphing over Jugurtha. C·MARI·C[ai] ·F[ilius]	61
29. Soldiers making camp. <i>Froehner</i>	62
30. Map of Rome	62
31. Cæsar. Bust in the Louvre, Paris	64
32. A civic crown. From a coin. <i>Cohen</i>	65
33. Two coins of Cæsar. (1) Obverse: head of Venus. Re- verse: Æneas with Anchises and the palladium. CAE- SAR. (2) Obverse: head of Venus. Reverse: trophy and captives. CAESAR. <i>Head</i>	67.

FIG.

PAGE

34.	Coins of Pompey and his son. (1) Obverse: head of Sextus Pompey. Reverse: heads of Sextus Pompey and Pompey the Great. (2) Allegorical head of Africa. <i>Cohen</i>	68
35.	Mark Antony. Ancient statue. <i>Visconti</i>	71
36.	Hannibal. Ancient bust in Naples Museum. <i>Photograph</i>	74
37.	Coin of the Fabian family. Obverse: ROMA Q. MAX. Laurelled head of Apollo, lyre in front. Reverse: horn of plenty filled with fruits; thunderbolts; the whole in a wreath of grain ears and poppy. <i>Cohen</i>	77
38.	Scipio Africanus. Ancient statue. <i>Photograph</i>	79
39.	Coin of Antiochus the Great. Obverse: head of Antiochus with diadem. Reverse: Apollo seated on the omphalos, a bow in his left hand, an arrow in his right. <i>Head</i>	81
40.	Cæsar. Bust in the British Museum	96
41.	Map of Gaul	128
42.	Campaign map of B.C. 57	142
43.	Writing materials: <i>atramentarium</i> (for black and red ink); papyrus letter sealed and addressed (M LVCRETIO FLAM[ini] MARTIS DECVRIONI POMPEI[s]); <i>dip-tycha</i> (folding tablet), <i>stilus</i> , and erasing knife. Wall painting. <i>Overbeck's Pompeii</i>	144
44.	Gaul with trumpet. Restoration from carvings on the <i>Arc de Triomphe</i> at Orange. <i>Grasset</i>	145
45.	Coin of Diviciacus, king of the Suessiones. <i>Fleury</i>	147
46.	Slinger (<i>funditor</i>), <i>Dict. des Antiquités</i>	149
47.	Berry au Bac. <i>Photograph</i>	151
48.	Battle on the Aisne. <i>Oehler</i>	152
49.	Vinea or Testudo. <i>Oehler</i>	155
50.	Hautmont. <i>Photograph</i>	157
51.	Defeat of the Nervii. <i>Oehler</i>	159
52.	Lituus	161
53.	Tuba	161
54.	Cornu	161
55.	Aquilifer. Grave relief. <i>Lindenschmidt</i>	165
56.	Centurio. Grave relief. <i>Lindenschmidt</i>	165
57.	Citadel of Namur. <i>Photograph</i>	168
58.	Siege of the stronghold of the Aduatuci	169
59.	Siege works. von Göler, <i>Caesars Gallischer Krieg</i>	170
60.	Cæsar. Bust in the Naples Museum	173
61.	Galley. From the Præneste relief. <i>Baumeister</i>	175

FIG.	PAGE
62. Map of the Veneti neighborhood. Altered from modern map	176
63. Roman battle ship. Wall painting at Pompeii. <i>Oehler</i> . .	179
64. Trading vessel. Ancient relief. <i>Baumeister</i>	181
65. Soldiers	182
66. Pack-wagons and carts. Col. of M. Aurelius. <i>Oehler</i> . .	183
67. Scenery on the Meuse. <i>Photograph</i>	184
68. Campaign map of B.C. 55, 54, 53	184
69. Coins of Cæsar. (1) Obverse: head of Venus. Reverse: trophy of Gallic arms. CAESAR. (2) Obverse: veiled head of <i>Pietas</i> . CAESAR CO[n]S[ul]TER. Reverse: <i>lituus</i> , <i>præfericulum</i> , and axe. A[ulus] HIRTIUS PR[æfectus]. <i>Head</i>	186
70. Bridge	195
71. Gallic coin. <i>Jeuffrain</i>	200
72. Gallic coins. LVCOTI (Paris?); human eye in profile, supposed to symbolize the sun. <i>Fleury</i>	202
73. Map of the campaigns in Britain	208
74. The Cliffs of Dover. "Shakespeare's Cliff." <i>Photograph</i> .	210
75. Catapulta. Modern restoration	213
76. Anchor and tackle. <i>Arc de Triomphe</i> at Orange. <i>Schreiber</i>	216
77. Soldiers foraging. <i>Froehner</i>	218
78. British coins. (1) Obverse: ear of grain, CAMV[lodunum]. Reverse: prancing horse, CVNO[belinus] (the Cymbeline of Shakespeare). (2) Obverse: unexplained devices. Reverse: horse, TASCovIANUS. <i>Head</i>	221
79. Testudo. <i>Froehner</i>	227
80. Soldiers building camp, with guards. <i>Froehner</i>	229
81. Signa Militaria	233
82. Roman transports. <i>Froehner</i>	236
83. Cavalryman charging. Gravestone in Mainz. <i>Oehler</i> . .	237
84. Cavalryman with <i>vexillum</i> . Col. of M. Aurelius. <i>Oehler</i> .	237
85. Helmets. <i>Schreiber</i>	238
86. Campaign map of B.C. 52	238
87. Coin of Brutus and Albinus. Obverse: head of Mars. Reverse: ALBINVS BRVTI F[ilius]. Two Gallic trumpets crossed, oval and round shields. <i>Head</i> . . .	243
88. Siege of Avaricum. <i>von Kampen</i>	246
89. View of siege works. <i>von Kampen</i>	250
90. Plan of siege works. <i>von Kampen</i>	251

FIG.	PAGE
91. Gallic wall. Model in the Museum of St. Germain, slightly restored from existing remains at Murcens. <i>Oehler</i> . . .	254
92. Scorpio. Modern restoration	256
93. Chain mail. Fragment found at Mainz. <i>Oehler</i>	259
94. Ballista. Modern restoration	260
95. Alise-Ste.-Reine (Alesia). <i>Photograph</i>	261
96. Siege of Alesia. <i>Oehler</i>	263
97. View of Cæsar's line of works before Alesia. Model in the Museum of St. Germain. <i>Oehler</i>	267
98. Statue of Vercingetorix. Erected at Alesia by order of Napoleon III. Designed by Bartholdi. <i>Photograph</i> . . .	269
99. Light-armed soldier. Gravestone. <i>Lindenschmidt</i> . . .	273
100. Archer. Gravestone. <i>Lindenschmidt</i>	273
101. Youth reading	279
102. Flute-player. <i>Rich's Dictionary</i>	285
103. Olla fictilis. <i>Rich's Dictionary</i>	309
104. The Tullianum. <i>Rich's Dictionary</i>	323
105. Signifer. Gravestone. <i>Lindenschmidt</i>	330
106. Amphora. <i>Baumeister</i>	337
107. The legionary. Slightly altered from Bartholdi's model in the Museum of St. Germain	350
108. Coin of Cæsar. Obverse: head of Augustus. IMP[erator] CAESAR·DIVI·F[ilius] III(trium)·VIR·ITER[um]R[ei] P[ublicae] C[onstituendae]. Reverse: Julius Cæsar standing in a temple. DIVO IVL[io]. Star and altar. CO[n]S[ul] ITER[um]·ET·TER·DESIG[natus]. <i>Cohen</i> . . .	351
109. Gallic coin. <i>Fleury</i>	354
110. Gallic remains. <i>Grasset</i>	356
111. Castra Romana. <i>Rheinhard</i>	370
112. General view of siege operations. <i>Rheinhard</i>	377
113. Vexillum	379
114. Scutum. <i>Rheinhard</i>	380
115. Scutum. <i>Rheinhard</i>	380
116. Wall and ditch. <i>Oehler</i>	390
117. Shipbuilder. Grave relief (Ravenna). <i>Schreiber</i> . . .	391
118. Roman javelins. <i>Oehler</i>	397
119. Roman swords. <i>Oehler</i>	404
120. Aquila	421
121. Gallic coin. Reverse: L. Hostilius Sasern[a]. Warrior fighting, armed with spear and shield, in a Gallic chariot (<i>essedum</i> ?) driven by a charioteer holding a whip. <i>Babelon</i> . . .	423

FIG.		PAGE
122.	Gallic coin. Reverse: warrior armed with spear and shield, and holding a Gallic trumpet (<i>carnyx</i>), standing in a two-wheeled chariot, drawn by two galloping horses. L[ucius] LIC[inius] CN[aeus] DOM[itius]. <i>Bertrand & Perrot</i> .	423
123.	Caliga. <i>Oehler</i>	425
124.	Oppugnatio. Modern design	436
125.	Hollow square. Col. of M. Aurelius. <i>Froehner</i>	439
126.	Pluteus. Modern restoration	445
127.	Pluteus. Modern restoration	445
128.	Lilium. <i>Oehler</i>	450
129.	Stimulus. <i>Oehler</i>	450



IMPERIUM ROMANUM



L. L. POATES, ENGR. N. Y.

PART I.

I. STORIES, FABLES, AND LETTERS.



FIG. 3. — VIEW OF NAPLES AND VESUVIUS.

1. A Letter.

Sī tū valēs, bene est; ego quoque valeō. Hanc epistulam ad tē laetus scribō. Medicī cōsiliō cum parentibus in Italiā hiemāvī. Dum apud vōs nivēs omnia implent, nōs hic nivem rārō vidēmus, āēr est lēnissimus, ridet, ut est apud poētās, caelum. Saepe in litore ambulō vel in
5 hortis amplis errō, nam grāmina arborēsque iam virent. Hinc videō Vesuvium montem, hinc tōtam ferē urbem, hinc pulchrās insulās in mari sitās. Linguam hodiernam Italōrum ē conloquiis facile discō, linguae Latinae cotidie operam dō. Sed iam finem faciam epistulae; mox cōram
10 omnia tibi nārrābō. Vīve valēque, mī amice.

2. Cock-fighting.

Athēniēnsēs pūblica gallōrum certāmina quondam insti-
 tuērunt. Causa autem haec fuit. Bellō Persicō Themis-
 toclēs cum exercitū iter in hostīs faciēbat, cum duōs gallōs
 vidit in viā dimicantis. Tum militēs ad spectāculum con-
 5 vocāvit et hanc ōrātiōnem habuit: “Hī galli nōn prō patriā
 dimicant, nōn prō deīs, nōn prō glōriā, nōn prō libertāte,
 nōn prō liberis; dē nūllā rē dimicant nisi dē victōriā.”
 Hāc ōrātiōne animōs militum excitāvit, nec hostēs eōrum
 impetum sustinēre poterant. Quā dē causā Athēniēnsēs
 10 Themistoclis cōnsiliō¹ certāmina gallōrum instituērunt.

3. Gladiators.

Rōmānī ē spectāculis² gladiātōriis māgnam voluptātem
 capiēbant. Quā in rē cernēbātur nōn tam bellicōsum
 populī Rōmānī ingenium quam prāva volgī indolēs. Primō



FIG. 4. — GLADIATORS.

pūgnae gladiātōriae inter mortuōrum exsequiās ēdēbantur,
 15 postea ei qui magistrātum petēbant spectāculis hūiusmodi
 plēbis suffrāgia quaerēbant. Hōc cōnsiliō māgnās gladiā-

Cf. ¹ cōnsiliō, p. I, l. 2. — ² spectāculum, l. 4.

tōrum familiās alēbant. Iūlius Caesar trecenta vigintī paria simul in harēnam mīsīt. Barbari captivī et servī gregī adscribēbantur gladiātōrum, multi etiam alii ultrō nōmina profitēbantur. Varia erant eōrum arma; alius scūtum gladiumque, alius clipeum sīcamque, rēte et tridentem alius habēbat. 5 Nōn nūlli divitiās hōc tam atrōcī quaestū cōsecūtī sunt, permulti miserē periērunt. Caesarem spectāculis praesidentem salūtābant gladiātōrēs hīs verbis: “Avē, Caesar, moritūrī tē salūtant.”

4. The Horse and the Ass.

Agitābat quīdam equum et asinum onustōs sarcinīs. Asi- 10 nus onere pressus rogāvit equum ut aliquā oneris parte sē levāret. Sed ille precēs comitis repudiāvit. Paulō post asinus languōre consūptus in viā conruit et efflāvit animam. Agitātor igitur omnibus quās asinus portāverat sarcinīs atque insuper pelle eī dētrāctā equum onerāvit. Tum 15 ille dēplōrāns fortunam suam, “Quam stultē,” inquit, “contempsī comitis precēs; nam si illi obtemperāvissem, parvulum habērem onus, nunc gravissimum portō coāctus.”

Old Fable.

5. The Wonderful Deliverance of Simonides.

Simōnidēs, ēgregius Graecōrum poēta, cēnābat aliquandō ¹ 20 Cranone in Thessaliā apud ² Scopam, fortunātum hominem et nōbilem, quī paulō ³ ante in pugilum certāmine ⁴ māgnam victōriam reportāverat. Cantāvit poēta summō convivārum gaudiō praeclārū carmen in laudem victōris et piō animō etiam Castorem et Pollūcem, inlūstris Graecōrum hērōēs et 25 certāminum patrōnōs, ut auctōrēs illius victōriae celebrāvit. Invidiā commōtus carmen improbāvit Scopās et sordidē

Cf. ¹ quondam, p. 2, l. 1. — ² apud, 1, 3. — ³ paulō, l. 12. — ⁴ certāmina, 2, 1.

poëtae acclāmāvit: “Dimidium tibi dōnābō praemi prōmissi, reliquum ab hērōibus tuis, quōs aequē laudāvisti, postulābis.” Cēlāvit iram poëta. Paulō post Simōnidi nūntiat servus: “Duo iuvenēs ad iānuam stantēs māgnopere tē ēvocant.” Obtemperāvit¹ poëta nūntiō, sed ante



FIG. 5.—A COIN OF BRUTTIUM.

iānuam invēnit nēminem. Iam vērō horribili post tergum fragōre conturbātur. Retrō versat oculōs, nihil spectat nisi ingentem et tristissimam ruinam; obrutus est tyrannus cum convivis² omnibus, mīrificē servātus est pius poëta.

6. The Roman Dinner.

10 Quam diū Rōmāni priscōs mōrēs retinēbant, omnēs domesticī in ātrio unā cēnābant.³ Sed postquam Rōmāni divitēs facti sunt, mōs erat dominō cum hospitibus in tricliniō cēnāre. Triclinium rē vērā lectus erat in quō trēs convivae⁴ accumbere poterant, nam Rōmāni ad mēnsam accum-
15 bere solēbant. Tria erant triclinia, quae novem omninō convivis spatium dabant. In tris partīs Rōmāni cēnam dividēbant. Prima pars gustus vocābātur, cēna altera, tertia mēnsae secundae. Rōmānis erat in prōverbiō, “Ab ōvō ūsque ad mālā.” Cēnam ministrābant strūctor, scissor,
20 alii servi. Nōn solum pauperēs sed etiam divitēs ēlegantēsque Rōmāni cibum digitis capiēbant.

Cf. ¹ obtemperāvissem, p. 3, l. 17. — ² convivārum, 3, 23. — ³ cēnābat, 3, 20. — ⁴ convivīs, l. 9.

7. Augustus and the Veteran.

Imperātor Augustus saepe per urbem pedibus ibat summāque¹ comitāte adeuntis excipiēbat. Convēnit eum forte miles veterānus quī, quod in iūs vocātus erat, auxilium ab Imperātore petivit.² Statim Augustus ūnum ē comitibus³



FIG. 6. — COIN OF AUGUSTUS.

ēlēgit patrōnum,⁴ eumque militem comitārī iussit. Tum 5 veterānus exclāmāvit: “At nōn ego bellō Actiacō vicārium quaesivī,⁵ sed ipse prō tē pūgnāvī,” simulque dētēxit cicātricēs. Erubuit Augustus et ipse patrōnus pauperis⁶ veterānī factus est.

8. The Wolf and the Dog.

Lupus canem vidēns bene saginātum, “Quanta est,” 10 inquit,⁷ “fēlicitās tua! Tū, ut vidēris, lautē vivis, at ego famē ēnecor.” Tum canis, “Licet,” inquit, “mēcum in urbem veniās et eādē fēlicitāte fruāris.” Lupus conditionem accēpit. Dum ūnā⁸ eunt, animadvertit lupus in collō canis attritōs pilōs. “Quid hōc est?” inquit. “Num 15 iugum sustinēs? cervix enī tua tōta est glabra.” “Nihil est,” canis respondit, “sed interdiū mē adligant, ut noctū sim vigilantior; atque haec sunt vestigia collāris quod cer-

Cf. ¹ summō, p. 3, l. 23. — ² petēbant, 2, 15. — ³ comitis, 3, 12. — ⁴ patrōnōs, 3, 26. — ⁵ quaerēbant, 2, 16. — ⁶ pauperēs, 4, 20. — ⁷ inquit, 3, 16. — ⁸ ūnā, 4, 11.

vīcī circumdari solet.¹” Tum lupus, “Valē,²” inquit, “amīce! nihil moror felicitatem servitute ēptam.” *Old Fable.*

9. The Lion and the Mouse.

Circum leōnem dormientem mūsculī petulantēs cursābant. E quibus cum ūnus per cāsum dormientis caput offendisset, ē somnō excitātus³ est leō eumque comprehendit. Iam dēvorātūrus erat bēstiōlam, miserābiliter tamen ōrantī benignē vitam condōnāvit. Paulō⁴ post cum per silvās nōn satis cautē praedam vestigāret, in vēnatōris laqueōs incidit leō. Frūstrā studēns sē liberāre furibundus rugiēbat. Procul eum audivit mūsculus celeriterque adventāvit. Iam cum inrētītum eum spectāvisset,⁵ cui ipse vitam libertātemque dēberet, grātō animō⁶ ad laqueōs adrēpsit eōsque conrōsit. Ita leō omnī periculō est liberātus praeclārumque⁷ misericordiae suae praemium⁸ reportāvit.⁹ *Old Fable.*

10. The Dancing Horses.

15 In Ītaliā prope sinum Tarentinum inter aliās Graecās urbīs sita¹⁰ erat Sybaris, cūius incolae dīvitiīs¹¹ et lūxuriā ferē¹²



FIG. 7.—TIBIAE.

Cf. ¹ solēbant, p. 4, l. 15. — ² valē, 1, 11. — ³ excitāvit, 2, 8. — ⁴ paulō, 4, 3. — ⁵ spectat, 4, 7. — ⁶ animō, 3, 24. — ⁷ praeclārum, 3, 24. — ⁸ praemī, 4, 1. — ⁹ reportāverat, 3, 23. — ¹⁰ sitās, 1, 8. — ¹¹ dīvitiās, 3, 6. — ¹² ferē, 1, 7.

superābant Corinthiōs. Artem bellicam contemnēbant,¹ contrā summō cum studiō omnibus lūdicris vacābant. Lepidē igitur² etiam equōs ita instituerant ut inter epulās ad tibiārum numerum saltārent. Sciēbant id Crotōniātae finitimī. Itaque cum aliquandō³ bellum gererent cum illis, in aciem 5 nōn tubās et tubicinēs sed tibiās et tibicinēs sēcum dūxērunt. Proeli initiō⁴ quam diū ēminus pūgnābātur, silēbant illi; ubi vērō ad ferrum et manūs rēs est adducta, subito cantāvērunt⁵ numerōs ad saltandum aptōs. Vix autem hōs audiverant equī Sybaritārum, cum, tamquam mediīs in con- 10 viviīs essent, saltāre coepērunt et dominīs⁶ strāgem concitāvērunt tristissimam.⁷

11. Augustus and the Raven.

Post Actiacam victōriam, quā Caesar Octāviānus Augustus, superātō⁸ Antōniō anno ante Christum nātum tricēsimo primō, tōtius imperī Rōmānī principātum occupāvit, occurrit 15 triumphantī illi quīdam⁹ inter grātulantis corvum tenēns, quem instituerat¹⁰ ut diceret: “Avē,¹¹ Caesar, victor, imperātor.” Mirātus Caesar officiōsam avem vīginti milibus sēstertiūm ēmit.¹² Paulō post salūtātus similiter ā psittacō etiam hunc emī iussit. Eādem arte in picā animadversā¹³ hanc 20 quoque ēmit. His exemplis commōtus pauper quīdam sūtor corvum sibi comparāvit, ut ad eandem vōcem eum institueret. Fatigātus autem labōre saepe avi nōn respondentī dicēbat: “Oleum et operam perdidi.” Sic enim apud Rōmānōs exclāmābant ei quī frūstrā¹⁴ operam cōsūmpserant. Tandem 25 aliquandō corvus suum illud, “Avē, Caesar, victor, imperātor” didicerat.¹⁵ Iam properat sūtor ad Augustum ut avem vēn-

Cf. ¹ contempsī, p. 3, l. 16. — ² igitur, 3, 14. — ³ aliquandō, 3, 20. — ⁴ quam diū, 4, 10. — ⁵ cantāvit, 3, 23. — ⁶ dominō, 4, 12. — ⁷ tristissimam, 4, 8. — ⁸ superābant, l. 1. — ⁹ quīdam, 3, 10. — ¹⁰ instituerant, l. 3. — ¹¹ avē, 3, 8. — ¹² ēmptam, 6, 2. — ¹³ animadvertit, 5, 14. — ¹⁴ frūstrā, 6, 9. — ¹⁵ discō, 1, 9.

deret. At ille auditā vōce, “Iam satis,¹” inquit, “domī habeō tālium salūtātōrum.” Tum corvus tristem domini suī voltum animadvertēns crocitāt: “Oleum et operam perdidī.” Quae rēs risum excussit Augustō tantamque praebuit
 5 laetitiam ut statim tantī emeret avem quantī etiam tum ēmerat nūllam.

12. The Wolf and the Lamb.

Lupus² et āgnus sitientēs ad eundem rīvum vēnerant. Superior lupus, longē inferior āgnus stābat. Tunc improbus latrō iūrgī causam quaerēns,³ “Cūr,” inquit, “bibentī mihi
 10 turbulentam reddidisti aquam?” Āgnus timēns, “Quō modo possum?” inquit; “ā tē enim aqua ad mē dēcurrit.” Ille vēritātē rei repulsus: “Hūius annī initiō mihi maledixistī.” “Tum,” inquit āgnus, “equidem nātus⁴ nōndum eram.” “Hercle etiam,” respondet lupus, “pater tuus contumēliōsē quondam
 15 dīxit dē aviā meā.” Atque ita āgnum dilaniat. *Old Fable.*

13. The Wolf and the Lamb.

Ad rīvum eūndem lūpus et āgnus vēnerānt
 Sitī compūlsī: sūperior stābāt lūpūs
 Longēque inferior āgnus. Tūm fauce improbā
 Latrō incitātus iūrgī causam intulīt.
 20 “Cūr,” inquit, “tūrbulēntam fēcistī mihī
 Aquām bibentī?” Lānigér contrā timēns:
 “Quī pōssum, quāesō, fācere quōd quererīs, lupé?
 Ā tē dēcūrrit ad meōs haustūs liquōr.”
 Repūlsus ille vēritātis vīribūs,
 25 “Ante hōs sex mēnsis mālē,” ait, “dīxistī mihī.”
 Respōndit āgnus: “Équidem nātus nōn erām.”
 “Pater, hērcle, tūus ibi,” inquit, “māledixīt mihī,”
 Atque ita conréptum lācerat iniūstā necē.

Cf. ¹ satis, p. 6, l. 7. — ² lupus, 5, 10. — ³ quaerēbant, 2, 16. — ⁴ nātum, 7, 14.

Haec própter illōs scrípta est hómínēs fábulá

Quí fíctis caúsís ínnocéntis ópprimúnt.

PHAEDRUS.

14. The Rivalry of Two Painters.

Initiō quartī ante Chrístum saeculī duo fuērunt nōbilēs pictōrēs, alter Zeuxis, alter Parrhasius appellátus. Hī quondam certāmen¹ instituērunt dē arte. Zeuxis ūvās pinxerat atque adeō exaequāverat nātūrae vērītātem ut avēs ad pictūram advolārent. Tum Parrhasius tabulam prōposuit in quā linteum pinxerat. Quod cum Zeuxis vidēret, vērū esse putāvit linteum, quō pictūra occultārētur. Itaque nihil agente Parrhasiō flāgitāvit ut remōtō tandem linteō ostenderet pictūram. 10
Ridēns² respondit ille, ipse movēret linteum. Tum Zeuxis cōgnitō errōre palmam dedit Parrhasiō, quoniam ipse avīs, ille artificem fefellisset.

15. The Fox and the Monkey.

In conventū quōdam bēstiārum tam bellē saltāverat³ simia ut cūctis prope suffrāgiis⁴ rēx creārētur. Quod cum stultissimum⁵ esse cōgnōvisset volpēs, callidē simiam ā cēteris animālibus sēvocāvit et hīs verbis tentāvit, “Rēgnum,” inquit, “quoniam tibi obtigit, nōn cēlābō⁶ tē quod scire māgnopere⁷ tuā interest.” “Quidnam habēs?” interrogat simia. “Māgnus thēsaurus,” respondet illa, “in sēcrētō 20 quōdam silvae locō abditus, ā patre dē vitā dēcēdente mihi est indicātus, quī iūre rēgnī ad tē iam vidētur pertinēre.” “Laudō,” inquit simia, “officiōsam⁸ tuam abstinentiam; cūrā igitur ut clam perveniāmus ad illum locum.” Itaque, cum reliqua animālia discessissent, clandestinīs sēmitis volpēs 25 recentem rēgem abdūcēbat, et cum diū tōtam silvam peragrāvissent, tandem dēnsa mōnstrāns virgulta, “Hīc,” inquit,

Cf. ¹ certāmina, p. 2, l. 1. — ² rīdet, 1, 4. — ³ saltārent, 7, 4. — ⁴ suffrāgia, 2, 16. — ⁵ stultē, 3, 16. — ⁶ cēlāvit, 4, 3. — ⁷ māgnopere, 4, 4. — ⁸ officiōsam, 7, 18.

“dicēbat pater absconditum esse thēsaurum.” Iam cupidē illūc penetrābat simia, sed subitō¹ in² vēnātōris laqueōs incidit. Frūstrā cum implōrāvisset amicī auxilium, sērō sēnsit cōsiliū et temperantiā rēgī magis opus esse quam
 5 artem saltandī. Volpēs autem, convocātis bēstiis omnibus, trepidantem in laqueis ostendēns³ simiam, “Habētis iam,” inquit, “saltantem vestrum rēgem.” *Old Fable.*

16. The River-God and the Golden Axe.

Resarciēbat pauper quidam faber nāvem in fluvio ad ancoram dēligātā. Inter opus excidit eī secūris et in aquam
 10 dēmersa est. Tum ille in nāvī sedēns cum flētū et lūctū iactūram dēplōrābat.⁴ Quās miserābilis vōcēs cum audiret



FIG. 8.—PERSONIFICATION OF THE RIVER TIBER.

deus fluvī, ēmersit et quid rei esset interrogāvit.⁵ “Ēheu,” respondit faber, “secūris mea incautō⁶ mihi excidit in profundum neque habeō quō emam⁷ alteram.” Immersit sē deus
 15 et paulō post revertit dextrā gerēns secūrim, nōn eam tamen quam āmiserat faber, sed auream, et num haec esset ea quam

Cf. ¹ subito, p. 7, l. 8. — ² vēnātōris laqueōs incidit, 6, 8. — ³ ostenderet, 9, 10. — ⁴ dēplōrāns, 3, 16. — ⁵ interrogat, 9, 19. — ⁶ opposite, cautē, 6, 8. — ⁷ emeret, 8, 5.

āmīssisset interrogāvit. Negāvit vir probus.¹ Iterum igitur sē immersit deus reportāvitque² aliam eamque argenteam. Sed cum nē hanc quidem suam esse faber dīxisset, postrēmō eam ipsam secūrim quae dēciderat exhibuit deus, quam laetus ille āgnōvit. Hāc probitāte dēlectātus deus 5 omnis illās eī secūris dōnāvit. Postea, cum haec multis nārrāvisset faber, alius quīdam, ut similī locuplētārētur fortūnā, ipse secūrim suam in fluvium suā sponte dēmisit et iūxtā eum adsīdēns māgnā vōce ēdidit³ lamenta. Adpāruit deus et querēlārum causā auditā auream ostendit secūrim, 10 interrogāns eane esset cūius iactūram dēplōrāret. Ille vērō laetus, “Sānē,” inquit, “haec est mea.” At deus irātus, “Apage,” inquit, “homō avāre et mendāx, tū neque hanc habēbis neque tuam.” Haec ubi dīxit, cum secūrī immersus est in undās.

Old Fable. 15

17. The Husbandman and his Sons.

Agricola senex cum mortem sibi adpropinquāre sentīret,⁴ filiōs convocāvit, quōs, ut fierī solet,⁵ interdum discordāre sciēbat, et fascem virgulārum adferri iubet. Quibus adlātīs filiōs hortābātur ut hunc fascem frangerent. Quod cum facere nōn possent, distribuit singulis singulās virgās, eis- 20 que celeriter frāctīs, docuit illōs quam firma rēs esset concordia quamque imbēcillis discordia.

Old Fable.

18. Demosthenes and the Judges.

Dēmostenēs, clārus⁶ ille ōrātor, cum aliquandō in causā capitālī quendam dēfenderet atque iūdicēs vidēret parum attentōs, “Paulisper,” inquit,⁷ “aurīs mihi praebe⁸te⁸ rem 25 nārrātūrō novam atque auditū iucundam.” Ad quae verba cum illi iam aurīs adrēxissent, “Adulēscēns,” inquit, “quī-

Cf. ¹ opp. *improbis*, p. 8, l. 8. — ² *reportāverat*, 3, 23. — ³ *ēdēbantur*, 2, 14. — ⁴ *sēnsit*, 10, 4. — ⁵ *solēbant*, 4, 15. — ⁶ *synonym*, *nōbilēs*, 9, 3. — ⁷ *inquit*, 3, 16. — ⁸ *praebuit*, 8, 4.

dam asinum¹ condūxerat, quō Athēnīs Megaram veherētur. Mediā ferē² viā cum aestus meridiānus ingravēsceret neque arborēs³ aut tēcta umbram praebērent, asinum ille sustinuit et dēpositis clitellis ita in eīs cōsēdit ut animālis umbrā
 5 obtegerētur. Id vērō agāsō vetābat, asinum clāmāns locātum esse, nōn umbram asinī. Alter ē contrāriō contendēbat, quoniam umbra sēparārī nōn posset ab asinō, necessariō eam ūnā⁴ cum asinō esse locātam. Atque ea rixa adeō inter eōs exārsit ut etiam pūgnis certārent. Tandem in iūs⁵ am-
 10 bulant.⁶” Hāctenus ēnārrātā historiōlā, ubi iūdicēs diligenter vidit auscultantis, repente Dēmostenēs ē suggestū dēscendit. Tum revocātus ā iūdicibus rogātusque⁷ ut reliquam fābulam pergeret ēnārrāre, “Quid!” inquit, “dē asinī umbrā libet audire, causam hominis dē vitā periclitantis nōn audiētis?”

19. The Death of Pompey.

15 Pompēius, dēpositō adeundae⁸ Syriae cōnsiliō et aeris māgnō pondere ad militārem ūsum in nāvīs impositō duōbusque milibus hominum armātis, Pēlūsium pervēnit.⁹ Ibi cāsū¹⁰ rēx erat Ptolemaeus, puer aetāte, māgnis cōpiis cum sorōre Cleopātrā bellum gerēns, quam paucis ante mēnsibus
 20 per suōs propinquōs atque amīcōs rēgnō expulerat; castra-que Cleopātrae nōn longō spatiō ab ēius castris distābant. Ad eum Pompēius mīsīt, ut prō hospitio atque amicitia patris Alexandriae reciperētur atque illius opibus in calamitāte tegerētur. Sed quī ab eō missi erant, cōfectō lēgāti-
 25 ōnis officiō, liberius cum militibus rēgis conloquī coepērunt eōsque hortārī ut suum officium Pompēiō praestārent, nēve ēius fortūnam dēspicerent. His tunc cōgnitis rēbus, amīcī rēgis, quī propter aetatem ēius in prōcūrātiōne erant rēgni,

Cf. ¹ asinum, p. 3, l. 10. — ² ferē, 1, 7. — ³ arborēs, 1, 6. — ⁴ ūnā, 4, 11. — ⁵ iūs, 5, 3. — ⁶ ambulō, 1, 5. — ⁷ rogāvit, 3, 11. — ⁸ adeuntis, 5, 2. — ⁹ perveniāmus, 9, 24. — ¹⁰ cāsū, 6, 4.



FIG. 9.—GNAEUS POMPEIUS MAGNUS.

sive timōre adductī nē Pompēius Alexandriam Aegyptumque occupāret,¹ sive dēspectā ēius fortūnā, eis quī erant ab eō missī palam liberāliter respondērunt eumque ad rēgem venire iussērunt; ipsi, clam² cōsiliō initō, Achillan, praefectum
 5 rēgium, singulārī hominem audaciā, et L. Septimium, tribūnum militum, ad interficiendum Pompēium misērunt. Ab hīs liberāliter ipse appellātus nāviculam parvulam³ cōnscendit cum paucis⁴ suis, et ibi ab Achillā et Septimiō interficitur.

CAESAR: *Bell. Civ.* iii, 103.

20. Niobe and her Children.

Niobē Tantalī, Phrygiae rēgis, filia et Amphionis, rēgis
 10 Thēbānōrum, uxor erat. Erat autem fēmina et pulcherrima et superbissima, nōn solum propter genus et formam mari-



FIG. 10. — NIOBE.

tique potentiam sed etiam propter māgnū liberōrum⁵ numerum. Septem enim filii erant septemque filiae. Superbia autem ei trīstitiae acerbissimae causa liberisque causa per-

Cf. ¹ occupāvit, p. 7, l. 15. — ² opp. palam. — ³ parvulum, 3, 17. — ⁴ opp. multis. — ⁵ liberis, 2, 7.

niciēīfuit. Nam cum ōlim¹ Thēbānōrum sacerdotēs et fēminae Lātōnae, mātři Apollinis et Diānae, sacra parārent, Niobē eās vituperāvit. “Cūr,” inquit, “mātři duōrum liberōrum immolātis? Mihi liberī sunt quattuordecim, etiam ego sum genere divinō. Cūr nōn mihi immolātis?” Ea verba Lātōnae 5
īram² excitāvērunt, liberōsque ea ōrāvit³ ut contumēliam vindicārent. Itaque Apollō et Diāna in arcem Thēbārum volāvērunt⁴ et omnis quattuordecim Niobae liberōs sagittis suis necāvērunt. Māter autem misera in saxum mutāta est, et etiam nunc dolor ei lacrimās perpetuās movet. 10

21. Cræsus, King of Lydia.

1. Croesus, rēx Lȳdōrum, et rēgiārū opum⁵ hērēs fuerat et ipse māgnam potentiam et māgnās divitiās⁶ sibi parāverat. Itaque fāma divitiārū ēius nōn sōlum Asiam sed etiam Eurōpam complēverat multique vērunt rēgem vīsum. Inter eōs fuit Solōn Athēniēnsis, quī civibus suis auctor⁷ novārū 15
lēgū fuerat et inter septem sapientis numerābātur. Hunc Croesus interrogāvit⁸ num ipse omnium hominū fēlicissimus esset. Hōc Solōn negāvit. “Nēmō enim,” inquit, “ante mortem beātus est.” Hōc respōnsum rēgi tum displicuit; sed post breve tempus sēnsit⁹ quam vērū esset. Illis enim 20
temporibus Cȳrus Persārū et Mēdōrum rēgnū obtinēbat, et gentēs propinquae¹⁰ victōriis ēius terrēbantur. Ut hunc impediret et coerceret, Croesus bellum contrā eum parāvit. Eōdem tempore ōrāculum Delphicum per lēgātōs dē exitū bellī interrogāvit. Respondit deus: “Croesus trānsitū flūminis 25
quod interest inter Persās et Lȳdōs māgnū rēgnū dēlēbit.”

2. Croesus, cum hōc respōnsum comperisset, victōriam certam spērābat et cōpiis¹¹ suis Cȳri rēgnū intrāvit. Is autem

Cf. ¹ quondam, p. 9, l. 4. — ² iram, 4, 3. — ³ ōrantī, 6, 6. — ⁴ ad-
volārent, 9, 7. — ⁵ opibus, 12, 23. — ⁶ divitiās, 3, 6. — ⁷ auctōrēs, 3, 26.
— ⁸ interrogat, 9, 19. — ⁹ sēnsit, 10, 4. — ¹⁰ propinquōs, 12, 20. —
¹¹ cōpiīs, 12, 18.

aderat et cum Croesō dīmīcāvit.¹ Sed ita pūgnātum est ut neque hīc neque ille victor esset. Sed cum alterō proeliō ad urbem Croesī pūgnārētur, Cŷrus victōriam ā Lŷdis reportāvit.² Tum Croesus captivus ā Cŷrō damnātus est ut cremārētur.
 5 Cum māgna cōpia lignōrum adportāta esset et Croesus vinctus mortem exspectāret, māgnā vōce clāmāvit: “O Solōn, Solōn, Solōn!” Cŷrus autem, cum hōc audīvisset,

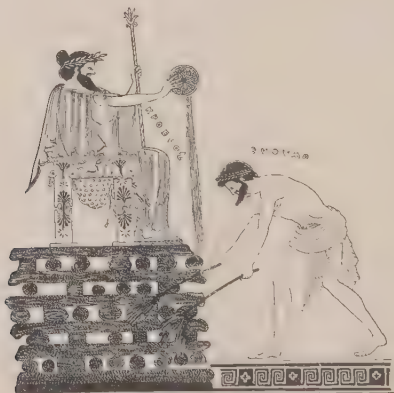


FIG. II. — CROESUS ON THE FUNERAL PILE.

scīre³ dēsīderāvit quid illis verbīs significāret. Tum Croesus nārāvit quid Solōn Athēniēnsis dē fortunā hūmānā docuisset.⁴
 10 His verbīs Cŷrus ita commōtus⁵ et perturbātus est ut Croesum liberāret et rogāret⁶ ut suus amicus esset. Itaque Croesus in societāte rēgis mānsit et eī saepe cōsiliis suis prōfuit. Cŷrus autem ante mortem filium monuit ut hanc Croesī senis⁷ amīcitiā cōservāret.

Cf. ¹ dīmīcantīs, p. 2, l. 4. — ² reportāverat, 3, 23. — ³ sciēbant, 7, 4. — ⁴ docuit, 11, 21. — ⁵ commōtus, 3, 27. — ⁶ rogāvit, 3, 11. — ⁷ senex, 11, 16.

22. An Epitome of Roman History.

Primus urbis Rōmae annus fuit ante Christum nātum septingentēsimus quinquāgēsimus tertius. Regēbant civitatem initiō rēgēs per annōs ferē ducentōs quinquāgintā, quam aetātem quasi infantiam nōminēs populi Rōmānī. Annō quingentēsimō nōnō, postquam dētrūsus est ex rēgnō 5 Tarquinius Superbus, creātī sunt duo annuī cōsulēs, ut, si ūnus malus esset, alter eum habēns potestātem similem coercēret. Quem mōrem¹ observāvērunt Rōmānī quīque ferē saecula. Hōc tantum temporis spatium² si diviseris in duās partis aequālis, habēbis iam populi Rōmānī adulēscen- 10 tiam et aetātem mediam, quārum utraque annōrum numerō exaequat infantiam. Neque enim errāvērunt viri doctī, qui tamquam³ per lūdicrum ad calculōs revocantēs Rōmānōrum memoriā tria statuērunt ducentōrum quinquāgintā ferē⁴ annōrum spatia. Nam redāctās habuērunt Rōmānī sub 15 potestātem suam Ītalīae gentis ante Christum nātum mediō saeculō tertiō, et ubi annō ducentēsimō sexāgēsīmō quartō bellum indixērunt Poenis, prōpāgāre coepērunt imperi terminōs suprā mare quod vocāmus medium. Iūre⁵ igitur eō temporis mōmentō statuimus novae aetātis initium. Finitum 20 autem est primum illud bellum Pūnicum annō ducentēsimō quadrāgēsīmō primō. Bellō Pūnicō secundō bellāvērunt Rōmānī cum Hannibale ab annō ducentēsimō duodēvicēsīmō ūsque ad ēius saeculī ultimum; bellō Pūnicō tertiō finitō dēlēvērunt⁶ Carthāginem aemulam annō centēsīmō 25 quadrāgēsīmō sextō, quō annō etiam Corinthus diruta est. Ē proximō saeculō memoriae mandātum est necātum C. Iūlium Caesarem annō quadrāgēsīmō quartō, institūtum⁷ dominātum ab Octāviānō Augustō annō tricēsīmō primō.

Cf. ¹ mōrēs, p. 4, l. 10. — ² spatium, 4, 16. — ³ tamquam, 7, 10. — ⁴ ferē, 1, 7. — ⁵ iūs, 5, 3. — ⁶ dēlēbit, 15, 26. — ⁷ instituērunt, 2, 1.

23. The Omen of the Puppy.

L. Aemilius Paulus ēius quī ad Cannās cecidit filius erat. Cōsul sortitus est Macedoniam prōvinciam, in quā Persēs, Philippī filius, paternī in Rōmānōs odi hērēs,¹ bellum renovāverat. Cum adversus Persē profectūrus esset et domum
 5 suam ad vesperum rediret, filiolum suum Tertiam, quae tunc erat admodum parva, ōsulāns animadvertit² trīsticulam.



FIG. 12. — COIN OF AEMILIUS.

“Quid est,” inquit, “mea Tertia? Quid trīstis es?” “Mī pater,” inquit illa, “Persa periit.³” Erat autem mortuus⁴ ca-
 tellus eō nōmine. Tum ille artius puellam complexus, “Acci-
 10 piō,” inquit, “mea filia, ōmen.” Ita ex fortuitō dictō quasi spem certam clārissimī triumphī animō praesūmptis. In-
 gressus deinde Macedoniam rēctā ad hostem perrēxit.⁵

CICERO (*adapted*).

24. Scipio Aemilianus.

Scipiō Aemiliānus, cum in Hispāniā sub Lūcullō duce militāret atque Intercatia, praevalidum oppidum, circumse-
 15 dērētur, primus moenia ēius cōnscendit⁶; neque erat in eō exercitū quisquam, aut nōbilitāte aut animī indole⁷ aut futūris āctis, cūius magis salutī parcī et cōnsulī dēbēret.⁸ Sed tunc clārissimus⁹ quisque iuvenum prō amplificandā et tuendā patriā plūrimum labōris ac periculī¹⁰ sustinēbat, dēforme sibi

Cf. ¹ hērēs, p. 15, l. 11. — ² animadvertit, 5, 14. — ³ periērunt, 3, 7. — ⁴ mortuōrum, 2, 14. — ⁵ pergeret, 12, 13. — ⁶ cōnscendit, 14, 7. — ⁷ indolēs, 2, 13. — ⁸ dēbēret, 6, 12. — ⁹ clārus, 11, 23. — ¹⁰ periculō, 6, 13.

existimāns quōs dignitāte praestāret ¹ ab hīs virtūte superāri. Ideōque Aemiliānus hanc militiam, aliīs propter difficultātem vitantibus, sibi dēpoposcit.

VALERIUS MAXIMUS.

25. The Battle of Thermopylae.

1. Cum Graeci angustias Thessaliae nōn dēfendissent, Thermopylās, portam Graeciae, occupāre cōstituērunt. Ita- 5
que octō milia militum ab eis ad illum locum missa sunt. His cōpiīs ² rēgem Lacedaemoniōrum praefēcērunt, cui nōmen erat Leōnidās. Is enim tantō patriae amōre flagrabat ut cum Persis pūgnāre cuperet, etiam si ā suis magistrātibus nōn concessum esset. Itaque trecentōs Lacedaemoniōs quī 10
idem cōgitābant contrā Persās ēdūxit et cum cēteris cōpiīs Graecōrum in Thermopylis Persārum adventum exspectāvit. Xerxēs autem, cum comperisset ³ quantīs cōpiīs angustiae dēfenderentur, initiō ⁴ risit ⁵; tum, quod Graecōrum fortem animum nōn perspēxerat, lēgātum ⁶ ad eōs misit ut armapōnerent. 15
Sed is nihil perfēcit. Nōtum ⁷ est quid illi ā milite Lacedaemoniō respōsum sit, cum dixisset: “Sagittae ⁸ nostrae vōbis lūcem diēi tegent.” “Itaque,” ille inquit, “in umbrā ⁹ dimicābimus.” ¹⁰

2. Quattuor diēs Xerxēs cum multis suis milibus hominum 20
exspectāvit; quintō diē, cum Leōnidās cōpiās nōn abdūxisset, proelium commisit. Sed māgnus numerus Persārum aut volnerātus aut interfectus ā Graecis cecidit ¹¹; reliquī fugērunt. Tum decem milia ēlētōrum militum, quibus nōmen Immortālēs erat, ā rēge in angustias coniecta sunt. Sed etiam hī 25
cessērunt. Cum rēx iam dē victoriā dēspērāret, prōditor inventus est. Ephialtēs enim, quī Persārum pecūniā corruptus erat, Persis mōnstrāvit ¹² quā viā trānsitum efficerent

Cf. ¹ praestārent, p. 12, l. 26. — ² cōpiīs, 12, 18. — ³ comperisset, 15, 27. — ⁴ initiō, 17, 3. — ⁵ ridet, 1, 4. — ⁶ lēgātōs, 15, 24. — ⁷ syn. sciēbat, 11, 18. — ⁸ sagittīs, 15, 8. — ⁹ umbram, 12, 3. — ¹⁰ dimicāvit, 16, 1. — ¹¹ cecidit, 18, 1. — ¹² mōnstrāns, 9, 27.

et ab alterō latere impetum¹ in Graecōs facerent. Cum Leōnidās hūius rei nūntium accēpisset, māgnam partem exercitūs remisit. Ipse cum exiguis cōpiis mānsit.² Accēperat enim hōc ōrāculum: “Aut dēlēbitur³ Sparta aut rēx
 5 interficiētur.” Trecenti igitur⁴ illi Lacedaemonii et septingenti Thespiēnsēs Persārū impetum sustinuērunt; animīs ferōcissimīs contrā eōs cucurrērunt et, cum diū pūgnāvisent multōsque hostis interfēcissent, omnēs cecidērunt.

26. A Roman Maiden.

Tristissimus⁵ haec tibi scribō, Fundāni nostrī filiā minōre
 10 dēfūctā, quā puellā nihil umquam fēstivius, amābilius, nec modo longiōre vitā sed prope immortalitāte dignius vidi.

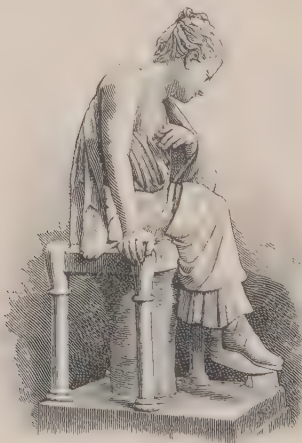


FIG. 13. — A ROMAN MAIDEN.

Nōndum annōs quattuordecim implēverat,⁶ et iam illi anilis prūdētia, mātṛōnālis gravitās erat, et tamen suāvitās puel-

Cf. ¹ impetum, p. 2, l. 9. — ² mānsit, 16, 12. — ³ dēlēbit, 15, 26. — ⁴ igitur, 3, 14. — ⁵ tristissimam, 4, 8. — ⁶ implent, 1, 3.

lāris cum virginālī verēcundiā. Ut illa patris cervicibus¹ inhaerēbat ! Ut nōs amicōs paternōs et amanter et modestē complectēbātur ! Ut nūtricēs, ut paedagōgōs, ut praeceptōrēs prō suō quemque officiō² diligēbat ! Quam studiōsē, quam intellegenter lēctitābat ! Ut parcē custōditēque lūdēbat !⁵ Quā illa temperantiā, quā patientiā, quā etiam cōstantiā novissimam valētūdinem tulit ! Medicis³ obsequēbātur, sorōrem, patrem adhortābātur, ipsamque sē dēstitūtā corporis viribus vigōre animi sustinēbat. Dūrāvit hīc illi ūsque⁴ ad extrēmum nec aut spatiō valētūdinis aut metū mortis infrāc-¹⁰ tus est, quō plūrīs graviōrēsque nōbis causās relinqueret et dēsideri et dolōris.⁵ Ō triste plānē acerbūque⁶ fūnus ! Ō morte ipsā mortis tempus indignius ! Iam dēstināta erat ēgregiō⁷ iuvenī, iam ēlēctus nūptiārū diēs, iam nōs vocāti. Quod gaudium⁸ quō maerōre mūtātum⁹ est ! Nōn possum¹⁵ exprimere verbis quantum animō volnus accēperim, cum audivī Fundānum ipsum praecipientem, quod in vestīs, margarita, gemmās fuerat erogātūrus, hōc in tūs et unguenta et odōrēs impenderētur.

PLINY: *Epist.* v, 16.

27. Aemilius Paulus and his Sons.

Aemilius Paulus, nunc fēlicissimī¹⁰ nunc miserrimī patris²⁰ clārissima¹¹ repraesentātiō, ex quattuor filiis formae insignis, ēgregiae indolis,¹² duōs iūre adoptiōnis in Cornēliam Fabiamque gentem trānslātōs sibi ipsi dēnegāvit ; duōs ei fortūna abstulit. Quōrum alter triumphum patris fūnere¹³ suō quartum ante diem praecessit, alter in triumphālī currū cōn-²⁵ spectus post diem tertium exspirāvit. Itaque quī ad dōnandōs ūsque liberōs¹⁴ abundāverat in orbitāte subitō dēstitūtus est. Quem cāsum quō rōbore animi sustinuerit, ōrātiōne quam

Cf. ¹ cervix, p. 5, l. 16. — ² officium, 12, 26. — ³ medicī, 1, 2. — ⁴ ūsque, 17, 24. — ⁵ dolor, 15, 10. — ⁶ acerbissimae, 14, 14. — ⁷ ēgregius, 3, 20. — ⁸ gaudiō, 3, 24. — ⁹ mūtāta est, 15, 9. — ¹⁰ fēlicissimus, 15, 17. — ¹¹ clārus, 11, 23. — ¹² indole, 18, 16. — ¹³ fūnus, l. 12. — ¹⁴ liberis, 2, 7.



FIG. 14. — A TRIUMPHAL CHARIOT.

dē rēbus ā sē gestis apud populum habuit hanc adiciendō clausulam nūllī ambiguum reliquit: “Cum in māximō prō-ventū fēlicitātis¹ nostrae, Quirītēs, timērem nē quid mali fortūna mōlirētur, Iovem optimum māximum Iūnōnemque rēginam et Minervam precātus sum ut, sī quid adversi populō Rōmānō imminēret, tōtum in meam domum converterētur. Quāpropter bene habet; adnuendō enim vōtis meis id ēgērunt ut vōs potius meō cāsū² doleātis quam ego vestrō ingemiscerem.”

VALERIUS MAXIMUS.

28. Androclus and the Lion.

The Gentle Lion.

1. Imperātor Rōmānus ōlim spectāculum splendidum parā- vit ut populum dēlectāret.³ Cōstituerat⁴ autem ut in eō hominēs cum bēstiis feris pūgnārent. Itaque imperāvit ut omnēs servī quī capitis damnāti⁵ essent eō diē cum leōnibus, tigridibus, aliisque bēstiis saevis dimicārent.⁶ Bēstiae autem famē⁷ incitātae erant. Ūnus ex illis servis miseris Androclus erat. Cum diēs lūdōrum vēnisset, ille cum reliquīs sociis in circum adductus est et bēstiae multae in eōs ēmissae sunt. Androclum autem leō ingēns⁸ ex reliquīs ēlēgerat⁹ et contrā eum cucurrit.¹⁰ Ille timōre commōtus erat, cum adversārium suum cōspiceret, et mortem exspectāvit. Subitō¹¹ autem leō passum retinuit, et Androclus, cui animus crēverat, bēstiam, quae sē ad pedēs eius prōiciēbat, māgnā laetitiā¹² excēpit. Omnēs quī aderant mirāti¹³ sunt. Imperātor autem, quī ipse rem mirābilem viderat, Androclum ad sē vocāvit et eum interrogāvit quā rē grātiā leōnis meritis esset.

Cf. ¹ fēlicitās, p. 5, l. 11. — ² cāsū, 6, 4. — ³ dēlectātus, 11, 5. — ⁴ cōstituērunt, 19, 5. — ⁵ damnātus est, 16, 4. — ⁶ dīmicāvit, 16, 1. — ⁷ famē, 5, 12. — ⁸ ingentem, 4, 8. — ⁹ ēlēgit, 5, 5. — ¹⁰ cucurrērunt, 20, 7. — ¹¹ subitō, 7, 8. — ¹² laetitiam, 8, 5. — ¹³ mirātus, 7, 18.

The Cause Explained.

2. Tum Androclus ita nārrāvit: "Cum aliquandō in officiis¹ meis peccāvisssem, fugi ut poenam dominī sevērī ēvitārem. In fugā pervēni ad spēluncam, in quam ingressus sum ut mē occultārem.² Quantō autem terrōre captus
5 sum, cum eam etiam leō intrāret! Iam dē vitā dēspērābam. Nam effugiendi facultātem nōn vidēbam.

"Sed leō mē nōn adgressus est, sed tristī clāmōre dolōrēs³ māgnōs indicāvit. Ego autem in pede eius spīnam māgnam cōnspiciēbam, quam extrāxi. Ex illō tempore leō grātus in
10 societāte meā mānsit.⁴ Habēbam eum in locō amici et servī. Cotidiē ex spēluncā, in quā unā habitābāmus, profectus est ut vēnandō nōbīs cibum⁵ parāret. Et semper praedam⁶ adportāvit.

"Sed post breve tempus taedium hūius vitae mē cēpit et
15 ex illis locis discēdere⁷ cōstituī. Cum leō, amicus fidēlis, abesset ut vēnārētur, spēluncam reliqui. Post trīs diēs in itinere ā militibus captus sum et in hanc urbem, in quā dominus meus erat, missus sum. Ille cūrāvit ut capitis damnārer. Iam in vitae periculō versābar, sed ex illō mē
20 leō grātus, qui mē cōgnōvit, ēripuit."

Imperātor, qui hāc rē mirābili mōtus erat, Androclō nōn solum libertātem sed etiam leōnem dōnāvit.⁸

29. Two Letters of Cicero to his Wife.

I. Tullius Terentiae Suae S.

S. V.⁹ B. E. E. V. Valētūdinem tuam velim cūrēs dīlīgētissimē. Nam mihi et scriptum et nūntiātum est tē in febrim
25 subitō incidisse.¹⁰ Quod celeriter mē fēcistī dē Caesaris

Cf. ¹ officiō, p. 21, l. 4. — ² occultārētur, 9, 9. — ³ dolor, 15, 10. — ⁴ mānsit, 16, 12. — ⁵ cibum, 4, 21. — ⁶ praedam, 6, 8. — ⁷ discessissent, 9, 25. — ⁸ dōnāvit, 11, 6. — ⁹ valēs, 1, 1. — ¹⁰ incidit, 6, 8.

litteris certiorem, fēcisti mihi grātum. Item posthāc, sī quid opus¹ erit, sī quid acciderit novi, faciēs ut sciam. Cūrā ut valeās. Valē. D. iiii. Nōnās Iūniās.

2. Tullius S. D. Terentiae Suae.

In Tusculānum nōs ventūrōs putāmus aut Nōnis aut postridiē. Ibi ut sint omnia parāta. Plūrēs enim fortasse 5 nōbiscum erunt, et ut arbitror diūtius ibi commorābimur.² Lābrum sī in balneō nōn est, ut sit; item cētera quae sunt ad victum et valētūdinem³ necessāria. Valē. Kal. Octōbr. dē Venusinō.

30. A Roman Ultimatum.

Gāius Popīlius ā senātū lēgātus⁴ ad Antiochum missus, ut 10 bellō sē quō Ptolemaeum laccessēbat abstinēret, cum ad eum vēnisset atque is prōmptō animō et amicissimō voltū⁵ dextera ei porrēxisset, invicem illi suam porrigere nōluit, sed tabellās senātūs cōsultum continentis trādīdit. Quās ut lēgit Antiochus, dixit sē cum amicis conlocūtūrum.⁶ Indi- 15 gnātus Popīlius quod aliquam moram interposuisset, virgā⁷ solum quō insistēbat dēnotāvit et, “Prius,” inquit, “quam hōc circulō excēdās, dā respōnsum quod senātui referam.” Nōn lēgātum locūtum, sed ipsam cūriam ante oculōs positam⁸ crēderēs; continuō enim rēx adfirmāvit fore nē amplius 20 dē sē Ptolemaeus quererētur, āc tum dēmum Popīlius manum eius tamquam socii adprehendit. Quam efficāx est animi sermōnisque abscisa gravitās! Eōdem mōmentō⁹ Syriae rēgnum¹⁰ terruit,¹¹ Aegypti tēxit.¹² VALERIUS MAXIMUS.

Cf. ¹ opus, p. 10, l. 4. — ² moror, 6, 2. — ³ valētūdinem, 24, 23. — ⁴ lēgātōs, 15, 24. — ⁵ voltum, 8, 3. — ⁶ conloquī, 12, 25. — ⁷ virgās, 11, 20. — ⁸ pōnerent, 19, 15. — ⁹ mōmentō, 17, 20. — ¹⁰ rēgnum, 9, 17. — ¹¹ ter-
rēbantur, 15, 22. — ¹² tegent, 19, 18.

31. The Haunted House.

Erat Athēnis spatiōsa et capāx domus, sed infāmis et pestilēns. Per silentium noctis sonus ferrī¹ et, sī attenderēs ācrius, strepitus vinculōrum longius primō,² deinde ē proximō reddēbātur.³ Mox⁴ adpārēbat idōlon, senex māciē et squālōre
5 cōfectus,⁵ prōmissā barbā, horrentī capillō; crūribus com-

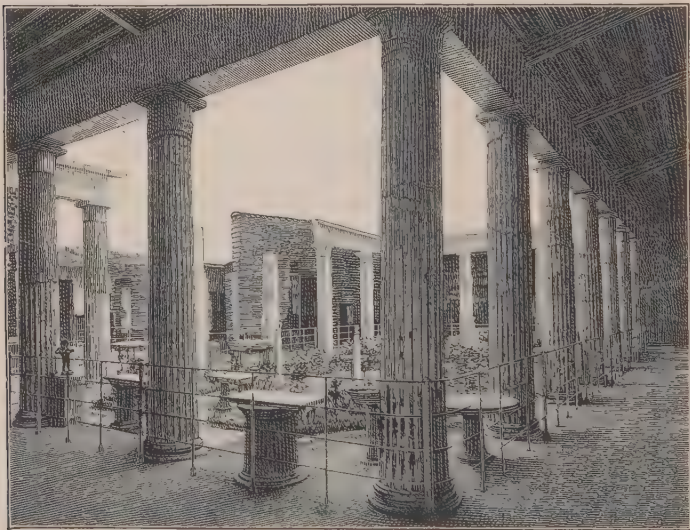


FIG. 15.—PERISTYLE OF A POMPEIAN HOUSE.

pedēs, manibus catēnās gerēbat⁶ quatiēbatque. Inde inhabi-
tantibus tristēs diraeque noctēs per metum vigilābantur;
vigiliam morbus et crēscēte formidine mors sequēbātur.
Nam interdiū⁷ quoque, quamquam abscesserat imāgō, memo-
ria imāginis oculis inerrābat, longiorque causīs timōris timor
10 erat. Dēserta inde et damnāta⁸ sōlitūdine domus tōtaque

Cf. ¹ ferrum, p. 7, l. 8. ² primō, 2, 13. — ³ reddidistī, 8, 10. —
⁴ mox, 1, 10. — ⁵ cōfectō, 12, 24. — ⁶ gerēs, 10, 15. — ⁷ interdiū, 5, 17.
— ⁸ damnātus est, 16, 4.

illi mōnstrō relicta; prōscribēbātur tamen seu quis emere¹ seu quis condūcere² ignārus tantī malī vellet. Venit Athēnās philosophus Athēnodōrus, legit titulum, auditōque pretiō, quia suspecta vilitās, percontātus, omnia docētur³ ac nihilō minus, immō tantō magis, condūcit.

5

Ubi coepit advesperāscere, iubet sternī sibi primā domūs parte, poscit pugillāris, stilum, lūmen; suōs omnīs in interiōra dīmittit, ipse ad scribendum animum, oculōs, manum intendit, nē vacua mēns audita simulācra et inānīs sibi metūs fingeret. Initiō, quāle ubīque, silentium noctis, dein concutī⁴ ferrum, vīcula movērī; ille nōn tollere oculōs, nōn remittere stilum, sed offirmāre animum auribusque praetendere; tum crēbrēscere fragor,⁵ adventāre,⁶ et iam ut in limine, iam ut intrā limen audīrī; respicit, videt āgnōscitque⁷ nārrātam sibi effigiem. Stābat innuēbatque digitō⁸ similis vocantī. Hīc⁹ 15 contrā ut paulum exspectāret manū significat rūsusque cēris et stilō incumbit; illa scribentis capitī catēnīs insonābat. Respicit rūsus idem quod prius innuentem, nec morātus⁸ tollit lūmen et sequitur. Ībat illa lentō gradū quasi gravis vinculis. Postquam dēflēxit in āream domūs, repente⁹ 20 dilapsa dēserit comitem; dēsertus herbās et folia concerpta sīgnum locō pōnit. Posterō diē adit magistrātūs, monet ut illum locum effodi iubeant. Inveniuntur ossa inserta catēnīs et implicita, quae corpus aevō terrāque putrefactum nūda et exēsa reliquerat vinculis; conlēcta pūblicē sepeliuntur. 25 Domus postea rīte conditis mānibus caruit.

PLINY: *Epist.* vii, 27.

32 An Eclipse Foretold.

Castris permūnītis, C. Sulpicius Gallus, tribūnus militum secundae legiōnis, quī praetor superiōre annō fuerat, cōsulis

Cf. ¹ ēmerat, p. 8, l. 5. — ² condūxerat, 12, 1. — ³ docuit, 11, 21. — ⁴ fragōre, 4, 7. — ⁵ adventāvit, 6, 10. — ⁶ āgnōvit, 11, 5. — ⁷ digitis, 4, 21. — ⁸ moror, 6, 2. — ⁹ repente, 12, 11.

permissū ad contiōnem militibus vocātis, prōnūtiāvit nocte proximā, nē quis id prō portentō acciperet, ab hōrā secundā ūsque¹ ad quartam hōram noctis lūnam dēfectūram esse. Id, quia nātūrālī ōrdine statis temporibus fiat,² et scīrī ante et
 5 praedicī posse. Itaque quem ad modum, quia certī sōlis lūnaeque et ortūs et occāsūs sint, nunc plēnō orbe, nunc senēscētem exiguō³ cornū fulgēre lūnam nōn mirārentur,⁴ ita nē obscurārī quidem, cum condātur umbrā terrae, trahere in prōdigium dēbere.⁵ Nocte quam prīdiē nōnās Septembris
 10 insecūta est diēs, ēditā hōrā cum lūna dēfēcisset, Rōmānīs militibus Galli sapientia prope divīna vidērī; Macedonas ut triste prōdigium, occāsum rēgnī perniciemque⁶ gentis portendēns, mōvit, nec aliter vātēs. Clāmor ululātusque in castrīs Macedonum fuit, dōnec lūna in suam lūcem ēmer-
 15 sit.⁷

LIVY, 44, 37.

33. Anthony and the Usurer.

Antōnius sacrificus invītārat ūnum atque alterum bellum homunculum forte obviōs in viā. Cum redisset⁸ domum, repperit culinam frigidam, nec erat nummus in loculīs, — quod illi nēquāquam erat insolēns. Hīc opus⁹ erat celerī
 20 cōnsiliō. Subdūxit sē tacitus, et ingressus¹⁰ culinam faenerātōris quicum illi erat familiāritās, quod frequenter ageret cum illō, digressā famulā subdūxit ūnam ex ōllis aēneis ūnā¹¹ cum carnibus iam coctis, ac veste¹² tēctam¹³ dēferēbat domum; dat coquae; iubet prōtinus effundī carnīs et iūs in aliam
 25 ōllam fictilem, simulque faenerātōris ōllam dēfricārī dōnec¹⁴ nitēret. Eō factō mittit puerum ad faenerātōrem quī dēpositō pignore drachmās duās ā faenerātōre sūmat mūtuō, sed accipiat chirographum quod testārētur tālem¹⁵ ōllam missam

Cf. ¹ ūsque, p. 17, l. 24. — ² fierī, 11, 17. — ³ exiguīs, 20, 3. — ⁴ mirātī sunt, 23, 23. — ⁵ dēberet, 6, 12. — ⁶ perniciēi, 14, 14. — ⁷ ēmersit, 10, 12. — ⁸ redīret, 18, 5. — ⁹ opus, 10, 4. — ¹⁰ ingressus, 18, 11. — ¹¹ ūnā, 4, 11. — ¹² vestīs, 21, 17. — ¹³ tegerētur, 12, 24. — ¹⁴ dōnec, l. 14. — ¹⁵ tālium, 8, 2.

ad ipsum. Faenerātor nōn āgnōscēns¹ ōllam, utpote dēfric-
tam āc nitentem, recipit pīgnus, dat chirographum, et numerat²
pecūniam; eā pecūniā puer emit³ vinum. Ita prōspectum
est conviviō.

Tandem cum adparārētur prandium faenerātōri, dēsīde- 5
rāta⁴ est ōlla. Hīc iūrgium⁵ adversus coquam. Ea, cum
gravārētur, cōstanter adfirmavit nēminem eō diē fuisse in
culinā praeter Antōnium. Improbū⁶ vidēbātur hōc suspi-
cārī sacrificō. Tandem itum est ad illum; explōrātum an
apud illum esset ōlla; nē musca quidem ōlla reperta. Quid 10
multis? Sēriō⁷ flāgitāta est ab illō ōlla, quod sōlus ingressus
esset culinam quō tempore dēsīderāta est. Ille fassus est
sūmpsisse commodātō ōllam quandam, sed quam remisisset
illī unde sūmpserat. Id cum illī pernegārent et incaluisset
contentiō, Antōnius adhibitis aliquot testibus, “Vidēte,” 15
inquit, “quam periculōsum est cum hōrum temporum homi-
nibus agere sine chirographō! Intenderētur⁸ mihi prope-
modum āctiō fūrtī, nī manum habērem faenerātōris.” Et
prōtulit syngrapham. Intellēctus est dolus; fābula māgnō
cum risū⁹ per tōtam regiōnem dissipāta est ōllam oppīgne- 20
rātam ipsī cūius erat. Hūius modī dolīs libentius favent
hominēs, sī commissī sunt in persōnās odiōsās, praesertim
eōs quī solent¹⁰ aliīs impōnere.

ERASMUS: *Convivium Fabulosum.*

34. A Practical Joke.

Quidam nōmine Maccus cum vēnisset in civitātem quae
dīcitur Leydis, āc vellet, novus hospes,¹¹ innōtēscere iocō 25
quōpiam (nam is erat hominī mōs) ingressus¹² est officīnam
calceārī; salūtāt. Ille cupiēns extrūdere mercīs suās rogāt

Cf. ¹ āgnōscit, p. 27, l. 14. — ² numerābātur, 15, 16. — ³ emam, 10,
14. — ⁴ dēsīderāvit, 16, 8. — ⁵ iūrgī, 8, 9. — ⁶ improbus, 8, 8. — ⁷ flāgi-
tāvit, 9, 10. — ⁸ intendit, 27, 9. — ⁹ risum, 8, 4. — ¹⁰ solēbant, 4, 15. —
¹¹ hospitibus, 4, 12. — ¹² ingressus, 18, 11.

numquid vellet. Maccō coniciente¹ oculōs in ocreās ibi
 pēnsilis, rogat sūtor num vellet ocreās. Adnuente² Maccō
 quaerit aptās³ tibiīs illius; inventās alacriter prōtulit, et ut
 solent, inducit illi. Ubi iam Maccus esset ēleganter ocreā-
 5 tus, “Quam bellē,⁴” inquit, “congrueret his ocreīs pār
 calceōrum duplicātis soleīs!” Rogātus an et calceōs vellet,
 adnuīt. Repertī⁵ sunt et additī pedibus. Maccus laudābat
 ocreās, laudābat calceōs. Calceārius tacitē⁶ gaudēns suc-
 cinēbat illi laudantī, spērāns⁷ pretium aequius posteaquam
 10 ēmptōri tantopere placēret merx. Et iam erat nōn nūlla
 contrācta familiāritās. Hic Maccus, “Dic mihi,” inquit,
 “bonā fidē, numquamne ūsū vēnit tibi ut quem sic ocreīs
 et calceīs ad cursum armāssēs, quem ad modum nunc
 armāstī mē, abierit nōn numerātō⁸ pretiō?” “Numquam,”
 15 ait ille. “Atquī sī forte,⁹” inquit, “veniat ūsū, quid tū tum
 facerēs?” “Cōsequeretur,¹⁰” inquit calceārius, “fugientem.”
 Tum Maccus: “Sēriōne ista dicis an iocō?” “Plānē sēriō,”
 inquit alter, “loquor; et sēriō facerem.” “Experiar,” ait
 Maccus. “Ēn prō calceīs praecurrō, tū cursū sequere.”
 20 Simulque cum dictō¹¹ coniēcīt sē in pedēs.

Calceārius ē vestīgiō¹² cōsecūtus est, quantum poterat
 clāmītāns: “Tenēte fūrem! Tenēte fūrem!” Ad hanc vōcem
 cum civēs undique prōsiluissent ex aedibus, hōc commentō
 cohibuit illōs Maccus nē quis manum iniceret. Ridēns ac
 25 voltū¹³ placidō, “Nē quis,” inquit, “remorētur cursum nos-
 trum; certāmen est dē cūpā cerevisiae.” Itaque iam omnēs
 praebēre¹⁴ sēsē certāminis spectātōrēs. Suspiciābantur autem
 calceārium dolō¹⁵ clāmōrem eum fingere,¹⁶ ut hāc occāsiōne
 anteverteret. Tandem calceārius cursū victus, sūdāns et

Cf. ¹ coniecta sunt, p. 19, l. 25. — ² adnuendō, 23, 7. — ³ aptōs, 7, 9.
 — ⁴ bellē, 9, 14. — ⁵ repperit, 28, 18. — ⁶ tacitus, 28, 20. — ⁷ spērābat,
 15, 28. — ⁸ numerat, 29, 2. — ⁹ forte, 28, 17. — ¹⁰ cōsecūtī sunt, 3, 6. —
¹¹ dictō, 18, 10. — ¹² vestīgia, 5, 18. — ¹³ voltū, 25, 12. — ¹⁴ praebuit, 8,
 4. — ¹⁵ dolus, 29, 19. — ¹⁶ fingeret, 27, 10.

anhēlus domum rediit. Maccus tulit brabēum. Postea āctiō
fūrti¹ intentāta est, sed magis periclitātus² est āctor quam
reus. Nam Maccus gravābat illum āctiōne calumniae, et
intendēbat³ lēgem Rhemiam, quae dictat ut quī crimen in-
tenderit quod probāre nōn possit poenam ferat quam lāturus
erat reus, sī convictus fuisset. Negābat sē contrectāsse
rem aliēnam invitō dominō, sed ultrō⁴ dēferente, nec ūllam
preti mentiōnem intercessisse. Sē prōvocāsse calceārium
ad certāmen cursūs; illum accēpisse condiōnem, nec
habēre quod querātur,⁵ cum esset cursū superātus. Quae
āctiō nōn multum aberat ab umbrā asinī.⁶

ERASMUS: *Convivium Fabulosum.*

35. The Priest, the Vender, and the Impostor.

Sacrificus⁷ quidam recēperat mediocrem summam pecūniae,
sed argenteae. Id impostor quidam animadverterat.⁸ Adiit
sacrificum, quī gestābat in zōnā crumēnam nummīs⁹ turgidam;
salūtat cīvīliter; nārrat sibi datum negōtium ā suis ut vici
suī parochō mercārētur novum pallium sacrum, quae summa
vestis est sacerdotī¹⁰ rem dīvinam peragentī. Rogat hāc in rē
commodāret sibi tantillum operae¹¹ ut sēcum iret ad eōs quī
vēndunt hūius modī pallia, quō vidēlicet ex modō corporis
ipsius sūmeret¹² māius aut minus; nam sibi vidērī statūram
ipsius cum parochī māgnitūdine vehementer congruere.¹³ Hōc
officium, cum leve vidērētur, facile pollicitus est sacrificus.
Adeunt aedīs¹⁴ cūiusdam. Prōlātum¹⁵ est pallium, sacrifi-
cus induit, vēnditor adfirmat mirē congruere.

Impostor, cum nunc ā fronte nunc ā tergō¹⁶ contemplātus
esset sacrificum, satis probāvit pallium; sed causātus est ā

Cf. ¹ fūrti, p. 29, l. 18. — ² periclitantis, 12, 14. — ³ intenderētur, 29, 17. — ⁴ ultrō, 3, 3. — ⁵ quererētur, 25, 21. — ⁶ asinum, 12, 3. — ⁷ sacrificus, 28, 16. — ⁸ animadvertit, 5, 14. — ⁹ nummus, 28, 18. — ¹⁰ sacerdotēs, 15, 1. — ¹¹ operam, 1, 10. — ¹² sūmat, 28, 27. — ¹³ congrueret, 30, 5. — ¹⁴ aedibus, 30, 23. — ¹⁵ prōtulit, 29, 19. — ¹⁶ tergum, 4, 6.

fronte brevius¹ quam pār esset. Ibi vënditor, nē nōn prō-
 cēderet contrāctus, negat id esse palli vitium, sed crumēnam
 turgidam efficere ut eā parte offenderet brevitās. Quid
 multa? Sacrificus dēpōnit² crumēnam; dēnuō contemplan-
 5 tur. Ibi impostor āversō sacrificō crumēnam adripit āc
 sēmet in pedēs conicit.³ Sacerdōs cursū īnsequitur, ut erat
 palliātus, et sacrificum vënditor. Sacrificus clāmat, “Tenēte
 fūrem⁴!” vënditor clāmat, “Tenēte sacrificum!” impostor
 clāmat, “Cohibēte⁵ sacrificum furentem!” et crēditum est
 10 cum vidērent illum sic ōrnātum in pūblicō currere. Itaque
 dum alter alteri in morā est, impostor effugit.

ERASMUS: *Convivium Fabulosum.*

Cf. ¹ breve, p. 15, l. 20. — ² dēpositō, 28, 26. — ³ conicēcit, 30, 20. —
 fūrem, 30, 22. — ⁵ cohibuit, 30, 24.

II. BIOGRAPHY AND MYTHOLOGY.

CYRUS, KING OF PERSIA.

[Modern. See Table of Contents.]

His Parentage.

1. Rēx inlūstrissimus Persārum Cȳrus fuit. Multae historiae mirābilēs dē pueritiā eius nārrantur. Astyagēs, rēx Mēdōrum, avus eius fuit. Nam illis temporibus Persae imperiō Mēdōrum pārēbant. Ille habuit filiam, cui nōmen Mandana erat. Dē hāc filiā hōc ōrāculum¹ accēperat: “Sī 5 filia tua nepōtem pepererit, ille rēx in tuō locō erit.” Itaque mātirimōnium eius cum homine Mēdō prohibuit. Sed, cum nihil timēret sī cum ūnō ex Persis coniūcta esset, Cambȳsī Persae nōbilī, qui Mandanam amābat, eam in mātirimōnium dūcere concessit.² Sed cum Cambȳsī et Mandanae filius 10 nātus esset, Astyagī timor renovātus est et, ut hōc timōre liberārētur, cōnsilium crūdēle cēpit Cȳrum, illum nepōtem suum, interficere. Harpagō igitur, Mēdō fidēlissimō, mandāvit³ ut puerum abdūceret et necāret.³ Is autem, cum sorte pueri ei misericordia⁴ movērētur, pāstōrī rēgiō idem quod 15 rēx mandāverat imperāvit. Hūius autem puer eiusdem aetātis⁵ ante breve tempus mortuus erat. Itaque cum ipse puerum pulchrum admirārētur et uxor rogāret ut eum servāret, nōn illum sed bēstiam feram necāvit, et partis ex eā Harpagō mōnstrāvit⁶ ut ex eis mortem pueri ille cōgnōsceret. 20

Cf. ¹ ōrāculum, p. 15, l. 24. — ² concessum esset, 19, 10. — ³ mandātum est, necātum, 17, 27. — ⁴ misericordiae, 6, 13. — ⁵ aetātem, 17, 4. — ⁶ mōnstrāns, 9, 27.



FIG. 16. — A RECORD OF CYRUS THE GREAT.

His Early Years.

2. Ab illō igitur¹ pāstōre Cȳrus ēducātus est. Brevi tempore et rōbore² et animō fortī cēterōs puerōs superāvit et in lūdis³ eōrum rēx erat. Sed ōlim filius Mēdi nōbilis, quī Astyagī cārissimus erat, cum illis lūdis interesset neque rēgī creatō oboediret, sēnsit quam sevērus dominus ille filius 5 pāstōris esset. Puer nōbilis irā incēnsus illum cum multis lacrimis⁴ apud patrem suum accusāvit. Astyagēs, cum dē illā rē audivisset, imperāvit ut pāstor cum filiō addūcerētur. Admirātus est formam puerī et, cum faciem Mandanae filiae similem vidisset, interrogandō dēnique cōgnōvit quis esset 10 puer et cūr tum nōn interfectus esset. Iam timor novus eī excitātus esset, nisi sacerdōtēs⁵ eum his verbis cōsolāti essent: “Nōn est, ō rēx potentissime, causa cūr sollicitēris. Nam fuit ille rēx inter puerōs lūdentis⁶; itaque ē tuō rēgnō tē nōn ēiciet.” Itaque Astyagēs Cȳrum apud sē retinuit et 15 in locō fili ēducāvit. Quod autem Harpagus imperiis nōn pāruerat,⁷ crūdēlissimā poenā eum persecūtus est. Ad cēnam⁸ enim eum invitāvit et eī filium ēius in cēnā adposuit. Post cēnam eī dixit quō cibō dēlectātus⁹ esset. Ex illō tempore Harpagus Astyagī infēstissimus¹⁰ erat. Sed odium suum 20 occultāvit¹¹ et tempus idōneum exspectāvit ut illam crūdēlītatem rēgis ulciscerētur.

Plan to make him King.

3. Cum Astyagēs senex¹² esset dūrus et crūdēlis, Cȳrus autem adulēscēns et Mēdis et Persis grātissimus, Harpagus brevi tempore effēcit ut etiam Mēdi novum rēgem dēsiderā- 25 rent.¹³ Cȳrum autem dē libertāte Persārum admonuit et saepe

Cf. ¹ igitur, p. 3, l. 14. — ² rōbore, 21, 28. — ³ lūdōrum, 23, 16. — ⁴ lacrimās, 15, 10. — ⁵ sacerdōtī, 31, 18. — ⁶ lūdēbat, 21, 5. — ⁷ pārēbant, 33, 4. — ⁸ cēnam, 4, 16. — ⁹ dēlectāret, 23, 11. — ¹⁰ opp. amīcissimus. — ¹¹ occultārem, 24, 4. — ¹² senex, 11, 16. — ¹³ dēsiderāvit, 16, 8.

adhortātus est ut avum ē rēgnō ēiceret idque ipse occupāret. Cōsiliō Harpagi Cȳrus pārui¹ et ita ēgit. Omnis nōbilis Persās convocāvit et eis epistulam mōnstrāvit.² “Hāc epistolā,” inquit, “avus meus vōbīs imperat ut mīhī
 5 in omnibus rēbus oboediātis.³” Cum haec verba locūtus esset, eis labōrēs molestissimōs mandāvit.⁴ Sed post finitōs labōrēs cum omnēs exhausti essent et sortem suam miserārentur, Cȳrus in sequentem diem eōs ad cēnam opulentissimam et ad lūdōs laetōs invitāvit. Tum eōs interrogāvit
 10 num in locō labōrum gravissimōrum primī diēi gaudia⁵ secundī diēi sibi ēligerent.⁶ Respondērunt omnēs: “Illis gaudiis semper dēlectēmur.” Tum ille, “Hōc,” inquit, “habēbitis, sī cōsilia mea secūtī eritis et imperiō Mēdōrum vōs liberāveritis. Adgredimini⁷ igitur, Persae, Astyagem et
 15 profitēmini libertātem vestram.” Māgnō clāmōre Persae Cȳri verba probāvērunt et cum Astyage bellum prō libertāte gerere cōstituērunt.

He Conquers Astyages.

4. Astyagēs cum dē tumultū Persārum comperisset,⁸ Cȳrum ad sē vocāvit. Is autem respondit: “Breviōre tempore
 20 apud tē erō quam ipse optāveris.” Māgnā igitur celeritāte Astyagēs omnis Persās armāvit, eisque eundem Harpagum praefēcit⁹ quem ōlim odiō acerbissimō¹⁰ incenderat. Is autem per nūntium¹¹ Cȳrum hortātus est nē Mēdōrum cōpiās timēret, cum ipse omnis rēs ad illius victōriam necessāriās prō-
 25 vidisset. Itaque cum proelium committerētur,¹² nōn nūlli Mēdōrum pūgnāvērunt, multi autem aut fūgērunt aut Harpagum secūtī sunt, quī cum Cȳrō sē coniūnxit. Astyagēs, cum hōc comperisset, ipse cum fidēlissimis Mēdis quī ex

Cf. ¹ pāruerat, p. 35, l. 17. — ² mōnstrāvit, 33, 20. — ³ oboediret, 35, 5. — ⁴ mandāvit, 33, 13. — ⁵ gaudium, 21, 15. — ⁶ ēlēgerat, 23, 18. — ⁷ adgressus est, 24, 7. — ⁸ comperisset, 15, 27. — ⁹ praefēcērunt, 19, 7. — ¹⁰ acerbissimae, 14, 14. — ¹¹ nūntium, 20, 2. — ¹² commisit, 19, 22.

clāde supererant cum Cȳrō congressus est. Sed fugātus et captus est. Cȳrus autem Astyagem captivum in māgnō honōre habuit et, cum mortuus esset, māgnō dolōre commōtus est. Cum rēgnum Persārum et Mēdōrum adeptus esset, omnis gentis propinquās¹ imperiō suō adiungere cōnātus est. Itaque bellum gessit cum Croesō, Lȳdōrum rēge, quem vicit et cēpit. Tum nōn nullās urbīs Asiae in ōrā maris Aegaei sitās² ipse expūgnāvit; cēterās urbīs cēpit Harpagus, quem prō meritis parti exercitūs praefēcerat. Cȳrus enim contrā gentis profectus erat quae sine sēdibus certis vagābantur et rēgnum Persārum populābantur. Cum eārum iniuriās ultus³ esset, bellum cum Babylōniis anno ante Christum nātum quingentēsimō undēquadrāgēsimō incēpit.

The Capture of Babylon.

5. Erat autem Babylōn urbs opulentissima⁴ et potentissima ad Euphrātem flūmen sita. Ante mūrōs Cȳrus Babylōniōs⁵ primō impetū fugāvit. Sed cum urbem obsidēre incēpisset, propter cōpiam⁶ cibōrum quam incolae prōviderant et propter ingentis⁷ mūrōs ea rēs māgnās habuit difficultātēs. Itaque dolum adhibuit. Fossam enim ab eō locō ubi flūmen ad urbem accēdēbat hōris nocturnis, nē Babylōnii sentirent, ad eam partem dūxit ubi flūmen ex urbe veniēbat. Ita effēcit⁸ ut, cum fossa complēta⁹ esset, aqua in flūmine ipsō deesset et locō vacuō militibus via in urbem parārētur. Ita milites in urbem nocte ingressi et mūrōrum portārumque potiti sunt. Tanta autem urbs erat ut, cum iam partēs mūrīs propincae ā Cȳri militibus expūgnatae essent, ei quī in mediā urbe habitābant dē illā rē nūntium nōndum accēpissent. Cum hūius tantae urbis potitus esset, Cȳrus etiam prōvinciās rēgni Babylōnici brevī¹⁰ tempore expūgnāvit. Iūdaeōs autem,

Cf. ¹ propinquos, p. 12, l. 20. — ² sitas, 1, 8. — ³ ulcisceretur, 35, 22. — ⁴ opulentissimam, 36, 8. — ⁵ fugatus, l. 1. — ⁶ copia, 16, 5. — ⁷ ingentem, 4, 8. — ⁸ efficerent, 19, 28. — ⁹ complēverat, 15, 14. — ¹⁰ breve, 15, 20.

quī ā rēgibus Babylōniōrum capti et ex patriā abducti erant, in patriam remisit eisque concessit¹ ut templum restituerent.

War with the Barbarians.

6. Sed iterum tumultibus² eārundem gentium dē quibus nār-
rāvimus Cȳrus in illās partīs rēgnī vocātus est. Inter illōs
5 barbarōs Massagetæ et rōbore³ corporum et animō bellicōsō
clārī erant. Eōrum rēgina Tomyris erat, fēmina prūdentis-
sima et fortissima. Hanc Cȳrus in mātirimōnium dūcere
cōstituit ut Persās iniūriis Massagetārum liberāret. Sed
illa, quæ Cȳri cōnsilia perspiciebāt,⁴ eius mātirimōnium repu-
10 diāvit. Ad pūgnandum autem in suam terram eum invitāvit
et hortāta est nē trānsitum Araxis flūminis verērētur. Id
flūmen enim Persās ā Massagetis dividit. Cȳrus, cum ipse
nesciret quid faceret, Croesum, captivum Lȳdōrum rēgem,
interrogāvit quid suādēret. Tum ille monuit ut faceret id
15 quod Tomyris postulāset,⁵ et cum exercitū in terram Mas-
sagetārum ingrederētur. “Tum autem,” inquit, “recēde ut
speciem timōris et fugæ praebeās⁶; sed in castris cēnam
opulentam et māgnam cōpiam vinī cum paucis custōdibus
relinque.” Hōc cōnsilium Cȳrō placuit. Cum ita fēcisset,
20 tertia pars Massagetārum ad castra Persārum relicta pro-
perāvit, custōdēs interfēcit, cibis⁷ dēlectāta est, vinum omne
hausit, dēnique somnō vinōque oppressa dormīvit.⁸ Iam
Persae aderant, māgnam partem barbarōrum interfēcērunt,
nōn nullōs cēpērunt, in eis filium rēginae.

Death of Cyrus.

25 7. Tum hunc nūntium Tomyris ad Cȳrum misit: “Moneō
tē, rēx crūdēlissime, ut mihi filium remittās et exercitum
abdūcās. Nisi id fēceris, calamitātem meam ulciscar⁹ et

Cf. ¹ concessum esset, p. 19, l. 10. — ² tumultū, 36, 18. — ³ rōbore, 21, 28. — ⁴ perspēxerat, 19, 15. — ⁵ postulābis, 4, 3. — ⁶ praebuilt, 8, 4. — ⁷ cibum, 24, 12. — ⁸ dormientem, 6, 3. — ⁹ ultus esset, 37, 12.

cruore tē insatiabilem satiābō.” Haec verba Cȳrus contempsit¹; neque illi filium remisit neque exercitum abduxit. Rogāvit autem filius rēgīnae ut vinculis molestis² liberārētur. Cum id ei praebitum esset, gladium adripuit et ipse sē interfēcit. Tomyris autem, cum omnis cōpiās conlēgisset, cum 5 Cȳrō proelium commisit.³ Haec pūgna acerbissima et crūdēlissima fuit, (nam Persae prō vitā et reditū, barbarī prō patriā et libertāte dimicābant. Māgna pars Persārum occidit; etiam Cȳrus necātus⁴ est. Tum Tomyris corpus Cȳri quaesivit⁵ et cum repperisset, caput ā corpore divisit. Hōc in cruo- 10 rem coniēcit, cum diceret: “Iam tē, homō insatiabilis, quod tibi pollicita⁶ sum cruore satiābō.” Ita mortuus est Cȳrus et rēgnum Cambȳsi filiō reliquit,

Cf. ¹ contempsī, p. 3, l. 16. — ² molestissimōs, 36, 6. — ³ committerētur, 36, 25. — ⁴ necāret, 33, 14. — ⁵ quaerēbant, 2, 16. — ⁶ pollicitus est. 31, 23.



FIG. 17.—TOMB OF CYRUS THE GREAT.

THE STORY OF ULYSSES.

[Ritchie: Fabulae Faciles.]

Homeward Bound.

1. Urbem Trōiam ā Graecis decem annōs obsessam¹ esse satis cōstat; dē hōc enim bellō Homērus, māximus poētārum Graecōrum, Īliadem, opus² nōtissimum, scripsit. Trōiā tandem per īnsidiās captā, Graeci longō bellō fessi domum
5 redire mātūrāvērunt. Omnibus igitur ad profectiōnem parātis nāvis dēdūxērunt, et tempestātem idōneam³ nacti māgnō cum gaudiō solvērunt. Erat inter primōs Graecōrum Ulixēs quidam, vir summae virtūtis āc prūdentiae, quem dicunt nōn
10 esse cōstat. Hic rēgnum īnsulae Ithacae obtinuerat et, paulō antequam cum reliquis Graecis ad bellum profectus est, puellam formōsissimam, nōmine Pēnelopēn, in mātrimonium dūxerat. Nunc igitur, cum iam decem annōs quasi in exsiliō cōsūmpsisset, māgnā cupidine patriae et uxōris
15 videndae ārdēbat.

The Lotus Eaters.

2. Postquam tamen pauca milia passuum ā litore Trōiae prōgressi sunt, tanta tempestās subitō coōrta est ut nūlla nāvium cursum⁵ tenēre posset, sed aliae aliās in partis disicerentur. Nāvis autem quā ipse Ulixēs vehēbātur⁶ vī tempestātis ad meridiem dēlāta decimō diē ad litus⁷ Libyae adpulsa est. Ancoris iactis Ulixēs cōstituit nōn nullōs ē sociis in terram expōnere, quī aquam ad nāvem referrent et quālis esset nātūra ēius regiōnis cōgnōscerent. Hī igitur ē

Cf. ¹ obsidēre, p. 37, l. 16. — ² opus, 10, 9. — ³ idōneum, 35, 21. — ⁴ dolum, 37, 19. — ⁵ cursum, 30, 13. — ⁶ veherētur, 12, 1. — ⁷ litore, 1, 5.

nāvi ēgressi imperāta facere parābant. Dum tamen fontem quaerunt, quibusdam ex incolis ¹ obviam facti ab eis hospitio accepti sunt. Accidit autem ut victus ² eōrum hominum ē mirō quōdam fructū, quem lōtum appellābant, paene omninō ³ cōstāret. Quem cum Graeci gustāssent, patriae et sociōrum 5 statim obliti sē cōfirmāvērunt semper in eā terrā mānsūrōs,⁴ ut dulcī illō cibō ⁵ in aeternum vescerentur.

The Lotus Eaters (continued).

3. At Ulixēs, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum ⁶ expectāset, veritus ⁷ nē socii suī in periculō versārentur, nōn nullōs ē reliquis mīsit, ut quae causa esset morae cōgnōscerent.⁸ Hī 10 igitur in terram expositi ad vicum quī nōn longē āfuit sē contulērunt; quō cum vēnissent, sociōs suōs quasi vīnō ēbriōs repperērunt.⁹ Tum ubi causam veniendī docuērunt,¹⁰ eis persuādēre cōnābantur ut sēcum ad nāvem redirent. Illi tamen resistere āc manū sē dēfendere coepērunt, saepe 15 clāmitantēs sē numquam ex eō locō abitūrōs. Quae cum ita essent, nūntii ¹¹ rē infectā ad Ulixem rediērunt. His rēbus cōgnitis Ulixēs ipse cum omnibus quī in nāvi relictī sunt ad locum vēnit; et sociōs suōs frūstrā ¹² hortātus ut sponte suā redirent, manibus eōrum post terga vinctis,¹³ invitōs ad nāvem 20 reportāvit. Tum ancoris sublātis ¹⁴ quam celerrimē ē portū solvit.¹⁵

The One-eyed Giant.

4. Postridiē ¹⁶ ēius diēi postquam tōtam noctem rēmīs contenderant, ad terram ignōtam nāvem adpulērunt.¹⁷ Tum, quod nātūram ēius regiōnis ignōrābat, ipse Ulixēs cum duo- 25

Cf. ¹ incolae, p. 37, l. 17. — ² victum, 25, 8. — ³ omninō, 4, 15. — ⁴ mānsit, 24, 10. — ⁵ cibīs, 38, 21. — ⁶ vesperum, 18, 5. — ⁷ verērētur, 38, 11. — ⁸ cōgnōscerent, 40, 23. — ⁹ repperisset, 39, 10. — ¹⁰ docuit, 11, 21. — ¹¹ nūntium, 20, 2. — ¹² frūstrā, 6, 9. — ¹³ vinctus, 16, 6. — ¹⁴ tollere, 27, 11. — ¹⁵ solvērunt, 40, 7. — ¹⁶ postridiē, 25, 5. — ¹⁷ adpulsa est, 40, 21.

decim ē sociis in terram ēgressus locum explorāre cōstituit. Paulum ā litore prōgressi ad antrum ingēns pervēnērunt, quod habitārī sēnsērunt; ēius enim introitum arte et manibus mūnitum¹ esse animadvertērunt. Mox,² etsi intellegēbant sē
 5 nōn sine periculō id factūrōs, antrum intrāvērunt; quod cum fēcissent, māgnam cōpiam lactis invēnērunt in vāsis ingenti-



FIG. 18. — HEAD OF A CYCLOPS.

bus conditam.³ Dum tamen mīrantur quis eam sēdem inco-
 leret, sonitum terribilem audivērunt, et oculis ad portam
 versis mōnstrum horribile vidērunt, humanā quidem speciē⁴
 10 et figurā, sed ingenti māgnitūdine corporis. Cum autem
 animadvertissent gigantem ūnum tantum oculum habēre in
 mediā fronte positum, intellēxērunt hunc esse ūnum ē Cyclō-
 pibus, dē quibus fāmam iam accēperant.

Cf. ¹ permūnītis, p. 27, l. 27. — ² mox, 1, 10. — ³ condītis, 27, 26. —
⁴ speciem, 38, 17.

The Giant's Supper.

5. Cyclōpes autem pāstōrēs¹ erant quidam, quī insulam Siciliam et praecipuē montem Aetnam incolēbant; ibi enim Volcānus, praeses fabrōrum² et īgnis repertor, cūius servi Cyclōpes erant, officīnam³ suam habēbat.

Graecī igitur, simul āc mōnstrum vidērunt, terrōre paene 5 exanimātī in interiōrem partem spēluncae⁴ refūgērunt et sē ibi cēlāre⁵ cōnābantur. Polyphēmus autem, ita enim gigās appellātus est, pecora sua in spēluncam ēgit; tum cum saxō⁶ īngenti portam obstrūxisset, īgnem in mediō antrō accendit. Hōc factō, oculō omnia perlūstrābat et, cum sēnsisset homi- 10 nēs in interiōre parte antrī cēlārī, māgnā vōce exclāmāvit: "Quī estis hominēs? Mercātōrēs an latrōnēs⁷?" Tum Ulixēs respondit sē neque mercātōrēs esse neque praedandī causā vēnisse; sed ē Trōia redeuntis vī tempestātum ā rēctō cursū dēpulsōs esse; ōrāvit⁸ etiam ut sibi sine iniūriā abire 15 licēret. Tum Polyphēmus quaesivī ubi esset nāvis quā vectī⁹ essent; Ulixēs autem, cum bene intellegeret sibi māximē praecavendum esse, respondit nāvem suam in rūpīs coniectam¹⁰ et omnīnō perfrāctam esse. Polyphēmus autem nūllō datō respōnsō duo ē sociīs manū conripuit, et membrīs eōrum 20 dīvolsis carnem dēvorāre¹¹ coepit.

No Way of Escape.

6. Dum haec geruntur, Graecōrum animōs tantus terror occupāvit ut nē vōcem quidem ēdere¹² possent, sed omnī spē salūtis dēpositā¹³ mortem praesentem exspectārent. At Polyphēmus, postquam famēs hāc tam horribilī cēnā dēpulsa¹⁴ 25 est, humī prōstrātus somnō sē dedit. Quod cum vidisset

Cf. ¹ pāstōrī, p. 33, l. 15. — ² faber, 10, 8. — ³ officīnam, 29, 27. — ⁴ spēluncam, 24, 3. — ⁵ cēlāvit, 4, 3. — ⁶ saxum, 15, 9. — ⁷ latrō, 8, 9. — ⁸ ōrantī, 6, 6. — ⁹ vehēbātur, 40, 19. — ¹⁰ coniecta sunt, 19, 25. — ¹¹ dēvorātūrus erat, 6, 5. — ¹² ēdēbantur, 2, 14. — ¹³ dēpositō, 28, 26. — ¹⁴ dēpulsōs esse, l. 15.

Ulixēs, tantam occāsiōnem rei bene gerendae nōn omittendam arbitrātus,¹ in eō erat ut pectus mōnstrī gladiō² trānsfigeret. Cum tamen nihil temerē agendum existimāret,³ cōstituit explōrāre, antequam hōc faceret, quā ratiōne ex
 5 antrō ēvādere possent. At cum saxum animadvertisset quō introitus obstrūctus erat, nihil sibi prōfutūrum⁴ intellēxit sī Polyphēmum interfēcisset. Tanta enim erat ēius saxī māgnitūdō ut nē⁵ ā decem quidem⁵ hominibus āmovēri posset. Quae cum ita essent, Ulixēs hōc dēstitit cōnātū et ad sociōs
 10 rediit; quī, cum intellēxissent quō in locō rēs essent, nullā spē salūtis oblātā dē fortūnis suis dēspērāre coepērunt. Ille tamen nē animōs dēmitterent⁶ vehementer hortātus est; dēmōnstrāvit sē iam antea ē multis et māgnis perīculis ēvāsisse, neque dubium esse quīn in tantō discrimine diī auxilium ad-
 15 lātūrī⁷ essent.

A Plan for Vengeance.

7. Ortā lūce Polyphēmus iam ē somnō excitātus idem quod hesternō diē fēcit; conreptis⁸ enim duōbus ē reliquīs virīs, carnem⁹ eōrum sine morā dēvorāvit. Tum, cum saxum āmovisset, ipse cum pecore¹⁰ suō ex antrō prōgressus est. Quod
 20 cum vidērent Graeci, māgnam in spem vērērunt sē post paulum ēvāsūrōs. Mox tamen ab hāc spē repulsi sunt; nam Polyphēmus, postquam omnēs ovēs exiērunt, saxum in locum restituit. Reliqui omnī spē salūtis dēpositā¹¹ lāmentis lacrimisque sē dēdidērunt; Ulixēs vērō, quī, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, vir māgni fuit cōsilī, etsī bene intellegēbat
 25 rem in discrimine esse, nōndum¹² omninō dēspērābat. Tandem postquam diū tōtō animō cōgitāvit, hōc cēpit cōsilium. E lignis¹³ quae in antrō repositā sunt pālum māgnū dēlēgit,

Cf. ¹ arbitror, p. 25, l. 6. — ² gladium, 39, 4. — ³ existimāns, 19, 1. — ⁴ prōfuit, 16, 12. — ⁵ nē . . . quidem, 28, 8. — ⁶ dēmisit, 11, 8. — ⁷ adferri, 11, 18. — ⁸ conripuit, 43, 20. — ⁹ carnibus, 28, 23. — ¹⁰ pecora, 43, 8. — ¹¹ dēpositā, 43, 24. — ¹² nōndum, 37, 27. — ¹³ lignōrum, 16, 5.

quem summā cum diligentīā praeacūtum fēcit; tum postquam sociīs quid fieri vellet ostendit, reditum¹ Polyphēmī exspectābat.

A Glass too Much.

8. Sub vesperum Polyphēmus ad antrum rediit et eōdem modō quō antea cēnāvit.² Tum Ulixēs ūtrem vīnī prōmpsit, 5
quam forte, ut in tālibus rēbus accidere cōsuēvit, sēcum
adtulerat, et, postquam māgnam crātēram vīnō replēvit,
gigantem ad bibendum³ prōvocāvit. Polyphēmus, quī num-
quam antea vīnum gustāverat,⁴ tōtam crātēram statim hausit;
quod cum fēcisset, tantam voluptātem⁵ percēpit ut iterum et 10
tertium crātēram replērī iusserit. Tum, cum quaesivisset
quō nōmine Ulixēs appellārētur, ille respondit sē Nēminem
appellārī. Quod cum audīvisset, Polyphēmus ita locūtus est :
“ Hanc tibi grātiam prō tantō beneficiō referam ; tē ultimum⁶
omnium dēvorābō.” Hīs dictīs cibō vīnōque gravātus recu- 15
buit et post breve tempus somnō oppressus est. Tum
Ulixēs sociīs convocātis, “ Habēmus,” inquit, “ quam peti-
mus facultātem⁷; proinde nē tantam occāsiōnem rei bene
gerendae omittāmus.”

Nobody.

9. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, postquam extrēmum pālum ignī 20
calefēcit, oculum Polyphēmī dum dormit flagrante⁸ lignō
trānsfōdit; quō factō omnēs in diversās spēluncae partis
sē abdidērunt. At ille subitō illō dolōre, quod necesse fuit,
ē somnō excitātus, clāmōrem terribilem sustulit,⁹ et dum per
spēluncam errat Ulixī manum inicere cōnābātur; cum tamen 25
iam omninō caecus esset, nullō modō hōc efficere potuit.
Interea reliquī Cyclōpes clāmōre auditō undique ad spēlun-

Cf. ¹ reditū, p. 39, l. 7. — ² cēnābat, 3, 20. — ³ bibentī, 8, 9. —
⁴ gustāssent, 41, 5. — ⁵ voluptātem, 2, 11. — ⁶ ultimum, 17, 24. —
⁷ facultātem, 24, 6. — ⁸ flagrābat, 19, 8. — ⁹ tollere, 27, 11.

cam convēnerunt, et ad introitum ¹ adstantēs quid Polyphēmus ageret quaesivērunt, et quam ob causam tantum clāmōrem sustulisset. Ille respondit sē graviter vulnerātum esse et māgnō dolōre adfici. Cum tamen cēteri quaesivissent quis
 5 eī vim intulisset, respondit ille Nēminem id fēcisse. Quibus auditis ūnus ē Cyclōpibus, “At sī nēmō,” inquit, “tē vulnerāvit, haud dubium est quin cōnsiliō deōrum, quibus resistere nec possumus nec volumus, hōc supplicio adficiāris.” His dictis abiērunt Cyclōpes eum in insāniam incidisse ²
 10 arbitrāti.

The Flight.

10. At Polyphēmus, ubi sociōs suōs abiisse sēnsit, ³ furōre atque āmentia impulsus Ulixem iterum quaerere coepit;



FIG. 19. — ULYSSES UNDER THE RAM.

tandem cum portam invēnisset, saxum quō obstrūcta erat āmōvit, ut pecus ⁴ ad agrōs exiret. Tum ipse in introitū sēdit
 15 et, ut quaeque ovis ad locum vēnerat, tergum eīus manibus

Cf. ¹ introitum, p. 42, l. 3. — ² incidit, 6, 8. — ³ sēnsit, 10, 4. — ⁴ pecora, 43, 8.

tractābat, nē virī inter ovīs¹ exīre possent. Quod cum animadvertisset Ulixēs, hōc iniit cōsiliū; bene enim intellēxit omnem spem salūtis in dolō magis quam in virtūte pōnī. Primum trīs quās vīdit pinguissimās ex ovibus dēlēgit; quās cum inter sē vīminibus cōnexuisset, ūnum sociōrum ventribus 5 eārum ita subiēcīt ut omnīnō latēret; deinde ovīs hominem sēcum ferentis ad portam ēgit.² Id accidit³ quod fore suspicātus erat. Polyphēmus enim, postquam manūs tergīs eārum imposuit, ovīs praeterīre passus est. Ulixēs, ubi rem ita fēliciter ēvēnisse vīdit, omnīs suōs sociōs ex ōrdine eōdem 10 modō ēmisit; quō factō ipse ultimus⁴ ēvāsīt.

Out of Danger.

11. Hīs rēbus ita cōfectis,⁵ Ulixēs cum sociīs māximē veritus⁶ nē Polyphēmus fraudem sentīret, quam celerrimē ad litus⁷ contendit. Quō cum vēnissent, ab eis quī nāvī praesidiō relictī erant māgnā cum laetitiā acceptī sunt. Hī enim, 15 cum animīs anxii iam trīs diēs reditū⁸ eōrum in hōrās exspectāvissent, eōs in periculum grave incidisse, id quod erat, suspicātī, ipsī auxiliandī causā ēgredi parābant. Tum Ulixēs, nōn satis tūtum esse arbitrātus⁹ si in eō locō maneret, quam celerrimē proficisci cōstituit. Iussit igitur omnīs 20 nāvem cōscendere et ancorīs sublātis¹⁰ paulum ā litore in altum prōvectus est. Tum māgnā vōce exclāmāvit: “Tū, Polyphēme, quī iūra hospitī spernis, iūstam et dēbitam poenam immānitātis tuae solvistī.” Hāc vōce audītā Polyphēmus irā vehementer commōtus ad mare sē contulit¹¹ et, ubi 25 intellēxit nāvem paulum ā litore remōtam esse, saxum ingēns manū conreptum¹² in eam partem coniēcīt unde vōcem venīre sēnsit. Graeci autem, etsī minimum āfuit quīn submergerentur, nūllō acceptō damnō cursum tenuērunt.

Cf. ¹ ovēs, p. 44, l. 22. — ² ēgit, 43, 8. — ³ accidit, 41, 3. — ⁴ ultimum, 17, 24. — ⁵ cōfectō, 12, 24. — ⁶ verērētur, 38, 11. — ⁷ litore, 1, 5. — ⁸ reditū, 39, 7. — ⁹ arbitror, 25, 6. — ¹⁰ sustulit, 45, 24. — ¹¹ contulērunt, 41, 12. — ¹² conripuit, 43, 20.

The Country of the Winds.

12. Pauca milia passuum ab eō locō prōgressus Ulixēs ad insulam quandam, nōmine Aeoliam, nāvem adpulit.¹ Haec patria erat Ventōrum.

5 “Hīc vāstō rēx Aēolus ánrō
Lūctantīs ventōs tempéstātēsque sonōrās
Ímperió premit ác vinclīs et cárcere frēnat.”

Ibi rēx ipse Graecōs hospitiō² accēpit atque eīs persuāsit ut ad recuperandās virīs paucōs diēs in eā regiōne commorārentur.³ Septimō diē, cum socii ē labōribus sē recēpissent, 10 Ulixēs, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, sibi sine morā proficiscendum statuit.⁴ Tum Aeolus, qui bene sciēbat eum māximē cupidum esse patriae videndae, Ulixī iam profectūrō māgnū dedit saccū ē coriō cōfectum, in quō ventōs omnis praeter ūnū inclūserat. Zephyrum tan- 15 tum praetermiserat, quod illum ventum ad Ithacam nāvigandō idōneum⁵ esse sciēbat. Ulixēs hōc dōnū libenter⁶ accēpit et grātiis prō tantō beneficiō relātis saccū ad mālū ligāvit. Tum omnibus ad profectiōnem⁷ parātis meridiānō ferē tempore ē portū solvit.⁸

The Winds Let Loose.

20 13. Novem diēs ventō secundissimō cursum tenuērunt, iamque in cōspectum patriae suae vēnerant, cum Ulixēs lassitūdine cōfectus, ipse enim manū suā gubernābat, ad quiētem capiendam recubuit.⁹ At socii, qui iamdūdum mirābantur quid in illō saccō inclūsum esset, cum vidērent dūcem 25 somnō oppressum esse, tantam occāsiōnem¹⁰ nōn omittendam arbitrāti sunt; crēdebant enim aurum et argentum ibi cēlāri.¹¹

Cf. ¹ adpulsa est, p. 40, l. 21. — ² hospitiō, 12, 22. — ³ morātus, 27, 18. — ⁴ statuērunt, 17, 14. — ⁵ idōneum, 35, 21. — ⁶ libentius, 29, 21. — ⁷ profectiōnem, 40, 5. — ⁸ solvērunt, 40, 7. — ⁹ recubuit, 45, 15. — ¹⁰ occāsiōnem, 44, 1. — ¹¹ cēlāre, 43, 7.

Itaque spē lucrī adductī saccum sine morā solvērunt; quō
factō ventī,

“Velut ágmine fáctō,
Quá data pórtā, ruúnt et térrās túrbine pérflant.”

Exemplō tanta tempestās subitō coörta est ut illī cursum 5
tenēre nōn possent, sed in eandem partem unde erant pro-
fectī referrentur.¹ Ulixēs ē somnō excitātus, quō in locō rēs



FIG. 20.—OPENING THE WIND BAG.

esset statim intellēxit. Saccum solūtum, Ithacam post ter-
gum relictam, vīdit. Tum vērō māximē indignātiōne exārsit ²
sociōsque obiurgābat, quod cupiditāte pecūniae adductī spem 10
patriae videndae prōiēcissent.

Cf. ¹ referam, p. 25, l. 18.—² exārsit, 12, 9.

Drawing Lots.

14. Brevi intermissō spatiō Graecī insulae cuidam adpropinquāverunt, quam Cīrcē, filia Sōlis, incolēbat. Ibi cum nāvem adpulisset,¹ Ulixēs in terram frūmentandī causā ēgre-diendum esse statuit; cōgnōverat enim frūmentum quod in
 5 nāvi habērent iam dēficere. Sociīs igitur ad sē convocātis, quō in locō rēs esset et quid fieri vellet ostendit.² Cum tamen omnēs in memoriā tenērent quam crūdēli morte occubuissent ei qui nūper in patriam Cyclōpum ēgressi essent, nēmō reper-tus³ est qui hōc negōtium suscipere vellet. Quae cum ita
 10 essent, rēs ad contrōversiam dēducta est. Tandem⁴ Ulixēs cōnsēnsū omnium sociōs in duās partis divisit, quārum alteri Eurylochus, vir summae virtūtis, alteri ipse praeesset. Tum hī duo inter sē sortitī⁵ sunt, uter in terram ēgrederētur. Hōc factō, Eurylochō sorte⁶ ēvēnit ut cum duōbus et vigintī sociīs
 15 rem susciperet.

The House of the Enchantress.

15. His rēbus ita cōstitūtis, ei qui sorte ducti erant in in-teriōrem partem insulae profecti sunt. Tantus tamen timor animōs eōrum occupāverat⁷ ut nihil dubitārent quā morti obviam⁸ irent. Vix quidem poterant ei qui in nāvi relictī erant
 20 lacrimās tenēre; crēdēbant enim sē sociōs suōs numquam iterum vīsūrōs. Illi autem aliquantum itineris prōgressi ad villam quandam pervēnērunt summā māgnificentīā aedificā-tam; cūius ad ōstium cum adiissent, carmen⁹ dulcissimum audivērunt. Tanta autem fuit ēius vōcis dulcēdō ut nullō
 25 modō retinērī possent quā iānuam¹⁰ pulsārent. Hōc factō ipsa Cīrcē forās exiit et summā cum benignitāte omnis in

Cf. ¹ adpulit, p. 48, l. 2. — ² ostenderet, 9, 10. — ³ repperit, 28, 18. — ⁴ tandem, 44, 26. — ⁵ sortitus est, 18, 2. — ⁶ sorte, 33, 14. — ⁷ occupāvit, 7, 15. — ⁸ obviam, 41, 2. — ⁹ carmen, 3, 24. — ¹⁰ iānuam, 4, 6.

hospitium invitāvit. Eurylochus insidiās¹ comparārī suspicātus foris exspectāre cōstituit, at reliquī reī novitāte adductī intrāvērunt. Convīvium² māgnificum invēnērunt omnibus rēbus instrūctum, et iūssū dominae libentissimē accubuērunt.³ At Circē vinum quod servi adposuērunt medicāmentō quōdam miscuerat; quod cum illi bibissent, gravī sopōre subitō oppressī sunt.

Men Changed to Pigs.

16. Tum Circē, quae artis magicae summam scientiam habēbat, baculō aureō quem gerēbat⁴ capita eōrum tetigit; quō factō omnēs in porcōs subitō conversī sunt. Intereā 10 Eurylochus ignārus quid in aedibus⁵ agerētur, ad ōstium⁶ sedēbat; postquam tamen ad sōlis occāsum⁷ anxio animō et sollicitō exspectāverat, sōlus ad nāvem regredi cōstituit. Eō cum vēnisset, anxietāte ac timōre ita perturbātus fuit ut quae vidisset vix lūcidē nārrāre posset. At Ulixēs satis intellēxit 15 sociōs suōs in periculō versārī,⁸ et, gladiō conreptō,⁹ Eurylochō imperāvit ut sine morā viam ad istam domum mōnstrāret. Ille tamen multis cum lacrimis Ulixem complexus¹⁰ obsecrāre coepit nē in tantum periculum sē committeret: 'Si quid gravius eī accidisset, omnium salūtem in summō discrimine¹¹ 20 futūram.' Ulixēs autem respondit sē nēmīnem invitum sēcum adductūrum; eī licēre,¹² si mallet, in nāvī manēre; sē ipsum sine ūllō auxiliō rem susceptūrum. Hōc cum māgnā vōce dixisset, ē nāvī dēsiluit et nūllō sequente sōlus in viam sē dedit.

25

The Counter Charm.

17. Aliquantum¹³ itineris prōgressus ad villam māgnificam pervēnit, quam cum oculis perlūstrāsset,¹⁴ statim intrāre sta-

Cf. ¹ insidiās, p. 40, l. 4. — ² convīviis, 7, 10. — ³ accumbere, 4, 14. — ⁴ gerēns, 10, 15. — ⁵ aedibus, 30, 23. — ⁶ ōstium, 50, 23. — ⁷ occāsus, 28, 6. — ⁸ versābar, 24, 19. — ⁹ conreptum, 47, 27. — ¹⁰ complexus, 18, 9. — ¹¹ discrimine, 44, 14. — ¹² licet, 5, 12. — ¹³ aliquantum, 50, 21. — ¹⁴ perlūstrābat, 43, 10.

tuit; intellēxit enim hanc esse eandem dē quā Eurylochus mentiōnem fēcisset. At cum in eo esset ut limen¹ trānsiret, subitō obviam eī stetit adulēscēns formā pulcherrimā aureum baculum² manū gerēns. Hīc Ulixem iam domum intrantem
5 manū conripuit et, “Quō ruis?” inquit. “Nōnne scīs hanc esse Circēs domum? Hīc inclūsi sunt amīci tui, ex hūmānā



FIG. 21. — ULYSSES AT THE HOUSE OF CIRCE.

speciē³ in porcōs conversī. Num vīs ipse in eandem calamitātem venīre?” Ulixēs simul ac vōcem audivit, deum Mercurium āgnōvit⁴; nullis tamen precibus⁵ ab institūtō cōnsiliō
10 dēterrērī potuit. Quod cum Mercurius sēnsisset, herbam quandam eī dedit, quam contrā carmina⁶ māximē valēre dicēbat. “Hanc cape,” inquit, “et ubi Circē tē baculō tetigerit,⁷ tū strictō gladiō impetum in eam vidē ut faciās.” His dictis Mercurius

15 “Mórtālís vīsús mediō sermōne relīquit,
Ét procul ín tenuem ex oculīs evānuīt aúram.”

Cf. ¹ limine, p. 27, l. 13. — ² baculō, 51, 9. — ³ speciem, 38, 17. — ⁴ āgnōscit, 27, 14. — ⁵ precēs, 3, 12. — ⁶ carmen, 50, 23. — ⁷ tetigit, 51, 9.

The Enchantress Foiled.

18. Brevi intermissō spatiō, Ulixēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda parātus ōstium pulsāvit et foribus patefactis ab ipsā Circē benignē exceptus est. Omnia eōdem modō atque antea facta sunt. Cēnam¹ māgnificē instructam² vidit et accumbere iūssus est. Mox, ubi famēs³ cibō dēpulsa est, 5 Circē pōculum aureum vinō replētum⁴ Ulixī dedit. Ille, etsi suspicātus est venēnum sibi parātum esse, pōculum exhausit. Quō factō Circē, postquam caput ēius baculō tetigit, ea verba locūta est quibus sociōs ēius antea in porcōs converterat. Rēs tamen omnīnō⁵ aliter ēvēnit atque illa spērāverat. Tanta 10 enim vis⁶ erat ēius herbae quam dederat Mercurius ut neque venēnum neque verba quidquam efficere possent. Ulixēs autem, sicut iusserat Mercurius, gladiō strictō⁷ impetum in eam fēcit et mortem minitābātur. Tum Circē, cum sēnsisset artem suam nihil valēre, multis cum lacrimīs eum obsecrāre 15 coepit nē vitam adimeret.

Pigs Changed to Men.

19. Ulixēs autem, ubi sēnsit eam timōre perterritam esse, postulāvit⁸ ut sociōs sine morā in hūmānam speciem redūceret, certior enim factus erat ā deō Mercuriō eōs in porcōs conversōs esse; nisi id factum esset, ostendit sē dēbitās 20 poenās sūmptūrum.⁹ At Circē his rēbus graviter commōta ad pedēs ēius sē prōiēcit¹⁰ et multis cum lacrimīs iūre iūrandō cōfirmāvit sē quae ille imperāset omnia factūram. Tum porcōs in atrium¹¹ immitti iussit. Illi datō signō inruērunt et, cum ducem suum āgnōvissent,¹² māgnō dolōre adfecti sunt, 25 quod nūllō modō potuērunt eum dē rēbus suis certiōrem

Cf. ¹ cēnam, p. 35, l. 17. — ² instructum, 51, 4. — ³ famē, 23, 15. — ⁴ replēvit, 45, 7. — ⁵ omnīnō, 41, 4. — ⁶ vim, 46, 5. — ⁷ strictō, 52, 13. — ⁸ postulāset, 38, 15. — ⁹ sūmat, 28, 27. — ¹⁰ prōiēcissent, 49, 11. — ¹¹ ātriō, 4, 11. — ¹² āgnōscit, 27, 14.

facere. Circē tamen unguentō¹ quōdam corpora eōrum unxit; quō factō omnēs post breve tempus in speciem hūmānam redditī² sunt. Māgnō cum gaudiō Ulixēs amīcōs āgnōvit et nūntium ad litus misit, quī reliquīs Graecīs sociōs receptōs
 5 esse diceret. Illi autem his rēbus cōgnītis statim ad domum Circaeam sē contulērunt³; quō cum vēnissent, omnēs ūniversī laetitiae⁴ sē dēdidērunt.

Afloat Again.

20. Postridiē ēius diēi Ulixēs in animō habēbat ex insulā quam celerrimē discēdere. Circē tamen, cum haec cōgnō-
 10 visset, ex odiō ad amōrem conversa omnibus precibus⁵ eum ōrāre et obtestārī coepit ut paucōs diēs apud sē morārētur; et hōc tandem impetrātō tanta beneficia in eum contulit ut facile eī persuāsum sit ut diūtius⁶ manēret. Postquam tamen tōtum annum apud Circēn cōsūmpserat, Ulixēs māgnō dē-
 15 sīderiō⁷ patriae suae videndae mōtus est. Sociīs igitur⁸ ad sē convocātis, quid in animō habēret ostendit. Ubi tamen ad litus dēscendit, nāvem suam tempestātibus ita adflictam invēnit ut ad nāvigandum paene inūtilis esset. Hāc rē cō-
 gnītā, omnia quae ad nāvis reficiendās ūsui sunt comparārī
 20 iussit; quā in rē tantam diligentiam omnēs praebebant⁹ ut ante tertium diem opus¹⁰ cōnfēcērint. At Circē, ubi vidit omnia ad profectiōnem parāta esse, rem aegrē ferēbat et Ulixem vehementer obsecrābat¹¹ ut eō cōnsiliō dēsisteret. Ille tamen, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, mā-
 25 tūrandum sibi existimāvit, et tempestātem idōneam¹² nactus nāvem solvit. Multa quidem pericula Ulixī subeunda¹³ erant antequam in patriam suam pervenīret; quae tamen in hōc locō longum est perscribere.

Cf. ¹ unguenta, p. 21, l. 18. — ² reddēbātur, 26, 4. — ³ contulērunt, 41, 12. — ⁴ laetitiam, 8, 5. — ⁵ precibus, 52, 9. — ⁶ diūtius, 25, 6. — ⁷ dē-sīderī, 21, 12. — ⁸ igitur, 50, 5. — ⁹ praebuit, 8, 4. — ¹⁰ opus, 40, 3. — ¹¹ obsecrāre, 53, 15. — ¹² idōneum, 35, 21. — ¹³ subeunda, 53, 1.

LIFE OF CAIUS MARIUS. (B.C. 157-86.)

[LHOMOND: VIRI ROMAE.]



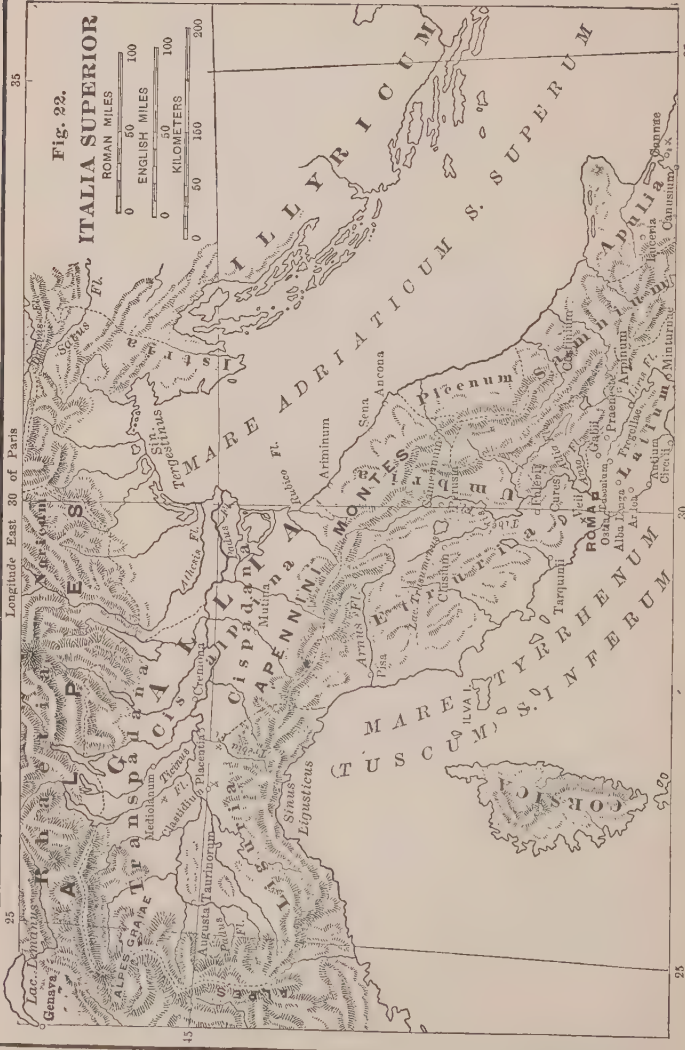
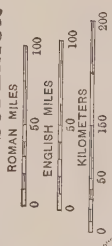
FIG. 24. — GAIUS MARIUS.

With Scipio in Spain.

1. C. Marius, humili locō nātus,¹ militiae tirōcinium in Hispāniā duce Scipiōne posuit. Erat imprimis Scipiōnī cārus ob singulārem virtutem et impigram ad pericula et labōrēs alacritātem. Scipiō, cum inspicere voluisset quem ad modum ab ūnōquōque equī cūrārentur, Marī equum validum et bene cūrātum invēnit; quam diligentiam imperātor plūrimum laudāvit.² Cum aliquandō³ inter cēnam Scipiōnem quīdam interrogāset, si quid illi accidisset, quemnam rēs pūblica aequē māgnū habitūra esset imperātōrem, Scipiō percussō lēnīter Marī umerō “Fortasse⁴ hunc,” inquit. Quō dictō excitātus Marius dignōs⁵ rēbus quās postea gessit spīritūs concēpit.

Cf. ¹ nātum, p. 17, l. 1. — ² laudō, 9, 23. — ³ aliquandō, 3, 20. — ⁴ fortasse, 25, 5. — ⁵ dignus, 20, 11.

Fig. 22.
ITALIA SUPERIOR



Conquers Jugurtha.

2. Q. Metellum in Numidiam contrā Iugurtham missum, cūius lēgātus¹ erat, cum ab eō Rōmam missus esset, apud populum Rōmānum crīminātus est bellum dūcere: 'Sī sē cōnsulem fēcissent, brevī tempore aut vīvum aut mortuum
 5 Iugurtham sē in potestātem populī Rōmānī redāctūrum.²' Itaque creātus est cōnsul et in Metelli locum suffectus. Bellum ab illō prōsperē coeptum cōnfēcit.³ Iugurtha ad Gaetūlōs perfūgerat eōrumque rēgem Bocchum adversus Rōmānōs concitāverat. Marius Gaetūlōs et Bocchum ad-
 10 gressus fūdit; castellum in excelsā rīpā positum, ubi rēgiī thēsaurī⁴ erant, nōn sine multō labōre expūgnāvit.⁵ Bocchus bellō dēfessus lēgātōs ad Marium misit pācem ōrantis.⁶ Sulla quaestor ā Mariō ad rēgem remissus Bocchō persuāsit ut Iugurtham Rōmānis trāderet. Iugurtha igitur vinctus⁷ ad
 15 Marium dēductus est; quem Marius triumphāns ante currum ēgit⁸ et in carcerem caenōsum inclūsit. Quō cum Iugurtha dētractā⁹ veste ingrederētur, ōs rīdentis in modum dīdūxisse et stupēns similisque dēsipientī exclāmāsse fertur: "Prō! quam frīgidum est vestrum balneum¹⁰!" Paucīs diēbus post
 20 in carcere necātus¹¹ est.)

Defeats the Teutones.

3. Marius post bellum Numidicum iterum¹² cōnsul creātus bellumque eī contrā Cīmrōs et Teutonēs dēcrētum est. Hī novī hostēs, ab extrēmīs Germāniae finibus profugī, novās sēdēs quaerēbant, exclūsique Galliā et Hispāniā cum in
 25 Ītaliā remigrārent, ā Rōmānis ut aliquid sibi terrae darent petiērunt.¹³ Repulsī, quod nequiverant precibus, armīs petere

Cf. ¹ lēgātōs, p. 15, l. 24. — ² redāctās, 17, 15. — ³ cōnfectō, 12, 24. — ⁴ thēsaurus, 9, 20. — ⁵ expūgnāvit, 37, 8. — ⁶ ōrantī, 6, 6. — ⁷ vinctus, 16, 6. — ⁸ ēgit, 47, 7. — ⁹ dētractā, 3, 15. — ¹⁰ balneō, 25, 7. — ¹¹ necāret, 33, 14. — ¹² iterum, 38, 3. — ¹³ petēbant, 2, 15.

cōstituunt. Trēs ducēs Rōmānī impetūs barbarōrum nōn sustinuērunt.¹ Omnēs fugātī,² exūtī castris. Āctum erat dē imperiō Rōmānō, nisi Marius fuisset. Hīc primō Teutonēs sub ipsis Alpiū rādīcibus adsecūtus proeliō oppressit.³ Vallem fluviumque medium hostēs tenēbant; Rōmānis aquā-
rum nūlla cōpia.⁴ Aucta necessitatē virtūs causa victōriae
fuit. Nam flāgitante⁵ aquam exercitū Marius, “Virī,” inquit,
“estis, ēn illic aquam habētis.” Itaque tantō ārdōre pūgnā-
tum est eaque caedēs hostium fuit ut Rōmānī victōrēs dē
cruentō flūmine nōn plūs aquae biberent quam sanguinis
barbarōrum. Caesa trāduntur⁶ hostium ducenta milia, capta
nōnāgintā. Rēx ipse Teutobochus, in proximō saltū com-
prehēsus,⁷ insigne⁸ spectāculum triumphī fuit; quippe vir
procēritātis eximiae super tropaea ipsa ēminēbat.

Goes against the Cimbri.

4. Dēlētis⁹ Teutonibus C. Marius in Cimbrōs sē convertit. 15
Quī cum ex aliā parte Ītaliā ingressī Athesim flūmen nōn
pōnte nec nāvibus, sed iniectīs arborum¹⁰ truncīs velut aggere,
trāiēcissent, occurrit¹¹ eis C. Marius. Cimbri lēgātōs ad cōn-
sulem misērunt agrōs urbisque sibi et frātribus postulantis;
Teutonum enim clādem¹² ignōrābant. Quaerente Mariō
quōs illi frātrēs dicerent, cum Teutonēs nōmināssent,¹³ ridēs
Marius, “Omittite,” inquit, “frātrēs; tenent hī acceptam
ā nōbis terram; aeternumque tenēbunt.” Tum lēgātī, sē
lūdibriō habēri sentientēs, uliōnem Mariō minātī¹⁴ sunt simul
atque Teutones advēnissent. “Atquī adsunt,” inquit Marius, 25
“nec sānē cīvile foret vōs frātribus vestrīs nōn salūtātis
discēdere.” Tum vinctōs¹⁵ addūci iussit Teutonum ducēs,
quī in proeliō capti erant.

Cf. ¹ sustinuit, p. 12, l. 3. — ² fugātus, 37, 1. — ³ oppressi sunt, 51, 7.
— ⁴ cōpia, 16, 5. — ⁵ flāgitata est, 29, 11. — ⁶ trādidit, 25, 14. — ⁷ com-
prehendit, 6, 5. — ⁸ insīgnis, 21, 21. — ⁹ dēlēvērunt, 17, 25. — ¹⁰ arborēs,
1, 6. — ¹¹ occurrit, 7, 15. — ¹² clāde, 37, 1. — ¹³ nōminēs, 17, 4. — ¹⁴ mini-
tābātur, 53, 14. — ¹⁵ vinctus, 56, 14.

The Cimbri Destroyed. Bravery of their Women.

5. His rēbus auditis Cimbri ēgrediuntur castris et cum paucis¹ suōrum ad vāllum Rōmānum adequitāns Boiorix,

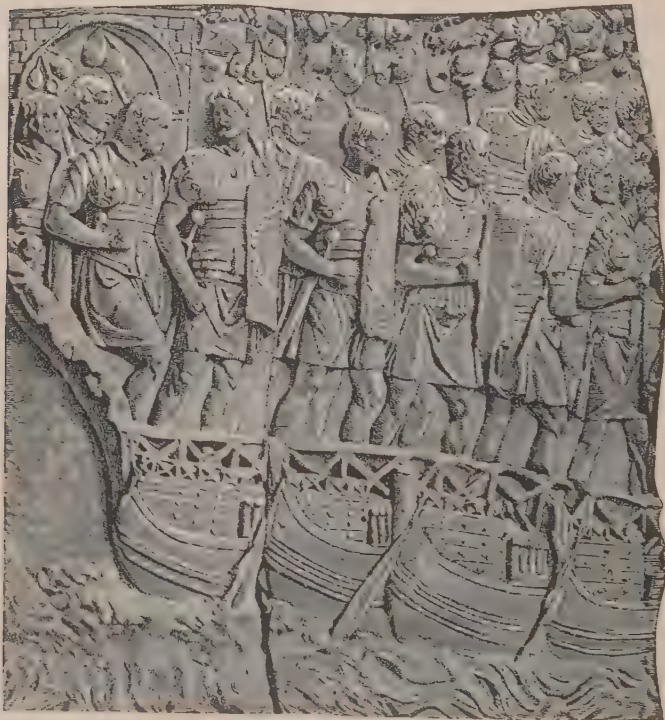


FIG. 25. — SOLDIERS WITH PACKS. "MARIUS'S MULES."

Cimbrōrum dux, Mariū ad pūgnam prōvocat et diem pūgnae ā Rōmānōrum imperātōre petit. Proximum dedit cōsul. Marius cum aciem² ita instituisset ut pulvis in oculōs et ōra hostium ferrētur, incrēdibili strāge prōstrāta³ est

Cf. ¹ *pauca*, p. 40, l. 16. — ² *aciem*, 7, 5. — ³ *prōstrātus*, 43, 26.

illa Cimbrōrum multitudō; caesa¹ trāduntur centum octō-
gintā hominum milia. Nec minor cum uxōribus pūgna
quam cum virīs fuit, cum obiectis undique plaustīs dēsu-
per, quasi ē turribus, lanceīs contisque pūgnārent. Victae
tamen cum missā ad Mariū lēgatiōne libertātem nōn im- 5
petrāssent,² suffocātis ēlisisque infantibus suis aut mūtuis
concidērunt vulneribus aut vinculō³ ē crinibus suis factō ab
arboribus pependērunt. Canēs⁴ quoque dēfendēre Cimbris
caesis eōrum domōs. Marius prō duōbus triumphis, quī
offerēbantur, ūnō contentus fuit. Primōrēs civitātis, quī ei 10
aliquamdiū ut novō hominī ad tantōs honōrēs ēvēctō invide-
rant, cōservātam ab eō rem pūblicam fatēbantur. In ipsā
aciē Marius duās Camertium cohortis, mirā virtūte vim
Cimbrōrum sustinentis, contrā lēgem civitate dōnāverat.
Quod quidem factum et vērē et ēgregiē postea excūsāvit, 15
dicēns inter armōrum strepitum⁵ verba sē iūris cīvilis exau-
dire nōn potuisse.

Civil War. Marius Takes Flight.

6. Illā tempestāte primum Rōmae bellum cīvile commōtum
est. Causam bellō dedit Gāius Marius. Cum enim Sulla
cōsul contrā Mithradātem, rēgem Pontī, missus fuisset, 20
Sulpicius, tribūnus plēbis, lēgem ad populum tulit, ut Sullae
imperium abrogārētur, C. Mariō bellum dēcernerētur Mithra-
dāticum. Quā rē Sulla commōtus cum exercitū ad urbem
vēnit, eam armis occupāvit, Sulpiciū interfēcit, Mariū
fugāvit.⁶ Marius hostis persequentis fugiēns aliquamdiū in 25
palūde dēlituit. Sed paulō post repertus⁷ extrāctusque, ut
erat, nūdō corpore caenōque oblitus, iniectō in collum⁸ lōrō,
Minturnās raptus et in custōdiam coniectus est. Missus est
ad eum occidendum servus pūblicus, nātiōne Cimber, quem

Cf. ¹ caesa, p. 57, l. 11. — ² impetrātō, 54, 12. — ³ vinculōrum, 26, 3.
— ⁴ canem, 5, 10. — ⁵ strepitus, 26, 3. — ⁶ fugātus, 37, 1. — ⁷ repertus,
50, 8. — ⁸ collō, 5, 15.

Marius voltūs auctōritāte dēterrui.¹ Cum enim hominem ad sē strictō² gladiō venientem vīdisset, “Tūne, homō,” inquit, “C. Marium audēbis occidere?” Quō auditō atto-

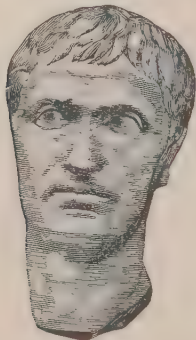


FIG. 26.— L. CORNELIUS SULLA.



FIG. 27.— COIN OF SULLA.

nitus ille ac tremēns abiectō ferrō³ fūgit, Marium sē nōn
 10 posse occidere clāmitāns. Marius deinde ab eis quī prius
 eum occidere voluerant ē carcere ēmissus est.

Marius “Sitting on the Ruins of Carthage.”

7. Acceptā nāviculā in Āfricam trāiēcit et in agrum Carthāginiēsem pervēnit. Ibi cum in locis sōlitāriis sedēret, vēnit ad eum lictor Sextili praetōris, quī tum Āfricam obtinē-
 10 bat. Ab hōc, quem numquam laesisset, Marius hūmānitātis tamen aliquod officium⁴ exspectābat; at lictor dēcēdere⁵ eum prōvinciā iussit, nisi in sē animadvertī vellet; torvēque intuentem et vōcem nūllam ēmittentem Marium rogāvit tandem⁶ ecquid renūtiārī praetōrī vellet. Cui Marius: “Abī,”
 15 inquit, “nūntiā vīdisse tē Gāium Marium in Carthāginis ruīnis sedentem.” Duōbus clārissimis exemplis dē incōn-

Cf. ¹ dēterrērī, p. 52, l. 10. — ² strictō, 52, 13. — ³ ferrī, 26, 2. — ⁴ officium, 12, 26. — ⁵ dēcēdente, 9, 21. — ⁶ tandem, 44, 26.

stantiā rērum hūmānārum eum admonēbat, cum et urbis
māximae excidium et virī clārissimī cāsum ante oculōs
pōneret.

Returns and Slaughters his Enemies. At length Falls Sick and Dies.

8. Profectō ad bellum Mithradāticum Sullā, Marius revo-
cātus ā Cinnā in Ītaliā rediit, efferātus magis calamitāte 5
quam domitus. Cum exercitū Rōmam ingressus eam caedi-
bus¹ et rapīnis vāstāvit; omnis adversae factiōnis nōbilis
variis suppliciōrum² generibus adfēcit; quīnque diēs conti-



FIG. 28.—COINS OF MARIUS.

nuōs totidemque noctis illa scelerum omnium dūrāvit³ licen-
tia. Hōc tempore admiranda sānē populi Rōmānī abstinentia 10
fuit. Cum enim Marius occisōrum domōs multitudinī diripi-
endās obiēcisset, invenīri potuit nēmō quī civili lūctū⁴ prae-
dam peteret; quae quidem tam misericors continentia plēbis
tacita⁵ quaedam crūdēlium victōrum vituperātiō fuit. Tandem
Marius seniō et labōribus cōfectus⁶ in morbum incidit et 15
ingentī omnium laetitiā vitam finīvit. Cūius virī sī exāmi-
nentur cum virtūtibus vitia,⁷ haud facile sit dictū utrum bellō
melior an pāce perniciosior fuerit; namque quam rem publi-
cam armātus servāvit eam primō togātus omnī genere frau-
dis, postrēmō armīs hostiliter ēvertit.

20

Cf. ¹ caedēs, p. 57, l. 9. — ² suppliciō, 46, 8. — ³ dūrāvit, 21, 9. —
⁴ lūctū, 10, 10. — ⁵ tacitus, 28, 20. — ⁶ cōfectus, 48, 22. — ⁷ vitium,
32, 2.

Personal Characteristics of Marius.

9. Erat Marius dūrior¹ ad hūmānitātis studia et ingenuā-
rum artium contemptor. Cum aedem Honōris de manubiis
hostiū vōvisset, sprētā² peregrinōrum marmorum nōbilitāte
artificumque³ Graecōrum arte, eam volgārī lapide per artifi-
cem Rōmānum cūrāvit⁴ aedificandam. Et Graecās litterās
dēspiciēbat, quod doctōribus suis parum⁵ ad virtūtem prōfu-
issent. At idem fortis, validus,⁶ adversus dolōrem cōfirmā-
tus. Cum eī varicēs in crūre secārentur, vetuit⁷ sē adligārī.
Ācrem tamen fuisse dolōris morsum ipse ostendit; nam
10 medicō alterum crūs postulantī nōluit praeberē,⁸ quod māiō-
rem esse remedī quam morbī dolōrem iūdicāret.

Cf. ¹ dūrus, p. 35, l. 23. — ² spernis, 47, 23. — ³ artificem, 9, 13. —
⁴ cūrāvit, 24, 18. — ⁵ parum, 11, 24. — ⁶ validum, 55, 5. — ⁷ vetābat,
12, 5. — ⁸ praeberē, 30, 27.

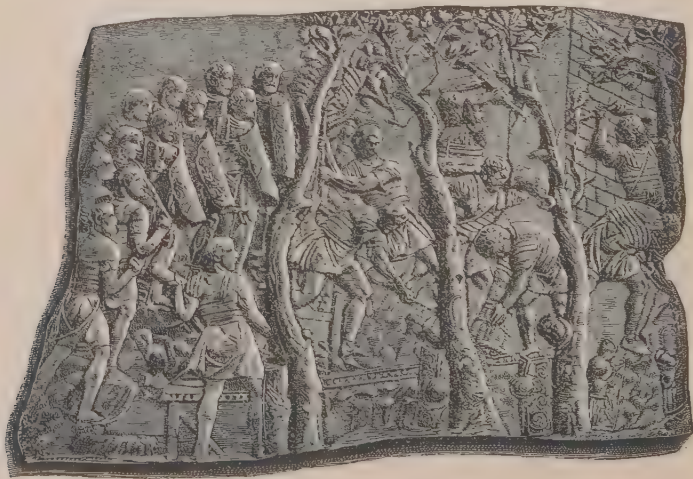


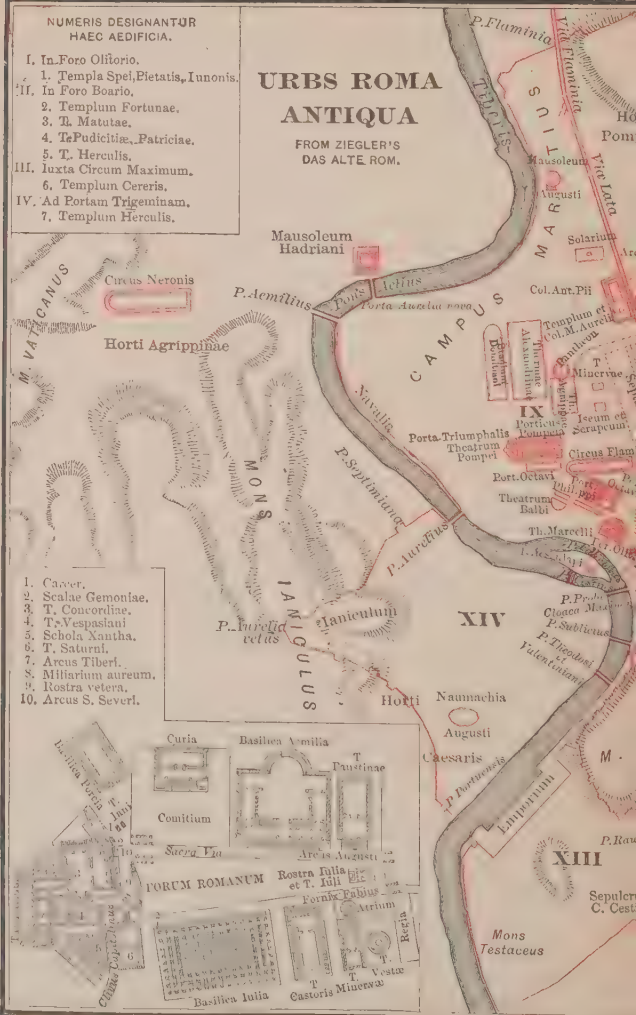
FIG. 29. — SOLDIERS MAKING CAMP.

NUMERIS DESIGNANTUR
HAEC AEDIFICIA.

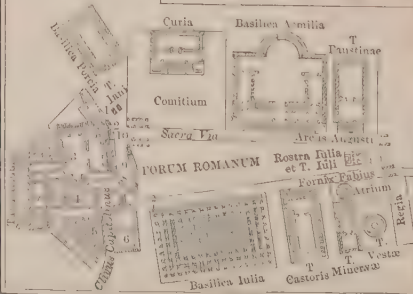
- I. In Foro Olfitorio.
1. Templa Spei, Fietatis, Iunonis.
- II. In Foro Boario.
2. Templum Fortunae.
3. T. Matutae.
4. T. Pudicitiae, Patriciae.
5. T. Herculis.
- III. Iuxta Circum Maximum.
6. Templum Cereris.
- IV. Ad Portam Trigemynam.
7. Templum Herculis.

URBS ROMA ANTIQUA

FROM ZIEGLER'S
DAS ALTE ROM.



1. Caelet.
2. Scalae Gemoniae.
3. T. Concordiae.
4. T. Vespasiani.
5. Schola Xantha.
6. T. Saturni.
7. Arcus Tiberi.
8. Miliarium aureum.
9. Rostra vetera.
10. Arcus S. Severi.



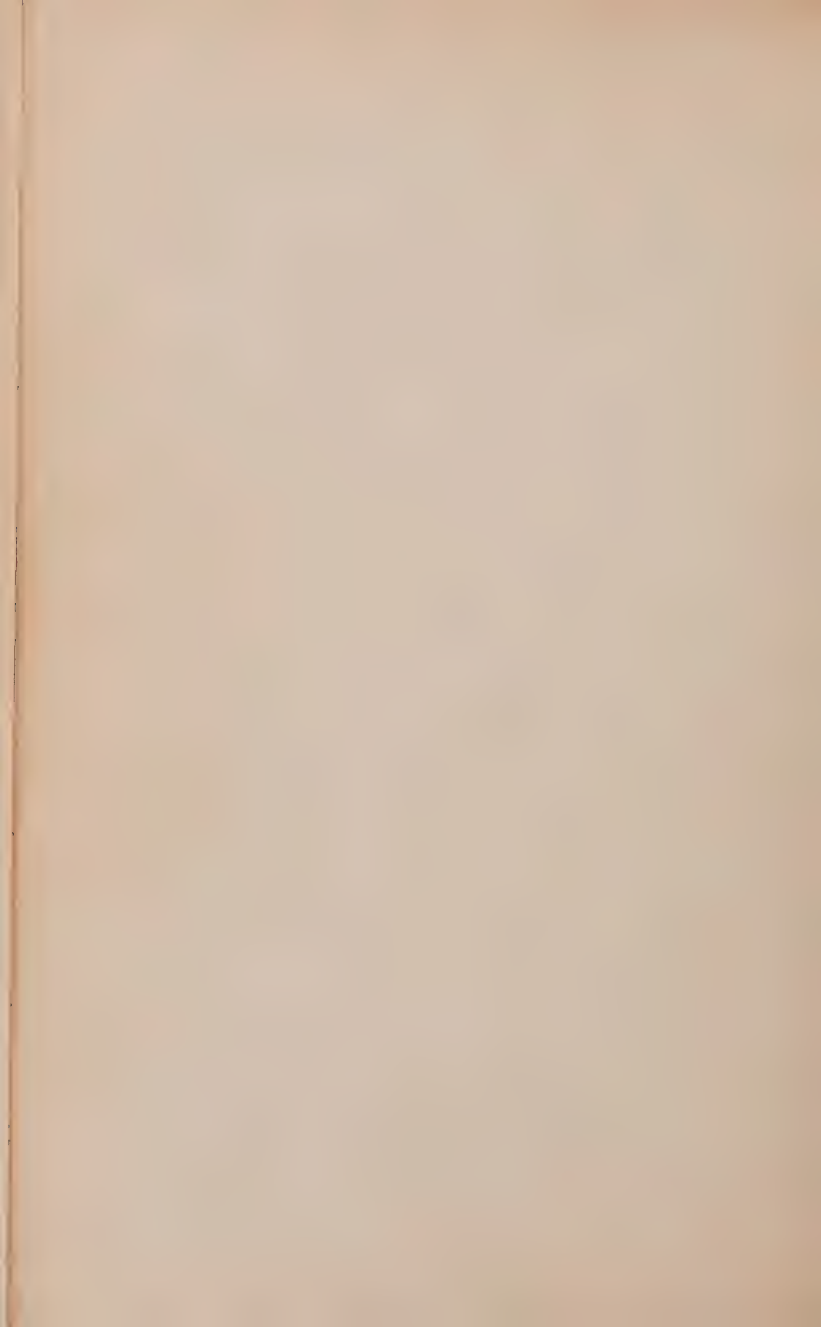


REGIONES AUGUSTI.

- I. Porta Capena.
- II. Caclimontium.
- III. Isis et Serapis.
- IV. Templum Pacis.
- V. Esquiliae.
- VI. Alta Semita.
- VII. Via Lata.
- VIII. Forum Romanum.
- IX. Circus Flaminius.
- X. Palatium.
- XI. Circus Maximus.
- XII. Piscina Publica.
- XIII. Aventinus.
- XIV. Trans Tiberim.

Modulus = 1:20000.





LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR. (B.C. 100-44.)

[LHOMOND: VIRI ROMAE.]

Early Life.

1. C. Iūlius Caesar, nōbilissimā Iūliōrum genitus familiā, annum agēns sextum et decimum patrem āmisit. Cornēliam, Cinnae filiam, dūxit uxōrem; cūius pater cum esset Sullae inimicissimus, is Caesarem voluit compellere ut eam repudiāret¹; neque id potuit efficere. Quā rē Caesar bonis spoliātus cum etiam ad necem quaererētur, mūtātā veste² nocte urbe ēlapsus est et, quamquā tunc quartānae morbo³ labōrābat, prope per singulās noctis latebrās commūtāre cōgēbatur⁴; et comprehēnsus ā Sullae libertō, nē ad Sullam perdūcerētur vix datā pecūniā ēvāsit.⁵ Postrēmō per propinquos et adfinis suos veniam impetrāvit.⁶ (Satis cōstat Sullam, cum dēprecantibus amīcissimis et ōrnatissimis viris aliquamdiū dēnegāset⁷ atque illi pertināciter contenderent, expūgnātum tandem prōclāmāsse ‘vincerent, dummodo scirent eum quem incolumem tantopere⁸ cuperent aliquandō optimātium partibus, quās sēcum simul dēfendissent, exitiō futūrum; nam Caesarī multōs Mariōs inesse.’)

Captured by Pirates.

2. Stipendia prima in Asiā fēcit. In expūgnātiōne Mitylēnārū corōnā civicā dōnātus est. Mortuō Sullā Rhodum sēcēdere statuit, ut per ōtium Apollōniō Molōnī, tunc clārissimō dicendī magistrō, operam⁹ daret. Hūc dum trāicit,

Cf. ¹ repudiāvit, p. 3, l. 12. — ² vestis, 21, 17. — ³ morbum, 61, 15. — ⁴ coāctus, 3, 18. — ⁵ ēvādere, 44, 5. — ⁶ impetrātō, 54, 12. — ⁷ dēnegāvit, 21, 23. — ⁸ tantopere, 30, 10. — ⁹ operam, 1, 10.



FIG. 31. — GAIUS IULIUS CAESAR.

ā praedōnibus captus est mānsitque apud eōs prope quadrā-
gintā diēs. Per omne autem illud spatium ita sē gessit ut
pirātis pariter terrōri venerātiōnique esset. Comitēs¹ interim
servōsque ad expediendās pecūniās quibus redimerētur dimi-
sit. Vigintī talenta pirātae postulāverant²; ille quinquāgintā 5



FIG. 32. — A CIVIC CROWN.

datūrum sē spopondit. Quibus numerātis cum expositus
esset in litore, cōnfestim Milētum, quae urbs proximē aberat,
properāvit³ ibique contrāctā classe invectus in eum locum
in quō ipsī praedōnēs erant, partem classis fugāvit,⁴ partem
mersit, aliquot nāvis cēpit pirātāsque in potestātem redāctōs⁵ 10
eō suppliciō quod illis saepe minātus inter iocum⁶ erat
adfēcit crucique suffixit.

Cæsar as Quæstor in Spain.

3. Quaestōri ulterior Hispānia obvēnit. Quō profectus
cum Alpīs trānsiret et ad cōnspectum pauperis cūiusdam
vici⁷ comitēs per iocum inter sē disputārent num illic etiam 15
esset ambitiōni locus, seriō dixit Caesar malle sē ibi primum
esse quam Rōmae secundum. Dominātiōnis avidus ā primā

Cf. ¹ comitis, p. 3, l. 12. — ² postulāset, 38, 15. — ³ properāvit, 38,
20. — ⁴ fugāvit, 59, 25. — ⁵ redāctās, 17, 15. — ⁶ iocō, 29, 26. — ⁷ vicum,
41, 11.

aetate¹ rēgnum concupiscēbat semperque in ōre habēbat
hōs Eurīpidis, Graeci poētae, versūs :

“ Nam sī violāndum est iūs, rēgnāndi grātiā
Violāndum est, aliīs rēbus piētātē colās.”

5 Cumque Gādēs, quod est Hispāniae oppidum, vēnisset, anim-
adversā² apud Herculis templum māgnī Alexandrī imāgine
ingemuit et quasi pertaesus ignāviam suam, quod nihildum
ā sē memorābile³ actum esset in eā aetate quā iam Alexander
orbem terrārum subēgisset, missiōnem continuō efflāgitāvit
10 ad captandās quam primum māiōrum rērum occāsiōnēs⁴ in
urbe.

Cæsar as Ædile and as Consul.

4. Aedilis praeter Comitium ac Forum etiam Capitōlium
ōrnāvit porticibus. Vēnātiōnēs autem lūdōsque⁵ et cum
conlēgā M. Bibulō et sēparātīm ēdidit⁶; quō factum est ut
15 commūnium quoque impēnsārum sōlus grātiā⁷ caperet.
His autem rēbus patrimōnium effūdīt⁸ tantumque cōnflāvit
aes aliēnum ut ipse diceret sibi opus esse miliēns sēstertium
ut habēret nihil.

Cōsul deinde cum M. Bibulō creātus societātem cum
20 Gnaeō Pompēiō et Mārcō Crassō iūnxit Caesar, nē quid
agerētur in rē pūblicā quod displicuisset ūlli ex tribus.
Deinde lēgem tulit⁹ ut ager Campānus plēbī dividerētur.
Cui lēgī cum senātus repūgnāret, rem ad populum dētulit.
Bibulus conlēgā in Forum vēnit ut lēgī obsisteret, sed tanta
25 in eum commōta est sēditiō ut in caput ēius cophinus ster-
core plēnus effunderētur fascēsque¹⁰ ei frangerentur¹¹ atque
adeō ipse armis Forō expellerētur. Quā rē cum Bibulus per
reliquum annī tempus domō abditus cūriā¹² abstinēret, ūnus

Cf. ¹ aetātis, p. 33, l. 17. — ² animadverterat, 31, 14. — ³ ēgērunt, 23, 8. — ⁴ occāsiōnem, 48, 25. — ⁵ lūdōrum, 23, 16. — ⁶ ēdere, 43, 23. — ⁷ grātiā, 45, 14. — ⁸ effundī, 28, 24. — ⁹ tulit, 59, 21. — ¹⁰ fascem, 11, 18. — ¹¹ frangerent, 11, 19. — ¹² cūriā, 25, 19.

ex eō tempore Caesar omnia in rē publicā ad arbitrium administrābat, ut nōn nūlli urbānōrum, sī quid testandi grātiā signārent, per iocum nōn, ut mōs¹ erat, “Cōsulibus Caesare et Bibulō” āctum scriberent, sed “Iūliō et Caesare,” ūnum cōsulem nōmine et cōgnōmine prō duōbus appellantēs. 5

Cæsar in Gaul, Germany, and Britain.

5. Fūctus cōsulātū Caesar Galliam prōvinciam accēpit. Gessit autem novem annīs quibus in imperiō fuit haec ferē²: Galliam in prōvinciae formam redēgit³; Germānōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, prīmus Rōmānōrum ponte fabricātō ad-



FIG. 33. — COINS OF CÆSAR.

gressus māximis adfēcit clādibus.⁴ Adgressus est Britannōs, 10
ignōtōs anteā, superātisque pecūniās et obsidēs imperāvit.
Hic cum multa Rōmānōrum militum insīgnia narrantur,
tum illud ēgregium⁵ ipsius Caesaris, quod, nūtante in fugam
exercitū, raptō fugientis ē manū scūtō,⁶ in prīmam volitāns
aciem proelium restituit. Īdem aliō proeliō legiōnis aquili- 15
ferum, ineundae⁷ fugae causā iam cōnversum, faucibus com-
prehēsum in contrāriam partem dētrāxit dextramque ad
hostem tendēns, “Quōrsum tū,” inquit, “abis? Illic sunt
cum quibus dīmicāmus.⁸” Quā adhortātiōne omnium legiō-
num trepidātiōnem corrēxit, vincīque parātās vincere docuit. 20

Cf. ¹ mōrēs, p. 4, l. 10. — ² ferē, 1, 7. — ³ redāctōs, 65, 10. — ⁴ clāde, 37, 1. — ⁵ ēgregiō, 21, 14. — ⁶ scūtum, 3, 4. — ⁷ initō, 14, 4. — ⁸ dīmicāvit, 16, 1.

Cæsar Crosses the Rubicon and Drives Pompey from Italy.

6. Interfectō intereā apud Parthōs Crassō et dēfūctā Iūliā, Caesaris filiā, quae, nūpta Pompēiō, generī socerique concordiam tenēbat, statim aemulatiō ērūpit. Iam pridem Pompēiō suspectae Caesaris opēs ¹ et Caesarī Pompēiāna
 5 dignitās gravis, nec hīc ferēbat parem, nec ille superiōrem. Itaque cum Caesar in Galliā dētinerētur, et, nē imperfectō bellō discēderet, postulāset ut sibi liceret ² quamvis absentī alterum cōsulātum petere, ā senātū suādentibus Pompēiō
 10 eiusque amicis negātum ei est. Hanc iniūriam acceptam vindicātūrus ³ in Ītaliā rediit et, bellandum ratus, cum exercitū Rubicōnem flūmen, quī prōvinciae eius finis erat, trānsiit. Hōc ad flūmen paulum cōstitisse fertur ⁴ ac reputāns quantum mōlirētur, conversus ad proximōs, “Etiam nunc,”
 15 inquit, “regredi possumus; quod sī ponticulum trānsierimus, omnia armis agenda erunt.” Postrēmō autem “Iacta ālea estō!” exclāmāns exercitum trāici iussit plūrimisque urbibus occupātis Brundisium contendit, quō Pompēius cōsulēsque cōnfūgerant.

Crosses over to Epirus in Pursuit of Pompey.

7. Quī cum inde in Ēpirum trāiēcissent, Caesar eōs secū-
 20 tus ā Brundisiō Dyrrhachium inter oppositās classis ⁵ gra-



FIG. 34. — COINS OF POMPEY AND HIS SON.

vissimā hieme trāsmisit; cōpiisque quās subsequi iusserat diūtius cessantibus, cum ad eās arcessendās frūstrā misisset,

Cf. ¹ opibus, p. 12, l. 23. — ² licēre, 51, 22. — ³ vindicārent, 15, 6. — ⁴ fertur, 56, 18. — ⁵ classe, 65, 8.

mīrae audāciae facinus ēdidit.¹ Morae enim impatiēns castris noctū ēgreditur, clam nāviculam cōnscendit,² obvolūtō capite nē āgnōscerētur³ et, quamquam mare saevā tempestāte intumēscēbat, in altum tamen prōtinus dirigī nāvīgium iubet et gubernātōre trepidante, “Quid timēs?” inquit, “Caesarem vehis!” Neque prius gubernātōrem cēdere adversae tempestātī passus⁴ est quam paene obrutus⁵ esset fluctibus.

Defeats Pompey at Pharsalia, Pharnaces in Pontus, and Scipio in Africa.

8. Deinde Caesar in Ēpirum profectus Pompēium Pharsālicō proeliō fūdit,⁶ et fugientem persecūtus, ut occisum cōgnōvit, Ptolemaeō rēgī, Pompēi interfectōrī, ā quō sibi quoque insidiās⁷ tendī vidēret, bellum intulit; quō victō in Pontum trāsiit Pharnacemque, Mithradātis filium, rebellantem et multiplici successū praeferōcem intrā quīntum ab adventū diem, quattuor, quibus in cōnspectum vēnit, hōris unā prōflīgāvit aciē⁸ mōre fulminis quod unō eōdemque mōmentō vēnit, percussit,⁹ abscessit. Nec vāna dē sē praedicātiō est Caesaris, ante victum hostem esse quam visum. Ponticō postea triumphō trium verbōrum praetulit titulum¹⁰: “Vēnī, vidī, vīcī.” Deinde Scīpiōnem et Iubam, Numidiaē rēgem, reliquiās Pompēiānārum partium in Āfricā refoventis, dēvicit.

Conquers the Son of Pompey in Spain.

9. Victōrem Āfricānī belli Gāium Caesarem gravius excēpit Hispāniēse, quod Cn. Pompēius, Māgnī filius, adulēscēns fortissimus, ingēns āc terribile cōnflāverat,¹¹ undique ad eum auxiliis paternī nōminis māgnitūdinem sequentium ex tōtō orbe¹² cōnfluentibus. Sua Caesarem in Hispāniam comitāta¹³ fortūna est; sed nūllum umquam atrōcius periculōsius-

Cf. ¹ ēdidit, p. 66, l. 14. — ² cōnscendit, 14, 7. — ³ āgnōscit, 27, 14. — ⁴ passus est, 47, 9. — ⁵ obrutus est, 4, 8. — ⁶ fūdit, 56, 10. — ⁷ insidiās, 51, 1. — ⁸ aciēm, 7, 5. — ⁹ percussō, 55, 10. — ¹⁰ titulum, 27, 3. — ¹¹ cōnflāvit, 66, 16. — ¹² orbem, 66, 9. — ¹³ comitārī, 5, 5.

que ab eō initum¹ proelium, adeō ut, plūs quam dubiō Mārte, dēscenderet equō cōsistēnsque ante recēdentem suōrum aciem, increpāns Fortūnam, quod sē in eum servāset exitum, dēnūntiāret militibus vestigiō² sē nōn recessūrum; proinde vidērent quem et quō locō imperātōrem dēsertūrī essent. Verēcundiā³ magis quam virtūte aciēs restitūta est. Cn. Pompēius victus et interēptus est. Caesar, omnium victor, regressus in urbem omnibus quī contrā sē arma tulerant ignōvīt, et quīnquiēns triumphāvit.

Cæsar as a Statesman and Reformer.

- 10 10. Bellis cīvilibus cōfectis⁴ conversus iam ad ōrdinandum rei pūblicae statum, fāstōs corrēxit⁵ annumque ad cursum sōlis accommodāvit, ut trecentōrum sexāgintā quīnque diērum esset et intercalāriō mēse sublātō⁶ ūnus diēs quartō quōque annō intercalārētur. Iūs labōriōsissimē ac sevērissimē dixit. Repetundārum convictōs etiam ōrdine senātōriō mōvit. Peregrinārum⁷ mercium⁸ portōria instituit; lēgem praecipuē sūmptuāriam exercuit. Dē ōrnandā instruendāque urbe, item dē tuendō⁹ ampliandōque imperiō plūra ac maiōra in diēs dēstinābat; imprimis¹⁰ iūs cīvile ad certum modum redigere atque ex immēnsā lēgum cōpiā optima quaeque et necessariā in paucissimōs cōferre librōs; bibliothēcās Graecās et Latinās quās māximās posset pūblicāre; siccāre Pomptinās palūdēs; viam mūnīre ā Marī Superō per Apenninī dorsum ad Tiberim ūsque; Dācōs, quī sē in Pontum effūd-
25 erant,¹¹ coērcēre¹²; mox Parthis bellum inferre per Armeniam.

Is Made Perpetual Dictator.

11. Haec et alia agentem et meditantem mors praevēnit. Dictātor enim in perpetuum creātus agere insolentius coepit;

Cf. ¹ initō, p. 14, l. 4. — ² vestigia, 5, 18. — ³ verēcundiā, 21, 1. — ⁴ cōfectō, 12, 24. — ⁵ corrēxit, 67, 20. — ⁶ sustulit, 45, 24. — ⁷ peregrinōrum, 62, 3. — ⁸ mercīs, 29, 28. — ⁹ tuendā, 18, 18. — ¹⁰ imprimis, 55, 2. — ¹¹ effundī, 28, 24. — ¹² coercēret, 17, 8.

senātum ad sē venientem sedēns¹ excēpit et quendam ut adsurgeret monentem irātō voltū respēxit. Cum Antōnius, Caesaris in omnibus bellis comes² et tunc cōsulātūs conlēga, capiti ēius in sellā aureā sedentis prō rōstris diadēma, insigne



FIG. 35. — MARCUS ANTONIUS.

rēgium, imposuisset, id ita ab eō est repulsum ut nōn offēnsus vidērētur. Quā rē coniūrātum in eum est ā sexāgintā amplius viris, Cassiō et Brūtō ducibus, dēcrētumque eum Idibus Mārtiis in senātū cōnfodere.

His Assassination.

12. Plūrima indicia futūrī periculī obtulerant³ dii immortālēs. Uxor Calpurnia, territa nocturnō visū, ut Idibus Mārtiis domī subsisteret orābat, et Spūrinna haruspex praedixerat⁴ ut proximōs diēs trīgintā quasi fātālis cavēret, quōrum ultimus⁵ erat Idūs Mārtiae. Hōc igitur diē Caesar Spūrinnae,

Cf. ¹ sedēret, p. 60, l. 8. — ² comitēs, 65, 3. — ³ oblātā, 44, 11. — ⁴ praedicī, 28, 5. — ⁵ ulterior, 65, 13.

“Ecquid¹ scīs,” inquit, “Īdūs Mārtiās iam vēnisse?” et is,
 “Ecquid scīs illās nōndum praeterisse²?” Atque cum Caesar eō diē in senātum vēnisset, adsidentem coniūrātī speciē
 offici³ circumstetērunt ilicōque ūnus, quasi aliquid rogātūrus,
 5 propius accessit renuentique ab utrōque⁴ umerō togam adprehendit. Deinde clāmantem “Ista quidem vīs⁵ est,” Casca, ūnus ē coniūrātis, adversum volnerat paulum infrā iugulum. Caesar Cascae brachium adreptum graphiō trāiēcit cōnātusque⁶ prōsilire aliō volnere tardātus est. Dein ut animadver-
 10 tit undique sē strictis⁷ pugiōnibus petī, togā caput obvolvīt⁸ et ita tribus et viginti plāgis cōnfossus est. Cum Mārcum Brūtum, quem fili locō habēbat, in sē inruentem⁹ vidisset, dixisse fertur: “Tū quoque, mī fili!”

His Views of Death. Fate of his Murderers.

13. Illud inter omnis ferē cōstitit,¹⁰ tālem eī mortem
 15 paene ex sententiā obtigisse.¹¹ Nam et quondam cum apud Xenophōntem lēgisset Cŷrum ultimā valētūdine¹² mandāsse quaedam dē fūnere suō, aspernātus tam lentum¹³ mortis genus, subitam sibi celeremque optāverat, et pridīe quam occiderētur in sermōne nātō super cēnam quisnam esset finis vitae com-
 20 modissimus, repentinum inopinātumque praetulerat. Percusōrum autem neque trienniō quisquam amplius supervixit neque suā morte dēfūctus¹⁴ est. Damnāti omnēs alius aliō cāsū periērunt,¹⁵ pars naufragiō, pars proeliō; nōn nulli sēmet eōdem illō pugiōne quō Caesarem violāverant interēmērunt.¹⁶

Treatment of his Enemies.

25 14. Quō rārīor in rēgibus et principibus viris moderātiō, hōc laudanda magis est. C. Iūlius Caesar victōriā cīvili

Cf. ¹ ecquid, p. 60, l. 14. — ² praeterīre, 47, 9. — ³ officiō, 12, 25. — ⁴ utraque, 17, 11. — ⁵ vim, 46, 5. — ⁶ cōnātus est, 37, 5. — ⁷ strictō, 52, 13. — ⁸ obvolūtō, 69, 2. — ⁹ inruērunt, 53, 24. — ¹⁰ cōnstat, 40, 2. — ¹¹ obtigit, 9, 18. — ¹² valētūdinem, 21, 7. — ¹³ lentō, 27, 19. — ¹⁴ dēfūctā, 68, 1. — ¹⁵ periit, 18, 8. — ¹⁶ interēptus est, 70, 7.

clémentissimē ūsus est; cum enim scrinia dēprehendisset epistulārum ad Pompēium missārum ab eīs quī vidēbantur aut in diversis aut in neutrīs fuisse partibus, legere¹ nōluit, sed combussit, nē forte in multōs gravius cōsulendī locum darent. Cicerō hanc laudem eximiam² Caesari tribuit, quod nihil oblivisci³ solēret nisi iniuriās. Simultātis omnis occāsione oblātā libēns dēposuit. Ultrō⁴ ac prior scripsit C. Calvō post fāmōsa ēius adversum sē epigrammata. Valerium Catullum, cūius versiculis fāmam suam lacerātam nōn ignōrābat, adhibuit cēnae.⁵ C. Memmī suffragātor in petitiōne cōsulātūs fuit, etsi asperrimās fuisse ēius in sē ōrātiōnēs sciēbat.

Personal Appearance and Habits.

15. Fuisse trāditur excelsā⁶ statūrā, ōre⁷ paulō plēniōre, nigris vegetisque oculis, capite calvō; quam calvitī dēfōrmitātem, quod saepe obtrectātōrum iocis obnoxia erat, aegrē ferēbat. Ideō ex omnibus dēcrētis sibi ā senātū populōque honōribus nōn alium aut recēpit aut ūsūrpāvit libentius⁸ quam iūs laureae perpetuō gestandae. Vinī parcissimum eum fuisse nē inimicī quidem negāvērunt. Verbum Catōnis est, ūnum ex omnibus Caesarem ad ēvertendam⁹ rem pūblicam sōbrium accessisse. Armōrum et equitandi peritissimus, labōris ultrā fidem patiēns; in agmine nōn numquam equō, saepius pedibus anteibat, capite dētēctō,¹⁰ seu sōl, seu imber erat. Longissimās viās incrēdibili celeritāte cōficiēbat, ut persaepe nūntiōs¹¹ dē sē praevenīret¹²; neque eum morābantur, flūmina, quae vel nandō vel innīxus inflātis ūtribus¹³ trāiciēbat.

Cf. ¹ legit, p. 27, l. 3. — ² eximiae, 57, 14. — ³ oblītī, 41, 6. — ⁴ ultrō, 31, 7. — ⁵ cēnam, 4, 16. — ⁶ excelsā, 56, 10. — ⁷ ōre, 66, 1. — ⁸ libentius, 29, 21. — ⁹ ēvertit, 61, 20. — ¹⁰ dētēxit, 5, 7. — ¹¹ nūntium, 20, 2. — ¹² praevenit, 70, 26. — ¹³ ūtrem, 45, 5.



FIG. 36. — HANNIBAL.

LIFE OF HANNIBAL. (B.C. 247-183.)

[NEPOS: LIVES.]

His Extraordinary Military Ability.

1. Hannibal, Hamilcaris filius, Carthāginiēnsis. Sī vērum est, quod nēmō dubitat, ut populus Rōmānus omnīs gentis virtūte superārit,¹ nōn est infitiandum Hannibalem tantō praestitisse cēterōs² imperātōrēs prūdentiā quantō populus Rōmānus antecēdat fortitudīne cūctās³ nātiōnēs. Nam quo- 5 tiēscumque cum eō congressus⁴ est in Italiā, semper successit superior. Quod nisi domī civium suōrum invidiā⁵ dēbilitātus esset, Rōmānōs vidētur superāre potuisse. Sed multōrum obtrectātiō dēvicit⁶ ūnius virtūtem.

Hatred of the Romans Inspired by his Father.

Hic autem velut hērēditāte relictum odium⁷ paternum 10 ergā Rōmānōs sīc cōservāvit ut prius animam⁸ quam id dēposuerit, quī quidem, cum patriā pulsus esset et aliēnārū opum indigēret, numquam dēstiterit animō bellāre⁹ cum Rōmānīs.

2. Nam ut omittam Philippum, quem absēns hostem red- 15 didit¹⁰ Rōmānīs, omnium eis temporibus potentissimus rēx Antiochus fuit. Hunc tantā cupiditāte incendit bellandī ut ūsque ā rubrō mari arma cōnātus¹¹ sit inferre Italīae. Ad quem cum lēgātī vēnissent Rōmānī, quī dē ēius voluntāte explōrārent darentque operam¹² cōnsiliīs clandestinīs¹³ ut 20

Cf. ¹ superābant, p. 7, l. 1. — ² cēterīs, 19, 11. — ³ cūctīs, 9, 15. — ⁴ congressus est, 37, 1. — ⁵ invidiā, 3, 27. — ⁶ dēvicit, 69, 20. — ⁷ odī, 18, 3. — ⁸ animam, 3, 13. — ⁹ bellāvērunt, 17, 22. — ¹⁰ reddēbātur, 26, 4. — ¹¹ cōnātus, 72, 8. — ¹² operam, 63, 21. — ¹³ clandestinīs, 9, 25.

Hannibalem in suspiciōnem rēgi addūcerent, tamquam ab
 ipsis corruptum alia atque anteā sentire, neque id frūstrā
 fēcissent, idque Hannibal comperisset ¹ sēque ab interiōri-
 bus cōsiliis sēgregārī vidisset, tempore datō adiit ad rēgem
 5 eīque cū multa dē fidē suā et odiō in Rōmānōs commemo-
 rāsset, hōc adiūnxit: "Pater meus," inquit,² "Hamilcar,
 puerulō mē utpote³ nōn amplius novem annōs nātō, in Hispā-
 niam imperātor proficiscēns Carthāgine, Iovī optimō māximō
 hostiās immolāvit. Quae divīna rēs dum cōficiēbātur, quae-
 10 sivit ā mē vellemne sēcum in castra proficisci. Id cum
 libenter⁴ accēpissēm atque ab eō petere coepissēm nē dubi-
 tāret dūcere, tum ille, 'Faciam,' inquit, 'sī mihi fidem quam
 postulō dederis.' Simul⁵ mē ad āram addūxit apud quam
 sacrificāre instituerat, eamque cēteris remōtis tenentem iūrāre
 15 iūssit numquam mē in amicitīā cum Rōmānīs fore. Id ego
 iūs iūrandum patrī datum ūsque ad hanc aetātem⁶ ita cōn-
 servāvī ut nēmini dubium esse dēbeat⁷ quīn reliquō tempore
 eādem mente sim futūrus. Quā rē sī quid amicē dē Rōmānīs
 cōgitābis, nōn imprūdenter fēcēris sī mē cēlāris⁸; cum quidem
 20 bellum parābis, tē ipsum frūstrāberis sī nōn mē in eō prin-
 cipem posueris."

Service in Spain. Takes Saguntum. Then Leads his Army into Italy.

3. Hāc igitur⁹ quā diximus aetāte cum patre in Hispāniam
 profectus est; cūius post obitum, Hasdrubale imperātōre
 suffectō,¹⁰ equitātui omnī praefuit. Hōc quoque interfectō
 25 exercitus summam imperī ad eum dētulit. Id Carthāginem
 delātum publicē comprobātum est. Sic Hannibal, minor
 quīnque et vīginti annīs nātus¹¹ imperātor factus, proximō
 trienniō omnis gentīs Hispāniae bellō subēgit,¹² Saguntum,

Cf. ¹ comperisset, p. 36, l. 18. — ² inquit, 3, 16. — ³ utpote, 29, 1.
 — ⁴ libentius, 73, 17. — ⁵ simul, 28, 25. — ⁶ aetātem, 17, 4. — ⁷ dēbēre,
 28, 9. — ⁸ cēlāre, 43, 7. — ⁹ igitur, 35, 1. — ¹⁰ suffectus, 56, 6. — ¹¹ nātō,
 l. 7. — ¹² subēgisset, 66, 9.

foederatam civitatem, vi expugnavit, tris exercitus maximos comparavit.¹ Ex his unum in Africam misit, alterum cum Hasdrubale fratre in Hispania reliquit, tertium in Italiam secum duxit. Saltum² Pyrenaicum transiit. Quaecumque iter fecit cum omnibus incolis³ conflixit; neminem nisi victum 5 dimisit.⁴ Ad Alpīs posteaquam venit, quae Italiam ab Gallia seiungunt, quas nemo umquam cum exercitu ante eum praeter Herculem Graium transierat (quo facto is hodie saltus Graius appellatur), Alpicōs cōnantis prohibere transitū concidit, loca patefecit,⁵ itinera muniit,⁶ effecit ut eā elephantus 10 ornatus ire posset quā antea unus homō inermis vix poterat rēpere. Hāc cōpiās trādūxit in Italiamque pervēnit.

Defeats the Romans in Three Battles.

4. Cōflixerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornēliō Scipiōne cōsule eumque pepulerat. Cum hōc eōdem Clastidi apud Padum dēcernit sauciumque inde ac fugatum⁷ dimittit. Ter- 15 tiō idem Scipiō cum conlēgā Tiberiō Longō apud Trebiam



FIG. 37. — COIN OF THE FABIAN FAMILY.

adversus eum venit. Cum eis manum conseruit, utrosque profligavit.⁸ Inde per Ligurēs Apenninum transiit petens Etruriam. Hōc itinere adeo gravi morbo⁹ adficitur oculōrum ut postea numquam dextrō aequē bene ūsus sit. Quā valē- 20 tūdine¹⁰ cum etiamtum premerētur lecticāque ferrētur, C.

Cf. ¹ comparavit, p. 7, l. 22. — ² saltū, 57, 12. — ³ incolae, 6, 16. — ⁴ dimittit, 27, 8. — ⁵ patefactis, 53, 2. — ⁶ muniire, 70, 23. — ⁷ fugatus, 37, 1. — ⁸ profligavit, 69, 14. — ⁹ morbus, 26, 8. — ¹⁰ valētūdinem, 24, 23.

Flāminium cōsulem apud Trasumēnum cum exercitū insidiis¹ circumventum occidit, neque multō post C. Centēnium praetōrem cum dēlēctā manū saltūs² occupantem. Hinc in Āpūliam pervēnit. Ibi obviam³ ei vērunt duo cōsulēs, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. Utriusque exercitūs ūnō proeliō fugāvit, Paulum cōsulem occidit et aliquot praetereā cōsulārēs, in eis Cn. Servilium Geminum, quī superiōre annō fuerat cōsul.

Approaches Rome. Outgenerals Q. Fabius Maximus. Wins Many Battles.

5. Hāc pūgnā pūgnātā Rōmam profectus est nūllō resistente. In propinquis urbī montibus morātus est. Cum aliquot ibi diēs castra habuisset et Capuam reverterētur, Q. Fabius Māximus, dictātor Rōmānus, in agrō Falernō ei sē obiēcit. Hic clausus locōrum angustiiis⁴ noctū sine ūllō dētrimentō exercitūs sē expēdivit Fabiōque, callidissimō⁵ imperātōrī, dedit verba. Namque obductā nocte sarmenta in cornibus iuvencōrum dēligātā⁶ incendit⁷ eiusque generis multitudinem māgnam dispālātā immisit. Quō repentinō⁸ obiectō visū tantum terrōrem iniēcit exercituī Rōmānōrum ut ēgredi extrā vāllum nēmō sit ausus.⁹ Hanc post rem gestam nōn ita multis diēbus M. Minucium Rūfum, magistrum equitum pari ac dictātōrem imperiō, dolō¹⁰ prōductum in proelium fugāvit. Tiberium Semprōnium Gracchum, iterum cōsulem, in Lūcānis absēns in insidiās inductum sustulit. M. Claudium Mārcellum, quīnquiēs cōsulem, apud Venusiam parī modō interfēcit. Longum est omnia ēnumerāre proelia. Quā rē hōc ūnum satis erit dictum, ex quō intellegī possit quantus ille fuerit: ¹¹quam diū in Italiā fuit, nēmō ei in aciē restitit, nēmō adversus eum post Cannēensem pūgnam in campō castra posuit.

Cf. ¹ insidiās, p. 51, l. 1. — ² saltum, 77, 4. — ³ obviam, 41, 2. — ⁴ angustias, 19, 4. — ⁵ callidē, 9, 16. — ⁶ dēligātā, 10, 9. — ⁷ incendit, 75, 17. — ⁸ repentinum, 72, 20. — ⁹ audēbis, 60, 3. — ¹⁰ dolus, 29, 19. — ¹¹ quam diū, 4, 10.

Recalled to Africa, he is Defeated at Zama by P. Scipio.

6. Hinc invictus patriam dēfēsum revocātus¹ bellum gessit adversus P. Scipiōnem, filium ēius Scipiōnis quem ipse primō apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertiō apud Trebiam fugārat. Cum hōc exhaustis iam patriae facultātibus² cupivit impraesentiārum bellum compōnere, quō valentior postea 5

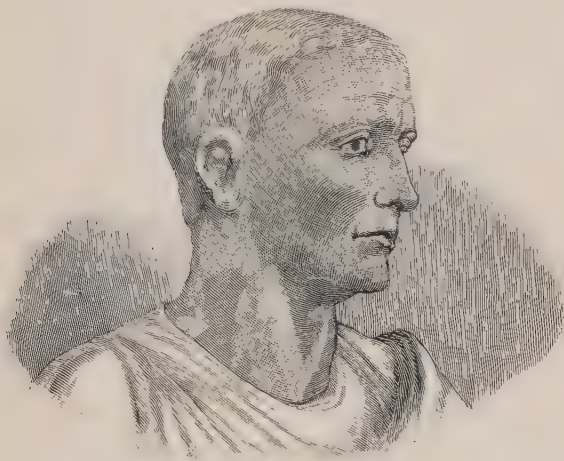


FIG. 38. — PUBLIUS CORNELIUS SCIPIO AFRICANUS.

congrederētur.³ In conloquium convēnit; condiціōnēs nōn convēnērunt. Post id factum paucis diēbus apud Zamam cum eōdem cōnflīxit⁴; pulsus (incrēdibile dictū) bīduō et duābus noctibus Hadrūmētum pervēnit, quod abest ab Zamā circiter milia passuum trecenta. In hāc fugā Numidae, qui 10 simul cum eō ex aciē excesserant, insidiāti sunt ei; quōs nōn solum effūgit, sed etiam ipsōs oppressit.⁵ Hadrūmēti

Cf. ¹ revocantēs, p. 17, l. 13. — ² facultātem, 24, 6. — ³ congressus est, 37, 1. — ⁴ cōnflīxit, 77, 5. — ⁵ oppressi sunt, 51, 7.

reliquōs ē fugā conlēgit; novis dēlēctibus paucis diēbus multōs contrāxit.

Peace between Rome and Carthage. Hannibal Flees to Antiochus in Syria.

7. Cum in adparandō ācerrimē esset occupātus, Carthāginiēnsēs bellum cum Rōmānis composuērunt. Ille nihilō
 5 sēcius exercitui postea praeuit rēque in Āfricā gessit, itemque Māgō frāter eius ūsque ad P. Sulpiciū C. Aurēliū cōsulēs. His enim magistrātibus lēgātī Carthāginiēnsēs Rōmam vēnērunt, quī senātui populōque Rōmānō grātiās agerent, quod cum eis pācem fēcissent, ob eamque rem
 10 corōnā¹ aureā eōs dōnārent simulque peterent ut obsidēs² eōrum Fregellis essent captivique redderentur. His ex senātus cōsultō respōsum est: ‘mūnus eōrum grātum acceptumque esse; obsidēs quō locō rogārent futūrōs; captivōs nōn remissūrōs, quod Hannibalem, cūius operā sus-
 15 ceptum³ bellum foret,⁴ inimicissimum nōminī Rōmānō, etiam nunc cum imperiō⁵ apud exercitum habērent itemque frātre eīus Māgōnem.’ Hōc respōsō Carthāginiēnsēs cōgnitō Hannibalem domum et Māgōnem revocārunt. Hūc ut rediit, rēx factus est, postquam imperātor fuerat annō
 20 secundō et vicēsimo; ut enim Rōmae cōsulēs, sic Carthāgine quotannis annui binī rēgēs creābantur. In eō magistrātū parī diligentīā sē Hannibal praeuit⁶ ac fuerat in bellō. Namque effēcit ex novis vectigālibus nōn solum ut esset pecūnia quae Rōmānis ex foedere penderētur, sed
 25 etiam superesset⁷ quae in aerariō repōnerētur. Deinde, M. Claudiō L. Furiō cōsulibus, Rōmā lēgātī Carthāginem vēnērunt. Hōs Hannibal ratus⁸ suī exposcendī grātiā missōs, priusquam eis senātus darētur, nāvem ascendit clam atque in

Cf. ¹ corōnā, p. 63, l. 19. — ² obsidēs, 67, 11. — ³ suscipere, 50, 9. — ⁴ foret, 57, 26. — ⁵ imperī, 76, 25. — ⁶ praebere, 30, 27. — ⁷ supererant, 37, 1. — ⁸ ratus, 68, 10.

Syriam ad Antiochum profūgit. Hāc rē palam factā Poenī nāvis duās quae eum comprehenderent, sī possent cōsequi,¹ misērunt; bona eius pūblicārunt, domum ā fundāmentis diēcērunt,² ipsum exsulem iūdicārunt.

Aids Antiochus against the Romans.

8. At Hannibal annō tertiō postquam domō profūgerat, 5
L. Cornēliō Q. Minuciō cōsulibus, cum quīque nāvibus
Āfricam accessit³ in finibus Cŷrēnaeōrum, sī forte Carthā-
giniēnsēs ad bellum Antiochī spē fidūciāque indūcerentur,
cui iam persuāserat ut cum exercitibus in Ītaliā proficisce-



FIG. 39. — COIN OF ANTIOCHUS THE GREAT.

rētur. Hūc Māgōnem frātre excivit. Id ubi Poenī rescī- 10
vērunt, Māgōnem eādem quā frātre absentem adfēcērunt
poenā. Illi dēspērātis rēbus cum solvissent⁴ nāvis āc vēla
ventis dedissent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pervēnit. Dē
Māgōnis interitū duplex memoria prōdita est; namque aliī
naufagiō, aliī ā servulīs ipsius interfectum eum scriptum 15
reliquērunt. Antiochus autem, sī tam in gerendō bellō cōn-
siliis eius pārēre⁵ voluisset quam in suscipiendō instituerat,
propius Tiberī quam Thermopylis dē summā⁶ imperī dimi-
cāset. Quem etsī multa stultē cōnārī vidēbat, tamen nullā
dēseruit in rē. Praefuit⁷ paucis nāvibus, quās ex Syriā iūssus 20

Cf. ¹ cōsequeretur, p. 30, l. 16. — ² disicerentur, 40, 18. — ³ accēdēbat, 37, 20. — ⁴ solvērunt, 40, 7. — ⁵ pārēbant, 33, 4. — ⁶ summam, 76, 25. — ⁷ praefuit, 80, 5.

erat in Asiam dūcere, eisque adversus Rhodiōrum classem in Pamphylīo marī cōnflīxit.¹ Quō cum multitūdine adversāriōrum suī superārentur, ipse quō cornū rem gessit fuit superior.

Proceeds to Crete. Eludes the Avarice of the Cretans.

5 9. Antiochō fugātō, verēns² nē dēderētur, quod sine dubiō accidisset³ sī suī fēcisset potestātem, Crētā ad Gortyniōs vēnit, ut ibi quō sē cōferret⁴ cōnsiderāret. Vidit autem vir omnium callidissimus in māgnō sē fore periculō, nisi quid prōvidisset, propter avāritiam Crētēnsium; māgnam enim
10 sēcum pecūniam portābat, dē quā sciēbat exisse fāmam. Itaque capit tāle⁵ cōnsilium. Amphorās complūris complet plumbō, summās operit aurō et argentō. Hās praesentibus principibus dēpōnit in templō Diānae, simulāns sē suās fortūnās illōrum fidei crēdere. His in errōrem inductis, statuās
15 aēneās⁶ quās sēcum portābat omni suā pecūniā complet eāsque in prōpatulō domi abicit. Gortynii templum māgnā cūrā custōdiunt, nōn tam ā cēteris quam ab Hannibale, nē ille inscientibus eis tolleret sēcumque dūceret.

Goes to Prusias, King of Bithynia.

10. Sic cōservātis suis rēbus Poenus, inlūsis Crētēnsibus omnibus, ad Prusiam in Pontum pervēnit. Apud quem eōdem animō fuit ergā Italiam, neque aliud quicquam ēgit⁷ quam rēgem armāvit et exercuit adversus Rōmānōs. Quem cum vidēret domesticis opibus minus esse rōbustum, conciliābat cēterōs rēgēs, adiungēbat bellicōsās⁸ nātiōnēs. Dissi-
25 dēbat ab eō Pergamēnus rēx Eumenēs, Rōmānis amicissimus, bellumque inter eōs gerēbātur et marī et terrā; quō magis cupiēbat eum Hannibal opprimī.⁹ Sed utrobique Eumenēs

Cf. ¹ cōnflīxit, p. 77, l. 5. — ² verērētur, 38, 11. — ³ accidit, 47, 7. — ⁴ contulērunt, 54, 6. — ⁵ tālium, 8, 2. — ⁶ aēneīs, 28, 22. — ⁷ ēgērunt, 23, 8. — ⁸ bellicōsum, 2, 12. — ⁹ oppressit, 79, 12.

plūs valēbat ¹ propter Rōmānōrum societātem ; quem si remō-
visset, faciliōra sibi cētera fore arbitrābātur.² Ad hunc
interficiendum tālem iniit ratiōnem. Classe paucis diēbus
erant dēcrētūri.³ Superābātur nāvium multitūdine ; dolō
erat pūgnandum, cum pār nōn esset armis. Imperāvit 5
quam plūrimās venēnātās serpentis vivās conligī eāsque in
vāsa ⁴ fictilia ⁵ cōnici. Hārum cum effēcisset māgnam multi-
tūdinem, diē ipsō quō factūrus erat nāvāle proelium classi-
ārīōs convocat eisque praecipit omnēs ut in ūnam Eumenis
rēgis concurrant nāvem, ā cēteris tantum satis habeant sē 10
dēfendere. Id illōs facile serpentium multitūdine cōnsecū-
tūrōs. Rēx autem in quā nāvī veherētur ⁶ ut scirent sē fac-
tūrum ; quem si aut cēpissent aut interfēcissent, māgnō eis
pollicētur ⁷ praemiō fore.

Assists Prusias in his War with Eumenes, King of Pergamus.

11. Tālī ⁸ cohortātiōne militum factā classis ab utrisque 15
in proelium dēdūcitur. Quārum aciē cōstitutā, priusquam
sīgnum pūgnae darētur, Hannibal, ut palam ⁹ faceret suis
quō locō Eumenēs esset, tabellārium in scaphā cum cādū-
ceō mittit. Quī ubi ad nāvis adversāriōrum pervēnit epis-
tulamque ostendēs ¹⁰ sē rēgem professus ¹¹ est quaerere, 20
statim ad Eumenem dēductus est, quod nēmō dubitābat
quin aliquid dē pāce esset scriptum. Tabellārius, ducis
nāvī dēclarātā suis, eōdem unde erat ēgressus sē recēpit.
At Eumenēs solūtā epistolā nihil in eā repperit ¹² nisi quae
ad inridendum eum pertinērent. Cūius etsī causam mirābā- 25
tur neque reperiēbat, tamen proelium statim committere nōn
dubitāvit.¹³ Hōrum in concursū Bithŷniī Hannibalis prae-
ceptō ūniversi nāvem Eumenis adoriuntur. Quōrum vim

Cf. ¹ valēre, p. 53, l. 15. — ² arbitror, 25, 6. — ³ dēcernit, 77, 15. —
⁴ vāsīs, 42, 6. — ⁵ fictilem, 28, 25. — ⁶ vehēbātur, 40, 19. — ⁷ pollicita
sum, 39, 12. — ⁸ tāle, 82, 11. — ⁹ palam, 81, 1. — ¹⁰ ostendit, 50, 6. —
¹¹ profitēmini, 36, 15. — ¹² repertus est, 50, 8. — ¹³ dubitāret, 76, 11.

rēx cum sustinēre nōn posset, fugā salūtem petit; quam cōsecūtus nōn esset, nisi intrā sua praesidia sē recēpisset, quae in proximō litore¹ erant conlocāta. Reliquae Pergamēnae nāvēs cum adversāriōs premerent ācrius, repente² in
 5 eās vāsa fictilia, dē quibus suprā mentiōnem fēcimus, conici coepta sunt. Quae iacta initiō rīsum³ pūgnantibus concitārunt neque quā rē id fieret poterat intellegī. Postquam autem nāvis suās opplētās cōspēxērunt serpentibus, novā rē perterriti, cum quid potissimum vitārent⁴ nōn vidērent,
 10 puppis vertērunt sēque ad sua castra nautica rettulērunt.⁵ Sic Hannibal cōsiliō arma Pergamēnōrum superāvit, neque tum solum, sed saepe aliās pedestribus cōpiis parī prūdentiā pepulit adversāriōs.

The Romans Demand Hannibal from Prusias. He Takes Poison and Dies.

12. Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū⁶ ut lēgātī
 15 Prūsiae Rōmae apud T. Quīntium Flāmininum cōsulārem cēnārent,⁷ atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā ex eis ūnus diceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāmininus senātui dētulit.⁸ Patrēs cōscripti, quī Hannibale vivō numquam sē sine insidiis futūrōs existimārent,⁹ lēgātōs
 20 in Bithyniam misērunt, in eis Flāmininum, quī ab rēge peterent nē inimicissimum suum sēcum habēret sibique dēderet.¹⁰ His Prūsiās negāre ausus nōn est; illud recūsāvit, nē id ā sē fieri postulārent quod adversus iūs hospitī¹¹ esset; ipsi, si possent, comprehenderent¹²; locum ubi esset facile inventūrōs. Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat in castellō quod
 25 ei ā rēge datum erat mūneri,¹³ idque sic aedificārat ut in omnibus partibus aedifici exitūs habēret, scilicet verēns nē ūsū¹⁴

Cf. ¹ litore, p. 40, l. 16. — ² repente, 27, 20. — ³ rīsū, 29, 20. — ⁴ vitantibus, 10, 3. — ⁵ referrent, 40, 22. — ⁶ cāsū, 6, 4. — ⁷ cēnāvit, 45, 5. — ⁸ dētulit, 66, 23. — ⁹ existimāret, 44, 3. — ¹⁰ dēderētur, 82, 5. — ¹¹ hospitīō, 48, 7. — ¹² comprehēnsus, 57, 12. — ¹³ mūnus, 80, 12. — ¹⁴ ūsū, 30, 12.

veniret quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmānōrum vēnissent
 āc multitudine domum ēius circumdedissent, puer ab iānuā¹
 prōspiciens Hannibali dixit plūris praeter cōsuētūdinem
 armātōs adpārere. Quī imperāvit eī ut omnis forīs² aedifici
 circumiret āc properē sibi nūntiāret num eōdem modō un- 5
 dique obsidērētur.³ Puer cum celeriter quid esset renūnti-
 āsset omnisque exitūs occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn
 fortuitō factum, sed sē petī neque sibi diūtius vitam esse
 retinendam. Quam nē aliēnō arbitriō⁴ dimitteret, memor
 pristinārum virtūtum venēnum,⁵ quod semper sēcum habēre 10
 cōsuērat,⁶ sūmpsit.

The Date of his Death. His Writings.

13. Sic vir fortissimus, multis variisque perfūctus labōri-
 bus, annō adquiēvit septuāgēsīmō. Quibus cōsulibus in-
 terierit nōn convenit. Namque Atticus M. Claudīō Mārcellō
 Q. Fabiō Labeōne cōsulibus mortuum in annālī suō scrip- 15
 tum relīquit, at Polybius L. Aemiliō Paulō Cn. Baebiō Tam-
 philō, Sulpicius autem Blithō P. Cornēliō Cethēgō M. Baebiō
 Tamphilō. Atque hīc tantus vir tantisque bellis districtus
 nōn nihil temporis tribuit litteris. Namque aliquot⁷ ēius
 librī sunt, Graecō sermōne cōfectī, in eis ad Rhodiōs dē 20
 Cn. Manlī Volsōnis in Asiā rēbus gestis. Hūius belli gesta
 multī memoriae prōdidērunt,⁸ sed ex his duo, quī cum eō in
 castris fuērunt simulque vixērunt quam diū fortūna passa⁹
 est, Silēnus et Sōsilus Lacedaemonius. Atque hōc Sōsilō
 Hannibal litterārum Graecārum ūsus est doctōre. 25

Cf. ¹ iānuam, p. 50, l. 25. — ² foribus, 53, 2. — ³ obsidēre, 37, 16. —
⁴ arbitrium, 67, 1. — ⁵ venēnum, 53, 12. — ⁶ cōsuēvit, 45, 6. — ⁷ ali-
 quot, 78, 6. — ⁸ prōdita est, 81, 14. — ⁹ passus est, 69, 7.

III. POETICAL SELECTIONS.

1. The Stag.

Ad fóntem cérvus, cúm bibísset, réstitít,
et ín liquóre vídit éffigiém suám.

Ibi dúm rāmósa mírāns laúdat córnuá,
crūrúmque nímiam ténuítātem vítuperát,
5 vēnántum súbitō vóciús contérítús,
per cámpum fúgere coépít, ét cursú leví
canés ēlúsit. Sílva tum éxcēpít ferúm,
ín quā reténtis ímpedítus córniús,
lacerári coépít mórsiús saevís canúm.

10 'Tunc móriēns vócem hanc édidísse dícítúr :
'Ō me ínfélicem! quí nunc démum íntéllegó,
útília míhi quam fúerint quae dēspēxeram,
et quae laudāram quántum lúctús hábuerínt.'

PHAEDRUS.

2. Friends and Fortune Fly Together.

Dónece rís fēlíc, multós numerābis amícōs :

15 Témpora sí fuerínt núbila, sólus erís.
Ádspicis, út veniánt ad cándida tēcta colúmbae,
Accipiát nullās sórdida túrris avís?

Hórrea fórmicae tendúnt ad inānia núnquam.

Núllus ad ámissās íbit amícus opēs.

20 Útque comés radiós per sólís eúntibus úmbra est,
Cúm latet híc pressús núbibus, ílla fugít,
Móbile síc sequitúr fortúnae lúmina vólguis :
Quae simul ínductā núbē tegúntur, abít.

OVID : *Trist.*, I, ix, 5-14.

3. Epitaph of a Roman Matron.

Hospés, quod dícō paúlum *est*, ádstā āc pérlegé.
 Hīc ést sepúlcrum hau púlchrum púlchrae fēminaé :
 nōmén paréntēs nōminārunt Claúdiām ;
 suúm marítum córde dílēxít suó :
 nātōs duós creávit : hórunc álterúm 5
 in térrā línquit, álium súb terrá locát.
 Sermóne lépidō *tum* autótem incéssū cómmodō
 domúm servávit, lánam fécit. Díxē, abí.

Corpus Inscriptionum Latinarum.

4. Daemones's Dream.

Mírís modís dī lúdōs fáciunt hómīnībús :
 nē dórmiéntīs quídem sínúnt quiésceré. 10
 Velút ego hāc nócte quae prōcēssit prōxumá
 mīrum átque īncítum sómniāvī sómniúm.
 Ad hirúndinínūm nídum vísast símia
 ascēnsiōnem ut fáceret ádmolíríer ;
 neque eās ērípere quíbat índē. Póstibí 15
 vidétur ad mē símia ádgredíríer,
 rogāre scālās út darem útendās sibí.
 Ego ad hóc exémplum símiaé respóndeó,
 nātās ex Phílomēla átque ex Prógnē esse hirúndinēs.
 Ago *cum* illā, néquid nóceat méis populáribús. 20
 Atque illa nímiō iám fierí feróciór,
 vidétur últrō míhi malúm minitárier.
 In iús vocát mēd. Íbi ego nésicio quó modó
 irátus vídeor médiām adrípere símiam ;
 conclúdo in víncla bēstiám nequíssumám. 25
 Nunc *quam* ad rem dícā hóc áttinēre sómniúm,
 numquam hódie quívi ad cóniectúram ēvāderé.

PLAUTUS: *Rudens*, III, i, 1-20.

5. The Death of the Pet Sparrow.

Lúgēte, ó Venerēs Cupídinēsque,
 Ét quantúmst hominúm venústiorum.
 Pásser mórtuus ést meae puéllae,
 Pásser, déliciae meae puéllae,
 5 Quém plūs illa oculís suis amábat :
 Nám mellítus erat suámque nórat
 Ípsa tám bene quám puélla mátre,
 Néc sēsē á gremiō illiús movébat,
 Séd circúmsiliēns modo húc modo illúc
 10 Ád sōlám dominam úsque pípiábat.
 Quí nunc ít per itér tenébricōsum
 Íllúc únde negánt redíre quémquam.
 Át vōbís male sít, malaé tenébrae
 Órci, quae ómnia bélla dēvorátis :
 15 Tám bellúm mihi pásserem ábstulístis.
 Ó factúm male ! ió misélle pásser !
 Túā núnc operá meae puellae
 Fléndō túrgidulí rubént ocellí.

CATULLUS: 3.

6. How to Train Children.

Et érrat lóngē meā quidém senténtiā,
 20 Quí impérium crédat grávius ésse aut stábiliús,
 Vī quód fit, quam illud quód amicítiā adiúngitúr.
 Mea síc est ratiō et síc animúm índucō meúm :
 Maló coactus quí suum ófficiúm facít,
 Dum id rescítum írri crédit, tántispér pavét :
 25 Si spérat fóre clam, rúrsum ad ingeniúm redít.
 Ille quém benefíciō adiúngās ex animó facít,
 Studet pár reférre, praésēns ábsēnsque ídem erít.
 Hóc pátriumst, pótius cónsuēfácere fíliúm
 Suā spónte réctē fácere quam áliēnó metú :

Hōc páter āc dōminus ínterést : hōc quí nequít,
Fateátur nēscíre ímperāre líberís.

TERENCE: *Adelphi*, I, 65-77.

7. The City Mouse and the Country Mouse.

Ólim

rústicus úrbānúm mūrém mūs paúpere fértur
accēpísse cavó, veterém vetus hósper amícum, 5
ásper et áttentús quaesítis, út tamen ártum
sólveret hósperís animúm. Quid múlta? neque ílle
séposití cicerís nec lóngae invídít avēnae,
áridum et óre feréns acínúm sēmésaque lárdi
frústa dedít, cupiéns variá fastídía cēnā 10
víncere tángentís male síngula dénte supérbō ;
cúm pater ípse domús paleá porréctus in hórna
éssét adór loliúmque, dapís melióra relínquēns.
Tándem urbānus ad hunc : “ Quid té iuvat,” ínquit, “ amíce,
praérupití nemorís patiéntem vívere dórsō? 15
Vís tu hominēs urbémque ferís praepónere sílvís?
Cárpe viám, mihi créde, comés, terréstria quándō
mórtālís animás vívúnt sortíta, neque úlla est
aút mǎgnō aút parvó lēti fuga : quó, bone, círcā,
dúm licet, ín rēbús iūcúndis víve beátus, 20
víve memór quam síis aeví brevis.” Haéc ubi dícta
ágrestém pepulére, domó levis éxsilit ; índē
ámbo própósitúm peragúnt iter, úrbis avéntēs
moénia nócturní subrépere. Iámque tenébat
nóx mediúm caelí spatiúm, cum pónit utérque 25
ín locuplēte domó vestígia, rúbrō ubi cóccō
tíncta supér lectós candéret véstis ebúrnōs,
múltaque dé mǎgná superéssent fércula cēnā,
quae procul éxstrúctís ineránt hestérna canístis.
Érgō, ubi púrpureá porréctum in véste locávit 30

ágrestém, velutí succíntus cúrsitat hósper
 cóntinuátque dapés, nec nŕn verníliter ípsis
 fúngitur ófficiís, praelámbēns ómne quod ádfert.
 Ílle cubáns gaudét mūtātā sŕrte bonísque
 5 rēbus agít laetúm convívam, cúm subitŕ íngēns
 válvārúm strepitús lectís excússit utrúmque.
 Cúrrere pér tŕtúm pavidí concláve, magísque
 éxanimés trepidáre, simúl domus álta Molóssís
 pérsonuít canibús. Tum rústicus “Haúd mihi vítā
 10 ést opus hác,” ait, “ét valeás ; mē sílva cavúsque
 tútus ab ínsidiís tenuí sŕlābitur érvŕ.”

HORACE: *Sat.*, II, vi, 79-117.

8. The Enchantress Circe.

Prŕxima Círcaeae rādúntur lítora térrae,
 díves ínaccessŕs ubi Sŕlis fília lúcos
 ádsiduŕŕ resonát cantú tectísque supérbís
 15 úrit odŕrātám noctúrnā ín lúmina cédrum,
 árġútŕ tenuís percúrrēns péctine télās.
 Hínc exaúdirí gemitús íraéque leŕnum
 víncla recúsantum ét sērā sub nócte rudéntum,
 saétigeríque suēs atque ín praesaépibus úrsi
 20 saévire ác formaé māgnŕrum ululāre lupŕrum,
 quŕŕs hominum éx faciē dea saéva poténtibus hérbís
 índuerát Circē ín voltús ác térga ferārúm.

VIRGIL: *Aen.*, VII, 10-20.

9. The Golden Age.

Quám bene Sāturnŕŕ vivēbant rēge priús quam
 Téllús ín longās ést patefacta viās !
 25 Nŕndum caéruleās pinús contémpserat úndās
 Éffúsúm ventís praébuerátque sinúm ;
 Néc vagus ígnŕtís repetēns compéndia térris

Présserat éxternâ nâvita mérce ratém.
 Íllō nōn validús subiit iuga témpore taúrus,
 Nōn domitó frēnós ôre momórdit equus ;
 Nōn domus úlla forís habuít, nōn fíxus in ágris,
 Quí regerét certís fínibus árva, lapís. 5
 Ípsae mélla dabánt quercús, ultróque ferébant
 Obvia sécūrís úbera láctis ovés.
 Nōn aciēs, nōn íra fúit, nōn bélla, nec énsem
 Ímmítí saevús dúxerat árte fabér.
 Núnc Iove súb dominó caedés et vólnera sémper, 10
 Núnc mare, núnc lēti mílle repénite viaé.

TIBULLUS: I, iii, 35-50.

10. The Shortness of Life.

Ēheú fugácēs, Póstume, Póstumé,
 lābúntur ánni, nec pietás morám
 rŭgís et ístantí senéctae
 ádferet índomitaéque mórti ; 15

nōn sí trecénis quótquot eúnt diēs,
 amíce, plácēs ínlacrimábilém
 Plútóna taúris, quí ter ámplum
 Géryonén Tityónque trísti

compéscit úndā, scílicet ómnibús, 20
 quícúmque térrae múnere vėscimúr,
 ěnávigándā, síve régēs
 síve inopės erimús colóni.

Frūstrá cruéntō Máрте carėbimús
 frāctísque raúcī flúctibus Hádriaé, 25
 frūstrá per autómnós nocéntem
 córporibús metuėmus Aústrum.

Viséndus áter flúmine lánguidô
 Cōcŷtos érrāns ét Danaí genús
 infāme dāmnātúsque lóngi
 Sísyphus Aéolidés labóris.

5 Linquéndā téllūs ét domus ét placéns
 uxór, neque hárum quās colis árbórum
 tē praéter ínvisās cuprēssōs
 ūlla brevém dominúm sequétur.

Absúmet hérēs Caécuba dígnior
 10 servāta céntum clāvibus ét merô
 tinguét pavímentúm supérbô,
 póntificúm potiôre cénis.

HORACE: *Od.*, II, xiv.

11. The Joys of Country Life.

Beátus ílle quí procúl negótiís,
 ut prísca géns mortáliúm,
 15 patérna rúra bóbus éxercét suís,
 solútus ómnī faénoré,
 neque éxcitátur clássicó milés trucí,
 neque hórret írātúm maré,
 forúmque vítat ét supérba cíviúm
 20 poténtiôrum líminá.

HORACE: *Epod.*, ii, 1-8.

12. Live while you Live.

Aequám meméntô rébus in árduís
 servāre méntem, nón secus ín bonís
 ab ínsolénti témperátam
 laétitiā, moritúre Délli,

seu maéstus ómnī témpore víxerís,
 seu tē ín remótō grámine pér diēs
 fēstós reclínātúm beáris
 interióre notá Falérnī.

Quō pínus íngēns álbaque pópulús 5
 umbram hósptálem cónsociáre amánt
 rāmís? Quid óbliquó labórat
 lýmpha fugáx trepidáre rívō?

Hūc vína et únguenta ét nimiúm brevís 10
 flōrés amoénae férre iubé rosaé,
 dum rés et aétās ét sorórum
 fíla triúm patiúntur átra.

Cēdēs coéemptís sáltibus ét domó
 villáque flávus quám Tiberís lavít,
 cēdēs, et éxstrúctís in áltum 15
 dívitiís potiétur hérēs.

Dívésne prísco nátus ab Ínachó
 nil ínterést an paúper et ínfimá
 dē génte súb dívó moréris,
 víctima níl miserántis Órci. 20

Omnés eódem cógimur, ómniúm
 versátur úrna sérius óciús
 sors éxitúra et nós in aéternum
 éxsílium ímpositúra cúmbae.

HORACE: *Od.*, II, iii.

PART II.

SELECTIONS FROM CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR.

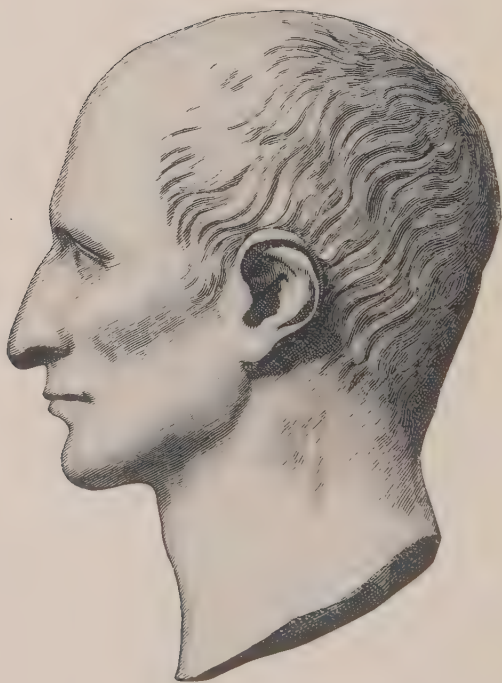


FIG. 40. — GAIUS IULIUS CAESAR.

INTRODUCTION.



I.

THE LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR.

“Julius Cæsar, whose remembrance yet
Lives in men's eyes, and will to ears and tongues
Be theme and hearing ever.” — *Shakespeare*.

“The greatest name in history.” — *Merivale*.

I. THE POLITICAL CONDITION OF ITALY IN THE FIRST CENTURY B.C.

THE Roman state was in form and name a commonwealth or republic. While Rome was a small agricultural community and her citizens a body of patriotic, sturdy, and independent freeholders, the task of government was easy and the constitution well adapted to its purpose. The wars that followed for the establishment and extension of her power at first fostered unity and soundness of national life. But in course of time Rome became an imperial state and took upon herself the guardianship of every country in the world. Wealth flowed into her coffers from every quarter of the earth, her citizens became corrupt, and the rule of the people became the rule of a rich landed aristocracy, whose principal ambition was to perpetuate its mischievous power. The organ of this aristocracy was the senate, a body of six or seven hundred men, who became members of it nominally by virtue of holding certain high offices, and who remained senators for life. In theory, therefore, the senate was elective, and rested on the popular will; but the members really became such on account of noble blood, wealth, or political, social, or other influence. Moreover, the great offices of the state came to be bought and sold openly and without shame, and opposing factions contended not with ballots alone, but with iron and

steel, so that the election place was frequently stained with the blood of the slain. It became increasingly difficult for one not possessing and willing to use such means to be elected to any office.

Opposed to the landed aristocracy was a class of wealthy capitalists known as *equites*, the "Equestrian Order." Many of these were as rich as the senators, but their wealth — most of it gained by usury, state contracts, slave-dealing, and tax-gathering — consisted of money instead of land. They took no active interest in politics excepting so far as they could influence legislation to their advantage by lobbying and bribing.

There was no industrious middle class among the free citizens of Rome. Manufacture on a large scale, as a means of wealth, was absolutely unknown ; while all mechanical industries were carried on by slaves. The poorer class of citizens, the *plebs*, were wholly influenced in their votes by their wealthy patrons or by scheming demagogues. The freedmen were the only class who could become rich by industry.

The rural portions of Italy were for the most part held in large plantations (*latifundia*), owned by nobles and cultivated by slaves, or, more frequently, occupied by great droves of cattle. This plantation system had crowded out the free peasant proprietors in almost all parts of the peninsula. After throwing up their farms, which foreign competition had made unprofitable, they flocked to Rome to swell the idle mob that lived on what their votes would bring. There still remained, especially in Northern Italy, a considerable body of small land owners ; and the municipal towns (*municipia*), about four hundred in number, whose territories comprised, politically speaking, the whole area of Italy, were still the home of a fairly prosperous middle class. These had all received Roman citizenship after the social war (B.C. 90) and might, by their substantial character and intelligence, have served as a strong opposition to the corrupt aristocracy at Rome ; but they lacked organization and leadership, and when they went to Rome to vote, they were wholly powerless against the turbulent political clubs of the metropolis, whose violence was a regular feature of all public proceedings. Yet in this class alone was the old Roman virtue to be found, and in it lay whatever hope there was to redeem the state.

Another menace to the government was in the constitution of the armies. After a man had been consul, he was given charge of a province and was put in command of several legions. While abroad he was not amenable to the government at home, and when he returned he used his old soldiers to further his political schemes, and rewarded them at the expense of the opposing faction, often by wholesale spoliation and murder.

Partisans of the nobility were known as *Optimâtes*; those opposed to them as *Populares*. Before Cæsar, the most conspicuous leader of the former had been Sulla, of the latter, Marius, Cæsar's uncle by marriage. These two men by their thirst for power and mutual hatred filled all Italy with bloodshed and terror for years. Under the established *régime* there was no continuity in government, but a perpetual see-saw between rivals. Rome was kept in a constant electioneering excitement accompanied by the worst forms of demoralization. All the vast interests of the Roman world were sacrificed to the luxury and ambition of a governing class wholly incompetent for its task; and the only resource against anarchy appears to have been that some one man, by craft or by force, should get all the reins of power into his single hand. That man was destined to be Julius Cæsar.

II. CÆSAR'S EARLIER CAREER.

“ Better be first, he said, in a little Iberian village,
Than be second in Rome.” — *Longfellow*.

Caius Julius Cæsar (*Gaius Iulius Caesar*) was born July 12th, B.C. 100, or, according to some authorities, two years earlier. Assuming the later date, he was six years younger than Pompey, his great rival, and Cicero, the distinguished orator. His ancestry was of the noblest, and was supposed to reach back on his mother's side to Ancus Marcius, the Roman king, and on the father's to Æneas, the founder of the Roman nation and reputed to be the son of a goddess.

The time of his birth was during the great ascendancy of the *Populares* under Marius, his uncle; and his childhood was passed amid the horrors of the proscriptions that marked Marius's dictatorship. Though Cæsar was connected by blood with the oldest and

proudest houses of Rome, he early showed his predilection for the party of the people ; and the sturdy Marius, with all his defects, doubtless exercised a marked influence over the life and destinies of his young nephew. Cæsar lost his father early in life, so that most of the responsibility for his education and bringing up rested upon his mother, Aurelia. She was a typical matron of the old school, managing her house with simplicity and frugality, and holding to the traditions and virtues of the ancient Romans. Tacitus, the Roman historian, couples her name with that of Cornelia, the famous mother of the Gracchi. Cæsar owed much of his future greatness to her influence, and his love and reverence for her are highly honorable to both.

In the year 86, when Cæsar was still a boy, he was appointed a priest of Jupiter. This office was a perfunctory one and had little real religious significance. In 83 he married Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, an act which identified him thus early with the *Populares*; for Cinna was a very prominent leader of that party. It was soon after this that Sulla, the leader of the *Optimates*, returned from Asia Minor with a victorious army, prepared to take a terrible revenge for the proscription of Marius. Cæsar soon fell under his displeasure because of his relationship to Marius. He was ordered to divorce his young wife because she was Cinna's daughter. In this crisis Cæsar showed a prominent trait of his character, a trait which led him during all his life to brave every danger rather than allow himself to be controlled. Though but a youth, he refused to obey Sulla's command. A price was set on his head and he was obliged to flee for his life. Often he was in great peril, and once he was taken, and escaped only by bribing his captor. His friends interceded for him, pleading his youth, and finally obtained his pardon, Sulla saying, "Take him, since you will have it so ; but I would have you know that the youth for whom you are so earnest, will one day overthrow the aristocracy. I see in him many Mariuses."

Cæsar thinking it safer to leave Italy for a time went to Asia Minor, where he gained some military experience and distinguished himself for valor by saving a comrade's life. Sulla died in 78 and Cæsar returned to his family and resumed his studies. He was a diligent and thorough student and doubtless followed the usual course

of Greek, rhetoric, grammar, philosophy, and oratory. To be a good speaker was essential to political success, and Cæsar was especially anxious to excel in that direction. He gave some public exhibitions of his skill and won much applause; but anxious to perfect himself still farther he went to Rhodes in 76, to study under Apollonius Molon, the most famous teacher of oratory and rhetoric of the day. On this journey, when near Miletus, he was captured by pirates and held for a heavy ransom. He spent some time among them while waiting for the money, and joined in their sports and games with the greatest freedom, at the same time assuring them that he would hang them all as soon as he was free. They seem to have regarded him with mingled awe and admiration. The ransom was paid. Cæsar was released, went at once to Miletus, where he hastily collected a few ships and made a descent on the pirates before they dreamt of danger. He recovered the ransom money and punished the pirates as he had threatened.

On his return to Rome, he began his political career (B.C. 68) by serving as quæstor, an office connected with the public treasury and the first step toward the consulship. This was followed in 65 by the ædileship. The taking of this office, which was one of the chief magistracies, though it involved only the care of the public buildings and the oversight of the great festivals and games, was considered a direct bid for a future consulship, and a man's claims upon that higher office were determined in large measure by the lavishness and splendor of his ædileship. Cæsar was poor, but with characteristic boldness he played for the highest political stakes and did not hesitate to incur enormous debts, in fact so enormous that those who had not the most perfect confidence in his capacity and his powers believed him irretrievably ruined. His ædileship surpassed all before it in magnificence; but he left it — as he remarked with grim humor — worth more than a million dollars less than nothing.

After his ædileship he identified himself more and more with the popular faction, and even dared to restore some of the statues and trophies of Marius, which had been banished from sight seventeen years before by the order of Sulla. The people began to hope for a successful revival of the Marian party and to look to Cæsar as its leader.

In B.C. 63 he was elected *pontifex maximus* against the strong opposition of the *Optimates*. This office was one of great political power and dignity, though not formally a civil office. Cæsar held it for the rest of his life. In 62 he was elected prætor, an office of a judicial character, and this was followed by a year of command in Spain as proprætor. Before leaving for Spain, his creditors became insistent and threatened to detain him unless he paid them. Cæsar then obtained a large loan from the richest man in Rome, Crassus, who was ambitious for office and doubtless hoped to make good use in turn of Cæsar's brilliant abilities to further his own ends.

In Spain Cæsar gained valuable military experience and made his administration so profitable to himself, as was usual with provincial governors, that, though he left Rome owing millions of sesterces, he returned in the year 60 with enough money to pay all his debts. His design was to run for the consulship, the highest office in the gift of the people. To secure his election he effected a union of interests between himself and Crassus and Pompey. These were the two most powerful men in Rome, — Crassus because of his wealth, Pompey because of his fame as a general and his popularity with the army. The latter was, in fact, really the first man in the state. He had but recently returned from Asia Minor laden with the spoils of the Mithridatic war, and might easily have seized the dictatorship had he so chosen; but he disbanded his army and preferred to appear as a private citizen, but with almost autocratic power. He had quarreled with Crassus, but Cæsar reconciled them, and the three formed a sort of offensive and defensive alliance known as the first triumvirate, — what we should call a political deal. This was for Cæsar, who was at that time quite their inferior in fame and influence, a master stroke of craft and diplomacy.

In 59 Cæsar was elected consul almost without opposition. He well understood the critical condition of affairs and saw clearly the dangers that threatened the state, and instituted valuable reforms looking to its regeneration and salvation. The army and the moneyed classes represented by Pompey and Crassus were with him, and he could do almost as he pleased. His first act was the passage of an agrarian law, by which thousands of acres were to be distributed to the poor. This was not a mere act of bribery, but an attempt to

restore the peasant freeholders, who had been dispossessed by the rich. Then he passed the excellent body of laws known as the *Leges Juliae*, which mark an epoch in Roman jurisprudence, and which were devised in the interests of individual rights, purity of justice, morality, and good government. All that one man could do in a single year to save his country from anarchy, Cæsar did.

Cæsar was now forty-three years of age. With the exception of the time spent in Spain, his life had been employed in petty miserable contests with Roman factions. He longed for a new and larger field where he might have freedom to perform deeds worthy of his surpassing abilities and unbounded ambition. This opportunity came to him when, as proconsul, he was entrusted with the protection of the northern frontier against the Gauls, and was assigned the provinces of Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum. It was a most hazardous post and doubtless many of the *Optimates* thought that they were well rid of him.

III. CÆSAR IN GAUL.

“What security men derive from a resolute spirit.” — *Cæsar*.

By the ‘deal’ of the triumvirate, Cæsar was to have the government of Gaul for five years, while Crassus and Pompey were to remain in the city to look after the interests of the coalition. The bond was farther strengthened by the marriage of Pompey with Julia, Cæsar’s young and beautiful daughter.

Cæsar, as we have seen, was over forty when he went to Gaul. He was more of a civilian than a soldier and was far more at home in the Forum than in the camp. Alexander, Hannibal, and Napoleon were trained in war from childhood. The qualities that are most potent in war — hope, confidence, audacity, and pugnacity — are qualities that belong to youth. So Cæsar is an anomaly in military history. In spite of his years and his comparative inexperience, he leaped at once to the highest place, and is counted to-day among the three or four greatest generals in history, if not the greatest of them all. He never lost a set battle and he showed infinite versatility in adapting means to ends, always doing the right thing at the

right time. He never admits the possibility of defeat and overcomes the most stupendous difficulties with such ease that he rarely speaks of them. His promptness of decision and rapidity of execution were such that the enemy were constantly overwhelmed with awe and were led to regard him as a supernatural being. 'Forced marches,' 'continuous marching day and night,' 'as quickly as possible' are phrases that recur again and again in his narrative. Only a natural ruler of men could get things done with such swiftness. He carried out his plans with the greatest audacity and, at the same time, without recklessness. No one could be more minute and thorough in preparations than he. No one left less chance for luck, good or bad, to enter into the result. In all that was done, his was the masterful and presiding genius, and the legions rarely accomplished much in his absence. His relations with his soldiers were most cordial. They idolized him and he respected and admired them and constantly labored for their safety and comfort. He allows them to share in the glory of his victories and in his story lingers with delight over their heroic exploits. He shared all their dangers and privations, he excelled personally in deeds of arms, and he allowed himself no luxury but a favorite horse. It is not strange that when trouble came upon their master, his soldiers were true to him, and even volunteered to serve without pay. Only three of his officers, two of them Gauls, went over to the enemy, while thousands came to him from the other side.

After two successful campaigns in Gaul, in the spring of B.C. 56, Cæsar met his two confederates at Luca, in Etruria, to arrange their future schemes. The conference was held with great display, almost like a royal court. More than two hundred senators were present, and one hundred and twenty lictors were in attendance, attached to the several magistrates. At this conference it was agreed that Pompey and Crassus should hold the consulship the following year, and, after their term of office, should receive by popular vote a similar command to that held by Cæsar, — namely, that Pompey should command in Spain and Crassus in Syria for five years each; also that when Cæsar's five years were up, he should receive in the same way a second term of five years. His ten years' administration would then close at the end of B.C. 49; after which time

—an interval of ten years having elapsed—he would be eligible again as consul.

The programme was duly carried out. Crassus departed (B.C. 54) to his province, where he was defeated the next year by the Parthians in the battle of Carrhæ, and shortly after entrapped and killed. Pompey put his province into the hands of one of his subordinates, and remained in the neighborhood of Rome, unwilling to remove from the seat of his personal influence.

Cæsar served eight campaigns in Gaul, an account of which is contained in the eight books of his Commentaries. Seven of these he wrote himself. The eighth was written by his friend and staff-officer, Hirtius. During these years he stormed more than 800 towns and subdued 300 tribes, engaged with more than 3,000,000 men, swept over a million human beings from the earth, and took a million more prisoners to be sold into slavery. “He was the first to lead an army into interior Gaul, the first to cross the Rhine into Germany, the first to bring a navy into the Western Ocean or to sail into the Atlantic with an army to make war.” He left a magnificent country for the Romans to appropriate and retain until their increasing corruption left it in turn an easy prey to the Germans. He inspired such terror of the Roman arms that the tide of barbarian invasion was stayed for centuries.

IV. CÆSAR’S LATER CAREER.

“The foremost man of all this world.”—*Shakespeare.*

“Cæsar could bear no superior, Pompey no equal.”—*Lucan.*

Meanwhile events had been moving on at Rome. With Crassus dead, Cæsar and Pompey were left in the enjoyment of almost absolute authority. They had been friends from youth, but none the less rivals, and the death of Julia (B.C. 54) sundered the last ties that bound them together. In 52 Pompey had been made sole consul and found himself at the head of a party which, under cover of the constitution, was determined to destroy Cæsar that it might retain the power which his reforms threatened to place in worthier hands.

Cæsar’s proconsulship of Gaul would expire at the end of B.C. 49. He wished to run for a second consulship in B.C. 48. The senate

resolved to prevent this, and commanded him to resign his office and disband his army several months before the expiration of his term. If they could once get him to Rome as a private citizen without an army, they knew they could crush him. Cæsar knew this too, and refused to obey the decree unless Pompey should also disband his troops. Pompey would have been willing to agree to this fair proposition, but his friends would not permit him, and were bent on destroying Cæsar. Naturally the charge of false play was made on both sides, and the strife continued until Cæsar was finally declared a public enemy. He therefore crossed the Rubicon, a small stream which formed the boundary of his province and the limit of his authority, and began to march towards Rome. He took but a single legion with him and continued his efforts to come to an understanding with the *Optimates*, having hopes of a compromise. He made a speech to his soldiers, explaining the situation, and was assured of their enthusiastic support. Labienus alone deserted him, corrupted, it is said, by Roman gold.

Cæsar's march through Italy was like a triumphal procession; the cities opened their gates to him and he was everywhere hailed with enthusiasm. Among the *Optimates* there was nothing but consternation and fear. They had pinned their faith to Pompey, who had boasted that he had but to stamp his foot on the ground and legions would spring from the earth ready to obey him. He had vastly overrated himself (as was his wont), and had no conception of Cæsar's power and genius. Cicero well sums up the situation in a letter to his friend Atticus: "The consuls are helpless. There has been no levy. With Cæsar pressing forward and our general doing nothing, the men will not come to be enrolled. Pompey is prostrate, without courage, without purpose, without force, without energy." Pompey had been looked upon by his partisans as almost divine. He had been peculiarly fortunate throughout his career and had made a great military reputation by assuming the laurels that others had won. Mommsen says of him: "He was radically a commonplace man, formed by nature to make a good corporal, but forced by circumstances to be a general." Now that he was confronted by a really serious difficulty and by a really able man, he was paralyzed.

Pompey with his forces and accompanied by the senators fled in

a panic to Brundisium and sailed across the Adriatic to Epirus. Cæsar meanwhile continued his victorious advance, and in sixty days was master of Italy. Then he went to Spain, and before autumn closed had met and defeated all opposition there. Returning to Rome he made preparations to follow Pompey. Many prominent *Optimates* had fallen into his hands, but he let them all go free, to their own great amazement and to Cæsar's eternal praise. In a letter he says: "I will conquer after a new fashion and fortify myself in the possession of the power I acquire by generosity and mercy."

Cæsar followed Pompey across the sea from Brundisium, transporting his army in two divisions. He encountered considerable difficulty on account of storms and the lack of ships. After much skirmishing, anxiety, and suffering (on Cæsar's part), owing to scarcity of food and supplies, he fought a battle at Pharsalia in Thessaly on Aug. 9, B.C. 48. Before the battle Pompey's officers felt so sure of victory that a rich banquet was spread awaiting their return from the field. In numbers and equipment Pompey was much superior, and with him was all the wealth and respectability of Rome. He had 45,000 infantry and 5000 cavalry against Cæsar's 22,000 and 1000, respectively; but he was overwhelmingly defeated and the battle ended in a terrible panic and great slaughter, in which 15,000 men lost their lives. As Cæsar viewed the slain he said sadly: "They would have it so. After all that I had done for my country, I, Gaius Cæsar, should have been condemned as a criminal if I had not appealed to my army."

Pompey fled for his life and took ship to Egypt and was there murdered by the king, who hoped thus to win Cæsar's favor. When Cæsar arrived there, however, a few days later, and Pompey's head was presented to him, he is said to have turned away from the sight with horror and grief. He now overcame all remaining opposition in several short and brilliant campaigns. The first of these was in Asia Minor, where he conquered so easily that he reported it to the senate in the words that have since become famous: "*Veni, vidi, vici.*" By the battle of Thapsus in Africa (B.C. 46) and that of Munda in Spain (B.C. 45), the Pompeian party was finally crushed.

Cæsar now returned to Rome, where he was made *imperator* — possessing the entire *imperium*, or military dominion of Rome, not

of a single colony or province merely — and perpetual dictator (*dictator perpetuo*), which offices clothed him with all the political authority of the state. By the powers thus conferred he laid the foundations of the Imperial constitution, which was afterwards (B.C. 30) set in operation by his grand-nephew and adopted son, Octavianus, later known as Augustus. This scheme of government eventually became (as was possibly foreseen from the start) an hereditary monarchy, under the name and form of a republic. During the short period of Cæsar's rule he continued the good work of his first consulship and carried a series of measures of wise and practical statesmanship, such as the reform of the calendar, the regulation of the administrative system, and the policy of checks upon the abuses of the money power. He also planned extensive military expeditions against Parthia, Scythia, and Germany, and large public works and improvements, such as draining the Pomptine marshes and cutting through the isthmus of Corinth. With characteristic energy he accomplished much in a very short time.

But the possession of this exalted authority involved the utter overthrow of the constitution and necessarily excited alarm and jealousy among patriots and demagogues alike. Rumors were abroad that Cæsar was seeking to be king, a name detested at Rome since the foundation of the republic. His rivals were jealous, and not a few friends were disappointed at not having received as large favors as they thought they deserved. Many of his former enemies were bitter against him, because he had been magnanimous enough to forgive them. These feelings culminated in a conspiracy against his life. The leaders were Cassius, a violent and fearless man driven mad by jealousy and baffled ambition; and Marcus Brutus, who had no better friend than Cæsar, but who fancied that he must emulate his ancestor, Brutus the first consul, who expelled the Tarquins. Cæsar received many warnings of what was going on, but disregarded them all with his usual indifference to danger. The deed was consummated in the senate-house on the Ides of March, B.C. 44. The great dictator was struck down by false friends and fell, pierced with wounds, at the foot of Pompey's statue. This dastardly act received the condemnation it deserved, and few have dared to defend it on the ground of patriotism. Those concerned in it all

died violent deaths soon after. Both Brutus and Cassius committed suicide, the latter stabbing himself with the very dagger which he had used against Cæsar.¹

V. PERSON AND CHARACTER OF CÆSAR.

"Death makes no conquest of this conqueror
For now he lives in fame, though not in life."—*Shakespeare.*

"Great Julius, whom all the world admires."—*Milton.*

Suetonius describes Cæsar when a youth as tall, slight, and handsome, with dark piercing eyes, a sallow complexion, large nose, lips full, features refined and intellectual, neck sinewy and thick. He adds further that he was neat to effeminacy about his dress and appearance. Fond of athletics, he excelled in all manly sports, especially in riding. In danger he knew no fear and often performed acts of great personal daring. His health was vigorous until his later years, and he could endure an apparently unlimited amount of labor and hardship. Added years gave him a majestic and commanding presence without detracting from the grace and courtesy of his bearing. We judge him to have been a man of singular charm and of unusual personal magnetism.

Thanks to the peculiar skill possessed by the ancients in the art of portraiture, we have good reason to believe that we may see the great dictator as he was, from existing statues and busts. Two of the most noted of these are the busts in the British Museum (Fig. 40) and that in the Louvre (Fig. 31). The one in the Naples Museum (Fig. 60) is judged by competent critics to be conventional and not modelled after the living man. Those first mentioned are thought to be true to life. The one in the British Museum shows us Cæsar the statesman, the man of peace; the one in the Louvre, Cæsar the man of action, the martial hero.²

¹ For a vivid imaginative account of the conspiracy, see Shakespeare's "Julius Cæsar."

² On the portraits of Cæsar, see an illustrated article by Mr. John S. Ropes in *Scribner's Magazine* for February, 1887, and S. Baring-Gould's "Tragedy of the Cæsars," Vol. I.

What Alexander was to the Greeks, and Hannibal to the Carthaginians, that and much more was Cæsar to the Romans. The two former excelled all men of their times in war only ; but Cæsar had such extraordinary abilities in widely different directions that many regard him as the most remarkable man that history records. In whatever he did, he always did the best possible. He had the greatest diversity of gifts : as a student of language, he composed a treatise on grammar while crossing the Alps ; as an orator, Quintilian says he would have rivalled Cicero had he devoted his time to this art ; as a general, he has had no superior and hardly a peer ; and, above all, he was the greatest politician and statesman of his time. To his statecraft all his other acts are subordinate, and by this they should be interpreted.

Cæsar was too great a man to be without enemies. He has been accused of being a traitor to his country, who by a deep-laid scheme overthrew its constitution. He was undoubtedly ambitious for power, and he used it in making such changes in the constitution as were sorely needed to keep it from going to pieces ; but how far the acts by which he accomplished this desirable end were the result of a plan to further his personal ambition, and how far they were compelled by the stress of circumstances, we cannot judge. We do know, however, that he professed an earnest desire for peace, until he was driven into war by the hatred and perversity of his opponents.

He has also been accused of immorality, cruelty, and irreligion. It would be vain to maintain that Cæsar was a model of virtue in an age that was notoriously and openly wicked and profligate. We know that Cæsar was a man of perfect self-control, and that he was remarkable for extreme abstemiousness in eating and drinking. As for the rest, he was probably no worse than the average.

Doubtless he was cruel, judged by modern standards. He butchered without mercy thousands of defenceless men, women, and children. But we must remember that Cæsar was a Roman, of a people naturally cruel and careless of bloodshed, and, again, that he was dealing with Gauls and Germans, whom the Romans despised, and for whom he had not, nor could have, any feelings of sympathy or kindness. The doctrine of human brotherhood is something he never heard of. But, on the other hand, contrast with this his constant care

and anxiety for the welfare of his soldiers, his patience and forbearance with their mistakes, such as no modern commander has exhibited in his memoirs, and, above all, recall his mercy to his opponents in the Civil War, whom he freely pardoned and restored to honor and favor. Contrast Cæsar's dictatorship with the horrors of Marius and Sulla, and we cannot wonder that his clemency became famous.

That Cæsar was a skeptic is no doubt true. The age was skeptical and the learned classes no longer believed in the gods of their forefathers. What Cæsar's real beliefs were, or if he had any, we do not know. He often speaks of fortune as ruling in the affairs of men, and probably had some vague and dimly defined belief in a supreme power.

VI. CÆSAR'S LITERARY WORK.

As a man of letters Cæsar is hardly less eminent. His vast and massive intellect could hold in its grasp a great variety of subjects. He wrote on many different themes, such as philosophy, language, astronomy, and divination. Of all his books only his Commentaries on the Gallic and Civil Wars have come down to us in complete form. They stand as the best military history that was ever written. Their ulterior purpose was to justify him in the eyes of the world for the course he took in opposing the senate and the government. He does this rarely by argument, but by such a tactful and masterful collocation of facts that the unthinking reader feels himself persuaded that Cæsar could hardly have done otherwise.

The style of these memoirs is remarkable for directness, terseness, and simplicity. Cicero, one of the greatest masters of style, says of them, "I pronounce them indeed to be very commendable, for they are simple, straight-forward, agreeable, with all rhetorical ornament stripped from them as one strips off a garment." While the language is lucid, it is packed full of meaning, and even a good Latinist needs to read slowly and with deliberation that the full thought of each sentence may be gathered. Sometimes a whole sentence is crammed into an adjective or a participle. To translate into good English requires, therefore, frequent amplification.

Like all great men, Cæsar rarely speaks of himself. In his works he refers to himself in the third person and with such modesty and

impartiality that you would never suspect him to be the writer. He betrays his identity by three slips of the pen where he uses the first person. He never struts or poses for effect, not even when he is narrating sublime deeds of heroism.

Cæsar wrote his Commentaries in the midst of intense activity. They were jotted down as he journeyed and fought; mere notes, as it were, for future amplification. Hirtius says, "While others know how faultlessly they are written, I know with what ease and rapidity he dashed them off."

For us the Gallic War has a peculiar interest because it treats of the peoples with whom we are most familiar and from whom most of us derive our ancestry. It marks, in a sense, the beginning of modern history. Active, keen-sighted, and truthful, Cæsar gives us such insight into these nations as serves to explain many of their present political and social peculiarities.

VII. IMPORTANT EVENTS IN CÆSAR'S LIFE.

B.C. 100	Born, July 12th.
" 83	Marries Cornelia, the Daughter of Cinna.
" 80-78	Serves with the Army in Asia.
" 76-75	Studies Oratory at Rhodes.
" 68	Quæstor.
" 65	Ædile.
" 63	Pontifex Maximus.
" 62	Prætor.
" 61	Proprætor in Spain.
" 60	Forms the First Triumvirate.
" 59	Consul.
" 58-49	Proconsul in Gaul.
" 56	Meeting of the Triumvirate at Luca.
" 50	The Trouble with Pompey begins.
" 49	Crosses the Rubicon. Civil War begun.
" 48	The Battle of Pharsalia.
" 46	The Battle of Thapsus. Declared Dictator for ten years.
" 45	The Battle of Munda. Appointed Imperator for life.
" 44	The Conspiracy. Assassinated in the Senate House on the Ides of March.

II.

ROMAN MILITARY AFFAIRS.

I. THE ARMY AND ITS DIVISIONS.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. The Legions. | 4. The Engineers and Artisans. |
| 2. The Cavalry. | 5. The Artillery. |
| 3. The Auxiliaries. | 6. The Baggage Train. |
| 7. The Officers and their Staff. | |

II. THE STANDARDS.

III. THE MUSIC.

IV. THE LEGIONARY.

- | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>a.</i> Enlistment. | <i>d.</i> Weapons. | <i>g.</i> Work. |
| <i>b.</i> Clothing. | <i>e.</i> Baggage. | <i>h.</i> Pay. |
| <i>c.</i> Armor. | <i>f.</i> Food. | <i>i.</i> Discipline. |

V. THE CAMP.

VI. THE MARCH.

VII. THE BATTLE.

VIII. THE SIEGE.

IX. THE FLEET.

I. THE ARMY AND ITS DIVISIONS.

1. The Legions.

The Roman legion corresponded to a modern Division, but was more an organic whole, since it was the smallest unit that had separate line officers. What its normal strength was in Cæsar's time we have no means of knowing; but a probable estimate puts it at 5000 men. The actual effective strength in the field, however, was usually much less, falling to 3000 men, as at the battle of Pharsalia (on Cæsar's own authority). This variation in number was due to the many absences from duty which always occur in a military organization, and to the losses incurred by the individual legions in previous campaigns. Losses in old legions were not usually made good by new recruits, but the latter were formed into new legions; hence the older the legion, the smaller usually its enrollment. The average effective strength of the legion in the Gallic War was probably near 3600 men.

The subdivisions of the legions were as follows :

- 1 legion = 10 cohorts of about 360 men each.
- 1 cohort = 3 maniples of 120 men each.
- 1 maniple = 2 centuries of 60 men each.

There were, therefore, 10 cohorts, 30 maniples, and 60 centuries in each legion. These divisions did not, however, like our companies, have special "commissioned officers," but were commanded by centurions who came from the ranks. The legions constituted the main body of the army and did most of the fighting, but there were other arms employed for various purposes (see below). The legions were designated by numbers, given in the order of their enlistment.

2. The Cavalry.

The cavalry (*equitatus*), originally of Roman citizens, was in Cæsar's time composed almost exclusively of recruits from subject or allied states. In Cæsar's army it was composed of Gauls, Spaniards, and Germans. There was no fixed ratio between the number of legionaries and cavalry. In the campaign against the Helvetians, Cæsar had 4000 *equites*, in the battle of Pharsalia, 1000; but the number of legions was the same in both.

The cavalry was divided into regiments (*alae*) of about 330 horsemen each; these were subdivided into 10 squadrons (*turmae*) of 33 horsemen each; and these again into 3 squads (*decuriae*) of 11 each. See Figs. 83, 84.

3. The Auxiliaries.

The auxiliaries (*auxilia peditum*) were infantry forces from allied and subject states. Cæsar nowhere gives the number of his *auxilia*, and it was doubtless as various as that of his cavalry. They were the light-armed soldiers (*milites levis armaturae*), the archers (*sagittarii*), and the slingers (*funditores*). See Figs. 45, 65, 99, 100. The best slingers came from the Balearic Islands, the best archers from Crete and Numidia. The light-armed soldiers wore no heavy armor and carried a light round shield (*parma*). The archers had neither corselet, helmet, nor shield. The latter they could not carry on account of their bows.

Cæsar placed little reliance on his *auxilia* for actual fighting, but used them for the most part to make a show of force and frighten the enemy (Bk. i. 51), and to assist in building fortifications. In engagements the bowmen and slingers were usually stationed on the wings (*alae*), and from this were called *alarii*.

4. The Engineers and Artisans.

The engineers and artisans (*fabri*) sometimes formed a separate corps under the command of a chief engineer (*praefectus fabrum*), and sometimes they were called from the ranks of the legions when their services were needed. Cæsar had a chief engineer, but no special body of men (cf. Bk. v. 11). They were employed in building bridges, ships, winter quarters, and in repairing weapons and equipments.

5. The Artillery.

Engines of war were not often used on the battlefield, where modern artillery forms such an important branch of the service, but mainly in the defence and assault of fortified cities or camps. They had a limited use also in the fleet (Bk. iv. 25).

We have no exact account of the construction of these engines. Cæsar almost always calls them *tormenta* (cf. *torquere*, to twist), a name which clearly points to the elasticity of twisted rope, sinew, or hair, for the source of their energy. They were of three kinds: *catapultae*, *ballistae*, and *scorpiones* (see Figs. 75, 92, 94). The *catapultae* shot great arrows in a horizontal direction, like a cannon; the *ballistae* hurled great stones or heavy blocks of wood through the air in a high curve, as a mortar throws shells. The range of these weapons was from 1500 to 2000 ft. A *scorpio* was a small catapult having a range of about 350 ft. It was an accurate and deadly weapon. Cæsar tells of one at the siege of Avaricum that marked and killed man after man in the same spot (Bk. vii. 25). The *tormenta* were usually served and kept in repair by the *fabri*, but as Cæsar had no such corps, they were probably in his army served by legionaries.

6. The Baggage Train.

The baggage of the army, except the packs corresponding to knapsacks which the soldiers themselves carried (*sarcinae*), was borne by horses and mules (*iumenta*), and in wagons. The latter, however, were used mainly by the traders (*mercatores*) and sutlers (*lixæ*) that followed the legion. The baggage of each legion was by no means inconsiderable. It consisted of tents, blankets, tools, the *tormenta*, provisions, etc., and required no less than 500 pack-animals to a legion. The inconvenience and delay occasioned by the care of so much baggage caused the Romans to call it *impedimenta* (incumbrances), and a legion marching with its baggage was called *legio impedita*; when without, *legio expedita*. Along with the baggage train went a multitude of drivers, grooms, officers' servants, and other menials, all of whom are included in the general term *calones*. Most or all of these were slaves. See Figs. 25, 66.

7. The Officers and their Staff.

The superior officers were: (1) the commander-in-chief (*imperator* or *dux belli*). He possessed the *imperium* or supreme military authority by virtue of his office, but by etiquette first received the name *imperator* from his soldiers after his first victory. In Cæsar's case it was bestowed after his victory over the Helvetii.

(2) The *legati*. These were men of senatorial rank (i.e. who had once held a curule magistracy). They were appointed by the senate or the people on the nomination of the proconsul. The senate also determined the number that a general should have; Cæsar had ten. They often acted as ambassadors and made treaties, but their chief duties were military. Their powers were in no way independent, but derived from the general, who might put them in command of one or more legions or confer upon them the *imperium* in his absence (*legatus pro prætore*). In his battle with Ariovistus Cæsar placed a *legatus* at the head of each of his legions (Bk. i. 53), thus giving them an independent command, a practice which he afterwards continued to the great advantage of the service.

(3) The *quaestores* were officers elected by the people annually to administer the financial affairs of the provinces, one for each *imperator*.

They had charge of the military chest, and saw to the pay, clothing, shelter, and general equipment of the legions serving in their respective provinces. On occasion they exercised the military authority of a *legatus* (Bk. i. 53); they were the ancient equivalent of a modern quartermaster. Besides these general officers, there were attached to each legion six *tribuni militum*, who were probably originally in command of the legion. They were divided into three pairs, each pair taking command in its turn. In Cæsar's time they were no longer trained soldiers, but chiefly young men of equestrian rank, who went into the army for a year or two to get some military experience and thus begin their public career (cf. Bk. i. 39), so that ordinarily the legion had no proper commanding officers. Cæsar was not slow to see that these political and social favorites were not the men to lead his legions into battle, and he therefore introduced the lasting reform of transferring this duty to the *legati*, as mentioned above (cf. Bk. ii. 20 ; v. 1, 25, 47). Thereafter the duties of the tribunes became mainly administrative and judicial ; they cared for the levying, the discharge, and the equipment of the troops, and for the army supplies, under the orders of the *quaestor*; and they presided at courts-martial and took part in the councils of war. Sometimes they led the legions on the march and received subordinate military commands (cf. Bk. vii. 47, 52).

Surrounding the superior officers there was always a large number of young men, forming a kind of staff, who acted as orderlies and body-guards. The only officers "of the line" were the tribunes, and, as appears above, their command was limited.

The real leaders of the men were the inferior ("non-commissioned") officers, the centurions. Corresponding to sergeants and corporals, these were always plebeians, often of the lowest birth, who were promoted from the ranks entirely on account of their fighting qualities, and could never rise higher. There were two centurions in each maniple, making six for each cohort and sixty for the legion. The six centurions of the first cohort outranked the others and were called *centuriones primorum ordinum*, and were the only ones that ordinarily sat with the superior officers in the council of war. The first cohort always contained the flower of the legion, and the men in the first century of this cohort excelled all the others. Their leader,

the first centurion of the whole cohort (*primus* or *primipilus*) and so of the whole legion, must needs be a man of great personal prowess and skill, an actual fighter, one to whom all could look as to a model soldier. Such was, for example, Publius Sextius Baculus, who repeatedly deserved the praise of his general (cf. Bk. ii. 25 ; iii. 5 ; vi. 38), and Titus Balventius (*vir fortis et magnae virtutis*, Bk. v. 35). As a badge of his office the centurion carried a short staff (*vitis*), but he was armed much like the other soldiers (see Fig. 56).

The chief distinction in dress between the officers and men was the red *tunica militaris* worn by the legates and tribunes, and the purple cloak (*paludamentum*) worn by the general (Bk. vii. 88). The officers wore also coats-of-mail of gilded bronze (see Fig. 93).

Between the centurions and common soldiers in rank were the *speculatores*, *evocati*, *beneficiarii*, *aquiliferi* or *signiferi*, and *bucinatores*, *tubicines*, or *cornicines*. The *speculatores* or scouts obtained news of the enemy and carried despatches. The *evocati* were veterans who had completed their term of service, but remained in the army at the request of their commander. The *beneficiarii* were soldiers that had received some gift or privilege for meritorious service. The *signiferi* or *aquiliferi* were the standard bearers: soldiers selected for their courage and fidelity. The *bucinatores* and *tubicines* were the musicians. All of these had rights and exemptions not enjoyed by the common soldiers. See Figs. 54, 105.

II. THE STANDARDS.

The term *signa* is applied in a general sense to all the standards of the army. That of the legion was an eagle (*aquila*), usually of silver or bronze, about the size of a dove, on a wooden staff. It was sometimes carried by the chief centurion (*primipilus*) of the legion. Sometimes it had below it a little red or white banner (*vexillum*), inscribed with the number or name of the legion. See Figs. 84, 113, 120.

In a narrower sense, *signum* was used for the standard of the cohort or the maniple. Each cohort had its own *signum* (Bk. ii. 21), and in earlier times each maniple, but probably not in Cæsar's day.

The cavalry and light-armed troops and all separate detachments carried only the *vexillum* (Bk. vi. 36). The general's flag at headquarters was also called *vexillum*. It was a large white banner with an inscription in red, giving the name of the general and that of his army. A large red *vexillum* displayed at headquarters was the signal for battle (Bk. ii. 20). See Fig. 113.

III. THE MUSIC.

The difficulty of carrying the voice through the din of battle early led the Romans to use the penetrating tones of brass instruments for giving orders. The four instruments used by them were the bugle (*bucina*), the trumpet (*tuba*), the cavalry trumpet (*lituus*), and the horn (*cornu*). See Figs. 51, 52, 53.

The *bucina*, whose shape and appearance are uncertain, sounded the changes of the night-watch and the reveille in the morning. The *tuba*, a straight trumpet of brass more than three feet long, with a bell-shaped mouth, gave the signal for attack or retreat, the signal being taken up and repeated by the *cornu*. The latter was a circular-shaped instrument which the performer often placed about his neck. The *tuba* had a deep tone; the *cornu* a sharper one. The general's call to an assembly (*contio*) was the *classicum*, sounded by all the instruments at once.

IV. THE LEGIONARY.

a. Enlistment. — The legion was composed of Romans only. Citizens were liable to conscription between the ages of seventeen and forty-six. The recruit must be of sound health and of suitable height. The Romans, as a rule, were rather undersized. Cæsar expressly mentions the small stature of his troops as compared with that of the Germans (Bk. i. 39; ii. 30); but the Romans had learned the lesson of civilization, — that victories are gained not by huge bones and big bodies, but by trained skill and scientific tactics. Man for man, the Germans were doubtless more than a match for the Romans; but against the organized and disciplined legion — the most effective machine for battle that the world had yet seen — they were almost

powerless. The term of service was twenty years, and after this the veteran was discharged with enough to provide for his old age. Often he reënlisted for farther service (*evocatus*).

b. Clothing.—All the legionaries were clothed alike. Next the skin was a nearly or quite sleeveless woollen shirt (*tunica*), reaching nearly to the knees; over this a leathern coat strengthened by bands of metal across the breast, back, and shoulders (*lorica*). In cold or wet weather the soldier wore about him a wide woollen mantle (*sagum*), which was fastened by a clasp (*fibula*) on the right shoulder, leaving the right arm free. At night the *sagum* served as a blanket. About his waist was a leather belt (*cingulum militiæ*), bound with metal and with strips of metal hanging from the front as a protection to the lower part of the body. His feet were covered with strong half-boots (*caligæ*). This might be called his undress uniform. See Figs. 65, 107, 123, etc.

c. Armor.—The defensive armor consisted of a coat-of-mail (*lorica*, described above), a helmet, and a shield. The helmet (*galea* or *cassis*), of iron or of leather strengthened with brass, was open in front and adorned with a white crest, which was one of the *insignia* put on at the beginning of a battle (Bk. ii. 21). See Fig. 87, etc. The shield (*scutum*) was rectangular, about four feet long and two feet wide; it was made of wood slightly curved, and covered with linen and heavy leather. About the rim it was bound with metal, and also in the centre. There was a single handle on the inside and opposite it on the outside a boss or knob (*umbo*) of metal, to divert missiles and to strengthen the whole. A common device on the outside was a winged thunderbolt. See Figs. 114, 115, etc.

d. Weapons.—The weapons of offence were the sword and spear. The sword (*gladius Hispanus*) was about two feet long, straight and two-edged. It was used more for thrusting than for striking, and was not usually hung from the body-belt, but from a belt passing over the left shoulder to the right hip (*balteus*). See Figs. 65, 119, etc.

The spear (*pilum*) of Cæsar's soldiers was between six and seven feet long. The shaft was of wood and about four feet long. Into this was fitted the slender iron shank that ended in a barbed head. From monuments and from remains that have been found in various places, the weight is estimated at about three pounds and the

hurling distance about 100 feet. Each legionary had one of these weapons. See Figs. 15, 107.

e. Baggage (Packs).— Besides his arms and armor, the legionary carried tools for digging, cooking utensils (*vasa*), food for at least two weeks (*cibaria*), his cloak or blanket (*sagum*), and usually one or two stakes (*valli*) for the rampart of the camp. The weight of the whole was about sixty pounds. For convenience in carrying, the *vasa*, *cibaria*, and other small articles were tied in a compact bundle to the end of a forked stick and carried over the shoulder. During a halt this rested on the ground and the soldier could lean on it for support. Upon a sudden call to battle he could quickly lay it down and be ready (*expeditus*) for the fray. The forked sticks were named Marius's mules (*mulæ Mariani*), after the great Marius (see p. 55) who introduced their use. The collective personal baggage of the legionary was called his *sarcina* (see Figs. 25, 65).

f. Food.— The food provided for the legionary was coarse flour or unground wheat or barley. This he must grind for himself. The ration of food for one day was about two pounds. Every fifteen days he received two *modii*,—about two pecks. This monotonous diet was varied occasionally by meat and such food as he could find by foraging; and there was always the chance of bartering his rations for the greater variety carried by the traders (*mercatores*), who followed the army in large numbers and did a thriving business with the soldiers.

g. Work.— It has been truthfully said that Cæsar conquered Gaul as much with the spade and shovel as with the sword and spear. The legionary was above all a skilful digger, and besides the actual fighting, no small part of his labor was the almost daily task of fortifying the camp (*castra munire*). At least three hours were needed for this work. After this there were the watches to keep, the arms to burnish, and all the other busy routine of camp life.

h. Pay.— Cæsar paid his legionaries 12½ cents a day or about \$45 a year. This was nearly the same amount that a day laborer could earn at Rome. The soldier was better off than the laborer merely by his shelter and by the certainty of employment. A deduction from the pay was made for food and equipments furnished by the state. Food, however, was very cheap, and a soldier in active

service could always expect a considerable increase in his income from booty and from the gifts of his general.

i. Discipline.— The martial spirit of the soldiers and their attention to duty were maintained and increased by appropriate rewards and punishments. Among the latter the most usual were withholding of wages, degradation in rank, corporal punishment, dismissal from the service, and, in cases of flagrant offences, death. A minor offence committed by a company of soldiers was punished by putting them on barley rations and giving them extra work on the fortifications. Among rewards may be mentioned public praise in the presence of the army, promotion in rank, increase in wages, or the presentation of a crown of leaves or grasses, which corresponded to the bestowal of a modern military decoration.

V. THE CAMP.

The success of Roman arms in hostile and barbarous countries was largely due to the custom of guarding against surprise by making fortified camps. The summer camp (*castra aestiva*) and the winter camp (*castra hiberna*) seem to have been alike in all essential features. In the latter, however, more provision was made for the comfort and convenience of the men. Instead of tents, huts of timber and earth, thatched with straw or covered with hides, were provided for them. The camp was regularly in the form of a square, often with rounded corners, but the lay of the land necessitated many variations from the regular plan (see Fig. 111). Of all the camps of Cæsar that have been discovered, but one, that on the Aisne (Bk. ii. 5), approaches a square form. The site was chosen with great care, and was always on high ground and near wood and water. An ideal spot was the slope of a hill with some kind of natural defence on the sides and rear, and with sufficient ground in front for the array of the legions. Such a position would give the Romans an opportunity for their favorite onslaught *e superiore loco* (cf. Bk. ii. 8; Bk. v. 50).

A small force of soldiers under centurions was sent ahead to select the site for the camp and stake it out. Two bisecting lines were drawn at right angles to each other to mark the four gates (see Fig. 111): the *porta praetoria*, facing the enemy; the *porta decumana*,

in the rear; the *porta principalis dextra*, on the right side; the *porta principalis sinistra*, on the left. Between the gates on the right and left ran a broad street, the *via principalis*. The forward half of the camp was allotted to the soldiers, the rear half to the officers and their attendants. All about the inside of the fortifications ran a broad space, at least one hundred feet wide, left vacant for baggage, evolutions of troops, and to protect the tents within from missiles that the enemy might hurl over the walls. Near the middle of the camp was an open square (*praetorium*), in which stood the general's tent (*tabernaculum ducis*). Before this was the altar on which he sacrificed, and on the left was a sodded mound of earth (*tribunal* or *suggestus*; cf. Bk. vi. 3), from which he pronounced judgment and addressed the assembled soldiers. The full details of the interior arrangement of Cæsar's camp are not known; but every officer, every cohort, every maniple, every man had his appointed place.

No night passed that the army was not housed in such a camp, fortified by wall and ditch. As soon as the soldiers arrive at the spot marked out for them, laying aside helmet, shield, and spear, they begin to dig the ditch (*fossa*), the earth from which is used in constructing the wall (*vallum*). If time permits, the sides of the embankment are covered with sods to hold the earth, or with bundles of brush (*fascines*). The ditch was usually nine feet wide and seven feet deep, the wall six to ten feet high, and wide enough on the top to afford good standing room for a soldier in action. An ordinary camp for a night's sojourn could be fortified in about three hours. If the camp was intended for more than one night (*castra stativa*), the fortifications were made stronger. The earth was made firmer by imbedding in it several lines of fascines parallel to the length, and on its top was set a breastwork of stakes (*valli* or *sudes*; cf. Bk. v. 40; Bk. vii. 72). This breastwork was about four feet high (see Fig. 116). Often wooden towers were erected on the walls (cf. Bk. v. 40; Bk. vii. 72), connected by galleries (*pontes*). The wall was made easy of access on the inner side by steps of brush. Sometimes small redoubts (*castella*) were built at a distance from the main camp. These were made on the same general plan.

After the camp had been fortified and the leathern tents (*tentoria*, *pelles*) put up in their assigned places, guards were set at the gates, and the regular routine of camp life began.

VI. THE MARCH.

When the trumpet gave the signal (*signum profectionis*) to break up camp (*castra movere*), the soldiers struck their tents and packed their baggage (*vasa conligere*); at the second signal the baggage (*impedimenta*) was put on the pack-animals and in the wagons; at the third signal the army (*agmen*) began its march. The start was made usually at sunrise, but it might be made earlier on special occasion. The ordinary day's march lasted about seven hours, and covered about 15 miles; a forced march (*magnum iter*) about 25. Cæsar made many such, his men travelling immense distances with incredible swiftness.

When marching in the enemy's country, the main body of troops (*agmen*) protected itself by a vanguard (*agmen primum*) of cavalry, light-armed infantry, and scouts (*exploratores*), and by a rear guard (*agmen novissimum*). Sometimes individual spies (*speculatores*) were sent far in advance to reconnoitre the country and the movements of the enemy's forces.

The order of march of the main body depended on the nearness of the enemy. When no enemy was near, each legion marched in a single column and was followed by its baggage train (see Bk. ii. 17). In the neighborhood of the enemy, a single column of troops in fighting trim (*expediti*), i.e. without packs (*sarcinae*), followed directly after the vanguard; then came the baggage of the whole army, while the remaining forces acted as a rear guard (cf. Bk. ii. 19). Sometimes, for additional security against flank attacks, columns of infantry marched on each side of the baggage train, forming a hollow square (*agmen quadratum*; see Fig. 125). If, when marching in this order, the army was compelled to halt and defend itself, the soldiers, by facing about, presented to the foe a complete circle (*orbis*) of armed men. When the foe was near and the ground level and open, the march was sometimes made in three parallel columns, which, by a simple evolution, could be quickly changed to the triple battle line (*acies triplex*), the regular formation for an engagement.

Streams were crossed either by fords or bridges. Romans could cross deeper fords than we, for they had no powder to keep dry

(cf. Bk. v. 18). Sometimes a line of cavalry was sent across the stream to break the force of the current (cf. Bk. vii. 56). Bridges were usually very simple affairs of logs covered with earth and brush, or of boats, but Cæsar's masterpiece of military engineering was his roadway forty feet wide with which he twice spanned the Rhine (Bk. iv. 17 ; Bk. vi. 9 ; see Fig. 70).

VII. THE BATTLE.

As has been said (V), the camp was so chosen that the ground in front of it would be suitable for battle. The usual order of battle was *triplex acies*. The first line of the legion was formed of four cohorts and each of the others of three. In each cohort the three maniples stood side by side, and in each maniple the two centuries stood one behind the other, varying in formation according to the depth of the line. As to the distance between the lines we have no definite information ; nor even as to whether spaces were left between the cohorts. There were probably spaces between the different legions and doubtless between the centre (*media acies*), where the legionaries stood, and the wings (*cornua*), composed of auxiliaries and cavalry. Cæsar's lines were probably eight men deep. That would give each legion, estimated at 3600 men, a front of 180 legionaries, 45 for each cohort. When standing in open order for fighting, giving to each man the space necessary for the free use of his weapons, the front of each legion covered probably about 1000 feet, supposing the cohorts to stand close together ; all this, however, is very uncertain.

When an attacking enemy had reached the right distance, the bugle sounded the charge, and the legions rushed forward, sword in sheath, and the front ranks with spears uplifted ready to hurl. When within range, the spears were thrown in a shower, the swords drawn, and a fierce charge made upon the mass of the foe, more or less disordered by the volley of spears. Along the front of the cohort rages a series of combats. The rear ranks press forward, throw their spears over the heads of their comrades, and take their places as the latter are wounded or weary. When the first line of cohorts has done its best, it makes room for the second line, re-forms, and gets breath for a new onset. Thus the battle goes on with the two

lines in almost constant motion. The enemy are given no rest and are worn out by the repeated charges of the cohorts. The third line, however, is held in reserve, and is brought into action only in case the other two prove insufficient.

The cavalry in the rear, or on the wings, stand ready when the enemy break and flee to ride down the fugitives and cut them to pieces.

There were times when troops had to be arranged in special formations. The most important of these were the *cuneus*, or wedge, the *testudo*, or tortoise, and the *orbis*, or circle. The first was an attack in column instead of in line, and was of use in cutting through and dividing an opposing battle line. The second, in which the shields overlapped above like shingles on a roof, was used especially in approaching and storming walls, or whenever the enemy were to be driven from a higher position (cf. Bk. ii. 6; see Fig. 79). The last formation was like a modern hollow square with officers in the centre—except that from the character of ancient fighting it was rather circular than rectangular. It was necessary when the attack came from all sides at once (see Bk. iv. 37).

VIII. THE SIEGE.

The Romans excelled in the art of taking walled cities, and this skill gave them an immense advantage in their warfare with semi-barbarous and ignorant peoples. There were three methods of doing this: first, by an immediate attack (*oppugnatio repentina*); second, by an active siege, brought to a close by an assault (*expugnatio*); third, by investment and blockade (*obsidio*).

If there seemed to be a chance of success, a city was stormed at once with no formal preparation (*ex itinere*). Its defenders were driven from the walls by a shower of missiles (Bk. iii. 25); the moat was filled with brush and earth; the assaulters with shields locked in a *testudo* attempted to break open the gates or scale the walls with ladders.

If this method proved unsuccessful or impossible, a regular siege was begun. The work of a regular siege centred about the mound or *agger*, and to its construction everything else was subordinated.

It was begun at a distance from the wall, very nearly out of reach of the missiles of the enemy. It was then gradually extended in the direction of the point to be attacked, and was at the same time gradually increased in height until on a level with the top of the wall, or even higher. At Avaricum the mound was 80 feet high (Bk. vii. 23-28). Its width was possibly 40 or 50 feet. It was made of earth and timber, and had connected galleries running through its various stories, through which the soldiers could move under cover (see Fig. 112). The men engaged in constructing the *agger* had to be protected from the enemy. Those who were building worked behind lines of *plutei* (see Figs. 126, 127), large standing shields, which were moved forward from time to time as the *agger* progressed. Those bringing material for the builders walked under rows of sheds called *vineae* (see Figs. 48, 112), extending the length of the *agger*. The workmen were protected also by archers and slingers and by engines of war (*tormenta*) standing behind lines of *plutei* or upon movable towers (*turres*). The latter stood on the *agger* or on either side of it, and advanced with it, and as they advanced increased in height story by story. As the workmen get nearer the wall the *plutei* will no longer protect them. Then they find refuge under strong sheds of wood called *testudines* or *musculi*, placed at the ends of lines of *vineae*.

When the mound has reached the wall, a breach is made through it for the final assault (*expugnatio*). Sometimes this was accomplished by undermining the wall, or it was pulled down from the top with huge iron hooks (*falces murales*). But the most common and most effective means was the battering ram (*aries*), a huge swinging beam from 60 to 100 feet long with a heavy mass of metal at one end, often shaped like a ram's head. This under a *testudo*, or in the lowest story of a tower, was brought with tremendous force against the opposing masonry. When the final assault was made, soldiers rushed in from every quarter, over the mound, through the breach, and from the movable towers, from whose highest stories draw-bridges stretched to the walls.

Against these forms of assault the inhabitants used such means of resistance as they could. The most effective were masses of stone, thrown from the wall upon the works, and fire. To guard against

the latter, the besiegers had to cover all exposed woodwork with green hides. Battering rams and mural hooks were caught in slings and held fast, or drawn into the city, and mines were met by countermines. See Figs. 89, 90, 124.

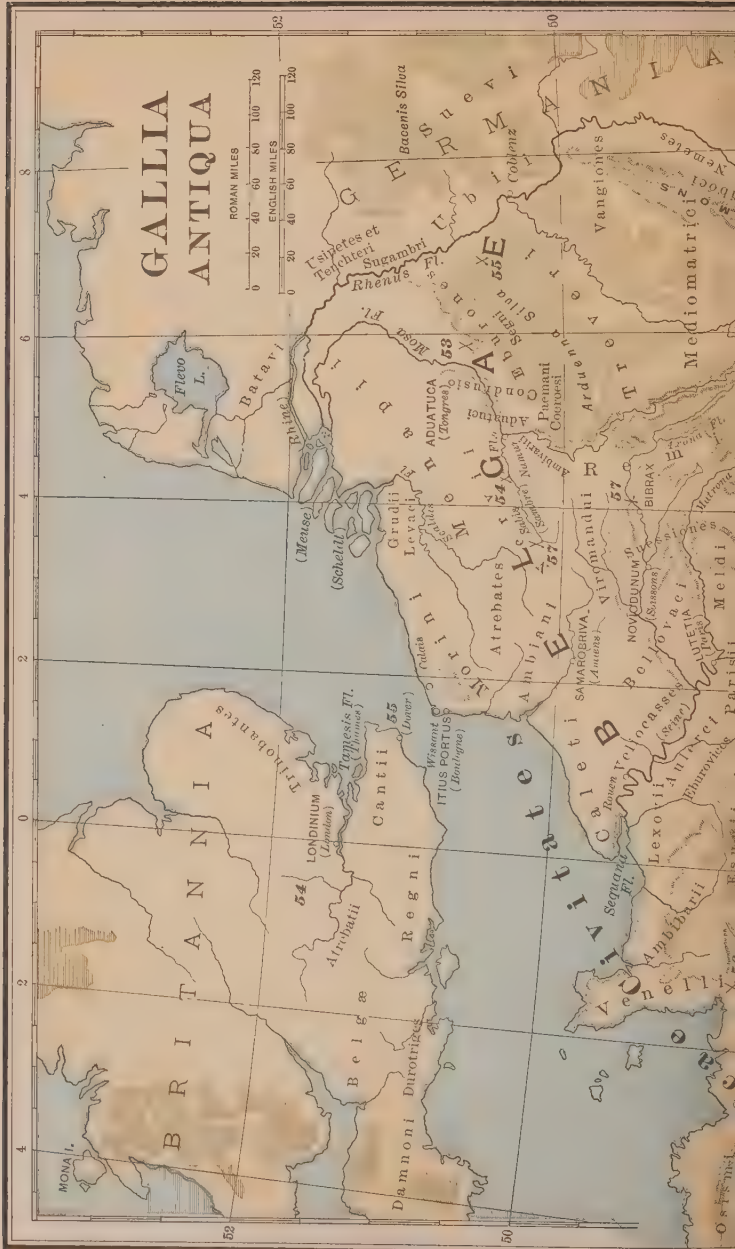
When the location of the place was such that it could not be taken by such a siege as that described above, it was invested on every side (*obsidio*) and the inhabitants starved into submission. Among sieges of this kind were those of Gergovia (Bk. vii. 44-53) and Alesia (Bk. vii. 72-80), of which the last was one of the most remarkable of ancient times ; see Fig. 96.

IX. THE FLEET.

Cæsar mentions two principal classes of ships : *naves longae*, or war galleys, and *naves onerariae*, or freight and transport vessels. As compared with the former, the latter were shorter, broader, and deeper ; hence could carry greater burdens and were more seaworthy. They depended mainly on their sails, but often had rowers in addition. The *naves actuariæ* of Bk. v. 1 were a special class of transport vessel, with both sails and oars. Cæsar used them to carry troops, horses, and munitions of war to Britain. See Figs. 61, 63, 64.

The war galley was long, low, and narrow ; armed at the prow with a sharp beam (*rostrum*) shod with bronze, for ramming the enemy's ships ; and propelled by one or two sails and a large force of rowers. The seamen (*nautæ*) attended to the steering and the managing of the sails, and were freemen. The rowers (*remiges*) were usually slaves. Galleys in Cæsar's time mostly had three banks of oars. The steering apparatus was two broad-bladed oars near the stern, one on each side. The speed of these vessels was remarkable, almost equalling that of a modern steamship.

The fighting men were the legionaries embarked for the purpose. In fact, there was no distinct naval service, as with us. A fleet was simply an army afloat, and was commanded by military officers. Before going into action *tormenta* were placed on the deck, and also a *turris* ; the mast was taken down and the sails and tackle housed. See Fig. 76.



GALLIA ANTIQUA

ROMAN MILES

0 20 40 60 80 100 120

ENGLISH MILES

0 20 40 60 80 100 120

4 2 0 2 4

8 6 4 2 0 2 4

MONA I.

BRITANNIA

54
LONDINUM
(London)

55
TAPTESIS FL.
(Tamesis)

55
CANTII

55
REGNI

55
BELGAE

55
DAMNONI DUNORIGES

55
WASANT
(Dover)

55
ITIVS PORTUS
(Boulogne)

55
ATREBATES

55
AMBIANI

55
SAMAROBRIVA
(Amiens)

55
CALETI

55
BOJIORASCI

55
LEXOVII

55
AULNAY

55
PARISI

55
EBOURACENSIS

55
MELDI

55
NOVODUNUM
(Narbonne)

55
BIBRAX

55
ARDENA

55
PACMANI

55
COGROES

55
ADUATUCI
(Tongres)

55
CONDRUSII

55
SENFONNES

55
MOSES

55
RHEMUS

55
SUGAMBRI

55
TENSIPETES ET TENGHERI

55
BACENIS SILVA

55
VANGIONES

55
NEMETES

55
BOCENS

55
MEDIOMATRICI

55
AUSONI

55
PICTI

55
CERETI

55
SEGUNDI

55
VENETI

55
AMBIBARII

55
EBOURACENSIS

55
MELDI

55
NOVODUNUM
(Narbonne)

55
BIBRAX

55
ARDENA

55
PACMANI

55
COGROES

55
ADUATUCI
(Tongres)

55
CONDRUSII

55
SENFONNES

55
MOSES

55
RHEMUS

55
SUGAMBRI

55
TENSIPETES ET TENGHERI

55
BACENIS SILVA

55
VANGIONES

55
NEMETES

55
BOCENS

55
MEDIOMATRICI

55
AUSONI

55
PICTI

55
CERETI

55
SEGUNDI

55
VENETI

55
AMBIBARII

55
EBOURACENSIS

55
MELDI

55
NOVODUNUM
(Narbonne)

55
BIBRAX

55
ARDENA

55
PACMANI

55
COGROES

55
ADUATUCI
(Tongres)

55
CONDRUSII

55
SENFONNES

55
MOSES

55
RHEMUS

55
SUGAMBRI

55
TENSIPETES ET TENGHERI

55
BACENIS SILVA

55
VANGIONES

55
NEMETES

55
BOCENS

55
MEDIOMATRICI

55
AUSONI

55
PICTI

55
CERETI

55
SEGUNDI

55
VENETI

55
AMBIBARII

55
EBOURACENSIS

55
MELDI

55
NOVODUNUM
(Narbonne)

55
BIBRAX

55
ARDENA

55
PACMANI

55
COGROES

55
ADUATUCI
(Tongres)

55
CONDRUSII

55
SENFONNES

55
MOSES

55
RHEMUS

55
SUGAMBRI

55
TENSIPETES ET TENGHERI

55
BACENIS SILVA

55
VANGIONES

55
NEMETES

55
BOCENS

55
MEDIOMATRICI

55
AUSONI

55
PICTI

55
CERETI

55
SEGUNDI

55
VENETI

55
AMBIBARII

55
EBOURACENSIS

55
MELDI

55
NOVODUNUM
(Narbonne)

55
BIBRAX

55
ARDENA

55
PACMANI

55
COGROES

55
ADUATUCI
(Tongres)

55
CONDRUSII

55
SENFONNES

55
MOSES

55
RHEMUS

55
SUGAMBRI

55
TENSIPETES ET TENGHERI

55
BACENIS SILVA

55
VANGIONES

55
NEMETES

55
BOCENS

55
MEDIOMATRICI

55
AUSONI

55
PICTI

55
CERETI

55
SEGUNDI

55
VENETI

55
AMBIBARII

55
EBOURACENSIS

55
MELDI

55
NOVODUNUM
(Narbonne)

55
BIBRAX

55
ARDENA

55
PACMANI

55
COGROES

55
ADUATUCI
(Tongres)

55
CONDRUSII

55
SENFONNES

55
MOSES

55
RHEMUS

55
SUGAMBRI

55
TENSIPETES ET TENGHERI

55
BACENIS SILVA

55
VANGIONES

55
NEMETES

55
BOCENS

55
MEDIOMATRICI

55
AUSONI

55
PICTI

55
CERETI

55
SEGUNDI

55
VENETI

55
AMBIBARII

55
EBOURACENSIS

55
MELDI

55
NOVODUNUM
(Narbonne)

55
BIBRAX

55
ARDENA

55
PACMANI

55
COGROES

55
ADUATUCI
(Tongres)

55
CONDRUSII

55
SENFONNES

55
MOSES

55
RHEMUS

55
SUGAMBRI

55
TENSIPETES ET TENGHERI

55
BACENIS SILVA

55
VANGIONES

55
NEMETES

55
BOCENS

55
MEDIOMATRICI

55
AUSONI

55
PICTI

55
CERETI

55
SEGUNDI

55
VENETI

55
AMBIBARII

55
EBOURACENSIS

55
MELDI

55
NOVODUNUM
(Narbonne)

55
BIBRAX

55
ARDENA

55
PACMANI

55
COGROES

55
ADUATUCI
(Tongres)

55
CONDRUSII

55
SENFONNES

55
MOSES

55
RHEMUS

55
SUGAMBRI

55
TENSIPETES ET TENGHERI

55
BACENIS SILVA

55
VANGIONES

55
NEMETES

55
BOCENS

55
MEDIOMATRICI

55
AUSONI

55
PICTI

55
CERETI

55
SEGUNDI

55
VENETI

55
AMBIBARII

55
EBOURACENSIS

55
MELDI

55
NOVODUNUM
(Narbonne)

55
BIBRAX

55
ARDENA

55
PACMANI

55
COGROES

55
ADUATUCI
(Tongres)

55
CONDRUSII

55
SENFONNES

55
MOSES

55
RHEMUS

55
SUGAMBRI

55
TENSIPETES ET TENGHERI

55
BACENIS SILVA

55
VANGIONES

55
NEMETES

55
BOCENS

55
MEDIOMATRICI

55
AUSONI

55
PICTI

55
CERETI

55
SEGUNDI

55
VENETI

55
AMBIBARII

55
EBOURACENSIS

55
MELDI

55
NOVODUNUM
(Narbonne)

55
BIBRAX

55
ARDENA

55
PACMANI

55
COGROES

55
ADUATUCI
(Tongres)

55
CONDRUSII

55
SENFONNES

55
MOSES

55
RHEMUS

55
SUGAMBRI

55
TENSIPETES ET TENGHERI

55
BACENIS SILVA

55
VANGIONES

55
NEMETES

55
BOCENS

55
MEDIOMATRICI

55
AUSONI

55
PICTI

55
CERETI

55
SEGUNDI

55
VENETI

55
AMBIBARII

55
EBOURACENSIS

55
MELDI

55
NOVODUNUM
(Narbonne)

55
BIBRAX

55
ARDENA

55
PACMANI

55
COGROES

55
ADUATUCI
(Tongres)

55
CONDRUSII

55
SENFONNES

55
MOSES

55
RHEMUS

55
SUGAMBRI

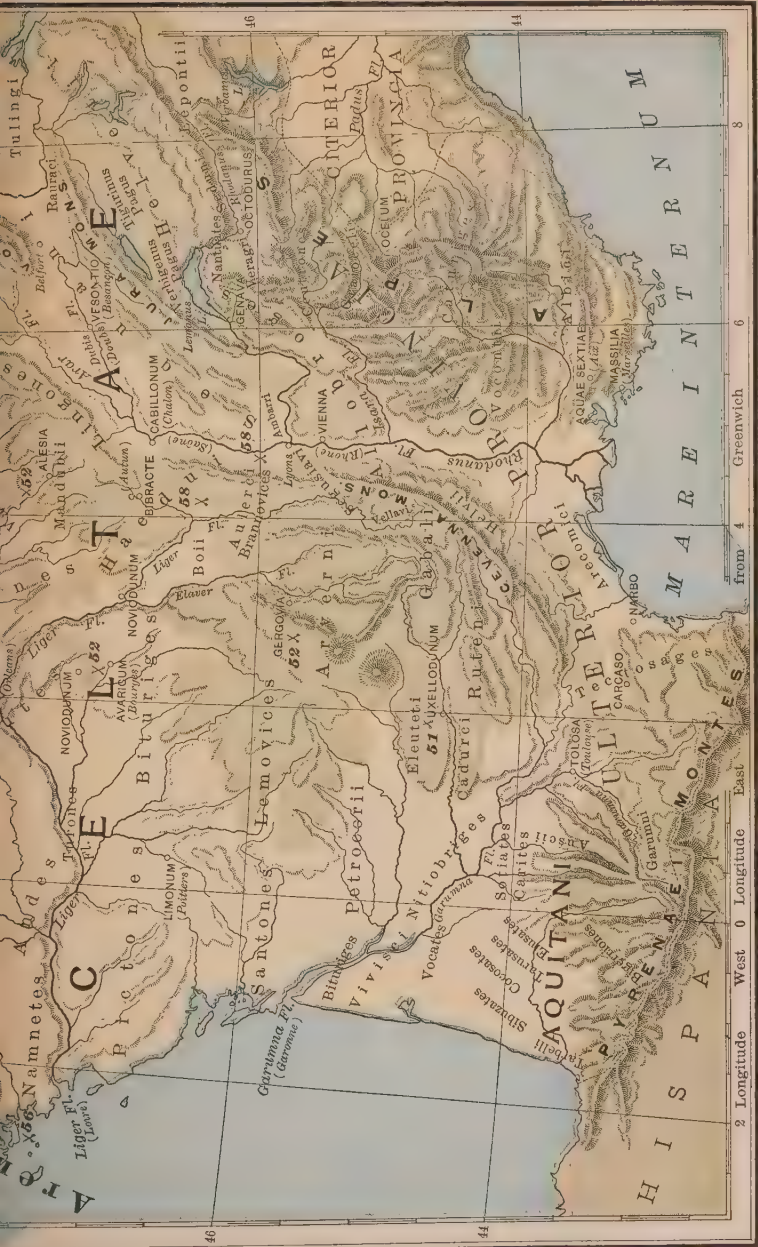
55
TENSIPETES ET TENGHERI

55
BACENIS SILVA

55
VANGIONES

55
NEMETES

55
BOCENS



2 Longitude West 0 Longitude East
from 4 Greenwich 6 8

III.

GAUL AND THE GAULS.

I. THE GALLIC PROVINCE.

THE district upon whose government Cæsar entered in the spring of B.C. 58 consisted primarily of the two Gallic provinces, Cisalpine and Transalpine. Cisalpine Gaul was the northern portion of Italy, which several centuries earlier had been occupied by invaders from Gaul proper, and was not yet reckoned politically as a part of Italy; it was a wealthy, populous, and orderly country, the proconsul's main dependence for troops and supplies, and his regular winter residence. Transalpine or Narbonnese Gaul received its name from its capital, the Roman colony Narbo. It contained some thriving cities and peaceful districts; but as a whole it had been but recently brought under the authority of Rome, and was still essentially a foreign country. It comprised the whole coast of the Mediterranean from the Pyrenees to the Alps, having for its northern boundary an irregular and uncertain line, which separated the territory of the conquered nations of Gaul from the states which were still free. To these two provinces was added also Illyricum, which was a source of strength, but did not receive much of his attention.

The authority of the governor over his province was that of a military commander, whose power was not limited by the laws which protected the citizens of Rome. A few privileged cities or nations, such as the old Greek city Massilia, were wholly exempted from his authority; but all other parts of the province, including Roman colonies like Narbo, were liable to tribute and under the jurisdiction of the governor, though the rights of Roman citizens were secured to them. A consular army consisted regularly of two legions; to these were added auxiliaries, both foot and horse, but the governor had power to levy new legions as he required them. Thus we find that Cæsar had six legions in his campaign against the Nervii.

The free territories adjoining a Roman province were in no respect under the authority of the governor; but they were regarded as a legitimate field for his ambition, if there was any excuse for war, and

of such excuses there was usually no lack. The Roman policy was to enter into friendly relations with one of the parties or tribes in the free territory, load this with favors and privileges, and make use of it to overcome its rivals; in Gaul the Haedui, attached to Rome through some local rivalries, very well served this purpose.

Cæsar's province, at its western extremity, reached to Spain, a country which had belonged to the empire for more than a hundred and fifty years. To the north lay four great nationalities, with all of which he was ultimately brought in contact. These were the Gauls proper, the Belgians, the Germans, and the Britons.

Free Gaul (*Libera Gallia*) at that time consisted of all the unsubdued territory between the Pyrenees and the ocean on the one side, and the Rhine and the Alps on the other, thus comprising, in general, modern France and Belgium, with parts of Holland, Germany, and Switzerland. The central portion of this territory, fully a half of it in extent and population, was occupied by the Gauls proper, or, as they called themselves, Celts, no doubt originally the same word. Southwest of these were the Aquitani, a separate people of Iberian race, cognate to the Spanish; of these, the Basques of the present day are the representatives. To the northeast lived the Belgians, whose ethnic affinities are much disputed; all that can be considered certain is that they were largely mixed with Germans. The Belgians occupied more territory than is now known as Belgium, including a considerable part of Holland on the one hand, and the northern belt of France on the other.

2. THE GALLIC PEOPLE.

a. Origin and Early History. — The Gauls were a branch of the great nations of the Indo-European family that in prehistoric times occupied parts of Asia and the greater part of Europe. They were known to the ancients as Celts or Gauls, and this name was applied without discrimination to all the barbarous peoples of the unknown west of Europe. The term was rather geographical than racial. The Romans, though they had been brought into contact with the barbarians of the north by war and commerce for many centuries, made no distinction, before Cæsar's time, between German and Gaul.

The Phœnicians, those pioneer traders and intrepid sailors of antiquity, had had commercial dealings with the Gauls at a very remote period. Several centuries later, but still at an early date (about B.C. 600), the Greeks had made a settlement near the mouth of the Rhone, which afterwards grew into the prosperous city of Massilia (Marseilles), and opened up some trade routes into the interior. Both Phœnicians and Greeks found the most powerful part of the Celts already well established in western Europe, and showing evidence of previous possession for a period going back of any assignable date.

The Celts had been for centuries a migratory and always a warlike people. These characteristics led them into many countries where they made settlements of more or less importance. Besides those who occupied Gaul proper, there were Iberian Celts (Celtiberi) in Spain, British Celts, Belgic Celts, Italian Celts in northern Italy, Celts in the Alps (notably the Helvetii), Illyrian Celts, and Asiatic Celts, who had settled in Asia Minor and were known as Galatians. It was to them, after they were Christianized, that Paul wrote his well-known epistle.

What knowledge the Greeks and Romans had of this powerful nation of barbarians was extremely vague. They had long hung like a dark storm-cloud on the northern frontier of both countries, and at intervals poured forth in overwhelming and destructive numbers. Once they spread desolation and dismay through Greece, and all but succeeded in plundering the rich temple of Delphi. In B.C. 390 Rome was destroyed by these same barbarians, and in B.C. 102 it was only the military genius of C. Marius that spared Italy a similar visitation.

Long before the time of Cæsar, the Romans had succeeded in subduing the Gauls south of the Alps, making the prosperous and orderly province of Cisalpine Gaul, as related above. Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum were more recent additions to the empire, and were less thoroughly subdued and civilized. They had been finally conquered by Q. Fabius Allobrogicus. All to the north had as yet been unexplored and uninvaded by Roman arms. The Gauls, according to circumstances and location, showed at this time various degrees of civilization. Those to the south and west, being nearer to the refinement of the province, had made rapid strides, had built many

flourishing cities, enjoyed prosperous and on the whole peaceful community life, and practised the arts and commerce. But those farther removed in the east and north, and the Britons, were still in a semi-savage condition. Cæsar's expeditions among these are somewhat like similar military expeditions that nations are sending in our day to explore and subdue unknown Africa; and the trading posts established among them by the enterprising Greek merchants of Massilia, like the business ventures formerly sent among the Indians.

b. Character and Customs.—The Gauls are described as tall and of great physical strength, with a fair skin and blonde hair, which they often reddened by artificial means. Men of rank and of authority wore the hair and beard long. The more barbarous tribes gave themselves a terrible aspect by painting hideous devices on their half-naked bodies. Their voices were rough and harsh, their words few, and their language obscure and figurative. Disparaging others, boastful of themselves, arrogant, fond of idleness, they were very quarrelsome and always ready to fight, to relieve the monotony of their existence, if for no other reason. They were, however, high-spirited and brave to utter recklessness and contempt for death.

The Gallic women are described by an ancient writer as the most beautiful of all barbarian women and as thrifty housewives. He adds that, aided by his wife, who is much more formidable than he, the Gaul will hold his own in any conflict. The Roman invaders were often witnesses of the heroism of these veritable Amazons.

The Gauls lacked stability of character, and are often criticized by Cæsar for their fickleness; they were also very avaricious and given to superstitions. On the other hand, they were not vicious, but naturally of a simple and teachable disposition. They were very quick to learn and adopt whatever useful arts their neighbors brought to them. Their love of freedom was passionate; but their long years of wandering had not developed in them that feeling of national unity and that love of the soil that we include under the term patriotism.

The life of the less civilized tribes was rude in the extreme. Their houses were little more than huts of clay and wood, thatched with straw and branches. The dwelling was open to daylight by the door

alone, and had little or no furniture. Their beds were heaps of straw or furs. War was their principal occupation. They gave some attention to agriculture, raising the coarser grains, the better sort of fruits and vegetables being unknown to them. They also had large flocks and herds. They ate but little bread, but large quantities of meat, which they are described as cutting with their swords and eating in a ravenous manner.

The Gauls knew something of the arts and sciences. They did some weaving, and those on the coast had skill in shipbuilding and in navigation, and the Aquitanians were skilful miners. Their attempts at art were mainly imitations of what other lands brought to them. For example, they made more or less successful attempts to imitate the artistic coins of the Greeks and Romans. Several illustrations of Gallic coins may be found in the text (see Figs. 45, 71, 72, 109, etc., etc.). Cæsar was the first to bring to the world authentic information about most of these matters, and the student is referred for farther interesting details to his narrative (see especially Bk. vi).

c. Dress.—The details of Gallic dress are not fully known. Like most semi-civilized or savage people, they were very fond of bright colors and finery. They wore much jewelry — both men and women — of gold, if they could afford it, otherwise of bronze. Especially characteristic was the heavy collar of twisted gold (*torquis*), which was worn about the neck. The principal garments were a short bright-colored tunic, either with or without sleeves, confined by a girdle of silver or gold, and trousers (*bracæ*). Over the shoulders was worn a short cloak (*sagum*) often of fine material and of gorgeous color. The character of the costume depended upon the rank and wealth of the wearer. The feet were protected by shoes or by soles of wood strapped on with leathern thongs. See Fig. 44.

d. Arms and Military Tactics.—As has been said, a Gaul's chief business was war. He was always a soldier and, whether in youth or in old age, hastened to war with the same ardor. His principal weapon was a long two-edged sword, hanging from an iron or steel chain at the right side. It was adapted for striking and cutting, but not so much for thrusting, and was but poorly tempered. This in itself gave the Romans a great advantage through the superiority of their arms. The Gallic bronze sword came into use later,

and was a much better weapon. In Cæsar's time the iron sword probably still predominated. They had also various kinds of pikes, lances, and javelins, some made with peculiar waving and twisted blades to cause an uglier wound. Many weapons are mentioned with special names, but they are not capable of identification. Bows and slings, too, were used by them.

Ordinarily the Gaul wore no defensive armor. In fact, the common soldier went into battle with body almost bare. But the principal warriors wore chain mail (see Fig. 93), which is said to be a Gallic invention. At first this was made of iron. Later, better and lighter suits were made of bronze, and were sometimes adorned with silver and gold. The usual means for defence were the helmet and the shield. Shields were of various shapes and sizes and were adorned with figures of animals, etc., to suit the caprice or wealth of the owner, but the designs were of ancient origin. The helmets were surmounted with great horns, forms of birds or beasts, etc., designed to terrify the enemy (see Fig. 110). These also were, no doubt, survivals of earlier barbarism.

In battle they placed much reliance on their cavalry and in Northern Gaul and Britain on their war chariots. The infantry was arranged in great masses of men in close order, like the old Greek phalanx, with a line of shields before and on the sides, and sometimes with a roof of shields overhead, something like the *testudo* formation of the Romans. When they had drawn near, champions were accustomed to leave the ranks, and, brandishing their arms, challenge the foe to single combat. The first onset of the Gallic phalanx was terrific and often swept everything before it; but if that could be withstood, the advantage lay with the open and pliable order of the legion. In the latter every soldier was called into action, but in the former the great bulk of the Gallic warriors was practically imprisoned in the mass, and only those on the outside could use their arms.

e. Government. — The Gauls were not a single nation, but a group of nations or tribes, about sixty in number, united by a very slight bond of consanguinity and common religion. These tribes, which may be loosely compared to those of the North American Indians, though most of them were at a very much higher degree of civilization, varied greatly in extent and power, the smaller ones often main-

taining only a nominal independence under the protection of some larger one. They were for the most part ruled by a turbulent and oppressive aristocracy, sometimes with an elected chief magistrate. But sometimes an ambitious leader, like Orgetorix, succeeded in establishing for a time a kingly power. Thus the several states were torn by hostile parties, and were at the same time grouped into national factions, under the lead of the more powerful states. At the time of Cæsar, royalty had been almost abolished, and yearly magistrates (*vergobrets*) were elected instead. Every year representatives from the different states met in assembly, and questions of national policy were discussed. Owing to the violent and excitable natures of the Gauls, these assemblies often ended in tumultuous scenes of disorder.

At the commencement of war, a call to arms was sounded, to which old and young responded. The last man to appear was put to death with tortures in the presence of the assembled people.

f. Religion.—*The Druids.*—Cæsar says that the Gauls were devoted to religious matters. They were under the control of a class of priests known as Druids, who acted not only as priests, but also as arbiters and judges. By them was treasured the religious and philosophic lore of the Gauls, and to them the Gallic youth went for instruction, some of them remaining in training as long as twenty years. One of their most important doctrines was that of the transmigration of souls. Belief in immortality gave the Gauls a contempt for death which enabled them to face the greatest dangers without flinching.

The Druids gave their instructions and performed their bloody sacrifices in the depths of the forest. The oak and the mistletoe were sacred in their eyes. The mysterious rites of their worship are not well known, but many cruel and horrible practices are attributed to them by ancient writers, among them human sacrifices. Cæsar mentions these, but did not know of their actual occurrence from personal observation.

The principal religious observances of the Gauls were gradually abolished under Roman rule, but many of them were 'baptized' into Christianity and survive to-day in various modified forms as a part of the popular religion.

The strange monuments of stone found in many lands, called 'cromlechs' and 'menhirs,' popularly supposed to be Druidic monuments, are far older than the Druids and have nothing to do with their religion.

Cæsar gives the first authentic information about the Druids in his narrative (Bk. vi. 13-16).

3. SUBSEQUENT HISTORY OF GAUL.

Cæsar left Gaul subdued and open to Roman occupation and greed. The country was rapidly colonized and civilized. Augustus divided it into four provinces and established the Roman authority on a firm basis. Only one great patriotic uprising occurred after Cæsar's time, though the Gauls took part in the contests later for the imperial throne. In course of time the very language of Gaul became Latin, and this became the parent of modern French. In the fifth century tribes of Germans began to make inroads on the Roman domain, and the Franks, under Clovis as king, firmly established themselves in the north. Their power spread; they subjugated the inhabitants, and gave their name to the country, which it bears to this day, — France, the lands of the Franks. There were many social and political changes after this time, but the same life flowed on from Roman Gaul to modern France. The French still display many of the characteristics of the ancient Gauls; they live in substantially the same limits; many of their mountains, cities, and streams still bear the old names.

IV.

THE BRITONS.

WITH Cæsar begins the history of England. He found there a Celtic people, differing but little from those on the continent, save that they were more barbarous. What the condition or history of the British Isles was before Cæsar's invasion is wrapped in obscurity. A few Greek writers refer vaguely to them, and there was an equally vague knowledge of the smaller islands lying near. Even Cæsar

gained but little detailed and accurate knowledge of the country, and after him the Romans did not go there for nearly one hundred years. Subsequently it was subdued and brought under Roman dominion. England still shows many traces of the Roman occupation. Many of her cities were founded by the Romans and bear Roman names. After the Romans came the northern invaders, who drove out or destroyed most of the original Celtic population. Those that survived are represented to-day by the Irish, the Welsh, and the Highland Scotch, among whom a branch of the Celtic language is still spoken to a considerable extent.

V.

THE GERMANS.

THE Germans first appear in history in the campaigns of the Cimbri and Teutones (B.C. 113-101), the latter of whom were undoubtedly of Germanic origin. The Romans obtained their first considerable knowledge of the country from Cæsar. The ancient limits assigned to it were less on the west and south, but indefinitely greater on the east and north, than the modern. In those directions it was *terra incognita* to the Romans, and always remained so. They never did more than subdue the border tribes along the Rhine and Danube. Cæsar had relatively little to do with the Germans, but made such investigations as he could, the results of which are succinctly given in his narrative (Bk. iv. 1-3; Bk. vi. 21-28). The next account, in greater detail, was given by Tacitus in his "Germania," who corroborates Cæsar in all important particulars.

The Germans were much less civilized than most of the Gauls. They were just at the end of the nomadic stage, and were settling down and beginning community life. Their last onward nomadic movement was that under Ariovistus, which it was Cæsar's fortune to arrest (Bk. i. 31-54). They were a more manly and vigorous race than the Gauls, warlike, independent, and virtuous. The country is described as a dismal land, covered for the most part with forests and swamps, producing little food, and subject to almost constant winter.

VI.

THE CAMPAIGNS IN GAUL.

THE campaigns of Cæsar in Gaul lasted through eight seasons (B.C. 58–51), and are told in eight books,—the last written by Hirtius, an officer of Cæsar,—each book containing the operations of a single year. The following is a brief outline :

Book I. B.C. 58. Cæsar checks the attempt of the Helvetians to settle in Western Gaul, and, after a bloody defeat, forces the remnant to return to their own territory. He then engages with a powerful tribe of Germans, who had made a military settlement in Eastern Gaul, and drives them, with their chief, Ariovistus, back across the Rhine.

Book II. B.C. 57. A formidable confederacy of the northern populations of Gaul is suppressed, with the almost complete extermination of the bravest Belgian tribe, the *Nervii*, in a battle which seems to have been one of the most desperate of all that Cæsar ever fought. In this campaign the coast towns of the west and northwest (Brittany) also are reduced to submission.

Book III. B.C. 56. After a brief conflict with the mountaineers of the Alps, who attacked the Roman armies on their march, the chief operations are the conquest of the coast tribes of Brittany (*Veneti*, etc.), in a warfare of curious naval engineering in the shallow tide-water inlets and among the rocky shores. During the season, the tribes of the southwest (*Aquitani*), a mining population, allied to the Iberians or Basques, are reduced by one of Cæsar's officers.

Book IV. B.C. 55. An inroad of the Germans into Northern Gaul is repulsed, and Cæsar follows them by a bridge of timber hastily built across the Rhine. Returning, he crosses to Britain in the early autumn for a visit of exploration.

Book V. B.C. 54. The partial conquest of Britain (second invasion) is followed by various movements in Northern Gaul, in which the desperate condition of the Roman garrisons is relieved after serious losses by the prudent and brave conduct of Labienus and Quintus Cicero.

Book VI. B.C. 53. Cæsar makes a second brief expedition across the Rhine against the Germans. Some general disturbances are quelled, and Northern Gaul is reduced to peace.

Book VII. B.C. 52. Vercingetorix, a brave and high-spirited chief of Southern Gaul, effects a confederacy of the whole country, which is at length subdued. Vercingetorix surrenders himself to secure the quiet of the country, and is taken in chains to Rome, where he was afterwards put to death at Cæsar's triumph.

Book VIII. B.C. 51. Slight insurrections breaking out here and there are easily subdued; and by the capture of the last native stronghold, Uxellodunum, the subjugation of Gaul is made complete.

VII.

DIRECTIONS FOR READING.

1. Before beginning to read, the learner should be familiar with the forms of Inflection, the simpler rules of Agreement and Construction of Cases and Moods (A. & G., pp. 381 ff.; B., pp. 117 ff.; G., pp. 437 ff.; H. 558), and the Definitions contained in § 171-180; B. 160-165; G. 201-209; H. 345-361.

2. Notice at once the inflectional terminations, so that the number, case, tense, person, etc., — which show the corresponding relations of the words and ideas to each other, — may be present to your mind. If the form of the word gives several possibilities, hold them all in your mind, so far as may be, till something occurs in the progress of the sentence to settle the doubt.

3. Always try to take in the ideas in that order in which the Latin presents them. Read every word as if it were the last on a page and you had to turn over without being able to turn back. The mind soon becomes accustomed to the order of any language, as we see by the constant and almost unnoticed inversions of common speech and poetry. If, however, you are obliged to turn back, begin again at the beginning of the sentence and proceed as before. The greatest difficulty to a beginner is his inability to remember the first parts of a complex idea. This difficulty can often be lessened by jotting down, in a loose kind of English, the words as they come in the Latin. In this way it is often easy to see what a string of words *must* mean, though we should never say anything like it in English.

4. Don't try to *translate formally* until you have got a complete *idea* of some *integral part* of the sentence. It makes nonsense

to render words mechanically, without thinking the corresponding ideas.

5. From the outset, notice that the emphatic position of words plays a most important part in Latin writing, and try to feel the emphasis of position as you read. (See Grammar, ch. 6, p. 386, and compare B. ch. 7, p. 227; G. 671-687; H. 559-573.)

As an illustration of § 5 we append a translation of the first chapter of Book II with especial reference to the emphasis indicated by the order. As the translation is made expressly to bring out explicitly the force of order, it should not be taken as a model of desirable translation. Such a translation as is here given forces the emphasis on the attention more than is perhaps natural in English. The force is all present in the Latin, but in English it may often be left to be brought out by the context or by some kindred emphasis which the English substitutes. A short, easy passage from Book V is also given without comment for study and practice.

And BEING ¹ thus in *Hither* ² Gaul, as I have shown above, CÆSAR ³ had FREQUENT ⁴ rumors brought to him, ⁵ and DESPATCHES ⁶ also from LABIENUS ⁷ continued to inform him that ALL ⁸ the BELGÆ, ⁹ who constituted a *third part* ¹⁰ of [the whole of] Gaul, as I had [previously] stated, were conspiring [for an attack] against the *Roman gov-*

Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur, litterisque item Labiēni certior fiēbat omnīs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsi-

¹ The emphasis on *being* binds this part of the narrative with the situation left at the end of the last book, as if it were "Cæsar went to Hither Gaul, — and while he was engaged there."

² Opposed to *Farther* Gaul, where the troops were.

³ The main subject of discourse.

⁴ The repetition of the stories is the significant fact, "he *kept* hearing," but at the same time the rumors are opposed to Labienus's despatches.

⁵ An emphasis continued in Latin from *Cæsar*, the main person (see § 344. *2*), but lost in English.

⁶, ⁷ Opposed to the rumors.

⁸, ⁹ Both words together the subject of discourse, but the adjective most prominent, "*the entire body of the Belgæ.*"

¹⁰ Opposed to the whole, as one might say, "*a full third of the whole.*"

ernment¹¹ and exchanging hostages. That for THIS CONSPIRACY¹² the reasons were *these*,¹³ namely: in the first place, because THEY WERE AFRAID¹⁴ (i.e. in their own minds) that when Gaul was ALL¹⁵ subdued,¹⁶ our army would be brought against *them*¹⁷; and in the second place, because *some*¹⁸ of the *Gauls*¹⁸ (i.e. from outside) were tampering¹⁸ with them. These Gauls were PARTLY those who were disturbed that the ROMAN¹⁹ army should pass the *winter*²⁰ and *get a*²⁰ *footing* in Gaul, *just as*²¹ they had been unwilling that the GERMANS²² should *stay any longer*²³ there, and PARTLY those who from [mere] *fickleness*²⁴

dēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandī hās esse causās: primum quod verērentur nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde quod ab nōn nūllis Gallis sollicitārentur, — partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant; partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte

¹¹ Here not the conspiracy itself, but the aim of it is the most important part of the idea.

¹² The main subject of discourse, "now *this conspiracy*, the reports said," etc.

¹³ The difference between "the reasons why were *these*" and "these were *the reasons why*" is obvious. Cæsar might say either.

¹⁴ A peculiar emphasis not directly carried out. Cicero would very likely have been more rhetorical and have opposed "*fear*" to "*being tampered with*." But Cæsar changes his point of view in the course of the sentence; and, as if he had said *ipsi* in the first member, opposes to the motives of the Belgæ *themselves*, the Gauls by whom *outside* influence was brought to bear.

^{15, 16} The *completion* of the business now in hand is first emphasized, then the business itself.

¹⁷ Cæsar brings out the whole force of the idea by opposing "*them*" to "Gaul," which has not before been emphatic, but which is now made so by being contrasted with the Belgians (cf. Chiasmus, § 344. *f*).

¹⁸ See note 14.

¹⁹ Opposed to the "Germans."

²⁰ Opposed to "stay any longer."

²¹ The English emphasis here represents the position of the two clauses, relative and antecedent.

²² Opposed to the "Romans."

²³ See note 20.

²⁴ Notice that the view of the first party is a rational idea seriously thought out, to which implied state of mind the *inconstancy* of the second party is opposed.

and *unsteadiness*²⁴ were [always] eager for *new*²⁵ forms of government; [they were stimulated] by SOME also besides, who, inasmuch as in *Gaul*²⁶ regal power was regularly usurped by the *more powerful*²⁷ and by those who had means to *employ soldiers*,²⁸ could not SO EASILY²⁹ succeed in *such usurpations*³⁰ under our *imperial control*.³¹

²⁵ A natural consequence of their character. For no good reason they got tired of the established order and wanted a *change*.

²⁶ Opposed to other countries in which the government was more stable.

^{27, 28} The two means of attaining regal power.

²⁹ And consequently wanted to rebel.

³⁰ The Latin often compresses into an indefinite, and to us unemphatic, word (as *rem* here) a whole important idea. In such cases the true emphasis appears in English only when a suitable descriptive word is substituted for the vague one according to our way of saying things.

³¹ This control, of course, tended towards establishing order.

V. 23. AFTER TAKING HOSTAGES he led his *army* back to the sea [where he] found the *ships* repaired. HAVING LAUNCHED THEM, inasmuch as he had a great number of *captives*, and *some* of the ships had been lost in the *storm*, he proceeded to transport his army in *two voyages*. And [fortunately] it so HAPPENED that out of so *many* ships in so *many* voyages not a *single* one was lost that carried soldiers either *that year* or the year *before*, while of THE SHIPS which were sent back to him *empty* from the continent after discharging the soldiers of the first voyage, as well as of the seventy others that Labienus had built *later*, very few reached their destination. Almost all the *rest* were driven back.

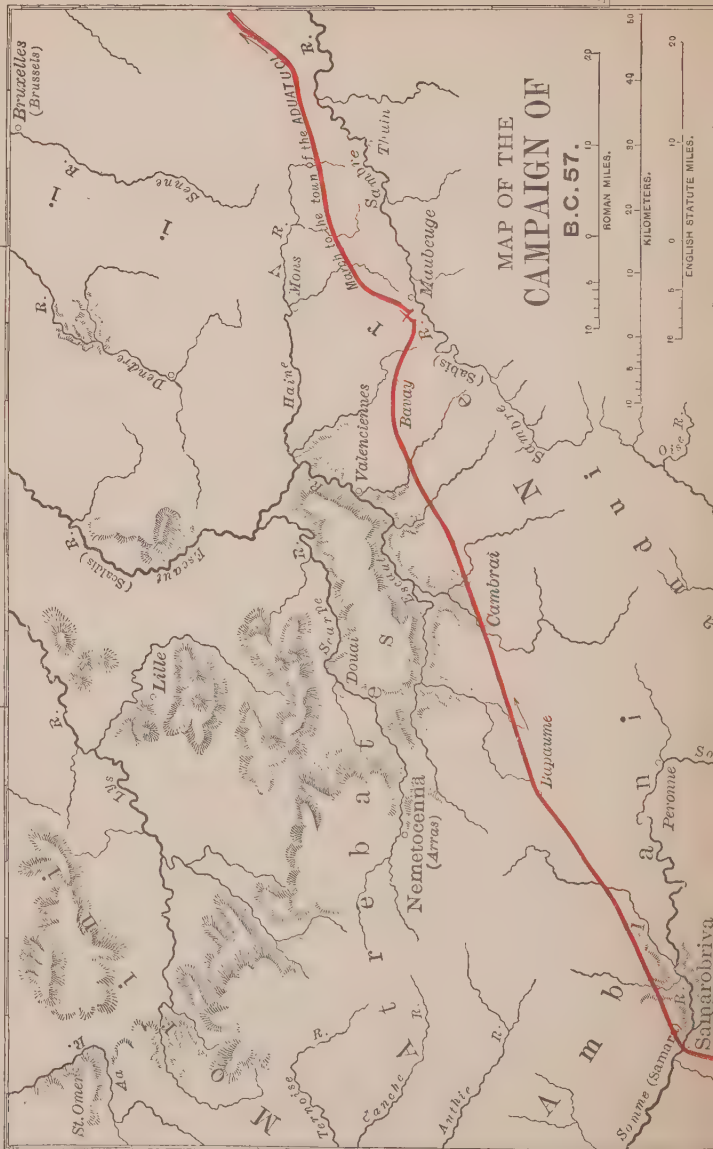
animī novīs imperiīs studēbant, — ab nōn nullīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eīs quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātis habēbant volgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequī poterant.

Obsidibus acceptis exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvis invenit refectās. Hīs dēductis, quod et captivōrum māgnū numerum habēbat, et nōn nullae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre instituit. Āc sic accidit utī ex tantō nāvium numerō, tot nāvigationibus, neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis quae militēs portāret dēsiderārētur; at ex eīs quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, [et] priōris commeātūs expositis militibus, et quās postea Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae ferē omnēs rēicerentur.

Longitude East from Greenwich

3°

4°



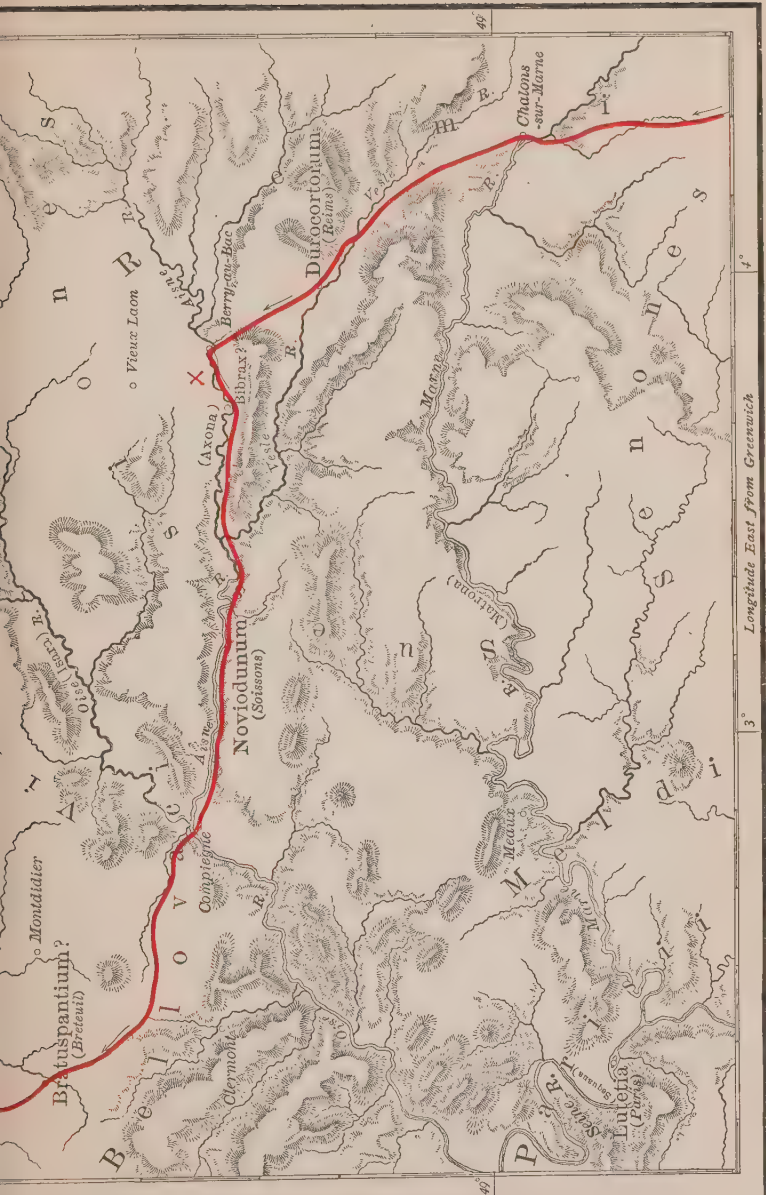
MAP OF THE CAMPAIGN OF

B.C. 57.

ROMAN MILES, 0 10 20 30 40 50

KILOMETERS, 0 10 20 30 40 50

ENGLISH STATUTE MILES, 0 10 20 30 40 50



Longitude East from Greenwich

Oceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et
 Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae
 ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad inferiōrem¹
 5 partem flūminis Rhēnī, spectant in septentriōnem et orien-
 tem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs
 montis et eam partem Oceanī quae est ad Hispāniam perti-
 net²; spectat inter occāsum³ sōlis et septentriōnēs.

* * * * *

BOOK II.

THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY, B.C. 57.

All the Belgian Tribes Conspire against the Romans. Reasons for this.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā ita utī suprā dē-
 mōnstrāvimus, crēbri ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur, litteris-
 10 que item Labiēni certior⁴ fiēbat omnis Belgās, quam tertiam

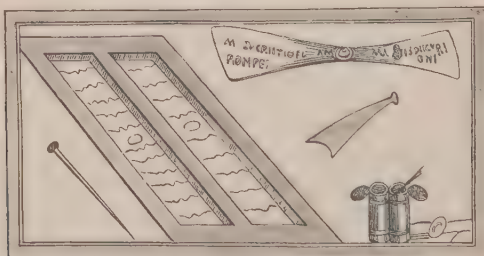


FIG. 43. — WRITING MATERIALS.

esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum
 coniūrāre⁵ obsidēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandi hās esse
 causās: primum quod verērentur⁶ nē omnī pācātā Galliā
 ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde quod ab nōn

Cf. ¹ inferior, p. 8, l. 18. — ² pertinent, l. 3. — ³ occāsum, 28, 12. —
⁴ certior factus erat, 53, 19. — ⁵ coniūrātum est, 71, 6. — ⁶ verērētur,
 38, 11.



FIG. 44. — GAUL WITH TRUMPET (*carnyx*).

nūllis Gallis sollicitārentur,¹ — partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī² nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant; partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novis imperiis
 5 studēbant, — ab nōn nūllis etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eīs quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātis³ habēbant volgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequī⁴ poterant.

Cæsar promptly Moves against them.

2. His nūntiis litterisque commōtus⁵ Caesar duās legiōnēs
 10 in citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit, et initā aestāte in interiōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret Q. Pedium lēgātum misit. Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium⁶ Senonibus reliquisque Gallis quī finitimī Belgis erant, utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant
 15 sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn existimāvit quin ad eōs proficiscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quindecim ad finis Belgārum pervenit.

The Remi Submit and Promise Aid.

20 3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque⁷ omnium opiniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andocombogium, primōs civitātis, misērunt, quī dicerent: ‘Sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere; neque sē cum reliquis
 25 Belgis cōsensisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse,⁸ parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidis recipere et frūmentō cēterisque⁹ rēbus iuvāre;

Cf. ¹ sollicitēris, p. 35, l. 13. — ² versābar, 24, 19. — ³ facultātem, 24, 6. — ⁴ cōsecūtī sunt, 3, 6. — ⁵ commōtus, 3, 27. — ⁶ negōtium, 31, 15. — ⁷ celerī, 28, 19. — ⁸ coniūrātum est, 71, 6. — ⁹ cēteris, 19, 11.

reliquōs omnīs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant,¹ sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem ut nē² Suessiōnēs quidem,² frātrēs cōsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdēm iūre et isdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium³ ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsis 5 habeant, dēterrēre⁴ potuerint quā cum hīs cōsentirent.⁵

Origin and Strength of the Belgæ as Told by the Remi.

4. Cum ab hīs quaereret⁵ quae civitatēs quantaque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānīs, Rhēnumque anti- quitus trāductōs propter loci fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse⁶ 10 Gallōsque quī ea loca incolerent expulisse, sōlōsque esse



FIG. 45.—COIN OF DIVICIACUS, KING OF THE SUESSIONES.

quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finīs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fieri uti eārum rērum memoriā māgnam sibi auctōritātem māgnōsque spiritūs in rē militārī sūmerent.⁷ Dē 15 numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explorāta Rēmī dicēbant, propterea quod propinquitātibus adfinitātibusque coniūcti, quantam quisque multitudinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus⁸ sit cōgnōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō 20

Cf. ¹ incolēbat, p. 50, l. 2. — ² nē . . . quidem, 28, 8. — ³ imperī, 17, 18. — ⁴ dēterrērī, 52, 10. — ⁵ quaesīvit, 39, 9. — ⁶ consēdit, 12, 4. — ⁷ sūmat, 28, 27. — ⁸ pollicētur, 83, 14.

valēre; hōs posse cōficere armāta milia centum, pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta milia sexāgintā, tōtiusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre.¹ Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs²; finis lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Diviciācum, tōtius Galliae potentissimum,³ quī cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit⁴; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam tōtius bellī omnium voluntāte dēferri⁵; oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī milia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nerviōs, quī māximē ferī⁶ inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; quīndecim milia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs decem milia, Morinōs xxv milia, Menapiōs vii milia, Caletōs x milia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs decem et novem milia; 15 Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Paemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur,⁷ arbitrārī ad xl milia.

Cæsar Marches to the Aisne, and Encamps beyond it.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus, omnem senātum ad sē convenīre principumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter 20 ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciācum Haeduum māgnopere⁸ cohortātus docet quantō opere rei pūblicae commūnisque salūtis intersit⁹ manūs¹⁰ hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitudīne ūnō tempore cōfligendum sit. Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Haedui in finis Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint 25 et eōrum agrōs populārī¹¹ coeperint. His datīs mandātis eum ā sē dimittit. Postquam omnis Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās¹² ad sē venīre [vidit] neque iam longē abesse ab eis quōs miserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cōgnōvit,

Cf. ¹ postulāset, p. 38, l. 15. — ² finitimī, 146, 13. — ³ potentiōribus, 146, 5. — ⁴ obtinēbat, 15, 21. — ⁵ dētulit, 76, 25. — ⁶ ferīs, 23, 12. — ⁷ appellātus, 9, 4. — ⁸ māgnopere, 9, 19. — ⁹ interest, 9, 19. — ¹⁰ manūs, 146, 16. — ¹¹ populābantur, 37, 11. — ¹² cōgēbātur, 76, 9.

flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit¹ atque ibi castra posuit. (Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum ripīs flūminis mūniēbat et post eum quae erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat,) et com-
meātūs ab Rēmīs reliquisque cīvitatibus ut sine periculō ad
eum portārī² possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium
Sabinum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in
altitudinem pedum XII vāllō fossāque duodēvigintī pedum
mūnīrī iubet. *set it was made* 10

The Belgæ Attack Bibrax, a Town of the Remi, Eight Miles away.

6. Ab his castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat
mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū³ Belgae



FIG. 46. — SLINGER (*funditor*).

oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gal-
lōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppūgnātiō est haec. Ubi
circumiectā multitudīne hominum tōtis moenibus⁴ undique 15

Cf. ¹ mātūrandum, p. 54, l. 24. — ² portāverat, 3, 14. — ³ impetūs,
57, 1. — ⁴ moenia, 18, 15.

in mūrum lapidēs iaci coepti sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus
nūdātus est, testūdine factā [portās] succēdunt mūrumque
subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat.¹ Nam cum tanta multi-
tūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī potestās²
5 erat nullī. Cum finem oppūgnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius
Rēm̄us summā nobilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō
praeerat, ūnus ex eis quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēne-
rant, nūntium³ ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submit-
tātur, sēsē diūtius⁴ sustinēre nōn posse.

Cæsar Sends Relief and the Belgæ Advance on his Camp.

10 7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar isdem ducibus ūsus quī nūn-
tii⁵ ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētās sagittariōs et fundi-
tōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānis mittit: quōrum adventū et
Rēm̄is cum spē dēfēsiōnis studium prōpūgnandī accessit,
et hostibus eādē dē causā spēs potiundi⁶ oppidi discessit.)
15 Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēm̄orum
dēpopulātī, omnibus vicis⁷ aedificiisque quō adire potuerant
incēnsis, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiis contendērunt et
ā milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae
castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus
20 passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.

Cæsar Strengthens his Position.

8. Caesar primō et propter multitudinem hostium et prop-
ter eximiam opiniōnem virtutis proeliō supersedēre statuit⁸;
cotidiē tamen equestribus proeliis quid hostis virtūte posset
et quid nostrī audērent⁹ periclitābātur. (Ubi nostrōs nōn
25 esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castris ad aciem instruē-
dam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō,¹⁰ — quod is collis ubi
castra posita erant paululum ex plānitiē ēditus, tantum ad-

Cf. ¹ fiat, p. 28, l. 4. — ² potestātem, 17, 7. — ³ nūntiī, 41, 17. —
⁴ diūtius, 146, 2. — ⁵ nūntiī, 41, 17. — ⁶ potiūtī sunt, 37, 24. — ⁷ vicī, 65,
15. — ⁸ statuērunt, 17, 14. — ⁹ ausus sit, 78, 19. — ¹⁰ idōneum, 35, 21.

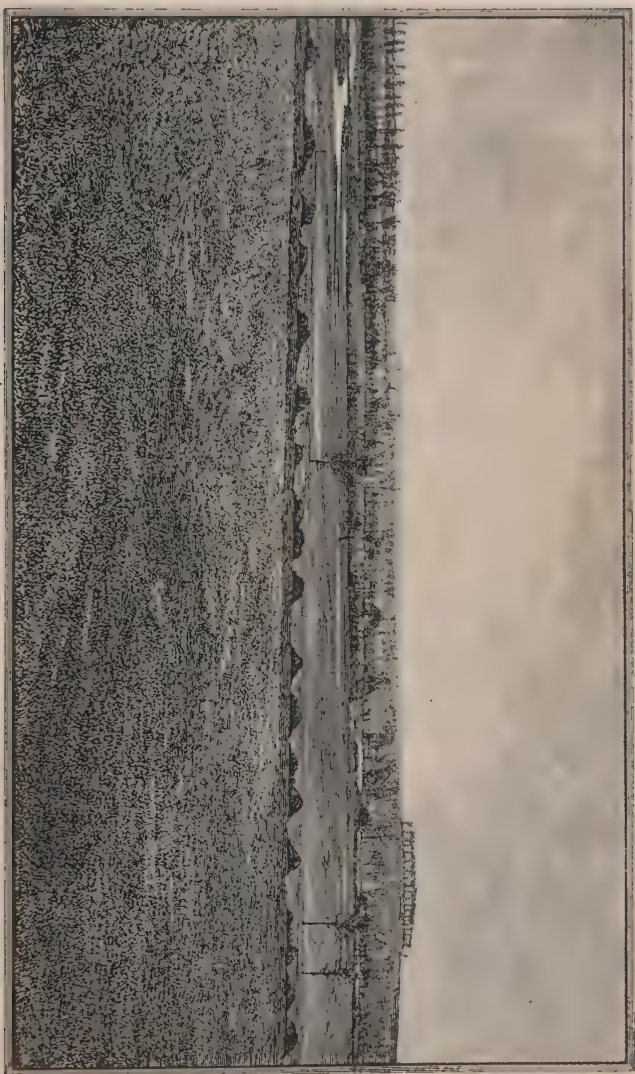


FIG. 47.—BERRY AU BAC.

versus in lātitudinem patēbat quantum loci aciēs instructa¹ occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris² dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter³ fastigātus paulātim ad plānitiam redibat, — ab utrōque latere ēius collis trānsversam fossam
 5 obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantis suōs circumvenire possent. Hōc factō
 10 duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōscripserat⁴ in castris relictis, ut, si quō opus⁵ esset, subsidiō dūci possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās⁶ ex castris ēductās instrūxērunt.

The Belgæ Try to Cross the Aisne to Attack him in the Rear.

9. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostrī trānsirent hostēs expectābant;

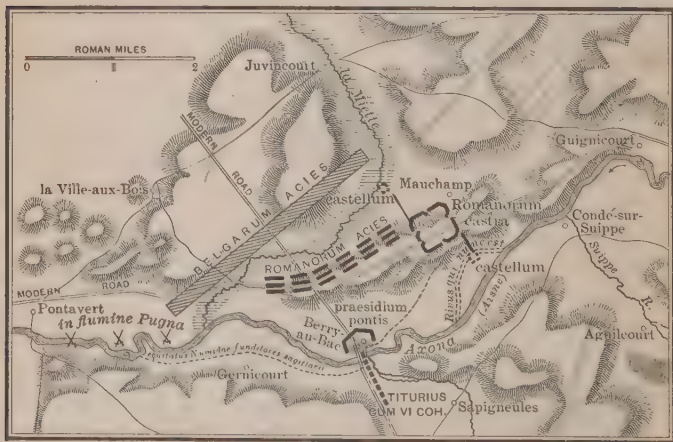


FIG. 48. — BATTLE ON THE AISNE (Axona).

Cf. ¹ instructum, p. 51, l. 4. — ² latere, 20, 1. — ³ lēniter, 55, 10. — ⁴ cōscripsit, 146, 10. — ⁵ opus, 28, 19. — ⁶ cōpiīs, 19, 7.

nostrī autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impeditōs adgrederentur¹ paratī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendebātur. Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt, secundiore equitum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra reduxit. Hostēs prōtinus² ex eō locō
 5 ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum³ est. Ibi vadīs repertis⁴ partem suārum cōpiārum tradūcere cōnatī sunt, eō cōnsiliō ut, si possent, castellum cui praeerat⁵ Q. Titūrius lēgātus expūgnārent⁶ pontemque interscinderent; si minus potuissent, 10 agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur,⁷ quī māgnō nōbis ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque⁸ nostrōs prohibērent.

Cæsar Crosses, and Defeats them. They Decide to Disband.

10. *Caesar* certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs⁹ sagittariōsque pontem tradūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Acrīter in eō locō pūgnā- 15 tum est. Hostīs impeditōs nostri in flūmine adgressi māgnū eōrum numerū occidērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē transire cōnantis multitudīne tēlōrum reppulērunt, primōsque, quī transierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expūgnandō oppidō et 20 dē flūmine transeundō spem sē fefellisse¹⁰ intellēxērunt, neque nostrōs in locū iniquiōrem prōgredi pūgnandi causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōstituērunt optimum esse domū suam quem- 25 que¹¹ reverti, et, quōrum in finis primum Rōmānī exercitū intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique¹² convenirent, ut potius in suis quam in aliēnīs finibus dēcertārent et domesticis cōpiis rei frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sen-

Cf. ¹ adgressus est, p. 24, l. 7. — ² prōtinus, 28, 24. — ³ dēmōnstrāvimus, 144, 8. — ⁴ repieriēbat, 147, 8. — ⁵ praeesset, 50, 12. — ⁶ expūgnāvit, 56, 11. — ⁷ populārī, 148, 25. — ⁸ commeātus, 149, 4. — ⁹ funditōrēs, 150, 11. — ¹⁰ fefellisset, 9, 13. — ¹¹ quisque, 147, 18. — ¹² undique, 149, 15.

tentiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Diviciācum atque Haeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum adpropinquāre cōgnōverant. His persuādēri ut diūtius morārentur¹ neque suis auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

On their Retreat, they are Pursued with Great Slaughter.

5 11. Eā rē cōstitutā secundā vigiliā māgnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castris ēgressi nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properāret,² fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō³ viderētur. Hāc rē statim⁴ Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā,⁵
10 insidiās⁶ veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent⁷ nōndum perspēxerat, exercitum equitātumque castris continuit. Primā lūce cōfirmatā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum qui novissimum agmen morārētur praemisit. His Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit⁸; T. Labiēnum
15 lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hi novissimōs adorti et multa milia passuum prōsecuti⁹ māgnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt; cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōsisterent¹⁰ fortiterque impetum nostrōrum militum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse
20 ā periculō vidērentur neque ūllā necessitatē neque imperiō continērentur exauditō clamōre perturbātis ōrdinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō periculō tantam eōrum multitudinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēi spatium; sub occāsum sōlis sequi dēstitērunt sēque
25 in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

Cf. ¹ morātī, p. 150, l. 15. — ² properāvit, 38, 20. — ³ profectiōnem, 40, 5. — ⁴ statim, 41, 6. — ⁵ cōgnōscant, 146, 14. — ⁶ insidiās, 51, 1. — ⁷ discessissent, 9, 25. — ⁸ praefēcērunt, 19, 7. — ⁹ prōsecutus, 148, 17. — ¹⁰ cōsistēns, 70, 2.

The Suessiones, Alarmed by Cæsar's Advance, Surrender.

12. Postrīdiē ēius diēi Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex
terrōre āc fugā reciperent, in finis Suessiōnum, quī proximī¹
Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere ad oppidum
Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppūgnāre² cōnātus,³
quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātītū- 5
dinem fossae⁴ mūrīque altitudinem paucis dēfendentibus
expūgnāre nōn potuit. Castris mūnītis vineās agere quae-

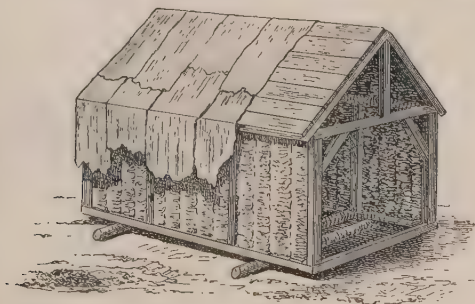


FIG. 49. — VINEA OR TESTUDO.

que ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim
omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multītūdō in oppidum proximā
nocte convēnit. Celeriter vineīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere 10
iactō turribusque cōstitūtīs,⁵ māgnitūdine operum, quae
neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritāte
Rōmānōrum permōti, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditione
mittunt et petentibus Rēmīs ut cōservārentur impetrant.

In Like Manner the Bellovaci Surrender.

13. Caesar obsidibus acceptis primis civitātis atque ipsius 15
Galbae rēgis duōbus filiīs, armisque omnibus ex oppidō

Cf. ¹ proximī, p. 146, l. 21. — ² oppūgnāre, 149, 13. — ³ cōnātis, 153,
18. — ⁴ fossam, 37, 19. — ⁵ cōstituit, 152, 6. — impetrātō, 54, 12.

trāditis¹ in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter milia passuum quinque abesset, omnēs
 5 mīiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressi manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt sēsē in ēius fidem² ac potestātem venire neque contrā populum Rōmānum armis contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset³ castraque ibi pōneret, pueri mulierēsque ex mūrō passis manibus suō
 10 mōre pācem ab Rōmānis petiērunt.

Diviciacus, Leader of the Hædui, Pleads for the Bellovaci.

14. Prō hīs Dīviciācus — nam post discessum Belgārum dimissis⁴ Haeduōrum cōpiis ad eum reverterat — facit verba: ‘Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amicitia cīvitātis Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suis principibus, quī
 15 dicerent Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs⁵ omnīs indignitātis contumēliāsque⁶ perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī ēius cōnsiliī principēs fuissent, quod intellexerent quantam calamitātem cīvitāti intulissent, in Britanniam prōfūgissee. Peterē nōn
 20 solum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs ut suā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod si fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem⁷ apud omnīs Belgās amplificātūrum,⁸ quōrum auxiliis atque opibus,⁹ si qua bella inciderint, sustentāre¹⁰ cōsuērint.

The Ambiani Surrender. Reports of the Nervii, who are Waiting to Give Battle beyond the Sambre.

25 15. Caesar honōris Dīviciāci atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dixit, et quod erat

Cf. ¹ trādidit, p. 25, l. 14. — ² fidem, 146, 23. — ³ accessit, 81, 7. — ⁴ dimittit, 27, 8. — ⁵ redāctās, 17, 15. — ⁶ contumēliam, 15, 6. — ⁷ auctōritātem, 147, 14. — ⁸ amplificandā, 18, 18. — ⁹ opibus, 12, 23. — ¹⁰ sustentātum, 149, 13.



civitas magnā inter Belgās auctoritate atque hominum multitudine praestabat, sexcentos obsides poposcit.¹ His traditis omnibusque armis ex oppido conlatis, ab eo loco in finis Ambiānorum pervēnit, qui se suaque omnia sine morā dēdērunt. Eōrum finis Nervii attingēbant; quorum de naturā moribusque² Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiebat: Nullum aditus³ esse ad eos mercatoribus; nihil pati⁴ vini reliquarumque⁵ rerum ad luxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod his rebus relanguescere animos et remitti virtutem existimarent; esse
 10 homines feros magnaēque virtutis; increpitare⁶ atque incūsare⁷ reliquos Belgās, qui se populo Rōmāno dēdidissent patriamque virtutem prōiēcissent; confirmare⁸ sese neque legatos missuros neque ullam conditionem pacis accepturos.

16. Cum per eorum finis triduum iter fecisset, inveniēbat
 15 ex captivis Sabim flumen a castris suis non amplius milia passuum x abesse; trans id flumen omnis Nervios consēdisse⁹ adventumque ibi Rōmānorum expectare unā cum Atrebatibus et Viromanduis finitimis suis (nam his utrisque¹⁰ persuaserant uti eandem belli fortunam experirentur¹¹);
 20 expectari etiam ab eis Aduatucorum copias atque esse in itinere; mulieres quique per aetatem ad pugnam inutilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniecisse, quō propter paludes¹² exercituū aditus nōn esset.

The Nervii, on Information Given by Deserters, Decide to Attack Cæsar while Pitching Camp.

17. His rebus cognitis exploratores centurionesque prae-
 25 mittit qui locum castris idoneum¹³ deligant.¹⁴ Cum ex deditionibus Belgis reliquisque Gallis complures Caesarem secuti unā iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis

Cf. ¹ poscit, p. 27, l. 7. — ² mōs, 67, 3. — ³ reliquis, 146, 13. — ⁴ increpans, 70, 3. — ⁵ confirmāverunt, 41, 6. — ⁶ consēdisse, 147, 10. — ⁷ utrāque, 152, 2. — ⁸ experiar, 30, 18. — ⁹ palūs, 152, 13. — ¹⁰ idōneō, 150, 26. — ¹¹ delēctā, 78, 3.

cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōsuētūdine¹ itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt; atque his dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum māgnū numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōti, cum prima legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs 5 māgnū spatium abessent,² hanc sub sarcinis adoriri;] quā

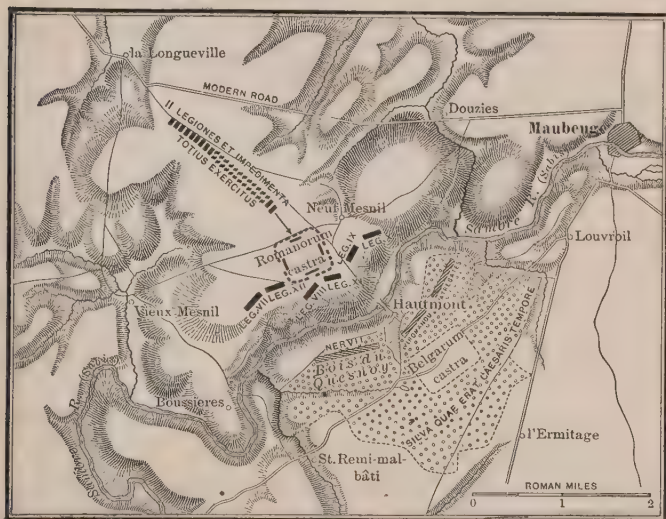


FIG. 51.—DEFEAT OF THE NERVII.

pulsā impedimentisque direptis futurū ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audērent. Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōsilium quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nervii antiquitus,³ cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus eī rei student,⁴ sed 10 quicquid possent pedestribus valent⁵ cōpiīs), quō facilius finitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī⁶ causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis, crēbris-

Cf. ¹ cōsuētūdinem, p. 85, l. 3. — ² absint, 148, II. — ³ antiquitus, 147, 9. — ⁴ studēs, 6, 9. — ⁵ valēre, 148, I. — ⁶ praedandī, 43, 13.

que in lātitudinem rāmīs ēnātīs, et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs, effēcerant¹ ut instar mūrī hae saepēs mūnimenta praebērent,² quō nōn modo nōn intrārī sed nē perspicī quidem posset. His rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedirētur, nōn
5 omittendum sibi cōsilium Nervīi existimāvērunt.

Nature of the Ground.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castris delēgerant. Collis ab summō aequālīter dēclivis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclivitāte collis nāscēbātur adversus³ huic et contrā-
10 rius, passūs circiter ducentōs infimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statīōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

The Nervii Make a Furious Assault and Throw the Romans into Confusion.

15 19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur⁴ omnibus cōpiis; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nervīos dētulerant.⁵ Nam quod hostibus adpropinquābat, cōsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās totius exercitūs impedimenta conlocārat;
20 inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē⁶ cōscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque⁷ impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trāsgressi cum hostium equitātū proelium commisērunt. Cum sē illi identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rūsus⁸ ex silvā in
25 nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant cēdentis īsequi

Cf. ¹ efficiēbat, p. 149, l. 6. — ² praebuit, 8, 4. — ³ adversus, 150, 27.
— ⁴ subsequi, 154, 15. — ⁵ dētulit, 66, 23. — ⁶ proximī, 146, 21. —
⁷ praesidium, 149, 7. — ⁸ rūsus, 27, 16.

audērent,¹ interim legiōnēs sex quae primae vēnerant opere
 dimēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prima impedimenta
 nostrī exercitūs ab eis quī in silvīs abditī² latēbant vīsa sunt,
 quod tempus inter eōs committendī proeli convēnerat,³ ut
 intrā silvās aciem ordinēsque cōstituerant⁴ atque ipsi sēsē 5
 cōfirmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiis prōvolāvērunt impe-
 tumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile pulsīs ac
 prōturbātīs, incrēdibili celeritatē ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut
 paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine [et iam in
 manibus nostrīs] hostēs vidērentur. Eādē autem celeritatē 10
 adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs quī in opere occu-
 pātī erant contendērunt.

The Critical Situation. The Discipline of the Roman Army.

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda : vēxillum
 prōpōnendum (quod erat insigne cum ad arma concurrī⁵
 oportēret), signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī militēs, 15



FIG. 52. — LITUUS.



FIG. 53. — TUBA.



FIG. 54. — CORNU.

quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arces-
 sendī, aciēs instruenda,⁶ militēs cohortandī,⁷ signum dandum.
 Quārum rērum māgnam partem temporis brevitās et succes-

Cf. ¹ audērent, p. 150, l. 24. — ² abditus, 9, 21. — ³ convenit, 85, 14. —

⁴ cōstituit, 152, 6. — ⁵ concurrant, 83, 10. — ⁶ instruendam, 150, 25. —

⁷ cohortātus, 148, 17.

sus hostium impediēbat.¹ His difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidio,² — scientia atque ūsus militum, quod superiōribus proeliis exercitātī quid fieri oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsi sibi praescribere quam ab aliis docēri³ poterant; et
 5 quod ab opere singulisque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnitis castris vetuerat. Hi propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium expectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur administrābant.

Cæsar Addresses the Tenth; the Rest are already Engaged.

10 21. Caesar, necessāriis rēbus imperātis, ad cohortandōs milites quam in partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Milites nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus quam uti suae pristinæ virtutis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur⁴ animō hostiumque impetum
 15 fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adici posset, proeli committendī signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus, pūgnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas hostiumque tam parātus⁵ ad dimicandum animus ut nōn modo
 20 ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit, quaeque prima signa cōspēxit ad haec cōstitit,⁶ nē in quaerendis suis pūgnandī tempus dimitteret.

The Varying Fortunes of the Battle.

25 22. Instrūctō exercitū magis ut loci nātūra dēiectusque⁷ collis et necessitās temporis quam ut rei militāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum diversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in

Cf. ¹ impediērent, p. 159, l. 13. — ² subsidium, 150, 8. — ³ docet, 148, 21. — ⁴ perturbātis, 54, 21. — ⁵ parāta, 25, 5. — ⁶ cōsistendī, 150, 4. — ⁷ dēiectūs, 152, 2.

parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque¹ dēnsissimis (ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus) interiectis² prōspectus impedirētur, neque certa subsidia conlocārī neque quid in quāque parte opus³ esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortunae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

Two Legions Force the Atrebatēs into the River; Two Pursue the Viromandui, but the Nervii Gain the Camp.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōnstitēbant, pilis ēmissis cursū ac lassitudine exanimātōs vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs — nam his ea pars obvenerat — celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt, et trānsire cōnantis⁴ insecūti gladiis māgnam partem eōrum impeditam interfēcērunt. Ipsi trānsire flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum inīquum⁵ prōgressi rūsus resistentis hostis redintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte diversae duae legiōnēs, ūn-
15 decima et octāva, prōflīgātis Viromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex locō superiōre in ipsis flūminis ripis proeliābantur. At tōtis ferē castris ā fronte et ab sinistrā parte nūdātis,⁶ cum in dextrō cornū⁷ legiō duodecima et nōn māgnō ab eā intervallō septima cōstitisset, omnēs Nervii
20 cōfertissimō agmine duce Boduōgnātō, qui summam⁸ imperi tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenire, pars summum castrorum locum petere coepit.

The Enemy Have the Advantage. The Treveri, Panic-stricken, Withdraw to their Homes.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae⁹ peditēs, qui cum eis ūnā fuerant, quōs primō hostium

Cf. ¹ saepēs, p. 160, l. 2. — ² interiectis, 160, 2. — ³ opus, 152, 10. — ⁴ cōnātus, 155, 4. — ⁵ inīquiōrem, 153, 22. — ⁶ nūdātus, 150, 2. — ⁷ cornū, 82, 3. — ⁸ summam, 148, 8. — ⁹ armātūrae, 153, 14.

impetū pulsōs dixeram, cum sē in castra recipere, adversis
 hostibus occurrēbant ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petē-
 bant; et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō
 collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōspēxerant, prae-
 5 dandī¹ causā ēgressi, cum respēxissent et hostis in nostris
 castris versārī vidissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant.²
 Simul eōrum quī cum impedimentis veniēbant clāmor fre-
 mitusque oriēbātur, aliique aliam in partem perterriti
 ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōti equitēs Treverī,
 10 quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō³ est singulāris, quī
 auxili causā ā civitatē missi ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum
 multitudīne hostium castra complērī, legiōnēs premi⁴ et
 paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs,
 Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnis partis fugere
 15 vidissent, dēspērātis⁵ nostris rēbus domum contendērunt;
 Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castris impedimentisque
 eōrum hostis potitōs, civitatī renūntiāvērunt.

Cæsar Enters the Fight in Person and Inspires his Soldiers.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum
 cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signisque in ūnum locum
 20 conlātis duodecimae legiōnis cōfertōs⁶ militēs sibi ipsōs
 ad pūgnam esse impedimentō vidit, — quartae cohortis
 omnibus centuriōnibus occisis,⁷ signiferō interfectō, signō⁸
 āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē⁹ centuriōnibus
 aut volnerātis aut occisis, in his prīmipilō P. Sextiō Baculō,
 25 fortissimō virō, multis gravibusque vulneribus cōfectō,¹⁰ ut
 iam sē sustinēre nōn posset; reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et
 nōn nullōs¹¹ ab novissimis dēsertō proeliō excēdere ac tēla
 vitāre,¹² hostis neque ā fronte ex inferiōre locō subeuntis

Cf. ¹ praedandī, p. 159, l. 12. — ² mandāvit, 33, 13. — ³ opīniōnem, 150, 22. — ⁴ pressus, 3, 11. — ⁵ dēspērāret, 19, 26. — ⁶ cōfertissimo, 163, 21. — ⁷ occidērunt, 153, 17. — ⁸ signum, 161, 17. — ⁹ ferē, 67, 7. — ¹⁰ cōnfectus, 48, 22. — ¹¹ nōn nullis, 144, 14. — ¹² vitārent, 84, 9.

intermittere, et ab utrōque latere instāre, et rem esse in angustō vīdit neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submitti¹ posset, — scūtō ab novissimis [ūni] militi dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō² vēnerat, in primam aciem prōcessit; centuriōibusque nōminātim appellātis reliquōs cohortātus 5



FIG. 55. — AQUILIFER.



FIG. 56. — CENTURIO.

militēs signa inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius ^{art} gladiis ūtī possent. [Cūius adventū spē inlātā militibus ac redintegrātō³ animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suis rēbus, operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

10

Cf. ¹ submittātur, p. 150, l. 8. — ² scūtīs, 162, 21. — ³ redintegrātō, 163, 14.

Meanwhile Labienus, having Taken the Enemy's Camp, Sends a Reinforcement to Cæsar.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōstiterat, item urgēri ab hoste vidisset, tribūnōs militum monuit ut paulatim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostis inferrent. Quō factō, cum alius aliī subsidium ferret
 5 neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenirentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pūgnāre coepērunt. Interim milites legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impeditis fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū¹ incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus
 10 castris hostium potitus² et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostris castris gererentur³ cōspiciātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostris misit. Quī, cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur cōgnōvissent, nihil ad cele-
 15 ritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

The Tide of Battle Turns.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtatiō est facta ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus cōfecti⁴ prōcubuissent, scūtis innixi proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs hostis cōspiciātī etiam inermēs armātis occurrerent⁵; equitēs vērō,
 20 ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locis pūgnant, quō sē legiōnāriis militibus praeferrent. (At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salutis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pūgnārent; his dēiectis et
 25 coacervātis cadāveribus, quī superessent ut ex tumultō tēla in nostrōs conicerent⁶ et pila intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquiquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicāri dēbēret ausōs

Cf. ¹ cursū, p. 163, l. 8. — ² potiundī, 150, 14. — ³ gerantur, 146, 14. — ⁴ cōfectōs, 163, 9. — ⁵ occurrēbant, 164, 2. — ⁶ conicerent, 150, 4.

esse trānsire lātissimum¹ flūmen, ascendere altissimās ripās, subire inīquissimum² locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī māgnitūdō redēgerat.

The Nervii utterly Routed, and Most of them Slain.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente āc nōmine Nerviorū redāctō, māiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum 5 pueris mulieribusque in aestuāria āc palūdēs³ coniectōs (dixerāmus,) hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impeditum, victīs nihil tūtum⁴ arbitrārentur, omnium quī supererant cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt⁵; et, in commemorandā⁶ cīvitātis calamitāte, ex sexcentis ad 10 trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum milibus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dixerunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs āc supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidēretur, diligentissimē cōservāvit, suisque finibus atque oppidis ūti iussit, et finitimīs imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē 15 suōsque prohibērent.⁷

The Aduatuci Withdraw to a Stronghold. Their Origin.

(29. Aduatuci, dē quibus suprā diximus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nervii venirent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūctīs oppidis castellisque⁸ dēsertīs ~~sua~~ omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgrediē nātūrā mūnitum contu- 20 lērunt.⁹ Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rupis dēspectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter¹⁰ acclivis aditus in lātitudinem nōn amplius pedum CC relinquēbātur; quem locum duplici altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum māgnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabīs in mūrō conlocā- 25 bant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prōgnātī, quī,

Cf. ¹ lātissimōs, p. 148, l. 3. — ² inīquum, 163, 13. — ³ palūs, 152, 13. — ⁴ tūta, 149, 4. — ⁵ dēdidērunt, 158, 4. — ⁶ commemorāset, 76, 5. — ⁷ prohibuerint, 147, 3. — ⁸ castellum, 153, 9. — ⁹ contulissent, 156, 3. — ¹⁰ lēniter, 152, 3.

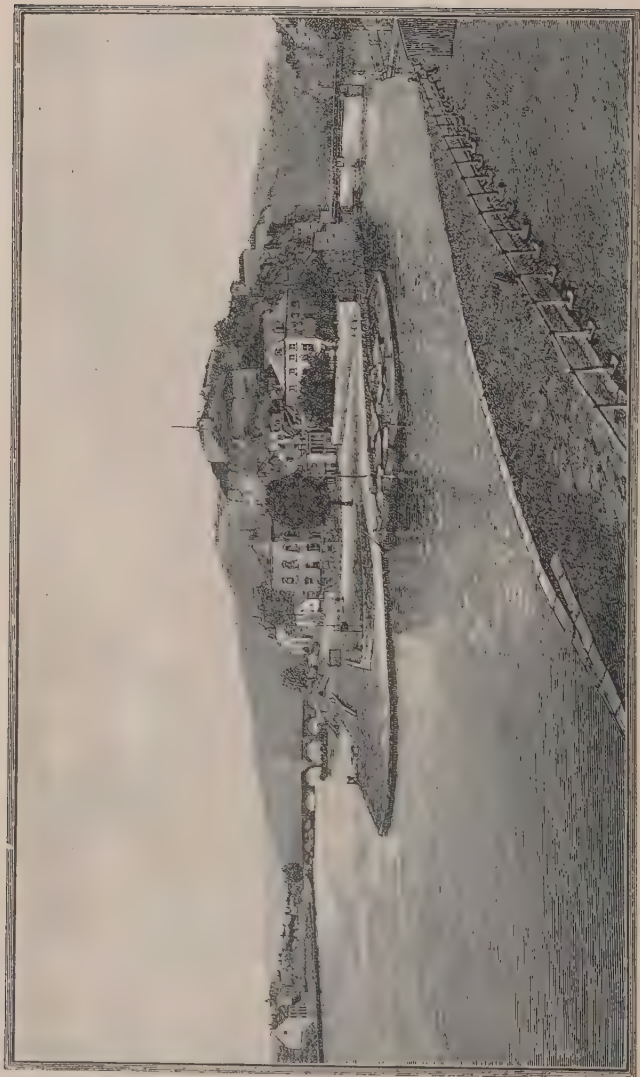


FIG. 57. — CITADEL OF NAMUR.

cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Ītaliā facerent, eis impedimentis quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositis, custōdiam ex suis ac praesi-

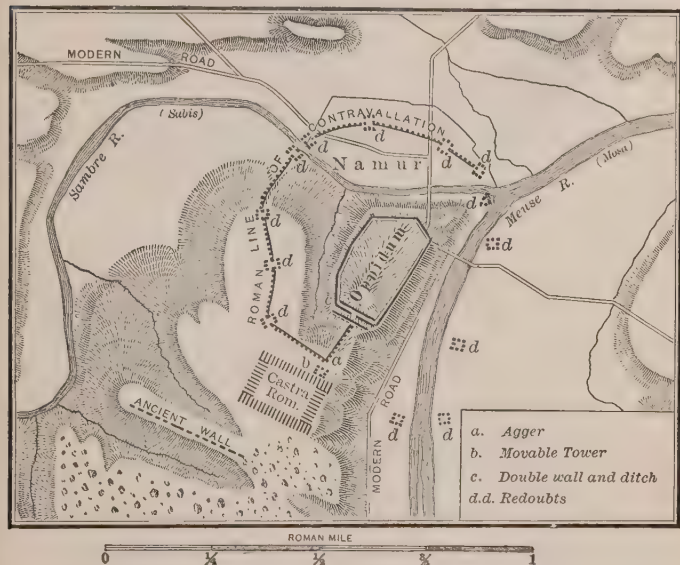


FIG. 58.—SIEGE OF THE STRONGHOLD OF THE ADUATUCI.

dium sex milia hominum unā reliquerant. Hi post eorum obitum multos annos a finitimis exagitati, cum alias bellum inferrent alias inlatum defenderent, consensu eorum omnium pace facta hunc sibi domiciliō locum delēgerant.

They Scoff at the Roman Siege Works.

30. Ac primō adventū¹ exercitūs nostrī crebrās² ex oppidō excursiōēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliis cum nostris contendēbant; postea vāllō pedum XII, in circuitū xv milium, crebrisque castellis circummūniti, oppidō sēsē continēbant.

Cf. ¹ adventum, p. 158, l. 17. — ² crebrī, 144, 9.

Ubi vineis¹ æctis aggere² exstructō turrim procul cōstitui vidērent; primum inrīdēre³ ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus quod tanta māchinatiō ab tantō spatiō instituerētur: 'Qui-

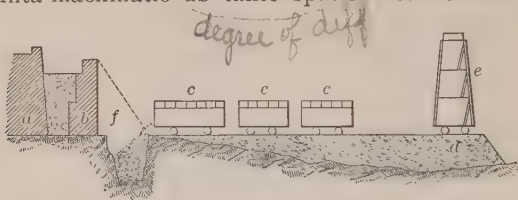


FIG. 59. — SIEGE WORKS.

a, b, Double wall. *e*, Movable tower.
c, c, c, Vineæ. *f*, Ditch.
d, Agger.

busnam manibus aut quibus viribus⁴ praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae' — nam plērumque hominibus Gallis prae māgnitudine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptui est — 'tantī oneris⁵ turrim in mūrō sēsē conlocāre cōfiderent?'

They Become Alarmed, and Offer to Surrender Conditionally.

31. Ubi vērō movērī et adpropinquāre⁶ moenibus⁷ vidērent, novā atque inūsitatā speciē⁸ commōti⁹ lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīserunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: 'Nōn existimāre Rōmānōs sine ope divinā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitudinis māchinatiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere¹⁰ dixerunt. 'Unum petēre ac dēprecārī¹¹: sī forte prō suā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine,¹² quam ipsī ab aliis audirent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnis ferē finitimōs esse inimicōs ac suae

Cf. ¹ vineās, p. 155, l. 7. — ² aggere, 155, 10. — ³ inrīdendum, 83, 25. — ⁴ viribus, 21, 9. — ⁵ onere, 3, 11. — ⁶ adpropinquāre, 154, 3. — ⁷ moenibus, 149, 15. — ⁸ speciem, 38, 17. — ⁹ commōtus, 146, 9. — ¹⁰ permittere, 146, 24. — ¹¹ dēprecantibus, 63, 12. — ¹² mānsuētūdine, 156, 21.

virtutī invidere¹; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditis armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, si in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvis fortunam ā populō Rōmānō pati quam ab his per cruciātum interfici inter quōs dominārī cōsuēssent.

They Accept Cæsar's Terms, but treacherously Retain Part of their Arms.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: 'Sē magis cōsuētūdine 5 suā quam meritō eōrum civitātem cōservātūrum, si, priusquam² mūrū aries attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēditionis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditis. Sē id quod in Nerviiis fēcisset factūrum, finitimisque imperātūrum nē quam dēditiciis populī Rōmānī iniūriam inferrent.' Rē 10 nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dixērunt. Armōrum māgnā multitudīne dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidū iactā, sic ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitudinem acervi armōrum adaequārent, et tamen³ circiter parte tertiā, ut postea perspectum est, cēlātā atque in op- 15 pidō retentā, portis patēfactis eō diē pāce sūnt ūsī.

They Make a Sally from the Town, but are Repulsed. More than 50,000 Sold as Slaves.

33. Sub vesp̄erum Caesar portās claudi militēsque ex oppidō exire iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī⁴ ā militibus iniūriam acciperent. Illi ante initō (ut intellēctum est) cōnsiliō, quod dēditione factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut 20 dēnique indiligentiū servātūrōs, crēdiderant, — partim cum eis quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtis ex cortice factis aut vīminibus intextis, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās⁵ postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, — tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitiōnēs ascēsus vidēbā- 25 tur, omnibus cōpiis repente ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt.

Cf. ¹ invidērant, p. 59, l. 11. — ² priusquam, 155, 1. — ³ tamen, 41, 1. — ⁴ oppidānīs, 150, 12. — ⁵ exiguitās, 162, 18.

Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat, ignibus significātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellis eō concursus¹ est, pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salutis, iniquō locō, contrā eōs quī ex vāllō² turribusque tēla
 5 iacerent, pūgnārī dēbuit,³ cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs cōsisteret. Occīsīs ad hominum milibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum reiecti sunt. Postridiē ēius diēi refrāctis portis, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissis militibus nostris, sectiōnem ēius oppidi ūniversam Caesar vēdidit.⁴ Ab
 10 eis quī ēmerant caputū numerus ad eum relātus est milium quīnquāgintā trium.

Crassus Subduces Many Coast Towns.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae civitatēs
 15 Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnis eās civitatēs in diciōnem potestātemque populi Rōmānī esse redāctās.⁵

The Army Goes into Winter Quarters. A Thanksgiving for Cæsar's Victories is Decreed at Rome.

35. Hīs rēbus gestis, omni Galliā pācātā,⁶ tanta hūius belli ad barbarōs opiniō perlāta est utī ab eis nātiōnibus
 20 quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta⁷ factūrās pollicērentur.⁸ Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliā Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque civitatēs propinquae

Cf. ¹ concurrī, p. 161, l. 14. — ² vāllō, 149, 9. — ³ dēbēret, 166, 27. — ⁴ vēndunt, 31, 19. — ⁵ redāctō, 167, 5. — ⁶ pācātā, 144, 13. — ⁷ imperāta, 146, 26. — ⁸ pollicitōs, 148, 1.

eīs locis erant ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hiberna dēductis in Ītaliā profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litteris Caesaris diēs quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūlli.



FIG. 60.—GAIUS IULIUS CAESAR.

BOOK III, 7-16.

THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE VENETI. B.C. 56.

Operations in Northwestern Gaul on the Seacoast. Crassus Sends
Messengers to Collect Supplies.

7. His rēbus gestis cum omnibus dē causis Caesar pācā-
tam Galliam existimāret [superātis Belgis, expulsis Germā-
nis, victis in Alpibus Sedūnis], atque ita initā hieme in
Illyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adire et
15 regiōnēs cōgnōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coör-
tum est.¹ Eius belli haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns
cum legiōne VII proximus mare Oceanum in Andibus hiemā-
bat.² Is, quod in his locis inopia frūmenti erat, praefectōs
tribūnōsque militum complūris in finitimās civitātis frūmenti
10 causā dimisit; quō in numerō erat T. Terrasidius missus in
Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum
T. Siliō in Venetōs.

The Messengers are Seized by the Veneti, under whose Lead the Maritime
Tribes Demand a Return of their Hostages.

8. Hūius est civitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis
ōrae³ maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvis habent Ve-
15 neti plurimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōsuērunt, et
scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticarum cēterōs antecēdunt, et
in māgnō impetū maris *trāsiti* atque apertī paucis portibus
interiectis, quōs tenent ipsi, omnis ferē qui eō mari ūti cōn-
suērunt habent vectigālīs. Ab his fit initium retinendī Sili
20 atque Velāni, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs quōs Crassō
dedissent recuperātūrōs⁴ existimābant. Hōrum auctōritāte
finitimi adducti (ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentina cōn-

Cf. ¹ coörta est, p. 40, l. 17. — ² hiemāvī, 1, 3. — ³ ōrā, 37, 7. —
⁴ recuperandās, 48, 8.

silia), eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent; et celeriter missis lēgātis per suōs principēs inter sē coniūrant nihil nisi commūnī cōsiliō āctūrōs¹ eundemque omnis fortūnae exitum esse-lātūrōs; reliquāsque civitatēs sollicitant¹ ut in eā libertāte quam ā māiōribus accēperint permanēre 5 quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālint. Omnī ōrā. maritimā celeriter ad suām sententiam perductā commūnem lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt: 'Sī velit suōs recipere, obsidēs sibi remittat.'



FIG. 61 — GALLEY.

Cæsar Orders a Fleet to be Built on the Loire. The Veneti Prepare for War and Summon Allies.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Cæsar ab Crassō certior factus, quod 10 ipse aberat longius, nāvīs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod influit in Oceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā institui, nautās gubernātōrēsque² comparārī iubet. His rēbus

Cf. ¹ sollicitārentur, p. 146, l. 1. — ² gubernātōre, 69, 5.

celeriter administrātis ipse, cum primum per anni tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Veneti reliquaeque item civitatēs cōgnitō Caesaris adventū [certiōrēs facti], simul quod quantum in sē facinus¹ admisissent intellegēbant, lēgā-

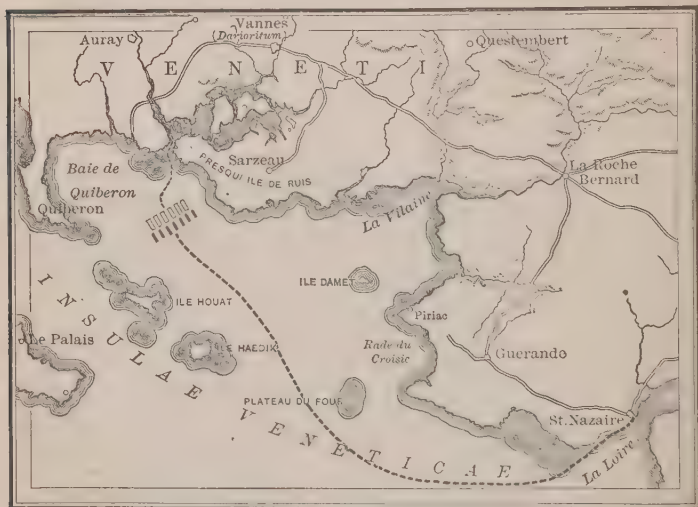


FIG. 62. — MAP OF THE VENETI NEIGHBORHOOD.

5 tōs — quod nōmen ad omnis nātiōnēs sānctum inviolātum-
que semper fuisset — retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniectōs,²
prō māgnitūdine periculī bellum parāre et māximē ea quae
ad ūsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre instituunt, hōc māiōre
spē quod multum nātūrā loci cōnfidēbant.) Pedestria esse
10 itinera concisa aestuariis, nāvigātiōnem impeditam propter
inscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque
nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmenti inopiam diūtius apud sē
morārī posse cōnfidēbant ; ac iam ut omnia contrā opiniōnem

Cf. ¹ facinus, p. 69, l. 1. — ² coniecta sunt, 19, 25.

acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem¹ habēre nāvium, neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent vada, portūs, insulās nōvisse; āc longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclusō mari atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciebant. His
 5 initis cōsiliis oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvis in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum bellum gestūrum cōnstābat,² quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliātōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adsciscunt; auxilia
 10 ex Britannīā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.³

Cæsar's Reasons for Prosecuting the War. His Strategy "Divide and Conquer."

10. Erant hae difficultātēs belli gerendi quās suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebellio
 15 facta post dēditionem, dēfectiō datis obsidibus, tot civitātum coniūrātiō, imprimis (nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrarentur.) Itaque cum intellegeret omnis ferē Gallōs novis rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbilit̄er celeriterque excitārī, omnis autem hominēs nātūrā libertātī studēre et condiōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs
 20 civitātēs cōspirārent, partiendum sibi āc lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

Labiēnus Sent to the East, Crassus to the South, Sabinus to the North. Brutus has Charge of the Fleet.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, qui proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō
 25 contineat; Germānōsque, qui auxiliō ā Gallis arcessitī dicē-

Cf. ¹ facultātem, p. 24, l. 6. — ² cōstat, 40, 2. — ³ arcessendās, 68, 22. — ⁴ imprimis, 55, 2.

bantur, si per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriis XII et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficisci iubet, nē ex his nātiōibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae
 5 nātiōēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabinum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas, Lexoviōsque mittit, (quī eam manum distinendam¹ cūret.) D. Brūtum adulescentem classi Gallicisque nāvibus, quas ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquisque pācātis regiōnibus convenire iusserat,
 10 praeficit, et cum primum possit in Venetōs proficisci iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiis contendit.

Situation of the Strongholds of the Veneti.

12. Erant ēius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in extrēmīs lingulis prōmuntūriisque neque pedibus aditum habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus² incitāvisset (quod [bis]
 15 accidit semper hōrārū XII spatiō), neque nāvibus, quod rūsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadīs adhictārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppūgnātiō impediēbātur; ac si quandō — māgnitūdine operis forte superātī, extrūsō mari aggere ac mōlibus atque his oppidī moenibus adaequātis —
 20 dēspērāre fortūnis suis coeperant, māgnō numerō nāvium adpulsō, cūius rei summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūsus isdem opportunitātibus loci dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius māgnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae
 25 nāvēs tempestātibus dētīnēbantur summaque erat vāstō atque apertō mari, māgnis aestibus, rāris ac prope nullis portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

Description of their Ships. Comparison with those of the Romans.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armataeque erant: carinae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārū

Cf. ¹ distinērī, p. 148, l. 22. — ² cūrāvit, 62, 5. — ³ aestus, 12, 2.

nāvium, quō facilius vada āc dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum¹ ērectae atque item puppēs ad māgnitudinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodatae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvis vim et contumēliam² perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitudinem trabibus cōnfixa clāvis ferreis digiti pollicis crassitudine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreis catēnis revinctae; pellēs³ prō vēlis alūtaeque tenuiter cōfectae, sive propter inopiam linī atque eius ūsūs



FIG. 63. — ROMAN BATTLE SHIP

inscientiam sive eō (quod est magis vērīsimile) quod tantās tempestātis Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinērī āc tanta onera nāvium regi vēlis nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. Cum his nāvibus nostrae clāssī eius modi congressus erat ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret; reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum, illis essent aptiōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim eis nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant — tanta in eis erat firmitūdō — neque

Cf. ¹ admodum, p. 18, l. 6. — ² contumēliam, 15, 6. — ³ pellibus, 72, 10.

propter altitudinem facile tēlum adigēbātur et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadis cōsisterent tūtius
 5 et ab aestū relictæ nihil saxa et cōtis timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

The Battle. How the Romans Overcame their Disadvantages.

14. Complūribus expūgnātis oppidis Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī,¹ neque hostium fugam captis oppidis reprimī neque eis nocērī posse, statuit expectan-
 10 dam classem.² Quæ ubi convēnit, ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter CCXX nāvēs eōrum parātissimæ atque omni genere armōrum ōrnatissimæ profectæ ex portū nostris adversæ cōstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, qui classī praeerat, vel tribūnis militum centuriōnibusque, quibus sin-
 15 gularē nāvēs erant attribūtæ, cōstābat quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pūgnæ insisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cōgnōverant; turribus autem excitātis tamen hās altitudō puppiū ex barbaris nāvibus superābat ut neque ex inferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa
 20 ā Gallis gravius acciderent. Ūna erat māgnō ūsuī rēs prae-parāta ā nostris, — falcēs praeacūtæ³ insertæ adfixæque longuriis nōn absimilī formā mūrālium falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs⁴ dēstinābant comprehēnsi adductique erant, nāvigiō rēmīs⁵ incitatō prærumpēbantur.
 25 Quibus abscisis⁶ antemnae necessāriō concidēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicis nāvibus spēs in vēlis armāmentisque cōsisteret, hīs ēreptis omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostri milites facile superābant atque eō magis, quod in cōspectū
 30 Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum

Cf. ¹ sūmat, p. 28, l. 27. — ² classī, 178, 8. — ³ praeacūtās, 167, 25. — ⁴ mālum, 48, 17. — ⁵ rēmīs, 41, 23. — ⁶ abscīsa, 25, 23.

181
paulō fortius factum latēre¹ posset ; omnēs enim collēs ac
 loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus. dēspectus in mare, ab
 exercitū tenēbantur.]

They Defeat the Enemy and Capture their Ships.

15. Disiectis (ut diximus) antemnis, cum singulās bīnae
 ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā vī trānsce- 5
 dere in hostium nāvis contendēbant. Quod postquam bar-
 barī fieri animadvertērunt, expūgnātis complūribus nāvibus,
 cum ei rei nūllum reperirēt² auxilium, fugā salūtem petere



FIG. 64. — TRADING VESSEL.

contendērunt. Ac iam conversis in eam partem nāvibus quō
 ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit 10
 ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad
 negōtium cōficiendum māximē fuit opportūna ; nam
 singulās nostrī cōsectāti expūgnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex
 omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum
 ab hōrā ferē IIII ūsque³ ad sōlis occāsum pūgnārētur. 15

Cf. ¹ latēbant, p. 161, l. 3. — ² reperiēbat, 83, 26. — ³ ūsque, 17, 24.

The Veneti Surrender. Their Leaders are Put to Death, the Rest Sold as Slaves.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque ōrae maritimae cōfectum¹ est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōsili aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubique fuerat in
 5 ūnum locum coēgerant²; quibus āmissis reliquī neque quō sē reciperent neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesari dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum³ statuit, quō diligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbaris iūs lēgātōrum cōser-
 10 vārētur. Itaque omni senātū necātō⁴ reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit. //

Cf. ¹ cōfectis, p. 70, l. 10. — ² cōgēbātur, 63, 9 ³ vindicārent, 15, 6.
 — ⁴ necāret, 33, 14.

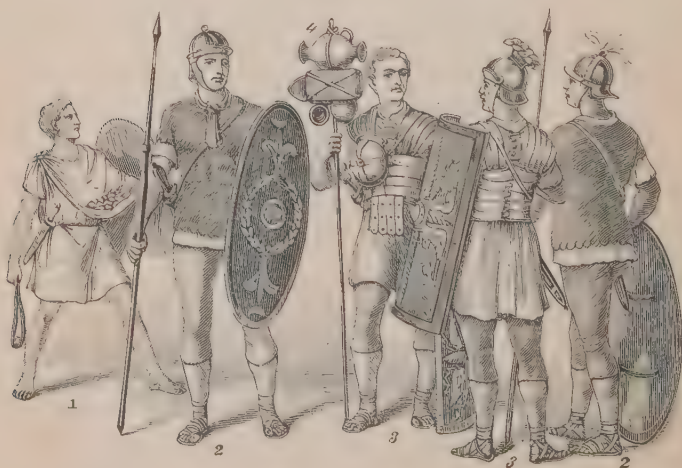


FIG. 65.

1. FUNDITOR.

2, 2. MILITES LEVIS ARMATURAE.

3, 3. LEGIONARIJ.

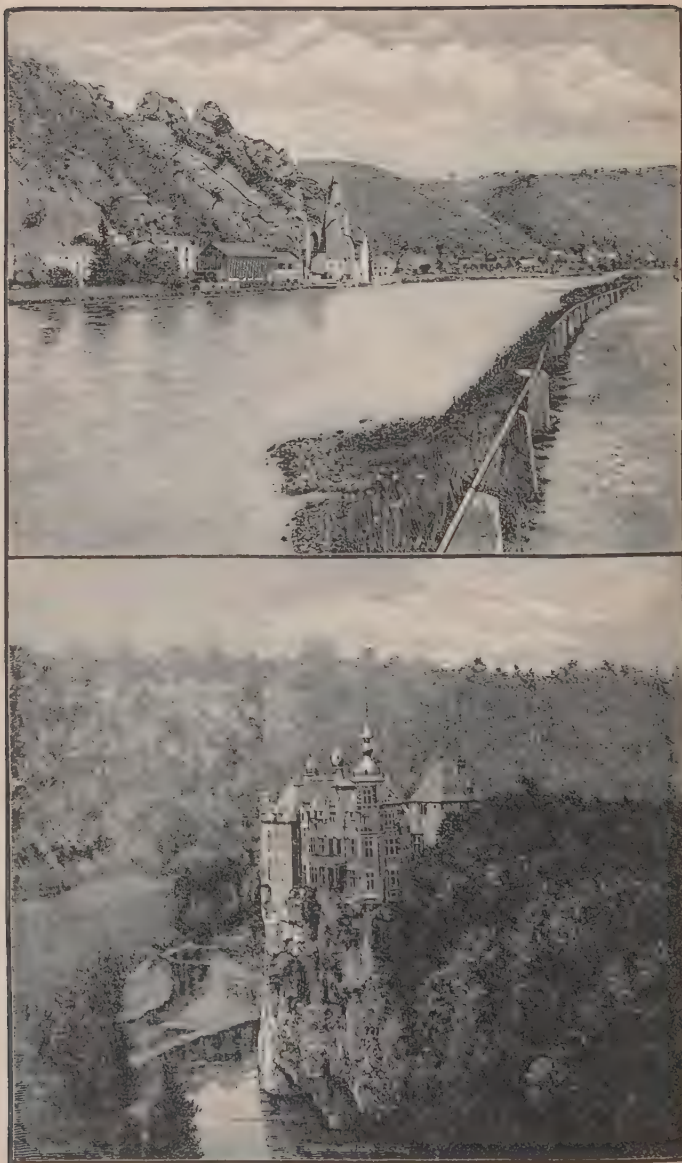
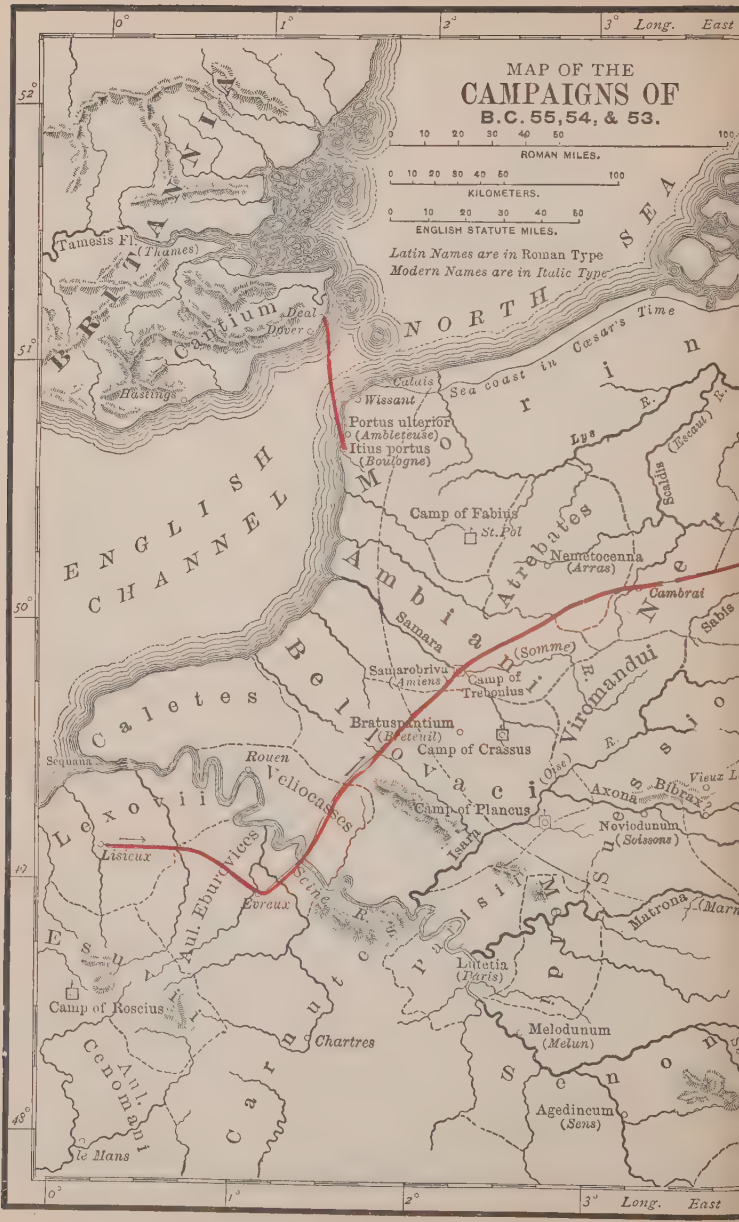


FIG. 67.—SCENERY ON THE MEUSE.





MAP OF THE
CAMPAIGNS OF
B.C. 55, 54, & 53.

0 10 20 30 40 50 100
ROMAN MILES.
0 10 20 30 40 50
KILOMETERS.
0 10 20 30 40 50
ENGLISH STATUTE MILES.

Latin Names are in Roman Type
Modern Names are in *Italic Type*

Sea coast in *Caesars Time*

Tamesis Fl. (Thames)

BRITANNIA
Centium
Deal
Dover
Hastings

ENGLISH CHANNEL

Catalis
Wissant
Portus ulterior (Ambleteuse)
Itius portus (Boulogne)

Camp of Fabius
St. Pol

Ambria
Atrebatibus
Nametocenna (Arras)

Samara
Samarobriva (Amiens)
Camp of Trebonius

Bratuspantium (Bretueil)
Camp of Crassus

Camp of Plancus

Caletes
Rouen
Vellocasses
Lisieux
Eborac

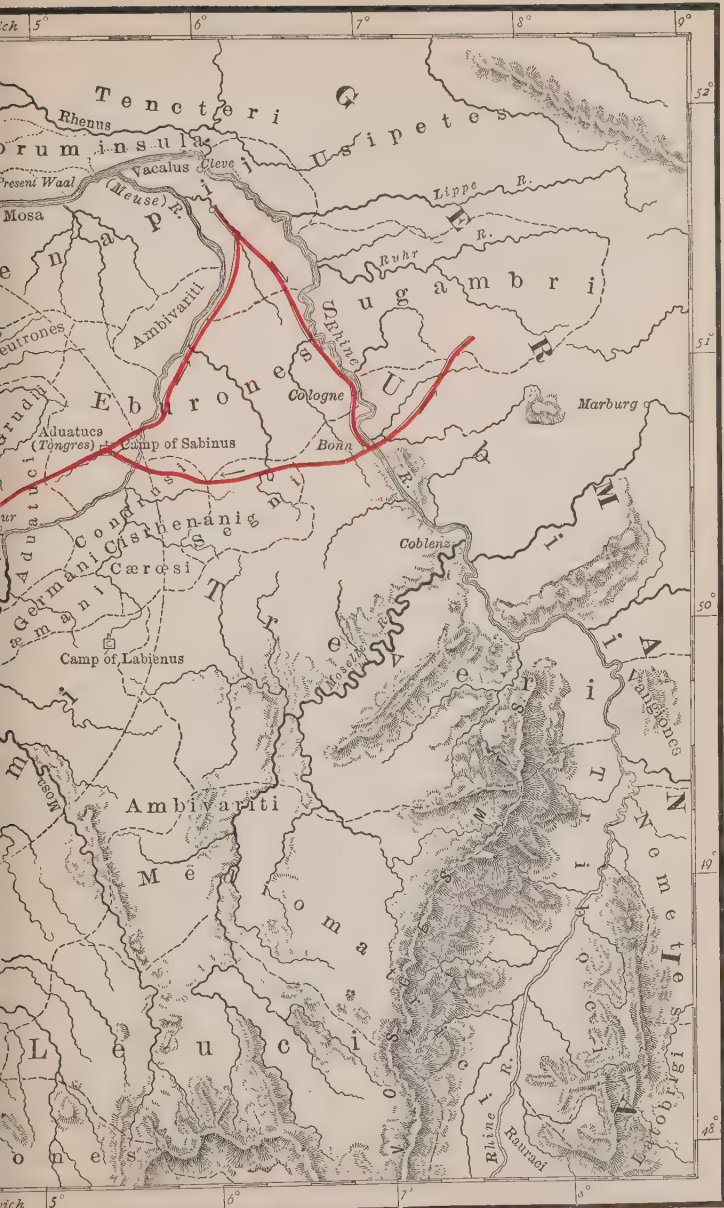
Lexovii
Eborac
Aul. Eburacorum
Camp of Roscius


Cenomanii
le Mans

Viromandui
Axona
Bibrax
Noviodunum (Soissons)

Matrona (Marne)
Lutetia (Paris)

Melodunum (Melun)
Agedincum (Sens)



et libertāte vitae, quod ā pueris nūllō officiō¹ aut disciplinā adsuēfacti nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et virīs alit et immānī corporum māgnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt, ut locīs frigidissimis neque vestitūs praeter pellis habērent quicquam, quārum 5 propter exiguitātem māgna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus. 

Their Intercourse with Other Tribes.

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō ut quae bellō cēperint quibus vēdant² habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsiderent. Quīn etiam iūmentis, quibus māximē Galli 10 dēlectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, [Germānī] importātis nōn ūtuntur; sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēformia, haec cotīdiānā exercitātiōne summī ut sint labōris efficiunt.

Their Cavalry Tactics.

Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt³ ac pedibus 15 proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vestigiō adsuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiis ūti. Itaque ad quēvis numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quāvis paucī adire audent. Vinum omnīnō ad sē 20 importārī nōn sinunt, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.

The Ubii, Tributaries of the Suevi.

3. Pūblicē māximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suis finibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē significārī māgnū numerum civitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque 25 ūnā ex parte ā Suēvis circiter milia passuum sexcenta agrī vacāre dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit civitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānō-

Cf. ¹ officiō, p. 177, l. 25. — ² vēdidit, 183, 11. — ³ dēsiluit, 51, 24.

rum ; eī paulō, quamquam sunt ēiusdem generis sunt, cēteris hūmāniōrēs, proptereā quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs¹ ventitant, et ipsi propter propinquitātem [quod] Gallicis sunt mōribus adsuēfacti. Hōs cum Suēvī
 5 multis saepe bellis experti propter amplitudinē gravitatemque civitātis finibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectigālīs² sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs infirmiorēsq̄ue redēgērunt.³

The Usipetes and Tencteri, Expelled from Germany, Overcome the Menapii.

4. In eādē causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencteri, quōs
 10 suprā diximus, quī complūris annōs Suēvōrum vim sustinuerunt ; ad extrēmum tamen agris expulsi et multis locis Germāniae triennium vagātī⁴ ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt ; quās regiōnēs Menapii incolēbant. Hī ad utramque ripam flūmi-



FIG. 69. — COINS OF CÆSAR.

nis agrōs aedificia vicōsq̄ue habēbant ; sed tantae multitudinis aditū perterriti ex eis aedificiis quae trāns flūmen habuerant dēmigrāverant, et cis Rhēnum dispositis praesidiis Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant. Illi omnia experti, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsire propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, reverti
 20 sē in suās sēdis regiōnēsq̄ue simulāvērunt⁵ et tridui viam prōgressi rūsus revertērunt, atque omnī hōc itinere unā nocte equitatū cōflectō insciōs inopinantisque⁶ Menapiōs oppressērunt ; quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explorātōrēs

Cf. ¹ mercātōrēs, p. 43, l. 13. — ² vectigālīs, 174, 25. — ³ redāctōs, 65, 10. — ⁴ vagābantur, 37, 11. — ⁵ simulāns, 82, 13. — ⁶ inopinātum, 72, 20.

certiōrēs facti sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vicōs remigrāverant.¹ His interfectis nāvibusque eōrum occupātis, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum quae citrā Rhēnum erat certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiis occupātis reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiis aluērunt. 5

Caesar Distrusts the Gauls on Account of their Fickle Character. He Fears their Alliance with Germans.

5. His dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliis capiendis mōbilēs et novis plērumque rēbus student, nihil his committendum existimāvit. Est enim hōc Gallicae cōsuētūdinis uti et viātōrēs etiām invitōs cōsistere cōgant, et quid quisque 10 eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cōgnōverit quaerant; et mercātōrēs in oppidis volgus² circumsistat, quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverint prōnūtiāre³ cōgat. His rēbus atque auditōnibus permōti dē summis saepe rēbus cōsilia ineunt, [quōrum eōs in vestigiō paenitere 15 necesse est,] cum incertis rūmōribus serviant et plērique ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

Seneca, Epist. 190
He Resolves to Make War on the Germans.

6. Quā cōsuētūdine cōgnitā Caesar, nē graviōri bellō occurreret, mātūrius quam cōsuērat ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea quae fore suspicātus erat facta 20 cōgnōvit: missās lēgatiōnēs ab nōn nullis civitatibus ad Germānōs invitātōsque eōs uti ab Rhēnō discēderent, omnia quae [que] postulāssent ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adducti Germānī lātius iam vagābantur et in finis Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. 25 Principibus Galliae ēvocātis Caesar ea quae cōgnōverat dissimulanda sibi existimāvit, eōrumque animis permulsis et cōfirmātis equitātūque imperātō bellum cum Germānis gerere cōstituit.

Cf. ¹ remigrārent, p. 56, l. 25. — ² volgī, 2, 13. — ³ prōnūtiāvit, 28, 1.

They Send him a Defiant Message.

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctīs, iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locīs esse Germānōs audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab eis vērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō : ‘ Germānōs neque
 5 priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum inferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur,¹ quin armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōsuētūdō [haec] sit ā māiōribus trādita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque dēprecārī.² Haec tamen dicere, vēnisse invitōs, ēiectōs domō ; sī suam grātiā Rōmānī velint, posse eis utilis esse amīcōs ; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre quōs armīs possēderint : sēsē ūnīs Suēvīs concēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint ; reliquum quidem in terris esse nēmīnem quem nōn superāre possint.’

He Orders them to Withdraw from Gaul.

15 8. Ad haec Caesar quae vīsum³ est respondit ; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis : ‘ Sibi nūllam cum hīs amicitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent ; neque vērum esse quī suōs finīs tuērī nōn potuerint aliēnōs occupāre ; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs quī darī tantae praesertim multītūdīnī sine
 20 iniūriā possint ; sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum finibus considere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēvōrum iniūriis querantur et ā sē auxilium petant ; hōc sē Ubiīs imperātūrū.’

They Delay.

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dixerunt et rē dēliberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs ; intereā nē propius sē castra movēret petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dixit. Cōgnōverat enim māgnam partem equitātūs ab eis aliquot diēbus ante praedandi frūmen-

Cf. ¹ lacessēbat, p. 25, l. 11. — ² dēprecantibus, 63, 12. — ³ vidēbantur, 63, 14.

tandique causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam ; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque ēius rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

The Meuse and the Rhine Described.

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā quae appel- 5
lātur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batavōrum [in Ōceanum in-
fluit] neque longius inde milibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum
influit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, quī Alpīs inco-
lunt, et longō spatiō per finis Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum,
Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citā- 10
tus fertur ; et ubi Ōceanō adpropinquāvit, in plūris dēfluit
partis multis ingentibusque¹ insulis effectis, quārum pars
māgna ā feris barbarisque nātiōnibus incolitur, — ex quibus
sunt quī piscibus atque ōvis avium vivere existimantur, —
multisque capitibus in Ōceanum influit. 15

Cæsar Advances. More Parleying to Gain Time.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII mili-
bus abesset, ut erat cōstitutum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur ;
quī in itinere congressī māgnopere nē longius prōgrederētur
ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant utī ad eōs
equitēs quī agmen antecessissent² praemitteret, eōsque pūgnā 20
prohibēret, sibi ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs
mittendī ; quōrum sī principēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō
fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē ūsū-
rōs ostendēbant³ ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi tridui spatium
daret. Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābā- 25
tur, ut tridui morā interpositā equitēs eōrum quī abessent
reverterentur ; tamen sēsē nōn longius milibus passuum IIII
aquatiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dixit ; hūc posterō diē
quam frequentissimī convenirent, ut dē eōrum postulātis
cōgnōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs quī cum omni equitātū 30

Cf. ¹ *ingentis*, p. 37, l. 18. — ² *antecedunt*, 174, 22. — ³ *ostendit*, 54, 16.

anteceſſerant mittit quī nūntiārent nē hostis proeliō lacesſerent; et, ſi ipſi lacesſerentur, ſuſtinērent quoad ipſe cum exercitū propius acceſſiſſet.

The German Cavalry Treacherouſly Attack and Rout the Roman.

12. At hoſtēs, ubi primum noſtrōs equitēs cōſpexērunt, quōrum erat v milium numerus, cum ipſi nōn amplius DCCC equitēs habērent, quod ei quī frūmentandī cauſā ierant trāns Moſam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus noſtris, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caſare diſceſſerant atque is diēs indūtiis erat ab his petitus, impetū factō
10 celeriter noſtrōs perturbāvērunt; rūſus his reſiſtentibus, cōſuētūdine ſuā ad pedēs dēſiluērunt,¹ ſubfoſſisque equis complūribusque noſtris dēiectis, reliquōs in fugam cōiēcērunt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā dēſiſterent quam in cōſpectum agminis noſtri vēniſſent.

Gallant Conduct and Death of the Brothers Piſo.

15 In eō proeliō ex equitibus noſtris interficiuntur IIII et LXX; in his vir fortiffimus, Piſo Aquitānus, ampliffimō genere nātus, cuius avus² in civitatē ſuā rēgnum obtinuerat amicus ab ſenātū noſtrō appellātus. Hic cum frātrī inclūſo ab hoſtibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculō ēripuit,
20 ipſe equō volnerātō dēiectus quoad potuit fortiffimē reſtitit; cum circumventus multis volneribus acceptis cecidiſſet, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō exceſſerat, procul animadvertiſſet, incitātō equō ſē hoſtibus obtulit³ atque interfectus eſt.

Envoys Come to Cæſar, Whom he Detains. Vigorous Action Demanded.

25 13. Hōc factō proeliō Caſar neque iam ſibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condiſiōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab eis quī per dolum atque inſidiās petītā pāce ultrō bellum

Cf. ¹ dēſiliunt, p. 185, l. 15. — ² avus, 33, 3. — ³ obtulerant, 71, 9.

intulissent : (expectāre vērō, dum hostium cōpiae augē-
rentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse
iūdicābat ;) et cōgnitā Gallōrum infirmitāte quantum iam
apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōsecūti
sentiēbat ; (quibus ad cōnsilia capiēda nihil spatī dandum
existimābat.) His cōstitutis rēbus et cōsiliō cum lēgātis
et quaestōre commūnicātō, nē quem diem pūgnae praeter-
mitteret,¹ opportunissima rēs accidit, quod postridiē eius
diēi māne eādē et perfidiā et simulātiōne ūsi Germāni
frequentēs, omnibus principibus māiōribusque nātū adhibi- 10
tis,² ad eum in castra vēnērunt : simul, ut dicēbātur, pūr-
gandī suī causā, quod (contrā atque esset dictum et ipsi
petissent) proelium prīdiē commisissent ; simul ut, si quid
possent, dē indūtiis fallendō³ impetrārent. Quōs sibi
Caesar oblātōs gāvisus illōs retinēri iussit ; ipse omnis 15
cōpiās castris ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō
perterritum esse existimābat, agmen subsequi iussit.

Cæsar Surprises the German Camp.

14. Acie triplici institutā et celeriter VIII milium itinere
cōfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid
ageretur Germāni sentire possent. Quī omnibus rēbus 20
subitō perterriti et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū
suōrum, neque cōsili habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō
datō perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere an
castra dēfendere an fugā salutem petere praestāret.⁴ Quō-
rum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, milites 25
nostrī pristini⁵ diēi perfidiā incitātī in castra inrūpērunt.
Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuerunt paulisper⁶
nostris restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedimentaue proe-
lium commiserunt ; at reliqua multitudō puerōrum mulie-
rumque — nam cum omnibus suis domō excesserant 30

Cf. ¹ praetermiserat, p. 48, l. 15. — ² adhibitīs, 29, 15. — ³ fefellisse, 153, 21. — ⁴ praestāre, 170, 2. — ⁵ pristinārum, 85, 10. — ⁶ paulisper, 11, 25.

Rhēnumque trānsierant — passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum misit. //

The Germans are Defeated and Flee; Many are Slain or Perish in the River.

15. Germānī post tergum¹ clāmōre auditō cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs abiectīs signisque militāribus relictis sē
 5 ex castrīs ēiēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, māgnō numerō interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt; atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine,² vī flūminis oppressi periērunt. Nostri ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs perpaucis vulnerātis ex tantī
 10 belli timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum cccxxx milium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar eis quōs in castrīs retinuerat discēdendi potestātem fēcit. Illi supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veriti, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dixērunt. His Caesar libertātem
 15 concessit. *ref. by (to do so)*

Cæsar's Reasons for Crossing the Rhine and for Building a Bridge.

16. Germānicō bellō cōfectō multis dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum: quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impelli³ ut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit,
 20 cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsire. Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum, quam suprā commemorāvi praedandi frūmentandique causā Mosam trānsisse, neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in
 25 finis Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum eis coniūnxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs misisset (quī postulārent eōs quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi dēderent, responderunt: 'Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum finire; si sē

Cf. ¹ tergō, p. 31, l. 25. — ² lassitūdine, 163, 8. — ³ impulsōs, 156, 14.

in vitō Germānōs in Galliam trānsire nōn aequum existi-
māret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperī aut potestātis trāns
Rhēnum postulāret? Ubi autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhē-
nānis ad Caesarem legātōs miserant, amicitiam fēcerant,
obsidēs dederant, māgnopere ōrābant ut sibi auxilium
ferret, quod graviter ab Suēvis premerentur; vel, si id
facere occupātiōibus rei pūblicae prohibērētur, exercitum
modo Rhēnum trānsportāret; id sibi ad auxilium spemque
reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque
opiniōnem eius exercitūs Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō
proeliō factō etiam ad ultimās¹ Germānōrum nātiōnēs, uti
opiniōne et amicitia populī Rōmānī tūti esse possent.
Nāvium māgnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum
pollicēbantur.

Description of the Bridge.

17. Caesar hīs de causīs quās commemorāvi Rhēnum
trānsire dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsire neque satis tūtum
esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī digni-
tātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultās faciendī
pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitudinem, rapiditatem, alti-
tūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut
aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum existimābat. Ratiōnem
pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipedālia paulum ab
imō praeacūta, dīmēnsa² ad altitudinem flūminis, inter-
vallō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchi-
nātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfixerat fistūcisque adēgerat,
— nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē
ac fastigātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent,
— eis item contrāria duō ad eundem modum iūncta inter-
vallō pedum quadrāgēnum ab inferiōre parte contrā vim
atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque
insuper bipedālibus trabibus³ immissis, quantum eōrum

Cf. ¹ ultimum, p. 17, l. 24. — ² dīmēnsō, 161, 2. — ³ trabibus, 179, 5.

tignōrum iūctūra distābat, binīs utrimque fibulis ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur;¹ quibus disclūsis atque in contrāriam partem revinctis, tanta erat operis firmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra ut, quō māior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius² inligāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā mātēriā iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriis crātibusque cōnsternēbantur; ac nihilō sēcūs³ publicae et ad inferiōrem partem flūminis obliquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniūctae vim flūminis exciperent; et
 10 aliae item suprā pontem mediocri spatiō, ut, si arborum truncī sive nāvēs dēiciendī operis essent ā barbaris immissae, his dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu pontī nocērent.⁴

Cæsar Enters Germany.

18. Diēbus x quibus mātēria coepta erat comportāri
 15 omnī opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in finīs Sugambōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus civitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amicitiam petentibus liberāliter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet.
 20 At Sugambri ex eō tempore quō pōns institui coeptus est fugā comparātā, hortantibus eis quōs ex Tencteris atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, finibus suis excesserant suaeque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.⁵

He Learns that the Suevi are Preparing to Resist him, and after Eighteen Days Returns to Gaul.

25 19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus, omnibus vicīs aedificiisque incēnsis frūmentisque succisis, sē in finīs Ubiōrum recepit; atque hīs auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suēvis premerentur, haec ab eis cōgnōvit: ‘Suēvōs,

Cf. ¹ *distinendam*, p. 178, l. 7. — ² *artius*, 18, 9. — ³ *sēcūs*, 80, 5. — ⁴ *nocēre*, 179, 16. — ⁵ *abditī*, 161, 3.

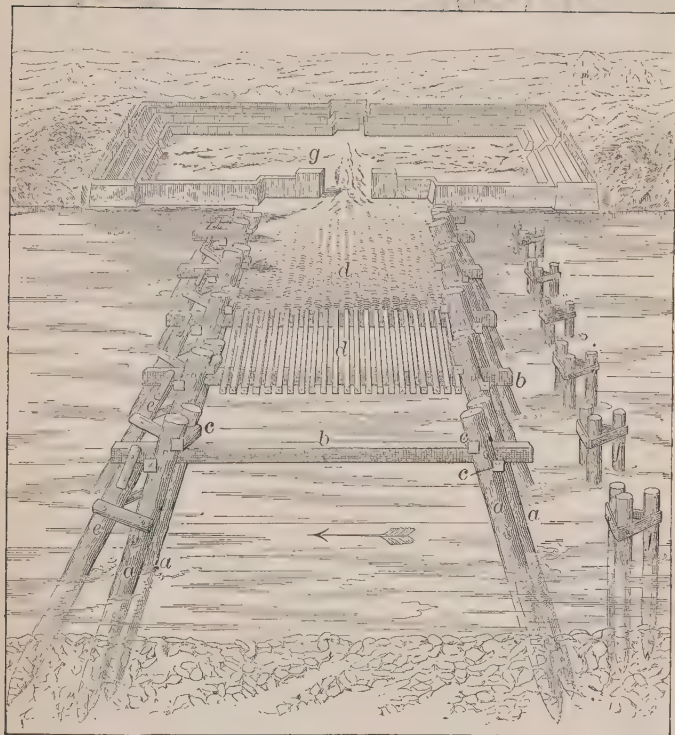


FIG. 70. — PONS A CAESARE IN RHENO FACTUS.

aa, tigna bina sesquipedalia; *bb*, trabes bipedales; *cc*, fibulae;
dd, directa materia longuriis cratibusque constrata;
ee, sublicae ad inferiorem partem fluminis pro ariete oblique actae;
ff, sublicae supra pontem immissae;
g, castellum ad caput pontis positum.

posteaquam per explorātōrēs pontem fieri comperissent,¹
 mōre suō conciliō habitō nūtiōs in omnis partis dimis-
 uti dē oppidis dēmigrārent, liberōs, uxōrēs, suaque omnia in
 silvis dēpōnerent,² atque omnēs quī arma ferre possent
 5 ūnum in locum convenirent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium
 ferē regiōnum eārum quās Suēvī obtinērent; hic Rōmānō-
 rum adventum exspectāre, atque ibi dēcertāre cōstituisse.’

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus eis rēbus cōfectis
 quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōstituerat, ut
 10 Germānis metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulciscerētur,³ ut
 Ubiōs obsidiōne liberāret, diēbus omninō XVIII trāns
 Rhēnum consūptis, satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitatem
 prōfectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque
 rescidit. / / /

 BOOK VI, 9-29.

THE SECOND INVASION OF GERMANY. B.C. 53.

Cæsar again Crosses the Rhine.

15 9. Caesar postquam ex Menapiis in Trēverōs vēnit, duā-
 bus dē causis Rhēnum trānsire cōstituit: quārum ūna erat
 quod *Germānī* auxilia contrā sē Trēveris miserant; altera,
 nē ad eōs Ambiorix receptum⁴ habēret. His cōstitutis
 rēbus paulō suprā eum locum quō ante exercitum trādūxe-
 20 rat facere pontem instituit. Nōtā atque institūtā ratiōne,
 māgnō militum studiō, paucis diēbus opus efficitur. Fīrmō
 in Trēveris ad pontem praesidiō relictō, nē quis ab his subitō
 mōtus⁵ orerētur,⁶ reliquās cōpiās equitātumque trādūcit.
 Ubiī, quī ante obsidēs dederant atque in dēditiōnem vēne-

Cf. ¹ comperisset, p. 36, l. 18. — ² dēpositō, 28, 26. — ³ ulciscerētur, 35, 22. — ⁴ Recessum. — ⁵ sēditiō. — ⁶ coōrerētur.

rant, pūrgandī¹ suī causā ad eum lēgātōs mittunt quī doceant neque auxilia ex suā cīvitātē in Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem laesam :² petunt atque ōrant ut sibi parcat, nē commūnī odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās pendant ;³ sī amplius obsidum velit dari, pollicentur. Cōg- 5 nitā Caesar causā reperit ab Suēvis auxilia missa esse ; Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem⁴ accipit ; aditūs viāsque in Suēvōs perquirit.⁵

He Learns from the Ubii that the Suevi have Retreated to the Forest Bacenis.

10. Interim paucis post diēbus fit ab Ubiis certior Suēvōs omnis in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere, atque eis nātiōnibus 10 quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnūntiāre ut auxilia peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. His cōgnitis rēbus rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castris idōneum⁶ locum dēligit, Ubiis imperat ut pecora dēdūcant suaeque omnia ex agris in oppida cōferant, — spērāns barbarōs atque imperitōs hominēs inopiā cibāriō- 15 rum⁷ adductōs ad inīquam pūgnandi condiōnem posse dēdūcī ; mandat ut crēbrōs⁸ explōrātōrēs in Suēvōs mittant quaeque apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant.⁹ Illi imperāta faciunt et paucis diēbus intermissis referunt :¹⁰ ‘ Suēvōs omnis, posteāquam certiōrēs nūntiī dē exercitū Rōmānōrum vēne- 20 rint, cum omnibus suis sociōrumque cōpiis quās coēgissent, penitus ad extrēmōs¹¹ finis sē recēpisse ;¹² silvam esse ibi infinitā māgnitudīne, quae appellātur Bācenis ; hanc longē intrōsus¹³ pertinēre, et prō nātivō mūrō obiectam Chēruscōs ab Suēvōrum Suēvōsque ab Chēruscōrum iniūriis incursiōni- 25 busque prohibēre ; ad ēius silvae initium Suēvōs adventum¹⁴ Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōstituisse.’

Cf. ¹ excūsandī. — ² violātam. — ³ persolvant. — ⁴ excūsātiōnem. — ⁵ explōrat. — ⁶ opp. inīquum. — ⁷ rērum frūmentāriārum. — ⁸ frequen- tēs. — ⁹ perquīrant. — ¹⁰ dēferunt. — ¹¹ ultimōs. — ¹² contulisse. — ¹³ penitus. — ¹⁴ opp. profectiōnem.

Customs of the Gauls. The Two Parties among them.

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere.

In Galliā nōn solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in
5 omnibus pāgis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis
domibus factiōnēs sunt; eārumque factiōnum principēs sunt
quī summam auctōritatem¹ eōrum iūdiciō² habere existi-
mantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciūque summa omnium
rērū cōnsiliōrumque redeat.³ Idque ēius rei causā anti-
10 quitus institūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiō-
rem auxili egēret; ⁴ suōs enim quisque opprimī et circumveniri
nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat
auctōritatē. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtius
Galliae; namque omnēs civitatēs divisae sunt in duās partis.⁵

Influence of the Romans upon the Relations of the Parties in Gaul.
They Favor the Haedui.

15 12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prī-
cipēs erant Haedui, alterius Sēquanī. Hī, cum per sē
minus⁶ valērent (quod summa auctōritās antiquitus erat in
Haeduis māgnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae), Germānōs
atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant⁷ eōsque ad sē māgnis
20 iactūris⁸ pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant. Proeliis vērō
complūribus factis secundis atque omnī nōbilitate Haeduō-
rum interfectā, tantum potentiā⁹ antecesserant¹⁰ ut māgnam
partem clientium ab Haeduis ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque
ab hīs principum filiōs acciperent, et publicē iūrāre cōgerent
25 nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsili inītūrōs, et partem finitimī
agrī per vim occupātam possidērent, Galliaeque tōtius prī-
cipātum obtinērent. Quā necessitate adductus Diviciācus

¹ Cf. ¹ imperium. — ² sententiā. — ³ revertātur. — ⁴ carēret, w. abl. —

⁵ factiōnēs. — ⁶ nōn. — ⁷ adscīverant. — ⁸ praemiis. — ⁹ potestāte. —

¹⁰ praestiterant.

auxili petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus infectā
 rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum,
 obsidibus Haeduīs redditīs, veteribus¹ clientēlis restitutīs,
 novīs per Caesarem comparātis, quod eī quī sē ad eōrum
 amicitiam adgregāverant,² meliōre condiōne atque aequiōre 5
 imperiō sē ūtī vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitā-
 teque amplificātā,³ Sēquanī principātum dimiserant. In
 eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre
 apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, eī quī propter veterēs
 inimiciās⁴ nūllō modō cum Haeduīs coniungi poterant sē 10
 Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illi diligenter tuēban-
 tur;⁵ ita et novam et repente conlēctam auctōritātem tenē-
 bant. Eō tamen statū⁶ rēs erat ut longē principēs habērentur
 Haeduī, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

Two Classes of Gallic Nobility, Druids and Knights. The Druids and
 their Power.

13. In omni Galliā eōrum hominū quī aliquō sunt nu- 15
 merō⁷ atque honōre genera sunt duō. Nam plēbēs paene
 servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūlli adhibē-
 tur⁸ cōnsiliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō aut māgnitū-
 dine tribūtōrum⁹ aut iniuriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in
 servitūtem dicant¹⁰ nōbilibus; *quibus* in hōs eadem omnia 20
 sunt iūra quae dominīs in servōs. Sed dē hīs duōbus gene-
 ribus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illi rēbus
 divīnis intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac privāta prōcūrant,
 religiōnēs interpretantur. Ad eōs māgnus adulēscēntium
 numerus disciplinae causā concurrīt,¹¹ māgnōque hī sunt 25
 apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiis pū-
 blicis privātisque cōstituunt;¹² et, si quod est admissum¹³
 facinus, si caedēs facta, si dē hērēditāte, dē finibus contrō-

Cf. ¹ antīquīs. — ² concurrerant. — ³ auctā. — ⁴ opp. amīcitiās. —
⁵ dēfendēbant. — ⁶ condiōne. — ⁷ dīgnitāte. — ⁸ invītātur. — ⁹ stī-
 pendiorum. — ¹⁰ dēdunt. — ¹¹ sē adgregat. — ¹² dēcernunt. — ¹³ com-
 missum.

versia est, idem dēcernunt; praemia poenāsque cōstituunt; sī quī aut privātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit,¹ sacrificiis interdicunt.² Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac
 5 scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt,³ nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodi accipiant, neque eis petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs

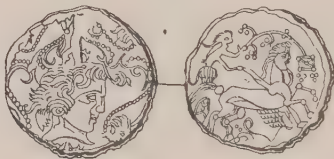


FIG. 71. — GALLIC COIN.

ūllus commūnicātur.⁴ His autem omnibus druidibus praeest
 ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc
 10 mortuō, aut sī quī ex reliquis excellit⁵ dignitāte, succēdit,
 aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum,⁶ nōn numquam
 etiam armīs dē principātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tem-
 pore in finibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtius Galliae media
 habētur, cōsidunt in locō cōsecrātō; hūc omnēs undique
 15 quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētis
 iūdiciisque pārent. Disciplina in Britannīā reperta atque
 inde in Galliam trāslāta⁷ existimātur; et nunc quī diligen-
 tius eam rem cōgnōscere volunt plērumque illō discendi
 causā proficiscuntur.

Their Privileges and Immunities. Their Education and Beliefs.

20 14. Druides ā bellō abesse⁸ cōsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā
 cum reliquis pendunt; [militiae vacātiōnem omniumque
 rērum habent immunitātem]. Tantīs excitāti⁹ praemiis et

Cf. ¹ pāruit. — ² prohibent. — ³ vītant. — ⁴ tribuitur. — ⁵ praestat.
 — ⁶ interdum. — ⁷ trāducta. — ⁸ opp. adesse. — ⁹ incitātī.

suā sponte multī in disciplinam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Māgnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dicuntur. Itaque annōs nōn nulli vicēnōs in disciplinā permanent. Neque fās esse existimant ea litteris mandāre,¹ cum in reliquīs² ferē rēbus, pūblicis prīvātisque 5 ratiōnibus, Graecis litteris ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causis instituisse videntur; quod neque in volgus disciplinam efferri³ velint neque eōs quī discunt litteris cōfīsōs minus memoriae studēre, — quod ferē plērisque accidit⁴ ut praesidiō litterārum diligentiam in perdiscendō āc memoriam 10 remittant. In primīs hōc volunt persuādēre, nōn interire⁵ animās, sed ab aliis post mortem trānsire ad aliōs; atque hōc māximē ad virtūtem excitārī putant metū mortis neglēctō.⁶ Multa praetereā dē sideribus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi āc terrārum māgnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum 15 immortālium vī āc potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

The Knights are the Fighting Men.

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum⁷ quotannis accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī iniuriās⁸ inferrent aut inlātās prōpulsārent⁹), omnēs in bellō versantur; atque 20 eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiisque amplissimus,¹⁰ ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientisque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiā potentiamque nōvērunt.

Human Sacrifices.

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus; atque ob eam causam quī sunt adfectī graviōribus 25 morbis, quīque in proeliis periculisque versantur,¹¹ aut prō victimis hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent,

Cf. ¹ cōnfidere. — ² cēterīs. — ³ dīvolgārī. — ⁴ fit. — ⁵ perīre. — ⁶ omissō. — ⁷ opp. profectiōnem. — ⁸ bellum. — ⁹ dēfenderent. — ¹⁰ potentissimus. — ¹¹ sunt.

administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, — quod, prō vitā hominis nisi hominis vitā reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortalium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur; pūblicēque eiusdem generis habent institūta sacrificia. Alii immānī¹

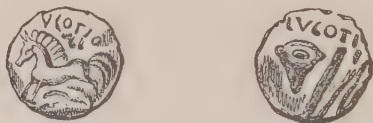


FIG. 72. — GALLIC COINS.

5 māgnitūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vivis hominibus complent; quibus succēnsis² circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut lātrōciniō aut aliā noxiā³ sint comprehēnsī grātiōra dīs immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius
10 generis cōpia dēficit,⁴ etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

Galic Deities. Consecration of the Spoils of War to Mars.

17. Deōrum māximē Mercurium colunt. Hūius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecū-
15 niae mercātūrāsque⁵ habēre vim māximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē his eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opiniōnem:⁶ Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiorum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre,
20 Mārtem bella regere. Huic, cum⁷ proeliō dimicāre cōstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōferunt. Multis in civitatibus hārum rērum extrūc-

Cf. ¹ ingentī. — ² incēnsis. — ³ scelere. — ⁴ opp. suppetit. — ⁵ plūrimum valēre. — ⁶ sententiam. — ⁷ proelium committere.

tōs cumulōs¹ locīs cōsecrātīs cōspicārī licet. Neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre² aut posita tollere³ audēret; gravissimumque eī rei⁴ supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitutum est.

They Claim Descent from Pluto. Peculiar Treatment of Boys.

18. Galli sē omnīs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs⁵ praedicant 5
idque ab druidibus prōditum⁶ dicunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium finiunt; diēs nātālīs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sic observant ut noctem diēs subsequatur. In reliquīs vitāe institūtis⁷ hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum 10
adolēvērunt ut mūnus militiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adire nōn patiuntur; filiumque puerilī aetate in publicō in cōspectū patris adsistere turpe⁸ dūcunt.

Dowries. Power of Husbands over Wives. Funeral Rites.

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suis bonīs aestimātiōne factā cum dōti- 15
bus communicant. Hūius omnis pecūniae coniūctim ratiō habētur⁹ fructūsque servantur; uter eōrum vitā superāvit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiōrum¹⁰ temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs sicut in liberōs vitāe necisque habent potestatem; et cum paterfamiliae inlustriōre locō 20
nātus dēcessit,¹¹ eius propinquī conveniunt et dē morte, si rēs in suspiciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servilem¹² modum quaestiōnem habent, et si compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentis¹³ excruciatās interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum māgnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae 25
vivīs cordi¹⁴ fuisse arbitrantur in ignem inferunt,¹⁵ etiam animalia; ac paulō suprā hanc memoriā servi et clientēs,

Cf. ¹ tumulōs. — ² cēlāre. — ³ efferre. — ⁴ factō. — ⁵ ortōs. — ⁶ trāditum. — ⁷ mōribus. — ⁸ opp. honestum. — ⁹ cōnficitur. — ¹⁰ priōrum. — ¹¹ mortuus est. — ¹² servōrum. — ¹³ cruciātīs. — ¹⁴ cāra. — ¹⁵ prōiciunt.

quōs ab eīs dilēctōs¹ esse cōnstābat, iūstīs fūnebribus cōnfectis ūnā cremābantur.

All Rumors from Outside to be Reported to the Magistrates.

20. Quae civitatēs commodius² suam rem pūblicam administrāre³ exīstimantur habent lēgibus sānctum, sī quis
 5 quid dē rē pūblicā ā finitimis rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit,⁴
 utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet;
 quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperitōs falsis rūmō-
 ribus terrēri et ad facinus impelli et dē summīs rēbus cōn-
 silium capere cōgnitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt
 10 occultant, quae esse⁵ ex ūsū iūdicāvērunt multitudīnī prō-
 dunt.⁶ Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loquī nōn concē-
 ditur.

Customs of the Germans.

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuetūdine differunt. Nam
 neque druides habent quī rēbus divīnis praesint neque
 15 sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt⁷ quōs
 cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Volcā-
 num et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vīta
 omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs rēi militāris cōnsistit;
 ā parvis labōrī āc dūritiae student. Quī diūtissimē⁸ impu-
 20 berēs permānsērunt māximam inter suōs ferunt laudem; hōc
 ali statūrā, ali vīris nervōsque cōfirmārī putant. Intrā
 annum vērō vicēsimum fēminae nōtitiam habuisse in turpissi-
 mīs habent⁹ rēbus: cūius rēi nūlla est occultātiō, quod et
 prōmiscuē in flūminibus perluuntur,¹⁰ et pellibus aut parvis
 25 rēnōnum tegimentis ūtuntur, māgnā corporis parte nūdā.

No Agriculture or Private Ownership of Land.

22. Agrī cultūrae nōn student, māiorque pars eōrum victūs
 in lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam agrī mo-

Cf. ¹ amātōs. — ² melius. — ³ gerere. — ⁴ reppererit. — ⁵ ūtilia. —
⁶ efferunt — ⁷ putant. — ⁸ opp. brevissimē. — ⁹ dūcunt. — ¹⁰ lavantur.

dum certum aut finis habet propriōs;¹ sed magistrātūs ac principēs² in annōs singulōs gentibus cōgnātiōibusque hominum, quique ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuunt, atque annō post aliō trānsire³ cōgunt. Eius rei multās adferunt causās: nē adsiduā⁴ cōsuētūdine 5 capti studium belli gerendi agrī cultūrā commūtent; nē lātōs finis parāre⁵ studeant potentiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessionibus expellant; nē accūrātius⁶ ad frīgora atque aestūs vitandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut⁷ animī aequitāte 10 plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimis aequārī videat.

Their Isolation. How Chiefs are Appointed; their Power. Freebooting no Disgrace. Rites of Hospitality Observed.

23. Civitātibus māxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātis finibus sōlitūdinēs⁸ habēre. Hōc proprium virtūtis existimant, expulsōs agris finitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam 15 prope sē audēre cōsistere:⁹ simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentināe incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum civitās aut inlātum dēfendit aut infert, magistrātūs qui ei bellō praesint, et vitae necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed 20 principēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dicunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.¹⁰ Lātrōcinia nūllam habent infāmiam¹¹ quae extrā finis cuiusque civitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiāe minuendae causā fieri praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex principibus in conciliō dixit 25 ‘sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint profiteantur,’ — cōnsurgunt ei quī et causam et hominem probant suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā multitūdine conlaudantur; quī ex his

Cf. ¹ privātōs. — ² quotannīs. — ³ dēmigrāre. — ⁴ perpetuā. — ⁵ acquirere. — ⁶ diligentius. — ⁷ aequō animō. — ⁸ loca dēserta. — ⁹ cōnsidere. — ¹⁰ compōnunt. — ¹¹ ignōminiam.

secūti nōn sunt in dēsertōrum¹ āc prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur² omniumque hīs rērum postea fīdēs dērogātur.³ Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vēnērunt ab iniuriā prohibent sāctōsque habent; 5 hīsque omnium domūs patent victusque commūnicātur.

Migration of Certain Gallic Tribes to Germany.

24. Āc fuit antea tempus cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent, ultrō bella inferrent, propter hominum multitūdinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt loca, circum 10 Hercyniam silvam (quam Eratosthenī et quibusdam Graecis fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illi Orcyniam appellant), Volcae Tectosagēs occupāvērunt atque ibi cōnsēdērunt. Quae gēns⁴ ad hōc tempus hīs sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis opīniōnem.⁵ Nunc quidem 15 in eādē inopiā, egestāte, patientiāque Germānī permanent, eōdem victū et cultū corporis ūtuntur; Gallis autem prōvinciārum propinquitās et trānsmarinārum rērum nōtitia⁶ multa ad cōpiam atque ūsum largitur.⁷ Paulātīm adsuēfactī superārī multisque victī proeliis, nē sē quidem ipsī cum illis vir- 20 tūte comparant.

The Hercynian Forest and its Fauna. The Reindeer (?).

25. Hūius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est, lātītūdō VIII diērum iter expeditō⁸ patet; nōn enim aliter finiri potest, neque mēnsūrās⁹ itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur¹⁰ ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum finibus, rēctā- 25 que flūminis Dānuvī regiōne pertinet ad finis Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit¹¹ sinistrōrsus diversīs ab flūmine regiōnibus multārumque gentium finis propter māgnitūdi-

Cf. ¹ perfugārum. — ² habentur. — ³ dētrahitur. — ⁴ adhūc. — ⁵ fāmam. — ⁶ scientia. — ⁷ dōnat. — ⁸ opp. impeditō. — ⁹ longitūdinem. — ¹⁰ initium capit. — ¹¹ convertit.

nem attingit. Neque quisquam est huius Germāniae qui sē [aut audisse] aut adisse¹ ad initium² eius silvae dicat, cum diērum iter LX prōcesserit, aut quō ex locō oriātur accēperit. Multaque in eā genera ferārum³ nāscī cōstat quae reliquīs in locīs vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus quae māximē 5 differant ab cēteris et memoriae prōdenda⁴ videantur haec sunt.

26. Est bōs cervi figurā,⁵ cuius ā mediā fronte inter auris ūnum cornū existit excelsius⁶ magisque dērectum hīs quae nōbis nōta sunt cornibus. Ab eius summō⁷ sicut palmae 10 rāmique lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae marisque nātūra, eadem forma māgnitūdōque cornuum.

The Elk and its Habits.

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōsimilis capris figurā et varietās pellium; sed māgnitūdine paulō antecēdunt⁸ mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine 15 nōdis articulisque habent; neque quiētis⁹ causā prōcumbunt neque, si quō adflictae¹⁰ cāsū concidērunt, ¹¹ ērigere sēsē ac sublevāre possunt. Hīs sunt arborēs prō cubilibus; ad eas sē adplicant¹² atque ita paulum modo reclinātae quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex vestigiis cum est animadversum¹³ 20 ā vēnātōribus quō sē recipere cōsuērint, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādīcibus subruunt¹⁴ aut accidunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōsuētūdine reclināvērunt, infirmās arborēs pondere adfligunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt. 25

The Wild Ox.

28. Tertium est genus eōrum quī ūrī appellantur. Hi sunt māgnitūdine paulō infā¹⁵ elephantōs; speciē et colōre

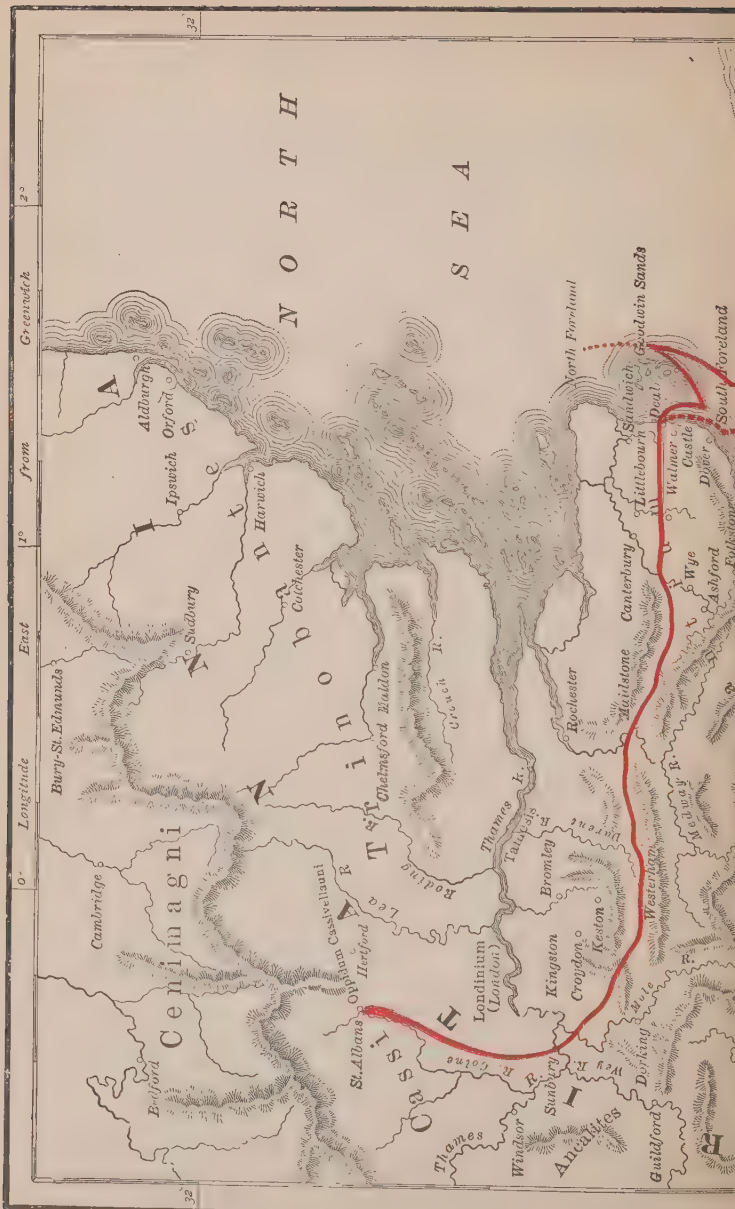
Cf. ¹ adpropinquāsse. — ² opp. finem. — ³ animālium. — ⁴ trādenda. — ⁵ formā. — ⁶ altius. — ⁷ opp. imō. — ⁸ carent. — ⁹ somnī. — ¹⁰ prōstrātae. — ¹¹ opp. prōcumbere. — ¹² adiungunt. — ¹³ compertum. — ¹⁴ suffodiunt. — ¹⁵ opp. supā.

et figurā tauri. Magna vis eorum est et magna velōcitās ;
 neque hominī neque ferae quam cōspēxērunt parcut. Hōs
 studiōsē¹ foveis captōs interficiunt. Hōc sē labōre dūrant
 adulēscētēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent ; et quī
 5 plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātis in pūblicum cornibus
 quae sint testimoniō, magnam ferunt² laudem. Sed adsuē-
 scere ad hominēs et mānsuēfierī nē parvulī quidem excepti
 possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum et figurā et speciēs multum
 ā nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē³ con-
 10 quisita ab labris argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplis-
 simis⁴ epulis prō pōculis ūtuntur.

Cæsar Returns to Gaul and Proceeds against Ambiorix.

29. Caesar, postquam per Ubiōs explorātōrēs comperit⁵
 Suēvōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam⁶ frūmenti veritus
 (quod, ut suprā dēmōstrāvimus, minimē⁷ omnēs Germāni
 15 agrī cultūrae student), cōstituit nōn prōgredi longius ; sed, nē
 omnīnō metum reditūs suī barbaris tolleret, atque ut eorum
 auxilia tardāret,⁸ reductō exercitū partem ultimam pontis, quae
 ripās Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitūdinem pedum CC rescin-
 dit, atque in extrēmō ponte turrim tabulātōrum IIII cōstituit
 20 praesidiumque cohortium XII pontis tuendī causā pōnit mā-
 gnisque eum locum mūnitiōnibus firmat. Ei locō praesidiōque
 C. Volcātium Tullum adulēscētem praeficit ; ipse, cum mātū-
 rēscere frūmenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorigis profectus,
 per Arduennam silvam — quae est tōtius Galliae māxima
 25 atque ab ripis Rhēnī finibusque Trēverōrum ad Nervīōs
 pertinet, milibusque amplius D in longitūdinem patet — L.
 Minucium Basilum cum omni equitātū praemittit, si quid cele-
 ritate itineris atque opportunitate temporis prōficere possit ;
 monet ut ignis in castris fieri prohibeat, nē qua eius adventūs
 30 procul significātiō fiat ; sēsē cōfestim subsequi dicit.

Cf. ¹ diligenter. — ² pariunt. — ³ cupidē. — ⁴ magnificentissimis. —
⁵ cōgnōvit. — ⁶ opp. cōpiam. — ⁷ opp. māximē. — ⁸ morārētur.



2°

Greenwich

From

1°

East

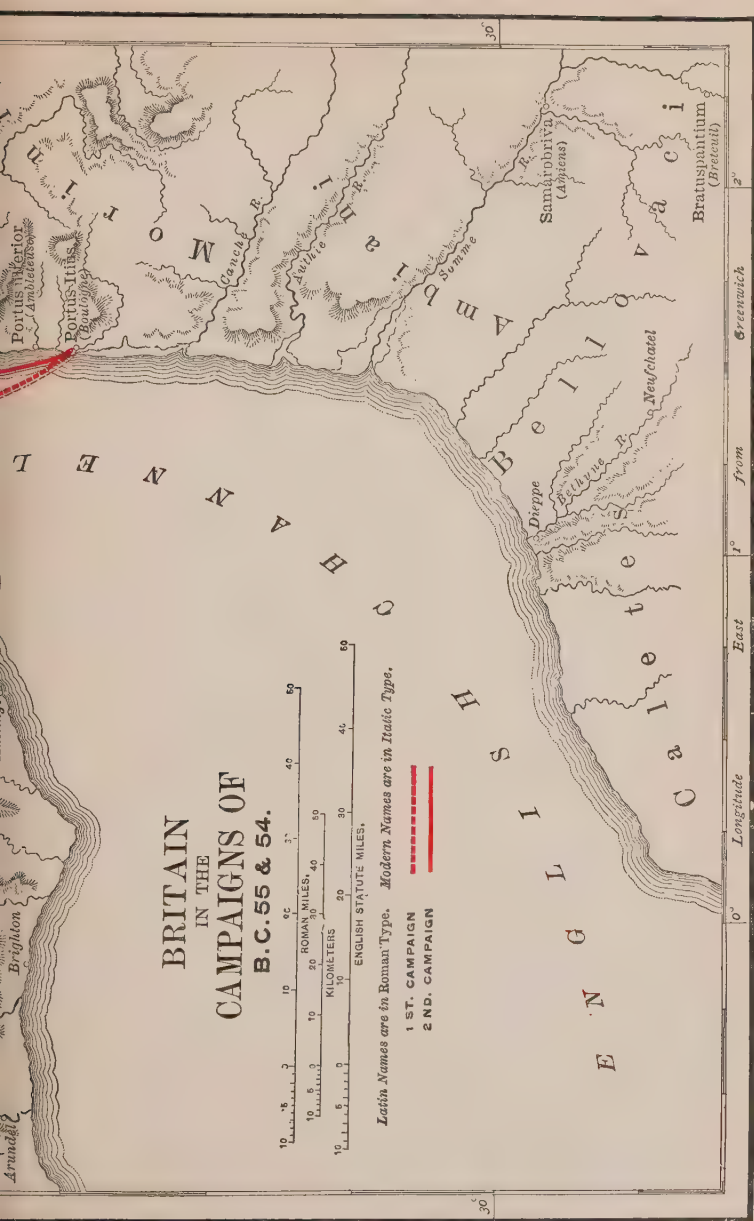
Longitude

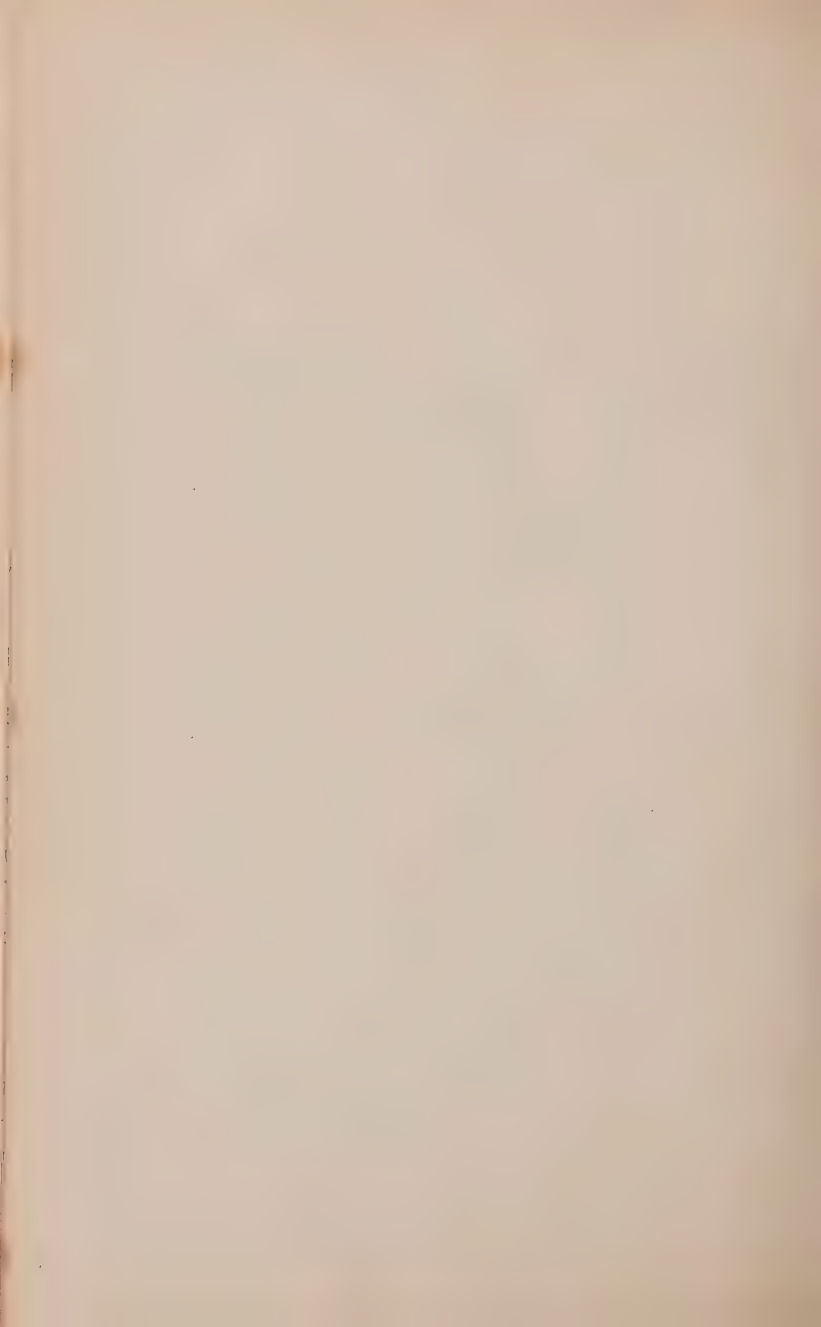
0°

N O R T H

S E A

Map of Southern England and the English Channel, showing major cities, rivers, and geographical features. The map is oriented with North at the top. A red line traces a path from the coast near Dover, through the English Channel, and along the coast of Normandy, France. The map includes labels for various locations such as London, Canterbury, and Dover, as well as rivers like the Thames and the English Channel. The word 'NORTH' is written vertically on the right side, and 'SEA' is written vertically on the left side. The map is framed by a double-line border with latitude and longitude markings.





THE FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN, B.C. 55.

Cæsar Determines to Invade Britain.

20. Exiguā¹ parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsi in his locis (quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit) mātūrae² sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit: quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrata³ auxilia intellegēbat; et, si tempus [anni] ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, si modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspēxisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercatōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque eis ipsis quicquam praeter 10 ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliās nōtum est. Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercatōribus, neque quanta esset insulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum belli habērent aut quibus institūtis⁴ ūterentur, neque quī essent ad māiōrem 15 nāvium multitudinem idōneī⁵ portūs reperire poterat.

He Sends Volusenus on a Reconnoissance, then Commius.

21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus, C. Volusēnum, cum nāvi longā praemittit. Huic mandat⁶ ut explorātis omnibus rēbus ad sē quam primum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiis in 20 Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus⁷ in Britanniam traiectus.⁸ Hūc nāvis undique ex finitimis regiōnibus, et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat classem, iubet convenire. Interim⁹ cōnsiliō ēius cōgnitō

Cf. ¹ parva. — ² opp. tardae. — ³ data. — ⁴ mōribus. — ⁵ commodi. — ⁶ imperat. — ⁷ opp. longissimus. — ⁸ trānsitus. — ⁹ intereā.

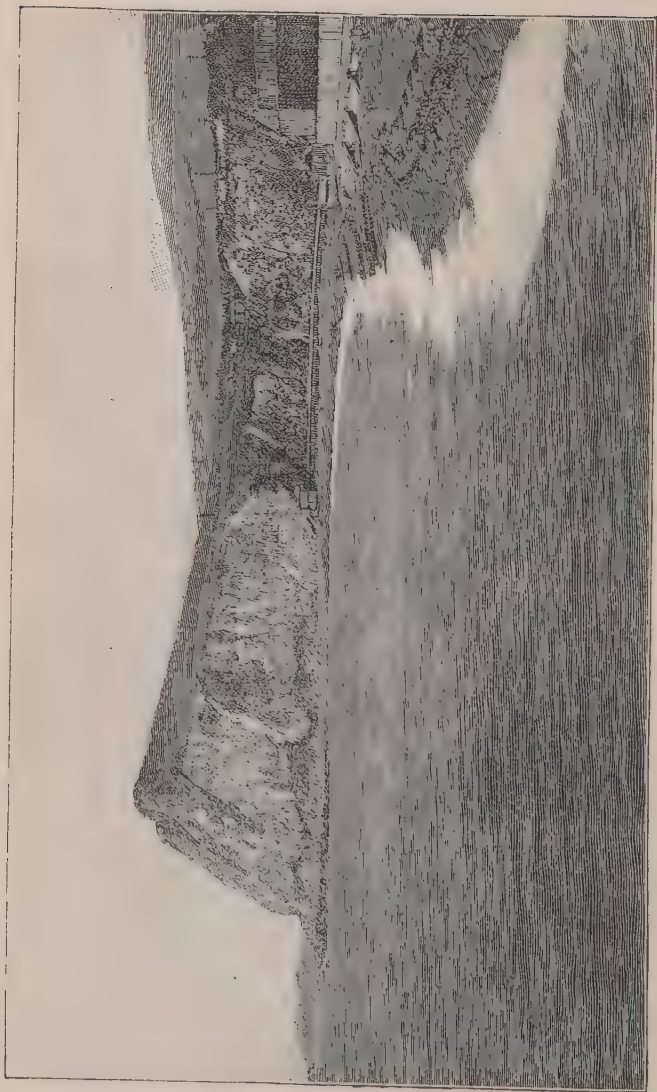


FIG. 74.—CLIFFS OF DOVER.

et per mercatōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus insulae civitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt quī polliceantur¹ obsidēs dare atque imperiō populi Rōmānī obtemperāre.² Quibus auditis liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit; et cum eis unā
 5 Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātis rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cūius et virtūtem et cōsiliū probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābatur cūiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat civitatīs, hortēturque ut populi Rōmānī fidem
 10 sequantur sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectis³ regiōnibus quantum ei facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvī ēgredi āc sē barbaris committere⁴ nōn auderet, quintō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspēxisset renūntiat.⁵

15

The Morini Submit. A Fleet is Prepared.

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vērērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōsiliō excūsarent, quod hominēs barbari et nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperitī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent,⁶ sēque ea quae imperāssent fac-
 20 tūrōs pollicērentur. Hōc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse⁷ arbitrātus, quod neque⁸ post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque belli gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum⁹ rērum occupatiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iudicābat, māgnū eis numerum
 25 obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis eōs in fidem recipit. Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriis coāctis¹⁰ [contrāctisque], quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat quaestōri, lēgātis

Cf. ¹ prōmittant, sibi suscipiant. — ² pārēre. — ³ explōrātis. — ⁴ trādere. — ⁵ dēfert. — ⁶ intulissent. — ⁷ ēvēnisse. — ⁸ opp. ā fronte. — ⁹ tam parvārum. — ¹⁰ opp. dispersis.

praefectisque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriæ
 nāvēs, quæ ex eō locō ā milibus passuum VIII ventō tenē-
 bantur quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās
 equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabīnō
 5 et Aurunculēiō Cottæ lēgātis in Menapiōs atque in eōs
 pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgāti nōn vēnerant
 dūcendum dedit; Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō prae-
 sidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.¹

The Fleet Crosses the Channel, Finds Difficulty in Landing, and Comes
 to Anchor.

23. His cōstitūtis rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvigan-
 10 dum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in
 ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvis cōscendere² et sē
 sequi iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius³ esset admini-
 strātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quartā cum primis nāvibus
 Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās
 15 hostium cōpiās armātās cōspēxit. Cūius loci haec erat
 nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur uti ex
 locis superiōribus in litus tēlum adigi⁴ posset. Hunc ad
 ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum
 reliquæ nāvēs eō convenirent ad hōram nōnam in ancoris
 20 exspectāvit. Interim lēgātis tribūnisque militum convo-
 cātis et quæ ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset et quæ fieri vellet
 ostendit, monuitque, ut rei militāris ratiō, māximē ut mari-
 timæ rēs postulārent (ut quæ celerem⁵ atque instābilem⁶
 mōtum habērent), ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab
 25 eis administrārentur. His dimissis et ventum et aestum
 ūnō tempore nactus secundum,⁷ datō signō et sublātis an-
 coris, circiter milia passuum VII ab eō locō prōgressus,
 apertō āc plānō litore nāvis cōstituit.

Cf. ¹ imperāvit with ut and subjv. — ² opp. ēgredi. — ³ opp. mātūrius. — ⁴ conici. — ⁵ opp. tardum. — ⁶ opp. firmum. — ⁷ opp. adversum.

The Britons Resist the Landing of the Romans.

24. At barbari cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō, praemissō equitatū et essedāriis, quō plērumque genere in proeliis ūti cōsuērunt,¹ reliquīs cōpiis subsecūti nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās quod nāvēs propter māgnitudinem nisi in altō cōstituī² nōn 5 poterant; militibus autem, ignōtis locis, impeditis³ manibus, māgnō et gravi onere armōrum oppressis, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum; cum illi aut ex aridō⁴ aut paulum in aquam prōgressi omnibus membris expeditis, nōtissimis 10 locis, audācter tēla conicerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitarent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterriti⁵ atque hūius omninō generis pūgnae imperitī nōn eādē alacritātē ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūti proeliis cōsuērant nitēbantur.

Cæsar Manœuvres for an Advantage. Valor of a Roman Centurion.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvis longās, quārum 15 et speciēs⁶ erat barbaris inūsitatior et mōtus ad ūsum

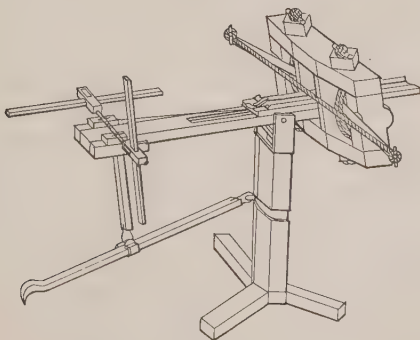


FIG. 75. — CATAPULTA.

Cf. ¹ solent. — ² cōsistere. — ³ opp. expeditis. — ⁴ terrā. — ⁵ commōtī. — ⁶ adspectus.

expeditior, paulum removēri ab onerāriis nāvibus et rēmīs incitāri et ad latus apertum hostium cōstitui, atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostis prōpelli ac submovēri iussit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostris fuit. Nam et nāvium
 5 figurā¹ et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitatō genere tormentōrum permōti barbari cōstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem retulērunt. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, māximē propter altitudinem maris, quī x legiōnis aquilam ferēbat obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōni fēliciter² ēveniret, “Dēsilite,”
 10 inquit, “commilitōnēs,³ nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum rei pūblīcae atque imperātōri officium prae-stiterō.”⁴ Hōc cum vōce māgnā⁵ dixisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostis aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortāti inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversi⁶ ex nāvī
 15 dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs [primīs] nāvibus cum cōspēxissent, subsecūti hostibus adpropinquāvērunt.

The Romans Effect a Landing, but, Having no Cavalry, Cannot Pursue the Fleeing Britons.

^1 26. Pūgnātum est ab utrīsq̄ue ācrit̄er. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter īnsistere neque
 20 signa subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscum-que signis occurrerat sē adgregābat, māgnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō nōtis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquōs singulāris ex nāvī ēgredientis cōspēxerant, incitātis equis impeditōs adoriēbantur,⁷ plūrēs paucōs circum-sistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant.
 25 Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium item speculātōria nāvigia militibus complēri iussit, et quōs labōrantis⁸ cōspēxerat his subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī simul in āridō cōstitērunt, suis omnibus cōsecūtis in hostis impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque

Cf. ¹ formā. — ² fortunātē. — ³ socii. — ⁴ fecerō. — ⁵ opp. exiguā. — ⁶ cūcti. — ⁷ adgrediēbantur. — ⁸ oppressōs.

longius prōsequi potuerunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque insulam capere¹ nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad pristinam fortūnam Caesari dēfuit.

Conference with British Envoys, Who Sue for Peace.

27. Hostēs proeliō superāti, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīserunt; 5 obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāset factūrōs esse polliciti sunt. Ūnā cum his lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā² dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemisum. Hunc illi ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris³ modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula 10 coniēcērant: tum proeliō factō remisērunt; et in petendā pāce ēius rei culpam in multitudinem contulērunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignōscerētur⁴ petivērunt. Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō⁵ in continentem lēgātīs missis pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere 15 imprudentiae dixit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus⁶ locis arcescitam paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs dixerunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre⁷ in agrōs iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenire et sē civitātisque suās Caesari commendāre⁸ coepērunt. 20

The Cavalry Transports Driven Back by a Storm.

28. His rēbus pāce cōfirmātā, post diem quartum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs xviii dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant,⁹ ex superiōre portū lēni ventō solvērunt.¹⁰ Quae cum adpropinquārent Britanniae et ex castris vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō 25 coōrta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset; sed aliae

Cf. ¹ attingere. — ² opp. *īnfrā*. — ³ lēgātī. — ⁴ condōnāret, veniam daret. — ⁵ suā sponte. — ⁶ opp. *propiōribus*. — ⁷ redire. — ⁸ dēdere. — ⁹ *trānsportāverant*. — ¹⁰ opp. *in ancorīs exspectāvērunt* or *ad ancorās erant dēligātae*.

eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum,¹ māgnō suō

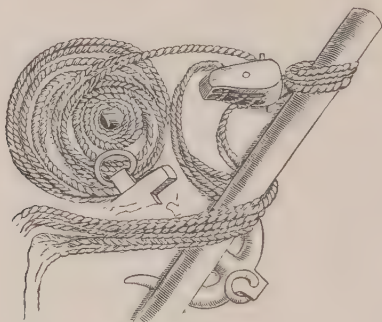


FIG. 76. — ANCHOR AND TACKLE.

cum periculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancoris iactis cum fluctibus complērentur, necessariō adversā nocte in altum
5 prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

The Fleet almost Wrecked by Storms and High Tides.

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, qui diēs
maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōsuēvit,
nostrisque id erat incōgnitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās
nāvis [quibus Caesar exercitum trāsportandum cūrāverat],
10 quās Caesar in āridum² subdūxerat, aestus complēverat; et
onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās adflīc-
tābat, neque ūlla nostris facultās aut administrandī aut
auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus³ nāvibus frāctis, reliquae
cum essent — fūnibus, ancoris reliquisque armāmentis āmis-
15 sis — ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna (id quod necesse erat
accidere) tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque

Cf. ¹ opp. orientem sōlem. — ² lītus. — ³ plūrīmīs.

enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent; et omnia deērant quae ad reficiendās¹ nāvis erant ūsuī; et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in his locīs in hiemem² prōvisum nōn erat.

The Britons Seize the Opportunity and Plan to Renew Hostilities.

30. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis principēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvis et frūmentum Rōmānis deesse³ intellegent, et paucitātem militum ex castrōrum exiguitāte⁴ cōgnōscerent, — quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, — optimum 10 factū esse dūxērunt,⁵ rebelliōne factā, frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōducere; quod his superātis aut reditū interclūsīs nēmīnem postea belli inferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōfidēbant. Itaque rūsus coniūrātiōne factā paulātīm ex castris discēdere et 15 suōs clam⁶ ex agrīs dēducere coepērunt.

Cæsar Suspects their Design.

31. At Caesar, etsi nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat,⁷ tamen et ex ēventū⁸ nāvium suārum et ex eō quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id quod accidit suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnis cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frū- 20 mentum ex agrīs cotidiē in castra cōferēbat et quae gravissimē adflictae erunt nāvēs, eārum materiā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur, et quae ad eas rēs erant ūsuī ex continenti⁹ comportārī iubēbat. Itaque cum summō studiō ā militibus administrārētur,¹⁰ XII nāvibus āmissis, 25 reliquīs ut nāvigārī *satis* commodē posset effēcit.

Cf. ¹ opp. rescindendas. — ² opp. aestātem. — ³ opp. suppetere. — ⁴ opp. māgnitūdine. — ⁵ putāvērunt. — ⁶ opp. palam. — ⁷ animadverterat. — ⁸ cāsū. — ⁹ opp. īnsulā. — ¹⁰ gererētur.

He Takes Measures to Thwart them. They Attack a Foraging Party.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōsuētūdine unā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur VII, neque ullā ad id tempus belli suspiciōne interpositā, — cum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, — ei
 5 qui prō portis castrōrum in statiōne erant Caesari nūtiāvērunt pulverem maiōrem quam cōsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidēri¹ quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id quod



FIG. 77. — SOLDIERS FORAGING.

erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbaris initum cōsili, cohortis quae in statiōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem
 10 proficisci, ex reliquis duās in statiōnem succedere, reliquās armāri et cōnfestim² sēsē subsequi iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castris prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premi³ atque aegrē sustinere et, cōnfertā⁴ legiōne, ex omnibus partibus

Cf. ¹ cōnspici. — ² sine morā. — ³ urgēri. — ⁴ opp. laxātā.

tēla conicī animadvertit.¹ Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmesso frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū² in silvās dēlituerant³; tum dispersōs dēpositis armis in metendō occupātōs subitō adorti,⁴ paucis interfectis reliquōs incertis ōrdinibus pertur- 5 bāverant, simul equitātū atque essedis circumdederant.

Mode of Fighting with War Chariots.

33. Genus hōc est ex essedis pūgnae. Primō per omnīs partis perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū⁵ rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedis 10 dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant utī, sī illi ā multitudīne hostium premantur,⁶ expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem pedutum in proeliis praestant; āc tantum ūsū cotidiānō et 15 exercitātiōne efficiunt utī in dēclivī āc praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī āc flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē⁷ recipere cōsuērint.

The Foragers Rescued. Large Numbers of Britons Assemble.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostrīs nōvitāte pūgnae 20 tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque ēius adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessehdum hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum⁸ esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum 25 haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātis, quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūris diēs

Cf. ¹ cōspēxit. — ² opp. interdiū. — ³ sē occultāverant. — ⁴ adgressī. — ⁵ sonitū. — ⁶ urgeantur. — ⁷ celerrimē. — ⁸ opp. idōneum.

tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castris continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. Interim barbari nūntiōs in omnis partis dimisērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum militum suis praedicāvērunt,¹ et quanta praedae faciendae atque in
 5 perpetuum suī liberandī facultās darētur, si Rōmānōs castris expulissent, dēmōstrāvērunt. His rēbus celeriter magnā multitudīne peditātūs² equitātūsque coāctā ad castra vēnērunt.³

They Give Battle and are Defeated.

35. Caesar, etsi idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat
 10 fore⁴ vidēbat, — ut, si essent hostēs pulsi,⁵ celeritāte periculum effugerent, — tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās (dē quō ante dictum est) sēcum transportāverat,⁶ legiōnēs in aciē prō castris cōstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum militum impetum ho-
 15 stēs ferre nōn potuērunt āc terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūris ex eis occidērunt; deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiis incēnsis sē in castra recēpērunt.

Caesar Returns to Gaul.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē
 20 pāce vēnērunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum quem antea imperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit quod, propinquā diē aequinoctī, infirmis nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvis solvit;
 25 quae omnes incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex eis onerāriae duae eōdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō infrā⁷ dēlātae sunt. ↗

Cf. ¹ prōnūntiāvērunt. — ² peditum. — ³ adiērunt. — ⁴ futūrum. — ⁵ terga vertissent, sē fugae mandāvissent. — ⁶ sustulerat. — ⁷ opp. suprā.



FIG. 78. — BRITISH COINS.

BOOK V. I-23.

SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN, B.C. 54.

Cæsar, Contemplating a Second Invasion of Britain, Orders a Suitable Fleet Built. Settles Disturbances in Illyricum.

L. DOMITIŌ Ap. ClaudiŌ cōsulibus, discēdēns ab hibernīs Caesar in Ītaliā, ut quotannis facere cōsuērat, lēgātis imperat quōs legiōnibus præfēcerat uti quam plurimās possint hieme nāvis aedificandās veterēsque reficiendās cūrent. Eārum modum formamque¹ dēmōstrat. 5 Ad celeritatem onerandi subductiōnisque paulō facit humiliōrēs quam quibus in nostrō mari ūti cōsuēvimus; atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtatiōnēs aestuum minus māgnōs ibi fluctūs fieri cōgnōverat; ad onera ac multitudinem iūmentōrum trānsportandam, paulō lātiōrēs 10 quam quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās omnis āctuariās imperat fieri, quam ad rem multum humilitās adiuvat. Ea quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās² nāvis ex Hispāniā adportārī iubet. Ipse conventibus Galliae citeriōris perāctis in Īllyricum proficiscitur, quod ā Pirūstis finitimam³ partem 15 prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstārī audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, civitatibus militēs imperat certumque in locum convenire iubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pirūstae lēgātōs ad eum mittunt qui doceant⁴ nihil eārum rērum publicō factum cōsiliō,

Cf. ¹ figūram. — ² ōrmandās. — ³ opp. ultimam. — ⁴ ostendant.

sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrant omnibus ratiōnibus dē iniūriis satisfacere. Perceptā¹ ōrātiōne eōrum Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūcī iubet: nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō civitātem persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat.
 5 Eis ad diem adductis ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter civitātis dat qui litem aestiment poenamque cōstituunt.

Returns to Gaul. Orders the New Fleet to Assemble at the Port Itius.
 Finds Trouble Brewing among the Treveri.

2. Hīs cōfectis rēbus conventibusque peractis, in citiōrem Galliam revertitur² atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circumitis omnibus hibernis, singulārī militum studiō in summā omnium rērum inopiā circiter
 10 dc ēius generis, cūius suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, nāvis et longās xxviii invēnit instrūctās,³ neque multum abesse ab eō quī paucis diēbus dēdūcī possint. Conlaudātis militibus atque
 15 omnis ad portum Itium convenīre iubet, quō ex portū commodissimum⁵ in Britanniam trāiectum esse cōgnōverat circiter milium passuum xxx [trānsmisum] ā continentī. Huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum reliquit; ipse cum legiōnibus expeditis iiii et equitibus dccc in finis Trē-
 20 verōrum proficiscitur; quod hī neque ad concilia veniēbant neque imperiō pārēbant, Germānōsque Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre dicēbantur.

Indutiomarus and Cingetorix, Rival Chiefs of the Treveri, Appeal to Cæsar.

3. Haec civitās longē plūrimum tōtius Galliae equitātū valet⁶ māgnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut
 25 suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, tangit.⁷ In eā civitāte duo dē principātū inter sē contendēbant,⁸ Indūtiomārus et Cingetorix; ex quibus alter, simul atque dē Caesaris legiōnumque ad-

Cf. ¹ audītā, intellēctā. — ² ređit. — ³ aedificātās. — ⁴ docet. — ⁵ oportūnissimum. — ⁶ potest. — ⁷ attingit. — ⁸ dēcertābant.

ventū cōgnitum est, ad eum vēnit; sē suōsque omnis in officio futūrōs neque ab amicitia populi Rōmāni dēfectūrōs cōfirmāvit; quaeque in Trēveris gererentur¹ ostendit. At Indūtiomārus equitātum peditātumque cōgere, eisque qui per aetatem² in armis esse nōn poterant in silvam Arduen-
 nam abditis, quae ingenti māgnitudine per mediōs finis Trē-
 verōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre instituit. Sed posteaquam nōn nulli principēs ex eā civitate et auctoritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventū
 nostrī exercitūs perterriti ad Caesarem vēnērunt et dē suis
 privātis rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam civitati cōsulare nōn possent; veritus nē ab omnibus dēsererētur Indūtiomārus lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit: ‘Sēsē idcirco ab suis discēdere atque ad eum venire nōluisse, quō facilius
 civitatem in officio contineret, nē omnis nōbilitātis discessū
 plēbs propter imprudentiam lāberētur;³ itaque civitatem in suā potestate esse sēque, si Caesar permetteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum et suās civitātisque fortūnās eius fidei permissūrum.’

He Settles the Dispute in Favor of Cingetorix.

4. Caesar etsi intellegēbat⁴ quā dē causā ea dicerentur
 quaeque eum rēs ab institutō⁵ cōsilio dēterreret, tamen, nē aestatem in Trēveris cōsumere cōgerētur omnibus rēbus ad Britannicum bellum comparātis, Indūtiomārum ad sē cum cc obsidibus venire iussit. His adductis, in eis filio propinquisque eius omnibus, quos nōminatim ēvocāverat,
 cōsolātus Indūtiomārum hortātusque est uti in officio maneret; nihilō tamen sēcius⁶ principibus Trēverōrum ad sē convocātis hōs singillatim⁷ Cingetorigi conciliāvit; quod cum meritō eius ā sē fieri intellegēbat, tum māgni interesse arbitrabātur eius auctoritatem inter suōs quam plūrimum 30.

Cf. ¹ agerentur. — ² arma ferre. — ³ dēficeret. — ⁴ percipiēbat. — ⁵ inceptō. — ⁶ minus. — ⁷ singulōs.

valēre, cūius tam ēgregiam¹ in sē voluntātem perspēxisset. Id factum graviter tulit Indūtiomārus [suam grātiā inter suōs minui]; et quī iam ante inimicō in nōs animō fuisset multō gravius hōc dolōre exārsit.²

Assembling of Troops at the Port Itius.

5/ 5. Hīs rēbus cōstitutis Caesar ad portum Itium cum legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cōgnōscit LX nāvis, quae in Mel-dis factae erant, tempestāte rēiectās³ cursum tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdem unde erant profectae revertisse; reli-quās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus instrūctās
10 invenit.⁴ Eōdem equitātus tōtius Galliae convenit, numerō milia IIII, principēsque ex omnibus civitātibus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspēxerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat,⁵ quod, cum ipse abesset, mōtum⁶ Galliae verēbātur.

Dumnorix, the Hæduan, Again Appears.

15 6. Erat ūnā cum cēteris Dumnorix Haeduus, dē quō ante ab nōbis dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in primis cōnstituerat,⁷ quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperi, māgnī animi, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cōgnōverat. Accēdēbat hūc quod in conciliō Haeduōrum
20 Dumnorix dixerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum civitātis dēferri;⁸ quod dictum Haeduī graviter⁹ ferēbant neque recūsandi aut dēprecandi causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cōgnōverat. Ille omni-bus primō precibus petere contendit ut in Galliā relinquerē-
25 tur; partim quod insuētus nāvigandi mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impediri¹⁰ sēsē diceret. Posteaquam id obstinātē sibi negārī vidit, omni spē impetrandi ademptā,

Cf. ¹ eximiam. — ² cōnflagravit. — ³ repulsās. — ⁴ reperit. — ⁵ cōnstituerat. — ⁶ tumultum, sēditionem. — ⁷ dēcrēverat. — ⁸ trādī. — ⁹ molestē. — ¹⁰ dētinērī.

principēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs, hortārique coepit utī in continentī remanērent ; metū territāre nōn sine causā fierī ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte spoliārētur ;¹ id esse cōsiliū Caesaris ut, quōs in cōspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnīs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret ; fidem 5 reliquīs interpōnere, iūs iūrandum poscere ut, quod esse² ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent, commūnī cōsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

Flight, Capture, and Death of Dumnorix.

7. Quā rē cōgnitā Caesar, quod tantum civitātī Haeduae dignitātis³ tribuēbat, coercendum⁴ atque dēterrendum qui- 10 buscumque rēbus posset Dumnorigem statuēbat ; quod longius ēius āmentiam prōgredi⁵ vidēbat, prōspiciendum⁶ nē quid sibi āc rei pūblīcae nocēre⁷ posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvigātīōnem impediēbat, quī māgnam partem omnis temporis in 15 hīs locīs flāre cōsuēvit,⁸ ⁹dabat operam ut in officiō Dumnorigem continēret ; nihilō tamen sēcius omnia ēius cōsilia cōgnōsceret. Tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem militēs equitēsque cōnscendere nāvis iubet. At omnium impeditis animīs Dumnorix cum equitibus Haeduōrum ā castris insci- 20 ente Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar, intermissā profectiōne¹⁰ atque omnibus rēbus postpositis, māgnam partem equitātūs ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat ; sī¹¹ vim faciat neque pāreat,¹² interficī iubet ; nihil hunc sē absente prō sālō factūrum arbi- 25 trātus quī praesentis imperium¹³ neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere āc sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit, saepe clāmitāns liberum sē liberaeque esse

Cf. ¹ prīvārētur. — ² ūsuī. — ³ auctōritātis. — ⁴ reprimendum. — ⁵ prōcēdere. — ⁶ prōvidendum. — ⁷ iniūriās inferre. — ⁸ solitus est. — ⁹ nītēbātur. — ¹⁰ discessiōne. — ¹¹ resistat. — ¹² dictō audiēns sit. — ¹³ auctōritātem, iūssum.

civitātis. Illi, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equitēs Haeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

Cæsar Sets Sail for Britain. The Natives in Alarm Withdraw from the Coast.

8. His rēbus gestis,¹ Labiēnō in continente cum III
5 legiōnibus et equitum milibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs
tuērētur et rei frūmentāriæ prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā
gererentur cōgnōsceret cōsiliumque prō tempore et prō rē
caperet, ipse cum v legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum,
quem in continentī reliquerat, ad ²sōlis occāsum nāvis
10 solvit; et lēnī Āfricō prōvectus mediā circiter nocte ventō
intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit; et longius dēlātus aestū
³ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōspēxit. Tum
rūrsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit ut
eam partem insulae caperet quā optimum esse ēgressum
15 superiōre aestāte cōgnōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit
militum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriis gravibusque nāvigiis
nōn intermissō rēmigandi labōre longārum-nāvium cursum
adaequārent. Accēssum est ad Britanniam omnibus
nāvibus meridiānō⁴ ferē tempore;⁴ neque in eō locō hostis
20 est visus, sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivīs cōgnōvit,⁵ cum
māgnæ manūs⁶ eō convēnissent, multitudīne nāvium per-
territae,⁷ quae cum annōtinis privātisque, quās sui quisque
commodi fēcerat, amplius dccc ūnō erant visae tempore, ā
litore discesserant⁸ ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

The Army Lands and Advances. The Natives Resist, but are Defeated.

25 9. Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castris idōneō captō,
ubi ex captivīs cōgnōvit quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōnsē-
dissent, cohortibus x ad mare relictis et equitibus ccc quī
praesidiō⁹ nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostis contendit,

Cf. ¹ cōfectis. — ² occidentem sōlem. — ³ primā lūce. — ⁴ meridiē.
— ⁵ repperit. — ⁶ cōpiae. — ⁷ permōtae. — ⁸ excesserant. — ⁹ subsidiō.

^{the less} — eo minus veritus nāvibus, quod in litore molli¹ atque apertō delīgātās ad ancorās relinquēbat. Eī praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praefēcit. Ipse noctū prōgressus² milia passuum circiter XII hostium cōpiās cōspicātus est. Illi equitātū atque essedis ad flūmen prōgressi ex locō superiōre 5 nostrōs prohibēre³ et proelium committere coepērunt.



FIG. 79. — TESTUDO.

Repulsi ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt, locum nacti ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnitum, quem domestici belli (ut vidēbantur) causā iam ante praeparāverant; nam crēbris⁴ arboribus succisis omnēs introitus⁵ erant praeclūsī. 10 Ipsi ex silvis rārī prōpūgnābant nostrōsque intrā mūnitiōnēs ingredi⁶ prohibēbant. At milites legiōnis VII, testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnitiōnēs adiectō,⁷ locum cēpērunt

Cf. ¹ lēniter acclīvī. — ² profectus. — ³ impedire. — ⁴ multīs. — ⁵ aditus, opp. exitus. — ⁶ introire. — ⁷ exstrūctō.

eōsque ex silvis expulērunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eōs fugientis longius Caesar prōsequi vetuit, et quod loci nātūrā ignōrābat, et quod magnā parte diēi cōnsumptā mūnitiōi castrōrum tempus¹ relinqui volēbat.

The Fleet Suffers from a Storm, is Hastily Repaired and Drawn up on Shore.

5 10. ² Postridiē eius diēi māne tripartitō militēs equitēsque in expeditiōnem misit, ut eōs qui fūgerant persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris prōgressis, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Atriō ad Caesarem vērunt qui nūntiārent, superiōre nocte māximā coōrtā tempestāte, prope
10 omnēs nāvis adflētās atque in litus ēiectās esse; quod neque ancorae fūnēsque sustinērent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis pati³ possent. Itaque ex eō concursū nāvium māgnū esse incommodum⁴ acceptum.

11. His rēbus cōgnitis Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque
15 revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvis revertitur; eadem ferē quae ex nūntiis [litteris] cōgnōverat cōram perspicit, sic ut āmissis⁵ circiter XL nāvibus reliquae tamen refici posse māgnō negōtiō⁶ vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continenti aliōs arcessi iubet;
20 Labiēnō scribit⁷ ut quam plūrimās possit eis legiōnibus quae sunt apud eum nāvis īstituāt.⁸ Ipse, etsi rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen commodissimum⁹ esse statuit omnis nāvis subdūci¹⁰ et cum castris unā mūnitiōne coniungi. In his rēbus circiter diēs x cōsumit nē nocturnis quidem
25 tempōribus ad labōrem militum intermissis. Subductis nāvibus castrisque ēgregiē mūnitis eādem cōpiās quās ante praesidiō nāvibus relinquit; ipse eōdem unde redierat proficiscitur.¹¹ Eō cum vēnisset, māiōrēs iam undique in eum

Cf. ¹ spatium. — ² posterō diē. — ³ perferre. — ⁴ dētrīmentum. — ⁵ perditis. — ⁶ labōre. — ⁷ litterās mittit ad. — ⁸ comparet. — ⁹ utilis-simum. — ¹⁰ opp. dēdūci. — ¹¹ prōcēdit.

locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperi bellique administrandī commūnī cōsiliō permissā¹ Cassi- vellaunō; cuius finēs ā maritimīs civitatibus flūmen dividit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā mari circiter mīlia passuum



FIG. 80.—SOLDIERS BUILDING CAMP, WITH GUARDS.

LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continētia² bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū permōti 5
Britanni hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefecerant.³

The Inhabitants of Britain and its Resources.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab eis incolitur quōs nātōs in insulā ipsī memoriā prōditum dicunt; maritima pars ab eis quī praedae ac bellī inferendī⁴ causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt 10
(quī omnēs ferē eis nōminibus civitātum appellantur quibus

Cf. ¹ mandātā. — ² perpetua. — ³ praeposuerant. — ⁴ gerendī.

ortī ex civitatibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō inlātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est infinita multitūdō crēberrimaque¹ aedificia ferē Gallicis cōsimilia,² pecoris māgnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut aere [aut
 5 nummō aereō] aut tāleis ferreīs ad certum pondus exāminātis prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed ēius exigua³ est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cūiusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et
 10 gallinam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; ⁴ haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā remissiōribus frīgoribus.

Shape and Size of the Island.

13. Īnsula nātūrā⁵ triquetra, cūius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium,
 15 quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs adpelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, inferior ad meridiem spectat.⁶ Hōc latus pertinet circiter milia passuum D. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, insula dimidiō minor (ut exīstimātur) quam Britannia, sed parī
 20 spatiō trānsmisus⁷ atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est insula quae appellātur⁸ Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs subiectae⁹ insulae exīstimantur; dē quibus insulis¹⁰ nōn nūlli scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs xxx sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōni-
 25 bus¹¹ reperiēbāmus, nisi certis ex aquā mēnsūris breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctis vidēbāmus.) Hūius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert¹² illōrum opiniō,¹³ dcc milium. Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs, cui parti nūlla est obiecta¹⁴ terra; sed ēius angulus lateris māximē ad Germā-

Cf. ¹ frequentissima. — ² paria. — ³ parva. — ⁴ arbitrantur. — ⁵ fōrmā. — ⁶ vergit. — ⁷ trāiectūs. — ⁸ nōminātur. — ⁹ propinquae. — ¹⁰ quīdam. — ¹¹ quaestiōne. — ¹² est. — ¹³ sententia. — ¹⁴ opposita.

niam spectat. Hōc milium passuum DCCC in longitudinem esse existimātur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitū viciēs centum milium passuum.

Customs of the Britons.

14. Ex his omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt (quae regiō est maritima omnis), neque multum 5
ā Gallicā differunt cōsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērique frū-
menta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque
sunt vestitī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō inficiunt, quod
caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horridiōrēs sunt in
pūgnā adspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō¹ atque omni 10
parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius.
Uxōrēs habent dēni duodēnique inter sē commūnis, et
māximē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum liberis; sed
quī sunt ex his nātī eōrum habentur² liberī quō primum
virgō quaeque dēducta est. 15

Battle with the Britons, Who are Driven Back.

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriique ācritēr proeliō cum
equitatū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt,³ ita tamen ut nostrī
omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās
collisque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectis cupidius
insecūtī nōn nullōs ex suis āmisērunt. At illi intermissō 20
spatiō,⁴ imprudentibus nostris atque occupātis in mūnī-
tiōne castrōrum, subitō⁵ sē ex silvis ēiēcērunt, impetūque
in eōs factō quī erant in statiōne prō castris conlocātī,
ācritēr pūgnāvērunt; duābusque missis subsidiō cohortibus
ā Caesare, atque his primis legiōnum duārum, cum eae 25
perexiguō⁶ intermissō loci spatiō inter sē cōstitissent, novō
genere⁷ pūgnae perterritis nostris, per mediōs audācissimē
perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumis⁸ recēpērunt. □ Eō diē Q.

Cf. ¹ longō. — ² existimantur. — ³ contendērunt. — ⁴ tempore. — ⁵ repente. — ⁶ minimō. — ⁷ modō. — ⁸ tūtōs.

Laberius Dūrus tribūnus militum interficitur. Illi plūribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

Their Methods of Fighting.

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnæ, cum sub oculis omnium ac prō castris dimicārētur, intellēctum est nostrōs propter
5 gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequī cēdentis¹ possent neque ab signis discēdere audērent, minus aptōs² esse ad hūius generis hostem; equitēs autem māgnō cum periculō proeliō dimicāre, proptereā quod illi etiam cōsultō plērumque cēderent, et cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs
10 remōvissent, ex essedis dēsilirent et pedibus dispari proeliō contenderent. [Equestris autem proeli ratiō et cēdentibus et īnsequentibus pār atque idem periculum īferēbat.] Accēdēbat hūc ut numquam cōnferti³ sed rārī māgnisque intervāllis proeliārentur⁴ statīōnēsque⁵ dispositās habērent,
15 atque aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentēs dēfatigātis succēderent.

They are Again Defeated.

17. ⁶Posterō diē procul ā castris hostēs in collibus cōstitērunt, rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam prīdiē nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacescere⁷ coepērunt. Sed merīdiē,⁸ cum
20 Caesar pābulandi causā III legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sic utī ab signis legiōnibusque nōn absisterent.⁹ Nostrī ācritē in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt, neque finem sequendi fēcērunt quoad
25 subsidiō cōnfisi equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt; māgnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī conligendi neque cōsistendi aut ex essedis

Cf. ¹ sē recipientis, terga vertentis. — ² idōneōs. — ³ dēnsī. — ⁴ dīmicārēnt. — ⁵ subsidia. — ⁶ postrīdiē eius diēi. — ⁷ vexāre. — ⁸ merīdiānō tempore. — ⁹ discēderent.

dēsiliendī facultātem¹ dedērunt. . Ex hāc fugā prōtinus quae undique² convēnerant auxilia discessērunt; neque³ post id tempus umquam summīs nōbiscum cōpiis hostēs contendērunt.

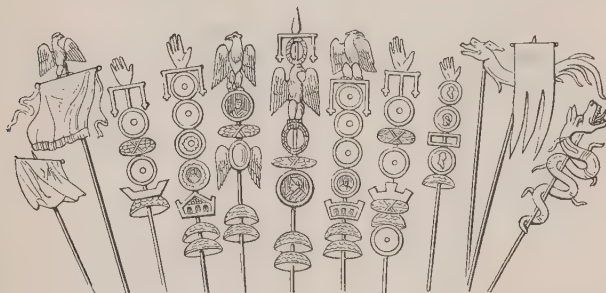


FIG. 81.—SIGNA MILITARIA.

Cæsar Crosses the Thames.

18. Caesar cognitō cōsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in
finis Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō om- 5
nīnō locō pedibus,⁴ atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī potest. Eō
cum vēnisset, animadvertit⁵ ad alteram flūminis rīpam
māgnās esse cōpiās hostium īnstrūctās; rīpa autem erat
acūtis sudibus praefixisque mūnita, ēiusdemque generis sub
aquā dēfixae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. His rēbus cōgnitis 10
ā captivīs perfugīsque Caesar praemissō equitātū cōnfestim⁶
legiōnēs subsequī iussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū
militēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs
impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent
rīpāsque dīmitterent⁷ āc sē fugae mandārent. 15

Cf. ¹ potestātem. — ² ex omnibus partibus. — ³ postea. — ⁴ vadō. — ⁵ vīdit. — ⁶ continuō. — ⁷ relinquerent.

Cassivellaunus Avoids a General Engagement, but Annoys Cæsar by Guerilla Tactics.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprà dēmōnstrāvimus, omnī dēpositā¹ spē contentiōnis, dimissis ampliōribus² cōpiis, milibus circiter IIII essedāriōrum relictis itinera nostra servābat; paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locisque impeditis ac silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque eis regiōnibus quibus nōs iter faciūrōs cōgnōverat pecora atque hominēs ex agris in silvās compellēbat;³ et cum equitātus noster liberius praedandī⁴ vāstandique causā sē in agrōs ēiēcērat, omnibus viis sēmītisque essedāriōs ex silvis ēmittēbat; et māgnō cum periculō nostrōrum equitum cum eis cōnfligēbat⁵ atque hōc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur,⁶ et tantum in agris vāstandis incendiis et faciendis hostibus nocērētur quantum in labōre atque itinere legiōnārii milites
15 efficere poterant.

The Trinobantes Yield to Cæsar.

20. Interim⁷ Trinobantēs, prope firmissima eārum regiōnum civitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem [Galliam] vēnerat, — cūius pater in eā civitatē rēgnum obtinuerat interfectusque
20 erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vitāverat,⁸ — lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē ei dēditūrōs atque imperāta faciūrōs: petunt⁹ ut Mandubracium ab iniuriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat, atque in civitatē mittat quī praesit imperiumque¹⁰ obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsidēs XL
25 frūmentumque exercitui, Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illi imperāta celeriter¹¹ fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque misērunt.

Cf. ¹ sublātā. — ² māiōribus. — ³ agēbat. — ⁴ dēpopulandī. — ⁵ pūgnāvit. — ⁶ permetteret. — ⁷ intereā. — ⁸ effūgerat. — ⁹ rogant. — ¹⁰ rēgnum. — ¹¹ cum celeritatē.

Other Tribes also Yield. A British "Oppidum."

21. Trinobantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omni militum iniuriā prohibitīs, Cēnimāgnī, Segontiācī, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī, Cassī lēgātiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesari dedunt. Ab hīs cōgnōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellauni abesse silvis palūdibusque mūnitum, quō satis māgnus 5 hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem Britannī vocant cum silvās impeditās¹ vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis² hostium vitandae causā convenire cōsuērunt. Eō proficiscitur cum legiōnibus; locum reperit³ ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnitum; tamen hunc 10 duābus ex partibus oppūgnāre⁴ contendit. Hostēs paulisper morāti militum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidi ēiēcērunt. Māgnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in fugā sunt comprehēnsi⁵ atque interfecti. 15

Cassivellaunus at Last Submits.

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus IIII rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segonax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat uti coāctis omnibus cōpiis castra nāvālia dē imprōvisō adori- 20 antur atque oppūgnent. Hī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostri ēruptiōne⁶ factā multis eōrum interfectis, captō etiam nōbili duce Lugotorige, suōs incolumis redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrimentis⁷ acceptis, vāstātis finibus, māximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne⁸ civitātum, lēgātōs 25 per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentinōs⁹ Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahi¹⁰ posse intellegeret, obsidēs

Cf. ¹ dēnsās. — ² inruptiōnis. — ³ invenit. — ⁴ adoriri. — ⁵ capti. — ⁶ excursiōne. — ⁷ incommodis. — ⁸ rebellione. — ⁹ subitōs. — ¹⁰ prōdūci.

imperat, et quid in annōs singulōs vectigālis populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōstituit. Interdicit atque imperat Cassivellaunō nē Mandubraciō neu Trinobantibus noceat.

Cæsar Returns to Gaul.

23. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvis
5 invenit refectās. Hīs dēductis,¹ quod et captivōrum māg-
num numerum habēbat et ²nōn nullae tempestāte dēperierant



FIG. 82. — ROMAN TRANSPORTS.

nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre instituit. Ac sic accidit uti ex tantō nāvium numerō,³ tot nāvigātiōnibus, neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis
10 quae militēs portāret dēsiderārētur;⁴ at ex eis quae inānēs

Cf. ¹ opp. subductis. — ² aliquot. — ³ multitudīne. — ⁴ dēperiret.

ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, [et] priōris commeātūs expositis militibus, et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent¹; reliquae ferē omnēs rēicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspectāset, nē annī tempore ā nāvīgatiōne exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat,² necessariō angustius milites conlocāvit, ac summā tranquillitāte³ cōsecutā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, primā lūce terram attigit⁴ omnisque incolumis nāvis perdūxit.

Cf. ¹ pervenirent ad. — ² aderat. — ³ malaciā. — ⁴ capit.

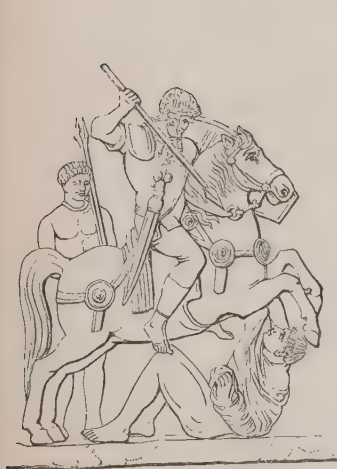


FIG. 83. — CAVALRYMAN CHARGING.

FIG. 84. — CAVALRYMAN WITH *Vexillum*.



FIG. 85. — HELMETS (*galeae*).

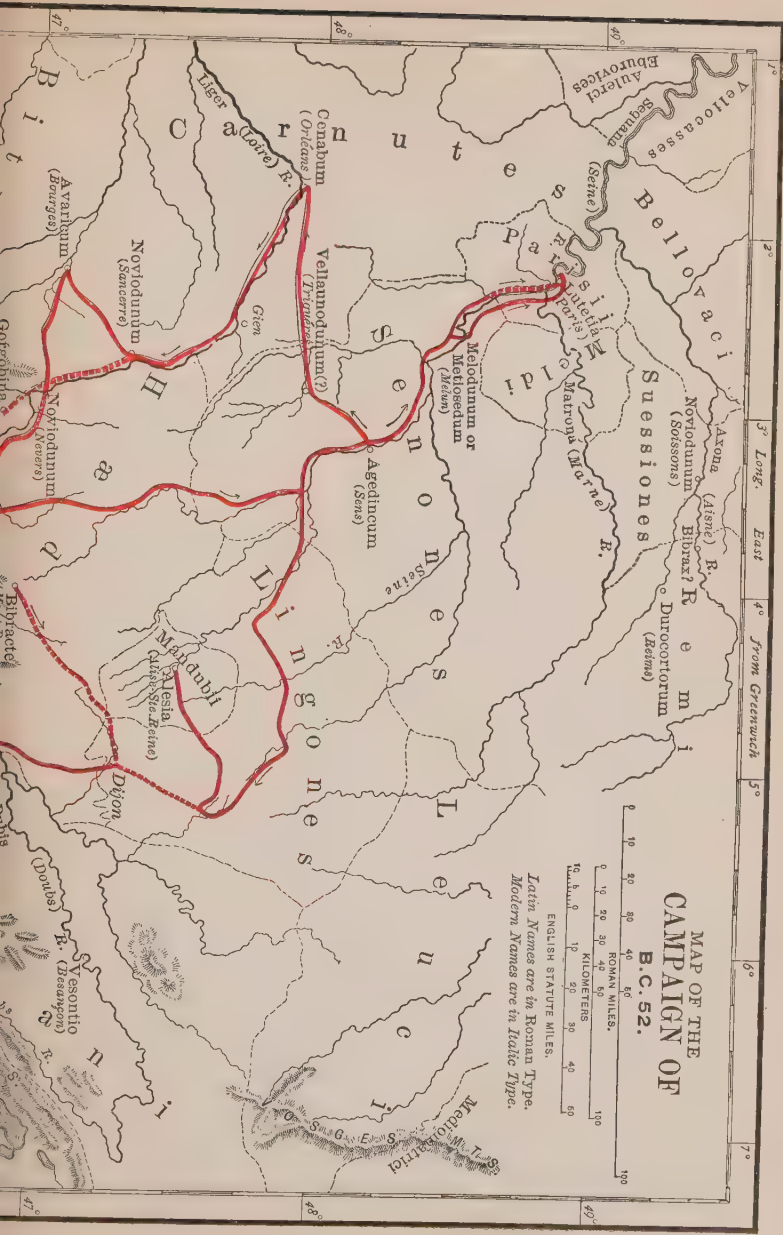
BOOK VII. 1-15.

GENERAL UPRISING OF GAUL, B.C. 52.

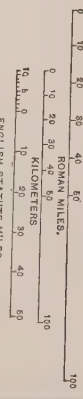
General Movement among the Gauls for Independence.

QUIËTA¹ Galliā Caesar, ut cōstituerat, in Ītaliā ad
 conventūs agendōs proficiscitur. Ibi cōgnōscit de P.
 Clōdī caede; *dē* senātusque cōsultō certior factus ut
 omnēs iūniōrēs Ītaliæ coniūrārent, dēlēctum tōtā prōvinciā
 5 habēre instituit. Eae rēs in Galliā Trānsalpīnam celeriter
 perferuntur. Addunt ipsī et adfingunt rūmōribus Galli
 (quod rēs poscere² vidēbātur) retinēri urbānō mōtū³ Caesa-
 rem neque in tantīs dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitum venīre
 posse. Hāc impulsī⁴ occāsiōne quī iam ante sē populū
 10 Rōmānī imperiō subiectōs dolērent⁵ liberius atque audācius
 dē bellō cōsilia inire⁶ incipiunt. Indictis⁷ inter sē princi-
 pēs Galliae conciliis silvestribus āc remōtis⁸ locis queruntur
 dē Accōnis morte; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs recidere
 dēmōstrant;⁹ miserantur commūnem Galliae fortūnam
 15 omnibus pollicitātiōnibus āc praemiis dēposcunt quī bell-

Cf. ¹ pācātā. — ² postulāre. — ³ tumultū. — ⁴ incitātī. — ⁵ molestē
 ferrent. — ⁶ capere. — ⁷ opp. interdictis. — ⁸ dēsērtis. — ⁹ ostendunt.



MAP OF THE
CAMPAIGN OF
B.C. 52.



Latin Names are in Roman Type.
Modern Names are in Italic Type.

August 1871

From the family

of the

of the

of the

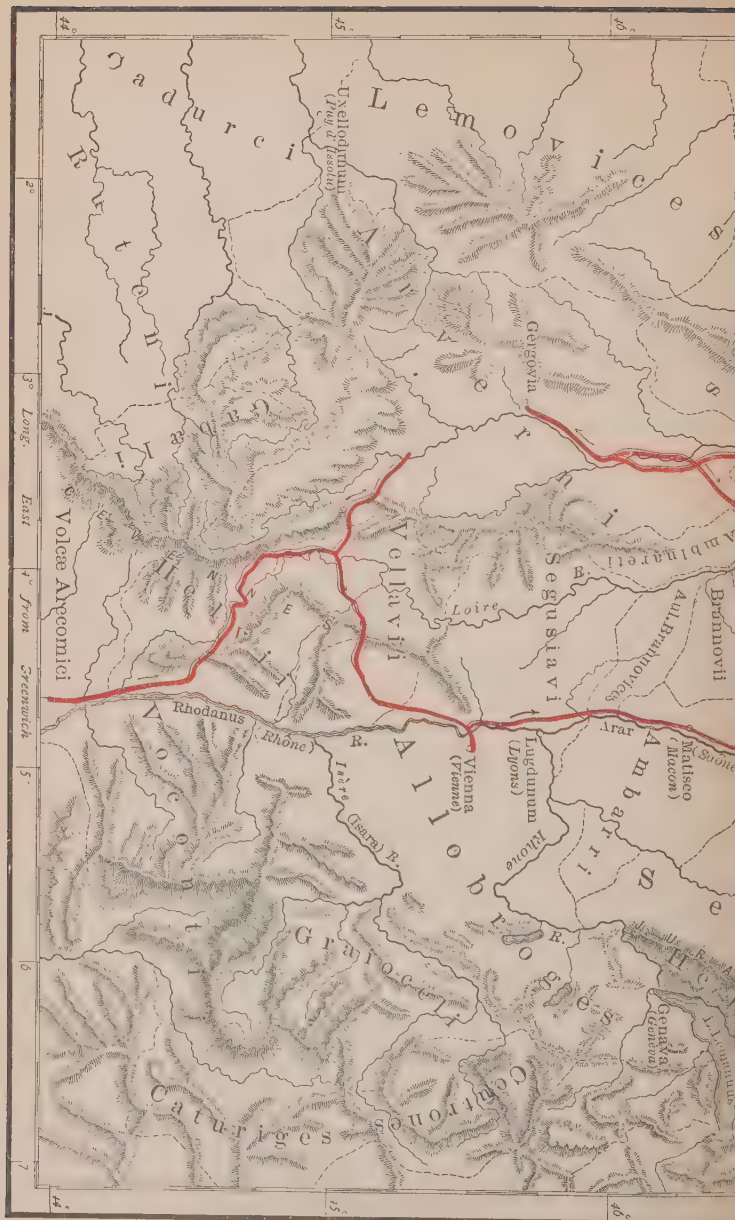
of the

of the

of the

of the

of the



initium faciant et sui capitis¹ periculō Galliam in libertātem vindicent. In primis ratiōnem² esse habendam dicunt, priusquam eōrum clandestīna cōsilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdatur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant absente imperātōre ex hibernis ēgredi, neque imperātor sine praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenire possit; postrēmō,³ in aciē praestāre⁴ interfici quam non veterem bellī glōriam libertātemque quam ā māiōribus accēperint recuperāre.

The Carnutes Begin the Revolt. Rapid Spread of the News.

◇ 2. His rēbus agitātis⁵ profitentur Carnutes sē nūllum periculum commūnis salūtis causā recūsāre, principēsque⁶ 10 ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur; et, quoniam in praesentiā obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs efferātur, ut iūre iūrاندō ac fidē sanciat⁷ petunt, conlātis militāribus signis (quō mōre eōrum gravissima caerimōnia continētur), nē factō initiō belli ab reliquis dēserantur. Tum 15 conlaudātis Carnutibus, datō iūre iūrاندō ab omnibus qui aderant, tempore eius rei cōstitutō, ā conciliō discēditur.

3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutes Cotuātō et Conconnetodumnō ducibus, dēspērātis hominibus, Cēnabum signō datō concurrunt,⁸ civisque Rōmānōs qui negōtiandi causā ibi 20 cōstitērant, in his C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equitem Rōmānum, qui rei frūmentāriae iūssū Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt bonaque eōrum diripiunt. Celeriter ad omnis Galliae civitātis fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae māior atque — inlustrior incidit⁹ rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regiōnēsque signi- 25 fican; hunc aliī deinceps excipiunt et proximis trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī oriente¹⁰ sōle gesta essent ante primam cōfectam vigiliam in finibus Arvernōrum audita sunt, quod spatium est milium passuum circiter CLX.

Cf. ¹ vitāe. — ² cūram. — ³ dēnique. — ⁴ melius esse. — ⁵ dēliberātis. — ⁶ primōs. — ⁷ cōfirmētur. — ⁸ conveniunt. — ⁹ contingit. — ¹⁰ opp. occidente.

Vercingetorix, Chief of the Arverni, Takes the Lead, and Induces Many Tribes to Join him. Severity of his Rule.

4. Simili ratiōne ibi Vercingetorix, Celtilli filius, Arvernus, summae potentiae¹ adulēscēns, — cūius pater principātum tōtius Galliae obtinuerat, et ob eam causam quod rēgnum adpetēbat² ā civitāte erat interfectus, — convocātis suis
 5 clientibus facile incendit.³ Cōgnitō ēius cōnsiliō ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur ā Gobannitiōne, patruō suō, reliquīsque principibus, quī hanc temptandam fortūnam nōn existimābant, expellitur⁴ ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēstitit tamen atque in agris habet dēlēctum egentium ac perditōrum. Hāc
 10 coāctā manū quōscumque adit ex civitāte ad suam sententiam perdūcit; hortātur ut commūnis libertātis causā arma capiant; māgnisque coāctis cōpiis adversāriōs⁵ suōs, ā quibus paulō ante erat ēiectus, expellit ex civitāte. Rēx ab suis appellātur. Dimittit quōque versus lēgatiōnēs; obtes-
 15 tātur⁶ ut in fidē maneant. Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parisiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs, Turonōs, Aulercōs, Lemovicēs, Andōs, reliquōsque omnis quī Ōceanum attingunt adiungit⁷; omnium cōnsēnsū ad eum dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā⁸ potestāte omnibus hīs civitātibus obsidēs imperat; certum numerum
 20 militum ad sē celeriter addūci iubet; armōrum quantum quaeque civitās domi, quodque ante tempus efficiat,⁹ cōstituit; in primis equitātui studet. Summae diligentiae summam imperi sevērītatem addit; māgnitudine supplicii dubitantis cōgit¹⁰: nam māiōre commissō dēlictō¹¹ igni
 25 atque omnibus tormentis necat; leviōre dē causā auribus dēsectis aut singulis effossis oculis domum remittit, ut sint reliquīs documentō¹² et māgnitudine poenae perterreant aliōs.

Cf. ¹ potestātis. — ² cupiēbat. — ³ incitāvit. — ⁴ ēicitur. — ⁵ inimicōs. — ⁶ obsecrātur. — ⁷ adsciscit. — ⁸ trāditā. — ⁹ paret. — ¹⁰ perdūcit. — ¹¹ facinore. — ¹² exemplō.

He Goes among the Bituriges, Who Appeal to the Hædui for Help.
Being Refused, They Join him.

5. His suppliciis celeriter coactō exercitū Lucterium Cadūrcum, summae hominem audāciae, cum parte cōpiārum in Rutēnōs mittit; ipse in Biturigēs proficiscitur. Eius adventū Biturigēs ad Haeduōs (quōrum erant in fidē) lēgātōs mittunt subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hostium cōpiās sustinēre¹ 5 possint. Haeduī dē cōsiliō lēgātōrum, quōs Caesar ad exercitum reliquerat, cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidiō Biturigibus mittunt. Quī cum ad flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturigēs ab Haeduīs dīvidit, paucōs diēs ibi morātī neque flūmen trānsire ausī, domum revertuntur,² lēgātisque 10 nostris renūntiant³ sē Biturigum perfidiam veritōs revertisse, quibus id cōsili fuisse cōgnōverint ut, si flūmen trānsissent, unā ex parte ipsī, alterā Arvernī sē circumsisterent.⁴ Id eāne dē causā quam lēgātis prōnūntiārunt an perfidiā adductī fēcerint, quod nihil nōbīs cōstat, nōn vidētur prō certō esse 15 pōnendum. Biturigēs eōrum discessū statim sē cum Arvernīs iungunt.

Cæsar's Difficulty in Reaching his Army. He Proceeds to Narbo to Counteract the Plans of Lucterius.

6. His rēbus in Ītaliā Caesarī nūntiātis,⁵ cum iam ille urbānās rēs virtūte Cn. Pompēi commodiōrem⁶ in statum pervēnisse intellegeret, in Trānsalpinā Galliam profectus 20 est. Eō cum vēnisset, māgnā difficultāte adficiēbātur,⁷ quā ratiōne ad exercitum pervenire posset. Nam si legiōnēs in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente in itinere proeliō dimicātūrās⁸ intellegēbat; si ipse ad exercitum contenderet, (nē eis quidem) eō tempore quī quiētī vidērentur suam salūtem rēctē 25 committi vidēbat.

Cf. ¹ resistere, w. dat. — ² sē recipiunt. — ³ referunt. — ⁴ circumvenirent. — ⁵ perlātis. — ⁶ meliōrem. — ⁷ permovēbātur. — ⁸ pūgnātūrās.

7. Interim Lucterius Cadūrcus in Rutēnōs missus eam cīvitātem Arvernīs conciliat. Prōgressus in Nitiobrigēs et Gabalōs ab utrisque obsidēs accipit, et māgnā coāctā manū in prōvinciam Narbōnem versus¹ inruptiōnem² facere contendit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnibus cōnsiliis antevertendum³ existimāvit, ut Narbōnem proficiscerētur. Eō cum vēnisset, timentis cōfirmat, praesidia in Rutēnis prōvinciālibus, Volcīs Arecomicis, Tolōsātibus circumque Narbōnem, quae loca hostibus erant finitima,⁴ cōstituit; partem cōpiārum ex prōvinciā, supplēmentumque quod ex Ītaliā addūxerat in Helviōs, quī finis Arvernōrum contingunt,⁵ convenīre iubet.

Cæsar Crosses the Cevennes Mountains through the Snow. Vercingetorix Goes to Protect the Arverni.

8. His rēbus comparātis,⁶ repressō iam Lucteriō et remōtō,⁷ quod intrāre intrā praesidia periculōsum putābat, in Helviōs proficiscitur. Etsi mōns Cevenna, quī Arvernōs ab Helviīs disclūdīt,⁸ dūrissimō tempore annī altissimā nive iter impediēbat; tamen, discussā nive in altitūdinem pedum vi atque ita viīs patefactis,⁹ summō militum labōre ad finis Arvernōrum pervēnit. Quibus oppressis inopinantibus, quod sē Cevennā ut mūrō mūnitōs existimābant, ac nē singulārī¹⁰ quidem umquam homini eō tempore annī sēmitae¹¹ patuerant, equitibus imperat ut quam lātissimē possint vagentur et quam māximum hostibus terrōrem inferant.

Celeriter haec fāma ac nūntiī ad Vercingetorigem perferruntur; quem perterriti omnēs Arvernī circumsistunt atque obsecrant¹² ut suis fortūnis cōsulat, neu sē ab hostibus diripi patiātur; praesertim cum videat¹³ omne ad sē bellum trāslātum. Quōrum ille precibus permōtus castra ex Biturigibus movet in Arvernōs versus.

Cf. ¹ adversus. — ² incursiōnem. — ³ antepōnendum. — ⁴ proxima. — ⁵ attingunt. — ⁶ gestis. — ⁷ repulsō. — ⁸ dīvidit. — ⁹ apertis. — ¹⁰ ūnī. — ¹¹ viae. — ¹² implōrant. — ¹³ perspiciat.

Cæsar Leaves Brutus in Command and Seeks Reënforcements. Vercingetorix Moves towards Gorgobina, a Town of the Boii.

9. At Cæsar biduum in his locis morātus, quod haec dē Vercingetorige ūsū ventūra opiniōne praecēperat, per causam supplēmenti¹ equitātusque cōgendi ab exercitū discēdit; Brūtum adulēscētem his cōpiis praeficit; hunc monet ut in omnīs partis equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur²; datūrum 5 sē operam nē longius trīduō ā castris absit. His cōstitutis rēbus, suis inopinātibz, quam māximis potest itineribus Viennam pervenit. Ibi nactus³ recentem equitātum, quem



FIG. 87. — COIN OF BRUTUS AND ALBINUS.

multis ante diēbus eō praemiserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, per finis Haeduōrum in Lingo- 10 nēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemābant; ut, si quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Haeduis inirētur⁴ cōsili, celeritatē praecurreret. Eō cum pervēnisset, ad reliquās legiōnēs mittit, priusque omnīs in ūnum locum cōgit quam dē eius adventū Arvernīs nūntiārī posset. Hāc rē cōgnitā⁵ Vercin- 15 getorix rūsus in Biturigēs exercitum redūcit, atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Bōiōrum oppidum, quōs ibi Helvēticō proeliō victōs⁶ Cæsar conlocāverat Haeduisque attribuerat,⁷ oppūgnāre instituit.

Cæsar, though Much Perplexed, Determines to Relieve the Boii.

10. Māgnam haec rēs Cæsari difficultātem ad cōsiliū 20 capiendum adferēbat: si reliquam partem hiemis ūnō locō

Cf. ¹ auxiliōrum. — ² vagentur. — ³ adeptus, inveniēns. — ⁴ caperētur. — ⁵ audītā. — ⁶ superātōs. — ⁷ adiūnxerat.

legiōnēs continēret,¹ nē stipendiāriis Haeduōrum expūgnātis cūncta² Gallia dēficeret, quod nūllum amicis in eō praesidium positum vidēret; si mātūrius ex hibernis ēdūceret, nē ab rē frūmentāriā dūris subvectiōnibus labōrāret. Praestāre³
 5 visum est tamen omnis difficultātis perpeti⁴ quam, tantā contumeliā acceptā, omnium suōrum voluntātis⁵ aliēnāre. Itaque cohortātus Haeduōs dē supportandō commeātū, praemittit ad Bōiōs quī dē suō adventū doceant, hortenturque ut in fidē maneant atque hostium impetum māgnō
 10 animō⁶ sustineant. Duābus Agēdincī legiōnibus atque impedimentis tōtius exercitūs relictis ad Bōiōs proficiscitur.

Cæsar Takes Twq Towns near the Loire.

11. Alterō diē cum ad oppidum Senonum, Vellaunodūnum, vēnisset, nē quem post sē hostem relinqueret, et quō expedi-
 tiōre rē frūmentāriā ūterētur, oppūgnāre instituit, eōque
 15 biduō circumvallāvit; tertiō diē missis ex oppidō lēgātis dē dēditione, arma cōferri,⁷ iūmenta prōdūcī, sexcentōs obsidēs dari iubet. Ea quī cōficeret⁸ C. Trebōnium lēgātum relinquit; ipse ut quam primum iter cōficeret, Cēnabum Carnutum proficiscitur; quī tum primum adlātō nūntiō dē
 20 oppūgnātiōne Vellaunodūnī, cum longius eam rem ductum irī existimārent, praesidium Cēnabī tuendi⁹ causā, quod eō mitterent, comparābant.

Hūc biduō pervenit. Castris ante oppidum positīs, diēi tempore exclusus¹⁰ in posterum oppūgnātiōnem differt, quae-
 25 que ad eam rem ūsuī¹¹ sint militibus imperat; et, quod oppidum Cēnabum pōns flūminis Ligeris contingēbat, veritus nē noctū ex oppidō profugerent, duās legiōnēs in armis excubāre iubet. Cēnabēnsēs, paulō ante mediam noctem silentiō ex oppidō ēgressi flūmen trānsire coepērunt. Quā rē per explō-

Cf. ¹ retinēret. — ² tōta. — ³ optimum esse. — ⁴ perferre. — ⁵ animōs. — ⁶ virtūte. — ⁷ comportārī. — ⁸ perficeret. — ⁹ dēfendendī. — ¹⁰ prohibitus. — ¹¹ ex ūsū.

rātōrēs nūntiātā Caesar legiōnēs, quās expeditās esse iusserat, portis incēnsis,¹ intrōmittit atque oppidō potitur, perpaucis ex hostium numerō dēsiderātis quī cūctī caperentur, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multitudinī fugam interclūserant.² Oppidum diripit atque incendit, praedam militibus dōnat; 5 exercitum Ligerim trādūcit atque in Biturigum finis pervenit.

Noviodunum Surrenders, but the Inhabitants, Seeing Vercingetorix Approaching, Prepare for Defense.

12. Vercingetorix ubi dē Caesaris adventū cōgnōvit, oppūgnātiōne dēsistit atque obviam Caesarī proficiscitur. Ille oppidum Biturigum positum in viā Noviodūnum oppūgnāre instituerat. Quō ex oppidō cum lēgātī ad eum vērissent 10 ōrātum³ ut sibi ignōsceret suaeque vitae cōsuleret,⁴ ut celebritate reliquās rēs cōnficeret quā plēraque erat cōsecūtus,⁵ arma cōferri, equōs prōdūci, obsidēs dari iubet. Parte iam obsidum trādītā, cum reliqua administrārentur, centuriōnibus et paucis militibus intrōmissis quī arma iūmenta⁶ 15 conquirent,⁶ equitātus hostium procul vīsus est, quī agmen Vercingetorigis antecesserat. Quem ⁷ simul atque oppidāni cōspēxērunt atque in spem auxili vērērunt, clāmōre sublātō arma capere, portās claudere, mūrū complēre coepērunt. Centuriōnēs in oppidō, cum ex significātiōne Gallōrum novī 20 aliquid ab his iniri consili intellēxissent, gladiis dēstrictis portās occupāvērunt suōsque omnīs incolumis⁸ recēpērunt.

Caesar Takes Noviodunum and Marches towards Avaricum.

13. Caesar ex castris equitātum ēdūci iubet, proeliumque equestre committit; labōrantibus iam suis Germānōs equitēs circiter cccc submittit,⁹ quōs ¹⁰ ab initiō sēcum habēre insti- 25 tuerat. Eōrum impetum Galli sustinēre nōn potuerunt,

Cf. ¹ exūstis. — ² impedierant. — ³ obsecrātum. — ⁴ parceret. — ⁵ cōnfecerat. — ⁶ quaerent. — ⁷ ut semel. — ⁸ tūtōs. — ⁹ auxiliō mittit. — ¹⁰ primō.

atque in fugam coniecti¹ multis āmissis sē ad agmen recēpērunt; quibus prōfligātis² rūsus³ oppidānī perterriti comprehēnsōs, eōs quōrum operā plēbem concitātā existimābant ad Caesarem perdūxērunt sēsēque ei dēdidērunt. Quibus



FIG. 83. — SIEGE OF AVARICUM.

5 rēbus cōfectis Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat māximum mūnitissimumque in finibus Biturigum atque agrī fertilissimā regiōne, profectus est; quod eō oppidō receptō⁴ civitātem Biturigum sē in potestātem redāctūrum cōfidēbat.

Cf. ¹ conversi. — ² dēpulsis. — ³ iterum. — ⁴ opp. āmissō.

Vercingetorix Advises the Gauls to Lay Waste their Country, and thus Keep the Romans from Supplies.

14. Vercingetorix tot continuīs incommodis¹ Vellaunodūnī, Cēnabī, Noviodūnī acceptis suōs ad concilium convocat. Docet 'longē aliā ratiōne esse bellum gerendum atque anteā gestum sit; omnibus modis huic rei studendum ut pābulatiōne et commeātū Rōmānī prohibeantur: id esse 5 facile, quod equitatū ipsī abundant² et quod annī tempore sublevantur; pābulum secārī nōn posse; necessariō³ dispersōs hostis ex aedificiis petere; hōs omnis cotidiē ab equitibus dēlērī posse. Praetereā, salūtis causā rei familiāris commoda negligenda; vicōs atque aedificia incendi oportēre 10 hōc spatiō [ā Bōiā] ⁴ quōque versus, quō pābulandī causā adire posse videantur. Hārum ipsīs rērum cōpiam suppetere, quod quōrum in finibus bellum gerātur eōrum opibus sublevantur⁵: Rōmānōs aut inopiam⁶ nōn lātūrōs aut māgnō cum periculō longius ā castris prōcessūrōs; neque 15 interesse ipsōsne interficiant an impedimentis exuant,⁷ quibus āmissis bellum gerī nōn possit. Praetereā, oppida incendi oportēre quae nōn mūnitiōne et locī nātūrā ab omnī sint periculō tūta; nē suis sint ad dētrectandam⁸ militiam receptācula, neu Rōmānis prōposita ad cōpiam commeātūs 20 praedamque tollendam. Haec sī gravia aut acerba videantur, multō illa gravius aestimārī dēbēre, liberōs, coniugēs in servitūtem abstrahī, ipsōs interficī; quae sit necesse accidere victis.'

They Burn Many Cities, but Spare Avaricum.

15. Omnium cōsēnsū hāc sententiā probātā ūnō diē 25 amplius xx urbīs Biturīgum incenduntur.⁹ Hōc idem fit¹⁰ in reliquīs civitatibus. In omnibus partibus incendia cōn-

Cf. ¹ cladibus. — ² plūrimum possint. — ³ necessitatē adductōs. — ⁴ undique. — ⁵ iuventur. — ⁶ opp. cōpiam. — ⁷ dēspolient. — ⁸ vītandam. — ⁹ combūruntur. — ¹⁰ accidit.

spiciuntur; quae etsi m̄agnō cum dolōre omnēs ferēbant, tamen hōc sibi sōlāci prōpōnēbant, quod sē prope explorātā¹ victōriā celeriter āmissa recuperātūrōs cōfidēbant. Dēliberātūr² dē Avaricō in commūni conciliō, incendi placeat an
 5 dēfendi. Prōcumbunt omnibus Gallis ad pedēs Bituriges, nē pulcherrimam prope tōtius Galliae urbem, quae et praesidiō et ōrnāmentō sit civitatī, suis manibus succendere cōgantur; facile sē loci nātūrā dēfēnsūrōs dicunt, quod, prope ex omnibus partibus flūmine et palūde circumdata, ūnum habeat et
 10 perangustum³ aditum. Datur petentibus venia, dissuādente primō Vercingetorige, post concēdente, et precibus ipsōrum et misericordiā volgī. Dēfēnsōrēs oppidō idōnei dēliguntur.

THE SIEGE OF AVARICUM, B.C. 52.

✓ 16. Vercingetorix minōribus Caesarem itineribus subsequitur, et locum castris dēligit palūdibus silvisque mūnitum
 15 ab Avaricō longē milia passuum xvi. Ibi per certōs explorātōrēs in singula diēi tempora quae ad Avaricum gererentur cōgnōscēbat, et quid fieri vellet imperābat. Omnis nostrās pābulatiōnēs frūmentatiōnēsque observābat,⁴ dispersōsque, cum longius necessariō prōcēderent, adoriēbātur m̄agnōque
 20 incommodō adficiēbat; etsi, quantum ratiōne prōvidēri poterat, ab nostris occurrēbātur,⁵ ut incertis temporibus diversisque⁶ itineribus irētur.

Difficulties of the Siege. The Romans are Resolute.

17. Castris ād eam partem oppidi positis Caesar quae intermissa [ā] flūmine et palūde aditum, ut suprā diximus,
 25 angustum habēbat, aggerem adparāre,⁷ vineās agere, turris duās cōstituere⁸ coepit; nam circumvallāre loci nātūra prohibēbat. Dē rē frūmentāriā Bōiōs atque Haeduōs adhortāri nōn dēstitit: quōrum alterī, quod nullō studiō agēbant,

Cf. ¹ cōfirmātā. — ² cōsultātūr. — ³ angustissimum. — ⁴ speculābātūr. — ⁵ obsistēbātūr. — ⁶ variīs. — ⁷ iacere. — ⁸ excitāre.

nōn multum adiuvābant; alterī nōn māgnis facultātibus,¹ quod civitās erat exigua² et infirma, celeriter quod habuerunt cōsūmpsērunt. Summā difficultāte rei frūmentāriae adfectō exercitū, tenuitate³ Bōiōrum, indiligentiā Haeduōrum, incendiis aedificiōrum, — ūsque eō ut complūris diēs 5 frūmentō militēs caruerint,⁴ et pecore ē longinquiōribus⁶ vicis adāctō extrēmam famem sustentārint, ~~¶~~ nūlla tamen vōx est ab eis audita populi Rōmānī māiestāte⁶ et superiōribus victōriis indigna. ¶ Quin etiam Caesar cum in opere singulās legiōnēs appellāret,⁷ et, si acerbius inopiam ferrent, 10 sē dimissūrum⁸ oppūgnātiōnem diceret, ūniversi ab eō nē id faceret petēbant: ‘Sic sē complūris annōs illō imperante meruisse ut nūllam ignōminiam acciperent, numquam infectā⁹ rē discēderent; hōc sē ignōminiae lātūrōs locō, si inceptam oppūgnātiōnem reliquissent¹⁰: praestāre omnis perferre acer- 15 bitātis¹¹ quam nōn civibus Rōmānīs quī Cēnabī perfidiā Gallōrum interissent¹² parentārent.’ Haec eadem centuriōnibus tribūnisque militum mandābant,¹³ ut per eōs ad Caesarem dēferrentur.

Cæsar Marches towards Vercingetorix.

18. Cum iam mūrō turrēs adpropinquāssent, ex captivis 20 Caesar cōgnōvit¹⁴ Vercingetorigem cōsūmptō pābulō castra mōvisse propius Avaricum, atque ipsum cum equitātū expeditisque quī inter equitēs proeliārī cōnsuēssent, insidiandi causā eō profectum quō nostrōs posterō diē pābulātum ventūrōs arbitrārētur. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis mediā nocte 25 silentiō profectus ad hostium castra māne pervēnit. Illi, celeriter per explōrātōrēs adventū Caesaris cōgnitō, carrōs impedimentaue sua in artiōrēs¹⁵ silvās abdidērunt, cōpiās

Cf. ¹ opibus. — ² parva. — ³ exiguitate. — ⁴ eguerint. — ⁵ opp. propiōribus. — ⁶ dignitate. — ⁷ cohortārētur. — ⁸ relictūrum. — ⁹ opp. cōnfectā. — ¹⁰ dīmīsissent. — ¹¹ dūritiās. — ¹² periissent. — ¹³ trādēbant. — ¹⁴ comperit. — ¹⁵ dēnsiōrēs.

omnis in locō ēditō¹ atque apertō instrūxērunt. Quā
rē nūntiātā Caesar celeriter sarcinās cōferri, arma ex-
pediri iussit.

He Finds him too Strongly Intrenched to Warrant an Attack.

19. Collis erat lēniter ab infimō acclivis. Hunc ex
5 omnibus ferē partibus palūs difficilis atque impedita cingē-
bat, nōn lātiōr pedibus L. Hōc sē colle interruptis² ponti-

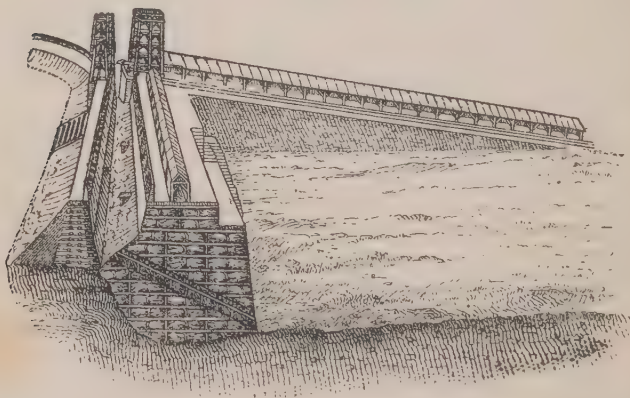


FIG. 89. — VIEW OF SIEGE WORKS.

bus Galli fiduciā loci continēbant, generātimque distribūti
[in civitātis] omnia vada [āc saltūs] eius palūdis obtinēbant,
sic animō parātī ut, si eam palūdem Rōmānī perrumpere
10 cōnārentur, haesitantis³ premerent ex locō superiōre; ut,
qui propinquitatem loci vidēret, parātōs prope aequō Mārte
ad dimicandum existimāret; Qui iniquitatem⁴ condiciōnis
perspiceret, inānī simulatiōne sēsē ostentāre cōgnōsceret.
Indignantīs militēs Caesar, quod cōnspectum suum hostēs
15 ferre possent tantulō spatiō interiectō, et sīgnum proeli

Cf. ¹ excelsō. — ² rescissis. — ³ impeditōs. — ⁴ opp. aequitatem.

exposcentis,¹ ēdocet quantō dētrimentō² et quot virōrum fortium morte necesse sit cōstāre victōriam; quōs cum sic animō parātōs videat ut nūllum prō suā laude³ periculum recūsant, summae sē inīquitātis condemnārī dēbēre, nisi eōrum vitam laude suā habeat⁴ cārīōrem. Sic militēs cō- 5
sōlātus eōdem diē reducit in castra; reliquaue quae ad oppugnātiōnem oppidī pertinēbant administrāre⁵ instituit.

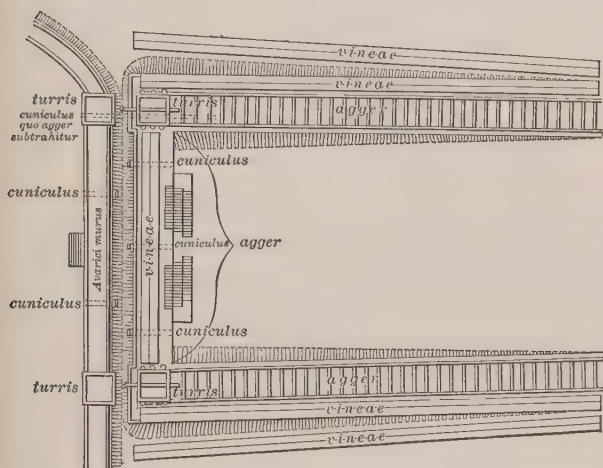


FIG. 90. — PLAN OF SIEGE WORKS.

Suspensions against Vercingetorix, Who Makes a Successful Defense and Appeal to his Countrymen.

20. Vercingetorix cum ad suos redisset, prōditionis insimulātus,⁶—quod castra propius Rōmānōs mōvisset, quod cum omnī equitātū discessisset, quod sine imperiō⁷ tantās 10
cōpiās reliquisset, quod eius discessū Rōmānī tantā opportū-
nitātē⁸ et celeritātē vēnissent; nōn haec omnia fortuitō⁹ aut

Cf. ¹ petentis. — ² damnō. — ³ glōriā. — ⁴ existimet. — ⁵ comparāre.
— ⁶ accūsātus. — ⁷ imperātore. — ⁸ occāsiōne. — ⁹ forte, cāsū.

sine cōsiliō accidere potuisse; rēgnum illum Galliae malle Caesaris concessū¹ quam ipsōrum habēre beneficiō, — tālī modō accūsātus ad haec respondit: ‘Quod castra mōvisset, factum inopiā pābuli, etiam ipsīs hortantibus²; quod propius
 5 Rōmānōs accessisset, persuāsum loci opportunitāte, quī sē ipse sine mūnitiōne dēfenderet; equitum vērō operam³ neque in locō palūstri dēsiderārī dēbuisse, et illic fuisse ūtilem quō sint profecti. Summam imperi sē cōsultō nūlli discēdentem trādidiisse, nē is multitūdinis studiō ad dīmican-
 10 dum impellerētur; cui rei propter animi mollitiem⁴ studēre omnis vidēret, quod diūtius labōrem ferre nōn possent. Rōmānī sī cāsū⁵ intervēnerint, fortunae; sī alicūius indicio vocātī, huic habendam grātiā, quod et paucitātem eōrum ex locō superiōre cōgnōscere et virtūtem dēspicere⁶ potue-
 15 rint, quī dīmicare nōn ausi turpiter sē in castra recēperint. Imperium sē ā Caesare per prōditiōnem nūllum dēsiderāre,⁷ quod habēre victōriā posset, quae iam esset sibi atque omnibus Gallis explorāta: quā etiam ipsīs remittere, sī sibi magis honōrem tribuere quam ab sē salūtem accipere vide-
 20 antur.’ “Haec ut intellegātis,” inquit, “ā mē sincērē prōnūntiārī, audite Rōmānōs militēs.” Prōdūcit servōs, quōs in pābulātiōne paucis ante diēbus excēperat,⁸ et famē vinculisque excruciaēverat. Hī, iam ante ēdocti quae interrogāti prōnūntiārent, militēs sē esse legiōnāriōs dicunt; famē et
 25 inopiā adductōs clam⁹ ex castris exisse, sī quid frūmenti aut pecoris in agris reperire¹⁰ possent; similī omnem exercitum inopiā premī, nec iam viris sufficere¹¹ cūiusquam nec ferre operis labōrem posse: itaque statuissē imperātōrem, sī nihil in oppūgnātiōne oppidi prōfēcissent, triduō exercitum dēdūcere.
 30 “Haec,” inquit, “ā mē,” [Vercingetorix] “beneficia habētis, quem prōditiōnis insimulātis; cūius operā sine vestrō san-

Cf. ¹ grātiā. — ² monentibus. — ³ officium. — ⁴ infirmitātem. — ⁵ fortuitō. — ⁶ contemnere. — ⁷ cupere. — ⁸ dēprehenderat. — ⁹ opp. palam. — ¹⁰ invenire. — ¹¹ satis esse.

guine tantum exercitum victōrem famē cōsūmptum vidētis; quem turpiter sē ex hāc fugā recipientem nē qua civitās suis finibus recipiat, ā mē prōvisum¹ est."

21. Conclāmat omnis multitudō et suō mōre armīs con-crepat, — quod facere in eō cōsuērunt cūius ōrātiōnem 5 adprobant: 'Summum esse Vercingetorigem ducem, nec dē ēius fidē dubitandum, nec māiōre ratiōne² bellum administrārī³ posse.' Statuunt ut x milia hominum dēlēcta ex omnibus cōpiis in oppidū submittantur, nec sōlis Biturigibus 10 commūnem salūtem committendam⁴ cēsent; quod paene in eō, sī id oppidum retinuissent, summam victōriæ cōstāre intellegēbant.

The Gauls Make a Most Skilful Defense against the Roman Works.

22. Singulārī⁵ militum nostrōrum virtūti cōnsilia cūiusque modi Gallōrum occurrēbant,⁶ ut est summae genus sollertiae, atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda quae ā quōque trā- 15 duntur aptissimum. Nam et laqueis falcis āvertēbant, quās, cum dēstināverant,⁷ tormentis intrōrsus redūcēbant; et aggerem cuniculis subtrahēbant,⁸ eō scientius quod apud eōs māgnae sunt ferrariae, atque omne genus cuniculōrum nōtum atque ūsitātum est. Tōtum autem mūrum ex omnī 20 parte turribus contabulāverant atque hās coriis intēxerant. Tum crēbris diurnis nocturnisque ēruptiōnibus aut aggeri ignem inferēbant⁹ aut militēs occupātōs in opere adoriēbantur¹⁰; et nostrārum turrium altitudinem, quantum hās cotidiānus agger expresserat,¹¹ commissis suārum turrium 25 mālīs adaequābant; et apertōs cuniculōs praeūstā et praeacūtā māteriā et pice fervefactā et māximī ponderis saxis morābantur moenibusque¹² adpropinquāre prohibēbant.

Cf. ¹ cautum. — ² arte. — ³ gerī. — ⁴ mandandam. — ⁵ eximiae. — ⁶ obsistēbant. — ⁷ adfixerant. — ⁸ subruēbant. — ⁹ iniciēbant. — ¹⁰ adgrediēbantur. — ¹¹ ērexerat. — ¹² mūrīs.

Description of a Gallic Wall.

23. Mūrī autem omnēs Gallicī hāc ferē formā sunt. Trabēs directae, perpetuae¹ in longitudinem paribus intervāllis, distantēs inter sē binōs pedēs, in solō conlocantur. Hae revinciuntur intrōrsus et multō aggere vestiuntur²; ea autem
 5 quae diximus intervālla grandibus in fronte saxīs effarciuntur.³ His conlocātis et coagmentātis⁴ aliis insuper ōrdō



FIG. 91. — GALLIC WALL.

additur, ut idem illud intervāllum servētur neque inter sē contingant trabēs, sed, paribus intermissis spatiis, singulae singulis saxīs interiectis artē contineantur. Sic deinceps
 10 omne opus contexitur dum iūsta mūrī altitūdō expleātur. Hōc cum in speciem varietātemque opus dēforme nōn est, alternis trabibus ac saxīs, quae rēctis lineis suōs ōrdinēs servant, tum ad ūtilitātem et dēfēnsiōnem urbium summam habet opportunitātem; quod et ab incendiō lapis et ab ariete
 15 māteria dēfendit, quae perpetuis trabibus pedum quadrā-

Cf. ¹ opp. intermissae. — ² integuntur. — ³ complentur. — ⁴ cōnfixīs.

gēnum plērumque¹ intrōrsus revincta neque perrumpi²
neque distrahi potest.

The Gauls Set Fire to the Roman Works and Make a Sortie.

24. His tot rēbus impeditā oppugnātiōne militēs, cum
tōtō tempore frīgore et adsiduīs³ imbribus tardārentur,
tamen continentī labōre omnia haec superāvērunt, et diēbus 5
xxv aggerem lātum pedēs cccxxx, altum pedēs lxxx
exstrūxērunt. Cum is mūrū hostium paene contingeret,
et Caesar ad opus cōsuētūdine excubāret militēsque hor-
tārētur nē quod omninō tempus ab opere intermitterētur,
— paulō ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum fūmāre ag- 10
gerem, quem cuniculō hostēs succenderant⁴; eōdemque tem-
pore, tōtō mūrō clāmōre sublātō, duābus portīs ab utrōque
latere turrium ēruptiō fiēbat. Alii facīs atque āridam
māteriam dē mūrō in aggerem ēminus⁵ iaciēbant; picem
reliquāsque⁶ rēs quibus ignis excitārī⁷ potest fundēbant; 15
ut, quō primum occurrerētur aut cui rei ferrētur auxilium,
vix ratiō iniri posset. Tamen, quod institūtō⁸ Caesaris
duae semper legiōnēs prō castris excubābant, plūrēsque
partitis temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est ut
alii ēruptiōnibus resisterent, alii turrīs redūcerent⁹ aggerem- 20
que interscinderent, omnis vērō ex castris multitudō ad
restringendum concurreret.

Heroism of the Gauls.

25. Cum in omnibus locis, cōsūptā iam reliquā parte
noctis, pūgnārētur semperque hostibus spēs victōriae redin-
tegrārētur,¹⁰ — eō magis quod deūstōs pluteōs turrium 25
vidēbant, nec facile adire apertōs ad auxiliandum¹¹ animad-
vertēbant, — semperque ipsī recentēs¹² dēfessis succēderent,

Cf. ¹ ferē. — ² perfringī. — ³ perpetuīs. — ⁴ incenderant. — ⁵ opp.
comminus. — ⁶ cēterās. — ⁷ opp. restinguī. — ⁸ cōnsiliō, iūssū. — ⁹ re-
movērent. — ¹⁰ renovārētur. — ¹¹ auxilium ferendum. — ¹² integrī.

omnemque Galliae salutem in illō vestigiō temporis positam arbitrārentur; accidit inspectantibus nōbīs quod dignum memoriā visum praetereundum¹ nōn existimāvimus. Quīdam ante portam oppidi Gallus per manūs sēbī ac picis trāditās
5 glēbās in ignem² ē regiōne turris prōiciēbat; scorpiōne ab

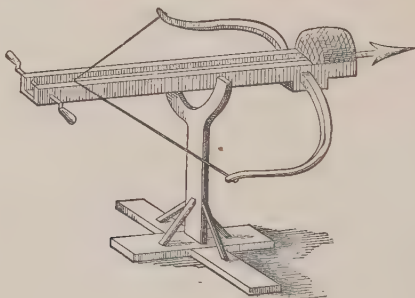


FIG. 92. — SCORPIO.

latere dextrō trāiectus³ exanimātusque concidit. Hunc ex proximīs ūnus iacentem trānsgressus eōdem illō mūnere⁴ fungēbātur; eādem ratiōne ictū scorpiōnis exanimātō alterō successit tertius et tertiō quartus; nec prius ille est ā prō-
10 pūgnātōribus vacuus relictus locus quam restinctō aggere atque omnī parte submōtis hostibus, finis est pūgnandī factus.

The Gauls Prepare to Abandon the Town, but are Dissuaded by the Women.

26. Omnia experti Galli, quod⁵ rēs nūlla successerat, posterō diē cōsiliū cēpērunt ex oppidō profugere hortante
15 et iubente Vercingetorige. Id silentiō noctis cōnātī nōn māgnā iactūrā⁶ suōrum sēsē effectūrōs spērābant; propterea quod neque longē ab oppidō castra Vercingetorigis aberant, et palūs perpetua, quae intercēdebāt, Rōmānōs ad insequen-

Cf. ¹ omittendum. — ² ex adversō. — ³ trānsfossus. — ⁴ officiō. — ⁵ nihil prōfēcerant. — ⁶ dētrimentō.

dum tardābat.¹ Iamque hōc facere noctū adparābant, cum mātres familiae repente in pūblicum prōcurrerunt flentēque, prōiectae ad pedēs suōrum, omnibus precibus petiērunt² nē sē et commūnis liberōs hostibus ad supplicium dēderent, quōs ad capiendam fugam nātūrae et viriū infirmitās impe- 5
diret. Ubi eōs in sententiā³ perstāre⁴ vidērunt, quod plē-
rumque in summō periculō timor⁵ misericordiam nōn recipit, 74
conclāmāre et significāre dē fugā Rōmānis coepērunt. Quō timōre perterriti Gallī, nē ab equitatū Rōmānōrum viae prae-
occupārentur, cōsiliō dēstitērunt. 10

Storming of the Walls.

27. Posterō diē Caesar prōmōtā⁶ turri directisque operi-
bus quae facere instituerat, māgnō coōrtō imbri, nōn inūtilem
hanc ad capiendum⁷ cōsiliū tempestātem arbitrātus, quod
paulō incautius custodiās in mūrō dispositās vidēbat, suōs
quoque languidiū in opere versārī iussit, et quid fierī vellet 15
ostendit. Legiōnibusque [intrā vineās] in occultō expeditis,
cohortātus ut aliquandō prō tantis labōribus fructum⁸ victō-
riae perciperent, eīs qui primī mūrū adscendissent praemia
prōposuit militibusque sīgnū dedit. Illi subitō ex omni-
bus partibus evolāvērunt mūrūque celeriter complēvērunt. 20

The Town is Taken, and Most of the Inhabitants are Butchered.

28. Hostēs rē novā perterriti, mūrō turribusque dēiecti,
in forō ac locis patentiōribus⁹ cuneātīm cōstitērunt, hōc
animō¹⁰ ut, sī quā ex parte obviam [contrā] venirētur, aciē
instrūctā depūgnārent. Ubi nēminem in aequum locum¹¹ sēsē
dēmittere, sed tōtō undique mūrō circumfundī vidērunt, 25
veriti nē omninō spēs fugae tollerētur, abiectis armis ulti-
mās¹² oppidī partis continentī impetū petivērunt; parsque

Cf. ¹ morābātur. — ² obsecravērunt. — ³ cōsiliō. — ⁴ permanere. —
⁵ opp. fortitūdō. — ⁶ opp. reductā. — ⁷ opp. omittendum. — ⁸ prae-
mium. — ⁹ apertiōribus. — ¹⁰ cōsiliō. — ¹¹ dēscendere. — ¹² opp. proxi-
mās.

ibi, cum angustō¹ exitū portarum sē ipsi premerent, ā militibus, pars iam ēgressa portis ab equitibus est interfecta; nec fuit quisquam quī praedae studēret. Sic et Cēnabēnsī caede et labōre operis incitātī nōn aetate cōfectis, nōn
 5 mulieribus,² nōn infantibus pepercērunt.³ Dēnique ex omni numerō, quī fuit circiter milium XL, vix DCCC, quī primō clāmōre auditō sē ex oppidō ēiēcerant, incolumēs ad Vercingetorigem pervēnērunt. Quōs ille multā iam nocte silentiō ex fugā excēpit, et veritus nē quā in castris ex eōrum
 10 concursū et misericordiā volgi sēditio orerētur, [ut,] procul in viā dispositis familiāribus⁴ suis principibusque civitatum, disparandōs⁵ dēdūcendōsque ad suōs cūravit, quae cuique civitātī pars castrōrum ab initiō⁶ obvenerat.

Vercingetorix Appeals to the Gauls to Continue the War.

29. Posterō diē conciliō⁷ convocātō cōsōlātus cohortātusque est: 'Nē sē admodum animō dēmitterent, nēve perturbārentur incommodō; nōn virtūte neque in aciē vicisse Rōmānōs, sed artificiō quōdam et scientiā oppugnātiōnis, cūius rei fuerint ipsi imperiti; errāre, si quī in bellō omnīs secundōs⁸ rērum prōventūs⁹ exspectent; sibi numquam
 20 placuisse Avaricum dēfendī, cūius rei testis ipsōs habēret, sed factum imprudentiā Biturigum et nimiā obsequentiā reliquōrum uti hōc incommodum acciperētur; id tamen sē celeriter māiōribus commodis sātātūrum. Nam, quae ab reliquis Gallis civitātēs dissentirent,¹⁰ hās suā diligentīā
 25 adiūctūrum atque ūnum cōsiliūm tōtius Galliae effectūrum, cūius cōsēnsui nē orbis quidem terrārum possit obsistere; idque sē prope iam effectum habēre. Intereā aequum esse ab eis commūnis salūtis causā impetrārī¹¹ ut castra mūnīre instituerent, quō facilius repentinōs¹² hostium impe-
 30 tūs sustinēre possent.'

Cf. ¹ opp. lātō. — ² fēminīs. — ³ opp. occidērunt. — ⁴ amicīs. — ⁵ distribuendōs. — ⁶ opp. fine. — ⁷ contiōne. — ⁸ opp. adversōs. — ⁹ ēventūs. — ¹⁰ discēderent. — ¹¹ obtinērī. — ¹² imprōvisōs.

They are Inspired by his Appeal to Renewed Efforts.

30. Fuit haec orātiō nōn ingrāta Gallīs, et māximē quod ipse animō nōn dēfēcerat¹ tantō acceptō incommodō, neque sē in occultum² abdiderat et cōspectum multitudinis fūgerat³; plūsque animō prōvidēre et praesentire existimābatur, quod rē integrā primō incendendum Avaricum, post dēserendum cēnsuerat. Itaque, ut reliquōrum imperātōrum rēs adversae⁴ auctōritātem minuunt, sic⁵ hūius ex contrāriō dignitās incommodō acceptō in diēs augēbatur. Simul in spem veniēbant ēius adfirmātiōne dē reliquīs adiungendis civitātibus; primumque eō tempore Galli castra mūnire 10 instituērunt, et sic erant animō cōfirmāti, hominēs insuēti labōris, ut omnia quae imperārentur sibi patiēda⁶ existimārent.

Cf. ¹ dēfuerat. — ² opp. apertum. — ³ vitāverat. — ⁴ opp. secundae. — ⁵ ita. — ⁶ perferenda.

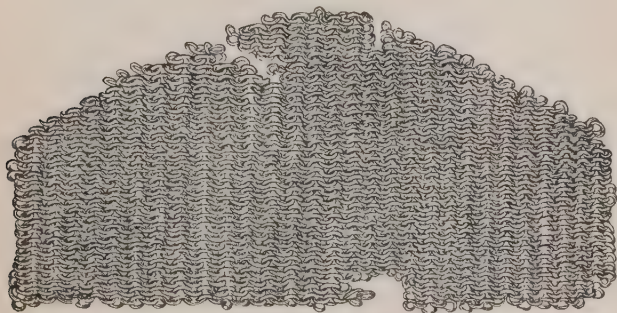


FIG. 93. — CHAIN MAIL (*lorica hamata*).

THE SIEGE OF ALESIA, B.C. 52.

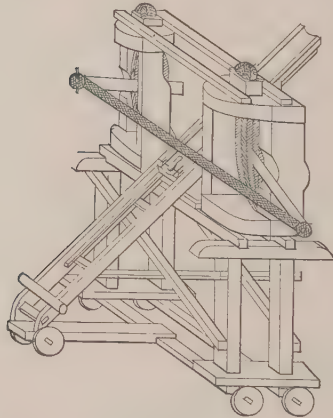


FIG. 94. — BALLISTA.

Vercingetorix Retires to Alesia, which Cæsar Determines to Invest.

68. Fugātō omnī equitātū Vercingetorix cōpiās suās, ut
prō castris conlocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque¹ Alesiam, quod
est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit; celeriterque
impedimenta ex castris ēdūci et sē subsequi iussit. Caesar
5 impedimentis in proximum collem ductis, duābus legiōnibus
praesidiō relictis, secūtus hostis quantum diēi tempus est
passum, circiter III milibus ex novissimō² agmine interfectis,
alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit.³ Perspectō⁴ urbis sitū
perterritisque hostibus, quod equitātū (quā māximē parte
10 exercitūs cōfidēbant⁵) erant pulsī, adhortātus ad labōrem
militēs Alesiam circumvāllāre⁶ instituit.

Cf. ¹ continuō. — ² opp. prīmō. — ³ posuit. — ⁴ explōrātō. — ⁵ opp. diffidēbant. — ⁶ obsidēre.

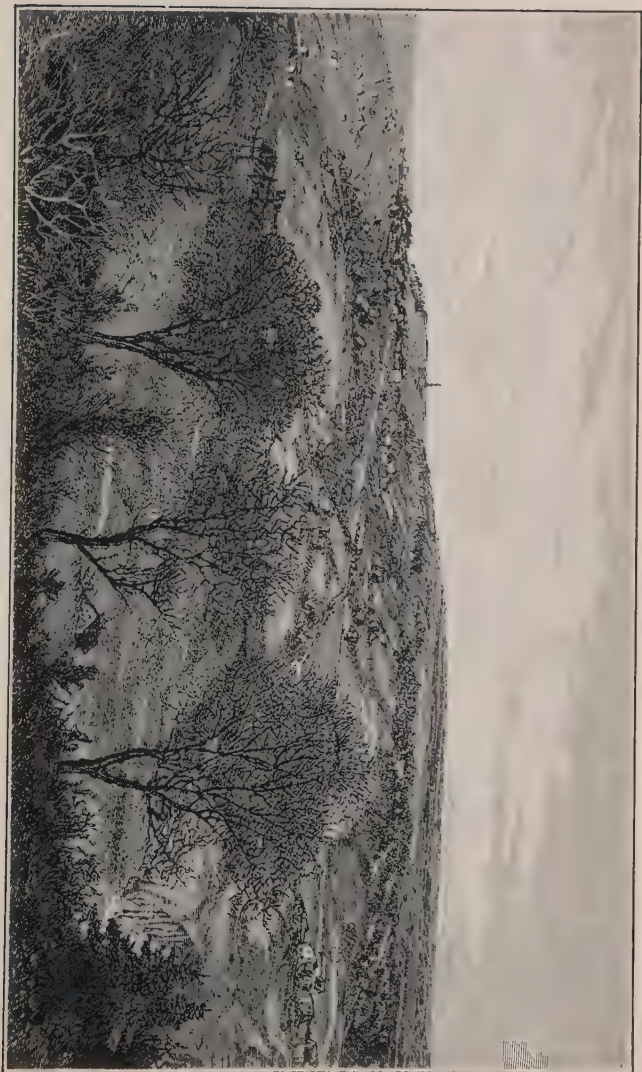


FIG. 95. — ALISE-SAINTE-REINE (*Alsace*).

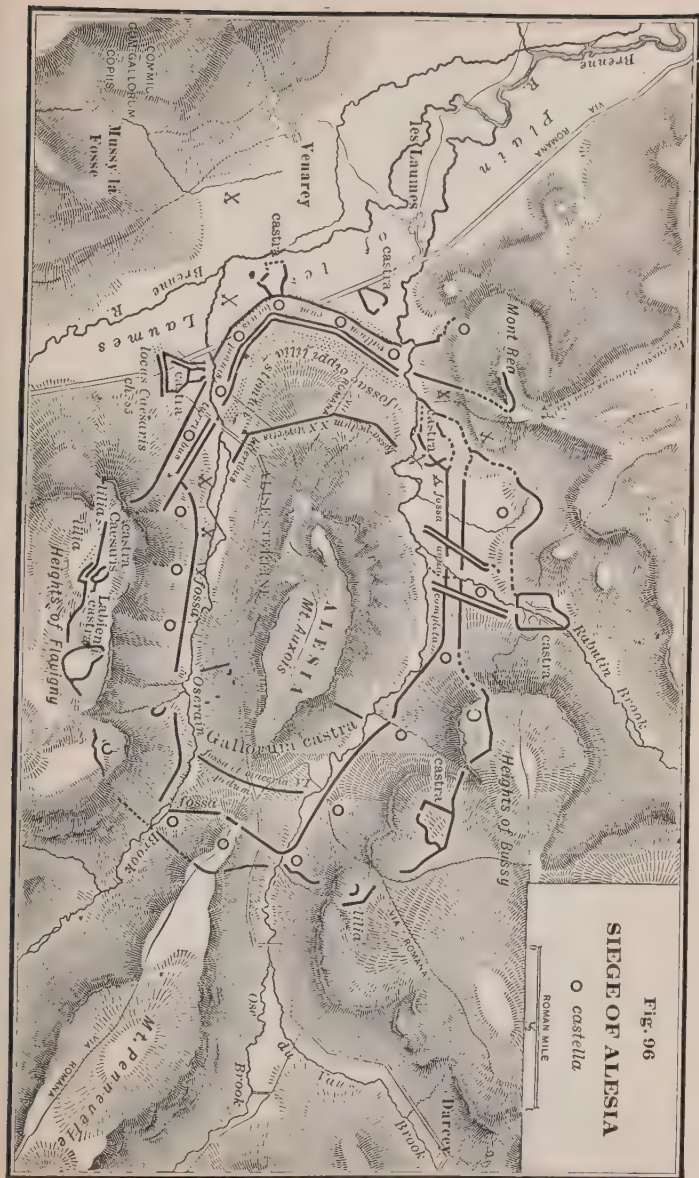
Description of Alesia and its Defenses.

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō ¹admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expūgnārī nōn posse vidērētur. Cūius collis rādīcēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitiēs circiter milia passuum III in longitū-
 5 dinem patēbat ²; reliquīs ex omnibus partibus collēs, mediocri interiectō spatiō, parī altitudinis fastigiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant, fossamque et māceriam ³ in altitudinem VI pedum prae-
 10 dūxerant. Eius mūnitiōnis quae ab Rōmānīs instituēbātur circuitus XI milia passuum tenēbat. ⁴ Castra opportunis locis erant posita VIII castellaque XXIII facta; quibus in castellis interdiū ⁵ stationēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō erup-
 tiō ⁶ fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus ⁷ ac firmīs prae-
 15 sidiīs tenēbantur.

A Cavalry Battle in the Plain. The Gauls Defeated with Great Slaughter.

70. Opere institūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plānitiē quam intermissam collibus tria milia passuum in longitū-
 nem patēre suprā dēmōstrāvimus. Summā vi ab utrisque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostris Caesar Germānōs sub-
 20 mittit legiōnēsque prō castris cōstituit, nē qua subitō inrup-
 tiō ⁸ ab hostium peditātū fiat. Praesidiō legiōnum additō nostris animus augētur; hostēs in fugam coniecti ⁹ sē ipsi multitudīne impediunt atque angustiōribus ¹⁰ portis relictis coartantur. Germāni ācrius ūsque ad mūnitiōnēs sequuntur.
 25 Fit māgna caedēs; nōn nūlli relictis equis fossam transire et māceriam trāscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō vāllō cōstituerat prōmovērī iubet. Nōn

Cf. ¹ altissimō. — ² pertinēbat. — ³ mūrū. — ⁴ patēbat. — ⁵ opp. noctū. — ⁶ excursiō. — ⁷ vigiliis. — ⁸ incursiō. — ⁹ datī. — ¹⁰ opp. lātiōribus.



minus quī intrā mūnitiōnēs erant Galli perturbantur; venīri ad sē cōnfestim¹ existimantēs ad arma conclāmant; nōn nūlli perterriti in oppidum inrumpunt. Vercingetorix iubet portās claudi,² nē castra nudentur. Multis interfectis, com-
5 plūribus equis captis, Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

Vercingetorix Sends Away his Cavalry and Calls for Help from Without.

71. Vercingetorix, priusquam mūnitiōnēs ab Rōmānis perficiantur, cōnsilium capit³ omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dimittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quisque eōrum civitātem adeat omnisque quī per aetātē arma ferre possint
10 ad bellum cōgant.⁴ Sua in illōs merita⁵ prōpōnit, obtestaturque ut suae salūtis ratiōnem habeant, neu sē optimē dē commūni libertāte meritum in cruciātum hostibus dēdant. Quod sī indiligentiōrēs⁶ fuerint, milia hominum dēlēcta LXXX unā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā frū-
15 mentum sē exiguē diērum xxx habēre, sed paulō etiam longius tolerāre⁷ posse parcendō. His datis mandātis, quā nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dimittit; frūmentum omne ad sē referri iubet; capitis poenam eis quī nōn paruerint cōstituit; pecus, cuius magna
20 erat cōpia ā Mandubiis compulsā, viritim distribuit; frūmentum parcē et paulātīm mētiri instituit; cōpiās omnis quās prō oppidō conlocāverat⁸ in oppidum recipit. His ratiōnibus⁹ auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

Description of Cæsar's Works of Circumvallation.

25 72. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis ex perfugis et captivis Caesar haec genera mūnitiōnis instituit: fossam pedum viginti dirēctis¹⁰ lateribus dūxit, ut ēius fossae solum tantundem

Cf. ¹ prōtinus. — ² opp. aperiri. — ³ init. — ⁴ conquīrant. — ⁵ officia. — ⁶ negligentiōrēs. — ⁷ sustinēre. — ⁸ cōstituerat. — ⁹ modis. — ¹⁰ dirēctē ad perpendiculum.

patēret quantum summa labra distārent. Reliquās omnis
 mūnitiōnēs ab eā fossā pedēs cccc redūxit: [id] hōc cōn-
 siliō (quoniam tantum esset necessariō spatium complexus.
 nec facile tōtum opus corōnā militum cingeretur), nē dē
 imprōvisō aut noctū ad mūnitiōnēs multitudō hostium advo- 5
 lāret, aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs ¹operi dēstinātōs cōnicere
 possent. Hōc intermissō spatiō duās fossās xv pedēs lātās,
 eādem altitūdine perdūxit; quārum interiōrem campestribus
 āc dēmissis ² locis aquā ex flūmine dērivātā ³ complēvit.
 Post eās aggerem āc vāllum xii pedum exstrūxit: huic 10
 lōricam pinnāsque adiēcit, grandibus cervis ēminentibus ad
 commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris, quī ascēsum hostium
 tardārent ⁴; et turrīs tōtō opere circumdedit quae pedēs lxxx
 inter sē distārent.

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriārī et frūmentārī et tan- 15
 tās mūnitiōnēs fierī necesse, dēminūtīs nostris cōpiis, quae
 longius ⁵ ā castris prōgrediēbantur; āc nōn numquam opera
 nostra Galli temptāre ⁶ atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō plūribus
 portis summā vī facere cōnābantur. Quā rē ad haec rūsus
 opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minōre numerō militum 20
 mūnitiōnēs dēfendi possent. Itaque truncis arborum aut
 admodum firmis rāmīs abscisis, atque hōrum dēlibrātīs ⁷ āc
 praeacūtīs cacūminibus, perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs altae
 dūcēbantur. Hūc illi stipitēs dēmissi et ab infimō revincti, ⁸
 nē revelli possent, ab rāmīs ēminēbant. ⁹ Quīnī erant ōrdi- 25
 nēs coniūcti inter sē atque implicāti; quō quī intrāverant, ¹⁰
 sē ipsi acūtissimis vāllis induēbant. ¹¹ Hōs cippōs appellā-
 bant. Ante hōs obliquis ōrdinibus in quīncūncem dispo-
 sitis scrobēs in altitūdinem trium pedum fodiēbantur paulātim
 angustiore ad infimum ¹² fastigiō. Hūc teretēs stipitēs femi- 30
 nis crassitūdine ab summō praeacūti et praeūsti dēmittēban-

Cf. ¹ in opere occupātōs. — ² humilibus. — ³ dēductā. — ⁴ impedi-
 rent. — ⁵ opp. propius. — ⁶ adoriri. — ⁷ exūtis. — ⁸ infixi. — ⁹ exstā-
 bant. — ¹⁰ opp. exierant. — ¹¹ trānsfodiēbantur. — ¹² opp. summum.

- tur, ita ut nōn amplius digitis III ex terrā¹ ēminērent; simul cōfirmandi et stabiliendi causā singuli ab infimō solō pedēs terrā exculcābantur; reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandās² insidiās vīminibus ac virgultis integēbātur.
- 5 Hūius generis octōni ōdinēs ducti ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id ex similitūdine flōris liliū appellābant. Ante haec tāleae pedem longae ferreis hāmis infixis tōtae in terram infodiēbantur,³ mediocribusque intermissis spatiis omnibus locis disserēbantur, quōs stimulōs nōminābant.
- 10 74. Hīs rēbus perfectis, regiōnēs secūtus quam potuit aequissimās⁴ prō loci nātūrā, xiv milia passuum complexus paris⁵ ēiusdem generis mūnitiōnēs, dīversās ab hīs, contrā exteriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē māgnā quidem multitūdine [si ita accidat⁶ ēius discessū], mūnitiōnum praesidia circum-
- 15 fundi⁷ possent; nē autem cum periculō ex castris ēgredi cōgātur, diērum xxx pābulum frūmentumque habēre omnis convectum⁸ iubet.

Levy of Troops from All Gaul for the Relief of Alesia.

75. Dum haec apud Alesiam geruntur, Galli conciliō prīncipum indictō nōn omnis quī arma ferre possent, ut cēnsuit
- 20 Vercingetorix, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique civitāti imperandum; nē tantā multitūdine cōnfusā nec moderārī⁹ nec discernere suōs nec frūmentandī ratiōnem habere possent. Imperant Haeduīs atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiāvis, Ambivaretis, Aulercis, Brannovicibus, [Blanno-
- 25 viis,] milia xxxv; parem numerum Arvernīs, adiūctis Eleutetis, Cadūrcis, Gabalīs, Vellāviis, quī sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse cōnsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturigibus, Santonīs, Rutēnis, Carnutibus duodēna milia; Bellovacīs x; totidem Lemovicibus; octōna Pictonibus et Turonīs

Cf. ¹ solō. — ² opp. patefaciendās. — ³ dēmittēbantur. — ⁴ opp. iniquissimās. — ⁵ similis. — ⁶ fiat. — ⁷ circumveniri. — ⁸ comportātum. — ⁹ continēre, regere.

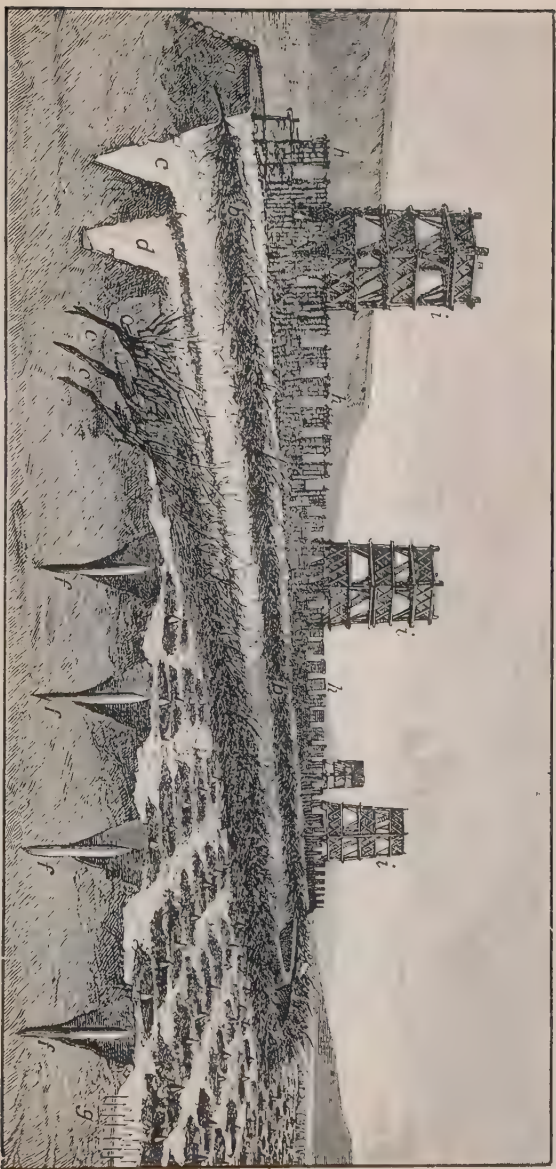


FIG. 97.—VIEW OF CAESAR'S LINE OF WORKS BEFORE ALESIA.

a, vallum; *b*, cervi; *c*, fossa; *d*, fossa cum aqua; *e*, clipei; *f*, lilia; *g*, stimuli; *h*, pinnac; *i*, turres; *k*, lorica.

et Parisiis et Helvëtiis; sēna Andibus, Ambiānis, Mediomatricis, Petrocoriis, Nervii, Morinis, Nitiobrigibus; quina milia Aulercis Cēnomānis; totidem Atrebātibus; IIII Velio-
 5 cassis; [Lexoviis, et] Aulercis Eburovicibus III; Rauracis et
 quaeque eōrum cōsuētūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō
 sunt in numerō Coriosolites, Redones, Ambibarii, Caletes,
 Osismi, Veneti, Lexovii, Venelli. Ex his Bellovaci suum
 numerum nōn contulerunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbi-
 10 triō cum Rōmānis bellum gestūrōs dicerent, neque cuius-
 quam imperiō obtemperātūrōs¹; rogāti tamen ā Commiō
 prō ēius hospitiō duo milia misērunt. ◊

The Gauls under Commius Approach Alesia with High Hopes.

76. Hūius operā Commi, ut antea dēmōstrāvimus, fidēli
 atque ūtili superiōribus annis erat ūsus in Britannia Caesar;
 15 prō quibus meritis civitatem ēius immūnem² esse iusserat,
 iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsi Morinōs attribuerat.
 Tanta tamen ūniversae Galliae cōnsēnsiō³ fuit libertātis vin-
 dicandae et pristinae belli laudis⁴ recuperandae ut neque
 beneficiis neque amicitiae memoriā movērētur, omnēsque et
 20 animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent.⁵ Coāctis equi-
 tum milibus VIII et peditum circiter CCL, haec in Haeduōrum
 finibus recēnsēbantur, numerusque inibātur, praefecti⁶ cōn-
 stituēbantur; Commiō Atrebāti, Viridomārō et Eporēdorigi
 Haeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōnsobrīnō Vercinge-
 25 torigis, summa imperi trāditur. His dēlēcti ex civitatibus
 attribuuntur quōrum cōnsiliō bellum administrārētur. Om-
 nēs alacrēs et fidūciae plēni ad Alesiam proficiscuntur;
 neque erat omnium quisquam quī adspectum modo tantae
 multitudinis sustinēri posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipiti
 30 proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne pūgnārētur, foris tantae
 cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.⁷

Cf. ¹ concessūrōs. — ² opp. stipendiāriam. — ³ opp. dissēnsiō. —
⁴ glōriae. — ⁵ insisterent. — ⁶ ducēs. — ⁷ cōnspicerentur.



FIG. 98.—STATUE OF VERCINGETORIX.

A Council is Held in Alesia. Speech of Critognatus and his Desperate Proposal.

77. At eī quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā auxilia suōrum expectāverant, cōsūptō omni frūmentō, inscii¹ quid in Haeduis gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū suārum fortunārum cōsultābant. Āc variis² dictis sententiis, quarum pars dēditionem, pars, dum virēs suppetere³, ēruptionem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda⁴ ōrātiō Critōgnātī vidētur propter ēius singulārem āc nefāriam crudelitatem.⁵

Hic summō in Arvernīs ortus⁶ locō et māgnae habitus auctoritātis: “Nihil,” inquit, “dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum
10 quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditionis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs civium locō neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnsēō. Cum his mihi rēs est quī ēruptionem probant; quōrum in cōsiliō omnium vestrum cōsēnsū pristinae residere⁷ virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animī est ista mollitia,
15 nōn virtūs, paulisper inopiam⁸ ferre⁹ nōn posse. Quī sē ultrō mortī offerant facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem (tantum apud mē dignitās potest), sī nūllam praeterquam vitae nostrae iactūram fieri vidērem; sed in cōsiliō capi-
20 endō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus.¹⁰ Quid, hominum milibus LXXX ūnō locō interfectis, propinquis cōsanguineisque nostris animī¹¹ fore existimātis, sī paene in ipsis cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre quī vestrae
25 salūtis causā suum periculum neglēxērunt; nec stultitiā āc temeritāte¹² vestrā, aut animī imbēcillitāte, omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere. An, quod ad diem nōn vēnerunt, dē eōrum fidē cōstantiāque¹³ dubitātis?

Cf. ¹ ignōrantēs. — ² diversis. — ³ superessent. — ⁴ praetermittenda. — ⁵ opp. clēmētiā. — ⁶ nātus. — ⁷ manēre. — ⁸ opp. cōpiā. — ⁹ tolerāre. — ¹⁰ convocāvimus. — ¹¹ fortitūdinis. — ¹² opp. prūdentiā. — ¹³ opp. imbēcillitāte.

Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illis ulteriōribus mūnitiōnibus animine¹ causā cotidiē exercēri putātis? Si illōrum nūntiis cōfirmārī nōn potestis omni aditū praeseptō, his ūtimini testibus adpropinquāre eōrum adventum; cūius rei timōre exterriti diem noctemque in opere versantur.

5

“Quid ergō mei cōsili est? Facere quod nostrī māiōrēs nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; qui in oppida compulsī ac simili inopiā subāctī, eōrum corporibus quī aetate ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur vitam tolerāvērunt, neque sē hostibus trādidērunt.² Cūius rei sī exemplum nōn 10 habērēmus, tamen libertātis causā institui et posteris prōdi pulcherrimum iūdicārem. Nam quid illi simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā Cimbri, māgnāque inlātā calamitāte, finibus quidem nostris aliquandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, libertātem nōbis reliquērunt. 15 Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adductī, quōs fāmā nōbilis potentisque bellō cōgnōvērunt, hōrum in agris civitātibusque cōsidere atque his aeternam³ iniungere⁴ servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt. Quod si ea quae in longinquis nātiō- 20 nibus geruntur ignōrātis, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātis, secūribus⁵ subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte!”

The Mandubii are Compelled to Leave the Town. Cæsar Declines to Receive them.

78. Sententiis dictis cōstituunt ut ei quī valētūdine aut aetate inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant,⁶ atque omnia 25 prius experiantur⁷ quam ad Critōgnāti sententiam dēscendant: illō tamen potius ūtendum⁸ cōsiliō, si rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subeundam condiciōnem. Mandubii, quī eōs oppidō recēperant,

Cf. ¹ voluptātis. — ² dēdidērunt. — ³ perpetuam. — ⁴ impōnere. — ⁵ imperiō Rōmānō. — ⁶ exeant. — ⁷ temptent. — ⁸ opp. omittendum.

cum liberis atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hī cum ad mūnitiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositis in vāllō custōdiis recipi prohibēbat.

Arrival of Commius with the Army of Relief. Joy of the Besieged.

5 79. Intereā Commius reliquique ducēs,¹ quibus summa imperi permissa² erat, cum omnibus cōpiis ad Alesiam perveniunt, et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn longius mille passibus ā nostris mūnitiōnibus cōsidunt. Posterō diē equitatū ex castris ēductō omnem eam plānitiam, quam in longitūdi-
10 nem milia passuum III patēre dēmōnstrāvimus, complent; pedestrisque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās in locis superiōribus cōstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxiliis visis³; fit grātulatiō inter eōs atque omnium animi ad laetitiam excitantur. Ita-
15 que prōductis cōpiis ante oppidum consistunt, et proximam fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere⁴ explent, sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnis cāsūs comparant.

A Fierce Engagement Takes Place in the Valley. The Gauls are Defeated.

80. Caesar omni exercitū ad utramque partem mūnitiōnum dispositō, ut, si ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat⁵
20 et nōverit, equitatum ex castris ēdūci et proelium committi iubet. Erat ex omnibus castris, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus; atque omnēs militēs intenti pūgnae prōventum⁶ exspectābant. Galli inter equitēs rārōs⁷ sagittariōs expeditōsque levis armātūrae interiēceraut, qui
25 suis cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab his complūrēs dē imprōvisō volnerātī proeliō excēdēbant. Cum suōs pūgnā superiōrēs esse

Cf. ¹ praefecti. — ² commissa. — ³ cōspectis. — ⁴ terrā. — ⁵ opp. dēserat. — ⁶ ēventum. — ⁷ opp. dēnsōs.

Galli cōfiderent¹ et nostrōs multitudine premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et eī quī mūnitiōnibus continēbantur et eī quī ad auxilium convēnerant clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōfirmābant. Quod in cōspectū omnium rēs gerēbatur, neque rēctē ac turpiter factum cēlārī² poterat; utrōsque 5



FIG. 99. — LIGHT-ARMED SOLDIER.



FIG. 100. — ARCHER.

et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad virtutem excitābat. Cum ā meridiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pūgnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōnfertis turmīs in hostis inpetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt. Quibus in fugam coniectis sagittārii circumventi interfectique sunt. Item ex 10 reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdentis ūsque ad castra insecūti sui conligendi facultātem nōn dedērunt. At eī quī Alesiā prō-

Cf. ¹ crēderent. — ² occultārī.

cesserant, maesti¹ prope victoriā dēspērātā sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

The Gauls Make a Night Attack.

81. Ūnō diē intermissō Gallī atque hōc spatiō māgnō crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō, mediā nocte
5 silentiō ex castris ēgressi ad campestris mūnitiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā significātiōne quī in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū cōgnōscere possent, crātis prōicere, fundis, sagittis, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre,² reliquaue quae ad oppūgnātiōnem pertinent
10 parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore clāmōre exaudītō dat tubā signum suis Vercingetorix atque ex oppidō ēdūcit. Nostri, ut superiōribus diēbus suis cuique erat locus attribūtus, ad mūnitiōnēs accēdunt; fundis librilibus, sudibusque quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallōs prōterrent.
15 Prōspectū tenebris³ adeptō multa utrimque volnera accipiuntur; complūra tormentis tēla coniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvenerant, quā ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex ulteriōribus castellis dēductōs submittēbant.

They Retire Discomfited.

20 82. Dum longius ā mūnitiōne aberant Gallī, plūs multitudine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteaquam propius successērunt, aut sē stimulis inopinantēs induēbant aut in scrobis dēlāti trāsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turribus trāiecti pilis mūrilibus interibant. Multis undique volneribus acceptis, nūlla
25 mūnitiōne perruptā, cum lūx adpeteret,⁴ veriti nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castris ēruptiōne circumvenīrentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs, dum ea quae ā Vercingetorige ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent; diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandis morāti,

Cf. ¹ trīstēs. — ² prōpellere. — ³ opp. lūce. — ⁴ adīret.

prius suōs discessisse cōgnōvērunt quam mūnitiōnibus adpropinquārent. Ita rē infectā in oppidum revertērunt.

The Army of Relief Makes Another Attempt.

83. Bis māgnō cum dētrimentō ¹ repulsī Galli quid agant cōsulunt. Locōrum peritōs ² adhibent; ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnitiōnēsque cōgnōscunt. Erat ā septen- 5
triōnibus collis, quem propter māgnitudinem circuitūs ³ opere circumplectī nōn potuerant nostrī; necessariōque paene iniquō locō et lēniter dēclivī castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēginus et C. Caninius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant. Cōgnitis per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus 10
ducēs hostium LX milia ex omnī numerō dēligunt, eārum cīvitatū quae māximam virtūtis opiniōnem habēbant; quid quōque pactō agī placeat occultē inter sē cōstituunt; adeundī tempus dēfiniunt cum meridiēs esse videātur. Hīs cōpiis Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex IIII ducibus, 15
propinquum Vercingetorigis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castris primā vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōfectō sub lūcem itinere, post montem sē occultāvit militesque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam meridiēs adpropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra quae suprā dēmōstrāvimus contendit; 20
eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestris mūnitiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castris sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

Vercingetorix Coöperates. Difficulties of the Romans.

84. Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suōs cōspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur: crātis, longuriōs, mūsculōs, falcis, reliquae quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat prōfert. Pūgnātur ūnō 25
tempore omnibus locis atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē visa pars firma est hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantis mūnitiōnibus distīnētur nec facile plūribus locis occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor, qui post

Cf. ¹ caede. — ² opp. imperitōs. — ³ circumvallāre.

tergum pūgnantibus exstitit, quod suum periculum in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae absunt vehementius hominum mentīs perturbant.

Fighting Continues with Energy on Both Sides.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus quid quāque ex parte
 5 gerātur cōgnōscit; labōrantibus *subsidiū* submittit. Utrisque ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus quō māximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnitiōnēs, dē omni salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium exspectant. Māximē ad superiōrēs mūnitiōnēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrā-
 10 vimus. Inīquum locī ad dēclivitātem fastigium māgnū habet mōmentum. Aliī tēla cōniciunt, aliī testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatigātis in vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversis in mūnitiōnem coniectus et ascēsum dat Gallis,
 15 et ea quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī contegit; nec iam arma nostrīs nec virēs suppetunt.

Cæsar Personally Encourages his Troops.

86. His rēbus cōgnitis Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus
 VI subsidiō labōrantibus mittit. Imperat, sī sustinēre non possit, dēductis cohortibus ēruptiōne pūgnet; id nisi neces-
 20 sariō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs; cohortātur nē labōri succumbant; omnium superiōrum dīmiciātiōnum fructum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōsistere. Interiōrēs, dēspērātis campestribus locis propter māgnitūdinem mūnitiōnum, loca praeupta [ex] ascēnsū temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant
 25 cōferunt. Multitūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpūgnantis dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum āc lōricam rescindunt.

His Activity in Various Parts of the Field.

87. Mittit primum Brūtum adulēscētem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse,

cum vehementius pūgnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō āc repulsis hostibus, eō quō Labiēnum miserat contendit; cohortis IIII ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequi, partem circumire exteriōrēs mūnitiōnēs et ā tergō hostis adoriri iubet. Labiēnus, postquam 5 neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctis XL cohortibus, quās ex proximis praesidiis dēductās fors obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem quid faciendum existimet. Accelerat Caesar ut proeliō intersit.

Utter Defeat of the Gauls with Great Slaughter.

88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestitūs cōgnitō, [quō insigni 10 in proeliis ūti cōsuērat], turmisque equitum et cohortibus visis quās sē sequi iusserat, ut dē locis superiōribus haec dēclivia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō excipit rūrsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnitiōnibus clāmor. Nostri omissis pilis gladiis rem 15 gerunt. Repente post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae adpropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt; fit māgna caedēs. Sedulius, dux et princeps Lemovicum, occiditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vivus in fugā comprehenditur; signa militāria LXXIII ad 20 Caesarem referuntur; pauci ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōspicāti ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum, dēspērātā salūte, cōpiās ā mūnitiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus hāc rē auditā ex castris Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crēbris subsidiis āc tōtius diēi labōre militēs essent 25 dēfessi, omrēs hostium cōpiae dēlēri potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōsequitur: māgnus numerus capitur atque interficitur; reliquī ex fugā in cīvitatīs discēdunt.

Vercingetorix Surrenders.

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx conciliō convocātō id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum sed commūnis libertātis causā dēmōnstrat; et quoniam sit fortūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illis offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānis satisfacere seu vivum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē his rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, principēs prōdūci. Ipse in mūnitiōne prō castris cōsidit; eō ducēs prōducuntur. Vercingetorix dēditur; arma prōiciuntur. Reservātis Haeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs civitātis recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captivīs tōti exercitui capita singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

Cæsar's Distribution of his Forces for the Winter. A Twenty Days' Thanksgiving Decreed at Rome.

90. His rēbus cōfectis in Haeduōs proficiscitur; civitatem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missi quae imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat māgnū numerum obsidum. 15 Legiōnēs in hiberna mittit; captivōrum circiter xx milia Haeduīs Arvernisque reddit. T. Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs proficisci iubet; huic M. Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium Basilum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs 20 conlocat, nē quam ā finitimis Bellovacis calamitatem accipiant. C. Antistium Rēginum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in Biturīgēs, C. Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnōs, cum singulis legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cabillōnī et Matiscōne in Haeduīs ad Ararim rei frūmentāriae causā conlocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōstituit.

His rēbus ex Caesaris litteris cōgnitis Romae diērum vīginti supplicatiō redditur.

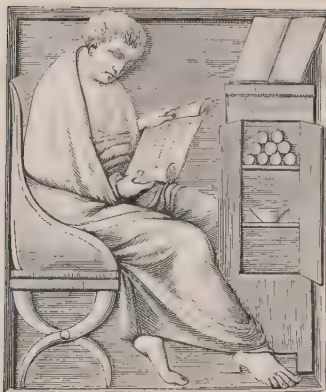


FIG. 101. — YOUTH READING.

NOTES.

N.B. References to the text are made by pages and lines. The Grammars cited are those of Allen & Greenough (§), Bennett (B.), Gildersleeve (G.), and Harkness (H.). Cf. (*confer*) = compare; sc. (*scilicet*) = supply; ff. = and following.

I. STORIES, FABLES, AND LETTERS.

No. 1. This letter, it will be noticed, has no introductory address corresponding to our 'Dear Sir' or the like.

1 1 *si tu vales*, etc.: in Cicero's time formal letters usually began with this expression, generally abbreviated to the initial letters S. V. B. E. E. V. See No. 29, p. 24.

1 2 *laetus*: the Latin has a tendency to use an adjective modifying the subject instead of an adverb modifying the verb. Of course if one does a thing 'gladly,' he is himself 'glad' in doing it. — *consilio*: abl. of cause.

1 3 *nives*: the Latin often uses the plural of words not apparently having a plural, conceiving the thing as divided into parts or instances. So here each 'snow bank' is a separate *nix*.

1 4 *nivem*: here the sing. is used because of the negative idea in *raro*. A denial of any one case is sufficient for all. — *ut est apud*: this

expression (used only of persons) is the stock way of speaking of a person's writings, like 'as Milton has it.'

1 5 caelum : subj. of *ridet*.

1 8 sitas, *lying*. Notice the changes of idiom which are necessary in turning Latin into English. This word, the participle of *sino*, *put* or *leave*, is the regular word for 'situated,' 'lying,' as on tombs, '*hic situs est*,' *here lies*. — *linguam*, etc. : do not translate literally and say 'the modern language of the Italians,' but simply *Italian*, according to our mode of speech.

1 10 finem faciam : simply *will end*, making it natural English. — *epistulae* : dat., indir. object.

1 11 vive valeque : again a stereotyped expression, here of adieu, wishing long life and health — *Good-by and good luck to you*.

2 1 No. 2. gallorum certamina, *cockfights*, the proper English expression, not 'contests of cocks,' as the Latin has it.

2 2 autem, *now*. This particle sets off one statement against another, — what is called an adversative, — ranging all the way from 'on the other hand' to 'furthermore,' or 'now,' where the opposition is very slight. — *bello Persico* : the Romans treated wars and the like as epochs, and so used the constructions of time where we say 'in the war.'

2 4 dimicantis : pres. partic. agreeing with *gallos*.

2 5 et hanc orationem habuit, *and spoke as follows*. Note again the difference in idiom.

2 8 nec : the Latin puts a negative and connective together wherever it is possible ; so here, the Latin says 'nor' where we should say *and . . . not*.

2 9 qua, instead of *hac*, to connect more closely with the preceding sentence.

2 10 consilio : cf. **1 2**.

2 11 No. 3. e : we should say *in*. To the Romans the pleasure came 'out of' the shows.

2 12 qua : cf. **2 9** and note. — *tam*, *so much*. The word really modifies *cernebatur*, while the verb is understood again with *quam*, *as*. The statement here (a modern one) is very far from the truth. The gladiators were more carefully protected by armor than the knights of the Middle Ages, were the idols of the people, and very often obtained their discharge and freedom.

2 13 ingenium, indoles : subs. of *cernebatur*. — *primo* : adv. opposed to *postea*.

2 14 exsequias : in fact the fights were originally an amelioration of human sacrifices to the spirits of slain warriors.

2 16 magistratum petebant, *were candidates for office*. For this idea *peto* was the technical word. — *spectaculis* : abl. of means.

2 17 *hoc consilio, for this purpose*; cf. **1 2**, **2 10**.

3 1 *alebant*: the regular word for *kept*; cf. the provincial expression, 'a horse's keep.'—*paria*: a noun. Regularly the gladiators fought in pairs and not promiscuously.

3 2 *gregi*: dat. after *adscribebantur*; cf. *spectaculis*, below, l. 7.

3 3 *nomina profitebantur*: the regular expression for *volunteered*.

3 4 *varia*, etc.: the Romans especially delighted in cross matches of men armed with entirely different arms, whose tactics were utterly unlike. The cut gives an ancient picture of a heavy armed warrior pitted against one armed only with net and trident.

3 9 *morituri, the doomed*, as we should say. In Latin almost any adjective or participle may become a noun, either from its original force, as 'the blacks' in English, or by the omission of a noun used with it, as *hiberna* (sc. *castra*), *winter quarters*.

3 10 No. **4**. *onustos*: plur., because agreeing with both *equum* and *asinum*. In Latin a word belonging in agreement with two others may in form agree with one and be understood with the other, or be adapted so far as possible to both; cf. *cernebatur*, **2 12**.

3 11 *ut . . . levaret*: a clause expressing a request, command, or any similar idea regularly has *ut* (neg. *ne*) with the subjv. mood. Our form is commonly the infin., 'ask one to do something,' rarely the more formal 'that one should,' or colloquially 'if one would'; § 331; B. 295-6; G. 546; H. 498. I.—*parte*: remember that the case of depriving, etc., is the abl. where we use 'of'; § 243. *a*; B. 214; G. 390. 2; H. 414. I.—*se*: referring, as usual, to the subject of the main proposition; not 'himself,' but *him*; § 196. *a*. 2; B. 244. II; G. 520, 521; H. 449. I.

3 14 *omnibus sarcinis atque pelle*: abl. of means. In this, the first distorted sentence in these stories, learn once for all how to go to work to read Latin easily.—*omnibus*: this form may be either dat. or abl.; if the former, it would refer to persons; if the latter, it would ordinarily (with one great exception,—the abl. abs.) refer to things. As there are no persons in question, it must almost certainly be abl. Furthermore, if it refers to things, it cannot be used as a noun, for only adjectives obviously neuter in form are used as neuter nouns. If it may be either masculine or feminine, it is regularly one of these. So we may assume that it does not refer to persons and that it is not a subst., but belongs to some noun to come after in the abl. The relations expressed by the abl. are *with*, *from*, *in*, or *by*, and, bearing this in mind, we may go on. The relative clause (from its position) obviously belongs to the same coming noun. Though we do not say 'all the, which, etc., things,' yet we can easily see how natural such an expression might be. We shall find later that it is extremely common in

Latin. The noun *sarcinis* completes the phrase, except as to the exact meaning of the abl., but we may already suspect that it is 'with' from the nature of the whole proceeding, and this suspicion is confirmed by *oneravit*. It might seem easier to follow the English order and jump at once to *oneravit*, as we usually want to do; but that process is an almost insuperable hindrance in learning to read Latin with ease, while the way suggested may be made a habit in a week, and then you are actually reading the language as the Romans read it and on the high road to your goal. See *Directions for Reading*, p. 139.

3 15 *ei*: depending on *detracta*, *off from*; cf. *gregi*, 3 2.

3 16 *inquit*: the regular word with a direct quotation and always standing, as here, after some few words of the quotation; cf. 'Yes, said he.'

3 17 *obtemperavisset*: this is the 'contrary to fact' construction, where a false supposition is purposely made, and the statement is made of what would happen (or would have happened) in that case. Our form is 'If I had yielded (as I did not), I should have,' etc. See § 308; B. 304; G. 597; H. 510.

3 18 *gravissimum*, *a very heavy one*. It is unnecessary in Latin to repeat a noun if there is anything to show its construction, as here the adjective; nor is any pronoun necessary to refer to it, as we do by 'one.'

3 21 No. 5. *Cranone in Thessalia*: notice that the name of the country takes a preposition, while the name of the town rejects it. — *apud*, *at the house of*; cf. *apud*, 1 3.

3 22 *pugilum certamine*, *boxing-match*; see example of idiom above, 2 1.

3 23 *summō gaudio*, *to the great delight*: abl. of manner.

3 24 *in laudem*: the Latin should mean 'into,' etc., but our idiom is *in praise of*, etc. — *pio animo*, *piously* or *with a feeling of piety*. The word *pius* denotes a feeling of duty or reverence towards gods or men as fathers, protectors, patrons, or the like.

3 27 *improbavit*, *didn't like*. The word properly means 'disapproved,' but here, referring only to a secret judgment, it must be rendered differently.

4 1 *dimidium*, *only half*; emphatic by position and contrasted with *reliquum* in the next line.

4 3 *postulabis*, *you must claim*. The future often has in many languages the force of a command; § 278. *a*; G. 243; H. 487. 4.

4 5 *nuntio*: cf. construction of *illi*, 3 17.

4 6 *iam vero*, *but just then*.

4 10 No. 6. *domestici*, *members of the family*, including slaves.

4 11 *atrio*: a large rectangular room opening from the entrance hall. In early times it served as the common living room and kitchen. — *una*: an adverb.

4 12 **domino**: we should say *of the master*. The dat. is often so used in Latin.

4 13 **re vera**, *properly*. The meaning of **triclinium** was extended so as to mean the room instead of the couch.

4 17 **altera**: sc. **pars**.

4 18 **Romanis**, etc., *there was a proverb among the Romans or the Romans had a proverb*.

4 19 **ovo**: as a part of the **gustus**, or first course. — **mala**: as a part of the dessert. — **cenam**: when, as here, the object comes first, it is convenient both in reading and translating to change the voice, making the object subject and turning the subject into the agent: *The dinner was served by*, etc.

5 1 No. 7. **pedibus**: we say *on foot*; in Latin abl. of means.

5 2 **adeuntis**, *those that met him*; the pres. partic. of **adeo** used substantively; cf. **morituri**, 3 9. — **excipiebat, convenit**: notice the difference of tense. The first refers to a custom, the second to a single event; the first is descriptive, the second narrative.

5 3 **in ius vocatus est**, *had been summoned to court*.

5 5 **patronum**, *advocate*, the regular word. — **eum**: subj. of **comitari**.

5 6 **at, well!** used, as often, to introduce an emphatic or indignant remonstrance.

5 11 No. 8. **ut videris**, *as it seems*, in English. The Latin says preferably 'as you seem,' i.e. to live.

5 12 **licet . . . venias**, *you may come*; lit. 'it is permitted that you should come.' The idiom is a common one in Latin; see § 331. *i*; B. 295. 6; G. 553. 3. 4; H. 501. I. 1.

5 13 **felicitate**: abl. with **fruaris**; § 249; B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 421. I.

5 15 **num . . . sustines**, *you don't bear . . . do you?* the form of question which expects the answer 'no.' **Num** regularly has this force.

5 18 **vestigia**, *marks*. — **cervici**: dat. with **circumdari**; § 225. *d*; B. 187. I. *a*; G. 348. R. 1; H. 384. II. 2.

6 2 **nihil moror**, *I don't care for*.

6 4 No. 9. **e quibus**, *of them*. The Latin often uses a relative merely as a connective instead of a demonstrative. Here **e quibus cum unus = et cum unus ex his**, but the former is preferred as making a closer connection with the preceding sentence; cf. 2 9 and note. — **offendisset**: the subjv. here with **cum** is idiomatic and has no special force which needs expression in English.

6 6 **tamen**: this word is always opposed to some concession expressed or implied. Here it is, 'Though the lion was angry and was just going to eat the mouse, nevertheless he spared the little creature's life in answer to

his prayers.' Do not translate such expressions mechanically, but get the thought from the Latin and express it in good English. — **oranti**: i.e. 'to him begging.' Ordinarily no pronoun of reference (he, she, etc.) is necessary in Latin if there is any word present which shows the construction. Here the pronoun would be **ei**, but **oranti** shows the case without it.

6 7 non satis caute: the ways of expressing manner are various in all languages and very often do not correspond in particular cases. Here the Latin says 'not cautiously enough,' a form we should hardly use. Find some form in English that would say the same thing.

6 8 in venatoris, etc.: in reading this, notice that while the order is just the reverse of our most common way, yet it is very common in poetry and even in lively conversation, as 'Into the woods went he.'

6 9 rugiebat: observe again, as in **5 2**, the imperfect of description here preceded and followed by narrative perfects.

6 10 cum spectavisset, *having seen*; for mood, cf. **offendisset**, **l. 4**, above.

6 12 deberet: the subjv. here is idiomatic and does not correspond to our English forms. It merely indicates that what is said was the thought of the mouse and not merely the fact. — **grato animo**: abl. of manner.

6 13 omni periculo: abl. of separation; cf. **aliqua parte**, **3 11**.

6 14 reportavit: this means 'carried off,' as we say 'carried off the prize.' But as we should translate **praemium** by *reward*, with which we should not use 'carried off,' we must translate by some weaker word, like *received* or the like.

6 16 No. 10. sita erat: see note on **sitas**, **1 8**. — **divitiis et luxuria**: these words tell in what respect the Sybarites excelled the Corinthians; § 253; B. 226; G. 397; H. 424.

7 1 bellicam, *of war*. The Latin is very fond of possessive and descriptive adjectives, for which we substitute phrases, as here.

7 2 vacabant, *gave up their time to*. The word properly means 'have leisure' or 'enjoy leisure.'

7 3 ad numerum, *to the music*.

7 4 saltarent: the subjv. with **ut** here expresses the result of the preceding — the regular Latin construction. The modal idea disappears in English; § 319 and R.; B. 284; G. 551, 552; H. 500. II. N. 1. — **sciebant**, etc., *this was known to their neighbors of Crotona*. The Latin form, 'the neighboring Crotonians knew this,' would be awkward in English. Always have these changes in mind in translating.

7 5 cum gererent, *while carrying on*. See notes on **offendisset**, **6 4**, and **spectavisset**, **6 10**, above. The construction of **cum** with the subjv. is one of the most difficult in the language, but the difficulty is lessened if

we remember that **cum** with the subjv. never strictly expresses time, though it is the common word for 'when.' It is descriptive and expresses circumstances or occasions and the like. These may be introduced by 'when' in English, but oftener we use some other construction, as the pres. partic. or 'while.'

7 6 tubas . . . tibus: the first was of brass, and a warlike instrument; the second was of wood, and used for festival occasions.

7 7 quam . . . pugnabatur, as long as the fighting was at long range. The passive impersonal use of **pugno**, as here, 'it was fought,' is idiomatic and should never be literally translated.

7 8 illi: i.e. the musicians. — **res:** the translation of this word always requires care. It may mean anything suggested by the context and should be translated accordingly. Here we might say *battle, conflict, engagement*, or the like.



FIG. 102.—FLUTE PLAYER.

7 9 numeros, etc.: i.e. dance music, as opposed to the exciting martial strains of brass. — **saltandum:** a gerund with **ad**, expressing purpose.

7 10 cum . . . coeperunt: a different use of **cum** from that in l. 5. With the ind. it may always be translated *when*, and expresses *time* rather than description or circumstance. — **tamquam . . . essent,** as if they were, i.e. 'they acted as (they would) if they were.' The conclusion in this construction is always omitted. See §.312. R. and N.; B. 307; G. 602; H. 513. II.

7 11 dominis: cf. note on **domino**, above, 4 12.

7 13 No. 11. Actiacam, of Actium. The Latin has a fondness for adjectives instead of prepositional phrases, and the former are often to be translated by the latter; cf. note on **bellicam**, 7 1. Actium is a promontory and city on the west coast of Acarnania, in northwestern Greece. It is especially famous for the great naval victory of Augustus, then known as Octavianus, over the combined forces of Antony and Cleopatra, B.C. 31. — **quā:** expresses means.

7 14 superato Antonio: this construction, called the ablative absolute, is one of the most common and characteristic of the Latin language. It is developed from the abl. expressing time or place and describes the circumstances under which the main action takes place. Here these circumstances are that 'Antony was conquered.' This had been an act of Augustus, and so we may say in English *having conquered Antony*, with a natural change

of voice. Many other instances will occur for which a different rendering is necessary. — **anno**, etc.: this form of date is of course modern, but agrees with Latin idiom. Translate *in the year 31 before Christ*. Notice, however, that the Latin words mean ‘in the thirty-first year’ and ‘the birth of Christ,’ forms of expression which we do not use for a simple date. — **ante Christum natum**: lit. ‘before Christ born.’

7 15 principatum: this word, meaning properly ‘headship,’ ‘primacy,’ ‘first place,’ cannot be translated by such words, because in this case it implies more than these. We may say *complete control*, or *supreme power (over)*. It often happens that a word in English which seems to correspond to a Latin one cannot be used for it, because words often *imply* ideas that they do not directly *express*. — **occupavit**, *seized*: it means ‘occupy’ only in the military sense of that word. Be careful about translating Latin words by the English words they resemble. Words have changed their meanings in 2000 years.

7 16 triumphanti: translate *in his triumph*, though it is really a partic. This word, agreeing with **illi**, refers to the technical triumph in which the victorious general entered the city, riding in a four-horse chariot at the head of his troops, with the spoils of war and everything to make a splendid pageant. See Fig. 14. — **illi**: notice that the dat. is the regular case after many verbs compounded with prepositions, which seem to us transitive; cf. **illi**, **3 17**. — **quidam**, *a man*. It is implied that his personality is known, as in Biblical ‘one,’ ‘a certain,’ which we now rarely use in that sense. — **gratulantis**: observe that adjectives and participles are often used as nouns, especially in the plural; cf. **adeuntis**, **5 2**.

7 17 ut diceret, *to say*; cf. note on **ut levaret**, **3 11**. — **imperator**: this word is untranslatable and is best rendered by transferring the Latin word itself, as with ‘consul’ and the like.

7 18 miratus: translate by the pres. partic., which is the usual English way in such cases. This partic., being deponent, is of course active in meaning. — **officiosam**, *polite and respectful*. The termination **-osus** makes adjectives expressing ‘full of.’ **officium** often means ‘a mark of respect’ or ‘respectful politeness’; hence the adjective properly means ‘full of these,’ i.e. ‘inclined to show them.’ — **milibus**: the price. We say ‘bought for’; the Latin, ‘bought *by*.’ Hence the abl. is the regular case; see § 252; B. 225; G. 404; II. 422. — **sestertium**: gen. plur., the regular construction with ‘thousands.’ Notice that we generally make the words agree — ‘twenty thousand men.’ The sesterce was not a coin, but a unit of account, like a British pound sterling. It was worth about five cents of our money.

7 19 salutatus: cf. translation of **miratus**, above, but note that this verb is not deponent.

7 20 *animadversa*: cf. note above on *Antonio superato*, l. 14, and see § 255. *d. N.*; *B.* 227. 2; *G.* 410; *H.* 431. 1. 2.

7 22 *ut . . . institueret*: the regular construction for expressing a purpose where we usually say 'to' or 'in order to,' as 'to instruct.'

7 24 *exclamabant*: the imperf., as often, expressing a customary action; cf. *excipiebat*, **5 2**.

7 26 *suum illud*, *his lesson*. The Latin often uses indefinite words determined by the context, where we should use descriptive ones.

7 27 *ut . . . venderet*: cf. note on *institueret*, l. 22.

8 1 *audita voce*: cf. note on *arte . . . animadversa*, l. 20.

8 4 *res*: perhaps 'remark'; see note on **7 8**. — *excussit*, *forced*. — *Augusto*: dat. expressing, in the case of persons, the one 'from whom,' the regular Latin construction.

8 5 *ut . . . emeret*: this subjv. is idiomatic in Latin to express result; cf. *ut . . . saltarent*, **7 4**, and note. In English no modal form is required — *that he bought*. Notice that the Latin form for result is the same as for purpose, but these ideas are differently expressed in English. — *tanti*, etc., *for more than he had ever paid for one before*. The genitives *tanti* and *quanti* regularly express indefinite price. The Latin says, 'for so much as he had bought none before.' But we must change the form in translating, as above.

8 8 No. **12**. *superior*, *above*, or *up-stream*. — *inferior*, *below*, or *down-stream*.

8 9 *inquit*: cf. note, **3 16**.

8 12 *rei*, *of the matter*; cf. note, **7 8**. — *initio*: time *when*, expressed by the ablative.

No. **13**. This poetic version of the preceding fable is by Phaedrus, a writer of the Augustan age. We know but little of his life, but it appears that he was brought to Rome as a Greek slave and belonged to Augustus, who set him free. He translated the Greek fables of Æsop into Latin iambic verse. Each line consists of six iambic feet. The iambus consists of a short and a long syllable (⏏ ⏑), with the verse accent on the long syllable. Quantities and verse accent are marked in the text.

8 18 *fauce*: lit. 'gullet.' We may imitate *improba fauce* by *greedy maw*.

8 21 *laniger*: it is characteristic of poetry to call things by different names from the regular ones; here, *woolly-back*. — *contra*: sc. *inquit*, *said in reply*. The verb of saying is often omitted in reporting a conversation.

8 22 *qui*: here an adv., *how*. — *quod*: sc. *id*. A pronominal antecedent is often omitted when its gender and case are made clear by the form of the relative.

8 23 haustus : lit. 'draughts,' but this would be forced in English, so we may say *lips*.

8 25 ante hos, etc., *six months ago*, a regular idiom in Latin.

8 26 equidem, *why!*

8 27 inquit : cf. note, **3 16**.

8 28 conreptum : sc. *eum*, lit. 'him seized,' but translate *having seized him*. The Latin has no perfect active participle, and often supplies its place with the passive. — **iniusta nece**, *by an unjust death*.

9 2 innocentis : cf. *gratulantis*, **7 16**, and note.

9 3 No. 14. initio : cf. **8 12**.

9 5 instituerunt, *arranged*. Notice that this is the same word that we translated 'teach' in No. 11. It properly means 'set up.' But a person who is taught may be said to be set up or established as a learned person, and hence the word may be used in that sense, as well as in very many others. Cf. 'set up as a philosopher,' or 'as a cobbler.'

9 7 advolarent : cf. *saltarent*, **7 4**, and note.

9 8 quod cum, etc., *when Zeuxis saw this*. The Latin says, 'which when Z. saw,' using the relative where we use a demonstrative. Cf. *qua*, **2 9**, and note. — **videret** : cf. note, **7 5**. — **verum** : notice the emphasis on the first word, 'that it was *real*.'

9 9 occultaretur : this is in the idiomatic indirect discourse. Zeuxis would say 'verum est linteum quo pictura occultatur,' but stated indirectly, as in our clauses with 'that,' *est* becomes *esse*, and *occultatur* becomes subjv. The tense depends upon the past verb *putavit*, and is changed accordingly, as we also change the tense in English; § 336. 2; 336. B; B. 314, 317, 318; G. 650, 654; H. 523, 524, 491 ff. — **agente** : abl. abs., *when Parrhasius did nothing*. Cf. note on **7 14**.

9 10 remoto, *removing*, etc.; cf. preceding note. The Latin is more exact than the English as to tenses. — **tandem** : *finally*, implying impatience at Parrhasius's waiting so long. — **ostenderet** : object-clause of purpose. Cf. *ut . . . levaret*, **3 11**, and note.

9 11 moveret, *that he might remove*, etc. Parrhasius would say 'Tu ipse move.' This, in the indirect discourse, becomes subjv.; § 339; B. 316; G. 652; H. 523. III. In this sentence and the one above we have the whole matter of the Latin indirect discourse, the great bugbear. Thus, *verum esse linteum quo pictura occultaretur*, 'that it was a real curtain by which the picture was concealed'; *ipse moveret*, 'that he should (or to) remove it himself.' If a pupil will commit this to memory, he will have it all in a nutshell. — **cognito** : we may say *learning*; cf. *remoto* above.

9 13 fefellisset : this is also indirect discourse, but less formal. Zeuxis might hand Parrhasius the prize, or concede to him the supremacy, and

say, 'because I have deceived only birds, but you (have deceived) an artist.' This stated by another must take its verb in the subjv., as in the other case. These ten lines are a better lesson in grammar than pages of rules.

9 14 No. 15. *quodam*: almost like the English indefinite article. See note on 7 16.

9 15 *crearetur*: see note on 7 4 and 9 7. — *quod cum*: see note on 2 9 and 9 8.

9 17 *regnum* (subj. of *obtigit*), *regal power, throne, or sceptre*, as our word 'kingdom' is more concrete than *regnum*.

9 18 *te*, *from you*, though the word is acc.; *celo* takes two accusatives, here *te* and *id* understood, the antecedent of *quod*. On the omission of *id*, cf. note, 8 22.

9 19 *tua interest*, *it is for your interest*, an idiomatic construction with *refert* and *interest*. — *quidnam*: an emphatic *quid*, *what in the world?*

9 21 *de vita decedente*, *when dying, or on his deathbed*.

9 22 *qui*: the antecedent is *thesaurus*.

9 23 *laudo*, *I approve, or I thank you for*. — *officiosam*: see note on this word in 7 18.

9 24 *perveniamus*: verbs of effort usually take *ut* with the subjv. Cf. *ut . . . levaret*, 3 11.

9 25 *semitis*: abl. of the way by which.

9 26 *abducebat*, *kept leading, etc.*

9 27 *densa virgulta*, *a dense thicket*, properly the shrubs of which the thicket is composed.

10 1 *dicebat*, *used to say*. Notice that these two imperf. are descriptive, not merely narrative, like the perf. Cf. note, 5 2.

10 2 *penetrabat*: notice the descriptive imperf. again. He started and was on the way, but was stopped by the toils of the hunter.

10 3 *cum imploravisset*, *having, etc.* Cf. note on 7 5. — *sero*, *too late*, an implication which the word almost always has.

10 4 *opus*: pred. acc. after *esse*, as if an adj., *necessary*.

10 5 *saltandi*: gen. of the gerund. — *autem*, *but*, a weak adversative. He has described the monkey's situation, and now turns to the fox on the other hand. Cf. note on 2 2.

10 6 *habetis iam*, etc., freely, *there's your dancing king for you, and much good may he do you*.

10 8 No. 16. *ad ancoram*, etc., *moored, or anchored*.

10 9 *ei*: see note on 3 15.

10 11 *deplorabat*, *proceeded to, began to, etc.* The imperf. here denotes the beginning of an action. — *quas . . . cum*: cf. *quod cum*, 9 8, and note.

10 12 *emersit, rose from the water.* Compare the three compounds of *mergo* in this number.—*quid rei esset, what the matter was.* This construction (called the partitive genitive), where *quid rei* stands instead of *quae res*, is a common idiom of the Latin, especially in colloquial language. The subjv. *esset* has no modal force to be represented in English, but notice the change in order between the direct and the indirect.

10 13 *incauto mihi excidit, etc., I carelessly let fall my axe ;* lit. ‘my axe fell from me incautious.’ Notice the difference in the forms of expression.

10 14 *neque, and . . . not ;* see note, **2 8**.—*quo emam, the wherewithal to buy ;* lit. ‘that wherewith I may buy.’ Technically a purpose-clause, hence the subjunctive.

10 15 *paulo, a little while, abl. of degree of difference.*—*dextra : sc. manu.*—*securim :* for form, see § 56. *b* ; B. 38. 1 ; G. 57. 1 ; H. 62. III.

10 16 *num haec esset ea, whether this was the one,* another indirect question. Cf. *quid rei esset*, above, and note.

11 1 *amisisset : subjv. because in the indirect form.* The direct form would be *haecne est ea quam amisisti ?* ‘is this the one which you have lost ?’ Note carefully the changes in mood and tense, and cf. notes on **9 9**, **11**, and **13**.—*negavit, said no, or not,* the regular meaning of *nego*.

11 3 *ne . . . quidem, not . . . either.*

11 4 *ipsam, very.*

11 5 *laetus : see note on 1 2.*

11 7 *ut locupletaretur : subjv. expressing purpose.*—*fortuna : abl. of means.*

11 8 *sua sponte, on purpose.*

11 9 *eum : i.e. fluvium.*

11 11 *eane : the enclitic -ne asks a question, whether, etc.*—*esset . . . deploraret : subjv., because of the indirect form.* The direct form would be ‘*eane est cuius iacturam deploras ?*’ Cf. note and text, **11 1**.

11 16 No. **17.** *sibi : this pron., depending on adpropinquare, is not required in English ; we should say his death.*

11 18 *quibus adlatis, upon these being brought.* See note on *superato Antonio*, **7 14**.

11 19 *frangerent : see note on 3 11, and cf. ostenderet, 9 10, and perveniamus, 9 24.*—*quod cum, and when . . . this.* Cf. note on **9 8**.

11 20 *singulis singulas, one to each, lit. ‘to single (persons) single rods,’* the regular way of saying this in Latin.—*eis, etc., by their being easily broken,* another use of the abl. abs., here expressing circumstance as means.

11 21 *quam, how.*—*esset : notice that this is the fourth time this form has been used in a question (10 12, 10 16, 11 11).* In each case the

question has not been directly asked, but reported indirectly, 'asked whether,' or the like. The subjv. in such cases is regular in Latin, but no different modal form is used in English; § 334; B. 315; G. 460, 467; H. 529. I. — **cum defenderet**: here again the clause may be translated *when he*, etc., or *when once defending*, etc. Observe that generally **cum** with a past tense expresses circumstance or description, and the mood is subjunctive. English makes no such modal distinction.

11 23 No. 18. Demosthenes: the greatest orator of the Greeks and of the ancient world. He lived in the 4th century B.C., and some of his most famous orations are still extant.

11 25 rem, something. See note, **7 8**.

11 26 narraturo, while I tell. This is a rare and unclassical use of the fut. partic., and is probably imitated from the Greek. — **auditu, to hear**, the latter supine, used only with adjectives. — **ad quae**, etc.: cf. **quas . . . cum**, **10 11**, and note.

12 1 quo . . . veheretur, on which to ride, a purpose-clause. Cf. **quomam, 10 14**. — **Athenis, Megaram**: abl. of the town from which and acc. of the town to which. Cf. note on **Cranone, 3 21**.

12 2 media . . . via, midway.

12 5 obtegeretur: result-clause. So, too, **certarent**, l. 9, below. Cf. note on **saltarent, 7 4**. — **vetabat**: cf. **deplorabat, 10 11**, and note.

12 7 posset: cf. note on **fefellisset, 9 13**.

12 9 in ius ambulant: cf. note on **5 3**.

12 10 ubi . . . vidit: this construction differs from the one with **cum** (cf. note on **7 5**) in denoting time and not circumstance or description. *As soon as*, or the like. The mood is therefore ind., just as in English.

12 12 reliquam, the rest of. Cf. **media via, 12 2**.

12 13 pergeret: object-clause of purpose after **rogatus**. Cf. note, **3 11**. — **libet (sc. vobis), are you glad to?**

12 15 No. 19. Pompeius: Cnæus Pompey the Great, the famous rival of Cæsar, leader of the senatorial party, as Cæsar was of the popular party. Pompey was defeated by Cæsar in the Civil War. — **deposito consilio, abandoning the design.** See note on **7 14**. — **adeundae Syriae, of going to Syria.** In this, the gerundive construction, originally a passive one, the voice must always be changed to fit the English idiom. — **aeris**, here *money*, as we should say 'gold' for money, the Romans using copper.

12 17 milibus: supply **impositis** from **imposito**. — **armatis**: agreeing with **milibus**, though we should take it with **hominum**: lit. 'two armed thousands of men.' This idiomatic use of the gen. after **milia** is regular; cf. the construction of **sestertium, 7 18**.

12 18 aetate: abl. of specification.

12 19 Cleopatra: the famous queen of Egypt who killed herself rather than fall into the hands of Augustus. — **paucis ante mensibus**, *a few months before*, abl. of degree of difference. Cf. **paulo**, **10 15**. In **8 25** there is a different idiom to express the same idea, **ante hos sex menses**.

12 23 Alexandria, into Alexandria. Cf. this with **Athenis** and **Megaram**, **12 1**, and you observe that in the case of towns no preposition is needed, but the abl. is irregular, 'received into or within.' — **reciperetur**: depending on the request implied in **misit**, i.e. 'he sent (to ask).' See note on **levaret**, **3 11**. Remember that this is the construction of a request and the like, whatever the meaning of the word on which it depends.

12 24 qui, *those who*, the antecedent being omitted, as with our indefinite 'whoever.' See also note on **quod**, **8 22**.

12 28 in procuratione, *in control*, properly, engaged in the care of the kingdom as regents.

14 1 sive . . . sive, *whether . . . or*, often used for **aut . . . aut**, as in English 'either . . . or' is replaced by 'whether . . . or.' — **ne occuparet**: dependent on the expression of fearing, **timore adducti**, the regular construction. Notice that the connective **ne** after a verb of fearing is translated by *that* or *lest*, and not by *that not*, as in other cases.

14 2 despecta fortuna: notice that where there is a word in the sentence for the partic. to agree with, as in the preceding case (**adducti**), it agrees, but if there is none, a new noun is used in the abl. with the partic., i.e. the abl. abs., so called because it seems to have no connection with the sentence, though it really is an abl. of time, place, or manner.

14 3 palam: opposed to **clam** below.

14 6 ad interficiendum, etc.: see note on **adeundae Syriae**, **12 16**. Here expressing purpose.

14 8 cum paucis suis, *with a few of his friends*.

14 15 No. 20. ei, *to her*, the dat. of reference after **causa**. So also **liberis**.

15 1 feminae Latonae: there are two indications that these words do not go together, as the beginner might carelessly think possible; the Latin regularly puts a proper name before its appositive, **Latonae feminae**; and again, if the sentence is read in order the **et** will naturally connect the priests and the women, and then **Latonae** will be seen to have no other construction than the dative. Use your common sense in reading.

15 4 mihi . . . sunt, *I have*, the most common form to express simple possession. Note the emphasis on the word **mihi**, indicated by its position.

15 5 genere: a quality is regularly expressed by a noun and adj. (not a noun alone) in the abl., where we say 'of'; technically, the abl. of quality.

15 6 ea: the Latin uses a pron. of reference when the name of the

person or thing referred to would require a different case from what it had when used before. Here, for example, **Latona** when last used was in the gen. — **vindicarent**: cf. note, **3 11**.

15 9 saxum: the story was connected with a stone which was supposed to exude water. It is like the story of the pillar of salt.

15 10 ei: dat. of reference. But we may translate the whole, *causes her to shed*, etc.

15 11 . No. 21. fuerat: we may say *was*, because we are not so exact as to tenses, but the Latin, speaking of the time of the story, says, 'had been the heir' or 'had inherited' before the story begins. — **et ipse**, and *himself also*, as opposed to his inheritance received from another.

15 12 sibi, for *himself*.

15 14 visum: supine, properly an acc. of the end of motion and used after verbs of motion to express purpose, *to see*.

15 15 civibus: dat. of reference.

15 16 septem sapientis: the famous seven sages of Greece.

15 18 esset: again the subjv. in an indirect question; see **10 12, 11 21**. — **negavit**, *refused to admit*, not *denied*; avoid stock translations of words and phrases. Find out the thought; then express it in the best English.

15 19 displicuit, *was displeasing to*, hence followed by the dat.

15 20 sensit, *found out*. This word, referring to any kind of perception, is especially used of that which one finds out by actual experience. — **esset**: cf. **10 12, 10 16**.

15 21 obtinebat (with **regnum**), *was king, occupied the throne*, or the like. Notice that **obtineo** does n't mean *obtain*, nor **occupo**, *occupy*; see note on **7 15**.

15 22 ut . . . impediret, *to retard*, regular purpose-clause.

15 23 bellum paravit, *made preparations for war*. Notice that **bellum** is more concrete in Latin than is 'war' in English, expressing all the paraphernalia of war, so that a Roman can **parare bellum**, while we 'prepare for war.'

15 24 Delphicum: the oracle of Apollo at Delphi in Greece was anciently supposed to be an unerring means of direct communication with the gods for advice and knowledge of the future. Its trustworthiness became proverbial.

15 26 quod interest inter, *which flows between*. — **regnum**, etc.: the responses of oracles were usually of this ambiguous character and were so framed by astute persons as to come true, whatever happened.

15 27 cum . . . comperisset, *having learned*, etc., as so often with **cum** and the pluperf. subjunctive.

15 28 *copiis*: words of military significance are used in the abl. of accompaniment without *cum*. — *autem*: for the force of this word, see notes, **2 2**, **10 5**.

16 1 *ita pugnatum est*, *the result of the battle was such*; cf. **7 7**.

16 2 *neque hic neque ille*, *neither Cræsus nor his adversary*; such English expressions as this have no exactly corresponding forms in Latin and hence must be substituted for the simpler Latin forms, and, conversely, must be excluded in writing Latin; *hic* refers to *Cræso* as the nearer on the page, *ille* to *Cyrus*, as farther off. — *altero*: not merely 'another,' but *a second*. — *proelio*: really abl. of manner, but translate by using it as the subject of *pugnaretur*.

16 4 *captivus*, *being taken captive*, equivalent to a participle.

16 5 *cum*, etc.: the idea can hardly be expressed in English otherwise than by *when*, but it is the 'when' of circumstance, not that of time; cf. **7 5** and note.

16 7 *cum . . . audivisset*: here the expression will admit the perf. act. partic., which should therefore be used, as more natural in English. Cf. *cum . . . comperisset*, **15 27**, and note.

16 8 *significaret*: notice again the indirect question.

16 9 *docuisset*: this is a case where the indirect question is troublesome. As it stands, it means that *Cræsus* in his story answered a question like 'What did *Solon* say?' the indirect form of which would be 'I will tell you what *Solon* said.' But if it were *id quod Solon*, etc., there would be no question in the Latin, but a relative clause with the indicative. The difficulty is that either would be good Latin, and in English there is no modal distinction made at all.

16 10 *ut Cræsum . . . esset*: notice that of these clauses, alike in Latin, the first two are result-clauses and so have no distinguishing modal form in English, and that the third, a purpose-clause (used as object of *rogaret*), is to be translated by the regular English infin. of purpose. We have a similar purpose-clause below in l. 13, *monuit ut*, etc.

16 12 *ei*: dat. after *profuit*.

17 1 No. **22**. *ante*, etc.: cf. note, **7 14**.

17 2 *regebant*, etc.: it is better here to change the voice, in order to preserve the emphasis which comes from the position of *regebant*, *the city was ruled*, etc.

17 4 *nomines*: the subjv. of the second person, where we say 'one might,' etc., a common Latin usage.

17 7 *esset*, *should be*, a future condition. The explanation of the tense will come later. — *eum*: this word can only be the object of *coeraceret*, but it has this position because contrasted with *alter*.

17 8 *coerceret*, *might*, etc., another purpose-clause; cf. *locupletaretur*, **11 7**. — *quem morem*, *a custom which*. This is the regular form in Latin when an antecedent is in apposition with something that goes before. Our form is different, as above.

17 9 *saecula*, *for*, etc.; the regular acc. of duration of time; § 156; B. 181; G. 336; H. 379. — *hoc tantum*, *this great*; notice that in English we leave out the 'so,' which the Latin usually expresses, as here, by *tantum*. — *diviseris*: the subjv. is used, as in *nomines*, l. 4; but here there is a future condition. The form means 'should have,' etc., but we express the idea by the pres. ind. (a subjv. confounded with the indicative).

17 10 *iam*: used in reference to the earlier stage, 'the infancy'; *now you will have*, etc.

17 11 *quarum*: sc. *aetatum*. — *numero*: abl. of respect; cf. *aetate*, **12 18**.

17 13 *ad . . . revocantes*, *reckoning up*; the *calculi* were counters (originally stones) by which the Romans did their figuring. The Chinese and Japanese still use a similar means, as do also the elementary grades in our own schools.

17 14 *statuerunt*, *made out*; cf. note on *instituerunt*, **9 5**.

17 15 *redactas habuerunt*: this form, the origin of the perf., etc., with 'have' in modern languages, is not exactly equivalent to that construction; it means 'held brought under,' etc., but as the perf., etc., often expresses the present state resulting from a preceding action, we may well say here *had brought*, etc. The partic. *redactas* agrees, of course, with the obj. *gentis*.

17 17 *saeculo* and *anno*: abl. of time when. Cf. *anno*, **7 14**.

17 19 *medium*: i.e. the Mediterranean. — *iure*, *justly*, abl. of manner.

17 24 *bello . . . finito*, *at the end of*, etc. Try in all cases to give the abl. abs. the shade of meaning required in English.

17 25 *aemulam*, *their rival*.

17 26 *quo anno*, *the same year that*; cf. note on *quem morem*, **17 8**. — *e*, *in*, though it properly means 'out of' (the year, or the events of that century).

17 27 *necatum, institutum*: sc. *esse*. These infinitive-clauses are the subs. of *mandatum est*.

18 1 No. **23**. *eius*, *of the one*, i.e. the father of the same name. — *cecidit, fell*. Cf. *cecidit, struck down*. — *ad Cannas*: though we say *at* here, yet the construction is not that of names of towns, which would be abl., *Cannis*, because the town as a spot is not meant, but its vicinity.

18 2 *consul*, *in his consulship, or when he was consul*. A word in apposition often expresses modifying ideas of this sort, inasmuch as the Latin has no pres. partic. of *esse* to connect two nouns.

18 3 paterni: agreeing with *odi*. Modifying phrases (as here, *in Romanos*) are often inserted between two words belonging together, in order to show the close connection. Here it is not merely 'his father's hatred,' but 'his father's hatred against the Romans,' forming a single complex idea.

18 4 profecturus esset, *was on the point of setting out*; mark the force of the first periphrastic conjugation. — **domum**: in this construction (end of motion) *domus* admits a possessive, so we must say *to his house*, where otherwise we should say 'returned home.'

18 5 Tertiam: Roman girls were more commonly merely numbered *secunda*, *tertia*, *quarta*, etc., the first one having the gentile name (as *Aemilia*, *Iulia*).

18 6 tristiculam, *that she was*, etc., though the word is only a pred. acc. This shorthand form of expression is very common in Latin.

18 7 tristis: how different in meaning from *tristiculam* above?

18 8 Persa: the common Latin form for *Perses*.

18 9 artius, *warmly*; the comparative often differs from the positive only in suggesting, not a real comparison, but only a rather higher degree of the adj. or adv. — **complexus**, the tense may be disregarded in English. Cf. *miratus*, **7 18**. — **accipio**, etc.: an omen was usually not valid unless accepted by the party concerned, for which this was the regular form.

18 10 omen: such chance sayings were regarded by the superstitious Romans as tending to bring about their own fulfilment. The idea still lurks under such expressions as 'Oh, don't speak of it!' when any calamity is mentioned.

18 12 Macedoniam: as some verbs compounded with *in* and some other prepositions acquire a meaning that requires a dat. (cf. *gregi*, **3 2**), so others acquire a transitive meaning and can take an acc., as here. — **recta**: abl. fem. of *rectus*, used as an adverb.

18 13 No. 24. Scipio: the conqueror of Hannibal. He was the son of *Æmilius Paulus*, above mentioned, and was adopted by one of the *Scipios*, so his full name was *P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Æmilianus*.

18 14 militaret: see notes, **7 5**, **16 5**.

18 15 primus, etc., *was the first to*, etc., the regular way in Latin of expressing this idea.

18 16 quisquam: notice that this word is used only in connection with negative ideas, as 'not any one.' — **nobilitate**, etc.: abl. of cause or reason.

18 17 cuius magis saluti, etc., *whose life ought to be spared and looked out for*. The construction here, the impers. pass. of verbs which govern the dat., is a regular Latin one. In the active voice we might say *eius saluti parce*, *spare his life*, but only transitive verbs can be changed to the

personal passive, and if we want to express this in the passive form, *his life is to be spared*, we must say *eius saluti parcendum est*, or *parci debet*. By learning this difference of idiom once for all another great stumbling block may be removed. — **deberet**: this subjv., of the same class as the result-clauses, needs no special modal form in English. — **sed**: introducing, in opposition to what ought to have been done, the reason why it was not done. There is no sense in using ‘buts,’ ‘fors,’ and ‘indeeds’ mechanically. If the real connections are once noticed, these particles, of which there are so many in Latin, will become helps instead of hindrances. — **tunc**: notice the emphasis, *at that time* they vied with each other to see which could do the most, instead of saving themselves, as now.

18 18 clarissimus quisque . . . plurimum, *the more distinguished a youth was, the more*, etc. Another distinctive Latin idiom, expressing a kind of proportion. The persons or things are conceived as lined up in order, and each one (**quisque**), as he comes, is said to have the most of the quality among those who remain. — **pro amplificanda**, etc.: gerundive construction; cf. **adeundae Syriae**, **12 15**, and note.

18 20 deforme: the emphatic position and the gender of this word make it almost certain that it is the adj. belonging to an infin. or clause which is to come later. In English such a sentence would be perfectly clear, because the copula would be expressed with the adj., and the infinitive clause would be introduced by ‘that,’ as ‘thinking it *was* unseemly when, etc., *that*.’

19 1 quos: the antecedent is **his**. This is the first case of the common precedence of the relative, like “whom therefore ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you,” to which the Latin form exactly corresponds. But this form has become obsolete in English except with the indef. rel. ‘whoever,’ etc. The best way is to read it in the obsolete English form, and translate it into the modern — *by those whom*, etc. — **dignitate**: another abl. of respect; so, too, **virtute**. — **praestaret**, the dependent subjv. in indir. disc.; see note on **occultaretur**, **9 9**. — **virtute**: this word means properly ‘manliness,’ but as that was the chief Roman virtue it came to stand for all. Here it stands for *prowess* or *heroism*; beware of translating it ‘virtue,’ except where that word expresses the particular form of virtue indicated by the context.

19 2 ideoque, *and it was for this reason that*, a force given by the emphatic position. — **Aemilianus**: translate *Scipio*, his regular English name. — **aliis . . . vitantibus**, *when others*, etc.

19 4 non defendissent, *had failed to defend*, a force often given by the simple verb with a negative; cf. **19 4** and note. Be sure that your translation is English, and not mongrel Latin.

19 5 occupare: here we may say *occupy*, as the word is used in a military sense, the only sense in which the two words correspond in the two languages; see note on **occupavit**, **7 15**.

19 6 militum: for construction, see note on **sestertium**, **7 18**. — **his copiis**: preserve the emphasis of position by changing the construction, *these forces were under the command*, or the like. This course is often necessary for a faithful rendering. For construction of the dat., see § 228. N. 1; B. 187. III; G. 347; H. 386. 1.

19 8 enim: introducing the explanation of the fact that the forces of all Greece were under the Spartan king; cf. note on **sed**, **18 17**.

19 9 cuperet: see note on **saltarent**, **7 4**.

19 10 concessum esset; *had not been*, etc.; the modal form of this condition is apparently lost in English from the disappearance of our subjv.

19 11 idem cogitabant: do not translate literally, 'thought the same thing,' but *had the same feelings* or *determination*, or the like. Remember that you are expressing ideas in English, though you get them from the Latin. — **contra Persas**: connect with **eduxit**.

19 12 in Thermopylis: the preposition is used because not a town, but a pass is meant. Cf. **ad Cannas**, **18 1**.

19 13 autem: notice what connection of ideas this word indicates here; do not translate it mechanically by 'but' or 'now' or 'moreover'; cf. **2 2**, **10 5**, and notes. **quantis**, *how small*. The Latin does not usually distinguish between small and great in such indefinite words. Of course if a thing is 'so great' it is equally 'so small,' according to the way you look at it. — **defenderentur**: remember the indir. question; see note on **esset**, **11 21**.

19 14 initio: abl. of time. — **tum**: opposed to **initio**. — **quod**: the reason is given as the writer's. If the reason had been given as that of Xerxes the subjv. would have been used. Cf. **quoniam . . . fefellisset**, **9 12**, and note.

19 15 ponerent: notice that the clause after the idea of commanding is the same whatever the word is that expresses that idea. Here **misit** means *sent with orders*. If it were 'sent (to say) that he was there,' it would be **adesse**, because then **misit** would be equivalent to a verb of saying.

19 16 quid . . . responsum sit, *what answer was given*. The Latin puts the descriptive ideas preferably in a verb where we put them in a noun. Here the indir. question is used as the subj. of **notum est**. — **illi**: refers to Xerxes.

19 17 vobis, *from you*, but in Latin a dat. of reference. Cf. **ei** and **liberis**, **14 14**.

19 18 *itaque*, in that way.

19 20 *hominum*: cf. *militum*, l. 6.

19 23 *volneratus*: strictly agreeing with *numerus* for form's sake, but we should conceive it as spoken of the Persians.

19 24 *electorum militum*, *picked men*, not 'chosen soldiers.' As soon as you have seen that this is what the Latin says, then abandon it for your own word.

19 25 *etiam hi*, *even THESE*. *Etiam* regularly throws emphasis on the following word.

19 27 *pecunia*, *by money*; cf. with *a Graecis*, above, l. 23, and learn the important distinction in expression between means and agency. The former usually has no preposition, the latter *a* or *ab*.

19 28 *efficerent*: this, though an indir. question, is different from those before. The direct would be, not *qua via . . . efficiunt*, *how are they effecting*, but *qua via efficient*, *how shall they effect*. These have the same form in the indirect in Latin, but it appears from the context which is meant.

20 3 *acceperat*: see note on *accipio*, 18 9.

20 4 *aut . . . aut*: notice that these words are mutually exclusive, so that the oracle might be interpreted that if the king (either of the Spartans or the Persians) was killed, the city need not be destroyed. Leonidas therefore satisfied the oracle by his own death.

20 10 No. 26. *tristissimus*, etc., *I write this to you in a very sad state of mind, on account of the death of our friend Fundanus's younger daughter*. This is a very good example of the great changes of idiom often necessary in translation. It will easily be seen that the English exactly reproduces the Latin, though in a very different form. The adj. agreeing with the omitted subject of *scribo* expresses the state of mind of the subject, a common Latin construction. The following abl. abs. expresses, as often in Latin, the cause of the preceding, though it properly only describes the circumstances; cf. note on *superato Antonio*, 7 14. — *qua puella*, *a girl than whom*; see note on *quem morem*, 17 8. The abl. is due to the comparatives; § 247; B. 217; G. 296; H. 417. — *nihil umquam*: lit. 'nothing ever,' but our idiom is usually *never any one*, or *no one ever*. The Latin often uses *nihil* and the neuter of indefinite pronouns to refer to persons. Grammatically *nihil* is the obj. of *vidi*, and the comparative adjectives agree with it. — *nec*, *and not*, the negative going with *modo* and the conjunction connecting *amabilis* and *dignus*. See note on *nec*, 2 8.

20 11 *vita*, *immortalitate*: abl. after *dignus*, the regular construction.

20 12 *illi . . . erat*, *she had or showed*, *illi* being the dat. of possessor.

20 13 *tamen*, yet with it all. Cf. note, 6 6.

21 1 *ut*, how (exclamatory).

21 2 *inhaerebat*: this selection admirably illustrates the force of the imperf. tense in description. Note that the perfs., where they occur, mark the different steps of the narrative; cf. 5 2, 10 1, and notes. — *nos*: = *me*, as often in Latin; cf. Eng. editorial 'we.'

21 3 *paedagogos*, attendants; the Romans at this time had the Greek custom of entrusting children to the care of a faithful old male slave, as a kind of chaperon.

21 4 *pro suo quemque officio*, each according to his station, i.e. their relation to her. The reflexive would naturally refer to the subject, but with *quemque* it refers to that word.

21 6 *illa*, the child; cf. note, 16 2. — *constantia*, heroism.

21 7 *valetudinem*, sickness, the most common meaning of the word. — *tulit*: notice the narrative perf. among so many descriptive imperfs.; so also *duravit*; see general note above on l. 2.

21 8 *ipsam se*, even herself.

21 9 *viribus*: from *vis*, abl. of separation after *destitutam*. — *hic*: i.e. vigor. — *illi*, with her, according to English idiom, though expressed by the dat. of reference.

21 11 *relinqueret*: a result-clause connected by the relative *quo*, whereby, i.e. 'the death of one so lovely and heroic' had as a result 'that,' etc.

21 12 *desideri*, for bereavement, properly 'the sense of loss' or 'missing.' — *plane*, truly, surely. — *acerbum*: almost regular for the death of young persons.

21 13 *morte*, than the death, the regular abl. after comparatives (see *qua puella*, 20 10); cf. this with *vita*, 20 11, which depends on the idea of dignus, while here the abl. depends on the comparative idea, as in both cases is shown by the context.

21 14 *nuptiarum*: Roman girls were married very young.

21 15 *quod gaudium*: placed first for emphasis; cf. note, 9 8. — *quo maerore*: in our idiom, into what grief. In an exchange either the thing got or the thing given may be in the abl. as the price of a barter.

21 18 *quod erogaturus fuerat*, what he had intended to spend. Again a first periphrastic; cf. *profecturus esset*, 18 4. — *hoc*: antecedent of *quod*. — *tus*, etc.: these were for the funeral, to be burned on the funeral pile. — *impenderetur*: this is subjv. for the imv. of direct discourse. Cf. the construction of *moveret*, 9 11, and see note.

21 20 No. 27. *Aemilius Paulus*: the same one mentioned in No. 23.

21 21 *formae insignis*: note that qualities are described by either the gen. or the abl. Cf. *genere*, **15 5**, and note.

21 22 *duos*: one was the Scipio spoken of in No. 24, the other Quintus Fabius Maximus.

21 23 *sibi ipsi denegavit*, *he himself renounced*, lit. 'denied to himself' by giving them in adoption. — *ei*: notice again the dat. of the *person* rendered *from* where we might have looked for the abl. Cf. *Augusto*, **8 4**.

21 24 *alter*, *one*. Of course either of two may be 'the other,' according to the way you look at them. — *triumphum*: i.e. after his victory over Perses; see No. 23. — *funere*: abl. of means with *praecessit*. — *quantum ante diem*, *three days before*, according to our reckoning. So below, *post diem tertium* = *two days after*.

21 25 *conspectus*: partic. expressing concession, *though seen*.

21 26 *qui*, *he who*; cf. note on *quos*, **19 1**. — *ad donandos*, etc., *had so many children as to give them away*. Cf. this gerundive construction with similar cases, **12 15**, **14 6**.

21 27 *in orbitate*, etc., *was suddenly left childless*.

21 28 *quem*: connecting rel., as so often; cf. *quod gaudium*, etc., **1. 15**, above, and note. — *sustinuerit*: subjv. in an indir. question, which is a kind of object of *reliquit*.

23 1 *rebus*, etc., *his exploits*, the regular expression. — *apud*, *before*, the regular expression in such a case. — *adiciendo*: abl. of the gerund, of which *clausulam* is the direct object. Observe that the gerund has the construction of an active verbal noun, the gerundive of a passive verbal adjective.

23 2 *nulli ambiguum*, *no one in doubt*, lit. 'doubtful to no one.'

23 3 *ne quid mali*, *that . . . some misfortune*. The partit. gen. with a neuter pronoun is regular in Latin for such ideas; cf. *quid rei*, **10 12**.

23 4 *fortuna*: this idea of great fortune being the forerunner of ill was very prevalent among the ancients, and is often found lingering in modern times. — *moliretur*, *was planning*, in sense like the colloquial 'getting up.' For construction, cf. *ne occuparet*, **14 1**. — *Iovem*, etc.: these were the three official Capitoline deities, the tutelary protectors of Rome. Their full titles belong to the solemnity of Roman ritualism. Such things could not be lightly referred to, but must be given in proper form.

23 6 *immineret*: what he would say would be *imminent*, a simple present condition, but this is changed to the subjv. on the principle of indir. disc.; cf. note on *fefellisset*, **9 13**; technically the subjv. of the 'integral part'; § 342; B. 324; G. 629; H. 529. II. N. I. 1). — *totum*, *wholly*.

23 7 *adnuendo*: gerund as abl. of means, followed by *votis*, indir. obj.

23 8 *id egerunt*, *they have provided*. The whole of this story is a perfect representation of the religious state of mind of the earlier Romans.

23 9 *vestro ingemiscerem, should bewail yours.* *vestro* [casu] is abl. of cause, and *ingemiscerem* a much stronger word than *doleatis*. Technically the whole expression is an *ut*-clause of result in apposition with *id*.

23 11 No. **28.** *eo* : i.e. *spectaculo*.

23 12 *homines*, etc. : a common practice with the Romans, of which the Spanish bull fight is the only survival.

23 13 *capitis, to death*, a regular idiom, the so-called gen. of the penalty. — *essent* : this in the decree would be *sunt*, but it is changed by indir. disc. ; cf. note on *immineret*, l. 6.

23 16 *ludorum* : all such holiday shows of whatever kind were called *ludi*.

23 17 *circum* : the more common place for this was the arena, but the circus was sometimes used. *Arena* is a better word for it in English.

23 21 *cui, whose*, as often ; cf. *domino*, **4 12**.

23 25 *meritus esset* : indir. question.

24 1 *ita narravit, told his story thus*.

24 2 *domini* : we should say *from*.

24 5 *etiam* : see note, **19 25**. *iam . . . desperabam, I now began to*, etc. The imperf., especially with *iam*, often has this force. Cf. *deplorabat*, **10 11**.

24 6 *effugiendi* : students often confuse the gerund and the gerundive. Bearing in mind that the latter is always an adj. in agreement with a noun, such a case as this must necessarily be a gerund. Cf. this with the gerundive in **12 15**.

24 7 *sed leo, the lion, however*. — *clamore, cries, dolores, pain*. Notice that the languages do not agree, even in their conceptions of number.

24 8 *autem* : here does little more than to mark the change of subject from *leo* to *ego*. See notes, **2 2**, **10 5**, **19 13**.

24 9 *gratus* : cf. note on *laetus*, **1 2**.

24 11 *una* : an adverb.

24 12 *venando* : abl. of gerund, expressing means. Cf. *adiciendo*, **23 1**.

24 14 *taedium*, etc. : change the voice of the verb, *I was seized with*, etc.

24 15 *discedere* : the infin. added to a verb to complete its meaning, as in English ; hence called the complementary infinitive. Many verbs take either this or the *ut*-construction.

24 16 *ut venaretur, to hunt* : infin. in English ; but remember that the Latin infin. does not express purpose.

24 18 *capitis* : cf. **23 13**.

No. **29.** *S.* : for *salutem, greeting* ; sc. *dicit*.

24 23 *S. V.*, etc. : i.e. *Si vales bene est, ego valeo*. See **1 1** and note. — *velim cures, etc., I want you to take very good care of*. *velim* is a less

emphatic and more polite form of speech than **volo**; as we say 'I should like,' instead of 'I wish,' and **cures**, etc., is an object-clause of purpose *without* **ut** (properly hortatory), a common construction after **volo**.

24 25 quod, *in that*.

25 2 novi: see note on **mali**, **23 3**. — **facies ut sciam**, *you will let me know*; the result-clause **ut sciam** is a kind of obj. of **facies**.

25 3 D.: for **data**, i.e. handed to the messenger (as we might say 'posted'). Hence our word 'date.' — **IIII Nonas**, etc.: the Romans had a complicated system of dates, originally connected with the moon's phases. The date here is June 2d, three days before the Nones, which fell on the 5th in June.

No. 29. S. D.: i.e. **Salutem Dicit**.

25 4 Tusculanum, *our Tusculan estate*. The Romans often had villas in various parts of the country, like a modern English nobleman. — **nos**: instead of the sing., like the royal and editorial 'we'; cf. **nos**, **21 2**. — **venturos**: with the fut. partic. **esse** is very often omitted, as here. — **Nonis**: i.e. the 7th, on which day the Nones fell in October.

25 5 ut: sc. **cura**, often omitted in familiar style. — The same thing occurs in l. 7 (**cura**) **ut sit**. — **plures**, *several*, i.e. *more* than one.

25 6 diutius, *some time*; see note on **artius**, **18 9**.

25 8 valitudinem: this word means health, either good or bad. Here, of course, it means the former; but see **21 7**.

25 9 Kal.: the 1st; in full, **Kalendis Octobribus**.

25 9 Venusino: another villa of Cicero's.

25 11 No. 30. bello: abl. of separation. — **se**: obj. of **abstineret**; many words which later became intransitive were in classical Latin transitive and required an object; cf. such words as 'abstain' and 'refrain,' coming from the later usage. — **abstineret**, a purpose-clause depending on **missus**, which here has the same force as in **19 15**; see note.

25 11 quo . . . lacessebat: not part of what he was ordered to say. If it were, the subjv. would be used. The ind. shows it to be an explanatory phrase thrown in by the author; § 342. a; G. 628. R. a; H. 529. II. N. 1. 2).

25 12 prompto animo, *with ready courtesy*.

25 13 suam: i.e. **dexteram**, suggested, as often, by the opposition.

25 14 ut, *when* or *as*, in this sense always with the indicative.

25 16 interposuisset: subjv., as implying a thought of Popilius; see note on **fefellisset**, **9 13**.

25 17 prius: take with **quam**. — **quo**, *on which*, depending on the force of the prep. in the verb. So also **circulo**, in the next line. In such

cases the preposition may be repeated before the noun with the effect of increasing the emphasis.

25 18 excedas: the subjv. may be neglected here, as it expresses no apparent modal relation in English. — **quod . . . referam**, *for me to carry back*, a purpose-clause with a rel. Note that it is the purpose idea that requires the subjv. mood, and not any particular introductory word.

25 19 locutum: sc. **esse**.

25 20 crederes, *one* (or lit. 'you') *would have thought*, the regular way of expressing that idea. — **fore ne**: a late usage for **non fore ut**, *that it should n't happen*, etc., i.e. *that Ptolemy should have no further cause for complaint*, which is perhaps the best translation.

25 21 tum demum, *then only*, 'then and not till then.'

25 23 abscisa gravitas: as this implies freedom from effusiveness, it may be used as well with **animi** as with **sermonis**; we may say *abrupt dignity of manner and speech*, or divide the idea into two. — **momento**, *vigorous action*, i.e. the influence exerted by his prompt and forceful demand.

25 24 Aegypti, *that of Egypt*; in such cases the Latin practically never uses a pronoun.

26 2 No. 31. sonus, strepitus, *rattling, clanking*; such words as these vary much in their translation, because they are very indefinite in their meaning. — **si attenderes**: the subjv. is here used on account of the second person referring to an indefinite subj. 'you' ('any one'). Neither the first person 'we' nor the third 'any one' would require it, nor would it be used of a definite person addressed.

26 4 reddebatur, *were heard* (plur. in English on account of the two subjs.). Notice that though **reddere** means 'give out' from the object, yet we can equally well translate by its effect on the person.

26 5 confectus, *disfigured*. This word means either to 'make up,' i.e. *complete, make*, or 'do up,' i.e. *exhaust, destroy*, as here. — **cruribus, manibus**: abl. of instrument, though we say *on*.

26 6 inhabitantibus: the agent of an action is often by a change of the point of view put in the dative.

26 7 noctes: this word can be made the subj. of the passive **vigilabantur** because that verb is transitive in Latin, *spent in watching*.

26 9 memoria imaginis, *the remembered vision*.

26 10 oculis: dat. after **in-errabat**; cf. **copiis**, **19 7**. — **longiorque**, etc.: i.e. the terror outlasted its cause.

26 11 solitudine: abl. of the penalty after **damnata** as a judicial word. More often the penalty is expressed by the gen., as in **capitis damnati**, **23 13**. — **tota**, *wholly*; see note on **laetus**, **1 3**.

27 1 *proscribatur*: the regular word for *advertise*. An advertisement 'to let' from the walls in Pompeii is given below:

INSVLA ARRIANA
POLLIANA CN ALLEI NIGIDI MAI
LOCANTVR EX (K) IVLIIS PRIMIS TABERNAE
CVM PERGVLS SVIS ET CENACVLA
EQVESTRIA ET DOMVS CONDVCTOR
CONVENITO PRIMVM CN ALLEI
NIGIDI MAI SER.

"The Arria Pollia block of Cn. Alleius Nigidius Maius to let from 1st of July next, shops with their show windows, first-class gentlemen's chambers and a dwelling. Apply to Primus, slave of Cn. Alleius Nigidius Maius."

—**tamen**: i.e. though it was abandoned, yet it was advertised to be sold to some stranger.

27 2 *seu quis . . . vellet*, in case any one should, etc. This is really a fut. condition thrown back into past time by being quoted from the advertisement.

27 4 *suspecta*, suspicious, i.e. he thought something was the matter to make it so cheap. — **omnia**: the second acc. after *doceo* retained with the pass.; like 'I teach you Latin,' and 'you are taught Latin;' § 239. c. R.; B. 178. 2; G. 339; H. 374. 1. — **nihilo, tanto**: abl. of degree of difference; cf. **paulo**, **10 15**.

27 6 *sterni*, a bed to be made; used impersonally.

27 7 *pugillaris*: see Fig. 43.

27 8 *animum*: obj. of *intendit*.

27 9 *audita simulacra*, imaginary sounds.

27 10 *ubique*: i.e. (the same as) everywhere else. — **silentium**: we may supply *erat*, but it is not necessary. — **concuti**: in rapid narrative, a description is often expressed by the infin. alone, the so-called historical infin., though it is not narrative but descriptive. The infins. that follow are in the same construction.

27 12 *offirmare*, etc., he kept his mind fixed and placed it as a screen before his ears, i.e. he tried to make himself deaf to the noises by keeping his mind occupied.

27 13 *ut, as it were, just as if*.

27 15 *vocanti*: we may supply *alicui*, but see note on *oranti*, **6 6**.

27 16 *expectaret*: obj. clause of a command. Cf. note on *misit*,

19 15. — *ceris*: the tablets for writing were made of wood coated with wax, and written on with a sharp point.

27 17 *illa*: the apparition. — *catenis*, etc., rattled the chains against, lit. 'with the chains.'

27 18 *respicit*, looks round and sees. — *innuentem*: supply *eum*, which is unnecessary in Latin; see note on *vocanti*, l. 15. — *idem quod*: our 'as' is often equal to a rel. pron., and is sometimes represented by one in Latin, as here. — *moratus*: for tense and translation, see note, 7 18.

27 20 *aream*: the houses of the ancients were regularly built around one or more open courts, one of which is meant here. The colonnade surrounding the court and the whole apartment was called the peristyle; see Fig. 15.

27 24 *nuda et exesa*: agreeing with *quae*; *vinculis* is abl. of cause or means, depending on *exesa*.

27 26 *conditis*: used like our word 'lay' of a ghost. The body being properly buried, the spirit was laid to rest and the house was free from it. — *mānibus*: from *mānes*.

28 2 No. 32. *hora*: the Romans reckoned time, not as we do, by uniform mean time, but by 'hours,' which were the twelfth part of the time from sunrise to sunset or *vice versa*. The second hour would begin somewhere about seven o'clock, and the fourth about nine.

28 3 *id quia*, etc.: the Latin often continues the indir. disc. to a great length without any verb of saying. We rarely do this, but repeat the verb of saying. It often clears up obscurities to do this in translating; thus, *He said that this, inasmuch as*, etc., or better, treating the acc. subjs. as nominatives, *This, he said, inasmuch as*, etc., could be known beforehand and predicted.

28 4 *naturali ordine*, in the course of nature. (Cf. *bellicam*, 7 1, and note.

28 5 *certi*: pred. adj. after *sint*.

28 6 *sint*: as the indir. disc. still continues, the verbs in the subordinate clauses are of course in the subjv., and in the principal clauses in the infin. — *pleno orbe*, *exiguo cornu*: modify *fulgere*, of which *lunam* is the subject.

28 7 *mirarentur*: Gallus's own word would be *miramini*, but now the reader is addressed instead of the soldiers, and hence the soldiers become 'they' in the third person. The tense naturally changes because the time is past to us, and the subjv. is idiomatic, the clause being subordinate and in indir. disc. Cf. notes on No. 14, p. 9. Observe that our method is not very different, except that we do not change the mood. *Therefore just as he said, they were not surprised*, etc., *so they ought not*, etc.

28 8 obscurari: the Latin made much use of antithesis, setting one word off against another, whereby many words which otherwise would be repeated could be left out the second time, as in 'John went up the street, James [went] down [the street].' So here **fulgere** has **lunam** expressed, but when its antithesis **obscurari** occurs, this word is to be supplied. — **trahere in prodigium**, to regard as a prodigy.

28 9 debere: its subj. is **eos** (i.e. **milites**), which is occasionally omitted. — **quam**, etc.: it is well to change the voice in translating, *the night which was followed by*, or, still more freely, *the night preceding the 4th of September*. — **pridie**, etc.: this phrase, being a date, is in apposition with **dies**, as if it were nom., i.e. 'the day before the Nones.'

28 11 videri: hist. infin., cf. **27 10** and note. — **Macedonas**, etc.: change the voice in translating, *the Macedonians were moved*, etc. Strictly **Macedonas** is the obj. of **movit**, the subject being the general idea of the eclipse, represented in Eng. by 'it.'

28 13 vates: i.e. **portenderunt**.

28 14 suam, its regular or usual.

No. **33**. Erasmus, the contemporary of Luther, a great wit and the most accomplished man of letters in Europe since the decline of learning, left a considerable body of writings of various kinds much in the style of Lucian. His style is occasionally unclassical, but in the main is the purest of modern Latin. On account of some irregular freedoms of speech, these extracts may well be read with less attention to the syntax. Attention, however, is called to points that might mislead the learner. This story and the two following are taken from a piece entitled **Convivium Fabulosum**, 'a story-telling banquet.'

28 16 sacrificus: a late word for 'priest' in the modern Christian sense. — **invitārat**: = **invitaverat**; § 128. a. 1; B. 116. 1; G. 131. 1; H. 235. — **unum atque alterum**, one or two, the regular Latin expression. — **bellum homunculum**: taken with **unum atque alterum**, jolly fellows.

28 17 obvios: plur., on account of **unum**, etc. Translate *whom he met*.

28 18 frigidam, without a fire, i.e. with nothing cooking.

28 19 illi: with him; cf. **21 9**.

28 20 consilio: abl. with **opus**.

28 21 quicum, with whom, **quī** being used for the abl.; § 104. c; B. 90. 2. a; G. 105. 3; H. 187. 1. — **ageret**, did business. The subjv. is late and unclassical.

28 23 carnibus: from **caro**. — **veste tectam**, concealed under his clothing. — **deferebat**, started to carry, etc.

28 26 *deposito pignore*: i.e. the stolen kettle was to be left as a pledge. Notice that the abl. abs. expressing circumstance may be used of things future as well as past.



FIG. 103.
OLLA FICTILIS.

28 28 *accipiat*: continues the construction of *qui* . . . *sumat*.

29 3 *prospectum est*, *arrangements were made*.

29 8 *hoc . . . sacrificio*, *to suspect a priest of this*; lit. 'this to a priest.'

29 9 *itum est*, *they went*: perf. pass. of *eo* used impersonally. — *exploratum* (sc. *est*), *search was made*; also impersonal.

29 10 *ne musca*, etc., *not a sign of*, etc. — *quid multis* (sc. *verbis opus*), *what need of many words?* i.e. *to be brief*.

29 12 *quo tempore*, *at the time when*.

29 13 *commodato*, *as a loan*; dat. of service.

29 14 *unde*, *from whom*, as often.

29 21 *ipsi cuius erat*, *to the very man that owned it*.

30 3 No. **34**. *aptas, inventas*: agree with *ocreas*, understood.

30 8 *succinebat illi laudanti*, *chimed in with the praise of the shoemaker*; cf. note on *illa*, **21 6**.

30 10 *placeret*: cf. *fefellisset*, **9 13**.

30 12 *usu venit tibi*, *happened to you* (in your experience). The following *ut*-clause is a kind of subj. of *venit*.

30 15 *veniat, faceres*: this construction is irregular but is found in colloquial Latin. Both verbs ought to be in the same tense; but the English translation would be 'should' in both cases, so we may neglect the irregularity.

30 16 *consequeretur*: translate as if *consequar*, for which it is used; so, too, *facerem*, l. 18.

30 19 *pro calceis, for*, etc., in the sense of 'striving for a prize.'

30 25 *ne quis remoretur*: a negative command (prohibition) in which the subjv. is regularly used.

30 27 *praeberetur*: hist. infin.; cf. *concuti*, **27 10**, and note.

31 6 *negabat*, etc., *said that (he had) not*, etc., the usual meaning of *nego*.

31 9 *nec habere*, etc., *and that he has nothing to complain of*.

31 11 *umbra asini*: cf. No. 18, p. 11.

31 12 No. **35**. *summam*: a noun; below, in l. 16, we have the same form as an adjective.

31 13 *sed argenteae*: i.e. it was not a large sum, but being of silver it seemed large.

31 18 *commodaret*: subjv. of purpose without *ut*; § 331. *f. R.*; H. 499. 2.

31 19 *quo, in order that*; often used for *ut* when there is a comparative in the clause.

31 20 *ipsius*: i.e. the priest.

31 23 *aedis*: here in the sense of *store* or *shop* as at the time referred to the shops were in the houses.

31 26 *causatus est, made an excuse that*.

32 4 *multa* (we may supply *verba*): cf. *multis*, with the same meaning, **29 11**.

32 5 *averso sacrificio*: i.e. when his back was turned.

II. BIOGRAPHY AND MYTHOLOGY.

33 *CYRUS, KING OF PERSIA*: the founder of the Persian Empire, who reigned B.C. 559–529.

33 4 *imperio*: dat. with *parebant*; cf. *regi*, **15 19**.

33 8 *coniuncta esset*: the subjv. here is an integral part of the object of fear, the main idea of which is compressed into *nihil*. The modal idea appears in the natural translation, *should be*, etc. — *Cambysi*: indir. obj. of *concessit*.

33 10 *ducere*: the infin. is often used instead of the *ut*-clause after verbs of permission.

33 12 *liberaretur, free himself from*; a not infrequent force of the pass. voice.

33 15 *ei misericordia, his pity*. The dat. of reference in connection with a verb often has the force of a gen. or possess. — *regio, of the king*; cf. *belli-cam*, **7 1**. — *idem . . . imperavit, gave the same orders*. Notice that the Latin often puts descriptive ideas into verbs where we use expressive nouns.

33 17 *aetatis*: gen. of quality. Quality is also expressed by the abl.; cf. *genere divino*, **15 5**. — *ante breve tempus, a short time before*. Notice the difference of idiom.

34 The Cylinder Inscription of Cyrus (extract).

13b. The blackheaded peoples whom he [Merodach] caused his [Cyrus's] hands to capture,

14. he [Cyrus] provided for in right and justice. Merodach, the great lord, the protector of his people, for (?) his deeds prospered him, joyfully looked upon his pure hand and heart,

15. commanded him to march against Babylon his [Merodach's] city, caused him to take the road to Tintir [Babylon], like a friend and ally advanced at his side.

16. His widespread troops, numberless as the waters of a river, marched at his side in battle array [lit. 'with weapons in place'].

17. Without fight and battle he caused him to enter the city Shuanna [Babylon]. His city Babylon he spared. In the city Shabsha he delivered into his hand Nabu-nâîd, the king who did not reverence him.

18. The citizens of Babylon, all of them, all the people of Shumer and of Akkad, the great men and the governors, bowed beneath him, kissed his foot, rejoiced in his rule, (and) their faces shone (with joy).

19. The lord who by his help made the dead to live, who spared all of them in ruin (?) and woe (?), greatly blesses him (and) makes his name powerful.

20. I am Cyrus, king of hosts, great king, mighty king, king of Tintir [Babylon], king of Shumer and Akkad, king of the four regions,

21. son of Cambyses, great king, king of the city Anshan, grandson of Cyrus, great king, king of Anshan, great-grandson of Shishpish, great king, king of Anshan,

22a. lasting seed of royalty, whose rule Bel and Nabu love, and desire his reign (?) for their heart's ease.

35 4 ludis: dat. with compound; § 22S; B. 187. III; G. 347; H. 386. — **cum illis ludis interesset**: the **cum** obviously must connect the verb, otherwise the verb would have no connective. Hence **ludis** cannot depend upon **cum**, but must be in the dat. after **interesset**. — **regi**: cf. **imperio**, **33 4**.

35 10 interrogando: abl. of gerund expressing means.

35 12 excitatus esset: notice that here we suddenly come upon a subjv. in an independent clause. Of such there are only two classes. The more common of these is used for commands, etc., here impossible. The other class is used for the conclusion of a condition, which this must therefore be. Fut. conditions are expressed by the fut. tenses of the ind. or by the pres. and perf. subjv. So that this case must be one 'contrary to fact,' i.e. where a thing would (or would not) have happened if something else had (or had not) happened. This sort of condition regularly takes the imperf. or pluperf. subjv. in both the principal and the subordinate clause.

35 13 solliciteris: this verb is really in an indir. deliberative question, like **efficerent**, **19 28**. The direct would be the same in Latin, 'Why should you be anxious?' The answer is, 'There is no reason.' When these are put together in the narrative the question becomes indirect.

35 16 quod, *because*.

35 19 delectatus esset: the ordinary indir. question (not deliberative), simply 'had enjoyed.'

35 23 cum . . . esset: in this case the circumstances indicated by **cum** with the subjv. are treated as a cause, and the construction is called that of **cum-causal**, though in essence it is not different from the descriptive **cum** that we have had; cf. note, **7 5**.

35 26 libertate: i.e. that which they had formerly enjoyed before they were conquered by the Medes.

36 6 *post finitos labores, after the tasks were ended.* This idiomatic use of the perf. partic. is very common in Latin, cf. *ab urbe condita*.

36 11 *eligent*: a different sort of indir. question, where the direct would be *eligatis*, 'would you choose' (if you should have the chance) — a conclusion depending on an implied fut. condition. The tense of this, however, is changed when it is reported, as here, indirectly after a verb of past time. Compare this with *excitatus esset*, **35 12**, where the past tense belongs to the idea and is independent of the time of the context.

36 12 *delectemur*: here we have the same kind of conclusion of a fut. condition as in the preceding line in its proper and direct form.

36 13 *habebitis, si . . . liberaveritis*: a vivid fut. condition; cf. the same form, **33 5**, and the conditions in ll. **11** and **12**.

36 18 *tumultu, uprising*, the regular word in Latin for any disturbance that is not regular war, as a rebellion or the like.

36 20 *optaveris*: notice that the Latin likes to look forward to the time of completing an action; hence the fut. perf. is often used where we should use the fut. or even the present.

36 24 *cum*: here causal; cf. *cum*, **35 23**, and see those in **25** and **28** below, where there is no cause expressed, but description or circumstance.

37 6 *Croeso*: see No. **21**.

37 8 *ipse*: as distinguished from *Harpagus* in the next line.

37 12 *earum iniurias*: the genitive, like our 'of' and sometimes our possess., expresses two different relations. Either the genitive may be the thing acting (subjective) or it may be the thing acted on (objective). Thus 'Cæsar's wrongs' may be those inflicted upon Cæsar (objective) or by Cæsar (subjective). The context must usually be consulted to determine which is meant in any given case, as here. — *iniurias*: this word, in accordance with its derivation (*in-ius*), always implies some injustice or wrong, not mere 'injury.'

37 14 *erat, there was*, as often when in this first position. — *autem, now*; cf. **2 2**.

37 15 *ante muros*: notice that the first position in the sentence is the most emphatic. Hence any word or phrase that stands there is important for some reason or other. When there is no other emphasis the subject usually stands there (except for connecting words), that being, as the thing talked about, the most emphatic. When, as here, some other word or phrase comes first, that word is the most so, more commonly because opposed to something else coming later. We express this emphasis by a stress of voice, and if one can become accustomed to express it so in thought, the first word will often give a clue to the meaning of the whole sentence. Here *ante muros*, if emphasized, suggests an opposition to some other

place. This is found in the next sentence, introduced by the adversative *sed*, 'In the field, etc., . . . but in the *siege* it was otherwise.'

37 20 *ne . . . sentirent*, *that they might not*, etc., shown to be a purpose by the use of *ne*. If it were *ut non* it would be a result-clause and mean 'so that they did not,' etc.

37 23 *loco*: the abl. alone for the 'way by, in, or over which,' etc., often called the abl. of route; cf. *semitis*, **9 25**, where the meaning is more obvious.

37 24 *murorum*, etc.: gen. with *potiti sunt*; § 249. *a*; B. 330; G. 407-*d*; H. 410. *v*.

37 29 *Iudaeos*, etc.: see 2 Chron. 36. 22-23.

38 2 *restituerent*: cf. *ducere*, **33 10**.

38 8 *Massagetarum*: subjective gen.; see note, **37 12**.

38 13 *faceret*: cf. *efficerent*, **19 28**, and *solliciteris*, **35 13**; in the direct it would be *quid faciam?*—*Croesum*: cf. No. 21.

38 14 *suaderet*: in the direct, *quid suades?*

38 15 *postulasset*: cf. *fefellisset*, **9 13**.

38 20 *relicta*: adj. agreeing with *castra*.

38 27 *nisi id feceris*, etc.: a vivid fut. condition; § 307. 1; B. 302; G. 595; H. 508. Note again the use of the fut. perf. where we should use the fut. or even the pres.; cf. **33 5**, **36 13**, **36 20**.

39 2 *illi*, *to her*, i.e. Tomyris.

39 8 *dimicabant*: notice how this imperf. of description is surrounded by perfs. of narration; cf. note, **21 2**.

39 11 *cum diceret*, *saying*.—*quod*: its antecedent is the thought of the principal clause; trans. *as*.

THE STORY OF ULYSSES.—Ulysses, a celebrated Greek hero, took a prominent part in the long siege of Troy. After the fall of the city, he set out with his followers on his homeward voyage to Ithaca, an island of which he was king; but, being driven out of his course by northerly winds, he was compelled to touch at the country of the Lotus Eaters, who are supposed to have lived on the north coast of Libya (Africa). Some of his comrades were so delighted with the lotus fruit that they wished to remain in the country, but Ulysses compelled them to embark again, and continued his voyage. He next came to the island of Sicily and fell into the hands of the giant Polyphemus, one of the Cyclops. After several of his comrades had been killed by the monster, Ulysses made his escape by stratagem, and next reached the country of the Winds. Here he received the help of Æolus, king of the winds, and having set sail again arrived within sight of Ithaca; but owing to the folly of his companions the winds became suddenly adverse, and they were again driven back. They then touched at an island occupied by Circe, a powerful enchantress, who exer-

cised her charms on the companions of Ulysses and turned them into swine. By the help of the god Mercury Ulysses himself not only escaped this fate, but forced Circe to restore her victims to human shape. After staying a year with Circe, Ulysses again set out and eventually reached his home.

40 1 annos: the regular acc. of 'time how long.'—**obsessam esse**: notice that **constat**, being an impers. verb, can take an acc. with its infin. as a kind of subject.

40 5 redire: a complementary infin. with **maturaverunt**.

40 6 magno cum gaudio: note that manner is rarely expressed by a noun standing alone. Regularly we have **cum**, or an adjective, or sometimes both, as here, with the noun. Cf. **grato animo**, **6 12**.

40 7 erat: cf. **37 14**.

40 8 quem, etc.: some care is necessary in translating such an expression, inasmuch as in English we do not use relatives in clauses already dependent, such as the indir. disc. construction. We must therefore use the direct disc., *who, some say*, etc.

40 10 constat: again with infinitive clause as subj., as in line 2. It is not a real subject, but takes the place of one.

40 11 antequam: notice that this is a relative form, 'before . . . than,' and hence introduces a new clause, though we translate it simply *before*, which does not *necessarily* have a relative force.

40 15 videndae: notice that the gerundive, being a verbal adjective and originally passive, agrees with its noun and hence we naturally change its voice in translation. Observe also that when a word belongs in sense to two or more nouns it very often agrees only with the nearest, but, as here, is taken also with the other.

40 16 postquam, *after*; notice that the relative part of this word is usually dropped in English, though its connective force remains. Cf. **antequam**, above. — **milia**: cf. **annos**, l. 1.

40 18 aliae alias, *different*. This is a very common Latin idiom where different predicates are distributed among different subjects, *some to one, others to others*, or simply *different*.

40 19 qua: the vehicle in Latin is usually treated as means, and has no preposition.

40 22 referrent: a purpose-clause, here introduced by a relative. Translate by the English infin. *to*, etc.

41 1 facere: cf. **redire**, **40 5**. — **tamen**: see note, **6 6**.

41 2 quaerunt, *were seeking for*. **Dum** is regularly followed by the pres., hence the real time must be determined by the context. — **quibusdam**: dat. after **obviam facti** (*meeting*).

41 3 accidit: here followed by an *ut*-clause as a kind of subject. Impers. verbs are followed by *ut*-clauses or by the infin. according to their meaning. Cf. the construction with *constat*, **40 2** and **10**.

41 5 patriae, sociorum: gen. with *obliti*; § 219. 1; B. 206. *b*; G. 376; H. 406. 2.

41 6 mansuros: sc. *esse*, which is almost regularly omitted in the fut. infinitive.

41 7 cibo: cf. *felicitate*, **5 13**, and note.

41 8 at: used here, as usual, to mark the change of subject.

41 14 secum: a dependent clause that contains the words or thought of the main subj. may refer to that subj. by the use of *se*. Hence an apparent ambiguity of reference often arises, but the context usually at once determines it, as here. In this use *se* is called an indirect reflexive. Cf. *se*, **3 11**, and note.

41 16 cum ita essent: cf. *cum esset*, **35 23**.

41 22 solvit: lit. 'let go,' referring to casting off the lines before sailing.

41 23 diei: this gen. depends on *postridie*, which, though regarded as an adverb, is really a noun with an adjective in the locative case and so takes a gen. like any other noun. It is like the obsolete 'on the morrow of that day.'

42 2 quod habitari: it happens that in this case the English admits the same construction as the Latin. It is well in such cases, in order to gain freedom in translation, to translate in both ways, *which they found was inhabited* (cf. **40 8**) and *which they found to be inhabited*.

42 5 quod cum: cf. *quo cum*, **41 12**.

42 7 quis . . . incoleret: notice that an indir. question can depend upon any word that suggests a question, as here *mirantur*, *were wondering* (cf. *quaerunt*, **41 2**).

42 9 quidem: the most common use of this word is to introduce an emphatic concession, *to be sure, it is true*. At any rate, it sets off the word that it follows against another which is to come after, as here *sed ingenti*, etc. Often it admits of no formal translation, but is best expressed by intonation of voice or emphasis in reading. — *specie*, etc.: abl. of quality or description. Cf. *aetatis*, **33 17**, and note.

42 10 autem: opposing the certainty they now had in regard to the Cyclops to their first surprise at the monster. As *quidem* refers forward, so *autem* refers backward. The Romans could have hardly read their own language without these signboards all along the road.

43 5 simul ac viderunt: notice that these temporal connectives, *ubi*, *postquam*, *simul ac*, etc., which take the perf. ind., refer simply to

time, and do not express circumstances like **cum** with the subjv.; cf. **40** 16, **41** 13, and **18** 14.

43 12 **mercatores**, etc.: persons who visited islands would naturally be either traders or pirates.

43 13 **praedandi**: the gerund being a passive used impersonally (cf. the gerundive) is treated as active and its passive origin disregarded, and it does not, like the gerundive, have a noun to agree with, just as **pugnatum est**, *they fought*, needs no subject in Latin.

43 14 **causā**: in this sense the word always *follows* a genitive depending on it; cf. 'for Heaven's sake.'

43 15 **sibi**: cf. **secum**, **41** 14.—**iniuria**, *harm*, but with the idea of injustice; cf. **37** 12.

43 16 **vecti essent**: subjv. as a part of his question; cf. **fefellisset**, **9** 13, and **postulasset**, **38** 15.

43 17 **sibi praecavendum esse**: an *impers.* sentence turned into *indir. disc.* As in **9** 8 **verum est linteum** becomes **verum esse linteum**, so **mihi praecavendum est**, *I must take care*, becomes **sibi praecavendum esse**, though in this case there is no subject to become accusative. The personal construction should be used in English, *that he must*, etc.

43 22 **dum haec geruntur**, *while this was going on*; cf. **41** 2.

43 23 **occupavit**: not 'occupied'; see Vocabulary.

43 25 **postquam**: see **simul ac**, l. 5, and note.

43 26 **humi**: see § 258. *d*; B. 232. 2; G. 411. R. 2; H. 426. 2.—**quod cum**, etc.: cf. **9** 8, and note.

44 2 **in eo erat ut**: *was on the point of*, a not uncommon Latin idiom.

44 3 **agendum**: *sc. esse*. The subject is **nihil**. Remember that the second periphrastic is always passive.

44 4 **antequam . . . faceret**, *before he should do*, etc. The subjv., showing that the clause is a part of the plan expressed in **explorare**, gives it this force. The ind. would mean 'before he did this' and would imply that he did it; cf. **40** 11. The English form, however, is ambiguous, and the context must show whether there is a 'should' implied in it or not.

44 6 **nihil sibi**, etc.: this is an easy example of the fut. conditional sentence in *indir. disc.* Ulysses would say **nihil mihi proderit, si P. interfecero**, *it will do me no good if I kill* (lit. 'shall have killed') *Polyphemus*. The fut. **proderit** in the principal clause becomes in the *indir. disc.* the fut. infin. **profuturum (esse)**, and **interfecero** in the subordinate clause becomes **interfecisset** on account of the past tense of **intellexit**, the governing verb. Here again we have a typical example to learn by heart.

44 9 **quae cum**, etc.: cf. **41** 16.

44 13 multis et magnis: notice that the Latin connects two adjs. used together by a conj. We say *many great*.

44 14 dubium esse: where a word of doubting is negative (*no doubt that* and the like) the universal construction after it is a subjunctive clause with **quin**, precisely like the English 'no doubt but that.' English, however, more commonly uses the parallel construction, 'doubt that,' which is usually to be preferred. As the construction requires the subjv., any future idea must be expressed by the periphrastic **-rus**.

44 16 idem quod, *the same as*, the regular expression.

44 22 postquam: again, as usual, with the perf. ind.; so again in l. 27 and **45 2**.

44 27 hoc, *the following*.

45 4 eodem . . . quo: see **44 16**.

45 8 ad bibendum: lit. 'for drinking,' gerund denoting purpose; translate *to drink*.

45 14 gratiam . . . referam, *repay*; cf. *gratias agere, thank*, and *gratiam habere, feel thankful*.

45 20 extremum palum, *the end of the stake*. This idiom is very common with words denoting part or order, like **prima aestas**, *the first part of summer*; see § 193; B. 241. 1; G. 291. R. 2; H. 440. 2. N. 1.

45 21 dum dormit: note again **dum** with the pres. ind.; cf. **41 2**, also l. 24, below.

45 23 quod necesse fuit, *as a matter of course, as was to be expected*.

46 6 si . . . volneravit, . . . est: a good example of the so-called simple condition, where no opinion is expressed as to the truth or falsity of the supposition.

46 8 adficiaris: the same construction as in **44 14**; but here there is no future idea, so that the periphrastic is not necessary.

47 2 hoc: cf. **hoc, 44 27**.

47 4 quas vidit pinguissimas: the regular order in Latin for *the fattest that he saw*.

47 5 unum, etc.: i.e. each group of three carried one man.

47 11 evasit: Ulysses himself escaped by clinging to the body of a great ram. See Fig. 19.

47 14 quo: cf. **41 12**.

47 16 cum: this word might go with **animis**. It is only by the general sense of the narrative that it is seen to connect the verb. If the verb had no connective it would mean 'would have expected,' which makes no sense here.—**in horas,** *from hour to hour*; hence the construction with **in**; cf. **in dies,** *day by day*.

47 17 id quod erat, *as was really the case*.

47 18 auxiliandi causa: a common way of expressing purpose in Latin. Observe again that *causā* stands *after* its genitive.

47 19 satis tutum, etc.: another example of a conditional sentence in indir. disc.; cf. **44 6**. Here, however, there are two exceptional uses. We should expect *futurum esse*, corresponding to the other case, but a general judgment in Latin as to any course is regularly expressed by the pres. So here Ulysses's thought would be *non tutum est* (not *erit*), requiring *esse* in the narrative indir. disc. Second, in the other case we had the pluperf. subjv. because the action in the direct was regarded as completed in the fut. (*interfecero*); here, however, it is a continued action — 'shall remain' (*manebo* or *maneam*). This, under the same circumstances, becomes imperf. subjv. *maneret*.

47 28 minimum afuit quin: a troublesome Latin idiom; lit. 'it was a very short distance off but that,' etc. The *quin*-clause is used, as in **44 14** (*minimum* conveying a neg. idea). In both this and the preceding (*tutum esse*) there is no proper subject, though the dependent clause in each case in a manner takes the place of one. Do not mechanically call it such, for the nature of the clauses makes that absurd. The meaning is obvious and should be expressed in an English idiom.

48 4 hic vasto, etc.: a quotation from Virgil's *Æneid*, Bk. i, 52-54.

48 7 hospitio: one of the few words that is used without *cum* or adjective or genitive modifier to express manner. See note, **40 6**.

48 8 ad recuperandas viris: a gerundive expression of purpose; cf. **14 6**, **21 26**, and below, l. 22.

48 12 patriae videndae: a gerundive expression depending on *cupidum*; § 218. *a*; B. 204. 1; G. 374; H. 399. 1; using the gerund we should have *patriam videndi*. Cf. note, **24 6**.

48 14 tantum: an adverb.

48 15 navigando: dat. of gerund with *idoneum*; § 299; B. 338. 2; G. 429; H. 541. II.

48 17 gratiis . . . relatis: this should properly be *actis*, because as it stands it means 'return the favor' or 'repay,' which Ulysses could hardly have done. See note, **45 14**.

48 23 mirabantur, *had been wondering*; § 277. *b*; B. 260. 4; G. 234; H. 469. 2.

48 25 omittendam: the same form which serves as the gerundive is in the nom. and acc. (without a prep.) used as a 'participle of necessity,' meaning 'to be,' 'ought to be,' and the like, making, with the verb *sum*, the so-called second periphrastic conjugation. In the infin. the copula *esse* may be expressed or not. This use can easily be distinguished from the

gerundive or gerund because the noun and the partic. always stand in a subj. or pred. relation in the nom. or acc. and without a preposition.

49 3 velut, etc.: another quotation from Virgil's *Æneid*, Bk. i, 82-3.

49 4 data: sc. est.

49 6 erant profecti: notice that the subjv. is not required in a clause dependent on the result construction. Such clauses do not usually share in the relation which the subjv. expresses.

49 7 referrentur: in the same construction as **possent**.

49 8 saccum solutum: as in English, the copula is often omitted in Latin where the noun and its modifier make together a conceivable picture. Here the 'bag untied' means the same as 'that the bag was untied.' This principle extends much farther in Latin than in English.

49 9 tum vero: as usual, introducing the climax of an action or situation. — **exarsit**, etc.: notice the difference in the tenses even so closely connected. The perfect states the fact once for all, the imperf. means 'proceeded to' or 'began to,' thus dwelling on the description.

49 11 videndae: gerundive, as is clear from its agreeing with **patriae**; cf. **48 12**. — **proiecissent**: the subjv. shows that this is not stated by the author as his own reason, but as the one given by Ulysses in a kind of ind. disc. Cf. the stock example **fefellisset**, **9 13**. For a reason stated by the author, where the ind. is used, cf. **perspexerat**, **19 15**; § 321; B. 286. 1; G. 540, 541; II. 516.

50 3 frumentandi causā: cf. **47 18** and note, also **43 14**. — **egrediendum esse**: used impers.; lit. 'that it must be disembarked.' Cf. note, **43 17**. Translate into good English.

50 5 haberent: the subjv. in the indir. disc. as a part of Ulysses's thought. Notice how regular is the idiomatic subjv. in subordinate clauses of indir. disc., though a well-known fact may be expressed seeming to require no modal form.

50 6 cum . . . tenerent: the descriptive **cum** expressing the circumstances as a cause.

50 7 occubuissent: the indir. question is somewhat more freely used in Latin than we should expect in English. Here there is no question about the death, but only about the degree of cruelty of it (**quam crudeli**). Yet the main verb has to take the indir. question construction as much as if the verb were queried. Notice also that any word that can be used of thought can introduce such a question. One can 'remember' or even 'see' or 'feel' a question as well as ask it.

50 8 egressi essent: the same principle as the indir. disc., but here it appears as a part of the indir. question. It is an almost universal principle

that whatever is the thought of some other person than the writer should be idiomatically in the subjv. This should be observed, but rarely needs to be expressed in the translation. If you find the meaning you can then translate intelligently.

50 9 vellet: another idiomatic subjv., which need not now be analyzed, as it requires no modal form in English. Cf. **deberet**, **18 17**. — **quae cum ita essent**: don't be afraid to translate *this being so*, merely because the absolute case is rare in English. That is just the English expression for what is meant here. The subjv. **essent** is the same as **tenerent**, **1. 7**.

50 11 alteri (sc. **parti**): always one of two; distinguish from **alius**. For dative, cf. **copiis**, **19 7**.

50 12 praeesset: here, though the construction is, as often before, that of purpose, yet the best translation is with *should*. It is as mechanical to translate always with one expression as the other.

50 13 uter: which of two. Distinguish from **quis** or **qui** referring to any number. It is always interrogative, and here introduces an indir. question.

50 13 inter se: notice that this is the regular reciprocal (*each other*) form in Latin. One can easily see how 'among themselves' can come to be used for that idea. — **hoc facto**: sometimes the abl. abs. admits of a literal translation; see note, **50 9**. 'This being done' has been good English for centuries.

50 14 sorte evenit, *the lot fell upon, or it fell by lot to*.

50 15 susciperet: a result-clause is regularly used to express what happens, remains, is added, or follows, and the like; cf. **ut . . . abierit**, **30 12**.

50 16 his rebus: here the 'absolute case' in English would be clumsy and should be carefully avoided. Use your common sense both in what you adopt and in what you avoid.

50 18 occupaverat: the Latin often expresses a present or past state of things by means of the action that preceded it. So here, *had taken possession*, etc. — **quin irent**: the idiomatic construction after verbs of doubt when negated; cf. notes **44 14**, **47 28**. The clause is one of result introduced by **quin**, which is another form for **quo non**, *whereby not, (so) but that*.

50 21 visuiros: without **esse** (as often), as if it were 'supposed themselves not about to see.' Cf. note, **41 6**. The principle here involved is a far-reaching one, and on it depends the construction of the gerundive, the abl. abs., and many others; cf. **post finitos labores**, **36 6**. — **aliquantum**: acc. of extent.

50 22 villam: the regular word for a country house of any kind, as **domus** for a city house.

50 25 pulsarent: cf. **irent**, **1. 19**.

50 26 in hospitium, to accept her hospitality.

51 2 foris: abl. of place where; cf. **foras**, **50 26**. — **at**: as usual, to introduce a change of subject; cf. **41 8**.

51 4 accubuerunt: the Greeks and Romans reclined at meals; cf. No. 6. We may translate it *took their places*.

51 5 Circe: the cut gives an ancient representation of the various points of the story all at once, in the antique manner.

51 13 eo: an adverb.

51 15 at: cf. l. 2.

51 19 si quid, etc. The Latin needs no verb of saying after speech or thought has been suggested, as here in **obsecrare**. We have here another conditional sentence in indir. disc. In English the direct would be 'If anything . . . (shall have happened) *happens to you* . . . the lives of all *will be* in the greatest peril,' — **Si quid tibi acciderit**, . . . **erit**, — a vivid fut. condition. Cf. this with **44 6** and notice that the forms here are perfectly regular.

51 21 neminem: obj. of **adducturum**.

51 22 ei licere, etc.: another condition in indir. disc. The direct form would be 'tibi licet, si mavis, in navi manere,' a simple condition. Observe that the changes of mood and tense are regular for indir. discourse.

51 24 nullo sequente, *without any one following him*. 'Without' is often expressed in this way. The abl. of **nemo** is not used, hence **nullo**.

52 2 fecisset: cf. note on **haberent**, **50 5**. — **ut . . . transiret**: a clause of purpose or result is frequently in apposition with a pronoun, so that the clause becomes manageable as a noun. Here we translate *was on the point of*, etc. We had the same idiom in **44 2**.

52 4 manu, *in his hand*: but the Latin regards it as means.

52 5 nonne, etc.: *do you not?* etc.; the regular particle for this kind of question.

52 7 num vis, *you don't want, do you?* etc.; the regular particle for this kind of question; cf. l. 5. It is usually said that **num** expects the answer 'No,' and **nonne**, 'Yes.' This is not strictly true. It is sometimes implied that it ought to be 'No' and 'Yes,' but not always even that. Cf. 'You don't happen to be going to town to-day, do you?' where an affirmative is hoped for.

52 11 valere: for **valet** of direct disc. Notice that in English we change the tense of the main verb in indir. disc., while the Romans changed the mood and kept the tense; so here we say, 'He said, *was* potent.'

52 13 impetum: obj. of **facias**. — **vide ut facias**: a strengthened imv., as in English, *see that you make*. The subjv. is a purpose-clause, as with most words which have an idea of something 'to be done.'

52 14 *mortalis*, etc.: a quotation from Virgil's *Aeneid*, Bk. iv, 277-8.
— *visus*: plur. for sing., much used by poets.

53 1 *subeunda*: gerundive, which must be used here, because the gerund with a prep. does not admit an object.

53 3 *atque*, *as*, as often; cf. *aliter atque*, l. 10, below.

53 10 *atque*, *than*; cf. l. 3. In both cases the ideas are connected as if alike, and the comparison is left to be made.

53 12 *quidquam*: cf. note, **18 16**.

53 18 *reduceret*: cf. note, **3 11**.

53 20 *nisi*, etc.: again a fut. conditional sentence in indir. disc.; cf. **51 19**. Here the direct form would be *nisi id factum erit, poenas sumam*. — *sumpturum*: the Latin treats punishment as a penalty to be paid, not as punishment to be suffered, and says 'pay the penalty' (*supplicium dare*) and 'exact the penalty' (*poenas sumere*). But English more commonly treats it as inflicted, hence *sumo* may be rendered *inflict*.

53 24 *atrium*: see note, **4 11**.

54 5 *diceret*: cf. referent, **40 22**.

54 6 *Circaeam*: cf. *Actiacam*, **7 13**, and note. — *universi*, *with one accord*, or the like, — the peculiar meaning of the word.

54 8 *diei*: cf. note, **41 23**.

54 9 *discedere*: a complementary infin. after the expression *in animo habebat*.

54 13 *ei persuasum sit*: again the impers. use of the pass. of a1 intrans. verb; lit. 'it was persuaded to him.' Cf. note, **18 17**. — *maneret*: a purpose-clause dependent on *persuasum sit*. When verbs taking an object-clause of purpose become pass. the object-clause may be treated as subject.

54 14 *consumpserat*: the pluperf. here is irregular. The perf. only is usually found with *postquam*, *ubi*, and the like. See note, **43 5**.

54 19 *reficiendas*: gerundive. Could the gerund be used? See note, **53 1**.

54 21 *confecerint*: the tense does not follow the general rule for the sequence of tenses, but result-clauses allow this exception. — *ubi vidit*: cf. l. 14.

54 24 *maturandum sibi*: cf. *sibi praecavendum*, **43 17**, and note.

54 27 *perveniret*: the subjv. is used on account of the 'should' or 'could' idea involved; cf. **44 4**.

54 28 *longum est*: in a judgment as to a future course of action, the Latin uses not *sit*, 'it would be,' but *est*, 'it is.'

LIFE OF CAIUS MARIUS. — This selection and the one that follows on the life of Julius Cæsar are taken from *Viri Romae*, a well-known compila-

tion from the writings of Cicero, Livy, Sallust, Valerius Maximus, and other Roman authors, made by Charles François Lhomond (1727-1794). The Latin has been somewhat simplified, but is in the main taken *verbatim* from the authors named. The style is, therefore, in general good and the Latin classical.

55 1 C. : translate *Caius*. The Latin name is *Gāius*, but the Romans at one time wrote C for both C and G, and retained the character in the abbreviations C. and Cn. for *Gaius* and *Gnaeus*. This spelling was forgotten later, and the word came into English as *Caius*, though it ought to be *Gāius* in Latin.

55 2 *duce Scipione* : this free use of the abl. abs. is idiomatic, where we should say 'under Scipio,' etc. — *Scipione* : this was the younger Scipio Africanus, about B.C. 146; see No. 24. — *posuit* : here *passed*; lit. 'put,' as we might say 'a man put the best years of his life into something.'

55 3 *impigram ad*, etc. : for order, see note, 18 3.

55 6 *inter cenam* : simply *at dinner*.

55 8 *si quid*, etc. : here is a conditional sentence of the same sort as in 51 19 turned into an indir. question. Notice that *accidisset* stands for a fut. perf., as in the previous case, and is changed in the same way. The main clause is not a statement ('the state will have') but a question ('will the state have?'). It does not therefore become fut. infin. as in the other cases, but becomes an indir. question and takes the first periphrastic subjv., the regular way to represent a future idea in a dependent clause.

55 8 *quemnam* : more emphatic than *quem*.

55 10 *hunc*, *this young man*, or simply *him*. The acc. depends upon the verb to be supplied from the previous sentence, an ellipsis common in English, as well as in Latin.

55 11 *rebus*, *deeds, exploits* : the abl. regularly after *dignus*. Notice again a colorless noun colored by the context; see note on *res*, 7 8. — *spiritus* : here, *ambition*.

56 1 Q. *Metellum*, etc. : we have here a freer and more characteristic order than we have usually had before. In reading, attack it fearlessly, noticing that the first word is acc., and hold it ready to be the object of a verb, or what was really the same thing to the Romans, the subject of an infin. The object first is not absolutely strange to English and is an order often convenient. The verb which governs this object is found to be *crim-natus est* (*he accused*). The natural modifier of this idea is expressed by 'of,' and *bellum ducere* can mean nothing else than 'prolonging the war.' In this way, without suspending any construction or changing the Latin order, we have a very good, if not the best, English rendering. If we had

undertaken to analyze the sentence by rule it would have taken twice as long, and very likely we should not have succeeded at all.

56 2 eo: i.e. Metellus.

56 3 si se, etc.: another case of a fut. condition in indir. disc.; cf. 51 19 and give the direct form. Remember that the Latin needs no new verb of saying.

56 8 perfugerat: notice the fondness of the Romans for taking a new point in the narrative and bringing up the circumstances by the pluperfect.

56 10 fudit: here the narrative begins again.

56 13 Boccho: dat. with persuasit, which is followed, as usual, by a clause of purpose.

56 14 vinctus: distinguish from victus.

56 15 triumphans: see note, 7 16.

56 16 carcerem: this prison was the so-called Tullianum, perhaps originally a well-house, which is still shown at the foot of the Capitoline Hill on the side of the Forum. It was customary to kill dangerous captives in this prison.

56 17 os ridentis, etc.: i.e. into a forced smile. os is object of diduxisse, which depends upon fertur.

56 18 fertur: = dicitur; the subj. is Iugurtha.

56 19 frigidum, etc.: the Romans were fond of hot baths, and the bath houses were usually kept warm by special arrangements. Hence the point of this grim speech.

56 22 ei . . . decretum est: the functions of the different magistrates were assigned either by the senate or the people, of either of which decernere can be used.

56 25 aliquid: obj. of darent. — terrae: partit. gen. In our idiom simply *some land*; cf. note on sestertium, 7 18.

56 26 quod, *that which*, the rel. being the obj. of petere, to be supplied from its use in the main clause. The omission of the antecedent (*id*) is not unusual in such a case as this; cf. note, 8 22.

57 1 tres duces: see Introd. to Cæsar, p. 116. — non sustinuerunt, *failed to*, etc.; cf. note, 19 4.

57 2 actum erat . . . nisi, etc.: a form of expression common in Latin but not unknown in English, in which a thing is said to have *actually*

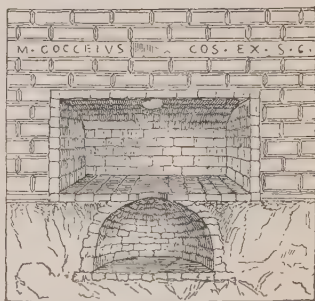


FIG. 104. — THE TULLIANUM.

happened, instead of saying it *would have happened* if something had not occurred to prevent. Here we should expect the 'contrary to fact' construction (cf. 35 12), 'actum esset nisi fuisset,' but to show how near it came, the thing is said to have actually happened (actum erat). The condition, however, is expressed in the usual manner.

57 3 nisi Marius fuisset, *if it had not been for Marius*, the regular way of saying this in Latin; see preceding note.

57 4 sub ipsis, etc. : at Aquæ Sextiæ in the valley of the Rhone, near the Isère.

57 5 medium, *in the middle* (of it).

57 6 copia: sc. erat; the copula is sometimes omitted in rapid narrative. — causa victoriae: notice that this is not the causâ of purpose, which is in the abl. and follows its noun.

57 7 flagitante: always used of urgent demand.

57 9 eaque, *and such*. — victores: as the Latin eschews meaningless rhetorical expressions, this must express some additional idea as a pred. apposition, like 'gaining the victory' or 'being victorious.'

57 11 caesa: sc. esse; but cf. 50 21.

57 12 saltu: i.e. a wooded height near the battle field.

57 13 vir: here again we have a significant appositive, 'being a man,' etc. Cf. note, 18 2, and victores, l. 9.

57 14 tropaea: it was customary to set up at the point where the victory was obtained a rude figure of a man with arms hung upon him (see Fig. 28), and this display was used also in the Roman triumph. Here it is intimated that this stalwart German was more conspicuous than the lay figures on which they hung the captured arms.

57 16 qui: subj. of traieicissent. — ex alia parte: the Teutons were intending to cross into Italy by the Riviera; the Cimbri with the Helvetii succeeded in crossing the Alps from the north, and were met by Marius on the Po. — Athesim: the Adige, a tributary of the Po on the north.

57 18 eis: dat. after occurrit; § 228; B. 187. III; G. 347; H. 386.

57 21 quos . . . dicerent, *what brothers they meant*.

57 22 tenent: note the emphatic position, 'they have it.'

57 24 ludibrio (dat.) haberi: cf. 'hold in derision.' — ultionem: the Latin says 'threaten vengeance to,' we say *threaten with vengeance*, taking a different point of view.

57 25 advenissent: notice that this seems contrary to the rule after simul atque; cf. § 324; B. 287; G. 561-3; H. 518. The reason for the subjv. is that this is a part of what the Gauls said, i.e. implied indir. disc. The main clause 'that they would do something' is absorbed in minati ultionem. Cf. § 341. c.

57 26 civile: properly the act of citizens with fellow-citizens, but forced later into the meaning 'courteous.' Cf. English 'to be civil.' — **foret:** used for **sit**, by a late and not strictly classical usage. — **fratribus**, etc.: abl. abs.; a common way in Latin of expressing the English idea of 'without doing something'; cf. note, **51 24**.

58 3 diem: i.e. to set a time.

58 5 Marius cum, etc.: a troublesome mode of expression, not unclassical but somewhat rare. The Latin likes to put the main subj. first, preceding connectives. But, as the subj. of the main clause is usually also the subj. of the dependent clause, there is rarely any difficulty. But here the main clause becomes passive and so the subject is changed. Hence **Marius** must be taken only with **instituisset**, contrary to the apparent order, and a new start made with the main clause.

59 1 caesa: sc. esse.

59 3 cum: this must go with **pugnarent**; for mood, cf. **35 23**. — **obiectis:** i.e. drawn up in front. — **desuper:** modifies **pugnarent**, i.e. they mounted on their carts and fought from them.

59 5 tamen: i.e. in spite of their brave defence. Cf. note, **6 6**.

59 8 defendere: perf. ind.; distinguish from **defendere**.

59 10 ei: dat. with **inviderant**; § 227; B. 187. II; G. 346; H. 385.

59 11 ut, as. — novo homini: this was a term applied by the Romans to the first man of a family to hold office.

59 16 iuris civilis: the regular name for all law, as affecting the rights of citizens, what we should call abstractly "the Law" opposed to military powers.

59 18 illa: i.e. B.C. 88.

59 19 causam, etc.: change the voice in translating. See note on **cenam**, **4 19**.

59 21 Sullae: dat. of reference, but best translated by the genitive.

59 25 hostis: obj. of **fugiens**, which sometimes takes an acc. in the sense of 'to flee from' or 'escape.'

59 26 ut erat: cf. **32 6**.

60 4 Marium se, etc.: as the subj. and obj. of an infin. are both in the acc., an apparent ambiguity often arises, but usually the context at once decides, as here.

60 7 agrum: an ancient state consisted of a city, in which was the government and where all business was transacted, and a greater or smaller territory occupied by farmers and the like. This last was the **ager**.

60 9 lictor: the regular officer of a person in supreme command.

60 10 hoc: i.e. Sextilius. — **laesisset:** again the subjv. in informal indir. disc. as containing Marius's thought.

60 11 *tamen*, at any rate; i.e. notwithstanding Sextilius's position.

60 12 *nisi vellet*: a simple condition thrown into subjv. imperf. by the indir. disc. In the direct form, 'nisi vis.' — *animadverti*: impers., action to be taken against; a euphemism for 'put to death.' — *torveque*, etc., and as Marius, etc. The Latin often thus compresses a clause into a simple participle.

60 13 *et vocem*, etc., and did n't say anything. — *tandem ecquid*: these emphatic forms are transferred from the direct question, where they would mean 'Pray, tell me, is there anything that,' etc., to the indirect. In English they can hardly be translated except by stress of voice, 'whether there was n't anything he wanted,' etc.

60 16 *de inconstantia*, etc.: connect with *eum admonebat*.

61 1 *rerum*, fortune; cf. note. **7 8**. — *cum*: here the best translation is *when*, because in this case the English word has the same implication of a situation that belongs to the Latin construction.

61 11 *diripiendas*: gerundive agreeing with *domos*, expressing purpose. It is used only in the acc. with a noun after verbs meaning to 'give,' 'deliver,' 'undertake,' and the like. It resembles the partic. of necessity in implying something to be done; § 294. *d*; B. 337. 7. *b*.) 2); G. 430; H. 544. N. 2.

61 12 *civili luctu*: almost an abl. of time, so that the prep. is felt to be unnecessary.

61 13 *peteret*: cf. *deberet*, **18 17**, and *vellet*, **50 9**. Relative-clauses that are used to state some fact about an antecedent already defined take the ind.; but when the relative clause expresses some quality or characteristic of an antecedent not otherwise defined, the subjv. is used, and the clause is called a clause of characteristic. An ind. relative clause means 'a man who actually does something'; a relative clause of characteristic means 'a man of such a character or quality as to do something.' So here the thought is 'no one could be found of such a character as to,' etc.

61 16 *virī*: modifies *vitia*.

61 17 *dictu*: supine with adj.; § 303; B. 340. 2; G. 436; H. 547.

61 18 *quam*, etc.: cf. **19 1**, *quos*, etc., and see note.

61 19 *togatus*: as the Roman citizens wore the toga as the garb of peace, the word is often used as a symbol of peace. — *fraudis*: alluding to the revolutions attempted by Marius.

62 1 *durior*: cf. *artius*, **18 9**, and note.

62 4 *lapide*: the abl. of material; § 244; B. 215; G. 395-6; H. 415.

62 5 *aedificandam*: cf. for a similar use *diripiendas*, **61 11**.

62 6 *doctoribus*: i.e. the Greeks themselves. — *suis*: referring to the subj. of *profuissent*, i.e. *litterae*. — *profuissent*: cf. note, **50 8**.

62 7 confirmatus: used as an adj.; sc. erat.

62 8 ei: dat. of reference, but translate as possessive with **crure**.

62 11 iudicaret: cf. **profuissent**, l. 6.

LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR. — The student should read in connection with this selection, the Life of Cæsar, p. 97.

63 1 familia: abl. of source; source, origin, and material all belong to the same general ablative idea; cf. **lapide**, **62 4**.

63 3 Cinnae: the colleague of Marius in his seventh consulship, B.C. 86, and a prominent democratic leader. — **duxit**: sc. in **matrimonium**. — **cuius pater cum**, *since her father*, etc.

63 4 is: inasmuch as no pronoun would be necessary if the first subject were continued, the presence of **is** shows a change of subject and so it must refer to Sulla.

63 5 neque, *and yet not*. Cæsar by defying Sulla the dictator when but seventeen years old showed the mettle that was in him.

63 6 veste nocte urbe: the Romans, reading their language straight away and using their common sense, were not troubled by three ablatives together.

63 7 quartanae: sc. **febris**, i.e. an intermittent fever that returns every fourth day, or every third day as we reckon.

63 8 prope per, etc., *almost every night*.

63 10 perduceretur: verbs of hindering take **ne** or **quominus**, thus apparently doubling the negative. They are classed as result-clauses because a result is implied, but they were probably originally purpose-clauses, hence **ne**.

63 11 veniam: a noun. The verb of that form would make no sense.

63 14 expugnatum: agrees with **Sullam**. — **vincerent**: for **vincite** of the direct; cf. **9 11** for this regular construction. — **scirent**: regular subjv. after **dummodo**, but the modal form does not appear in English.

63 15 incolumem: no verb **esse** is necessary in Latin, but the construction is like 'I want the window opened'; cf. note, **50 21**.

63 16 partibus, exitio: two datives after **futurum**; cf. **navi praesidio**, **47 14**.

63 19 corona civica: a chaplet of oak leaves presented to the Roman soldier who had saved the life of a comrade in battle and slain his opponent. See Fig. 32.

63 20 per otium: the prep. **per** and some others are used in Latin like many English prepositions to make adverbial phrases in which the sense of the prep. becomes very vague, 'in,' 'at,' 'with,' etc.

63 21 *traicit*: i.e. from the mainland of Asia to Rhodes. For the tense, cf. **41** 2, **45** 21.

65 3 *terrori*, etc., *an object of*, etc. The idiomatic dat. of service has often to be freely translated as 'a means of,' 'a source of,' 'an object of' or simply 'a' (as a pred.); cf. *partibus exitio*, **63** 16; § 233; B. 191; G. 356; H. 390.

65 4 *redimeretur*: notice the constant use of the relative clause to express purpose; cf. *referrent*, **40** 22.

65 6 *quibus numeratis*, *upon the payment of which*; notice the variety of renderings of the abl. abs., as might be expected from its original meaning of 'circumstances in which.'

65 7 *proxime aberat*: the Romans could say 'very near off' just as we say 'very far off.' Some equivalent expression must be substituted in English.

65 8 *ibique*, etc., *and collecting a fleet there and sailing*, etc.

65 10 *piratasque*: with several connected words a conjunction is used with each, or *-que* may be added to the last, as here.

65 11 *quod illis*, etc.: notice the difference of idiom between Latin and English with words of threatening; cf. note, **57** 24.

65 12 *crucique*: the connective *-que* and sometimes others are used, not to add something new but only to express a detail already generally included. This sometimes occurs in English as well. So here the crucifixion was the *supplicium* spoken of.

65 13 *quaestori*: i.e. *quaestor provincialis*, an officer appointed as assistant to a consul or *prætor* in charge of a province. — *ulterior*: Spain was divided into two parts, *citerior* and *ulterior*, for military administration. — *obvenit*: the place of administration of such officers was assigned by lot. For this idea compounds of *ob* are especially used; cf. *obtigit*, **9** 18. — *quo profectus*, *on his way thither*. If you are sure you know what the Latin means, don't be afraid of 'free' translations.

65 15 *inter se*: see note, **50** 13. — *num*, *whether*; in indir. questions this particle suggests no answer; cf. notes on **52** 5 and 7.

65 16 *ambitioni*: dat. of reference, regular with *locus est* and similar expressions, expressing our 'for.' — *serio*: opposed to *per iocum*, hence the emphatic position.

65 17 *dominationis*: almost equal to a gerund, *dominandi*, but a little more abstract; cf. *dicendi*, **63** 21, and *regnandi*, in the following lines.

66 2 *Euripidis*, etc.: the couplet is, of course, translated from the Greek, but is in the same iambic metre as the original.

66 3 *gratiā*: used exactly like *causā*; cf. **43** 14. The student may

here call to mind the numerous ways in which purpose (*to, in order to*) is expressed in Latin:

quibus redimeretur, 65 4	ad navigandum, 54 18
ut operam daret, 63 20	postulantis, 57 19
ne excluderetur, 54 24	auxiliandi causa, 47 18
ad expediendas pecunias, 65 4	regem visum, 15 14.

66 4 **rebus**: abl. of respect; § 253; B. 226; G. 397; II. 424. — **colas**: the hortatory subjv. expressing a command.

66 5 **quod**: notice that this rel., though referring to **Gades**, agrees with the pred. **oppidum**, the regular Latin construction in such a case.

66 7 **ignaviam**: governed by **pertaesus** used in an active sense like a deponent. This construction is rather late, taken from Suetonius. Usually the verb is impers. and has the acc. of the person and gen. of the thing.

66 8 **actum esset**: a part of Cæsar's thought; so **subegisset**. — **ætate**: Alexander had 'conquered the world' at the age of thirty-two.

66 12 **aedilis**: these officers had charge of the public buildings. The munificence displayed in this office had the most important bearing on a Roman politician's popularity and advancement.

66 12 **Comitium**: a paved open space adjoining the Forum, the large square between the Capitoline and Palatine Hills. The Forum was surrounded by temples, porticoes, and shops, and was the centre of the life of the city.

66 13 **porticibus**: these were colonnades built in frequented places to protect the people from the weather and as places of public resort. — **venationes**, etc.: the public shows also were in great part in charge of the ædiles. Cæsar's displays surpassed all others in splendor.

66 14 **factum est ut**, etc.: cf. note, **50** 15.

66 17 **miliens sestertium**: a contracted expression for **miliens centena milia sestertium**, a *hundred million sesterces*, about \$4,100,000. The meaning is that Cæsar was worth so much less than nothing.

66 19 **societatem**: the First Triumvirate, B.C. 60.

66 21 **ageretur**: agreements, like commands and laws, take the purpose construction. — **displicisset**: a part of the command (agreement) reported indirectly. The original form would be **ne quid agatur quod . . . displicuerit**, *let nothing . . . which shall* (have), etc. Apart from the technical rule, it is obvious that no form could express this idea indirectly except the subjv., on account of the 'should' notion involved (i.e. the command). All indicatives would imply that the thing happened or was going to happen, neither of which belongs here. — **ulli**: like **quisquam** (**18** 16),

only used with negatives (*not any one*). Here the negative is disguised, but its force affects the dependent as well as the main clause. This will be seen if we try to substitute 'some one' for 'any one' in English.

66 22 plebi divideretur: here because we do not say 'divide *to*,' a beginner might be puzzled; but if one uses 'distribute,' the idioms of the languages will agree. Do not be misled by such differences of expression.

66 26 fasces: the emblems of the consul's authority carried before him by the lictors. — **ei**: the dat. of reference used, as often before, where we might expect the gen. But it means more than that, implying that it was a setting at naught of his authority, or the like.

Colloquial language often has such implications in English, — 'Break his head *for him*,' 'Call three strikes *on him*.' Sometimes this idea can be represented and some times not. Often an adv. will suggest it, as 'insultingly,' 'contemptuously.'

66 28 domo: regularly *domi*, but here copied from Suetonius.

67 1 ad arbitrium, at his pleasure, independently.

67 2 testandī, attestation, as with us in the case of wills or deeds, where the date is given and witnessed.

67 4 actum, done, as we say 'signed, sealed,' etc. — **Iulio et Caesare**: sc. *consulibus*.

67 5 nomine: Romans regularly had three names, e.g. *Gaius* (*praenomen*), *Iulius* (*nomen*), *Caesar* (*cognomen*). — **duobus**: i.e. *consulibus*.

67 6 consulatu: cf. *felicitate*, 5 13. — **Galliam**: see *Introd. to Cæsar*, p. 103.

67 7 annis: observe that the abl. denotes not only the time 'when,' but also the time 'within which.' 'Time within which' is often considered a space of time marked off, as it were, and expressed as 'time when.'

67 9 primus: i.e. he was the first of the Romans to do these things.

67 12 cum . . . tum: see *Vocabulary*. — **multa . . . illud**: notice these vague words characterized by the context. Trans. *exploit, deed*, or the like.

67 13 quod, that, in that, whereas, introducing a substantive clause.

67 15 aquiliferum: see *Fig. 55*.

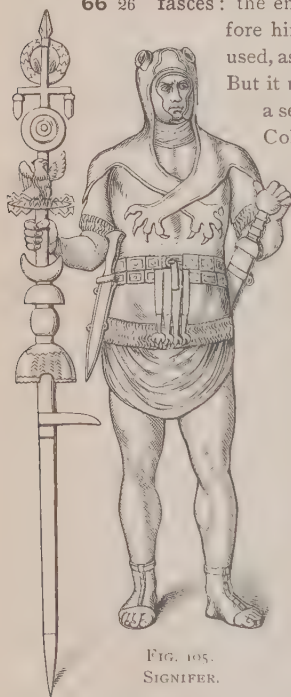


FIG. 105.
SIGNIFER.

67 16 **comprehensum**: translate as if **comprehendit et**. A verb and participle are often best rendered by two verbs.

67 20 **vincere**: the infin. is used with words like **scio**, **doceo**, **metuo** as a complement with the meaning 'how to'; this infin. must be carefully distinguished from the object clauses that follow such verbs. Translate *and taught those how to conquer who were ready to be conquered*. — **paratas**: agrees with **legiones** understood.

68 1 **Crasso**: see Life of Cæsar, p. 63.

68 4 **suspectae**, etc.: sc. **erant**, — *had long been an object of suspicion or jealousy*. — **Pompeiana**: cf. **Circaeam**, **54** 6.

68 5 **ferebat**: the imperf. is not generally used with a negative, and when so used it has some special sense like 'could not.'

68 6 **ne . . . discederet, ut . . . liceret**: here we have side by side a pure purpose-clause and one used as an obj. after a verb of asking. They are not distinguished in Latin, just as they are often alike in English. But the relation ought to be seen and, when necessary, expressed.

68 8 **sudentibus**, etc., *through the influence of Pompey and his friends*.

68 9 **ei** (i.e. Cæsar): the indir. obj. of **negatum est**, the subject of which is Cæsar's foregoing request.

68 10 **vindicaturus**: this form also denotes purpose, but belongs to later writers and should not be imitated. — **bellandum**: again an impersonal periphrastic in indirect discourse. — **ratus**: always pres. in force.

68 11 **Rubiconem**, etc.: notice the true significance of the famous passage of the river, as given here, but often misused in common speech.

68 15 **iacta alea esto**: i.e. let us risk it.

68 17 **Brundisium**: the most important seaport in southern Italy for all traffic to the East.

68 20 **a Brundisio**, etc.: connect with **transmisit**.

69 1 **morae**: gen. with **impatiens**; § 218; B. 204; G. 374; H. 399.

69 6 **prius**: with **quam**; the parts of **antequam** and **priusquam** are often separated in this way.

69 7 **obrutus esset**: the subjv. with **ante quam** and **prius quam** denotes some inner connection between the two clauses, as here, approaching in this the use of **cum**. The ind. here would only be a kind of date recognized as known, like 'before he was made consul,' which is not at all the meaning here. Here the thought is 'before (i.e. until) he was reduced to such a pass that he was nearly engulfed.' The English does not usually mark this difference by any modal form.

69 8 **Pharsalico**: cf. **Actiacam**, **7** 13.

69 9 **ut**, *when*, construed with perf. ind., like **ubi**. — **occisum**: i.e. 'that he was killed'; **esse** might be supplied, but cf. **50** 21.

69 10 **Ptolemaeo** : cf. No. 19, p. 12.

69 12 **Pharnacem** : obj. of **profligavit**.

69 13 **praeferocem** : the word **ferox** usually has in it not so much the idea of 'fierceness' as of the encouragement of success, — *elated, puffed up, emboldened, confident*.

69 14 **quattuor horis** : lit. 'in (the same) four hours'; cf. 67 7. — **quibus**, etc., *from the time that he had come in sight*.

69 15 **quod** : referring to **fulmen**. — **vēnit** : we might expect the pres., but the time is attracted by the time of the events described and so put in the past.

69 17 **ante victum**, etc. : in a sentence like this when a rel. dependent clause occurs, the Romans, by leaving out the verb of the relative clause, were able to make a short-hand construction ; as 'I see you like the same things as I (do)'. In Latin the 'do' is omitted and 'I' takes the same case as 'you.' So here by omitting the copula with **visus** it becomes **visum**, like **victum**. (In English a 'was' is required.)

69 18 **praetulit** : i.e. he had it carried. — **titulum** : in the triumph all sorts of pictures and inscriptions were carried as pictures and transparencies are in modern political processions.

69 19 **Scipionem** : Metellus Scipio, Pompey's father-in-law.

69 22 **Hispaniense**, *in Spain* ; sc. **bellum**. This completion of the idea is shown by the position of **Africani** before **belli**, indicating an opposition between 'African' and some other war. With the **bellum** thus supplied **gravius** agrees. This is one of the most common forms of ellipsis in Latin, as in English. Cf. note, 28 8.

69 24 **sequentium** : the partic. instead of a relative clause ('those who,' etc.) though rare in classical Latin becomes very common later. The gen. depends on **auxiliis** and shows that of which it is composed (gen. of material).

69 25 **sua**, *his customary* ; this pronoun is often used in this and similar senses and may then refer to other nouns than the subject.

70 1 **initum** : sc. est. — **proelium** : the battle of Munda. B.C. 45. — **Marte** : often used for **proelio**.

70 3 **servasset** ; cf. **fefellisset**, 9 13.

70 4 **proinde viderent**, *let them therefore consider*, for **videte** of the direct ; cf. **moveret**, 9 11.

70 8 **omnibus** : dat. with **ignovit**.

70 12 **trecentorum**, etc. : pred. gen. of quality after **esset**, the subj. of which is **annus**.

70 13 **intercalario**, etc. : the incongruity between the lunar and the solar year had before been remedied from time to time by inserting a short

month before the Kalends of March. The calendar as revised by Cæsar has remained without essential change till the present day.

70 19 *ius civile*: Cæsar's death postponed the work of making a digest of the Roman law for more than 500 years.

70 20 *optima quæque*, *all the best*; cf. **18 18**.

70 23 *Pomptinas paludes*: this marshy tract along the coast of Latium is still almost entirely waste, although millions have been spent since Cæsar's time in efforts to reclaim it.

70 27 *in perpetuum*: an adv. phrase; cf. *per otium, per iocum*.

71 3 *consulatus*, *in the consulship*. Notice that the genitive is the regular case for one noun depending on another, no matter what the relation seems to be in English. Nouns are not loosely connected by prepositions as with us.

71 4 *rostris*: so called because adorned with the beaks (*rostra*) of captured ships.

71 6 *sexaginta amplius*, *sixty or more*.

72 1 *Idus*: referring to a single day, though fem. plur.; hence *illas* in next line. — *is*: sc. *inquit*, *answered*.

72 4 *offici*, *of a mark of respect*.

72 5 *renuentique*, *and as he refused*.

72 7 *adversum*: sc. *eum*, which is unnecessary in Latin.

72 8 *adreptum*: see note, **67 16**.

72 10 *obvolvitur*: the regular attitude of a Roman in the presence of death.

72 11 *confossus est*: cf.:—

“ Then burst his mighty heart;
And in his mantle muffling up his face,
Even at the base of Pompey's statua,
Which all the while ran blood, great Cæsar fell.”

72 14 *talem*: i.e. sudden and by violence.

72 15 *et*: correlative with the *et* in l. 18.

72 16 *valetudine*: cf. **21 7**. — *Xenophontem*: the well-known Athenian general and historian (B.C. 400), author of many books, among them a history of Cyrus the Great.

72 18 *occideretur*: the subjv. is somewhat irregular and late. Translate simply *on the day before he died*. — *subitam*: sc. *mortem*.

72 19 *super*: cf. *inter*, **65 11**, and *per*, **65 15**. — *esset*: the indir. question depends on *sermone*; cf. **42 7**.

72 22 *sua*, *a natural*; cf. **69 25**. — *damnati*: i.e. by the gods. — *alius alio*: cf. **40 18**.

72 25 *quo . . . hoc*: abls. used with comparatives in this way are ablatives of degree of difference. Notice also that English inverts the order of the clauses, *the rarer self-restraint is*, etc.

73 3 *diversis*: i.e. different from his own.

73 4 *gravius consulendi*, etc.: a euphemism, *to use severe measures against*, etc.

73 5 *quod*, *that*, introducing a substantive clause. The subjv. is used because the words are given as Cicero's.

73 7 *ultra*: this word, meaning 'beyond,' is constantly used of any act not called for or unprovoked, as here, *of his own accord*, or *without being asked*.

73 11 *fuisse*: notice that the infin. expresses time relative to that of the main verb. *Esse* would mean *is* at the time spoken of; *fuisse* means *was* previously, which become 'was' and 'had been' respectively.

73 15 *quod . . . erat*: notice the ind., expressing the author's reason, not Cæsar's thought.

LIFE OF HANNIBAL. This selection on the life of the great Carthaginian general is from Cornelius Nepos, a contemporary and friend of Cicero, who busied himself chiefly with history, and especially with biography. Only one book of a much larger work of biography, *De Viris Illustribus*, and the lives of Cato and Atticus are extant. He is only valuable for his style and sometimes as being the sole authority for what he treats.

75 1 *Hannibal*, etc.: this is not a full sentence, but only a name in a list, as it were, and gives the title of the biography. — *si . . . est*: notice that in this form of simple cond. there is no indication of the truth or falsity of the matter supposed; so that, as in English, it is often only a form for saying something which in fact is not conditional at all.

75 3 *superarit*: regularly this should be infin. with acc., but occasionally *verum est* takes a result-clause, as if it were *factum est*; see note, **50 15**. — *tanto . . . quanto* (*so much . . . as much*), *so much as*; abl. of degree of difference; cf. *quo . . . hoc*, **72 25**.

75 6 *eo*: i.e. *populo Romano*.

75 7 *quod*: the Latin often uses a neuter pronoun referring loosely to the preceding, like the vulgar English 'which.' It is translated *and*, *now*, *but*.

75 8 *esset*: the context shows that this must be contrary to fact; cf. note, **35 12**. — *videtur*: remember that the Latin prefers the personal construction of verbs of saying, etc., where we should say 'it is said' 'it seems,' etc. — *potuisse*: this must, according to rule, stand for *potuit* of the direct. This would seem not to agree with the contrary to fact idea; but

words of necessity, propriety, and possibility take the ind. in that construction. Translate *could have conquered*.

75 11 prius, etc.: the separation of the two parts of **priusquam** in Latin and the loss of the rel. part (**quam**) in English make this clause seem difficult. But if we remember that the **quam** in such words is a rel. whether we make it one or not, we shall see that the sentence must mean 'that he abandoned his life before he would do that,' where 'before' introduces a clause exactly like a rel. word and so corresponds to **priusquam**.

75 12 deposuerit: for the tense, cf. note, **54 21**.

75 13 destiterit: a rel. with the subjv. very often describes a quality or a significant fact about a man (or thing) which has an important bearing on the rest of the statement. Its effect may be very different, according to the context, so that the translation varies between *because*, *although*, *when*, *in that*, *such that*, and other forms. This is called 'the characteristic relative clause'; see also note, **61 13**.

75 15 ut omittam, *to say nothing of*, expressed as a purpose, not of what is said, but of saying it.

75 19 venissent, fecissent, comperisset, vidisset: all introduced by **cum**.

76 1 tamquam, *on the ground that*, a late usage.

76 2 alia atque, *otherwise than*; cf. **53 10**.

76 9 conficiebatur: contrary to the general rule of **dum** with the pres., and not to be imitated; see **41 2**.

76 12 ducere: in the meaning of *hesitate to*, **dubito** regularly takes the infin. — **faciam**, etc.: a good example of the vivid fut. cond. sentence.

76 14 eam: obj. of **tenentem**, which agrees with **me**.

76 15 numquam: note its emphatic position.

76 17 quin . . . sim: the regular construction after verbs of doubting *when negatived*; cf. note, **44 14**.

76 19 me: governed by **celaris** (= **celaveris**) as the acc. of the person, that of the thing being only implied; § 239. 2. *d*; B. 178; G. 339; H. 374.

76 27 annis: by comparing this with l. 7 we observe that either the acc. or the abl. may be used in this idiom.

77 10 ea . . . qua, *there . . . where*, correlative adverbs.

77 12 hac, *in this way*; an adverbial form from **hic**; cf. **huc** and **hoc**, as well as **ea**, **qua**.

77 14 Clastidi, at *Clastidium*, a locative form. Latin has peculiar forms for relations of place with names of towns and a few other words.

77 15 tertio, *for the third time*; adverb.

77 20 dextro: **oculo** may be supplied, though such an ellipsis is common also in English.

78 5 proelio: the famous battle of Cannæ, B.C. 216, the worst defeat the Romans ever sustained.

78 9 nullo resistente: cf. **51 24**.

78 15 dedit verba: a colloquial expression like 'fooled' or 'outwitted.'

78 21 pari ac, *equal to that of*. Cf. § 234. a. N. 2; B. 341. I. c); G. 643; H. 554. I. 2. N.

78 23 sustulit, *destroyed*, as coming from *tollo*.

78 25 longum est: cf. **54 28**.

78 28 in campo, etc.: i.e. ventured to meet him in the open field. Hannibal maintained himself undefeated in Italy for sixteen years.

79 1 defensum: supine, expressing purpose. Cf. *visum*, **15 14**, and note.

79 4 fugarat: = *fugaverat*; cf. *invitarat*, **28 16**.

79 5 quo: introducing a purpose-clause. Cf. **31 20**.

79 12 Hadrumeti: another locative. Cf. *Clastidi*, **77 14**; § 258. 4; B. 232; G. 411; H. 425. II; 426.

80 6 ad P. Sulpicium, etc.: again the names of the consuls merely as a date, B.C. 200. So again *his magistratibus*, l. 7, *under these magistrates*.

80 11 eorum: we should expect *suos*, but as it refers to the Carthaginians, who were not strictly the same as the *legati*, the reflex. is not used.—*Fregellis*: place where. Cf. note, **12 23**.

80 12 munus, etc.: in the direct discourse would be:—

munus vestrum gratum acceptumque est; obsides quo loco rogatis erunt; captivos non remitemus, quod . . . Hannibalem, cuius opera susceptum bellum est, . . . habetis, etc.

80 18 domum: note the regular absence of a prep. with this word.

80 19 fuerat: we should expect *fuit*, but the pluperf. is used with a slightly different feeling.

80 21 bini: the distributive, because they were elected each year.

80 22 diligentia: as the abl. of quality has the sense of an adj., it is used here for a pred. like an adj.—*ac*: cf. **78 21**.

80 23 ut esset, etc., *that there was money to pay*, etc.

80 28 daretur: cf. note, **69 7**. The expression is regular for granting an audience.

81 2 possent: a vivid fut. condition thrown into the imperf. subjv. as a dependent clause. The command in the direct would be 'comprehendite, si poteritis consequi.' When this command is compressed into a purpose ('which were to arrest'), the condition follows the new turn and becomes *si possent* (*if they should be able*, or *if they could*). This is sometimes called a case of attraction and sometimes an integral-part clause. The essence of it is that the dependent clause partakes of the nature of the main clause

so much that when the main clause becomes dependent the dependent one also takes the subjv. as a part of it.

81 4 *ipsum*: as opposed to his property. — *exsulem*: pred. acc., as in ‘call a man a thief.’

81 5 *profugerat*: cf. *consumpserat*, **54 14**.

81 6 *L. Cornelio*, etc.: B.C. 193.

81 8 *si . . . inducerentur*, *to see if*, etc.; in this very common form of condition the conclusion is suppressed and the clause becomes equivalent to a kind of indir. question, ‘to see whether,’ etc. — *Antiochi*, in *Antiochus*; cf. note, **71 3**.

81 10 *huc*: i.e. to Cyrene.

81 11 *eadem*, etc.: cf. ll. 3 and 4.

81 15 *naufragio*, *servulis*: notice that the means has the abl. alone, the agent takes a; cf. *pecunia*, **19 27**. — *interfectum eum*: depending, like an infinitive clause, on *scriptum reliquerunt*, which is equivalent to a verb of saying, — *have left the statement that*, etc.

81 17 *voluisset*: ‘contrary to fact’ condition; cf. note, **35 12**. — *instituerat*, *had begun to*.

81 18 *Tiberi*: dat. after *propius*, which takes the dat. as an adv. of nearness. *Thermopylis* is of course in the same construction.

81 19 *quem*: i.e. *Antiochus*; use the name, as is customary in English. — *videbat*: in like manner supply *Hannibal*.

82 2 *Pamphylio*, etc.: i.e. the sea off the coast of Pamphylia in Asia Minor. — *quo*, *in which battle*; supplied from the preceding statement. — *cum*, *while*; another clause of circumstance, but not quite a concession. Either thought would require the subjunctive.

82 3 *quo cornu*: i.e. *eo cornu quo*; cf. ‘What measure ye mete, (it) shall be measured to you again’; cf. **19 1** and note. — *rem gessit*, *acted or commanded*.

82 5 *ne*: remember that after verbs of fearing we translate *ne* by *that* or *lest*, and *ut* by *that not*.

82 8 *omnium*: partit. gen. — *se fore*, etc.: another fut. condition in indir. disc.; in the direct form, ‘*ero . . . , nisi providero*.’

82 11 *amphoras*; the memory of this usage still survives in ‘a pot of money.’



FIG. 106.—AMPHORA.

82 16 *domi*, at his house; cf. *humi*, **43 26**.

82 18 *inscientibus eis*: translate by a temporal clause; cf. note,

17 24.

82 21 *eodem*: i.e. the same as before with Antiochus.

82 22 *quam . . . armavit*, than arm; notice the idiom for this idea in Latin; the same form is used after the *quam* as before it.

82 23 *opibus*: abl. of respect; cf. *dignitate*, **19 1**.—*conciliabat*, began to, proceeded to, etc.

82 25 *eo*: i.e. Prusias.

82 26 *mari, terra*: notice that these words need no prep. in this use.—*quo magis*, whereby the more; abl. of degree of difference.

82 27 *utrobique*: i.e. on sea and land.

83 1 *quem si*, etc.: cf. **82 8**.

83 4 *superabatur*, was overmatched.

83 5 *imperavit*: here followed by the infin. but more usually by an *ut*-clause of purpose.

83 9 *praecipis omnes ut*, etc.: his own words would be:—

praecipio omnes ut . . . concurratis, . . . habeatis vos defendere. Id (vos) facile . . . consequemini. Rex autem in qua navi vehatur ut sciatis (ego) faciam; quem si aut ceperitis aut interfeceritis, magno vobis pollicor praemio fore.

Note carefully the changes in mood and tense when this is reported indirectly.

83 11 *id*, etc.: it is to be remembered that the Latin needs no new verb of saying in such a case as this. It is implied in the verb *praecipit*; cf. note, **51 19**.

83 17 *daretur*: subjv. as a part of Hannibal's plan,—before it could or should be given; cf. notes, **44 4**, **69 7**.

83 18 *caduceo*: the herald's staff, equivalent to a flag of truce.

83 22 *esset scriptum*: cf. **44 14**.

83 25 *pertinerent*: cf. note, **61 13**.

83 27 *praecepto*: abl. in accordance with.

84 3 *reliquae*, etc.; for order, cf. *Marius cum*, etc., **58 5**, and note.

84 6 *coepta sunt*: the pass. of this word is used with the same sense as the act. when a pass. infin. is used with it, as here *conici*.

84 9 *potissimum*: in meaning equal to a superlative of 'rather'; i.e. rather than anything else, most.

84 12 *alias*: adv., elsewhere, on other occasions.

84 15 *consularem*: ex-consuls retained such dignity from their former office as to constitute a kind of division of the nobility higher than the general senate.

84 18 *detulit*: the technical word for laying anything officially before a person in authority. — *patres conscripti*: the regular appellation of the senate.

84 18 *qui . . . existimarent*: this may be translated simply as the ind., but the Latin expresses by the subjv. the idea that the statement in the clause has some important bearing or inner connection with the action of the senate. This is often implied in English, but is not distinguished. If we wish to make it clear we must say 'inasmuch as,' or 'since,' or express it by a participle. This usage in Latin is a form of the characteristic subjv.; cf. **61 13**.

84 21 *suum, sibi*: observe the indir. reflex., referring to the main subject, the senate, while *secum* is a direct reflex. referring to *Prusias*. Such apparent ambiguity is readily explained by the context; cf. **41 14** and note.

84 22 *ne . . . postularent*: in accordance with the construction of verbs of hindering, the clause with *ne* is here used; cf. **63 10**. We may translate the whole *this is the only thing that he refused, that they should ask him*, etc.

84 23 *esset*: cf. **81 2**.

84 24 *comprehenderent*: cf. *moveret*, **9 11**. Again indir. disc. without an expressed verb of saying. It is implied in *recusavit*.

84 26 *datum erat*: not a part of *Prusias's* words, and so indicative. — *muneri*: cf. *commodato*, **29 13**. — *aedificarat*: for *aedificaverat*.

85 2 *multitudine domum circumdedissent*: here the verb properly means 'put around,' but comes to mean also *surround*. Hence it has a double construction, — put a thing (acc.) round another (dat.), or surround a thing (acc.) with another (abl.). A number of similar verbs have this construction depending on their double meaning.

85 4 *foris*: acc. plural.

85 6 *obsideretur*: an indir. question can depend on any expression which in sense can introduce a question or the answer to it.

85 7 *occupatos*: cf. *oppletas*, **84 8**.

85 9 *alieno*: this word is the possessive of *alius*, and properly means 'of another.' Here the whole expression may be translated *at another's will*, i.e. wishing to die free and not to be put to death.

85 12 *laboribus*: regular abl. with *perfunctus*: cf. **5 13**.

85 13 *quibus consulibus*: again merely a date, as usual. So also the names following.

85 14 *Atticus*: Titus Pomponius Atticus, the friend of Cicero, who tried his hand at history.

85 15 *scriptum reliquit*: cf. **81 15**.

85 16 Polybius: a historian who wrote in Greek, a friend and protégé of the younger Scipio.

85 18 atque: though we often may translate this word by *and*, yet it always introduces something striking or important in addition to what has been said. Here almost like 'and yet,' or the colloquial 'and, do you know.' — **tantus:** merely *great*, not 'so great,' inasmuch as we do not use a demonstrative in such cases. — **tantisque:** we should omit the 'and.'

85 20 in eis, among them. — **ad Rhodios, etc.:** the title of the book, where we should supply 'an address' or the like.

85 21 huius: translate *Hannibal's*: cf. notes, **21 6, 90 24.** — **belli gesta, exploits in war;** cf. **71 3.**

85 22 duo: sc. **sunt.**

85 25 usus est: the regular word for attendance on a teacher.

III. POETICAL SELECTIONS.

It is of the essence of poetry to use the greatest freedom in constructions and in the choice of words, so that both words and constructions are often unusual and will need more careful consideration. But, on the other hand, they are rarely complex, and, aside from an occasional free use of figurative expressions, — which, after all, are more vivid than the faded ones of prose, — poetry ought to be quite as intelligible as prose. The greater freedom of order will, however, sometimes embarrass a young pupil.

Obviously these extracts must be read metrically, otherwise the effect would be almost entirely lost. But the metres generally are too difficult to be mastered by beginners. For this reason the rhythmical ictus is here marked by an accent. A stress on the syllables so marked will give a rhythmical movement after the English fashion, which is all that most persons attain or even attempt. The rhythm of the ancients was, however, something very different from this. Their poetry was, as it were, set to a definite musical movement, in which time (i.e. quantity) was all-important. All who have learned to read 'quantitatively' will naturally produce something of the ancient effect, because in this book the quantity of the syllables is everywhere indicated. As to the word-accent, if no special attempt is made to have it prominent, the quantitative reading will so weaken it that it will not disturb the rhythm of the verse, while still being sufficiently observed. The rhythmical accent must always be obvious, the time or quantity ought to be, and the word-accent may well be, when it can without losing the feeling of the other two.

If these verses can really be read *quantitatively* the difficulties of accent will disappear. If one can once get the melody in his head as definitely

as 'Old Hundred' or 'Dennis,' he need n't trouble himself about accent. That will come of itself.

Besides the accents, the reader will find some syllables printed in italics. These are to be suppressed in the reading (elision and ecthipsis). See § 359. *c. d*; B. 366. 7; G. 719. 1. 2; H. 608. I.

No. 1. See introductory note to No. 13, p. 8.

86 1 *ad fontem*: for the order, cf. 'On Linden when the sun was low.'

86 2 *liquore, the limpid mirror.*

86 5 *venantum*: the plural of participles is often used for nouns, rarely the singular.

86 7 *excepit, received*; the personal character of the word suggests 'in its depths,' or the like, which our rhetoric usually plainly expresses.—*ferum, the creature*; not that this word in itself is any better than 'animal' or 'wild beast,' only these suggest associations which do not belong in the picture and so should be avoided.

86 8 *retentis, catching or clinging*; lit. 'caught' (i.e. by the trees).

86 10 *vocem, words.*

86 11 *me*: the acc. is often used in exclamations, somewhat as we say 'Ah me!'

86 13 *habuerint, have brought*; lit. 'had in them.'—*luctūs*: partit. gen. with *quantum*; cf. *aliquid terrae*, **56 25**.

No. 2. From Ovid, one of the most popular and clever writers of the Augustan age. The metre is the so-called elegiac, consisting of alternating hexameters and pentameters of the dactylic type. The even lines have a pause in the middle.

86 14 *multos, by scores.*

86 16 *ut, how*; introducing an indir. question. As the interr. and rel. came from the same stem, so the adv. *uti (ut)* is both interr. (as here) and rel. (as in its meaning *when* and in the purpose and result constructions).

86 18 *tendunt, make their way.*

86 19 *ibit, will come.*

86 20 *ut, as*, correlative with *sic*, l. 22.—*per*: here following its case, as often in poetry.—*euntibus, as you go*; lit. 'to those going,' a dat. of reference.—*umbra*: the subject.

86 21 *pressus, obscured*; but the figure is more vivid in Latin, something like 'suppressed.'

86 22 *lumina*: the poetic plur. for singular.

86 23 *simul*: sc. *ac*; cf. the British use of 'once' and 'directly' as connectives, without 'when' or any such word.

No. 3. This is an inscription of about B.C. 100. Some archaisms not essential to the metre have been modernized.

87 2 sepulcrum: notice the alliteration, a common ornament in older Latin.

87 3 Claudiam: a second acc. after words of naming, calling, etc. Cf. 'Call him John'; see also **81 4**.

87 5 creavit, bore. — **horunc:** an old form for **horum**, in which the **c** is retained, as in **hic**.

87 6 alium: we should expect **alterum** as the regular form, but authors are not always careful in this respect. — **locat:** this may be taken for **locavit** or treated as present, meaning *leaves buried*.

87 7 sermone: abl. of quality.

87 8 servavit: i.e. did not gad about. — **fecit, wrought;** i.e. spun and wove. These two lines express the ideal qualities of the perfect woman according to the ancient standard. — **dixi, I've had my say;** a common form at the close of a speech. — **abi, pass on.**

No. 4. From a play of Titus Maccius Plautus (B.C. 254-184) who adapted comedies from the Greek New Comedy. A considerable number of his plays are preserved and rank among the oldest extant Latin literature.

87 9 hominibus: dat. of reference.

87 10 dormientis, when they are sleeping; referring to men.

87 11 velut, as for instance, a common meaning of the word. — **hac nocte, etc.:** the redundancy of expression is characteristic of Plautus.

87 13 visast: i.e. *visa est*, the regular colloquial contraction.

87 14 ascensionem, etc., to be trying to climb. — **admolirier:** an old form for the pres. infinitive.

87 15 postibi: a different form equivalent to **postea**.

87 16 adgredirier: cf. **admolirier**, above.

87 17 utendas: cf. **diripiendas**, **61 11**.

87 19 Philomela, etc.: referring to a well-known Greek myth.

87 21 nimio: in early Latin this word means 'much,' not 'too much.'

87 22 ultro: from meaning 'beyond,' this word comes to mean 'beyond what is called for or expected'; so here, *unprovoked*. — **malum, trouble,** in a colloquial sense. — **minitarier:** cf. **admolirier**, l. 14.

87 23 med: old form for **me**. — **nescio quo modo, somehow or other.** The phrase **nescio quis** rarely introduces a real indir. question, but is only a weak indef. pron., *some one or other*.

87 24 mediam, by the middle, in our idiom.

87 25 nequissumam: superl. of **nequam**.

87 26 dicam: this word in comedy is often superfluous, but it may be translated *to say*.

87 27 hodie: a very weak word, merely meaning *now, so far, or yet*.

88 2 **quantumst**: i.e. quantum est; cf. **visast**, **87** 13. The phrase is idiomatic for *all*. — **hominum**: the earlier and more popular Latin affects the use of the partit. gen. — **venustiorum**: i.e. endowed with a greater degree of grace than men in general.

88 6 mellitus, *honey sweet*. — norat : i.e. noverat, *knew*. — suam : refers to the sparrow, and agrees with **puellam** understood.

88 13 male sit, a plague upon you! ill betide you! the most common mild form of curse with the Romans.

88 17 tua opera, *through you*, or on account of the emphasis, *it is*
our fault, you are to blame, that, etc.

No. 6. An extract from a play of Publius Terentius Afer, a comedian somewhat later than Plautus (B.C. 195-159) who wrote in the same field but with less wit and rollicking humor and more elegance and refinement. Only six comedies of his are extant. The metre is iambic, regularly $\cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — } \cup \text{ — }$ repeated three times. — **et**: connecting these remarks with what precedes in the play.

88 19 **errat**: the subj. is the omitted antecedent of **qui**, one of the commonest of Latin idioms. — **mea**: pronounced as one syllable, *mya*. — **quidem**: emphasizing **mea**, *at least*, however others may think.

88 ²¹ *adiungitur*: by a curious turn of thought the Romans spoke of uniting the bond as well as the things bound by it. Hence, for instance, *iungere pontem* means *to make a bridge*.

88 ²² ratio, *way of thinking*, orig. 'reckoning.'—**animus**: for the tautology, cf. **87** ¹¹.

88 ²³ **malo** : almost technical for punishment. Cf. 'getting into trouble.' Cf. **87** ²².

88 24 rescitum iri: the rare fut. infin. passive.

88 25 ingenium : i.e. his natural conduct.

88 26 quem . . . adiungas : here used in the proper sense ; cf. l. 21.

88 27 par referre, *to repay in kind*; cf. gratiam referam, 45 14.

88 28 **patriumst**: when a final vowel or syllable in **m** would be cut off before **est** or **es** it was customary to cut off the vowel of the verb and preserve the ending, as here; cf. **quantumst**, **88** 2.

88 29 *alieno*, of another; cf. **85** 9. In many cases in Latin the distinction between objective and subjective gen. is lost sight of; in fact, there is no hard and fast line between the two, the objective being only a

variation of the subjective. The fear belongs as much to the one who inspires as to the one who feels it.

89 1 *hoc pater*, etc.: a short-hand construction for *hoc interest inter*, etc. — *hoc*: obj. of *nequit*; a neuter pron. in the acc. is often used after verbs which otherwise are not transitive. This is of the same kind as the cognate acc., 'to fight a battle,' 'to run a race.'

89 2 *fateatur*: hortatory subj.; cf. **30 25**.

No. 7. This extract is from one of the satires of Horace, next to Virgil the most famous poet of the Augustan age. He is better known by his odes, but he also wrote satires, pictures of life and manners spiced with genial raillery. This extract and the following are in the common verse of Epic poetry, the dactylic hexameter. This consists of dactyls (— ∪ ∪) and spondees (— —).

89 3 *olim*: the regular word in Latin for *once upon a time* in stories.

89 4 *rusticus*, etc.: poetry not only has a freer order of words, but purposely uses fanciful arrangements in order to set off one word against another. Here the two kinds of mice are contrasted by putting them together, and the two forms of *mus*, coming as they do, produce an effect that was much liked by the Greeks and Romans.

89 5 *cavo*: without a prep., as often in poetry by an earlier usage, where we should have one in prose. — *veterem*, etc.: on the disposition of the words, cf. **l. 4**.

89 6 *quaesitis*: a few neuter adjs. and partics. are used, especially in poetry, in the cases which do not show their gender (contrary to note on **3 14**). — *ut tamen*, etc.: the result-clause, though usually having a kind of intensive sense, as, 'It rained so that I could not drive out,' yet not infrequently expresses a limitation, as one might say in reply, 'Yes, that's true, but so that (*ut tamen*) you could run into your neighbor's.' Here this meaning is made clearer by the use of *tamen* (*but*). — *artum*, *close*, as the opposite of generous and effusive; cf. 'close-fisted.'

89 7 *hospitiis*: abl. of means, though we may translate by *in*. For the plural, cf. *nives*, **1 3**. — *quid multa*: cf. **32 3**.

89 8 *ciceris*: an exceptional construction after *invidit* in the sense of *grudge* or *be sparing of*, after the analogy of expressions of plenty and want.

89 9 *et*: connecting the whole sentence, though displaced by *avidum* with the freedom of poetry.

89 11 *tangentis*: cf. *oranti*, **6 6**. — *male*, *hardly*. Of a bad thing the word means *much*, of a good thing *little*.

89 12 *pater domus*: i.e. *pater familias*, *the master of the house*.

89 13 *esset*: from *edo*.

89 14 *ad*: not 'to' him exactly, but rather 'at' him, as reproaching him. — *te*: the regular acc. after several impers. verbs, like 'it repenteth him of the evil.'

89 15 *nemoris*: cf. *laboris*, **73 22**.

89 17 *comes*, as *my companion*, in pred. apposition with the omitted subj. of *carpe*. — *terrestria*, all *earthborn things*.

89 18 *sortita*, *possessed of*, lit. 'having got by lot.'

89 19 *leti*, *from death*; cf. note, **71 3**. — *quo . . . circa*: to be taken together. — *bone*, *my good friend*, a familiar form of address.

89 21 *aevi*: gen. of quality; cf. *aetatis*, **33 17**.

89 24 *nocturni*, *by night*; cf. *laetus*, **1 3**.

89 25 *ponit*: in this use, as in 'the sun was just setting *when* two horsemen were seen,' etc., *cum* always takes the ind. It will be seen that the idea is entirely different from the other uses of *cum*; §325. *b*; B. 288. 2; G. 581. Notice the slight grandiloquence of the style, which is intentional travesty.

89 27 *canderet*: subjv. with the rel. adv. *ubi*, characterizing the house as a fine one; cf. **61 13**.

89 29 *procul*: this word does not necessarily mean 'far off,' but sometimes *near by*; cf. 'off Cape Hatteras.'

90 1 *succinctus*: i.e. as a waiter or attendant. These would be slaves in short tunics.

90 2 *vernilater*, like a *pampered slave*. The *verna*, a slave born in the house, was a pampered pet, and took liberties in thieving, tasting the dainties, etc.

90 4 *ille*, the other; cf. *illa*, **27 17**. Use sensible freedom in the translation of demonstratives. — *sorte*: that in which one delights is expressed by the abl. of cause.

90 5 *agit . . . convivam*, acts the part of, etc. — *cum*: cf. **89 25**.

90 7 *currere*, *trepidare*: hist. infins.; see note on *concuti*, **27 10**. These are at once recognized from having the subj. in the nominative.

90 8 *Molossis*: a famous breed of dogs, like 'Newfoundland' or 'St. Bernard.'

90 9 *canibus*: used by a figure instead of the noise as the means.

90 10 *opus*, etc.: cf. the vulgar 'I've no use for.' For the following abl., cf. *consilio*, **28 20**. — *valeas*, *I bid you good-by*, an optative subjunctive.

90 11 *solabitur*: i.e. for the implied loss of this dainty fare. Cf. the expression 'consolation prize.'

No. **8**. From the voyage of Æneas to Italy in Virgil's famous poem. The metre is again dactylic hexameter. We may compare the "Story of Ulysses," pp. 50-54.

90 12 **proxima**: i.e. next in the course of Æneas. — **raduntur**, *they graze* (lit. 'scrape'), changing the voice.

90 13 **solis filia**: this enchantress was fabled to be the daughter of the sun.

90 14 **resonat**: here translate *makes resound*; cf. **personuit**, l. 9. — **tectis**: for omitted prep., cf. **cavo**, 89 5, and note.

90 16 **arguto**, etc.: notice the artistic order; such pairs as these are a favorite arrangement.

90 17 **exaudiri**, **saevire**, **ululare**: cf. **currere**, l. 7. — **gemitus iraeque**, *the roar and the fury*. In Latin a complex idea is often for greater vividness separated into two parts. Here what is meant is the prosaic 'angry roars of the lions,' but both the noun and the adj. are made more emphatic by dwelling on them separately. This use is called hendiadys, a name better forgotten than kept, unless fully understood.

90 18 **recusantum**: the gen. of participles in **-um** instead of **-ium** is one of the archaisms of poetry.

90 22 **induerat**: a confusion of ideas. The goddess had clothed (**induerat**) the men with the forms of beasts, but in so doing had put them into those forms (**in voltus**).

No. 9. This description of the fabled Golden Age is by Tibullus, one of the less famous poets of the Augustan age. The stanza is in the same metre as No. 2.

90 23 **Saturno**: cf. the giving of dates by naming the consul. — **vivebant**, *they lived*, i.e. men lived, as in English.

90 24 **longas**, etc. Notice that the two halves of the verse end in words that belong together, and even have a kind of rhyme; so in l. 25, **caeruleas . . . undas**. This is a favorite arrangement with the Latin poets, and will sometimes make clearer the construction, as indeed will all such tricks when they are once understood.

90 25 **pinus**: i.e. *the ship*, like 'steel' for 'sword,' or 'lead' for 'shot,' or 'birch' for 'canoe.' This is metonymy, and in fact so is 'rubbers' for 'overshoes.'

90 26 **praebueratque**: in prose the connective comes as early as possible along with the words it connects, so that we should expect the enclitic here appended to the first word. But poetry allows it to be delayed to suit the metre, and here we have it appended to the verb.

90 27 **nec vagus**, etc.: the order here seems hopelessly involved, but we may translate almost word for word, *nor roving in pursuit of gain in foreign lands had the sailor loaded deep with foreign wares his bark*. So much distortion is quite within English usage, and will enable us to notice how closely the Latin follows the development of the picture in the poet's mind.

91 2 *illo . . . validus . . . tempore taurus* : observe the parallel arrangement by which one pair (noun and adj.) is let into the corresponding one, — a favorite trick of poets (interlocked order).

91 4 *fixus . . . lapis* : for order, cf. 90 27.

91 5 *qui regeret* : relative clause of purpose.

91 7 *securis*, (*to the shepherds*) *free from care* ; notice that no noun is necessary in Latin, being implied in the adjective.

91 8 *non acies*, *no array of battle*. — *ensem*, etc. : the order may well be preserved by treating the obj. as subj. and changing the voice of the verb.

91 9 *immiti* : this word naturally is only applicable to persons, but the effect of the poetry is enhanced by assigning the quality to the art of the smith, and giving him another (*saevus*). The order here again is interlocked ; cf. l. 2.

91 10 *Iove* : the reign of Saturn was succeeded by that of Jove, in which the idyllic state of society ceased.

91 11 *mare* : the great catastrophes of the sea were much more present to the imaginations of the ancients than to our own, and even now the sea is still an object of terror ; cf. the prophecy of the millenium, ‘and there shall be no more sea.’

No. 10. An address of Horace to a friend on the necessity of death. The metre is called Alcaic, from the Greek poet Alcæus.

91 16 *non* : sc. *adferet*. — *trecenis* : with *tauris*. — *quotquot*, etc., *for every day that goes, or for every passing day*.

91 17 *plāces* : the long a shows that this comes from *plāco*, not from *placeo*.

91 18 *Plutona* : a Greek form of acc. This god ruled the world below, and so was the god of death. Only by appeasing him could death be stayed.

91 19 *Geryonen*, etc. : fabled monsters in the world below. The first had three bodies.

91 20 *unda* : i.e. the fabled Styx, which surrounded the region of the dead, and so had to be crossed (*enaviganda*) by departed spirits. — *omnibus* : dat. of agent with *enaviganda*.

91 21 *munere* : abl. with *vescitur*.

91 24 *carebimus* : i.e. keep out of danger for fear of death.

91 26 *autumnos* : in the climate of Rome the autumn is especially dangerous from fever and the deadly sirocco.

91 27 *corporibus* : dat. after *nocentem* ; cf. 33 4.

92 1 *visendus* : i.e. in spite of our precautions death must overtake us.

92 2 *Cocyto* : another fabled river in Hades. — *Danai*, etc. : these are two famous cases of punishment below. See Classical Dictionary.

92 4 laboris : cf. capitis, 23 13.

92 5 plācens : cf. plāces, 91 17.

92 7 cupressos : a tree particularly associated with death and funerals. Cf. the old weeping willow as associated with mourning.

92 8 ulla : i.e. arbor, supplied from arborum. — brevem, *short lived* ; the real meaning is 'for only a brief space their owner.' — dominum : in apposition with te.

92 9 Caecuba (sc. vina) : one of the finer wines of Italy ; hence centum clavibus.

92 11 tinguet : i.e. the precious wine you are so careful to preserve will only be wasted after all by a spendthrift heir who deserves it better than you because he knows how to use it instead of hoarding it.

92 12 pontificum : splendid banquets of the various colleges of priests were almost a part of the ritual of the Roman religion. These became proverbial, like aldermen's dinners in England. — cenis : abl. after comparative.

No. 11. An extract from a longer ode on the joys of country life, a subject on which the Romans were never tired of dwelling. The metre is iambic ; cf. No. 6.

92 14 prisca, etc. : i.e. in the earlier, simpler times of Roman life ; cf. English 'the good old days of yore.'

92 16 solutus, etc. : i.e. free from the avaricious anxieties of the money-lender. We should speak in the same tone of the stockbroker.

92 17 excitatur, etc. : he is neither a soldier nor a trader with the trials of either. — miles, *as a soldier* ; pred. appositive.

92 19 forumque, etc. : the arduous duties of political ambition do not disturb him.

No. 12. An exhortation to the proper enjoyment of life, chiefly, as is Horace's manner, on account of the certainty of death ; cf. No. 10. The metre is the same as in that ode.

92 21 aequam, etc. : the aim of all the great post-Socratic schools of philosophy was to secure the even temper of the sage, neither depressed by troubles nor exalted by fortune.

92 22 servare : a complementary infin. ; cf. redire, 40 5.

92 24 moriture : this word is really the keynote of the whole ode. The certainty of death makes the troubles or successes of life too trivial to disturb the calmness of the sage.

93 1 seu . . . vixeris : the condition of moriture.

93 3 bearis : for beaveris.

93 4 interiore, etc. : the oldest and so farthest back in the store-house.

93 5 *quo*, to what end? i.e. if not to enjoy them. — *pinus*, etc.: notice that the pairs in this line are reversed in order, a favorite arrangement.

93 6 *umbram*: governed by *consociare* in the sense of *unite to make*.

93 7 *laborat*: suggesting the rocks and other impediments that make the charm of a babbling brook.

93 9 *unguenta*: odors were a much-valued source of enjoyment with the ancients, and as spirits were not yet invented, the only vehicle for them was oils and fats making ointments; cf. the Biblical alabaster box of ointment.

93 10 *iube*: i.e. the slaves.

93 11 *sorum fila*: an allusion to the Fates who were fabled to spin the thread of human lives; cf.:—

“Somewhere on an unknown shore,
Where the rivers of life their waters pour,
Sit three sisters forever more
Spinning a silver thread.”

93 12 *atra*: anything connected with death has from time immemorial been associated with darkness.

93 13 *saltibus*, *pasture lands*, an important source of wealth. — *domo*, *villa*: cf. note, 50 22.

93 16 *divitiis*: cf. construction of *munere*, 91 21. — *heres*: cf. 92 11.

93 17 *divesne . . . moreris*: an indir. question. — *Inacho*: the name of an ancient king of Argos; proverbial of ancient and noble descent.

93 20 *Orcus*: a name of Pluto.

93 21 *eodem*: i.e. to the same end, the world below.

93 22 *versatur*, etc.: as if men's fate was determined by drawing lots shaken in an urn, and when each one's lot was drawn he must go below and cross the Styx in Charon's boat to eternal exile.

“Frightful in filth, Charon the ferryman
These streams and waters guards: upon his chin
Lies his unshorn and matted beard: his eyes
Are shafts of fire: his squalid mantle hangs
Tied at the shoulder with a knot. His boat,
Trimmed with a sail, he pushes with a pole,
And in his rusty skiff takes ghosts across,—
An old man now, but with a god's old age
Still fresh and green.”



FIG. 107. — THE LEGIONARY.

SELECTIONS FROM CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR.



FIG. 108. — COIN OF CÆSAR.

THE first Book of the commentaries begins with a general description of Gaul. This is followed by an account of the two wars that occupied Cæsar's attention during his first year in Gaul: the Helvetian War and the campaign against Ariovistus.

THE HELVETIAN WAR. — Early in the year B.C. 58, the whole population of Helvetia (northern Switzerland), amounting to about 360,000, attempted to pass by an armed emigration through the heart of Gaul, in order to settle somewhere near the shore of the Bay of Biscay, possibly with the hope of being masters of the whole country. They were hemmed in by the great natural barriers of the Alps, the Lake of Geneva, and the Jura Mountains on the south and west: and pressed on the north by great hordes of Germans, who kept up a continual border war. Their fields were scant, their harvests insufficient, their people hardy and fearless. Their ambitious chief, Orgetorix, had prepared them so well for this enterprise that his flight and death — when he was charged with guilty conspiracy, and put on trial for his life — caused no delay. The attempt was held in check by Cæsar, during a fortnight's parley, till sufficient earthworks had been thrown up along the Rhone to withstand their advance across the river; the advance was then made in force along the narrow pass between that river and the Jura. But the Helvetians did not succeed in getting more than fifty miles beyond the frontier, when they were overtaken by Cæsar; who, by a few light skirmishes and two bloody battles, forced them back to their own territories, with the loss of more than 200,000 lives. This brief campaign lasted only from March to June.

CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS. — The latter half of this Book is taken up with the expulsion of a military settlement of Germans, which had been made a few years before under Ariovistus, a chief of the Suevi.

The occasion of this new campaign was the following: The Hædui, jealous of the Sequani, who lived a little to the north, had laid excessive tolls on their trade, which consisted chiefly in the export of salted meats for the southern market. This led to a war, in which the Sequani had invited the aid of the Germans under Ariovistus, about three years before the campaign of Cæsar. The Germans, once in Gaul, had exacted a large share of territory and proved to be grasping and oppressive masters. Meanwhile the Helvetian War began to threaten. The Roman senate, to make safe, passed the decrees before mentioned, promising favor and friendship to the Hædui; and at the same time sent messengers to Ariovistus, saluting him as

king and friend, recognizing his claims on Gaul, and, it was said, inviting him to Rome. This was the year before, in Cæsar's consulship. Now, however, that the fear of the Helvetians was passed, Cæsar found himself obliged to take sides on the old quarrel.

BOOK FIRST.—B.C. 58.

PAGE 143. LINE 1. **Gallia**: that is, Transalpine Gaul, excluding the Roman Province (*Provincia*) in the southeast, as well as *Gallia Cisalpina*, now northern Italy. It occupied the territory of France, including the country to the Rhine boundary, with most of the Netherlands and Switzerland (see Map, Fig. 41). — **omnis** (pred.), *as a whole*. — **est divisa**, *is divided*; the adjective use of the partic., not the perf. pass.; § 291. *b*; B. 337. 1; G. 250. R. 2; H. 550. N. 2. — **unam**: sc. **partem**.

143 2 **incolunt**: in translation (not in reading the Latin to make out the sense), change the voice to the passive in order to preserve the emphasis in the English idiom. It is well to acquire the habit of making such changes. The natural English form would be: *of which one is inhabited by the Belgians*, etc., but the Latin uses the active voice. The moment you find an accusative beginning a sentence, if it seems from its meaning to be a direct object, you can at once think of it as a subject in the nominative (*at the same time noticing that the Latin does not make it such*). The verb can then be instantly thought of as a passive and the subject as agent. This inversion is so common in Latin for purposes of rhetoric that such a device is a very helpful one, and if properly used from the start need not obscure the Latin construction. The Latin plays upon the position of words to produce all sorts of shades of rhetorical expression, and it is never too early to observe these shades and try to render them in our own idiom. — **Belgae**: probably of the Cymric branch of the Celtic race, allied to the Britons and the modern Welsh; they inhabited the modern Belgium and northern France, and were considerably mixed with Germans (see Bk. i. 1). — **Aquitani**: of the Spanish Iberians (the modern Basques), inhabiting the districts of the southwest. — **aliam**: here **alteram** would be more usual, as meaning the second in the list. — **qui . . . appellantur**: notice that in Latin any relative may suggest its own antecedent, as with the indefinite relative (*whoever*) in English. In English we have to supply a demonstrative (*those*) *who*. So here **tertiam qui** = *tertiam partem ei incolunt qui*; see § 200. *c*; B. 251. 1; G. 619; H. 445. 6. — **ipsorum**, etc.: notice that the position of words is so significant in Latin, through its indicated emphasis, that it may allow words to be omitted which must be supplied in the thought. In this case the English idiom is the same: in *their own* tongue . . . in *ours*.

143 3 *Celtae*: probably of the Gælic branch, represented by the Irish and the Highland Scotch. — *linguā*: abl. of specification; cf. **19** 1; § 253; B. 226; G. 397; H. 424. — *differunt*: the language of the Aquitani was Basque; of the Gauls proper, Celtic; of the Belgians, another dialect of Celtic mixed with German.

143 4 *inter se*: = *from one another*; the prep. *inter* may be used to show any *reciprocal* relation; cf. **50** 13 and note; § 196. *f*; B. 245. 1; G. 221; H. 448. N. — *Gallos*: see note on *incolunt*, l. 2.

143 5 *dividit*: the verb is singular, because the two rivers make one boundary; § 205. *b*; B. 255. 3; G. 211. R. 1; H. 463. II. 3.

143 6 *horum*: partit. gen. with *fortissimi*; cf. **7** 18; § 216. *a*; B. 201. 1; G. 372, H. 397. 3. — *propterea quod*, *because*; lit. 'because of this, that,' etc. The difference between this and the simple *quod* is only one of greater emphasis — almost as strong as *and the reason is* or *and it is because*.

143 7 *cultu*, *civilization*, as shown by outward signs, dress and habits of life. — *humanitate*, *refinement*, of mind or feeling. — *provinciae*: the province of *Gallia Narbonensis*, organized about B.C. 120. Its chief cities were Massilia (Marseilles), an old Greek free city, and the capital, Narbo (Narbonne), a Roman colony. The name *Provincia* has come down to us in the modern Provence.

143 8 *mercatores*: these were traders or peddlers, mostly from the seaport of Massilia; they travelled with pack-horses, mules, and wagons. A very common article of traffic, as with our Indian traders, was intoxicating drinks, — wines from the southern coast; which, especially, as Cæsar says, "tend to debauch the character." These people, it is said, would give the traders a boy for a jar of wine. — *commeant*: this verb means, especially, *to go back and forth* in the way of traffic. The main line of trade lay across the country, by the river Liger (Loire). — *ea*: object of *important*, referring to the luxuries of civilization.

143 9 *effeminandos*: cf. **21** 26; § 300; B. 339. I. 2; G. 427; H. 544. — *proximi*: notice how the three superlatives, *longissime*, *minime*, and *proximi*, are arranged. After the emphatic idea of *cultu*, etc., is completed, the superlatives begin each its own phrase.

143 10 *Germanis*: dat. with an adj. of nearness; § 234. *a*; B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 391. 1. — *trans Rhenum*: the Rhine was, in general, the boundary between the Gauls and the Germans, and has so remained till modern times. — *continenter* (adv. from the partic. of *contineo*, *hold together*), *incessantly*; strictly, *without any interruption*. The pupil should begin at once to notice the way in which words develop into groups expressing the same idea in the forms of the various parts of speech. See p. 457.

143 11 *qua de causa*, *and for this reason*; cf. note, **6** 4; § 180. *f*. B.

251. 6; G. 610; H. 453: referring back to *proximi*, etc., and further explained by *quod . . . contendunt*. — *Helvetii*: here, it will be noticed, reckoned as Gauls. — *quoque*: i.e. just as the Belgians.

143 12 *reliquos*, *the rest of*; § 193; B. 241. 1; G. 291. R. 2; H. 440. 2. N. 1, 2; notice the emphasis of position; the *others* as opposed to the *Helvetii*. — *virtute*, not 'virtue,' but *courage*; cf. 19 1 and note for construction; see note on *lingua*, 1. 3. — *praecedunt*, *excel*; lit. 'go ahead of.'

143 13 *proeliis*: abl. of means; *finibus*: abl. of separation. — *cum prohibent*, *while they keep them off* (*pro-habeo*).

143 14 *ipsi* (emphatic), *themselves*, the *Helvetians*; *eos* and *eorum* refer to the *Germans*.

143 15 *eorum una pars*, *one division of them* (the Gauls or Celts), the people being identified with the country. — *quam . . . dictum est*, *which, it has been* (already) *said, the Gauls hold*. Notice that in direct discourse it would be *Galli obtinent*: the subject nom. is changed to acc., and the ind. to the infin. after the verb of *saying*, *dictum est*; § 272. R.; B. 331, 332. N.; G. 527; H. 535. 1. Here *quam* is the object and *Gallos* the subject of *obtinerere*, while the clause is the subject of *dictum est*; § 329, 330, a. 2; B. 329; G. 528; H. 538. — *obtinerere* (*ob-teneo*), not *obtain*, but *occupy*; strictly, *hold against* all claimants. *Ob* in composition almost always has the sense of *opposing* or *coming in the way of* something. This is one of the many words which have entirely changed their meaning in their descent from the Latin. Always be on your guard against rendering Latin words by the English one corresponding. *Obtineo* does *not* mean *obtain*, nor *occupo*, *occupy*. The corresponding word is often suggestive as a guide to the meaning, but must not be used without careful examination.

144 1 *ab Sequanis*, *on the side of*, etc., regarded from the point of view of the Province; a very common use of *ab*; § 260. b; G. 390. 2. N. 6; H. 434. 1.

144 2 *vergit*, etc., *slopes to the north*; the highlands (*C'evennes*) are along the southern boundary, and the rivers in that quarter flow in their main course northerly. — *septentriones* (*septem triones*, "the seven plough-oxen"): i.e. the constellations of the Great and Little Bear. The word is used both in the singular, as below, and in the plural, as here.



FIG. 109. — GALLIC COIN.

144 3 *Galliae*: i.e. Celtic Gaul, the country just described, not *Gallia omnis*.

144 4 *spectant*: i.e. considered from the Province, it lies in that direction.

144 6 ad Hispaniam, *next to Spain*, i.e. the Bay of Biscay; § 259. *f*; H. 433. 1.

144 7 spectat: cf. spectant above.—inter occasum, etc., *northwest*, i.e. from the Province.

BOOK SECOND.—B.C. 57.

THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY.—The people of Northern Gaul, including Flanders and the Netherlands, were far remote from any country hitherto occupied by the Roman arms. They lived amid forests and swamps hard to penetrate; they claimed kindred with the German tribes rather than with the more fickle and effeminate Celts; and they had a fierce and resolute spirit of independence, like that which their descendants, the Dutch, exhibited long after in the same regions against the armies of Spain. The Belgian tribes, and particularly the Nervii, appear to have offered to Cæsar a more formidable and desperate resistance than any he met elsewhere until the great rising of B.C. 52. When their spirit was once broken, the conquest of the whole country was simply a question of time.

READING REFERENCES ON THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY.

Dodge's Cæsar, chs. 7, 8.

Fowler's Julius Cæsar, ch. 10.

Froude's Cæsar, ch. 14.

Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. I. pp. 267–81.

Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, Vol. IV. pp. 300–304.

Motley's Rise of the Dutch Republic, Vol. I, pp. 11, 12.

Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. ch. 5.

Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.

Trollope's Cæsar, ch. 3.

144 8 CHAP. I. cum esset, etc., *while C. was*; subjv. with cum temporal; § 325; B. 288. 1. B; G. 585; H. 521. II. 2. For discussion of the principle, see notes on **7 5**, **7 10**, **16 5**. The verb comes in this emphatic place on account of the close connection of these words with the preceding book; something like 'and being thus in,' etc. See translation of this chapter in "Directions for Reading," p. 139.—**citeriore Gallia**: northern Italy.—**ita uti** (= **ut**, *as*): correlatives; the demonstrative word *so* is often omitted in English; § 107; G. 110. 3; H. 305.—**demonstravimus, dixeramus**: the perfect here implies an act done before the time of writing; the pluperfect, what took place before the time of **demonstravimus**.

144 9 adferebantur, certior fiebat (imperf. of repeated action; § 115. 2. *b*; B. 260. 2; G. 231; II. 469. II), *kept coming in; he was informed from time to time*.

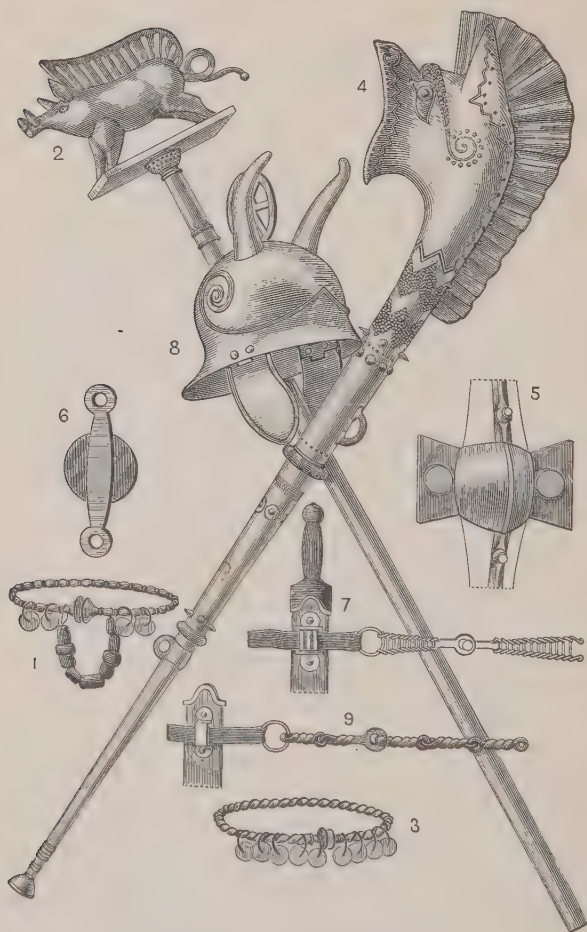


FIG. 110. — GALLIC REMAINS.

1 and 3. Necklaces with amber and coral pendants. 2. Military standard. 4. Bronze trumpet (*carnyx*). 5. Iron boss of shield. 6. Iron holder. 7. Sword-hilt and girdle. 8. Iron helmet. 9. Iron belt-chain.

144 9 *litteris*, by *despatches*; abl. of means; cf. **2** 16, **19** 27; § 248. *c*; B. 218; G. 401; H. 420. — **Belgas . . . coniurare . . . dare**, that the Belgians, etc.: indir. disc., acc. and infin. following the verbal phrase *certior fiebat*; § 272; B. 314. 1; G. 527; H. 535; direct, — **Belgae coniurant**. Cæsar had not yet advanced farther north than the country of the Lingones, so that the Belgæ were as yet unattacked. — **quam**: agrees with **partem**, though the proper antecedent is **Belgas**; cf. **66** 5; § 199; B. 250. 3; G. 614. R. 3. *b*; H. 445. 4.

144 11 *esse*: indir. disc. (with subj. acc. **quam**), after **dixeramus**. — **dixeramus** is in the ind., because, though a relative clause, it is parenthetical merely, and not a part of the report of Labienus; cf. **25** 11 and note; § 336. *b*; B. 314. 3; G. 628. R. *a*; H. 524. 2. I.

144 12 *coniurare*: from the point of view of the Romans, any war against Rome is a "conspiracy"; a nation enslaved by Rome is "pacified." — **inter se**, to one another; § 196. *f*; B. 245. 1; G. 221; H. 448. N. — **coniurandi**: gerund, an obj. gen.; § 298; B. 338. I. *a*); G. 428; H. 542. 1; cf. **37** 12 and note. — **has esse causas**, that the reasons were as follows: the report of Labienus continued, indir. disc. — **quod vererentur, sollicitarentur**: subjv. because subord. clauses in indir. disc.; § 336. 2; B. 314. 1; G. 541; H. 524. The two clauses introduced by **primum** and **deinde** contain the two reasons for the conspiracy, and so the gist of the sentence. The rest, which makes the whole seem complicated, defines the classes of disaffected Gauls who, though conquered, hoped still to recover their liberty by means of their more warlike neighbors. These classes are two (**partim . . . partim**), but to these are added in Cæsar's words, but in a different construction (**ab non nullis**), some who had personal reasons for wishing to expel the Romans. — **ne . . . adduceretur**: substantive clause, object of **vererentur**; § 331. *f*; B. 296. 2; G. 550; H. 498. III. — **omni pacata Gallia**: translate the abl. abs. freely, often by an active construction, *having subdued*, etc., or by a temporal, conditional, or such other clause as will best bring out the thought.

144 13 **Gallia**: i.e. Celtic Gaul within which the previous campaigns had been conducted; § 310. *a*; B. 305. 1; G. 667; H. 549. 2. — **exercitus noster**: i.e. to subdue them in their turn. — **ab non nullis Gallis**: § 246; B. 216; G. 401; H. 415. I.

146 1 **partim qui**, etc.: not part of Labienus's report, but explanatory remarks added by Cæsar; hence the ind. — **ut . . . ita**: correlatives; § 107; G. 110. 3; H. 305. — **Germanos . . . versari**: object of **noluerant**; § 271. *a*, 330. 3; B. 331. IV; G. 532; H. 535. II.

146 2 **exercitum hiemare**, etc., *they took it hard (moleste ferebant)* that an army of the Roman people was wintering and getting a foothold

(*inveterascere*, lit. 'grow old') in *Gaul*. The infinitives, with their subj. acc. *exercitum*, are in indir. disc. after *moleste ferebant*; § 333. *b*; B. 331. V; G. 650; H. 523. 1.

146 4 *mobilitate*: abl. of cause; § 245; B. 219; G. 408; H. 416. — *novis imperiis* (dat.; § 227; B. 187. II; G. 346; H. 385) *studebant*: = *were eager for a change of government* (lit. 'new ruling powers'). Notice that *novis* is emphatic.

146 5 *ab non nullis*, *by some also* (sc. *sollicitabantur*); these were petty chiefs of clans. — *quod* (causal) . . . *occupabantur*, *because royal power was* (constantly) *usurped*. Notice the ind.; Cæsar explains the statement of Labienus (*quod* . . . *sollicitarentur*) by facts from his own knowledge; § 321; B. 286. 1; G. 540; H. 516. A clause with the subjv. (*occuparentur*) would indicate that the reason assigned formed part of the letter of Labienus; cf. note on *quod*, 19 14. — *potentioribus*: used substantively.

146 6 *ad* . . . *facultatīs*, *the means to take men into their pay*. — *conducendos*: gerundive in an expression of purpose; § 300; B. 339. 1. 2; G. 432; H. 544. N. 2.

146 8 *rem*: cf. note on 7 8. *imperio nostro*: strictly a loc. abl., implying time, place, or condition, *under our dominion*. — *consequi*: complementary infin.; § 271 and N.; B. 328. 1; G. 423; H. 533. 1. 2.

146 9 CHAP. 2. *nuntiis*: abl. of cause; cf. *mobilitate*, 146 4. — *duas legiones* . . . *misit*: these were numbered XIII and XIV, making with the others (VII–XII) eight in all, amounting (with auxiliaries) to perhaps 60,000 men.

146 10 *initā aestate*: abl. abs., expressing time *when*; § 255; B. 227. 2. *a*); G. 665; H. 431. 1; *aestas* is the period from the spring equinox to that of autumn.

146 11 *qui deduceret* (the antecedent is Q. *Pedium*): relative clause of purpose; § 317. 2; B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 497. 1. — *Pedium*: Pedius was Cæsar's nephew, son of his sister Julia. — *legatum*: *aide, lieutenant*; no English word exactly translates it.

146 12 *cum primum*, etc.; i.e. when grass and young grain began to be abundant, so that the cavalry and baggage animals could subsist. — *inciperet*: cf. note on *esset*, 144 8. — *ad exercitum*: i.e. to Vesontio, in the country of the Sequani. See map, Fig. 42.

146 13 *Senonibus*: these were north of the Hædui, on the upper course of the Seine; their name is preserved in Sens. — *reliquis Gallis*, *the rest of the Gauls*; § 193; B. 241. 1; H. 440. N. 1.

146 14 *Belgis*: dat. with *finitimi*; § 234. *a*; B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 391. 1. — *uti* . . . *cognoscant*, *to find out*. This is a substantive clause of

purpose in apposition with *negotium*; § 331; B. 295. 1; G. 546; H. 498. — *gerantur*: subjv. as depending on *cognoscant*; § 342; B. 324. 1; G. 629; H. 529. II.

146 15 *seque . . . faciant, and inform him* (Cæsar); *se* is here used as the indirect reflexive; see note, **41 14**, and § 196. *a.* 2; B. 244. II. *a*; G. 521; H. 449. 1. — *constanter, consistently* (with one another); their accounts all agreed.

146 16 *manūs* (acc. plur., subject of *cogi*): small *bands* or *companies*.

146 17 *tum vero*: see Vocabulary and observe the emphatic position. — *dubitandum non (esse)*, *he must no longer hesitate*; the infin. of the second periphrastic conjugation (§ 113. *d. N.*; B. 115; G. 251; H. 466. *N.*), here used in indir. disc. after *existimavit*; *dubitandum* is impers.; § 146. *d.*; B. 138. IV; G. 208. 2; H. 195. II. 1. — *quin*: can follow only a negative expression, as here *non existimavit*, etc. — *quin . . . proficisceretur, to set out* (lit. ‘but that he should,’ etc.); relative clause of result, depending on *dubitandum (esse)*; see note, **44 14**, § 319. *d.*; B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 504. In the sense of *hesitate*, *dubito* regularly takes the infin. and not *quin*; but exceptions occur, as here.

146 18 *re comparata*: on translation of the abl. abs., cf. note on **144 13**.

146 19 *diebus*: abl. of ‘time within which’; § 256; B. 231; G. 393; H. 429. — *finīs*: i.e. north of the Matrona (Marne), crossing somewhere between Bas le Duc and Châlons (sur Marne). The march from Besançon would be about one hundred and forty miles, or ten miles a day. He would so be about thirty-five or forty miles southeast of Durocortorum (Rheims), the capital of the Remi.

146 20 *CHAP. 3. eo*: adv.—*omnium opinione, than any one expected* (following the comparative *celerius*); § 247. *b*; B. 217. 1. 4; G. 398. *N.* 1; H. 417. I. *N.* 5.

146 21 *Remi*: these were friendly to the Romans, who by their victory over Ariovistus (see Bk. i) had made them the second power in Gaul; cf. Bk. vi. ch. 12. — *proximi Galliae, nearest to Gaul*; for the dat., see § 234. *a*; B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 391. 1. — *ex Belgis* (for partit. gen. *Belgarum*; § 216. *c*; G. 372. *R.* 2; H. 397. 3. *N.* 3), *of the Belgæ*; translate with *proximi*.

146 22 *legatos, as ambassadors*, predicate apposition. — *qui dicerent*: a relative clause of purpose; § 317. 2; B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 497. I.

The rest of the chapter consists of the speech of the ambassadors, as reported by Cæsar in indir. disc. Notice that the *principal clauses* are in the infin. with subj. acc., and all *dependent clauses* in the subjv.; § 336 ff.; B. 314; G. 650; H. 522–4. In direct disc. this speech would read as follows:—

Nos nostraque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani *permittimus*; neque [*nos*] cum Belgis reliquis *consensimus* neque contra populum Romanum *coniuravimus*, *paratique sumus* et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus iuvare; *reliqui omnes Belgæ* in armis *sunt*, *Germanique*, qui cis Rhenum *incolunt*, sese cum his *coniunxerunt*, *tantusque* est eorum omnium *furor* ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque *nostros*, qui eodem iure et isdem legibus *utuntur* (utantur), unum imperium unumque magistratum *nobiscum habent* (habent), detertere *potuerimus* quin cum his consentirent (*consentiant*).

146 23 *se in fidem permittere*: = *put themselves under the protection* ("good faith"), etc., more commonly with dat. — *se suaque omnia*, *themselves and all their* [possessions] ("their all"); object of *permittere*. The subj. acc. is regularly expressed in the indir. disc.; but here it is omitted, to prevent the awkward repetition *se* (subject) *se* (object). In the next clause *se* is expressed.

146 24 *neque*, and (had) *not*; § 156. *a*; B. 341. 1. *d*); G. 480; H. 554. I. 2. — *cum Belgis*: accompaniment; § 248. *a*; B. 222; G. 392; H. 419. I.

146 26 *paratos* (participial adj.), *ready*. — *dare, facere*, etc.: infinitives following *paratos*; § 273. *b*; B. 328. 1; G. 423; H. 533. 3.

146 27 *oppidis recipere*, *receive* (the Romans) *into their strongholds*; *oppidis* is abl. of place without *in*; § 258. *f*; B. 228. 1; G. 389; H. 425. II. 1. — *frumento*: abl. of means; cf. *litteris*, **144 9**. — *ceterisque rebus*, *everything else* (necessary); see Vocabulary. — *recipere, iuvare*: sc. *eos* (i.e. the Romans) as object.

147 1 *cis*: i.e. the west or Gallic side.

147 2 *sese . . . coniunxisse*, *had united*; it often happens that a verb used as active in Latin, and requiring a reflexive object, may be best translated in English by an intransitive. The reverse of this must not be forgotten in writing Latin. — *tantum . . . ut*, correlatives; see § 319. R.; B. 284. 1; G. 552; H. 500. II.

147 3 *furorem*, *madness* (blind and unreasoning passion). — *ut . . . potuerint*: result-clause; § 319; B. 284. 1; G. 552; H. 500. II; for tense, see § 287. *c. R.*; B. 268. 6; G. 513; H. 495. VI; cf. also note on **54 21**. — *ne . . . quidem*: § 151. *e*; B. 347. 1; G. 445; H. 553. 2. — *Suessiones* (obj. of *detertere*): they occupied territory west of the Remi, about the modern Soissons.

147 4 *iure et legibus*: *rights and laws*; for case, see § 249; B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 421. 1. — *isdem*: for *eisdem*.

147 5 *unum imperium*, etc.: i.e. their close confederacy did not prevent the Suessiones from leaguings with the other party. — *cum ipsis*: i.e.

the Remi; in the indir. disc. *se* is regularly used to refer to the speaker, but the oblique cases of *ipse* are occasionally used instead. Here *ipse* is used apparently for emphasis; § 195. *k*; B. 249. 3; G. 311. 2; H. 448.

147 6 *quin . . . consentirent*, from *leaguings with*; relative clause of result (§ 319. *d*; B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 504), depending on *detertere*. (Notice that *detertere* is negated by *ne . . . quidem* above, which makes the whole clause negative, though they are attached only to the emphatic word).

147 7 CHAP. 4. *ab his*: i.e. of the envoys; § 239 *c*. N. 1; B. 178. 1. *a*; G. 339. R. 1; H. 374. N. 4. — *quae . . . essent*: indir. question; § 334; B. 300. 1; G. 460; H. 529.

147 8 *quid . . . possent*, *what strength they had in war*; *quid* is cognate acc. with adverbial force; § 240. *a*; B. 176. 4. *a*; G. 334; H. 371. II. (2), 378. 2. — *sic*, *as follows*. — *reperiebat*: for force of the tense, cf. *adferebantur*, **144 9**, and note. Observe that the rest of the chapter is in indir. disc., except the words *Remi dicebant*, **147 16**. — *plerosque*, etc.: Direct:—

Plerique Belgae sunt orti . . . ab Germanis, Rhenumque . . . traducti propter loci fertilitatem ibi consederunt, Gallosque qui ea loca incolabant expulerunt, solique sunt qui patrum nostrorum memoria, . . . Teutonos Cimbrosque intra suos finis ingredi prohibuerint; qua ex re fit uti . . . magnam sibi auctoritatem . . . sumant. De numero eorum omnia (nos) habemus explorata . . . propterea quod propinquitatibus . . . coniuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem . . . ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognovimus. Plurimum inter eos Bellovaci . . . valent; hi possunt conficere armata milia centum, polliciti ex eo numero electa milia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulant. Suessiones nostri sunt finitimi; finis latissimos feracissimosque agros possident. Apud eos fuit rex nostra etiam memoria Diviciacus, totius Galliae potentissimus, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuit; nunc est rex Galba; ad hunc . . . summa totius belli . . . defertur; oppida habent numero XII, pollicentur milia armata quinquaginta; totidem Nervii, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habentur, longissimeque absunt; quindecim milia Atrebatas, (likewise) Ambiani, Morini, etc. . . . Condrusos, Eburones, etc. . . . qui . . . Germani appellantur arbitramur (conficere posse or polliceri) ad XL milia.

147 8 *plerosque*, *most of*; § 193; B. 241. 1; H. 440. N. 2; see the end of the chapter, and compare, regarding the Nervii, Tacitus (*Germania*, 28). The Belgians were, no doubt, chiefly of Celtic blood, but possibly they considered the Germans a more proud and heroic ancestry.

147 9 *ab Germanis*: abl. of source; § 244. *a*. R.; B. 215. 2; G. 395; H. 415. II. N. — *Rhenum*: acc. governed by *trans* in *traductos*; § 239. *b*; B. 179. 1. 3; G. 331; H. 376. N.

147 10 traductos: partic. agreeing with Belgas. — propter fertilitatem: construe with consedissee.

147 12 qui . . . prohibuerint: relative clause of characteristic with solos (see notes **61** 13, **84** 18); § 320. *b*; B. 283. 2; G. 631. 2; H. 503. II. 1. Note the retention of the perfect tense contrary to tense sequence. and cf. ut . . . potuerint, **147** 3, and note. — memoriā: cf. diebus, **146** 19. — Teutonos, etc.: this was in B.C. 102 and 101, a little more than forty years before, and was the worst danger that had threatened the Romans since the destruction of the city by the Gauls three centuries before. See Roman histories.

147 13 ingredi: the subjv. might have been used; see § 271. *a*; B. 295. 5. N.; G. 532. R. 1; H. 505. II. 1. 2. — qua ex re, in consequence of which (fact), abl. of cause; § 245; B. 219; G. 408. N. 7; H. 416. I.

147 14 fieri uti, it was coming to be the case that: the subject of fieri is the clause uti . . . sumerent; cf. note, **50** 15; § 332. *a*; B. 297. 2; G. 553. 3; H. 501. I. 1. — memoria: abl. of cause. — sibi: § 235; B. 188; G. 352; H. 384. II. 2.

147 15 de numero, etc.: the rest of the chapter depends on Remi dicebant.

147 16 se habere explorata, had found out all about (de), etc.; habere explorata differs but little in sense from explorasse; § 292. *c*; B. 337. 6; G. 238; H. 388. 1. N; in construction explorata agrees with omnia, which is obj. of habere. See note on redactas habuerunt, **17** 15.

147 17 propinquitatibus, ties of blood. — adfinitatibus, alliances by marriage.

147 18 quantam quisque . . . pollicitus sit: indir. question, obj. of cognoverint; cf. **147** 7.

147 19 cognoverint: the primary tense is used in violation of the sequence of tenses. The statement is made more vivid by putting it in the same tense that was used by the speakers. They said cognovimus, we know (lit. 'have found out'). The perf. is very often retained in indir. discourse.

147 20 virtute, etc.: abl. of specification.

148 1 armata milia centum: — armatorum hominum milia centum. As here expressed, milia is the noun with which the adj. armata agrees; § 94. *c*; B. So. 5; G. 293; H. 178.

148 2 electa, choice troops, picked men.

148 3 sibi: dat. of reference; cf. sibi, **147** 14; it refers to the Bellovacii. — suos, their own (i.e. of the Remi); notice that the reflexive regularly refers back to the speaker. See note on cum ipsis, **147** 5.

148 4 possidere: sc. eos, i.e. the Suessiones. — fuisse . . . esse: notice the difference of time; fuisse (in the direct disc. fuit) refers to time past,

esse (direct, est), to time *present*, with respect to the verb of saying (dicebant, 147 16). — *regem*: showing that royal power had not yet been overthrown among the Belgians.

148 6 *cum . . . tum*, *not only . . . but also*.

148 7 *Britanniae*: the first mention of Britain by a Roman author. — *obtinerit*, *had held*; in the direct, *obtenuit*, *held*. For tense, cf. note on *cognoverint*, 147 19.

148 8 *summam*: subj. of *deferri*.

148 9 *voluntate*: abl. of manner; § 248. R.; B. 220. 2; G. 399; H. 419. III. N. 2. — *habere*: the subj. must be supplied from *Suessiones*, above. — *numero*: abl. of specification; cf. 147 20.

148 10 *Nervios*, etc. (see map, Fig. 42): the names of several of these tribes are found in the modern towns, as *Atrebates* (Arras), *Ambiani* (Amiens), *Caleti* (Calais), *Viromandui* (Vermandois), *Condrusi* (Condroz).

148 11 *feri*: pred. after *habeantur*, *are regarded*.

148 15 *Condrusos*, etc.: subjects of *polliceri* or *conficere posse* understood. — *qui . . . appellantur*: the ind. shows that this is an explanatory note added by Cæsar, and not a part of the indir. disc., while *qui . . . habeantur* above, on the other hand, is a remark made by the Remi, as is shown by the subjv.; cf. note, 81 2.

148 16 *Germani*: this name seems to belong especially to the four last-named (*Condrusi*, *Eburones*, etc.). — *arbitrari*: in direct, *arbitramur*; in translation we may say *they thought*, parenthetically, as in the English usage in indir. discourse.

148 17 CHAP. 5. *cohortatus*, *prosecutus*: for the tense of these participles, cf. § 290. *b*; B. 336. 5; G. 282. N.; H. 550. N. I.

148 19 *obsides* (pred. appositive), *as hostages*; if the chiefs should break their faith, these boys would probably be sold as slaves. — *quæ omnia*, *and all this*. Latin very frequently connects clauses by a rel. where our idiom prefers a conj. with a demonstrative; § 201. *e*; B. 251. 6; G. 610. R. I; H. 453.

148 21 *quanto opere . . . intersit*, *how greatly it concerns both the republic and their common safety*. For the genitives, see § 222; B. 210, 211. I; G. 381; H. 406. III.

148 22 *intersit*: indir. question; cf. 147 7, 147 18. — *manūs* (acc. plur.) . . . *distineri*: infinitive clause, subject of *intersit*. — *ne configendum sit*, *lest they should have to contend*; clause of purpose, depending on *distineri*; § 317; B. 282. I; G. 545. 3; H. 497. II; *configendum sit* is an impers. second periphrastic; see § 146. *c*, 129; B. 138, 115; G. 208, 251. 2; H. 301. 2, 234.

148 23 *id fieri posse*, etc., *this, he said, could be done*, etc. Notice that no new word of saying is necessary in Latin, but in English one is usually inserted parenthetically.

148 24 *suas copias*: the emphatic position opposes the forces of the Hædui to the Roman army. — *Bellovacorum*: these lay farthest west and most remote from Cæsar's field of operations; so that the manœuvre indicated would divide the enemy (cf. **153 28 ff.**). — *introduxerint . . . coeperint*: fut. condition; in the direct disc. these would be fut. perf.; § 307. c; B. 319. B. a; G. 596. 1; H. 508.

148 25 *eorum*: i.e. *Bellovacorum*. — *datis*: words thus printed in Italics are conjectural readings not found in the MSS.

148 26 *dimittit*: the effect of his mission appears in **154 2**, and he has returned to Cæsar in **156 11**. — *postquam . . . vidit*, *as soon as he saw*; § 324; B. 287. 1; G. 561; H. 518.

148 27 *neque*: -que connects *vidit* and *cognovit*; *ne-* with *iam* = *no longer*. — [*vidit*]: words thus inclosed in brackets are of doubtful authenticity.

148 28 *ab eis*: construed with *cognovit*.

149 1 *Axonam* (apposition), *the Aisne*: here flowing nearly due west, and joining the Seine below Paris, through the Oise. — *in extremis finibus*, *in the remotest part of the territory of the Remi*: § 193; B. 241. 1; H. 440. 2, notes 1 and 2; the phrase is used in a general sense merely, for Bibrax, a town of the Remi, lay eight miles farther off.

149 2 *exercitum*: is direct object of *traducere*; *flumen* (l. 19) is secondary object, depending on *trans* (*tra-duco* = *trans-duco*); § 239. b; B. 179. 1; G. 331. R. 1; H. 376. — *castra*: the site of this camp has been made out at Berry au Bac (Fig. 47), a little village about twelve miles north by west of Rheims and about twenty-five miles east of Soissons. Traces of Cæsar's works at this place were discovered in 1862, on a low hill called Mauchamp (see map, Fig. 48).

149 3 *quæ res*, *this movement* (or *manœuvre*), i.e. his having crossed the river, and then pitched his camp where he did. Cæsar's camp was protected in the rear by the Axona, and in front by a small marshy stream. — *ripis*: cf. *frumento*, **146 27**.

149 4 *post eum quæ erant*, *the rear of his army*, lit. '(those things) which were behind him.' — *tuta*: pred. acc.; § 239. a; B. 177. 2; G. 340; H. 373. I. N. 2); the direct object is *ea*, the omitted antecedent of *quæ*. — *commeatus*: subj. of *possent*.

149 5 *ut . . . possent*: substantive clause of result, object of *efficiebat*; § 332; B. 297. 1; G. 553. I; H. 501. II. 1; cf. this with the pure result-clause, **147 3**, and with the subject clause of result, **147 14**.

149 6 *efficiebat*: the subj. is still *quae res*; observe the imperf. tenses describing the situation, and cf. note on **5 2**, **10 1**.

149 7 *in altera parte*, *on the other side*, i.e. on the left bank of the Aisne, towards the Remi. Cæsar had crossed the stream, and encamped on the side toward the Suessiones.

149 9 *pedum xii*: gen. of measure with *vallo*; § 215. *b*; B. 203. 2; G. 365. R. 2; H. 396. V. When pronouncing the Latin, always give the Latin words for numerals.—*duodeviginti pedum*: i.e. a moat 18 feet in width. See chapter on military affairs, V, and Fig. 116.

149 11 *CHAP. 6. nomine*: cf. the ablatives in **147 20**.—*Bibrax*: this town has been variously identified as Vieux Laon, about the proper distance to the northwest, and Beaurieux to the west, more probably the latter.

149 12 *milia passuum octo*, *eight miles*; the regular way of stating measure, *milia* being acc. of extent of space, and *passuum* partit. gen. The *passus* was the *stretch* from heel to heel, i.e. from where one heel is raised to where it is set down again, and is reckoned at five Roman feet. A Roman mile (*mille passuum*) was about 400 feet less than ours; it measures the distance which a soldier would march in a thousand double paces.—*ex itinere*, *on the march*, i.e. turning aside *from* their course to attack the town.—*magno impetu*: abl. of manner; cf. *voluntate*, **148 9**.

149 13 *aegre sustentatum est* (impers.), *it was with difficulty* (that they) *held out*. In English we often are inclined to put into two clauses what the Latin crowds into one.—*Gallorum . . . haec*, *the attack* (mode of attacking) *of the Gauls, being the same as (atque) that of the Belgians, is this* (the following).—*ubi*: cf. **40 16**, **43 5**, and notes.

149 15 *circumiecta multitudine* (abl. abs.) . . . *moenibus* (dat., § 228; B. 187. III; G. 347; H. 386. 2), *a host of men being thrown round all the walls*. Here the English absolute construction is admissible, though usually to be avoided.

150 1 *iaci*: complementary infin.; cf. *consequi*, **146 8**, and note.—*coepti sunt*: the pass. is used with the pass. infin.—*defensoribus*: abl. of separation; § 243. *a*; B. 214. I. *b*); G. 405; H. 414. I.

150 2 *testudine facta*, *making a testudo*; see chapter on military affairs, VII (last part), and Fig. 79.

150 3 *quod*, *this*, i.e. the movements just described.—*tum*, *in the present instance*.—*multitudo*: subj. of *conicerent*, plur. verb; § 205. *c*; B. 254. 4. *a*); G. 211. Exc. (*a*); H. 461. I.—*cum . . . conicerent*: *cum* describing the situation, but almost causal; cf. **144 8**; § 325; B. 288. I. B; G. 585; H. 521.

150 4 consistendi: gen. of gerund, with potestas; § 298; B. 338. 1. a); G. 428; H. 542. 1.

150 5 nulli, *nobody could keep a foothold on the wall*; lit. 'power of standing on the wall was to nobody'; dat. of possessor; § 231; B. 190; G. 349; H. 387.—cum . . . fecisset: again describing the situation.—oppugnandi: gerund; cf. coniurandi, **144** 12.

150 6 summa nobilitate et gratia, (a man) *of the highest*, etc.; abl. of quality; § 251; B. 224; G. 400; H. 419. II.—inter suos, *among his* (fellow-citizens).—oppido: dat. with praeerat; § 228; B. 187. III; G. 347; H. 386.

150 7 unus ex eis, *one of those*; after numerals ex with the abl. is preferred to the partit. gen.—legati, *as ambassadors*; pred. appositive.

150 8 nisi . . . posse: indir. disc. depending on the idea of *reporting* contained in nuntium mittit. Translate *unless reinforcements, he said*, etc.—sibi: i.e. Iccius; the dat. is used instead of ad se with subsidium submittatur, because the idea of help (*for him*) is more prominent than that of motion (*towards him*). In the direct disc. the message of Iccius was:—

Nisi subsidium mihi submittetur, (ego) diutius sustinere non possum.

150 10 CHAP. 7. eo, *thither, to that place*, i.e. Bibrax.—isdem ducibus usus, *employing the same men* (as) *guides*; for the abl., cf. iure, **147** 4. Observe that ducibus is pred. appositive; cf. legati, **150** 7.

150 11 Numidas et Cretas: both these (especially the Cretans) were famous bowmen. See Fig. 100.

150 12 Baleares (adj.): the inhabitants of the Balearic Islands, east of Spain, were famous slingers. See Fig. 46. These nations served as auxiliaries in the Roman armies.—subsidio oppidanis: dat. of service with dat. of person affected; § 233; B. 191. 2; G. 356; H. 390.—et . . . et: see Vocabulary.

150 13 studium . . . accessit, *eagerness for a vigorous defence was inspired in the Remi*.—propugnandi: obj. gen. of the gerund; cf. coniurandi, **144** 12.

150 14 hostibus, *from the enemy*; dat.; § 229; B. 188. 2. d); G. 345. R. 1; H. 385. 2.—potiundi oppidi: gerundive; § 296. R.; B. 339. 1; G. 427. N. 5; H. 544. 2. N. 5.

150 15 morati . . . depopulati . . . vicis incensis: observe the change of construction. The Latin can use a perf. partic. with active meaning only (as here) of *deponent verbs*. The corresponding construction with other verbs is the abl. abs. with the perf. partic. pass.; as here, vicis incensis, which is to be translated accordingly. See last note on **144** 13.

150 16 quo: *to which* (or the like).

150 17 omnibus copiis: cf. **146 24**, and for the omission of **cum**, see § 248. *a. N.*; B. 222. I; G. 392. R. I; H. 419. I.

150 18 a milibus passuum minus duobus, *less than two miles off*; **a** is used adverbially; § 261. *d.*; B. 144. I; G. 415; II. 379. 2. *N.*; **milibus** is abl. of degree of difference; § 250; B. 223; G. 403; II. 423; **minus** does not affect the construction; § 247. *c.*; B. 217. 3; G. 296. R. 4; H. 417. I. *N.* 2; **amplius** (l. 19) is acc. of extent of space; § 257; B. 181; G. 335; H. 379; and **milibus** (l. 19), abl. after the comparative; § 247; B. 217. I; G. 398; II. 417. We have here both the two constructions allowable with these neuter comparatives; see reference under **minus**.

150 22 CHAP. 8. **eximiam opinionem virtutis**, *their high reputation for valor*; obj. gen.; § 217; B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 396. III. — **proelio supersedere**, *to defer the engagement*; for the abl., see § 243. *a.*; B. 214. 2; G. 390; H. 414. I, and cf. **defensoribus**, **150 1**.

150 23 **quid . . . posset . . . quid auderent**, indir. questions.— **virtute**: abl. of specification. But the whole is best rendered *tested the prowess of the enemy, and the daring of our own soldiers*. Notice that the form of thought is entirely different in Latin and in English.

150 24 **periclitabatur**: note the tense and cf. **adferebantur**, **144 9**, and note.

150 25 **loco . . . idoneo**: abl. abs. expressing cause.— **ad . . . instruendam**: gerundive expression of purpose; cf. **146 6**.

150 27 **tantum**, etc., *spread over as much (tantum) ground as (quantum)*, etc.— **adversus**, *right in front*.

152 1 **in latitudinem**, *in breadth*, i.e. from the camp towards the confluence of the Aisne with a little stream, the Miette, which here makes a swamp.— **loci**: partit. gen. with **quantum**, but more conveniently translated with the correlative **tantum**, with which it has to be supplied to complete the sense.

152 2 **lateris deiectus** (acc. plur.), *lateral slopes* (lit. 'slopes of the side').

152 3 **in fronte**, etc., *falling with an easy slope in front* (i.e. to the west), *sank gently to the plain* (see battle plan, Fig. 48).

152 4 **transversam**: i.e. at right angles to his line of battle.

152 5 **passuum quadringentorum**: gen. of measure; cf. **pedum**, **149 9**. — **extremas**: see § 193; B. 241. I; H. 440. *N.* 2.

152 6 **tormenta**: see chapter on military affairs, I. 5, and Figs. 75, 92, 94.

152 7 **instruxisset**: subjv. by attraction for fut. perf. ind.; § 342; B. 324. I; G. 662 at end; H. 529. II; § 325. *c.*; B. 289; G. 580; H. 521. I. — **tantum**: adv. acc.; cf. **quid**, **147 8**. — **poterant**: this clause is parenthetical, and hence is not (like **instruxisset**) attracted into the subjunctive.

152 8 *ab lateribus*, *on the flanks*, modifying *circumvenire*; § 260. *b*; II. 434. I. — *suos*: i.e. Cæsar's, referring back to the subject of *conlocavit*.

152 10 *si quo* (adv.): sc. *duci*, but translate freely *if they were needed anywhere*. — *esset*: protasis of a fut. condition (*si . . . erit*); here in the imperf. subjv., because depending on the final clause *ut . . . possent*; § 342; B. 324. 1; G. 663; H. 529. II. — *subsidio*: dat. of purpose or end; cf. note on **150 12**.

152 11 *sex*: see note on **146 9**. — *suas*: notice the emphatic position, *THEIR forces too*.

152 12 *copias . . . eductas instruxerunt*, *had led out and drawn up*, etc.; the Latin is fond of using a participle for what is practically a coördinate clause, instead of an additional finite verb.

152 13 CHAP. 9. *nostrum*: possess. pron.; possess. gen. could not be used; § 197. *a*; G. 362. R. 1; H. 396. II. N.

152 14 *hanc*: i.e. *paludem*. — *si . . . transirent*, (*to see*) *if our men would cross*; § 334. *f*; B. 300. 3; G. 460; H. 529. I. N. 1.

153 1 *si . . . fieret*, *in case they should begin the passage*; lit. 'a beginning of crossing should be made by them'; fut. condition (*si . . . fiet*); here in the subjv. because part of the final clause *ut . . . adgrederentur*; cf. note on *esset*, I. 10.

153 2 *adgrederentur*: purpose, depending on *parati*, etc.

153 3 *contendebatur*: impers. and not to be translated literally; cf. note, **7 7**.

153 4 *nostris*: § 234. *a*; B. 192; G. 359; H. 391. I.

153 6 *ad flumen*, etc.: evidently somewhat lower down, so that they were concealed by the hills beyond the marsh.

153 8 *eo consilia ut*, etc.: the final clauses are in apposition with *consilio*; § 317. *a*; B. 297. 3; G. 545. 1; H. 499. 3.

153 9 *castellum*, *the redoubt* beyond the river, held by Sabinus (**149 7**). — *cui*: cf. *oppido*, **150 6**.

153 10 *pontem*: the bridge held at one end by a garrison, at the other by the redoubt (**149 7**). By destroying this, the Belgæ would cut off Cæsar's supplies and hinder his retreat; cf. **149 3-6**. — *si possent* (I. 8), *si minus potuissent*: fut. conditions; *possent* represents the fut., *potuissent* the fut. perf. ind.; for change of mood and tense, cf. note on **152 10**. — *minus*, *not*.

153 11 *popularentur, prohiberent*: in same construction as *expugnant*. — *magno nobis usui*: cf. note on *subsidio oppidanis*, **150 12**. — *ad bellum gerendum* (gerundive), *for carrying on the war*; cf. **146 6**.

153 12 *commeatu*: abl. of separation; cf. *defensoribus*, **150 1**.

153 13 CHAP. 10. *ab Titurio*: abl. of voluntary agent.

153 14 *levis armaturae* (gen. of description), *of light equipment* = *light armed* (see chapter on military affairs, I. 3, and Figs. 65, 99). — **Numidas**, etc. : these light-armed troops were trained runners, and so could arrive at the ford in time to stop the passage of the Belgians.

153 15 *traducit* : with two accusatives ; cf. **149** 2 and note. — *pugnatum est* : cf. note, **7** 7.

153 18 *conantīs* : with *reliquos*.

153 19 *equitatu* : considered here as means or instrument ; therefore no prep. — *circumventos interfecerunt* : cf. note on *eductas*, **152** 12.

153 20 *ubi . . . intellexerunt* : the regular mood and tense with *ubi* ; cf. **149** 14. — *de*, *with regard to*.

153 21 *neque*, *and . . . not*.

153 22 *pugnandi causā* : gerund construction, expressing purpose ; § 245. *c*, 318. *b* ; B. 338. 1. *c* ; G. 373 ; H. 542. 1.

153 23 *ipsos* : i.e. the enemy. The superiority of the Roman commissariat was a most important factor in winning their victories. The enemy could not carry on a long campaign with a large army for lack of provisions, and when they were compelled to disband, the Romans destroyed them piecemeal at their leisure.

153 24 *constituerunt* : here has two objects, — (1) *optimum esse*, etc. (indir. disc.), (2) (*ut*) *convenirent* (substantive clause of purpose) ; see § 332. *h* ; B. 295. 4 ; G. 546. R. 1 ; H. 498. 1. N. ; and note on **3** 11. The subject of *esse* is the infinitive clause *quemque reverti* ; § 330 ; B. 330 ; G. 422 ; H. 538. Thus the confederacy dissolves into a mere defensive alliance, and all the members are cut to pieces in detail. — *domum* : § 258. *b* ; B. 182. 1. *b* ; G. 337 ; H. 380. 2. 1.

153 25 *quorum* : the antecedent is *eos*.

153 26 *introduxissent* : stands for the fut. perf., and is attracted into the pluperf. subjv. by being made part of the purpose-clause ; cf. *potuissent*, **153** 10. — *convenirent* : sc. *ut* ; § 331. *f*. R. ; B. 295. 8 ; G. 546. R. 2 ; H. 499. 2.

153 27 *suis, alienis, domesticis* : notice the emphatic position of the adjectives.

154 2 *quod . . . cognoverant* : ind., because Cæsar gives the reason on his own authority ; cf. **146** 5 and note. The clause is in apposition with *haec ratio*. — *Diviciacum . . . adpropinquare* : see **148** 24. — *finibus* : dat. after *adpropinquare*.

154 3 *his persuaderi*, etc., *these could not be persuaded*, etc. ; lit. 'it could not be persuaded to these.' Verbs that take the dat. in the active are used impersonally in the passive, and retain the dat. — *ut*, etc. : substantive clause of purpose, depending for its construction on *persuaderi*, but (in the impers. construction) used as subj. of *poterat*.

relative clause of purpose; cf. **146** 23. — **his**: dat. with **præfecit**; cf. construction of **oppido**, **150** 6.

154 16 **milia**: cf. **149** 12 and note.

154 17 **cum**: causal; cf. **154** 7 and note. — **ab extremo agmine**, *in the rear*.

154 18 **quos**: relates to the implied subj. of **consisterent**. — **ventum erat**: § 146. *d*; B. 138. IV; G. 208. 2; H. 301. 1.

154 19 **prio**res: sc. *and* in English. This refers to the van of the retreating enemy. — **quod . . . viderentur**, *because they seemed*; i.e. they thought themselves. This word and **continerentur** are subjunctives, as being part of the subjunctive clause **cum . . . ponerent**. For similar cases of attraction, see **81** 2, **153** 9, **153** 26.

154 21 **exaudito clamore, perturbatis ordinibus** (abls. abs., the first defining the time of the second), *breaking ranks on hearing the outcry* (of those engaged in the rear).

154 22 **sibi**: § 235; B. 188. 1; G. 345; H. 384. 4. — **ponerent**: same construction as **consisterent** and **sustinerent**.

154 23 **tantam . . . spatium**, *killed as great a number of them as time* (before night) *allowed* (lit. 'as the day was long'); notice the correlatives **tantam . . . quantum**; § 106; G. 642. 1; H. 191; and cf. **54** 18–20.

155 1 CHAP. 12. **postridie eius diei**, *next day*; lit. 'on the morrow of that day'; for the gen., see § 223. *e*; B. 201. 3. *a*; H. 398. 5. — **priusquam . . . reciperent**, *before the enemy could recover themselves*; § 327; B. 292; G. 577; H. 520.

155 2 **in finis . . . duxit**: i.e. following his plan of subduing the tribes one after the other.

155 3 **Remis**: cf. **Galliae**, **146** 21. — **magno itinere**: see chapter on military affairs, VI.

155 4 **Noviodunum** (now Soissons): about twenty miles west of Bibrax. Celtic *dunum* = English "town"; hence Noviodunum = *Newton* or *Newburg*. Soissons is derived from **Suessiones**. — **ex itinere**: i.e. as soon as he arrived, by filling up the ditch and scaling the walls, without waiting to throw up works or form regular lines of approach; cf. **149** 12.

155 5 **esse**: sc. **oppidum** for subject.

155 6 **paucis defendentibus** (abl. abs. denoting concession), *though there were few defenders*. — **oppugnare**: means *to attack*; **expugnare**, *to take* (by storm). Unable to take the town by storm, Cæsar was obliged to begin a regular siege. See chapter on military affairs, VIII, and Figs. 59, 89, 90, 112, 116.

155 7 **quæque**, etc.: i.e. wood, earth, stones, etc.; the antecedent of **quæ**, if expressed, would be **ea**.

155 8 ad oppugnandum: § 300. (cf. § 234. b); B. 338. 3; G. 432 (cf. 359. R. 3); H. 542. III (cf. 391. II. 1).

155 11 magnitudine: i.e. by the extent of these offensive operations. — quae, which, i.e. 'the like of which.'

155 12 ante: adverb.

155 14 petentibus Remis, at the request of the Remi. — ut conservantur: substantive clause of result, obj. of impetrant; § 332; B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 501.

155 15 CHAP. 13. obsidibus acceptis primis, after he had received as hostages the chief men, etc.

155 16 Galbae: see 148 7-9.

156 2 Bellovacos: their territory lay thirty or forty miles due north of Paris, about Beauvais. — qui cum, and when they. A rel. is often used to begin a new sentence where the English idiom would lead us to expect a demonstrative with a connective (here hi autem). The relative serves to bind the new sentence more closely to the preceding. — se suaque omnia: cf. 146 23 and note.

156 3 Bratuspantium: probably Breteuil, at the head of the Somme valley. Notice that Bratuspantium is in apposition with oppidum, not in the gen. according to the English usage.

156 4 circiter, etc., (only) about five miles. — milia passuum: cf. 149 12, 154 16.

156 5 maiores natu: § 9f. c; B. 226. 1; G. 87. 9; H. 168. 4; natu is abl. of specification.

156 6 voce significare, show by the tones of their voice (of course they could not talk Latin). — in eius fidem . . . venire: i.e. surrendered at discretion; cf. the clause se . . . in fidem . . . permittere, 146 23. Notice that the reflexive sese refers to the speakers and represents the first person of the direct disc.; eius refers to Caesar, the person spoken to.

156 7 neque, and (that they would) not.

156 9 pueri mulieresque, women and children. — ex muro: English says on the wall, from another point of view.

156 10 ab Romanis: § 239. c. N. 1; B. 178. 1. a); G. 339. N. 2; H. 374. N. 4.

156 11 CHAP. 14. pro his, in behalf of these, i.e. the Bellovaci.

156 12 eum: i.e. Caesar.

156 13 Bellovacos, etc.: the rest of this chapter is in indir. disc., depending on facit verba. Direct:—

Bellovaci omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Haeduae fuerunt: impulsī ab suis principibus, qui dicebant Haeduos a Caesare in servitutem redactos omnis indignitatis . . . perferre, et ab Haeduis defecerunt et populo

Romano bellum *intulerunt*. Qui eius consili principes *fueraut*, quod *intellegebant* quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam *profugerunt*. *Petunt* non solum *Bellovacis* sed etiam pro his *Haedui* ut tua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos *utaris*. Quod si *feceris*, Haeduum auctoritatem apud omnis Belgas *amplificabis*, quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella *inciderunt*, sustentare *consuerunt*.

156 13 *omni tempore*, *always*. — in fide atque amicitia : i.e. they had been subject-allies of the Hædui.

156 14 *impulsos* (notice the emphatic position: *not* of their own accord, but *induced* by their chiefs): agreeing with the subj. (*eos*) of *defecisse* and *intulisse*, which is to be supplied from *Bellovacos*.

156 15 *dicerent*: this word introduces another clause in the indir. disc., the statement of the chiefs, which is thus reported at secondhand by Cæsar as a part of the speech of Diviciacus. The subj. is *Haeduos*; the verb, *perferre*. — *omnis*, *all* (kinds of).

156 17 *qui*, (those) *who*. — *eius consili*, *in this design*; notice that the gen. expresses nearly all the relations of one noun to another, and may be translated by *in*, *to*, and many other forms of speech in English; § 217; B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 396. III.

156 18 *quantam . . . intulissent*: cf. **147 7** and note.

156 19 *civitati*: § 228; B. 187. III; G. 347; H. 386. — *Britanniam*: the support and sympathy which the Gauls received from Britain was Cæsar's excuse for his subsequent expedition there. — *profugisse*: the subj. is the implied antecedent of *qui*.

156 20 *sua clementia*, *his* (characteristic or well-known) *clemency*; for the case, cf. **147 4**, **150 10**.

156 21 *in eos*: but for the interposition of *Haeduos* this would be *in se* (§ 196. 2; B. 244. II. *a*; G. 520, 521; H. 499. 1), but, as often, the last word or thought governs the construction. — *utatur*: substantive clause of purpose after *petere*; § 331. *d*; B. 295. 1; G. 546; H. 499. 3. Cf. also **3 11** and note. Observe that from this point the pres. and perf. tenses of the subjv. are used; cf. *cognoverint*, **147 19**, and note. — *quod si fecerit*: fut. condition (more vivid); *fecerit* is the perf. subjv. for the fut. perf. ind. of the direct disc. The apodosis is *amplificaturum*; § 307. *a*; B. 302. 1; G. 595; H. 508. 2. On the use of *quod*, see note on *qui cum*, **156 2**.

156 23 *quorum*: the antecedent is *Belgas*. *si qua bella inciderint*, *sustentare consuerint*: general condition; see direct disc., above. For the tenses used in general conditions, see § 309. *c*; B. 302. 3; G. 594. N.; H. 508. 5.

156 24 *consuerint*: present in force; see § 143. *c*. N.; B. 262. A.; G. 175. 5, 236. R.; H. 297. I. 2.

156 25 CHAP. 15. *honoris Diviciaci . . . causa*, out of respect for *Diviciacus*; lit. 'for the sake of honor.' — *Diviciaci*: obj. gen.; § 217; B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 396. III. — *causā*: abl. of cause (§ 245. c; B. 219; G. 373, 408; H. p. 221, foot-note 2), used almost like a prep. with the gen. and always following its noun, as here *honoris*.

156 26 *recepturum (esse)*: the fut. active infin. commonly omits *esse*, as here. — *quod erat*: the ind. implies that this was the real reason, not merely one given by Cæsar at the time (which would require *quod esset*); cf. **146** 5.

158 1 *magna auctoritate*: cf. **150** 6. — *multitudine*: cf. **147** 20.

158 4 *Ambianorum*: about Amiens, near the coast of the Channel.

158 5 *eorum finis*: notice the emphatic position. *Their territories* reach to the Nervii. — *natura*: i.e. what sort of people they were, like *quales essent*.

158 6 *reperiebat*: cf. note on **144** 9. — *nullum aditum*, etc.: direct: — *Nullus aditus est* ad eos mercatoribus; *nihil patiuntur* vini . . . inferri, *quod his rebus relanguescere animos . . . existimant*; *sunt homines feri magnaeque virtutis*; *increpitant* atque *incusant* reliquos Belgas, qui se populo Romano *dediderint* patriamque virtutem *proiecerint*; *confirmant* sese neque legatos missuros neque ullam condicionem pacis accepturos.

158 7 *mercatoribus* (dat. of possessor; cf. *nulli*, **150** 5), *traders have*. — *pati* (subj. eos understood): the subj. acc. of the infin. in indir. disc. should regularly be expressed, but occasionally it is omitted when the sense is clear. Cæsar is very free in this respect, because his work is only brief notes of his campaigns (*commentarii*). — *nihil . . . vini*: § 216. a. 1; B. 201. 1; G. 369; H. 397. 1.

158 9 *relanguescere*: an inceptive verb (ending, -sco); § 167. a; B. 155. 1; G. 133. V; H. 280. — *esse*, *that they are*.

158 10 *magnae virtutis*: § 215; B. 203; G. 365; H. 396. V. Note that the descriptive gen. has exactly the force of an adj., so that it is even connected with *feros* by a coördinate conj.; § 154. a; B. 341; G. 474; H. 554.

158 11 *Belgas*: obj. — *qui . . . dedidissent . . . proiecissent*, *who* (they said) *had surrendered*, etc.; § 341. d; B. 323; G. 628; H. 528. 1; cf. also note on **50** 8.

158 12 *patriam*: an adjective.

158 13 *missuros . . . accepturos*: on the omission of *esse*, cf. note on **156** 26. The subj. of the infinitives is *sese*, which refers back to the omitted subj. (*eos*) of *confirmare*.

158 14 CHAP. 16. *cum . . . fecisset*: for similar *cum*-clauses, cf. **144** 8, **150** 3, **150** 6. — *eorum*: i.e. of the Nervii. — *triduum*: § 256; B. 181; G. 336; H. 379.

158 15 Sabim flumen, etc. : direct :—

Sabis flumen a castris . . . milia passuum x abest ; trans id flumen *omnes Nervii consederunt* adventumque Romanorum *expectant* una cum Atrebatibus . . . (nam his . . . *persuaserunt* uti eandem belli fortunam experirentur) ; *expectantur* etiam ab eis Aduatucorum *copiae* atque *sunt* in itinere ; mulieres quique . . . *inutiles videbantur*, in eum locum *coniecerunt* quo propter paludes exercitui aditus non esset.

158 15 Sabim (§ 56. a. 1 ; B. 38. 1 ; G. 57. R. 1 ; II. 62. II. 2 (1)) : the Sambre, which flows northeasterly into the Meuse (Mosa). The Nervii occupied the basin of this river and of the upper Scheldt. — **non amplius milia**, etc. : *milia* is acc. of extent, and is not affected in construction by **amplius** ; cf. a similar construction, **150 18**, and see § 247. c ; B. 217. 3 ; G. 296. R. 4 ; II. 417. I. N. 2.

158 18 Atrebatibus, etc. : small tribes to the south and west ; modern Arras, Vermandois. — **his** : § 227 ; B. 187. II. ; G. 346 ; H. 385. II.

158 19 experirentur : substantive clause of purpose ; cf. **156 20**.

158 20 expectari : note throughout this indir. disc. the variation between pres. and perf. infin., according as the direct disc. has the pres. or perf. indicative.

158 21 quique, and (those) *who* (not to be confounded with the plur. of *quisque* with the same form) ; **qui**, as so often, implies its own antecedent, *eos*, the obj. of *coniecisse*.

158 22 quo : = *in quem*.

158 23 esset : already in direct disc. a relative clause of characteristic ; § 320 ; B. 283. 1 ; G. 631. 1 ; H. 503. 1 ; cf. **147 11**. The emphasis is shown in “to which on account of the MARSHES an *army* could not get access.”

158 25 CHAP. 17. locum idoneum : see chapter on military affairs, V. — **deligant** : cf. construction of **dicerent**, **146 23**. — **ex . . . Belgis** : following **complures** instead of **partit. gen.** ; cf. **146 21**, **150 7**.

158 26 dediticiis : i.e. the three states just subdued.

158 27 unā, along (with him).

159 1 eorum dierum, during those days ; see note on **consili**, **156 17**.

159 3 inter singulas legiones, between each two legions. — **impedimentorum magnum numerum**, a great number of baggage (-animals), i.e. a very long baggage-train. See chapter on military affairs, I. 6.

159 4 neque, and that . . . not (or no) ; notice that in Latin the connective has a strong attraction for the negative where our idiom separates them. — **negoti** : **partit. gen.** ; cf. **nihil vini**, **158 7**.

159 5 cum . . . venissent . . . abessent : subjv., because subordinate clauses in the indir. disc. ; the verbs refer to fut. time and represent respectively the fut. perf. and the fut. ind. of the direct discourse.

159 6 hanc: i.e. the first legion. — **sarcinis:** see chapter on military affairs, IV. *e*, and Fig. 25. — **adoriri:** subj. of **esse** (l. 4), **quicquam** being in the predicate. — **quā pulsā . . . impedimentisque direptis** (abl. abs. = protasis of a fut. condition), *if this should be routed*, etc.

159 7 futurum (esse): apodosis of the condition. — **ut . . . non audent**, substantive clause of result, subj. of **futurum (esse)**; § 332. *a*; B. 297. 2; G. 553. 3; H. 501. 1; the whole is little more than a roundabout way of expressing the fut. infin.; see § 147. *c*. 2; B. 270. 3; G. 248. 2; H. 537. 3. — **contra consistere**, *to withstand their attack*.

159 8 adiuvabat: the subj. is the substantive clause **quod Nervii . . . effecerant**, *the advice of those who reported the matter was REËNFORCED by the fact that the Nervii*, etc. Notice the emphatic position of **adiuvabat**, which may be expressed in English by using the passive as above.

159 9 antiquitus: adv.; the use of the hedges described below was an immemorial custom, and they are still, it is said, common in this region. Traces of such about 400 years old still exist in England. — **cum:** causal.

159 10 nihil (adv. acc.) **possent**, *had no strength*. — **neque enim**, *and in fact . . . not*. — **ad hoc tempus:** opposed to **antiquitus**. — **rei:** cf. construction of **imperiiis**, 146 4.

159 11 quicquid (cf. **nihil**, above) **possunt**, etc., *all the strength they have is in infantry*. — **quo facilius . . . impedirent**, *in order to check the more easily*; **quo** is the regular conj. introducing a purpose-clause which contains a comparative; § 317. *b*; B. 282. 1. *a*; G. 545. 2; H. 497. II.

159 12 praedandi causa: cf. 56 15. — **venissent:** attracted from the fut. perf.; § 342; B. 324. 1; G. 663. 1; H. 529. II.

160 1 in latitudinem, etc.: i.e. when the tree was bent over, shoots sprang from its sides so as to make a thick mass of small branches. Among these were planted briars and thorns. These hedges were of course for the defence of individual farms, to hinder cavalry from raiding across country.

160 2 ut . . . praeberent: object clause of result, depending on **effecerant**; cf. 154 8. — **instar muri:** § 214. *g*; B. 198. 2; G. 373; H. 398. 4.

160 3 quo (adv.): i.e. *into which*.

160 4 posset: result-clause.

160 5 sibi: dat. of agent with **omittendum (esse)**.

160 6 CHAP. 18. **loci . . . quem locum:** § 200. *a*; B. 251. 3; G. 615; H. 445. 8. — **castris:** the dat. of purpose of concrete nouns is used in prose in a few military expressions; § 233; B. 191; G. 356; H. 384. II. 1. 3).

160 7 aequaliter declivis, *with even downward slope*.

160 8 quod: agrees in gender with **flumen**. — **vergebat:** imperf. of description; cf. note on 5 2. — **ab:** i.e. on the other side.

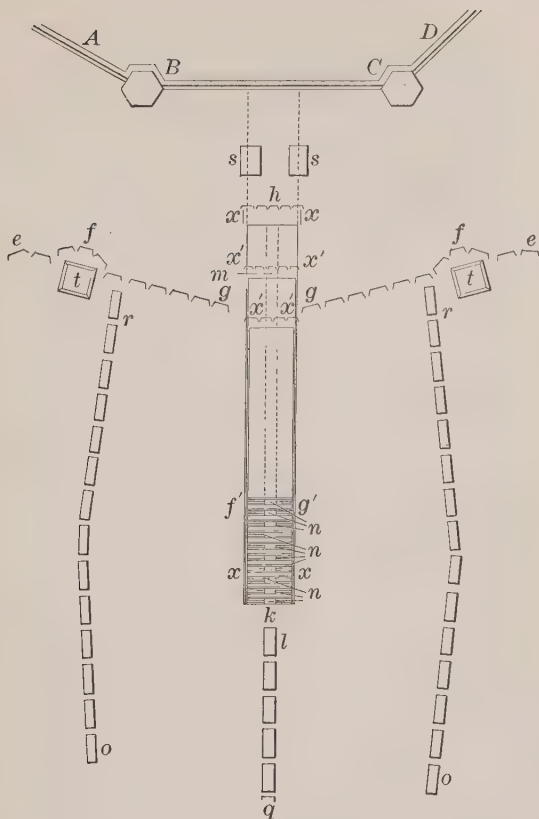


FIG. 112. — GENERAL VIEW OF SIEGE OPERATIONS.

ABCD, hostile wall; *ss*, *testudines aggestiliae*, protecting those levelling the ground; *hk*, *agger*; *xx*, *x'x'*, etc., *plutei*, protecting those working on the *agger*; *efg*, line of *plutei*, manned with archers and slingers; *tt*, *turres*, also manned with archers and slingers and provided with *tormenta*; *ro*, covered way of *vineae*, giving approach to archers and slingers; *lq*, covered way of *vineae*, approaching the point of beginning the *agger*; *fg'*, position of *plutei*, covering the beginning of the *agger*; *nn*, covered gallery through the *agger*; *nnn*, etc., steps and platforms of the several stories.

160 9 *pari acclivitate*: abl. of quality; cf. **150** 6, **158** 1. Notice the opposition to *declivis*, above. — *adversus* . . . *contrarius*, facing this, and on the other side (of the stream).

160 10 *passus*: cf. **149** 12, **154** 16. — *apertus*: i.e. cleared of woods. — *infimus*, *at the foot*; § 193; B. 241. 1; G. 291. R. 2; H. 440. 2. N. 2; opposed to *ab superiore parte*, *along the upper portion*; § 260. *b*; G. 390. 1; H. 434. 1.

160 11 *ut non*: observe that a negative result is expressed by *ut non*, while a negative purpose is expressed by *ne*.

160 13 *secundum*: preposition.

160 14 *pedum trium*: gen. of measure, here in the predicate; cf. **152** 5.

160 16 CHAP. 19. *copiis*: cf. **146** 24, **150** 17. — *ratio ordoque*: as these two words convey but a single thought, the verb is singular. — *aliter ac*, etc. (see Vocabulary), *was different from what the Belgæ had reported*; lit. 'had itself otherwise (than) as,' etc.; § 156. *a*; B. 341. 1. *c*); G. 643; H. 459. 2.

160 17 *ad Nervios*: § 225. *b*; B. 182. 2; G. 340. R. 2; H. 386. 3.

160 18 *consuetudine sua*, *in accordance with his custom*.

160 19 *ducebat*: for the order of march, see chapter on military affairs, VI. — *conlocarat*, *had put in place* (of greatest safety); this verb (*conloco*) is often confounded by beginners with *conligo*, *collect*.

160 20 *proxime conscriptae*, *latest levied*. These were legions XIII and XIV, mentioned in **146** 9, 10, which were not yet sufficiently trained to bear the brunt of the fight.

160 21 *praesidio impedimentis*: cf. **150** 12, **152** 10, **153** 11.

160 23 *cum*, etc.: this clause describes the situation, and is shown to be temporal by *interim*, which follows (cf. **150** 3, 5, **158** 14). This movement is important because it allowed time for the main body to arrive and begin the camp, contrary to the expectation of the Nervii.

160 24 *reciperent . . . facerent*, *kept retiring*, etc. (strengthened by *identidem*).

160 25 *quem ad finem*: the antecedent attracted into the relative clause, according to the Latin idiom. Translate as if it were *ad finem ad quem*, which, however, the Romans would rarely say.

160 26 *cedentis*: agrees with *eos*, the understood object of *insequi*. Notice that the Romans can always omit a pronoun if its case is determined by some word in agreement.

161 1 *opere dimenso*, *having staked out the works*. See chapter on military affairs, V.

161 2 *ubi . . . visa sunt*: cf. **149** 14, **153** 20. Notice that this is purely temporal. Caesar might have used *cum* with the subjv., but in that case it would describe the situation. A comparison of this with **160** 23 shows the difference clearly.

161 4 *quod tempus*, *the moment which*. Notice the difference of the

Latin and the English idiom; **tempus** is in apposition with the clause **ubi . . . visa sunt**. The attraction of the antecedent into the relative clause is regular when it is in apposition with something preceding; cf. **17 8** and note. — **committendi proeli**: depending on **tempus**. See note, **71 3**. — **ut (just as) confirmaverant**: i.e. the movement was not a confused sally on the individual impulse of savages, but an organized attack with the united and settled determination to resist the invaders. He may have said this only to enhance the glory of his victory, but he more than once pays tribute to the prowess of the enemy, and he probably does so here.

161 8 ut, so that (result).

161 9 [et iam in manibus nostris]: i.e. within reach of our weapons. This makes sense, and may be so translated.

161 11 adverso colle, etc., pushed straight up the hill. The way by which is put in the abl. without a preposition; cf. **semitis, 9 25**. — **eos**: after **ad**. — **occupati, still at work on the fortifications (in opere)**; **occupatus** is regularly used as an adjective.

161 13 CHAP. 20. Caesari: dat. of agent; cf. **sibi, 160 5**. Notice the emphatic position of **omnia**. Cæsar had to do *everything at one time*. — **vexillum**: the large banner hoisted at headquarters to announce an engagement impending. See Fig. 113 and chapter on military affairs, II.

161 14 proponendum (erat): second periphrastic like **agenda erant**, above; so also **dandum, etc.**

161 15 tuba: the signal to take their places in the ranks. See Fig. 53. — **ab opere, etc.**: those who were already detailed must have needed further orders before going into battle.

161 16 qui: relates to the understood subject (**ei**) of **arcessendi (erant)**. — **aggeris, materials for a mound**, an unusual meaning. — **arcessendi**: soldiers who were out of hearing of the customary signals would need a messenger.

161 17 cohortandi: pass., as always, though from a deponent verb; see § 135. *d*; B. 112 *b*; G. 251; H. p. 114, foot-note at end. — **signum dandum**: the last signal for immediate action; cf. **162 16**. This list includes all the functions of the commander, ordinarily extended over a considerable time. In this emergency Cæsar says these needed to be done at once, and this was impossible (cf. **impediebat**). But the difficulty was partially remedied by the good sense and discipline of the soldiers, who did what was proper without orders.

162 1 difficultatibus . . . subsidio: cf. **150 12, 160 21**.

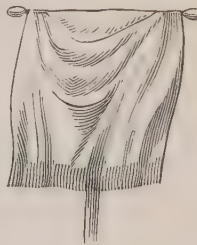


FIG. 113.—VEXILLUM.

162 3 *quid . . . oporteret*: indir. question, object of *praescribere*; cf. **147 7**.

162 4 *quam*: connects similar constructions; § 208. *a*.

162 5 *quod*: i.e. the second of the *two things* mentioned. — *singulos*, etc., *had forbidden the several lieutenants to leave the work and their several legions*.



FIG. 114. — SCUTUM.

162 6 *nisi munitis castris*: abl. abs.; see note on **144 13**. The meaning here is *not until after*, etc.

162 7 *nihil* (adv. acc.; § 240. *a*; B. 176. 3; G. 333. 1; H. 378. 2): is stronger than *nōn*; *nihil iam*, *no longer*.

162 8 *quae videbantur*, *what seemed best*.

162 10 CHAP. 21. *necessariis*: i.e. such as were (absolutely) *necessary*; observe emphasis. — *ad cohortandos milites*: gerundive of purpose; cf. **146 6**, **150 25**.

162 11 *quam in partem*: = *in eam partem in quam*; cf. note on *quem ad finem*, **160 25**.

162 12 *decimam*: Cæsar's favorite legion. — *non longiore . . . quam ut*, *with no more words than that they should*, etc.

162 13 *retinerent, perturbarentur, sustinerent*: object clauses of purpose with *ut*, etc., expressing indirectly the commands given in his address (*oratione*).

162 15 *quam quo . . . posset*: relative clause of characteristic; § 320; B. 283. 1; G. 298; H. 503. II. 3.

162 18 *pugnantibus*: sc. *eis*, and see note on *cedentis*, **160 26**. — *hostium*: depends on *animus*.

162 19 *paratus* (adj.) *ad dimicandum*, *ready for battle*.

162 20 *ad insignia accommodanda*, *for fitting on the decorations* (of the helmets, etc.). Some of these indicated the rank of the wearer. Perhaps, too, the different legions were distinguished by the *insignia* of the helmets. At all events, these were considered important and were always put on before an engagement. See chapter on military affairs, VII.

162 21 *scutis*: abl. of separation; cf. **150 1**, **153 12**. On the march helmets were slung upon the breast, shields covered with leather, and ornaments kept in some unexposed place. See Fig. 25. — *defuerit*, *failed*, i.e. there was not time enough to, etc.; for tense, cf. **147 6**, **147 13**. — *quam in partem*, *to whatever place*.



FIG. 115. — SCUTUM.

162 22 *ab opere*: i.e. from his position in the work of fortifying. — *quaeque*, etc., and whatever standards he saw first (*prima*, adj. with *signa*), he fell in (lit. 'took his stand') there. The Roman soldier was so well drilled that to whatever part of the legion he found his way he knew perfectly the duties belonging to it.

162 23 *haec (signa)*: antecedent to *quae*, but implying also the antecedent (*in hac parte*) of *quam* above, for which it is really substituted. — *in quaerendis suis (signis)*: gerundive. The standards distinguished the different cohorts, and hence they here refer to the place of each soldier in the ranks, as we might speak of a company or platoon. See chapter on military affairs, II; also Figs. 81, 105.

162 25 *CHAP. 22. ut . . . quam ut*: *as . . . than as*. The military science of the ancients was adapted to level, open ground, in which the troops could be drawn up and kept in regular lines.

162 27 *cum*: causal; cf. **154 7**. — *aliae alia in parte*, some in one position, some in another; § 203. *c*; B. 253. 2; H. 459. 1. For position of the various legions, see battle plan, Fig. 51.

163 1 *saepibus . . . interiectis*: cf. note on **159 9**.

163 2 *ante*: i.e. in ch. 17. — *impediretur*: connected with *resisterent* by *-que* in **163 1**.

163 3 *neque*: here begins the main clause, the verb of which is *poterant*.

163 4 *provideri*: complementary infin. with *poterat* supplied from *poterant*. The subject of this *poterat* is the indir. question *quid . . . opus esset*. — *ab uno* (emphatic), *by only one man*.

163 5 *fortunae*: emphatic, set off against *rerum*. The circumstances were diversified; the fortune that attended them consequently had various results.

163 6 *eventūs* (nom. plur.), subj. of *sequebantur*.

163 7 *CHAP. 23. ut, as*, i.e. in the position in which they were. The clause is nearly equivalent to an English partic., *having taken up their position*; cf. § 290. *d*. Observe that in the sense of *as*, *ut* is not followed by the subjv. — *sinistra*: here Labienus was in command.

163 8 *acie*: gen.; § 74. *a*; B. 52. 3; G. 63. N. 1; H. 120. — *pilis emissis*: see chapter on military affairs, VII, and Fig. 118. — *exanimatos*: agrees with *Atrebatas*, obj. of *compulerunt*.

163 10 *ex loco superiore*: i.e. from the higher ground up which the *Atrebatas* had rushed after crossing the river.

163 12 *impeditam*, embarrassed (in their attempt to cross). — *ipsi*: referring to *milites*, **163 7**.

163 13 *progressi*: i.e. continuing the charge up the wooded hill on the other side of the river. See description of the ground, ch. 18.

163 14 **rursus resistentis** (acc.): when they again made a stand.

163 17 **ex loco superiore**: i.e. starting from, etc.—**in ripis**: modifies **proeliabantur** (*were continuing the fight*).

163 18 **totis**: emphatic position; cf. English “exposed *entirely* almost.”

163 19 **nudatis**, *being exposed*, i.e. by the absence of the other legions, which were pursuing the enemy. The only ones left near the camp were VII and XII, **in dextro cornu**.

163 20 **constitisset**: causal, showing why the enemy charged in that quarter; but it is often impossible to say when the description of a *situation* passes over into *cause*.—**magno intervallo, confertissimo agmine**: best regarded as abls. of manner, though we must remember that the Romans did not trouble themselves about our classifications. The abl. was the proper form for all these ideas; and so they used it for all without distinction, as we should use *in, at, or by*.

163 21 **duce**: abl. abs.; translate *under the leadership of*.

163 23 **aperto latere**: i.e. the right, not protected by shields; for omission of prep., see § 258. f; B. 228. 1; G. 388; H. 425. II.—**legiones**: the twelfth and seventh.—**castrorum**: not partit. but possess. gen. (i.e. the height on which the camp stood).

163 25 CHAP. 24. **levis armaturae**: descriptive gen.; note how it is naturally translated in English by a descriptive adj., *light-armed*. See chapter on military affairs, I. 3, and Figs. 65, 99.

163 26 **unā**: adverb.

164 1 **pulsos (esse)**: infin. of indir. disc., with subj. acc. **quos**.—**adversis hostibus**, etc., *met the enemy face to face*; § 228; B. 187. III; G. 347; H. 386.

164 2 **occurrerant . . . ferebantur**: these *descriptive* imperfs. belong to the side action; the main narrative, which is interrupted by them, is resumed in the perfs. **contenderunt**, etc., at the end of the chapter. See note on 5 2.

164 3 **ab decumana porta**: i.e. the rear gate; see chapter on military affairs, V, and Fig. III. The camp was partly on a slope, and the rear commanded a wide view of the surrounding country.

164 5 **cum respexissent**, *on looking back*. Notice that this descriptive **cum**-construction has a great variety of translations, but all indicate an inner connection; cf. **cum . . . vidissent**, l. II, below.

164 6 **praecipites**: adj. agreeing with **calones**, but with the force of an adv., *pell-mell, in utter confusion*; § 191; B. 239; G. 325. 6; H. 443.

164 7 **qui**, etc.: this refers to the baggage-train which was coming up with legions XIII and XIV as a rear guard; see 160 19–21.

164 8 oriebatur: observe the sing. number, and cf. **160 16** and note. — **alii aliam**; § 203. *c*; B. 253. 2; G. 323; H. 459. 1. — **perterriti**, *frantic with fear, panic-stricken* (thoroughly frightened). Observe the force of **per-** (see Vocabulary).

164 10 quorum (possess.) **virtutis** (obj.) **opinio**, *whose reputation for valor*; § 217. *b*; B. 200; G. 363. R. 2; H. 398. 2.

164 11 a civitate: abl. of agent, the state being thought of as a body of citizens.

164 12 compleri (*was filling*) . . . **premi** . . . **teneri** . . . **fugere**: indir. disc. with **vidissent**. The present tenses indicate what they saw *going on* before their eyes (direct, **complentur** . . . **premuntur** . . . **tenentur** . . . **fugiantur**). The beginner should notice that difference of idiom requires a change of tense in translation.

164 15 domum: cf. **153 24** and note.

164 16 pulsos superatosque (*esse*): indir. disc.; the subj. is **Romanos**. — **castris**: § 249; B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 421. I.

164 17 hostis: acc., subj. of **potitos** (*esse*).

164 18 CHAP. 25. **Caesar**: subj. of **processit**, **165 4**. In this characteristic example of Latin style notice that the main verb of the sentence is not expressed until the attendant circumstances have been introduced in the form of modifying phrases, dependent clauses, etc. Thus the sense and construction are *suspended*. Such a sentence is called a *period*; § 346; B. 351. 5; G. 684, 685. 2; H. 573. An English writer would have used several short independent sentences, each describing a single act or circumstance, and a really good translation should have that form, thus: —

Cæsar, after addressing the tenth legion, passed to the right wing. Here he saw his men were hard pressed. The standards were all huddled together and the soldiers of the twelfth, massed in a solid body, were in each other's way. All the centurions of the fourth cohort had fallen, the standard-bearer was killed, and the standard lost. In the other cohorts almost all the centurions were either killed or wounded. Among these the first centurion, P. Sextius Baculus, one of the bravest of soldiers, was disabled by many severe wounds so that he could no longer stand on his feet. The rest were showing no spirit, and some in the rear had abandoned the fight and were drawing back to get out of range of the missiles. The enemy meanwhile continued to come up in front from below without cessation, and to press them hard also on both flanks. The situation was desperate. Seeing this, and realizing that there were no reserves that could be sent in, Cæsar snatched a shield from a man in the rear rank — he had happened to come there without a shield himself — and advanced to the front.

164 19 *ubi*: construe with *vidit*, l. 21. — *in unum locum*: i.e. the soldiers were so crowded together that they could not keep their alignment, and the standards were bunched in a confused mass in the crowd.

164 20 *sibi . . . impedimento*, *hindered one another in fighting*, lit. 'were for a hindrance themselves to themselves'; cf. **153 11**, **160 21**.

164 21 *quartae cohortis*: this stood on the left of the front line and so bore the brunt of the attack. See chapter on military affairs, VI. — *omnibus centurionibus occisis*: notice that seven different events are expressed in this sentence by ablatives absolute. See note on *omni pacata Gallia*, **144 13**.

164 22 *signo*: i.e. the standard of the cohort.

164 24 *in his*, *among these*. — *primipilo*: see chapter on military affairs, I. 7. — *Baculo*: this was one of Cæsar's best and bravest centurions.

164 26 *iam non*, *no longer*. — *tardiores*: *rather slack* (discouraged); § 93. a; B. 240. I; G. 297; H. 444. I.

164 27 *ab novissimis*, *in the rear*. — *deserto proelio*, *withdrawing from the fight* (abl. absolute).

164 28 *neque*: correlative to *et* = *both . . . not . . . and*.

165 2 *vidit*: repeated from **164 21** on account of the length of the sentence. — *neque ullum subsidium*: the rear guard, legions XIII and XIV, had not yet arrived.

165 3 *posset*: relative clause of characteristic; cf. **147 12**, **162 16**. — *militi*: dat. after *detracto*; cf. construction of *hostibus*, **150 14**, and note.

165 6 *signa . . . laxare*, *to charge* (and thus) *open out the ranks*, i.e. as they advanced, the space between the ranks would be increased, and so more room obtained for the use of the sword. — *quo . . . possent*: cf. **159 11**.

165 7 *gladiis*: cf. *castris*, **164 16**. — *militibus*: dat. with *inlata*.

165 9 *etiam . . . rebus*, *even in his own extreme peril*.

166 1 CHAP. 26. *constiterat* (from *consisto*): not 'had stood,' but *had taken up a position*, and so *stood*; cf. *consuerint*, **156 24**; § 279. e; B. 262. A; G. 241. R.; H. 471. 3.

166 3 *ut . . . coniungerent . . . inferrent*: substantive clause, secondary obj. of *monuit*; cf. **156 20** and note. — *conversa*, etc., *should face about and charge the enemy in opposite directions*, lit. 'bear turned standards against.' The two united thus formed a kind of hollow square. It is not necessary to suppose that the soldiers stood immediately back to back, though this is probable, inasmuch as the attack was on both flanks and in front.

166 4 *alii*: dat. after a verbal phrase of helping; § 227; B. 187. II; G. 346; H. 385. I.

166 5 *ne . . . circumvenirentur*: cf. *ne . . . adduceretur*, **144 13**. — *aversi*, in the rear, lit. 'while their backs were turned.' — *ab hoste*: collectively, in which sense the plural is more common.

166 7 *legionum duarum*: i.e. XIII and XIV; see plan, Fig. 51.

166 9 *colle*: i.e. the site of the Roman camp. — *Labienus*: he, with legions IX and X, had been pursuing the Atrebates; see first lines of ch. 23.

166 11 *gererentur*: indir. question.

166 12 *qui*: i.e. the soldiers of the tenth legion.

166 13 *esset*: indir. question.

166 14 *nihil . . . fecerunt*, hastened as fast as they could; lit. 'left nothing undone in the way of speed.'

166 15 *reliqui*: a pred. gen. Various genitives of this sort are used with *facere*; § 214. c; B. 198. 3; G. 369. R. 2; H. 403.

166 17 *CHAP. 27. etiam qui*, even such as. — *procubuissent*, subjv. of characteristic; see **84 18** and note. — *scutis*: abl. with *innixi*; § 254. b; B. 218. 3; G. 401. 6; H. 425. II. 1. 1). N. See Figs. 114, 115.

166 19 *inermes armatis*, etc., (though) unarmed, threw themselves upon the armed (enemy). — *occurrerent*: result, like *redintegrarent*.

166 20 *deherent, praeferrent*: purpose-clauses, but in slightly different relations, dependent on *pugnant*. The use of *quo* as a conj. to introduce a purpose-clause when the clause contains no comparative is rare. It is used regularly in **159 11**, **165 6**. Here we should expect *ut*.

166 21 *at*: marks with emphasis the change of the narrative from the Romans to the enemy.

166 22 *tantam virtutem praestiterunt*: on this clause depend the following subjunctives of result, — *insisterent, pugnarent, conicerent, remitterent*.

166 23 *primi, foremost*. — *iacentibus* (sc. *eis*, dat. after *insisterent*), stood upon them as they lay fallen; lit. 'them lying.'

166 25 *qui superessent*: characteristic clause. — *ut ex tumulo*, as if from a mound.

166 26 *ut . . . deberet*, so that we may consider (lit. 'it must be judged') that not without good hope of success (*nequiquam*) did men, etc.; *ut . . . deberet* is a result-clause dependent on the whole of the preceding sentence. The subject of *deberet* is the infinitive clause *homines ausos esse*.

167 2 *quae*: the antecedents are the preceding infinitive clauses describing the acts of the enemy; translate *deeds which*. — *facilia*: pred. adj.; § 186. b, c; B. 235. A. 2, B. 2. b); G. 211; H. 438. 2.

The battle with the Nervii and their allies was the most desperate of the Gallic War. Their surprise of the Romans was complete, their courage

such as to evoke Cæsar's wonder and admiration. Had the Romans come up in the order of march expected, — a legion at a time with intervening baggage, — they could hardly have escaped defeat or even annihilation. As it was, only the steadiness and discipline of the troops and the inspiration of Cæsar's presence and example at a critical moment saved the day.

167 4 CHAP. 28. **prope ad internecionem**: the Nervii were not by any means exterminated. Three years later they revolted again (Bk. v. ch. 38), and two years after that they sent a force of 5000 men to Alesia to relieve Vercingetorix (Bk. vii. ch. 75).

167 6 **aestuaria**: the country lying to the north, the modern Zealand, is low and marshy, cut up with bays and tide-water inlets.

167 7 **dixeramus**: for tense, cf. note on the same word, **144 11**. — **cum**: causal; cf. **154 7**. — **impeditum (esse)**, etc., *there was no obstacle in the way of* (lit. 'nothing hindered to') *the conquerors*.

167 10 **in . . . calamitate**: gerundive construction.

167 12 **qui . . . possent**: this would naturally be a characteristic subjv. in the direct; cf. **61 13**. — **quos**: see note on **156 2**.

167 13 **usus (esse)**: § 330. *b*; B. 332. *b*); G. 528. 1; H. 534. 1. N. I. — **misericiordiā** (abl.), *mercy*; it has been observed that Cæsar's dealings with the Gauls were comparatively merciful for a Roman dealing with barbarians, but his cruelty seems to us atrocious.

167 15 **ut . . . prohiberent**: substantive clause of purpose, obj. of **imperavit**; cf. this construction with that of **uti iussit** just before.

167 17 CHAP. 29. **supra**: see **158 20**. — **cum . . . venirent**, *while on the way*. — **omnibus copiis**: cf. **146 24**, **150 17**.

167 20 **sua omnia**: cf. **146 23** and note. — **oppidum**: often identified with the citadel of Namur, at the confluence of the Meuse and Sambre. See Fig. 57. For a striking description of the locality, see Motley's *Dutch Republic*, Vol. III. p. 224. Others place it more probably at Falhize, opposite Huy, on the Meuse below Namur, though neither place quite agrees with Cæsar's description.

167 21 **quod cum**: cf. **qui cum**, **156 2**, and note.

167 23 **pedum**: cf. **149 9**.

167 25 **conlocabant**: notice the change of tense from the pluperfect.

167 26 **ex Cimbris Teutonisque**: abl. of source; cf. **147 9**. This refers to the terrible invasion of the Cimbri and Teutons with their allies. They first appeared B.C. 106 and swept away six Roman armies, one after the other. They were finally annihilated by Caius Marius. See pp. 56-8.

169 2 **impedimentis**: refers to cattle as well as portable baggage: hence the two verbs **agere** and **portare**. Cf. **ferre et agere**, *to plunder*.

169 3 **custodiam**, *a guard*, whose duty it was to keep an eye on the

booty, etc.; **praesidium**, a garrison, who were to hold the place. The words are in apposition with **milia**.

169 4 sex milia: this Teutonic military colony was probably merely adopted into the Celtic tribe of the Aduatuci, thus giving rise to the story that the whole tribe were of Teutonic descent. — **unā** (adv.), *with it*, i.e. the **impedimenta**. — **hi**: i.e. the six thousand. — **eorum**: i.e. the Cimbri and Teutons.

169 5 obitum, *destruction*; the Teutons were totally defeated by Caius Marius at Aquæ Sextiæ (Aix les Bains), B.C. 102; the Cimbri, by Marius and Catulus the next year at Vercellæ. — **alias**: adverb.

169 6 inferrent: the regular word for offensive war. — **inlatum (sibi bellum) defenderent**, *defended themselves when attacked*. — **consensu eorum omnium**, *by mutual agreement*, i.e. between themselves and all their neighbors.

169 7 sibi domicilio: cf. **150 12**. — **hunc locum**: the land between the Meuse and the Scheldt.

169 8 CHAP. 30. **adventu**: abl. of time.

169 9 faciebant: notice the tense and cf. **144 9** and note. — **parvulis**: for the formation of the word, see § 164. *a*; B. 148. 1; G. 189. 6; H. 332.

169 10 pedum xii: i.e. in height. — **xv milium**: fifteen miles (sc. **passuum**) seems large for so small a hill, but no satisfactory explanation has yet been given.

169 11 oppido: for the omission of **in**, cf. **castris**, **154 11**, and note. For the siege operations, see chapter on military affairs, VIII, and Figs. 59, 89, 90, 112.

170 2 viderunt: note the regular mood and tense in the temporal clause with **ubi**; cf. **161 2** and note. — **inridere**: hist. infin.; see note on **27 10**.

170 3 quod . . . institueretur: *because* (as they said), etc.; subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc.; § 321, 341. *d*; B. 286. 1, 323; G. 663. 1; H. 529. II. — **ab tanto spatio**, *so far off*, lit. 'away by so great a space'; abl. of degree of difference, **ab** having an adverbial force. — **quibusnam**, etc.: the enclitic **-nam** gives a sarcastic emphasis to this jeering question of the barbarians, *by what hands, pray, or what strength?*

170 7 conlocare: indir. disc.; we should have expected the fut. infin. **conlocaturos (esse)**. Apparently the Gauls thought the Romans meant to lift the tower and set it up on the wall (**in muro**); and such an idea, of course, seemed very amusing. But when the tower began to roll forward they saw their error.

170 8 CHAP. 31. **moveri**, *that it was actually moving*; for the omission of the subj. acc. **turrim**, see § 336. *a. N.*; B. 314. 5; G. 527. 4; H. p. 296, foot-note 2.

170 10 locuti, *speaking*; cf. **148 17**.

170 11 existimare (sc. se, and cf. **158 7** and note), *that they thought*, depending on locuti.

170 13 possent : a relative clause expressing cause ; § 320. e ; B. 283. 3 ; G. 633 ; H. 517. — se (obj.) . . . **permittere**, *that they surrendered themselves*, etc., depending on dixerunt.

170 14 unum, *only one thing* ; notice the emphatic position of the word. — pro sua, etc., *in accordance with his usual*, etc. ; cf. **167 13**.

170 15 quam . . . audirent, *which they were* (all the time) *hearing of* ; repeated action.

170 16 statuisset : for the fut. perf. (statueris) of the direct disc. ; § 307. c ; B. 319. B. a ; G. 595 ; H. 473. 2. — ne . . . **despoliaret** : substantive clause of purpose, in apposition with unum, but really depending on deprecari for its form. Clauses thus used in apposition with a noun or pronoun take the form required by the verb on which the appositional word depends.

170 17 inimicos : cf. **169 4-6**.

171 1 virtuti : § 227 ; B. 187. II ; G. 346 ; H. 385. II. — traditis armis (= si arma tradita essent) : abl. abs., equivalent to a protasis ; § 310. a ; B. 305. 1 ; G. 593. 2 ; H. 431. 2. In the direct disc. a vivid fut. condition, si arma tradita erunt, non poterimus.

171 2 sibi praestare, *that it was better for them* ; impers. ; the subj. is the following infinitive clause. — si . . . **deducerentur** (fut. condition), *if they should be reduced to such an extremity*.

171 3 quamvis : from quivis.

171 4 consuessent : for the form, see § 128. a ; B. 116. 1 ; G. 131. 1 ; H. 235. Give the speech of the ambassadors of the Aduatuci in direct disc., and also Cæsar's reply, ch. 32.

171 5 CHAP. 32. consuetudine . . . merito : cf. note on **163 20**. This is a good example of the free use of the ablative case in Latin. If consuetudine were alone we should call it *manner*, 'that in accordance,' etc. ; if merito were alone we should call it *cause*. Cæsar in using them both did not think of either category ; to him they were both ablatives and needed no classification. We may call them *cause* if we like.

171 7 aries : a long beam with an iron head (like a ram's), suspended from a framework, and swung with great force against a wall, crumbling the strongest masonry (see Fig. 124). — attigisset . . . dedidissent : stand for attigerit . . . dedideritis (fut. perf.) of the direct ; § 327. a ; B. 291. 1 ; G. 574 ; H. 520.

171 8 nisi armis traditis : cf. nisi munitis castris, **162 6**.

171 9 facturum : i.e. in case they came to terms. — ne quam, *lest any* ; § 105. d ; B. 91. 5 ; G. 315 ; H. 455. 1.

171 10 *re nuntiata ad suos*: the idea of motion causes the use of *ad*; the dat. would refer simply to the utterance of the message, not to its being carried.

171 11 *imperarentur*: the subjv. shows that this subordinate clause is a part of the indir. disc.; § 336. 2; B. 314. 1; G. 650; H. 524. — *facere*: sc. *se* as subj. acc., which is very often omitted by Cæsar; cf. **158 7**. We should expect *facturos (esse)*. The pres. infin. standing for *facimus* of the direct is somewhat colloquial; § 276. c; B. 261. 2; G. 228; H. 467. 5. — *dixerunt*: i.e. the ambassadors on their return.

171 13 *ut prope . . . adequarent*: i.e. the arms filled the ditch and the deep space between the wall and the end of the *agger* almost to the top. See Figs. 59, 116.

171 16 *eo die*: the day is thought of as fixing the time, not as marking its duration; hence the abl.; § 256; B. 230; G. 393; H. 429. — *pace . . . usi*: i.e. they enjoyed the cessation of war and were peaceable, opposed to their later conduct.

171 17 *CHAP. 33. ex oppido exire*: for the repetition of *ex*, see § 243. b; B. 214. 3; G. 390; H. 413. N. 3.

171 18 *ne quam*: see note on **171 9**.

171 19 *ante inito consilio, in accordance with a plan previously agreed upon.*

171 20 *quod . . . crediderant*: a reason stated on the writer's own authority, hence the ind.; cf. **146 5**, **154 2**. — *praesidia*: i.e. those stationed in the *castella*.

171 22 *ex cortice*: abl. of material; § 244; B. 215; G. 396; H. 415. III.

171 23 *viminibus intextis*: in the same construction as *cortice*.

171 24 *pellibus*: abl.; § 225. d; B. 187. I. a; G. 348; H. 384. II. 2.

171 25 *quā, where*; an abl. or instrumental form, used adverbially.

172 1 *celeriter*: note the emphatic position. Cæsar had ordered them to give the signal, in case of any disturbance, and to do it *instantly*. — *ignibus*: this signal was given by stretching out a great flaming torch from the side of a watch-tower.

172 2 *eo, to that place*. — *concursum . . . pugnatum*: impers. use of pass.; § 146. d; B. 138. IV; G. 208. 2; H. 301. 1; see note on **7 7**.

172 3 *ita . . . ut, they fought as fiercely as brave men ought to fight*. — *in extrema spe, for their last chance*, lit. 'in the last hope.'

172 4 *iniquo loco*: § 258. f; B. 228. I. b; G. 385. N. 1; H. 425. 2. — *qui . . . iacerent*: subjv. of characteristic; cf. **147 12**, **167 12**.

172 5 *in una virtute, in valor alone*. — *cum . . . consisteret, at a time when, etc.*; see note on **161 2**.

172 6 *ad*, *about*.

172 7 *postridie eius diei*: cf. 41 23 and note.

172 9 *sectionem . . . universam*: i.e. the whole people, as slaves, with all their possessions.

172 10 *milium*: pred. gen., after *esse* understood.

172 13 CHAP. 34. *Venetos*, etc.: the name of the Veneti survives in the modern Vannes; that of the Redones, in Rennes.

172 14 *maritimae civitates*: inhabiting the modern Brittany and Normandy; they are spoken of at length in Bk. iii. chs. 7-16.

172 19 CHAP. 35. *perlata*: notice the force of *per*; the news travelled from tribe to tribe.

172 20 *incolerent*: subjv. of integral part; cf. 81 2; § 342; B. 324. 1; G. 663. 1; H. 529. II.

172 21 *se . . . daturas*: fem. because they were representatives sent by the tribes and spoke for them.

172 22 *in Italiam*: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul. Cæsar's province extended to the Rubicon. — *Illyricum*: this province, east of the Adriatic, formed part of Cæsar's government, but he went there only during the winter season; see 174 3 and 221 14.

172 24 *Carnutes*: their country lay between the Seine and the Loire, comprising the modern Orléans, formerly their capital; their name is preserved in the modern Chartres. — *Andes* (whence Anjou): near the lower

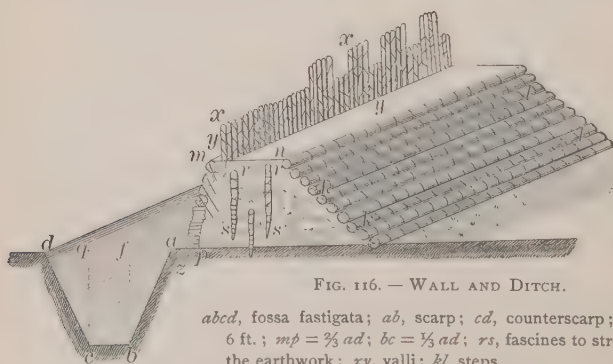


FIG. 116. — WALL AND DITCH.
abcd, fossa fastigata; *ab*, scarp; *cd*, counterscarp; *mn* = 6 ft.; *mp* = $\frac{2}{3}$ *ad*; *bc* = $\frac{1}{3}$ *ad*; *rs*, fascines to strengthen the earthwork; *xy*, valli; *kl*, steps.

Loire. — *Turonos*: preserved in Tours. These camps made a cordon from Orleans through Angiers and Tours and probably Vannes along the Loire to the seacoast. — *quaque civitates*: translate as if *et civitates quae*.

173 3 supplicatio, a public thanksgiving; ten days was the longest time that had ever been granted before, except to Pompey, who was honored with twelve for his victory over Mithradates. But Cæsar's party was now all-powerful at Rome. — **quod**: for **id quod**; see § 200. *ε. N.*; B. 250; G. 614. R. 2; H. 445. 7.

BOOK THIRD, 7-16. — B.C. 56.



FIG. 117. — SHIPBUILDER.

THE higher valleys of the Alps were inhabited by tribes who got a scanty living by working in mines, and often waylaid and plundered expeditions on the march. Two legions under L. Pedius (Bk. ii. ch. 2) had been attacked by these predatory people. The first six chapters of this Book give an account of Servius Galba's campaign, which was intended to strike terror into the mountain tribes. Following this was the campaign against the Veneti.

NAVAL CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE VENETI. — The Veneti inhabited the peninsula of *Aremorica*, called *Bretagne*, *Brittany*, or *Little Britain*, since the emigration from Great Britain to escape the Saxon invasion. It has always been the home of the hardest, most independent, and most strongly characterized of all the Gallic populations. Its scenery is wild and secluded, the character of its coast being clearly given in Cæsar's narrative. Its language remains Celtic to this day. No one of Cæsar's campaigns shows more strikingly his boldness and fertility of resource than this.

READING REFERENCES ON CÆSAR'S THIRD CAMPAIGN.

- Dodge's Cæsar, ch. 9.
- Fowler's Julius Cæsar, ch. 11.
- Froude's Cæsar, ch. 16.
- Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. I. pp. 289-97.
- Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, Vol. IV. pp. 304-309.
- Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. ch. 6.
- Trollope's Cæsar, ch. 4.

174 2 CHAP. 7. **Germanis** : i.e. under Ariovistus. It will be noticed that the geographical order, and not the order of events, is followed in this summary. Of the Alpine tribes the Seduni are mentioned as the most important. The passage in brackets makes sense, and may be translated.

174 4 **Illyricum** : part of Cæsar's province.

174 6 **Crassus** : see **72** 24 ff. — **adulescens** : like our 'junior,' to distinguish him from his father.

174 7 **mare** : following **proximus** with the construction of **prope** ; § 261. a ; B. 141. 3 ; G. 359. N. 1 ; H. 391. 2.

174 8 **præfectos**, *officers* of cavalry and auxiliaries.

174 9 **complurīs** : goes with **civitatis**.

174 13 CHAP. 8. **huius civitatis** : i.e. the Veneti, on the southern coast of Brittany, the modern Morbihan.

174 14 **orae** : partit. gen. — **regionum** : added to describe and limit **orae**.

174 15 **Britanniam** : at this time an important Celtic country, having close commercial and social relations with the mainland. Doubtless a large part of the shipping trade was in the hands of the Veneti and their allies, whose commerce extended from Ireland to Spain. — **consuerunt**, *are accustomed* ; § 279. e ; B. 262. A ; G. 236. R. ; H. 297. I. 2 ; cf. **156** 24.

174 17 **in magno . . . aperto** : i.e. on a sea exposed to great and violent storms.

174 18 **omnis . . . habent vectigalis** : i.e. levy tolls upon them all ; **vectigalis** is in pred. apposition with **omnis**.

174 22 **subita . . . consilia** : this national characteristic of the Gauls is often alluded to by Cæsar and other Roman historians.

175 5 **quam acceperint** : § 341 ; B. 323 ; G. 628 ; H. 524.

175 6 **quam perferre**, *than to endure*, following the comparative contained in **malint**.

175 9 **remittat** : subjv. expressing a command in indir. disc., depending on the message implied in **legationem mittunt**. The direct disc. would be **si vis**, etc., **remitte**.

175 11 CHAP. 9. **aberat longius**, *was too far off*, i.e. to take command at once in person. — **naves longas**, *galleys*. See chapter on military affairs, IX, and Figs. 61, 63. The Gallic ships, it seems, used sails alone, without oars (see **180** 25–28).

175 12 **Ligere** : the Loire, on the banks of which Crassus was wintering. — **institutui**, *to be organized*, i.e. in gangs for the several galleys.

176 1 **cum primum** : *the first moment when*, lit. 'when first.' Cæsar has spent the winter as usual in Cisalpine Gaul. He reached his army perhaps in April or early in May.

176 3 [certiores facti]: omit in translation.

176 4 *admisissent*: indir. question. — *legatos . . . coniectos* (the specific act): in apposition with *facinus*, but the construction is determined by *intellegebant*; see note on 170 16; *legatos*: they were hardly such in the sense of international law. They were only Cæsar's *legati*, or lieutenants.

176 5 *quod nomen*: cf. *quod tempus*, 161 4, and note.

176 9 *pedestria itinera*, etc., *approaches by land*.

176 10 *concisa, impeditam*: with *esse*. They depend upon *sciebant*.

176 11 *inscientiam*: i.e. the Romans' lack of acquaintance. — *neque . . . confidebant*, and they trusted that our armies could not, etc. Notice that connective and negative have an attraction for each other, though we separate them.

176 13 *ut . . . acciderent*, etc., *granting that*, etc.; *ut* here introduces a concessive clause. This is the only instance in the "Gallic War." Note that when so used the subjv. mood follows; § 266. c; B. 278, 308; G. 608; II. 515. III.

177 1 *posse* and the following infinitives depend upon *perspiciebant*, l. 5.

177 3 *gesturi essent*: subjv. of indir. disc. Observe the first periphrastic conjugation referring to future time.

177 4 *longe aliam . . . atque, very different . . . from*; cf. *aliter ac*, 160 16. — *concluso*: i.e. like the Mediterranean, where there is no tide, and which is quiet as compared with the Atlantic.

177 9 *socios*: pred. apposition; cf. *vectigalis*, 174 25. — *Osismos*, etc.: the coast tribes as far as Flanders. The name *Lexovii* remains in Lisieux; *Namnetes* in Nantes; *Diablintres* in Jablins.

177 14 CHAP. IO. *iniuria retentorum equitum*, the wrong done by detaining the knights; § 292. a; B. 337. 5; G. 664. R. 2; H. 549. 5. N. 2. — *rebellio, renewal of hostilities* (not 'rebellion').

177 16 *ne . . . arbitrarentur*: a new rising was threatened by the Belgians, while the maritime tribes, it is said, were already fearful of a Roman attempt upon Britain. (Observe that this purpose-clause is under the same construction as the nominatives *iniuriæ, defectio*, etc., which express other reasons for Cæsar's action, and are all in apposition with *multa*.)

177 17 *idem*: subj. of *licere*.

177 19 *excitari*: the pres. infin. here corresponds to the pres. of a general truth, while *odisse* answers to *oderunt* taken as a pres., *all men naturally hate*.

177 20 *priusquam . . . conspirarent*: see note on 69 7.

177 24 CHAP. II. *flumini*: dat. with *proximis*, but cf. 174 13.

177 25 *adeat* : after *mandat*, which expresses a command ; cf. **3** 11 and note ; § 331. *f.* R. ; B. 295. 8 ; G. 546. R. 2 ; H. 499. 2.

177 26 *auxilio* : dat. of service or end for which. — *arcessiti* (*esse*) *dicebantur*, *were reported to have been invited*.

178 2 *Crassum* : cf. **174** 12 and note.

178 3 *Aquitaniam* : in southwest Gaul (see **144** 5-7). These peoples were of different race and language from the other Gauls, and took little interest in their affairs, not even joining in the great revolt described in Bk. vii.

178 6 *Venellos*, etc. : in Normandy.

178 7 *distinendam* : cf. **61** 11, **62** 5, and notes. — *Brutum* : afterwards one of the conspirators against Cæsar, with the more celebrated Marcus Brutus.

178 8 *Pictonibus*, *Santonis* : on the coast south of the Loire (Poitou and Saintonge).

178 12 CHAP. 12. *eius modi . . . ut*, *of such sort that*.

178 13 *lingulis* : some of these narrow tongues of land run out to sea several miles.

178 14 *cum . . . incitavisset* : i.e. at high tide. — [*bis*] : apparently an error of the MSS. Some editors read XXIV instead of XII ; others refer it to the general ignorance or carelessness of ancient writers.

178 15 *quod . . . afflictaarentur* : subjv. as an integral part of the result-clause.

178 16 *minuente*, *at the ebb* ; intransitive.

178 17 *utraque re*, *in either case*.

178 18 *superati*, agreeing with the subj. of *coeperant*.

178 19 *his* (*aggere ac molibus*) . . . *adaequatis*, *when these were brought level with the walls*. General von Göler explains the Roman works as follows : " A dike was extended along each side of the isthmus in the direction of the town. While these were building, of course with each rise of the tide the space within would be overflowed. When the dikes were nearly completed, the Romans waited until the ebb had carried off the water, and then rapidly pushed their works to completion before the next turn of the tide. Thus the sea was shut out and the isthmus left dry. Meanwhile the dikes themselves, being raised to the height of the walls, served the purpose each of an *agger* for approach to the town."

178 23 *haec . . . faciebant*, *this they continued to do* ; repeated action.

178 24 *partem* : duration of time.

178 25 *summa* : with *difficultas* ; note the emphasis. — *vasto mari*, etc. : in each of these points the ocean is contrasted with the sheltered and

tideless waters of the Mediterranean. The words may be called abl. abs., but they probably go back to the locative abl.; see foot-note under § 255.

178 28 CHAP. 13. **namque**: introduces the reason for the fewer troubles of the Veneti, (*but the Veneti had less trouble*) *for*. — **ipsorum**, *their own*.

178 29 **aliquanto**: abl. of degree of difference.

179 1 **navium**: depending on **carinae** understood. — **quo . . . possent**: cf. **31** 20, **159** 11.

179 2 **atque item puppes**, and the sterns too, **accommodatae** (*being adapted*) standing as an additional predicate.

179 4 **quamvis**: from **quavis**.

179 5 **transtra**, etc., *the cross benches* (for the rowers) *of timbers a foot thick, fastened with iron bolts the thickness of a (man's) thumb*.

179 7 **pelles**: the Romans used sails made of flax, the Veneti of skins untanned (**pelles**) or tanned (**alutae**).

179 11 **tanta onera navium**, *ships of so great weight*. — **non satis commode**, *not very well*.

179 12 **nostrae classi**: dat. of possession, but translate *the encounter of our fleet with*, etc.

179 13 **praestaret**, *had the advantage* (i.e. our fleet).

179 14 **reliqua**: here a neut. plur. substantive, *everything else*.

179 15 **eis**: dat. with **nocere**; § 227; B. 187. II; G. 346; H. 385. I.

179 16 **rostro**: see Figs. 61, 63.

180 2 **copulis**: the Romans were not very skilful in naval tactics, and they always aimed, by means of grappling hooks and boarding bridges, to get aboard the enemy's ship and reduce the conflict as soon as possible to a hand-to-hand combat, in which they excelled. — **accedebat ut**, *there was this additional advantage that*, followed by the result-clauses **ferrent**, **consisterent**, and **timerent**; cf. **50** 15, **147** 14.

180 3 **se vento dedissent**, *run before the wind*. The phrase is a nautical one; hence **ventus** is repeated to give the complete expression.

180 4 **consisterent**, *rode at anchor*.

180 5 **ab aestu relictæ**: translate *if* or *when*, etc.; see § 292; B. 337. 2; G. 664 ff.; H. 549. — **nihil**: cf. **162** 7 and note.

180 8 CHAP. 14. **neque**: see note on **176** 11,

180 9 **eis noceri posse**, *they could be harmed*. Observe that the expression is *impers.*, and cf. **18** 17 and note.

180 10 **quæ ubi**: cf. note on **qui cum**, **156** 2.

180 11 **paratissimæ**, *fully equipped*. — **ornatissimæ**, *thoroughly furnished*. The battle was probably fought in the bay of Quiberon, off the heights of St. Gildas, on which Cæsar was encamped. The fleet of Crassus

issued from the Loire and took a northwesterly course. Meanwhile the fleet of the Veneti came out of the Auray estuary, and, passing through the Morbihan entrance to the bay, encountered the Romans directly opposite Cæsar's camp. See Fig. 62.

180 13 *neque satis Bruto . . . constabat*, and *Brutus could not make out*; *agerent* and *insisterent* refer to Brutus and his officers.

180 14 *tribunis militum*, etc.: in the ancient modes of fighting, the fleet was only a part of the army, and was commanded by the military officers, as here.

180 16 *noceri*, etc. cf. similar phrase above, l. 9.

180 17 *excitatis*, *raised*. The abl. abs. has a concessive force, as is shown by the following *tamen*.

180 18 *ex barbaris navibus*, *on the enemy's ships*; for force of *ex*, cf. *una ex parte*, *ex itinere*, etc.

180 20 *magno usui*, *of great service* (cf. *auxilio*, **177 26**), in fact turning threatened disaster to victory; but Cæsar will not use words that hint at a possible defeat.

180 22 *muralium falcium*, *wall-hooks*, long poles with sickle-shaped hooks attached, like those used by hook-and-ladder companies for pulling down walls (see Fig. 124). The gen. limits *formae* understood, which would be dat. after *absimili*. — *cum* (= *whenever, as often as*) and the sentence following is a general condition, the verbs *comprehensi adductique erant* being in the protasis, and *prærumpebantur* in the apodosis expressing repeated action, which is regularly expressed in Latin by the ind.; cf. **156 23** and note.

180 24 *prærumpebantur*, etc., *they* (the halyards) *were torn away by driving the ship forward with the oars*.

180 26 *Gallicis navibus*: dat. of reference used for possess. genitive.

181 1 *paulo fortius factum*: one of Cæsar's mild expressions for 'an act of remarkable daring.'

181 4 *CHAP. 15. cum*, etc.: another general condition; see note on **180 22**. — *singulas*, etc.: i.e. two or three ships about each one of the enemy's.

181 6 *contendebant*: expressing repeated action; cf. with *contenderunt* below, which describes a single act. — *quod postquam*: cf. *quae ubi*, **180 10**, and note.

181 8 *cum . . . reperiretur*: a causal clause; cf. **35 23**, **154 7**.

181 9 *conversis . . . navibus*: i.e. steered so as to run before the wind. The prevailing winds at present towards the end of summer in this quarter are from the east or northeast, — the precise winds needed for the two fleets to have met as indicated above. Further, when these winds

have blown during the morning, it usually falls calm at noon. This is just what happened on the day of the battle. The calm was probably just after midday.

181 14 *pervenerint*, *came to land*; for the tense, cf. **54** 21, **147** 3, the perf. subjv. being used, as usual, to express past time in a result-clause, without regard to sequence of tense.

182 2 **CHAP. 16.** *cum . . . tum*, *while . . . at the same time*.

182 4 *convenerant*, *coegerant*: i.e. for this war. — *quod ubique*, *all that there were anywhere*, followed by the partit. gen. *navium*.

182 5 *quo*, *whither*, i.e. any refuge.

182 8 *eo gravius . . . quo*, *the more severely*, etc., *in order that*. — *vindicandum (esse)*, *punishment should be inflicted*; impersonal.

182 10 *sub corona vendidit*, *sold (as slaves) at public auction*; lit. 'under the wreath,' since the captives were crowned like an animal to be sacrificed, as indeed they had been in earlier times. Thus the only naval power in Gallia that could be formidable to the Romans was totally destroyed, and neither the Veneti nor their allies gave the proconsul any more trouble.

THE CAMPAIGN IN SOUTHERN GAUL. — The campaign in Aquitania, which closes the year, was made merely for strategic reasons. It was not provoked by any attack or threat of war, and appears to have been quite unnecessary (see note on **178** 3) as well as difficult and dangerous. The Aquitani had no strong military league or combination, but consisted of small, isolated clans, and were besides of more industrial habit than the Gauls, being good miners and engineers. As a mere narrative, however, this is an interesting episode of the war.

BOOK FOURTH, I-19. — B.C. 55.

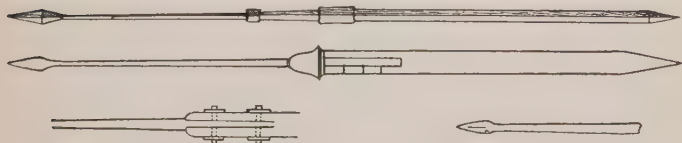


FIG. 118. — ROMAN JAVELINS (*pila*).

THE FIRST INVASION OF GERMANY. — The year B.C. 55 appears to have been marked by a general movement in the migration of the German tribes. An advance, consisting of two tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, crowded forward by the more powerful Suevi, crossed the lower Rhine into northern Gaul. Cæsar assumed the defence of the country he had just conquered, drove them back across the Rhine, fol-

lowed them up by an expedition into their own territories, and fully established the supremacy of the Roman arms. Another brief campaign in Germany two years later confirmed this success, and the Rhine became the military frontier, recognized for many centuries, between the Roman Empire and the barbarian world.

READING REFERENCES ON THE FIRST INVASION OF GERMANY.

- Dodge's Cæsar, ch. 10.
 Fowler's Julius Cæsar, ch. 12.
 Froude's Cæsar, ch. 16.
 Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. I. pp. 365-75.
 Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, Vol. IV. pp. 309-312.
 Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. ch. 7.
 Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.
 Tacitus's Germania.
 Trollope's Cæsar, ch. 5.

183 1 *ea quae*, etc.: mark the emphasis as shown by the order and compare the opening of Bk. ii and note. — **Pompeio, Crasso**: i.e. the year B.C. 55. Observe that the usual way of fixing a year is by naming the consuls for that year. The coalition between Cæsar, Pompey, and Crassus, sometimes called the First Triumvirate, had been formed five years before. In carrying out the scheme, Cæsar held the government of Gaul, while the others took into their own hands the whole control of affairs at home (see *Introd.*, "Life of Cæsar," p. 102).

183 2 *Usipetes, Tencteri*: beyond the Rhine, a little below Cologne.

183 4 *quo*: adv. = *in quod*.

183 5 *quod . . . prohibebantur*: Cæsar states this reason as his own, therefore the ind. — **Suevis**: this people (the modern Swabians) occupied the greater part of central Germany, and was made up of several independent tribes.

183 6 *premebantur, prohibebantur*: the imperfects here express that which was still going on, *they were being hard pressed*, etc.

183 8 *centum pagos*: there is probably some confusion here with the ancient German institution of the *Hundred*, a division of the population giving its name to a district of territory. Each *hundred* seems to have sent 1000 men (*singula milia*) to the army. The term early lost its numerical value, and became a mere local designation.

183 9 *bellandi causâ*: gerund, expressing purpose with *causâ*. Observe that *causa* in this use always follows its case; cf. above *causa transeundi*, with a totally different meaning.

183 11 *hi . . . illi*, the latter . . . the former. — *anno post*, the following year; § 259. *d*; B. 357. 1; G. 403. N. 4; H. 430.

183 12 *ratio*, *theory* (theoretical knowledge); *usus*, *practice* (knowledge derived from experience).

183 13 *sed*: i.e. they attended to agriculture systematically, *but*, etc. — *privati . . . agri*: i.e. the land was held in tribal communities.

183 14 *longius anno*: i.e. the community had no fixed possessions, but was transferred yearly from one tract to another, its place being taken by another community. As is shown in Bk. vi. ch. 22, the community was composed of persons kindred by birth. The annual shifting of occupancy would prevent at once forming local attachments, building up large properties, and too rapidly exhausting the soil.

183 15 *frumento* (abl. of means), etc.: they were still in a half-nomadic state, though with some little advance in agriculture (cf. Bk. vi. ch. 22, and Tacitus, *Germania*, 27). — *maximam partem*: adv. acc.; it is worth while to learn the few words that commonly occur in this construction; see § 240. *a*; B. 176. 2, 3; G. 334. R. 2; H. 378. 2.

183 17 *quae res*: cf. note on **17** 8.

185 1 *quod . . . faciunt*: this clause is a parenthesis, — *because, having been trained from childhood to no service or discipline, they do nothing whatever against their will*, — a lively contrast of barbarous manners with the severity of Roman family and civil discipline.

185 3 *alit*: the subj. is *quae res*. — *homines (eos) efficit*, *makes (them) men*, etc.

185 4 *eam*: correlative with *ut*, introducing a clause of result. — *locis* (abl. abs., concessive) *frigidissimis*, *even in their extreme climate*.

185 5 *vestitūs*: partit. gen. with *quicquam*. — *habent*, *have*; *lavan-
rentur*, *bathe*; imperf. by sequence of tenses following *adduxerunt*; § 287. *a*; B. 268. I; G. 511. R. 3; H. 495. I.

185 8 CHAP. 2. *eo, ut . . . habeant*, *so (on this account) that they may have* (some one) *to whom*, etc.

185 9 *quam quo . . . desiderant*, *than that they want*, etc. For the use of *quo* expressing cause with the implied negative, see § 341. R.; B. 286. *b*; G. 541. N. 2; H. 516. 2.

185 11 *impenso . . . pretio*, *at high cost*. — *importatis non utuntur*, *do not import for use*; lit. 'do not use imported.'

185 13 *deformia*, *ill-shaped*. — *summi laboris*, (capable) *of great labor*; gen. of quality.

185 20 *quamvis pauci*, *however few*. — *vinum*: cf. the description of the Nervii, **158** 6-10. They drank a kind of beer, however, and mead made of honey.

185 23 CHAP. 3. *publice*, *as a community*.

185 26 una . . . Suevis, extending from (the territory of) the Suevi in one direction. — sexcenta: probably exaggerated. — agri, their lands.

185 27 Ubii: along the Rhine, opposite Cologne.

186 1 paulo . . . humaniores, somewhat more civilized than the others of that race (Germans).

186 4 cum: concessive, as shown by the following tamen.

186 5 gravitatem, importance, referring to the warlike character and extensive resources of the people; while amplitudinem refers to their great numbers.

186 7 vectigalis: sc. eos, referring to the Ubii. — humiliores (pred.): in translating, sc. so as to be.

186 9 CHAP. 4. in eadem causa, in the same situation.

186 12 quas regiones: North Brabant, with the north bank of the Rhine.

186 13 ad utramque ripam, along both banks.

186 14 multitudinis: see **192** 10.

186 16 cis Rhenum: i.e. the west side.

186 18 vi contendere: = to force a passage.

186 22 confecto: with itinere.

186 23 oppresserunt: not 'oppressed'; see note on obtinere, **143** 15.

187 2 priusquam . . . fieret: § 327; B. 292; G. 577; H. 520. II. See also note on **69** 7.

187 5 partem: acc. of time. — eorum copiis, on their supplies (cattle and grain).

187 6 CHAP. 5. infirmitatem, weakness of purpose = fickleness.

187 8 nihil . . . committendum, no confidence should be placed in them. Observe that committendum (esse) is imper. and nihil adv. accusative.

187 9 est . . . consuetudinis, it is (a point) of Gallic custom; § 214. d; B. 198. 3; G. 366. R. I; II. 401. — uti . . . cogant, etc.: we have here a number of clauses of result, in apposition with hoc.

187 14 rebus atque auditionibus, facts and hearsays.

187 15 quorum eos . . . paenitere: § 221. b; B. 209. I; G. 377; H. 409. III. — in vestigio, on the spot; cf. **185** 16.

187 16 serviant, are slaves to. — plerique: i.e. the travellers and traders.

187 17 eorum: i.e. the questioners.

187 18 CHAP. 6. graviori bello, too serious a war, i.e. unmanageable; § 228; B. 187. III; G. 347; H. 386.

187 19 maturius, earlier, i.e. in the season. — ad exercitum: the army was now in Normandy.

187 20 facta: sc. esse, so with missas below.

187 21 *missas legationes*, etc. : these infinitive clauses explain *ea*.

187 22 *uti . . . discederent* : i.e. further into Gaul. The Belgæ, it will be remembered, claimed kindred with the Germans, and were no doubt ready to assist them against the Romans.

187 23 *postulassent* : for fut. perf. of direct disc. ; § 281, 316, 336. B ; B. 264, 312. 2, 318 ; G. 244, 516 ; H. 525. 2. — *fore parata*, *should be made ready* (used for the fut. infin. pass.). It depends on some word of saying, like *promiserunt*, implied in *invitados*. Instead of *fore parata*, we should expect *fore ut pararentur*.

187 24 *Eburonum*, etc. : German tribes.

187 27 *permulsis*, *calmed* from their terror ; lit. ‘soothed by stroking,’ like a nervous horse.

188 1 CHAP. 7. *equitibus delectis* : each of the allied states furnished its quota of cavalry.

188 3 *a quibus* : refers to *locis*.

188 5 *priores*, *first*, or, as *aggressors*. — *neque recusare*, *they do not decline*, followed by *quin* and subjv. ; cf. **147 6**.

188 7 [*haec*] : may be translated. — *quicumque* : the antecedent is *eis* (dat.) implied with *resistere*.

188 8 *neque deprecari*, *and ask no quarter* ; lit. ‘and not beg off.’ — *haec tamen dicere*, *this, however, they did say* ; supply *se* for subj. of *dicere* and following infinitives. For similar instances, see **158 7**, **170 11**, **171 11**.

188 10 *eis* : i.e. to the Romans. — *attribuant* : subjv. in indir. disc. for imv. of the direct.

188 11 *eos* : sc. *agros*.

188 12 *concedere*, *yield*, as inferior.

188 13 *reliquum . . . neminem* : the position gives a force like ‘BESIDES THESE there was no one ELSE on earth,’ etc.

188 15 CHAP. 8. *quae visum est*, *what (it) seemed proper* (to answer).

188 20 *Ubiorum* : see ch. 3.

188 21 *quorum sint*, etc., *whose envoys* (he informs them) *are now with him to* (lit. ‘and’) *complain*, etc.

188 25 CHAP. 9. *post diem tertium* (= *tertio die*) : i.e. the next day but one. The first and last day are usually counted in the Roman reckoning.

188 26 *propius se* : *propius* sometimes has the force of a preposition ; § 261. *a* ; B. 141. 3 ; G. 416. 22 ; H. 437. 1. — *id* : i.e. the two days’ delay (expressed by *ne . . . moveret*).

189 1 *trans* : i.e. westwardly.

189 2 *expectari* : change the voice and translate as active, *they were waiting for*.

189 4 CHAP. 10. *Vosego*, the *Vosges*; in fact, the Meuse flows from the plateau of Langres.

189 5 *parte . . . recepta*: the Rhine branches in these low, marshy regions; one branch (*Vacalus*, the modern Waal) unites with the Meuse near Bois le Duc (see note, ch. 15).

189 6 Omit the words in brackets.

189 9 *Nantuatum*: in Bk. iii. ch. 1, they are placed upon the Rhone, just above Lake Geneva; this was perhaps a branch or kindred tribe. The list of names here is incomplete.

189 12 *multis . . . effectis*: translate actively, *making many*, etc.

189 13 *feris . . . nationibus*: see the introduction to Motley's Dutch Republic.

189 15 *capitibus*, *mouaths* (more commonly *sources*).

189 17 CHAP. 11. *ut erat constitutum*, as had been arranged (i.e. the return of the envoys). Either this is a careless expression, or Caesar's consent is omitted in ch. 9. It is there stated merely that they said they would return.

189 19 *eos equites* (antecedent to *qui*), *the cavalry who*, etc.

189 20 *antecessissent*: attracted into the subjv. by the *ut*-clause; cf.

73 5. — *praemitteret*: used without an object; translate *send word*.

189 21 *sibi*: i.e. the Germans.

189 22 *quorum si*, and if their; cf. note on *qui cum*, **156 2**.

189 23 *condicione . . . usuros*, would accept the terms; see ch. 8.

189 25 *daret*: sc. *petebant uti* from l. 19. — *eodem illo pertinere*, tended the same way (see ch. 9), i.e. to gain time till the German cavalry should arrive; *eodem* and *illo* are adverbs.

189 28 *aquationis causa*: a small stream (probably the Niers) lay between him and the German encampment.

190 3 *accessisset*: § 328; B. 293. III. 2; G. 572; H. 519. II. 2.

190 5 CHAP. 12. *amplius DCCC*, more than 800; § 247. c; B. 217. 3; G. 296. R. 4; II. 417. I. N. 2). Tacitus (Germania, 32) says that this tribe was distinguished for cavalry.

190 9 *indutiis*: dat. of the end for which.

190 10 *resistentibus*: sc. *nostris*.

190 11 *subfossis*, etc., after stabbing our horses underneath and dismounting several of our men; observe again, as in **189 12**, that an abl. abs. with a pass. partic. is often best translated actively.

190 14 *venissent*: cf. **187 2**.

190 17 *genere*: abl. of source; § 244. a; B. 215; G. 395; H. 415. II. — *regnum obtinuerat*, had held supreme power.

190 20 *quoad*: cf. this use and construction with that in l. 2.

190 25 CHAP. 13. *neque iam*, *no longer*; knowing how little his own cavalry (of Gauls) were to be trusted, and that the arrival of the main body of the Germans would put them at once to flight, Cæsar resolved to attack at the first opportunity, right or wrong.

190 26 *ab eis qui*, *from men who*, etc., followed by the subjv. of characteristic.

191 1 *expectare*: subj. of *esse*; note the emphasis of position.

191 2 *dementiae*: pred. genitive.

191 3 *quantum . . . auctoritatis*, etc., *how great prestige the enemy had gained by one battle*.

191 5 *quibus*: i.e. the enemy; dat. indir. obj. of *dandum* (*esse*); on the relative serving as a connective, see note, **9**, 8.

191 7 *ne quem*, etc.: cf. **171** 9.

191 8 *res*: in apposition with *quod . . . venerunt*.

191 9 *eadem perfidia*: their perfidy Cæsar takes for granted, as the best apology for his own; but the presence of the chiefs and old men looks more as if they came, as they said, to offer amends for the attack of the day before.

191 11 *simul . . . simul*, *partly . . . partly*. — *purgandi sui*: see § 298. a; B. 339. 5; G. 428. R. 1; H. 542. I. N. 1.

191 12 *contra atque*, *contrary to what*; see Vocabulary. Observe the subjunctives of implied indir. disc. in this passage.

191 13 *si quid . . . de indutiis* = *whatever* (lit. 'if anything') *they could in the way of truce*.

191 14 *fallendo*: i.e. by another trick. — *quos, illos*: both refer to the same subject. — *quos oblatos (esse) gavisus*, *delighted that they were put in his power*; *gavisus*, from *gaudeo*. By detaining their chief men, he would at once perplex and disable them.

191 17 *subsequi*, *to follow in the rear*; they usually went in advance (cf. **189** 20), but now he could not trust them in the intended attack.

191 18 CHAP. 14. *acie triplici*: i.e. a march in line of battle; see chapters on military affairs, VI and VII.

191 19 *quid ageretur*, *what was going on*.

191 20 *possent*: cf. **187** 2, **190** 14.

191 21 *et . . . et*, *both . . . and*.

191 23 *ne . . . an . . . an* (§ 211; B. 162. 4; G. 458; H. 353): the three infinitives all belong to *præstaret*, *whether it was better*.

191 24 *quorum timor cum*: note the emphatic order.

191 29 *reliqua multitudo*: the presence of women and children shows that it was a migration for settlement, not a mere inroad for plunder.

192 1 *ad quos consecrandos* (freq. of *sequor*), *to hunt them down*.

Referring to this massacre of helpless fugitives, Plutarch, in his *Life of Cæsar*, writes that when the Senate was voting public thanksgiving and processions on account of the victory, Cato proposed that Cæsar should be given up to the barbarians to expiate that breach of faith, in order that the divine vengeance might fall upon its author rather than upon Rome. Cato was Cæsar's bitter political and personal enemy, but still Cæsar's cruelty and perfidy in this transaction can be justified only on the ground of absolute necessity. To secure the Roman power, he must destroy these Germans, in order to establish the Rhine as the Gallic frontier and deter others from crossing.

192 3 CHAP. 15. **Germani**: i.e. those who were fighting. — **clamore**: i.e. of those who were being massacred.

192 4 **signis**: figures of animals carried on poles; see Figs. 81, 110.

192 6 **reliqua fuga**, *further flight*. This action is usually placed at the junction of the Rhine and the Meuse. There are many reasons against this, but no other location seems possible without doing violence to the text, and for this no sufficient case is made out.

192 9 **ex . . . timore**, *relieved from* (the apprehension of) *so great a war*.

192 12 **discedendi potestatem**, *permission to depart*. This was a practical acquittal of the charge of treachery.

192 13 **veriti**: regularly pres. active in force, *fearing*.

192 17 CHAP. 16. **illa**, *the following*.

192 19 **suis**: note the emphasis on this word.

192 20 **cum intellegerent**: here nearly equivalent to a participle.

192 21 **accessit . . . quod**, *and besides*; see Vocabulary.

192 22 **quam . . . transisse**, *which, as I mentioned above, had crossed*;

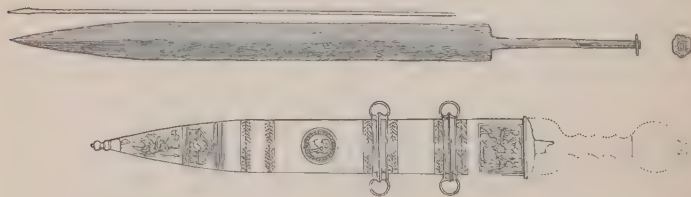


FIG. 119. — ROMAN SWORDS (*gladii*).

see **188 27 ff.** (the conj. *that* of indir. disc. cannot be used in English to introduce a relative clause). Observe that Cæsar the *writer* uses the first person (*commemoravi*); Cæsar the *actor* is always in the third.

192 25 **Sugambrorum**: living just north of the Ubii.

192 ²⁷ *intulissent*: cf. *antecessissent*, **189** ²⁰. — *dederent*: observe the omission of *ut*; § 331. *f. R.*; B. 295. 8; G. 546. R. 2; H. 499. 2.

192 ²⁸ *finire*: see introductory note to Bk. iv.

193 ¹ *aequum*: pred. adj. agreeing with the infinitive clause *Germanos . . . transire*.

193 ² *sui . . . imperi*: pred. gen. of possession after *esse*, *under his power*.

193 ⁷ *occupationibus rei publicae*, *by the demands of state affairs*.

193 ⁸ *transportaret*: same construction as *ferret*.

193 ⁹ *futurum (esse)*: sc. verb of saying from *orabant*, l. 5; so, too, for the following sentence.

193 ¹⁷ CHAP. 17. *dignitatis*: cf. **193** ².

193 ¹⁹ *latitudinem*, etc.: Cæsar's passage of the Rhine was most probably at Bonn, where the high and rocky banks begin; or at Neuwied, 20 or 25 miles further south, where there is a break in the chain of hills, though here, it is said, the bottom is rock, and not fit for driving piles. The width of the river at either place is about 1400 feet, and its depth is very variable. It is now crossed in these parts by floating bridges of boats.

193 ²¹ *rationem*, *plan*. The brief description which Cæsar gives of his rough and ready but very serviceable engineering may be made clearer by giving its different points, as follows (see Fig. 70):

1. A pair of unhewn logs, a foot and a half thick (*tigna bina sesquipedalia*), braced two feet apart and sharpened at the end, are set up by derricks and driven with pile drivers (*fistucis*) into the bottom, sloping a little with the stream.

2. A similar pair is driven in opposite, 40 feet below, sloping a little in the other direction against the stream; the upper ends of the two pairs would thus be some 25 or 30 feet apart, the width of the roadway. It is possible, as Rüstow thinks, that the 40 feet refer to the top and not to the bottom of the piles.

3. A beam of square timber, two feet thick (*trabs bipedalis*), and about 30 feet long, is made fast at the ends by ties (*fibulis*) between the logs of each pair, — which are thus kept at a proper distance apart, while they are strongly braced against the current.

4. A suitable number (probably about 60) of these trestles, or timber-arches, having been built and connected by cross-ties, — this part of the structure must be taken for granted, — planks are then laid lengthwise of the bridge (*directa materia*), resting on the heavy floor-timbers; and upon these, again, saplings and twigs (*longurii*, *crates*) are spread, to prevent the jar and wear of the carts and hoofs of the pack-animals on the flooring.

5. Piles (*sublicae*) are then driven in below, resting obliquely against

the logs, to which they serve as shores or buttresses (*pro ariete*), and other heavier piles a little way above, to break the force of floating logs or boats sent down to destroy the bridge.

193 22 *tigna*: probably unhewn logs. — *bina*, *two and two*, i.e. in pairs.

193 24 *pedum duorum*: i.e. between the timbers of each pair. — *cum . . . defixerat*, etc.: *cum* here equals *whenever* or *as often as*, and the clause is equivalent to the protasis of a general condition; hence the use of the pluperf. ind.; cf. 180 22 and note.

193 26 *sublicae modo*, *like a pile*.

193 27 *ut . . . procumbent*, *so as to lean forward in the direction of the current*.

193 29 *ab inferiore parte*, *down stream*. — *contra . . . conversa*, *slanting against*; agrees with *duo (tigna)*.

193 30 *haec utraque . . . distinebantur*, *these two sets (or pairs) were held apart by two-foot timbers laid on above, equal (in thickness) to the interval left by the fastening of the piles (quantum . . . distabat), and fastened with a pair of ties at each end*. For number of *utraque*, see Vocabulary.

194 2 *quibus (tignis) . . . revinctis*, *after these were held apart and secured in opposite directions*; i.e. the horizontal beams held the piles (*tigna*) apart, which, sloping in opposite directions, had been secured by the clamps.

194 4 *rerum*, *structure*; see note on 7 8. — *quo maior . . . hoc artius*: *the greater . . . the more closely*, abl. of degree of difference. The only doubtful part of the description is in *fibulis*, of which the exact meaning is somewhat uncertain. They are thought by some to be cross-ties. But, as the word means properly a kind of clasp exactly like a modern safety-pin, it seems better to suppose they were clamps joining the two piles with perhaps an iron bolt put through, answering to the pin of the *fibula*.

194 5 *haec . . . contexebantur*, *these (the framework of timber) were covered with boards placed lengthwise*.

194 7 *sublicae . . . agebantur*, *piles also were driven on the lower side in a slanting direction*, so as to prop the bridge against the current.

194 8 *pro ariete*, *as a buttress*.

194 10 *aliae item*: other piles a little way above, to serve as a break-water. There is nothing in the text to show whether these were attached to the bridge or not. — *spatio*: abl. of degree of difference.

194 11 *deiciendi operis*: pred. gen. expressing tendency or purpose (§ 298. R.; B. 339. 6; G. 428. R. 2; H. 544. N. 2, last example), *to throw down the work*.

194 12 *neu . . . nocerent*, *and that they (trunci, etc.) might not harm the bridge*.

194 14 CHAP. 18. *diebus x quibus*, *within ten days from the time when*. — *coepta erat*: pass. because used with the pass. infin.; cf. **150 1**; see also l. 20 below.

194 15 *traducitur*: the hist. pres., resumed from **192 21**.

194 16 *Sugambrorum*: these were a little to the northeast of the bridge.

194 21 *hortantibus eis*, etc.: i.e. the few who had escaped the massacre of ch. 15, and had taken refuge across the Rhine.

194 23 *in solitudinem*: notice that the Latin construction is that following verbs of motion, on account of the meaning of *abdiderant*; we say 'hid in,' etc.

194 27 CHAP. 19. *pollicitus*: this word implies a main clause in the infin., *se daturum*, on which the conditional clause would depend. This clause does not appear, but the dependent clause remains in the subjv., according to the rule.

194 28 *premerentur*: a good example of the subjv. in implied indir. disc.; see notes on **9 13**, **50 8**.

196 1 *per exploratores*: cf. note on **154 14**.

196 3 *uti . . . convenirent*: object clauses of purpose, following the verbal phrase *nuntios . . . dimisisse*, which involves an idea of sending orders or advice. The rest of the sentence contains only statements and is therefore in the indir. disc. construction.

196 5 *hunc*, etc., *this had been selected about the middle*, etc.; *medium* is used as a pred. agreeing with *hunc* in preference to an adverbial phrase *in medio*; § 193; B. 241. 1; G. 325. R. 6; H. 440. N. 2.

196 7 *decertare*: not merely *fight*, but *fight the decisive battle* or *decide the issue*. This force of *de* is very common.

196 10 *ut . . . liberaret*, etc.: these clauses are in apposition with *rebus*, and their form as result-clauses is determined by *confectis*. For infinitive clause in apposition, cf. **176 4** and note. In English some change of construction is often necessary in such cases. Here, *having accomplished*, etc., (namely) *inspired*, . . . *chastised*, . . . *relieved*.

196 13 *arbitratus*: cf. **148 17** and note.

BOOK SIXTH, 9-29. — B.C. 53.

THE SECOND INVASION OF GERMANY AND THE CUSTOMS OF THE GAULS AND GERMANS. — Cæsar's first invasion of Germany was immediately followed by his first invasion of Britain. In the following year (B.C. 54), he went to Britain again in force, but was able to accomplish but little. On his return, he was compelled to put down a rebellion of the Gauls, so serious that he lost a division of his army and barely saved another from the same fate. The last campaign, mainly unsuccessful as

it was, must have been in the eyes of the Gauls at least as good as a drawn battle, and have given them fresh hope in the struggle. The strength of their resistance was in the north and east, where they had the support of raids from across the Rhine, — a danger which it was especially the business of Cæsar to check by a daring blow; hence the policy of this new, but idle, advance into Germany. It may be borne in mind that this campaign was the more critical, as it followed closely upon the defeat and destruction of the Roman armies under Crassus in the East.

READING REFERENCES ON CÆSAR'S SIXTH CAMPAIGN.

- Dodge's Cæsar, ch. 14.
 Fowler's Julius Cæsar, ch. 13.
 Froude's Cæsar, ch. 17 (last part).
 Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. I. pp. 398-405.
 Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. ch. 9.
 Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.
 Tacitus's Germania.
 Taylor's Hist. of Germany, chs. 1 and 2.
 Trollope's Cæsar, ch. 7.

196 19 CHAP. 9. paulo supra, *a little above*, or to the south, probably near Andernach.

196 20 nota . . . ratione : = *on the plan already tried and approved*; cf. Bk. iv. ch. 17.

197 1 purgandi sui : § 298. *a*; B. 339. 5; G. 428. R. 1; H. 542. I. N. 1.

197 5 cognita, *having inquired into*.

197 9 CHAP. 10. paucis post diebus : § 259. *d*; B. 223; G. 403. N. 4; H. 430.

197 10 eis . . . imperio : subject tribes, not confederate allies. Tacitus, however (Germania, 38), represents the Suevi as a confederacy; its former subjects may, after Cæsar's time, have been admitted to alliance.

197 18 quaeque : -que connects mittant and cognoscant.

197 22 silvam : this was the natural frontier and defence (*pro nativo muro*) of the north German plain towards the south. A range of wooded hills still borders the Saxon duchies on the north. The Cherusci held the valleys of the Weser and Elbe.

198 1 CHAP. 11. locum, etc. : here there is really nothing to tell, as Cæsar found the country deserted (ch. 29), and returned at once to Gaul. We owe to this void in the narrative a most curious and entertaining glimpse into the geographic and ethnographic knowledge of the time. See the introductory chapters on Gaul and Germany.

198 7 existimantur : is only explanatory, hence the indicative.

198 8 quorum : the antecedent is principes.

198 9 redeat: is characteristic ; § 320; B. 283; G. 631. 1; H. 503. 1. The idea seems to be: It is the chief men of these factions (those, namely, who are regarded as most influential) who have the supreme authority. Hence the effort of each of the chieftains to look out for his dependents. A good illustration is found in modern political bosses.

198 10 ne . . . egeret: in apposition with **eius rei**, the past tense (**egeret**) taking its time from **institutum (esse)**; § 287. i, 336. B. N. 2; B. 268. 2; G. 518; H. 495. IV.

198 13 haec . . . Galliae, *this same state of things exists in general throughout entire Gaul*.

198 14 divisae: adj. use of the participle; cf. **divisa**, **143 1**.

198 15 CHAP. 12. **cum . . . venit**: notice the difference between this and the **cum** in descriptive clauses; cf. **16 5**, **144 8**. Here it means merely 'at the time when,' etc., and there is no inner connection with the main clause.

198 16 Sequani: these succeeded to the domination of the Arverni. —**hi**, *the latter*.

198 17 antiquitus: really only a little while before, as the Hædui had risen by favor of the Romans.

198 18 clientelae, dependencies. These were the petty tribes which grouped themselves about one or the other of the great rival states.

198 24 iurare: i.e. the Hædui.

198 25 nihil . . . consili, *no plans*, *partit. gen.* — **et**: connects **cogerent** and **possiderent**.

199 1 infecta re, *without effecting his object*.

199 2 adventu Caesaris . . . dimiserant: this long Latin periodic sentence should in our idiom be rendered by several coördinate sentences; cf. note on **164 18**. — **facta commutatione**: i.e. by his friendship to the Hædui and the defeat of Ariovistus, the king of the Germans.

199 4 ei: subj. of **videbant**.

199 6 reliquis rebus: abl. of specification.

199 8 adaequare, *were equal*; i.e. to the Hædui. (The infinitive clause **quos adaequare** is the subj. of **intellegebatur**, which is used impersonally.)

199 9 gratia: abl. of specification.

199 11 dicabant: distinguish from **dicebant**.

199 13 statu: loc. ablative.

199 16 CHAP. 13. **plebes**: here a noun of the fifth declension; cf. **plebs**.

199 18 cum . . . premuntur: a general condition expressing repeated action, **cum** meaning *whenever* or *as often as*. The perf. ind. would be more usual; cf. **si qua**, etc., **156 23**.

199 21 quae dominis (dat. of possessor), *as masters have*.

199 22 druidum (pred. gen.), *that of the druids*. — illi: *the former*.

199 25 hi: i.e. the druids.

199 26 eos: i.e. the Gauls.

199 27 quod . . . facinus, *any crime*.

200 1 idem: nom. plural.

200 2 qui: why not quis? Observe also si qui in l. 10 below.

200 3 sacrificiis: abl. of separation; understand eos with interdicunt.

— poena: like an excommunication, taboo, or boycott.

200 5 decedunt (with dat.): sc. de via; i.e. 'make way for' them in the street.

200 6 incommodi: partit. gen. following quid.

200 13 Carnutum: this central spot was at or near the modern town of Dreux, where, it is said, traces of these assemblies may still be found.

200 16 disciplina, *system of doctrine*: cf. meaning of the same word in 199 25. — Britannia: many think that druidism originated in Gaul and was carried thence to Britain, where it still flourished, but that it had declined for various political reasons in the mother country.

200 21 CHAP. 14. The bracketed words merely repeat the thought of the preceding sentence and may be omitted.

201 2 numerum versuum: i.e. their lore was put into verse to assist the memory.

201 4 fas: the words fas and nefas refer to what is *religiously* right and wrong, in distinction from ius and iniuria, which refer to *human* obligations only.

201 8 litteris confisos, *by trusting to written words*, a useful hint to teachers.

201 11 hoc (acc.): more usually illud; refers to what follows; hoc (abl.), to what has just been said.

201 12 transire: the belief in the transmigration of souls was common to many ancient peoples and is still a tenet of some Eastern religions, especially of the Buddhists.

201 15 mundi, *the universe* (system of things); terrarum (cf. orbis terrarum), *the world*.

201 17 CHAP. 15. equitum: these made a sort of military nobility. It is interesting to compare the two "upper classes" here described with the ecclesiastics and feudal noblesse of France before the Revolution. — cum est: notice the force of the ind. See note on cum . . . premuntur, 165 18. — usus: a noun; see Vocabulary.

201 21 ut quisque . . . amplissimus ita plurimos, *the more powerful . . . the greater number*: § 93. c, at end; B. 252. 5. c); G. 642. R. 2; H. 458. 2.

201 ²² **ambactus**: this Celtic word was known as the equivalent of **servus**, *slave*, as early as the time of Ennius, 150 years before. Cf. **165** 16-21.

201 ²⁷ **CHAP. 16. homines immolant**: it is not certain that the practice of human sacrifice existed so late as this in Gaul. Cæsar appears not to have known any actual instances of it.

202 ³ **plācārī**: distinguish from **placēre**. — **publice**: as opposed to the private ones just referred to.

202 ⁴ **habent instituta**: cf. **17** 15, **147** 16, and notes.

202 ⁹ **cum . . . deficit**: cf. **cum est**, **201** 17.

202 ¹² **CHAP. 17. Mercurium**: the gods had no such names, nor were they, in fact, the same gods; but they were identified with similar Roman divinities as nearly as possible. The name of the god whom the Romans identified with Mercury is lost (**Teutates** ?); but it appears from inscriptions and images that his worship was very widespread and important throughout the period of the Empire. The other deities here mentioned appear under numerous epithets. Jupiter was probably the Gallic Taranis, whose name appears to indicate that he was a god of thunder. He has been identified by some with a statuette bearing in its hand a long hammer or mallet, like the Scandinavian Thor. (See *Esquisse de la Religion des Gaulois*, by Henri Gadioz.)

202 ²⁰ **cum**, etc.: see **199** 18 and note.

202 ²¹ **ceperint**: subjv. of informal indir. disc. for the fut. perf. ind. of the direct.

203 ² **neglecta . . . religione**: i.e. in violation of his vow. — **capta**, *taken as spoil*. — **apud se**, *at his house*.

203 ³ **posita**, *consecrated as a gift*.

203 ⁵ **CHAP. 18. Dite** (see § 244. *a. R.*; B. 215. 2; G. 395; H. 415. II. N.), *Pluto*, the god of darkness, or of the underworld, meaning that they believe themselves to have sprung from the soil, the world below them.

203 ⁷ **noctium**, etc.: this usage is common to many primitive peoples; e.g. the Germans (Tacitus, *Germania*, 11). Our word "fortnight" is a relic of it. It doubtless had its origin in keeping time by the changes of the moon.

203 ⁹ **ut . . . subsequatur**: the calendar day began at sunset.

203 ¹⁰ **fere** (with **hoc**): i.e. speaking loosely. — **suos liberos**, etc.: the Romans, on the other hand, accustomed their sons to public life and in early times even took them with them into the Senate. Again **cum** with the perf. ind. expressing repeated or customary action; cf. **202** 20. Observe that this perf. becomes a pres. in our idiom, expressing repeated action or a general truth.

203 13 *turpe ducunt*, *they consider it disgraceful*, *turpe* being pred. adj. agreeing with the infinitive clause.

203 14 CHAP. 19. *quantas . . . communicant* : i.e. the husband deposits, in a common fund, an amount equal to the wife's marriage portion.

203 16 *ratio habetur*, *a reckoning is kept*.

203 17 *fructus*, *revenues or profits*. — *vita* : abl. of specification.

203 19 *viri in uxores*, etc. : cf. the Roman *patria potestas* ; the rank of the wife was much higher among the Germans.

203 22 *de uxoribus* : this would seem to imply polygamy among the Gauls. Probably it was limited to the chiefs, as among the Germans ; see Tacitus, *Germania*, 18. — *in servilem modum*, *after the manner of slaves*, i.e. by torture.

203 23 *compertum est* : i.e. that there has been foul play.

203 24 *excruciatas interficiunt* : cf. 67 16, 152 12, and notes. — *pro cultu*, *considering the degree of civilization*.

203 27 *hanc* : = *nostram* (cf. 148 5), i.e. a generation ago.

204 1 *dilectos* : distinguish from *delectos*. — *justis*, *regular*, by conventional rule. When these had been fulfilled, the sacrifice of dependents was added. These usages are in accordance with the belief of the Gauls in immortality, which is fully attested.

204 3 CHAP. 20. *quae civitates* : = *eae civitates quae* ; a relative clause standing first generally incorporates its antecedent ; cf. 82 3.

204 4 *legibus sanctum*, *established by law*, agreeing with the sentence *si . . . communicet* (obj. of *habent*) ; cf. 147 16.

204 6 *neve*, *and that not*, the regular connective for a negative purpose-clause. — *quo* : indefinite, *any one*.

204 7 *quod saepe*, etc. : cf. the lively account, 187 9-17.

204 9 *quae visa sunt*, *what they think fit to conceal* (understand *occultanda*).

204 11 *per concilium*, *by means* (or, *in the proceedings*) *of the public assembly*.

204 14 CHAP. 21. *neque druides habent* : i.e. this particular hierarchy. They had, however, both priests and priestesses, with religious forms public and private.

204 15 *deorum numero*, etc. In this, Cæsar's testimony is directly contradicted by Tacitus, who speaks (*Germania*, 9) of their worship of Mercury, Mars, and Hercules. This is almost the only contradiction between these writers, in whose accounts of political and other institutions there is a striking agreement. This is all the more remarkable when we bear in mind that Cæsar went but little beyond the German frontier and had

relatively little to do with them. This description of the Germans may be profitably compared with Cæsar's account of the Suevi in the opening chapters of Bk. iv.

204 19 a parvis, *from childhood*.—qui . . . permanserunt: i.e. "who are slowest to outgrow" their boyhood. Cf. Tacitus: 'sera juvenum venus, eoque inexhausta pubertas,' and contrast the premature debaucheries of the Roman youth.

204 20 hoc: abl. of cause.

204 23 nulla est occultatio: like the English 'there is no hiding.'

204 25 renonum: i.e. small cloaks of hide.—magnā . . . nudā: abl. absolute.

204 26 CHAP. 22. agri culturae: as to this chapter, cf. what is said in the Introduction to Cæsar and in Bk. iv. ch. 1, where it is shown that the soil was tilled, not by the labor of old men, women, or slaves, but by that of the fighting men. In other words, the Germans were, though barbarians, not (in one sense) a barbarous people.

204 27 neque quisquam, etc.: this temporary and shifting occupation of land, as well as the holding of it by the family or clan (*cognationibus*), is characteristic of a primitive society. Cf. the Introduction, as above.

205 1 finis . . . proprios, *private lands*.

205 2 gentibus, etc.: in the general gathering for this assignment, each clan must have met by itself, and have been represented by its chief.

205 3 quantum . . . agri, *as much land*; agri is partit. genitive.

205 6 agri culturā: notice the use of the abl. (§ 252; B. 225; G. 404; H. 422. N. 2), here to be rendered *for*.—ne . . . expellant: this was a flagrant evil in Italy, which Cæsar had attempted in his own consulship to check (by the *lex agraria*), following the precedent of the Gracchi. There the *potentiores* had already succeeded in ousting the *humiliores* from their estates, and creating enormous plantations, *latifundia*, cultivated by slaves, in place of the earlier peasant freeholds.

205 11 cum . . . videat: this looks as if the land was portioned in equal shares to rich and poor alike. But on this question there are many and various opinions, and, at any rate, the words do not prove a division to each man as a freehold.

205 13 CHAP. 23. maxima laus: so in Bk. iv. ch. 3.

205 14 virtutis: § 218. *d*; B. 204. 2; G. 359. R. 1; H. 391. II. 4.

205 16 prope, *near*; consistere, *to stay or settle*. The infinitive clauses are in apposition with hoc.

205 17 cum . . . infert: note the force of pres. ind. with cum; cf. 199 18 and note.

205 18 **magistratus . . . deliguntur**: by lot, according to the Saxon Bede, from among existing magistrates. The Goths, Burgundians, Franks, and Lombards, on the other hand, had real kings.

205 19 **praesint, habeant**: subjv. of characteristic.

205 21 **principes . . . pagorum**: these local and village chiefs, forming a sort of governing body, were probably the natural leaders each of his own district. They are said, however, to have been elected, no doubt for life, by an assembly of the tribe or nation (Tacitus, *Germania*, 12).

205 22 **latrocinia . . . extra finis**: as with the "cattle-lifting raids," of the Scottish Borderers.

205 25 **ubi quis**, etc., *whenever any one*, equivalent to the protasis of a general condition. This is the manner in which volunteers were mustered for the raids in question.

205 26 **profiteantur**: representing an inv. form in the direct discourse.

206 2 **omnium . . . rerum . . . fides**, *confidence in anything*.

206 3 **qui . . . venerunt**: again the perf. ind. in the protasis of a general condition, — *whoever comes to them for any reason whatsoever*; cf. 202 20.

206 6 CHAP. 24. **cum . . . superarent**: a clause of characteristic, *such that*, etc.; see § 322. R.; B. 288. B. 3; G. 631. 2; H. 503. I. N. 2.

206 7 **superarent, inferrent, mitterent**: asyndeton, i.e. omission of connectives.

206 10 **Hercyniam silvam**: the great wooded range extending from the Black Forest to the Bohemian Highlands. — **Graecis**: i.e. other Greeks, as Eratosthenes was a Greek, though not of Greece proper.

206 11 **Volcae Tectosages**, etc.: occupying the southern part of Gaul, about Narbonne or Toulouse. A portion only had migrated to Germany, or, perhaps, had stayed behind from an early Celtic migration westward.

206 16 **Gallis**: indir. obj. of **largitur**, **multa** being the direct object.

206 22 CHAP. 25. **iter**: acc. of extent; cf. 188 3. — **expedito** (dat.): i.e. to a man unencumbered with baggage. — **non . . . noverunt**: i.e. the Germans who live there. So at the present day, in the mountain regions of Germany and Switzerland, distance is measured by "hours" (*Stunden*) instead of miles.

206 24 **Nemetum**, etc.: along the middle course of the Rhine, where it flows northward from Bâle. — **recta regione**: i.e. parallel.

206 25 **Dacorum**, etc.: occupying the eastern and western portions of Hungary.

206 26 **sinistrorsus**: in reality it is the river which leaves the course of the forest or highland, bending abruptly to the right, or southward.

207 1 **huius**: that familiar to the Romans, viz. western.

207 2 [aut audisse]: may be omitted in translation. — **initium**: as we should say 'the end,' eastward, where it is lost in the Carpathian range. Its extent, in a direct line, is stated as 1600 miles.

207 3 **processerit**: subjv. as an intermediate clause in indir. disc. for perf. indicative.

207 4 **acceperit**: subjv. of characteristic.

207 5 **quae**, *such as*, followed by the subjv. of characteristic.

207 6 **differant**: subjv. of characteristic.

207 8 **CHAP. 26.** **bos**: this name seems to have been given loosely to any large-horned, unfamiliar beast, and even to the elephant; here it is perhaps the reindeer, which had anciently a wide-scattered range.

207 9 **unum cornu**: this description is unintelligible.

207 10 **palmae ramique** (hendiadys; cf. note on **90 17**), *branching antlers*, evidently comparing the horns to a flat hand with branches like fingers.

207 13 **CHAP. 27.** **alces**: this name is undoubtedly *elks*, but the description is widely unlike and quite unrecognizable.

207 15 **crura . . . habent**: the same story is told by Pliny, H. N. viii. 16, 39.

207 17 **si . . . conciderunt**: cf. **206 3** and note. By what tense should this perf. be rendered? The same construction occurs below in l. 20, **cum est animadversum**, and in l. 23, **cum reclinaverunt**.

207 21 **omnes**: with **arbores**.

207 22 **ab radicibus**, *at the roots*. — **accidunt**, *cut into*. — **tantum ut**, etc.: lit. 'so far that the perfect appearance of them standing is left'; translate *so that to all appearances they are standing firmly*.

207 26 **CHAP. 28.** **uri**: this name is generally understood to refer to the German *Urochs* (the primitive or wild ox, probably buffalo), said still to be found in the forest of Lithuania. Cæsar evidently describes a very different animal, with spreading horns like those of a reindeer or moose; but the whole description must have been derived from a confused account.

208 6 **quae sint testimonio**, *to serve as evidence*, a purpose-clause.

208 7 **ne . . . excepti**, *not even when caught quite young*.

208 12 **CHAP. 29.** **Caesar**, etc.: this chapter directly follows ch. 10 in the narrative, the intervening passage being a digression.

208 14 **supra**: see **204 26**.

208 15 **ne . . . tolleret**: as would be done by completely destroying the bridge. — **barbaris**: dat.; § 229; B. 188. 2. *d*); G. 345. R. 1; H. 385. II. 2. — **atque**, *and at the same time*. — **ut tardaret**: which he did by making the bridge practically useless.

208 17 **auxilia**: i.e. which the Germans might send to aid the Gauls.

208 19 *in extremo ponte*: there seems to have been an island in the river at this place, so that the bridge was in two sections. The section between the island and the east bank was destroyed, and at what was now the end of the bridge (*extremo*), on the island, the tower was built. There was probably a redoubt, as usual, at the entrance to the bridge on the mainland; see Fig. 70.

208 20 *cohortium*: these were auxiliaries.

208 22 *cum maturescere*, etc.: i.e. early in August.

208 24 *Arduennam*: the modern Ardennes.

208 26 *D*: an obvious mistake, possibly of some copyist. The distance is about 150 miles. — *Basilum*: afterwards one of the conspirators against Cæsar.

208 27 *si . . . possit*, (to see) *whether he can*, etc.; see § 334. *f*; B. 300. 3; G. 460. (*b*); H. 529. II. I. N. I.

208 30 *subsequi*: notice the pres. for the future.

BOOK FOURTH, 20-36. — B.C. 55.

THE FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN.—What is called the First Invasion of Britain, though it marks an interesting date in history, gave fresh stimulus to Roman curiosity and ambition, and had a significant moral effect, was in itself an affair of small account. It was, in fact, only meant for a reconnaissance, or, perhaps, to open the way to further schemes. Towards the end of summer, after Cæsar had returned from his first expedition into Germany, he sailed across to the cliffs of Dover, coasted a few miles towards the west, and established a camp on the British coast. His cavalry, meanwhile, had been weatherbound in their transports, and then, after crossing, were driven back by rough winds, so that they did not even come to land. After holding an uneasy and perilous position for about three weeks, he returned to Gaul, without accomplishing anything beyond a barren display of daring. This expedition was, in fact, only intended for a 'demonstration.' Yet, as the beginning of the national history of England, the event assumes great interest and importance, so that it has given rise to volumes of comment and discussion both in France and England.

READING REFERENCES ON THE FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN.

Abbott's *Julius Cæsar*, pp. 97-106.

Dodge's *Cæsar*, ch. 11.

Fowler's *Julius Cæsar*, ch. 12.

Froude's *Cæsar*, ch. 16.

Merivale's *Hist. of Rome*, Vol. I. pp. 375-83.

Mommsen's *Hist. of Rome*, Vol. IV. pp. 312, 313.

Napoleon's *Cæsar*, Vol. II. ch. 7.

Scarth's *Roman Britain*, ch. 2.

Tacitus's *Agricola*.

209 1 CHAP. 20. *exigua . . . reliqua*: abl. abs.; translate by a temporal clause.

209 2 *ad septentriones*, *towards the north*; cf. Bk. i. ch. 1, p. 144.

209 4 *omnibus . . . bellis*: abl. of time. — *hostibus*: dat. after *subministrata*.

209 5 *si . . . tamen*, *even if time should fail, still*, etc.

209 6 *fore*: the subj. is practically the clause *si . . . cognovisset*, *he thought it would be of great advantage if*, etc. In all languages the proper subject is often absorbed in some different form of expression; here it is properly 'that fact,' 'that result,' implied in the conditional clause. The idiom is the same in English except that we supply 'it.'

209 7 *adisset*, etc.: the pluperf.; represents the fut. perf. *adierit* of direct disc. Observe in this sentence that while Cæsar's *action* is given in the perf. (*contendit*), his *reasons* are in the imperf. (*intellegebat, arbitrabatur*); cf. note on 5 2. The conditional clauses *si deficeret, si adisset*, etc., are strictly fut. conditions carried into the past by the indir. discourse.

209 8 *quae omnia*, *all of which*; § 216 *e*; B. 201. 1. *b*; G. 370. R. 2; H. 397. 2. N. For the order, cf. 17 8, 183 17 and note.

209 9 *Gallis erant incognita*: probably they were not so uninformed as they seemed; cf. the relations of the Veneti, 174 19. — *neque enim* (negative of *etenim*; § 156. *d*; G. 498. N. 3): to be rendered with *quisquam, for no one*.

209 10 *illo*: adv.; see Vocabulary. — *neque . . . quicquam*, *and nothing*; observe that, as usual, the negative combines with the connective. — *eis*: dat. after *notum*; § 232. *a*; B. 189. 2; G. 354; H. 388. 1.

209 11 *Gallias*: i.e. Celtic and Belgic Gaul.

209 12 *vocatis . . . mercatoribus*, etc., *he called the traders, but could not*, etc.

209 13 *quanta . . . portus*: these indir. questions follow *reperire poterat*. Notice that the imperf. *poterat* is used rather than *potuit*, referring to his *repeated* questions to the different traders.

209 14 *quem usum*, *what degree of skill*. — *belli*: cf. note on 71 3.

209 17 CHAP. 21. *faceret*: the subjv. here indicates a purpose or calculation in Cæsar's mind. The perf. ind. would refer only to priority of time. See § 327; B. 292; G. 577; H. 520. I. 2; and 69 7 and note. The English idiom expresses this by some such phrase as 'before making the attempt.'

209 18 *idoneum*: this remark seems to have reference to his actual want of success, as appears later. — *Volusenum*: one of Cæsar's tribunes. — *navi longa*: see chapter on military affairs, IX, and Figs. 61, 63.

209 ²¹ **Morinos**: occupying the nearest point to Britain (Boulogne, Calais, Ostend, etc.); in clear weather the British coast is in sight from these shores.

209 ²³ **quam . . . classem**: see § 200. *b*; B. 251. 4; G. 616; H. 445. 9.
— **Veneticum bellum**: see Bk. iii. chs. 7–16.

211 ¹ **insulae**: Britain was supposed to be an island, but the fact was not established, so far as we know, until more than a century later, when the Romans sailed around it.

211 ² **qui polliceantur**: a purpose-clause, but in English best expressed by the pres. participle.

211 ³ **dare**: complementary infin. (§ 330. *f*. N.; B. 328. 1; G. 531. N. 4; H. 537. N.), instead of **se daturus (esse)**, a use not uncommon in Cæsar, and apparently somewhat colloquial. — **imperio**: § 227; B. 187. II; G. 346; H. 385.

211 ⁶ **Atrebatibus** (see Bk. ii. chs. 4, 16, 23): the same people, it is said, had occupied Berkshire in England, whence the supposed influence of Commius. — **ibi**: i.e. among the Atrebates; § 207. *a*; G. 611. R. 1; H. 304. III. 2.

211 ⁸ **fidelem**, etc.: perhaps Cæsar says this in view of the fact that Commius afterwards turned against him; see Bk. vii. ch. 76.

211 ⁹ **magni**: gen. of indefinite value; § 252 *a*; B. 203. 3; G. 380; II. 404. — **huic**: indir. obj. of **imperat**; the order he gave is the whole clause down to **nuntiet**.

211 ¹⁰ **fidem sequantur**, i.e. *accept the protection of*. — **se**: i.e. Cæsar, the main subj., as usual in indir. discourse.

211 ¹² **quantum (sc. tantum) . . . auderet**, *so far as opportunity could be given to one who did not venture*, etc.

211 ¹³ **auderet**: characteristic subjunctive.

211 ¹⁴ **perspexisset**: for tense, see § 287. *c*; B. 268. 3; G. 511. R. 1; H. 405. II; the sequence of tenses does not depend upon the form of statement, but on the time as conceived in the writer's mind.

211 ¹⁸ **CHAP. 22. superioris temporis**, *of the season before*.

211 ¹⁹ **homines barbari**, *being (as they were) barbarians*. — **consuetudinis**: see § 218 *a*; B. 204. 1; G. 374; II. 399. I. 2.

211 ²⁰ **fecissent**: the statement of the ambassadors, hence subjv. on the principle of implied indir. discourse.

211 ²¹ **pollicerentur**: the same construction as **excusarent** above.

211 ²² **arbitratus**: translate as pres., as often with the perf. partic. of dep. verbs.

211 ²³ **belli gerendi**: obj. gen.; connect with **facultatem**.

211 24 *has . . . anteponeudas, that occupation about these little matters should take precedence of (the invasion of) Britain.* For the number of *occupationes*, see § 75. *c*; B. 55. 4. *c*; G. 204. N. 5; H. 130. 2.

211 25 *iudicabat*: note this and the preceding descriptive imperfs.; cf. note on 5 2.

211 27 *navibus*: see chapter on military affairs, IX. — *coactis*, gathered from various quarters; [*contractis*] (which may well be translated), brought together into port. This must have been either at Boulogne or a few miles farther north, at Wissant. The port has never been satisfactorily determined, but it must have been between Boulogne and Calais, about twenty miles apart in a straight line, which is near enough to give a definite idea of the place (see map, Fig. 68). This whole coast has suffered enormous alterations since Cæsar's time, and everything is much changed.

211 28 *duas . . . legiones*: the seventh and tenth.

211 29 *quod . . . habebat*, what galleys he had besides.

212 2 *ex eo loco*, etc.: this would be at Ambleteuse or at Calais, according to the location of the main port. — *tenebantur quo minus*, were detained from, the usual construction after verbs of hindering; § 317. *b*. N. I, 319. *c*; B. 295. 3; G. 549; H. 499. 3. N. 2.

212 4 *equitibus*: of these there were 450.

212 10 CHAP. 23. *tertia . . . vigilia*, at midnight. The date was very near August 26, when high water would be about half past seven P.M.; the ships, therefore, could go out at about half-tide. — *solvit*, cast off the ships, a technical phrase used like our 'weighed anchor.' — *equites*: these were to embark at Ambleteuse, as stated above.

212 12 *paulo tardius*: they sailed after a delay of three days (ch. 28).

212 13 *hora . . . quarta*: this would be about ten A.M., an hour after high tide. The distance across is about thirty miles, and the landing was near Dover, where he lay at anchor till half past three.

212 16 *montibus anguste*, etc.: i.e. the cliffs came close to the shore.

212 18 *dum . . . convenirent*, until the other ships should come up; § 328; B. 293. III. 2; G. 572; H. 519. II. 2. When is *dum* followed by the ind.? cf. 41 2, 45 21, 63 21.

212 22 *ut . . . postularent*, as military science and especially seaman-ship require; relative clause following *monuit* (*ut*) . . . *administrarentur*, enjoined that everything should be done promptly. *Ut* is omitted after *monuit*, as is often the case after verbs of directing or urging. The relative clause has the subjv. because an integral part of the command.

212 23 *ut quae . . . haberent*, since they have, etc.; the imperf. is used by sequence of tenses; § 320. *e*; B. 283. 3; G. 633; H. 517. 3. I.

212 25 *his dimissis, when they were sent to their posts* (observe the distributive effect of *di-*). — *aestum . . . secundum*: the tide in this place would not turn east and north until about half past six.

212 27 *progressus*: towards the north.

212 28 *aperto . . . litore*: thought to be somewhere near Deal and Walmar Castle.

213 2 *CHAP. 14. essedariis*: the *essedum* was a two-wheeled war chariot; see Figs. 121, 122. — *quo . . . genere*: i.e. including both cavalry and chariots, as described below, **219 7 ff.**

213 3 *consuerunt*: to be translated by what tense? cf. **156 24** and note. — *egredi*: infin. for the more usual *ne* or *quominus* with the subjv.; cf. **212 2** and note.

213 5 *alto*: here a noun; see Vocabulary.

213 6 *militibus* (dat. after *desiliendum*), *the men had to leap down*.

213 7 *oppressis* (taken with *militibus*), *weighted as they were*. Notice in this passage the free use of participles and phrases to modify the main idea, first the abl. of place, then the abl. abs., then a partic. agreeing directly with *militibus*.

213 9 *cum . . . conicerent, while they* (the Britons), etc.; a good example of *cum* and the subjv. describing the situation; cf. **7 5, 160 23**.

213 11 *insuefactos, trained to it*, i.e. to charge to the water's edge.

213 13 *generis*: gen.; cf. **211 19**.

213 14 *pedestribus, on land*, where the main strength lay in infantry.

213 15 *CHAP. 25. navīs*: subj. of *removeri*; see § 330. B. 2; B. 331. II. a; G. 423. N. 6; H. 535. II.

213 16 *inusitator, quite strange*.

214 2 *latus apertum*: i.e. the right, unprotected by their shields. — *inde*: connect with *propelli ac submoveri*.

214 3 *tormentis*: see chapter on military affairs, I. 5, and Figs. 75, 94, 92. — *ac*: notice that this word always adds something with emphasis.

214 4 *quae res, a manoeuvre which*; cf. **183 17**, and see note on **17 8**.

214 8 *qui . . . ferebat, the one who carried*: the antecedent of *qui* is the understood subj. of *inquit*. — *x legionis*: again the splendid tenth distinguishes itself; cf. **166 11**.

214 9 *obtestatus, appealing to*. Such prayers almost always preceded any formal address among the Romans, like 'God save the Commonwealth of Massachusetts.' The words would be *Quod vobis feliciter eveniat, desilite*, etc. — *legioni, imperatori*: dat. of reference.

214 10 *nisi voltis*: a present simple condition; see § 306 and *a*; B. 302. I. 4; G. 595; H. 508 and 4.

214 11 ego certe . . . praestitero, *I at any rate shall have done*, etc.; see § 281. R.; B. 264. a; G. 244; H. 473.

214 14 inter se, *one another*; § 196. f; B. 245. 1; G. 221; H. 448. N. — universi, *in a body*.

214 15 ex proximis navibus, *from the nearest ships*. Omit [primis].

214 16 adpropinquaverunt: the subj. is the soldiers, implied.

214 17 CHAP. 26. ab utrisque, *on both sides*; cf. utraque, 193 30.

214 19 poterant . . . submittebat: notice the numerous imperfects in this description, implying repeated or continuous action. — alius alia ex navi, *men from different ships*; § 203. c; B. 253. 2; G. 319; H. 459. 1. — quibuscumque signis: dat. after occurrerat; the antecedent noun and pronoun (eis signis), if expressed, would be dat. after adgregabat.

214 21 ubi . . . conspexerant, . . . adoriebantur, etc.: a general condition, *whenever they saw*, etc.; cf. 180 22, 193 24, and notes.

214 22 singularis, *scattered soldiers*.

214 23 adoriebantur, *would attack*; to express the repeated action. So, too, circumsistebant and coniciebant.

214 24 ab latere aperto: see 214 2. — in universos, *upon the whole body*.

This word means not merely *all*, but *all at once*, or *all together*, and the like; cf. universi, 214 14.

214 26 speculatoria navigia: swift, light boats for reconnaissance. — quos . . . conspexerat, . . . submittebat: another general condition precisely like the one noted above (214 22), quos equalling *whomsoever* or *if any*.

214 28 simul (atque), *as soon as*. — suis omnibus consecutis, *and all their comrades had joined them*.

215 1 longius, *very far*. — quod equites, etc.: they were wind-bound at the upper harbor, 212 1-4.

215 3 fortunam: this is not a mere casual remark, but an expression of his belief in 'his star,' always an important factor in the greatness of a commander.

215 6 CHAP. 27. quae imperasset, *what he should require* (in direct disc., quae imperaveris).

215 7 quem . . . praemissum (esse): 211 5-11.

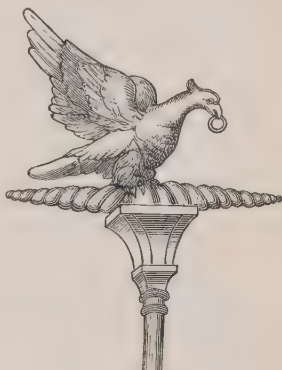


FIG. 120. — AQUILA.

215 9 *hunc*, etc.: it is not unlikely that his imprisonment was a mere pretence. — *oratoris modo*, in the character of envoy (or spokesman).

215 13 *ut ignosceretur*, that their act might be pardoned: *ignosco* may take a direct obj. of the thing, with an indir. obj. of the person (§ 225. c); hence the word here may be either personal or impersonal.

215 14 *cum ultro*, etc.: cf. 211 1-3.

215 15 *bellum . . . intulissent*: these barbarous people might well be pardoned for mistaking Cæsar's expedition for an invasion. — *ignoscere*: for the omission of the subject, cf. note on 158 7.

215 17 *arcessitam*, after they had been fetched.

215 18 *remigrare*, to move back, i.e. from the strongholds to their farms.

215 21 CHAP. 28. *post diem quartum quam*, three days after (according to English reckoning); § 259. d; B. 357. 1; G. 403. N. 4. a; H. 430; cf. 63 7.

215 22 *naves*, etc.: see 212 1.

215 25 *Britanniae*: § 228; B. 187. III; G. 347; H. 386. — *tempestas*: from the northeast.

215 26 *aliae . . . aliae*, some . . . others.

216 2 *propius occasum*: cf. 188 26.

216 3 *cum . . . compleverentur*, since they began to fill; the imperf. shows that the action was not completed.

216 4 *adversa nocte*, in spite of the darkness.

216 6 CHAP. 29. *eadem nocte*: this was probably the night of August 30; the moon was then full at 3 A.M.

216 7 *aestus maximos*, very high tides. The ocean tides, rising here between twenty and thirty feet, were a strange phenomenon to those who had known only the tideless waters of the Mediterranean. One is at a loss to understand why the Romans had not learned more about the tides in the war with the Veneti.

216 9 *navis*: obj. of *compleverat*. — [*quibus*, etc.]: an unnecessary explanation, and may be omitted.

216 11 *adflictabat* (intensive), dashed about.

216 12 *facultas*, etc.: i.e. chance to manage their own ships or help their companions.

216 14 *funibus . . . amissis*, etc., from the loss of, etc.

216 15 *id quod*: see § 200. e; B. 250; G. 614. R. 2; H. 445. 7.

217 1 *quibus*: = *ut eis*; result.

217 2 *quod . . . constabat*, because it was understood; the subj. is *oportere*, of which the subj. is *hiemari*, that it was best to winter in Gaul.

217 4 *provisum*: see note on 153 23.

217 5 CHAP. 30. *principes*: subj. of *duxerunt* in l. 11.

217 9 *hoc*: abl. of cause, originally degree of difference; see note on 72 25.

217 10 *optimum*: in pred. agreement with *frumento* . . . *producere*.

217 11 *factu*: cf. 61 17. — *duxerunt*: see Vocabulary. — *frumento* . . . *commeatuque*, *corn and other supplies*.



FIG. 121. — GALLIC COIN.

217 12 *rem*, *the campaign*. — *his* . . . *interclusis*, *if these should be overcome*, etc.; abl. abs. expressing condition.

217 15 *rursus*: not 'a second time,' which would be *iterum*, but *back again* from negotiations to hostilities.

217 16 *deducere*: i.e. from their farms; cf. 215 18–20.

217 17 CHAP. 31. At *Caesar*: emphatic transition to *Cæsar* from what the soldiers feared and the Britons planned; cf. 166 21.

217 18 *ex eventu navium*, *from what had befallen the ships*. — *ex eo quod*, *from the fact that*.

217 19 *suspiciabatur*, *began to suspect*.

217 21 *quae* . . . *naves*, *earum*, etc., *the timber and the bronze of those ships which*, etc.; § 200. *b*; B. 251. 4; G. 616; H. 445. 9.

217 22 *aere*: the Romans used the word *aes* both for copper and bronze. These metals were more common than iron in the Roman ships, as they do not rust. They were employed to sheathe the rostrum and to make the spikes that held the timbers together.

217 23 *quae* . . . *usui*: the antecedent of *quae* is *ea*, the understood subj. of *comportari*; see note on *qui* . . . *appellantur*, 143 2.

217 26 *reliquis* . . . *effecit*, *he managed so that they could sail* (*navigari*, *impers.*) *tolerably with the rest*.

218 1 CHAP. 32. *geruntur*: § 276. *e*; B. 293. I; G. 229. R; H. 467. III. 4. Notice that this pres. is regular with *dum* when there is no contrast of time. Cf. the use of *dum*, 212 18. — *frumentatum*: supine; cf. 79 1.

218 3 *pars hominum*, *some of the people*.

218 4 *remaneret*: indicating peaceable intentions on the part of the enemy. — *ventitaret*, *returned from time to time*; frequentative or iterative; § 167. *b*; B. 155. 2. *a*; G. 191. 1; H. 336.

218 5 *statione*: such outposts or pickets were always on duty to guard the camp, usually a cohort at each gate.



FIG. 122. — GALLIC COIN.

218 6 *quam . . . ferret, than usual.*

218 7 *id quod erat, what was the fact.*

218 8 *aliquid . . . consili (partit. gen.), that some new design was on foot; infinitive clause in apposition with id.*

218 11 *armari, to arm; in verbs thus used reflexively, English prefers the active and Latin the passive form. — paulo longius, some little distance.*

218 12 *premi . . . sustinere, were getting hard pushed, and hardly held their ground.*

218 13 *conferta legione (abl. abs.), the legion was closely crowded together, while weapons were hurled, etc. Observe the tendency of Latin to convey a description, as here, by a participial phrase.*

219 2 *una, only one. — suspicati, supposing; cf. 211 22 and note.*

219 4 *dispersos, occupatos: agreeing with nostros understood from the preceding line.*

219 5 *incertis ordinibus (abl. abs.), because the ranks were unsteady.*

219 7 CHAP. 33. *ex essedis: these chariots held six men (essedarii) each besides the driver (auriga), and were drawn by two horses.*

219 8 *terrore equorum: subjective gen., the terror that the horses arouse.*

219 10 *cum se . . . insinuaverunt, when they have worked their way between; the protasis of a general condition, ex essedis . . . proeliantur being the apodosis; cf. 193 24. The perf. ind. with cum is here used as a protasis because a repeated action is spoken of. — equitum: the cavalry of the Britons. When the essedarii had dismounted, the British line was composed of alternate bodies of horse and foot.*

219 12 *illi: i.e. the fighting men spoken of above.*

219 13 *expeditum . . . receptum, a ready retreat.*

219 15 *praestant, exhibit. Cæsar was much struck with the efficiency of the German and British horse (see p. 190, ch. 12), and later made it the basis of important changes in the Roman army. The ordinary cavalry was never able to cope with infantry.*

219 16 *uti . . . consuerint: clause of result following efficiunt. — declivi ac praecipiti loco, a steep downward slope.*

219 17 *incitatos equos sustinere, to check their horses in full gallop (complementary infin. after consuerint). — brevi, within a short space.*

219 18 *iugo: made of straight or curved wood, resting on the necks of the horses and holding up the pole of the chariot.*

219 20 CHAP. 24. *quibus rebus, under these circumstances; abl. of means. — nostris: dat. following tulit auxilium. — novitate: depends on perturbatis.*

219 24 *alienum tempus*, unfavorable time; so *suo* would be favorable (cf. "one's own time").

220 1 *quae . . . continerent*: note the subjunctive.

220 4 *quanta . . . facultas daretur*: indir. question following *demonstraverunt*.

220 5 *sui liberandi*: cf. 197 1 and note.

220 10 CHAP. 35. *ut . . . effugerent*: a result-clause in apposition with *idem*, the subj. of *fore*, namely, *that if*, etc.

220 11 *effugerent*, would escape; the future idea is given by *fore*. — *equites xxx*: these few cavalry would be of no service in an engagement, but only in pursuit. To chase and cut down the beaten army was considered an essential part of the battle.

220 12 *ante*: i.e. 211 5-11, 215 7-11.

220 15 *tanto spatio*, over as much ground; § 257. *b*; B. 223; G. 389; H. 379. 2.

220 22 CHAP. 36. *die aequinocti*, etc. (September 24, always held to be a stormy season), since the time of the equinox was near and his ships were unseaworthy. Napoleon III estimates that the return to Gaul occurred September 11 or 12. This would make the stay about three weeks.

220 26 *eosdem portus*, the same ports with the others.

220 27 *paulo infra*: the west current sets in on the French coast, while the east current is still running in mid-channel.



FIG. 123. — CALIGA.

BOOK FIFTH, 1-23. — B.C. 54.

SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN. — The landing of the previous year had been only a reconnaissance. Cæsar now determines upon a regular advance and occupation. The earlier part of the season was chiefly taken up with naval preparations. The ships were apparently built on the inland streams, and the rigging and outfit brought from Spain, which was considerably in advance of Gaul in civilization. It abounded in metals, and, in particular, furnished the *esparto*, or Spanish grass, whose long, tough fibre made the best of cordage. Cæsar sails (by the reckoning of Napoleon III) on the 20th of July from *Portus Itius*, at or near Boulogne, drifting first with wind and tide some distance to the northeast, then making his way to his former landing.

READING REFERENCES ON THE SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN.

- Abbott's Julius Cæsar, pp. 97-106.
 Dodge's Cæsar, ch. 12.
 Fowler's Julius Cæsar, pp. 199-206.
 Froude's Cæsar, last part of ch. 16.
 Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. I. pp. 384-89.
 Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, Vol. IV. pp. 313-15.
 Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. ch. 8.
 Scarth's Roman Britain, chs. 2 and 3.
 Tacitus's Agricola.
 Trollope's Cæsar, ch. 6.

221 1 CHAP. I. **L. Domitio**, etc.: cf. **183 1** and note. The consuls entered on their office January 1, according to the official calendar; the real date appears to have been December 12. Cæsar's visit to Italy was therefore probably later.

221 2 *ut quotannis*, etc.: cf. **172 22**.

221 4 *navis*: see chapter on military affairs, IX. — *navis . . . curent*, have as many vessels as possible built during the winter and the old ones repaired; cf. **61 11**, **178 7** and note.

221 5 *modum formamque*, style of build.

221 6 *subductionis*: the vessels of the ancients were usually 'beached' and not left at anchor. — *humiliores*: agrees with *eas*, the understood object of *facit*. See note on **160 26**.

221 7 *nostro*: i.e. the Mediterranean.

221 8 *id*: sc. *facit*; § 206. *c*; B. 166. 3; H. 368. 3. N. 1.

221 9 *minus magnos*: seems to refer to the smooth ocean swell, compared with the angry 'chopping seas' of the Mediterranean.

221 10 *iumentorum*: not pack-animals so much as horses for his cavalry, the lack of which he felt so seriously the year before; see **214 27 ff**.

221 11 *actuarias*: fitted with oars as well as sails. The Gallic ships, it will be remembered, did not have oars. See Bk. iii. ch. 14.

221 12 *humilitas*: as compared with the high-banked galleys.

221 13 *armandas*, fitting out; see introductory note.

221 14 *conventibus*: proconsular or provincial courts. These courts were regularly held in the winter.

221 15 *Illyricum*: cf. **172 22**. — *Pirustis*: a tribe long allied with Rome, inhabiting the valley of the Drina.

221 17 *imperat*: in the sense of *to levy, to make requisition for*; *impero* takes the acc. of the thing levied and the dat. of the person upon whom the levy is made.

222 5 *arbitros*, arbitrators.

222 6 *litem*, amount of damages. — *poenam*: i.e. the amount of compensation to be paid.

222 8 *Gallam revertitur*: Cæsar's activity during these winter months had been remarkable. He left his troops in Belgium about January 1, travelled all through Transalpine and Cisalpine Gaul, crossed over to Illyricum, and returned to his army again early in the spring. The distance was at least 2000 miles.

222 9 *CHAP. 2. circumitis*, having inspected; see last note on **144** 13; § 237. *d*; B. 175. 2. *a*); G. 331; H. 372.

222 10 *studio*, etc.: i.e. the energy of the soldiers in building the vessels under difficulties.

222 12 *neque . . . quin*, and are not far from the condition that; *eo* is antecedent to the vague relative idea in *quin*, etc.

222 15 *Itium*: Boulogne or Wissant, either of which agrees with the account; cf. Bk. iv. ch. 23 and note on **211** 27.

222 17 *xxx*: a little less than 28 English miles. — [*transmissum*]: omit in translation.

222 18 *satis . . . militum*, enough soldiers; partit. genitive.

222 19 *Treverorum*: a tribe reckoned as Gauls or Celts, but believed to be, in part at least, of German origin. Their name appears in the modern Trèves. This, their principal town (*Augusta Treverorum*), was long the seat of Roman power in Northern Gaul.

222 20 *concilia*, assemblies, held by a province or confederacy for consultation or lawmaking. Cæsar seems to have organized such assemblies under his own authority in Belgic Gaul after its conquest. — *veniebant*, etc.: notice the force of the imperf. tense; see § 277. *g*; G. 233; and cf. **68** 5 and note.

222 22 *dicebantur*: the personal form is regularly used with the tenses of incomplete action.

222 23 *CHAP. 3. Galliae*: partit. gen.; § 216. *a*. 2; B. 201. 1; G. 372; H. 397. 3.

222 24 *ut supra demonstravimus*: Bk. iii. ch. 11.

222 27 *alter*, the latter, Cingetorix, the son-in-law of Indutiomarus.

223 1 *suos*: i.e. clansmen, retainers, etc. Cingetorix offers to bring his nation under Roman authority on condition of ruling them himself as a subject or friend of Rome.

223 3 *at*: marking the transition to the other man.

223 4 *cogere*: with *instituit*, l. 8.

223 5 *Arduennam*: this hilly and forest region makes the natural frontier between Gaul and the Netherlands, and is the seat of the famous Belgian iron mines.

223 ¹¹ *petere*: used absolutely (i.e. without an object), *ask* his decision or assistance. — *civitati*, etc.: they were prevented by Indutiomarus from taking any measures for the general good, and so asked favors of Cæsar for themselves individually.

223 ¹² *possent*: the reason given by these Gauls, hence the subjunctive.

223 ¹⁶ *laberetur*: lit. 'fall off' (from obedience).

223 ¹⁷ *se . . . eius fidei permissurum*, to put . . . under his protection.

223 ²² CHAP. 4. *omnibus . . . comparatis*, now that, etc.

223 ²⁸ *quod cum*, etc.: Cæsar seems to think this double dealing needs some excuse.

223 ²⁹ *cum . . . intellegebat*, considered on the one hand. — *cum . . . tum*: see Vocabulary; *eius* refers to Cingetorix, *se* to Cæsar. — *merito eius*, according to his deserts; § 253; B. 226; G. 397; H. 424. — *magni interesse*: § 252. a; B. 211. 3. a); G. 380; H. 396. V.

224 ² [*suam . . . minui*]: in apposition with *id factum*, and may be translated, though not necessary to the sense.

224 ³ *qui . . . fuisset*: = *while*, etc.; see § 320. e; B. 283. 3; G. 634; H. 515. III.

224 ⁴ *hoc dolore*, this grievance; properly, indignation at this.

224 ⁶ CHAP. 5. in *Meldis*: these people were on the Marne, near Meaux. The ships were built here, probably for convenience of timber; they were low and of light draft (ch. 1), and proved too frail for the Channel waters (ch. 10; cf. Bk. iii. ch. 9, where sturdier craft are built upon the Loire).

224 ⁸ *eodem* (adv.): = *in eundem locum*.

224 ¹³ *loco*, in the condition; § 254. a; G. 385. N. 1; H. 425. 2.

224 ¹⁴ *cum . . . abesset*, while he should be away; a fut. idea (*cum abero*) thrown into the past by *verebatur*.

224 ¹⁵ CHAP. 6. *Dumnorix*: as it appears, he had been kept four years under strict surveillance.

224 ¹⁹ *accedebat huc quod*, to this was added the fact that; cf. 180 2 for a different construction after *accedebat*.

224 ²⁰ *deferri*: the present expresses the action as in process of completion, i.e. that Cæsar was making arrangements, or intended, or the like.

224 ²¹ *neque*, and yet not, a very common force of the word.

224 ²⁵ *timeret, diceret*: cf. *possent*, 223 12.

224 ²⁶ *religionibus*, scruples, perhaps in regard to leaving the country or crossing the sea; among superstitious people such ideas are common.

225 ² *territare*: hist. infin.; see 27 10 and note.

225 3 *fieri ut*, etc., *it was coming to pass that*, etc.; or may be translated *that Gaul was*, etc., compressing the two clauses into one. — *esse*: depending on a verb of saying implied in *metu territare*.

225 6 *interponere*: same construction as *territare*. — *ex usu*, *to the advantage*.

225 7 *intellexissent*: here represents the fut. perf. of direct discourse.

225 8 *deferébantur*: note the force of the tense.

225 9 CHAP. 7. *quod . . . statuebat*: i.e. the severity shown to Dumnorix was proportioned to the favor and consequence granted by Cæsar to his state.

225 11 *longius*, *too far*.

225 12 *prospiciendum (esse)*, *that precautions must be taken*; depends on *statuebat*.

225 13 *quid . . . nocere*, *to do some harm to*; *quid* is cognate or adv. acc.; § 240. *a. N.*; *B. 176. 2. a*); *G. 333*; *H. 371. II, 378*.

225 14 *commoratus*: i.e. during the delay (cf. **7 18**). — *Corus* (or *Caurus*): the northwest wind.

225 15 *omnis temporis*, *every season* of the year; the windmills on this coast are said to have had their sails set permanently to the northwest.

225 18 *milites*: i.e. the legionary infantry.

225 19 *at*: note its force and cf. **223 3**. — *omnium impeditis animis*, *while the attention of all was occupied*.

225 24 *si vim . . . iubet*: informal indir. disc. The direct would be 'Si vim facit neque paret, interficite (eum).'

225 25 *pro sano*, *rationally*.

225 26 *neglexisset*: the tense depends on *arbitratus*, which is, however, essentially present in meaning (see note on *commoratus*, l. 14).

225 28 *liberum*, etc: Cæsar takes no pains to conceal the violence of his acts. He had no authority over Dumnorix except that of the stronger.

226 7 CHAP. 8. *pro tempore et pro re*, *to suit the time and circumstance*.

226 8 *pari . . . quem*, *the same . . . as*, etc. (i.e. 2000), as in l. 5.

226 10 *Africo*: the southwest wind.

226 12 *sub sinistra*: i.e. he had drifted to the northeast (see map, Fig. 73).

The voyage has been carefully calculated as follows: Cæsar weighed anchor at sunset (about 8 P.M.). A gentle breeze was then blowing from the southwest; but at the same time a tidal current was setting *towards* the southwest. Under the impulse of these two forces, the fleet kept a north-westerly course until about midnight. The wind then died down, and the

current also began to set in the opposite direction (northeast). With this current the Romans drifted, and at dawn the British coast appeared on their left. They had passed by (*relictam*) the North Foreland, and were drifting farther away from the land. But at about this time (5 A.M.) the tide changed, and the current again began to flow towards the southwest. With its help, and that of the oars, the fleet now began to move towards the land, aiming to reach the same point that had been found in the previous expedition to be the most convenient for debarking. Here they arrived at about noon (von Göler).

226 15 *superiore aestate* : cf. Bk. iv. ch. 23.

226 16 *virtus*, *pluck, spirit*. — *gravibusque*, *and heavy-laden besides*. — *navigiis* : abl. of means.

226 18 *accessum est* (impers.) : the landing was probably near Walmer Castle.

226 20 *cum* : concessive.

226 22 *quae . . . amplius DCCC*, *more than 800 of which* : subj. of *visae erant*. — *annotinis*, *those built the year before*. — *sui commodi* : pred. gen. (§ 214. c ; B. 198. 3 ; G. 366. R. 1 ; II. 403), here expressing purpose ; cf. note on *deiciendi*, 194 11. These were vessels that the rich members of Cæsar's staff had had built for their own use.

226 27 CHAP. 9. *cohortibus x* : i.e. two from a legion.

227 1 *navibus* : dative.

227 3 *noctu* : not *nocte* ; see Vocabulary.

227 5 *equitatu atque essedis* : abl. of accompaniment without *cum* ; § 248. a. N. ; B. 222. 1 ; G. 392. R. 1 ; II. 419. III. 1. 1) — *flumen* : the Stour, which flows northeasterly through Canterbury. — *superiore* : the north bank is higher ground than the opposite.

227 11 *ipsi*, . . . *propugnabant*, *they themselves rushed out of the woods in small parties to fight*.

227 12 *testudine facta et aggere . . . adiecto* : from the rapidity with which this *agger* was completed, it is evident that it was not the elaborate structure required in attacking more formidable defences, but rather a mass of hastily collected material. We may also infer that the British stronghold was only rudely fortified.

228 5 CHAP. 10. *tripartito* : i.e. following different roads.

228 7 *extremi* : i.e. the rear of the retreating enemy.

228 8 *Atrio* : who had been placed in command of the camp, 227 3.

228 12 *concursu* : referring to the violent driving together of the ships after they had broken from their moorings.

228 15 CHAP. 11. *revocari* : i.e. those who were in advance and out of sight. — *resistere*, *to halt* ; i.e. those who were near.

228 17 *coram perspicit*: i.e. after a careful and thorough personal examination. Cæsar did not leave important duties of this sort to subordinates.—*sic ut*, etc.: i.e. he sees that the account of the disaster is true *to the extent that*, etc.; *ut* and similar words often have a limiting meaning; cf. *tantum*, meaning *only so much*, and *ut tamen*, **89 6**, and note.

228 19 *fabros deligit*: a certain number of carpenters (*fabri lignarii*) was attached to the engineer corps of the army, but Cæsar seems to have had no regular engineer corps except that a *praefectus fabrum* was on his staff. See chapter on military affairs, I. 4.

228 20 *legionibus*: abl. of means.

228 26 *easdem quas*, *the same as*; see **226 27**.

228 27 *eodem* (cf. note on **224 8**): i.e. to the British defences on the Stour.

229 4 *a mari*: probably from Cæsar's place of landing. The distance is reckoned, not in a straight line, but by the roads, as the army marched.

229 5 *huic*, etc.: "The brave and cautious prince Cassivellaunus (*Caswallon*), who ruled in what is now Middlesex and the surrounding district, formerly the terror of the Celts to the south of the Thames, but now the protector and champion of the whole nation" (Mommsen).—*huic . . . cum reliquis civitatibus . . . intercesserant*, *had occurred between him and the other states*; note the idiomatic construction.

229 8 *CHAP. 12. natos in insula*: they were not, however, indigenous, but a Celtic population following an earlier Iberian race.

229 9 *proditum (esse)*: the subj. is *quos natos (esse) in insula*.—*pars*: sc. *incolitur*.

229 11 *eis nominibus*: for example, *Atrebates* and *Belgæ*.

230 3 *Gallicis*: brief references to the Gallic customs of building are made in Bk. v. ch. 43, and Bk. vi. ch. 30; see also the introductory chapter on Gaul and the Gauls.

230 4 [*aut nummo aereo*]: omit in translation.

230 6 *plumbum album*: Cæsar is mistaken in placing tin mines inland and iron on the coast; it was just the other way. The tin mines of Cornwall were known to the Phœnicians from the earliest times. He does not say whether iron was used in the arts, which, if true, would imply a pretty advanced civilization.

230 7 *exigua*: the great mineral wealth of England was then unknown.

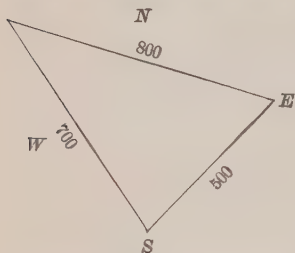
230 9 *fagum atque abietem*: another error; the beech and fir are both native to Britain.

230 10 *gallinam*, etc.: it is of interest to note that these domestic fowls were known to the savage Britons.

230 12 *frigoribus*, *seasons of cold*.

230 17 CHAP. 13. *ad Hispaniam*, etc.: i.e. he places Spain west of Britain on the same side as Ireland. For this crude geography, cf. Tacitus (*Agricola*, 34), who says that Ireland is between Britain and Spain. Cæsar

conceives Britain as lying somewhat in the accompanying form.



230 18 *atque*, as (§ 156. *a*; B. 341. 1. *c*); G. 643; H. 554. I. 2. N.); i.e. the distance from Ireland to Britain is the same as that from Britain to Gaul.

230 21 *Mona*: the Isle of Man, or confounded with it; but Tacitus evidently gives this name to Anglesea.

230 25 *ex aqua mensuris*: the *clepsydra*, or water clock, measured time by the dropping of fixed measures of water through a small pipe or aperture, something like a sandglass. — *breviores*: naturally, as this was in the summer.

231 1 *hoc*: sc. *latus*.

231 6 CHAP. 14. *interiores*: the rude barbarians here described are probably represented by the later Picts, whose name *Picti* (cf. *picti*, *painted*) has been thought to denote their woad-staining. The woad plant, *Isatis tinctoria*, akin to the common shepherd's purse, is still used somewhat for dyeing.

231 11 *parte*: § 251; B. 224; G. 400; H. 419. II.

231 13 *sed qui sunt*, etc., *but the children of these wives are regarded as belonging to the man to whom each maiden was first espoused*.

231 14 *quo* (adv.): here stands for *ad quos*; § 207. *a*; G. 611. R. 1; H. 304. II. 3. N.

231 16 CHAP. 15. *essedarii*: see Bk. iv. ch. 33.

231 18 *fuerint*: for *tense*, see 181 14 and note.

231 25 *atque his*, *and these, too*. — *primis*: the first cohorts had the best soldiers. See chapter on military affairs, I. 7 (last part).

231 27 *per medios*: i.e. through the interval between the two cohorts.

232 11 CHAP. 16. [*equestris*, etc.]: this parenthesis may be translated. — *cedentibus et insequentibus* (abl. abs.): with *eis* understood, referring to the Britons. Whether advancing or retreating, the islanders were equally formidable.

232 14 *proeliarentur*: this clause is conceived as a result, and hence is expressed by *ut* with the subjv., instead of the usual construction with *quod* and ind.; cf. 224 19 and note. — *stationes*, *supports*. It will be observed that the Britons showed considerable military skill, and that their mode of battle somewhat resembled that of the Romans themselves. They

used an open and flexible array, rather than the dense masses (*phalanges*) of the Gauls and Germans.

232 24 *quoad*: observe that the ind. follows, and cf. **190** 2 and note.

232 25 *subsidio*: abl. with *confisi* (§ 254. *b*).

232 27 *sui conligendi*: cf. **197** 1, **220** 5.

233 1 *ex*, *directly after*.

233 5 CHAP. 18. *uno . . . loco*: somewhere between Brentford and the mouth of the Wey. The details of Cæsar's march are here uncertain.

233 13 *capite solo*: a most hazardous depth. By the rule for modern infantry, a ford should not be more than three feet deep. But, says Merivale, "the swimming and fording of rivers were among the regular exercises of the Roman legionary. Though immersed up to his chin in water, he was expert in plying his hatchet against the stakes which opposed his progress, while he held his buckler over his head not less steadily than on dry land. Behind him a constant storm of stones and darts was impelled against the enemy from the engines which always accompanied the Roman armies."

234 1 CHAP. 19. *supra*: i.e. **233** 1-3.

234 3 *servabat, excedebat*, etc.: note the imperfects, expressing customary and repeated action, *he used to*; cf. **225** 8.

234 4 *locis, regionibus*: loc. abl. — *locisque impeditis ac silvestribus*: from this description we must infer that the British chariots were very narrow, to pass through the forest roads, and had high wheels, to go easily over rough ground.

234 7 *cum . . . eiecerat*: a general condition; see note on *cum*, **180** 22. Other instances of general conditions occur **193** 24, **214** 21, **214** 26.

234 9 *emittebat, confligebat, prohibebat*: the subj. is *Cassivellaunus*.

234 10 *hoc . . . prohibebat*, *by fear of this kept them* (sc. *eos*) *from roving too widely*.

234 11 *relinquebatur ut*, *the consequence was that*.

234 12 *discedi*: impersonal.

234 13 *tantum . . . quantum*: correlatives; see Vocabulary.

234 14 *noceretur*: impers., governs the dat. *hostibus*; cf. notes on **18** 17, **154** 3.

234 16 CHAP. 20. *Trinobantes*: in Essex. Their chief place was *Camulodunum*, later *Colonia Castrum*, now Colchester. This defection was soon followed by the break-up of the Briton confederacy.

234 18 [*Galliam*]: omit in translation.

234 23 *mittat*: sc. *aliquem*.

234 24 *his . . . imperat obsides*: see note on **221** 17.

235 2 CHAP. 21. *Cenimagni*, etc.: these were petty populations of the vicinity.

235 4 oppidum Cassivellauni: thought to be the modern St. Albans.

235 6 oppidum, etc.: the Britons, like the Germans, did not live in towns, but used these strongholds simply for defence against attack.

235 7 cum, *whenever*, another general condition; cf. **234 7** and note. The preceding case refers to repeated action in past time, this to the present of a general truth. Notice the difference between these cases and the regular descriptive **cum** in narration.

235 9 consuerunt: what tense in translation?

235 14 multi: i.e. the people, not the cattle.

235 17 CHAP. 22. supra: see **231 5**.

235 18 regionibus: implying that Kent (**Cantium**) was divided into four recognized military commands.

235 20 castra navalia: i.e. the fortified camp on the beach, surrounding the beached ships. See **228 21-5**.

235 28 neque multum aestatis: Cæsar had now been in Britain about two months (cf. ch. 23). The dates assigned by Napoleon III for his sailing and return are July 20 and September 21.

235 29 extrahi, *protracted*, i.e. wasted. Besides, Cæsar had just learned of the death of his daughter Julia, Pompey's wife, which threatened the dissolution of the Triumvirate, and gave him strong reason for wishing to be nearer home.

236 1 vectigalis (partit. gen.): this was mere form, as no means were left to enforce the tribute.

236 7 commeatibus: here has its original meaning; see Vocabulary.

236 8 accidit uti, etc.: cf. **234 11** for a similar construction.

236 10 portaret, remitterentur: subjv. of characteristic.

237 1 [et]: omit. **prioris commeatus**, etc., *after the soldiers of the first trip had been landed*.

237 2 quas: refers back to **ex eis**. — **faciendas curaverat**, *had had made*; cf. **61 11**, **178 7**. Labienus had been ordered to build these directly after the big storm; see **228 20**.

237 3 locum: i.e. Britain. — **caperent, reicerentur**: in the same construction as **desideraretur**.

237 6 aequinoctium: cf. **220 22** and note.

The remainder of this Book records a desperate rebellion of the Gauls. Its events are among the most critical of the entire Gallic War, and show to what extreme peril Cæsar had exposed his conquests by his expedition across the Channel. They serve, besides, to bring out in very marked relief the personal qualities of his several lieutenants. As a series of episodes, this Book is, in fact, the most interesting of the eight. The Romans did not visit Britain again till A.D. 43, in the reign of Claudius.

BOOK SEVENTH, I-15. — B.C. 52.

GENERAL UPRISING OF GAUL. — The last three campaigns had been conducted wholly in the north, with a view either to crush the bolder and more restless northern populations, or to overawe the more barbarous Britons and Germans beyond the frontier. It is not quite clear why the discontented spirits of the south did not seize the occasion to join forces with the formidable Belgian revolt. At all events, they seemed quiet and submissive after their defeats in the earlier campaigns, and might have continued so but for the execution of Acco, the chief of the Cenones and very influential throughout Gaul, which had aroused the spirit of all the Gallic nobility, and the news from Rome, where the hostile aristocracy had long been waiting for some opportunity to check Cæsar in his career of conquest and call him home.

This opportunity seemed to offer in the disorders which followed the death of Clodius. Clodius was a bully and professional politician belonging to the popular party, a bitter enemy of Cicero, whom he had succeeded, a few years before, in driving into exile. He was killed in a street brawl on the 20th of January of this year by Milo, a ruffian of the senatorial or aristocratic party. For the time, all regular and orderly government was at an end, till at length Pompey was invested with dictatorial powers, and quiet was restored. The news of these events coming to Gaul gave the native leaders reasonable ground to hope that a new uprising might be successful. Their plan, it will appear, was, by a sudden movement, to cut off Cæsar's communications with his military posts in the north, which would thus be speedily starved into surrender. This plan Cæsar foiled by striking, with his usual rapidity, through their line, and through the neutral or hostile populations of Central Gaul, and so advancing upon his assailants with the support of his legions from the north. His campaign of this year was the most fiercely contested, as well as the most important and decisive, of the entire war.

N.B. — In this Book the editors have purposely abstained from grammatical comment except such as seemed necessary for the interpretation of the text, in order that the student might have one book of Cæsar's Commentaries, and that one of the finest pieces of simple narrative in literature, to enjoy without trying to see how the words were parsed. Grammar is absolutely necessary for Latin, but there is much in Latin besides grammar. Intelligent reading presupposes that, but does not always have it uppermost.

READING REFERENCES ON CÆSAR'S SEVENTH CAMPAIGN.

- Dodge's Cæsar, chs. 15-20.
- Fowler's Julius Cæsar, ch. 13.
- Froude's Cæsar, ch. 19.
- Guizot's Hist. of France, Vol. I, pp. 56-65.
- Merivale's Hist. of Rome, Vol. II. ch. 12.
- Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, Vol. IV. pp. 323-40.
- Napoleon's Cæsar, ch. 10.
- Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.
- Trollope's Cæsar, ch. 8.

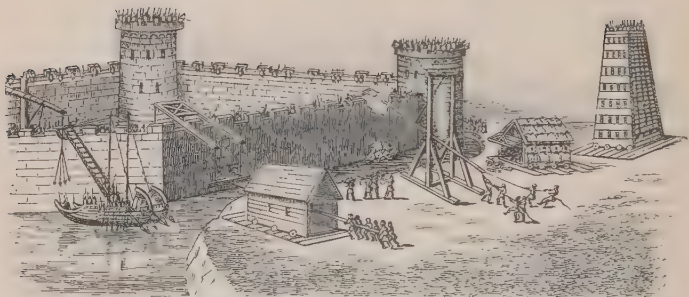


FIG. 124. — OPPUGNATIO.

NOTE. — This cut represents an attack both by land and water, in which no *agger* is employed. While in these respects unlike the attack on the Gallic towns, it shows very clearly some siege implements in active use.

238 1 CHAP. I. *quieta Gallia*: cf. 172 18. — *in Italiam*: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul.

238 3 *Clodi*: see note above. — *ut . . . coniurarent* (clause depending on *senatus consulto*): this was not an ordinary conscription, but a levy *in mass*, in which the entire population of Italy liable to military duty (the *iuniores*, between 17 and 46) took the oath of service. In addition, Cæsar orders a levy throughout his own province (*tota provincia*), in which were included *Gallia Cisalpina*, *Gallia Transalpina*, and *Illyricum*.

238 7 *quod . . . videbatur*: it naturally seemed to them impossible for Cæsar to quit Italy at this crisis (*urbano motu*).

238 9 *qui . . . dolerent*: translate by pres. partic., *being indignant*, etc.; the characteristic subjv. constantly has this meaning; cf. the use of *cum*. It approaches a causal relation, but has properly no notion of cause. — *ante*: adv. modifying *dolerent*.

238 11 *principes Galliae*: subj. of *querunter*. — *locis*: loc. abl., without a prep., as usual.

238 13 *Acconis*: see introductory remarks.

238 15 *qui*: sc. *eos*, i.e. some state to begin hostilities.

239 1 *capitis*, of *their lives*: the sing. is idiomatic in Latin.

239 3 *ut . . . intercludatur* (see introductory note): depends on *rationem*, a *plan* (of campaign).

239 9 CHAP. 2. *Carnutes*: this name is represented by Chartres.

239 12 *cavere inter se*, *take security from each other*. — *ne res effertur*: as the exchange of hostages would be a conspicuous and public act.

239 13 *conlatis*, etc.: an armed or symbolically armed council seems

to have been the most binding form of public ratification of concerted measures. Here the standards were gathered in a sheaf and the oath taken by this symbol of unity.

239 15 *deserantur*: it seems to have needed the most solemn forms of agreement to bind the discordant and jealous Gauls.

239 19 CHAP. 3. *Cenabum*: now Orléans, on the Loire.

239 20 *negotiandi*: their business was money-lending, the farming of taxes, purchase of slaves or corn, and the like. Cicero had said, some years before, that business affairs in Gaul were wholly controlled by Roman citizens.

239 21 *constiterant*, *had settled*.

239 24 *maior atque inlustrior*: i.e. than usual.

239 25 *clamore*: a sort of vocal telegraph, by which, as also by signal-fires, messages were conveyed, it is said, from towers 500 yards apart.

239 27 *Cenabi*: locative.

239 28 *ante . . . vigiliam*: between nine and ten at night, the sending of the message thus occupying about sixteen hours. — *Arvernorum*: i.e. the country now called Auvergne, a region always noted for the vigor and hardihood of its people, who now became leaders in the great revolt, and furnished its dauntless chief Vercingetorix.

240 1 CHAP. 4. *Vercingetorix*: a name or title explained as meaning *very brave lord* and well calculated (says the historian Florus) to inspire terror.

240 2 *principatum*, *the headship*; see note, **7 15**, and last note on **143 15**.

240 3 *totius Galliae*: i.e. all Celtic Gaul.

240 5 *incendit*: sc. eos.

240 6 *prohibetur*: conative pres.; i.e. they try to prevent him. This discouragement of the elders was of evil omen to his enterprise from the start.

240 8 *Gergovia*: the chief town of the Arverni, on an eminence near Clermont.

240 9 *perditorum*: men of *ruined fortunes*, desperate. This is the usual course of things and the usual accusation. The well-to-do are rarely ardent patriots. When trouble comes, they either make terms or flee to the provinces.

240 15 *Senones*, etc.: several of these names are preserved in the modern Sens, Paris, Poitiers, Tours, Limoges. The league included all Celtic Gaul south of the Seine and west of the loyal (or doubtful) Hædui and Bituriges, who were drawn into it later on.

240 19 *imperat*, *he levies*, with acc. and dative.

240 20 **quantum armorum**, *how many arms*.

240 21 **quod** (interr.): agrees with **tempus**, *and before what time*.

240 25 **necat**: i.e. the offenders.

241 3 CHAP. 5. **Rutenos**: these, as well as the Cadurci, lay between the Arverni and the Roman province. It was important, therefore, to secure them as a frontier defence.

241 6 **de consilio**, *by the advice*.

241 8 **qui**: agrees with the persons implied in **equitatus peditatusque**; § 182. a; B. 235. B. 2. c); G. 211. R. 1; H. 445. 5.

241 11 **veritos**: translate by a causal clause.

241 12 **quibus id**, etc., *who they knew had this plan*.

241 13 **ipsi**: i.e. the Bituriges. — **id eane**, etc., *whether they did this for the reason which*, etc.

241 15 **quod** (adv. acc.), *because* (the reason for **non videtur**, etc.). This is a bit which goes to show that the commentaries, notwithstanding their aim at political effect, are substantially true. Cæsar was too great a man to deceive others except when he deceived himself.

241 19 CHAP. 6. **virtute** = *vigor*. This word is in Latin often used in a vague sense equivalent to our 'thanks to' or the like.

241 21 **qua . . . posset**: indir. question following **difficultate**, which implies doubt.

241 23 **se absente**: Cæsar knew well his own influence over his army. See also introductory notes. — **dimicaturas (esse)**: sc. *eas*, i.e. the legions.

241 24 **ipse**, etc.: the most submissive Gauls at such a time were not to be depended upon, if they had the slightest chance to capture him. — **eis**: indir. obj. of **committi**, the subj. of which is **suam salutem**.

242 1 CHAP. 7. **Lucterius**, etc.: an officer of Vercingetorix; see 189 1. He endeavored to rouse the border tribes against the Romans, but was checked by the promptness and farsightedness of Cæsar.

242 2 **Nitiobriges et Gabalos**: these completed the Arvernian frontier, the Volcae and Helvii being within the limits of the Province.

242 4 **Narbonem**, *Narbonne*, the chief town of **Gallia Narbonensis**, founded by C. Gracchus.

242 5 **antevertendum (esse)**: has for its subj. **ut . . . proficisceretur**, and is followed by the dat. **consiliis**.

242 7 **provincialibus**: a portion of the Ruteni had been incorporated in the Province.

242 14 CHAP. 8. **quod . . . putabat**: referring to Lucterius.

242 15 **Cevenna**: the pass crossing this range is about 4000 feet high.

242 16 **durissimo**, etc.: Pompey was put in authority February 25 (by the *old calendar*, which was now about six weeks ahead of the actual time);

Cæsar, who left Italy directly after, probably crossed the Cevennes about the middle of January.

242 18 *summo . . . labore*: "these admirable soldiers were worthy of the genius of their chief," but such men as Cæsar and Napoleon make that kind of soldiers.

242 21 *singulari . . . homini*, a solitary wayfarer, to say nothing of an army.

243 1 CHAP. 9. *at*: marks a transition as usual; translate *meanwhile*.

243 2 *usu . . . praeceperat*, had suspected would come to pass. — *per*



FIG. 125. — HOLLOW SQUARE (*agmen quadratum*).

causam, on the pretext (so elsewhere in Cæsar); his real motive was to join his force.

243 4 *Brutum*: Decimus Junius Brutus, afterward one of Cæsar's assassins. This same officer had command of the fleet in the famous battle with the Veneti; see 178 7–10.

243 6 *triduo*: this was a pretence, and was given out to conceal his real design.

243 8 *Viennam*, *Vienne*, a little below Lyons on the Rhone. — *recentem*: i.e. they were well rested and in good condition for a forced march.

243 11 *hiemabant*: his route would lie due north up the Saône along the eastern line of the Hædui. The distance of this rapid winter journey was above 300 miles. — *quid*: with *consili*.

243 12 *de sua salute*, affecting his own safety; opposed to any design on his forces.

243 13 *reliquas*, etc.: two of them were somewhere near Luxembourg, and six at Sens, about 140 miles apart.

243 14 *prius*: with *quam*. — *unum locum*: evidently Sens.

243 17 *Gorgobinam*: this was situated probably on the Allier, a southern confluent of the Loire.

243 18 *Haeduis attribuerat*: this Cæsar mentions in the first Book.

243 20 *difficultatem*: the dilemma in which Cæsar finds himself is expressed by the two parallel conditions *si . . . contineret*, *ne . . . deficeret*, and *si . . . educeret*, *ne . . . laboraret*.

244 1 CHAP. IO. *stipendiariis*: i.e. the Boii, who were tributaries of the Hædui.

244 2 *amicis*, etc., *since his friends would find there was no help for them in him*.

244 4 *ab*, *in respect to* his supply of corn.

244 10 *Agedinci*: now Sens, the chief town of the Senones.

244 12 CHAP. II. *altero die*, *on the second day* of the march. — *Vellaunodunum*: the position of this town is somewhat uncertain, but Cæsar apparently did not march directly towards Gorgobina, but made a detour towards the north in order to cross the Loire at Orléans.

244 13 *quo*, *in order that*.

244 15 *circumvallavit*: the circumvallation consisted of a line of wall and trench surrounding the town.

244 18 *iter*: i.e. to the relief of the Boii at Gorgobina.

244 19 *qui tum primum*, etc.: they had just heard of the investment of Vellaunodunum and, thinking the siege would last longer, were raising a force to defend their chief town about 120 miles off.

244 20 *eam rem*: i.e. the siege.

244 21 *quod mitterent*, *to send*, giving the purpose of *comparabant*.

244 24 *in posterum*: sc. *diem*.

244 25 *militibus imperat*, *he orders the soldiers to prepare*; the direct obj. of *imperat* being a demonstrative antecedent of *quæ*, not expressed in Latin, and in English absorbed in 'what.'

244 26 *contingebat*, *touched*, i.e. led directly to. The town being on the north bank, the bridge would allow its defenders to cross to the friendly Bituriges.

245 3 *desideratis quin*, etc.: a loose use of the *quin*-construction; *all, with very few exceptions, were captured*.

245 5 *diripit*: cf. the fate of Avaricum, ch. 28.

245 8 CHAP. 12. *ille*: i.e. Cæsar.

245 9 *Noviodunum*: the position is uncertain. Cæsar's march, however, was certainly to the south up the Loire. This town is to be distinguished from Noviodunum, a city of the Hædui.

245 11 *celeritate*: we may supply in English a demonstrative as antecedent to *qua*.

245 20 *novi aliquid . . . consili*, *some new design*.

245 22 *omnis incolumis*: see l. 15 above; construe with *receperunt*, *got their men all back safe to Cæsar's camp*.

245 24 CHAP. 13. *Germanos*: this force was much superior to the Gallic cavalry, and was destined to turn the battle in Cæsar's favor at many critical times; see chs. 70, 80. The tactics of the German cavalry are described Bk. i. ch. 48.

245 25 *ab initio*: the meaning of this is not clear. He had no German cavalry at the beginning of his campaigns. He may have obtained them after his struggle with Ariovistus.

246 2 *quibus*, *and these* (the Gallic horse).

246 3 *eos* (obj. of *perduxerunt*): i.e. the leaders in the sudden movement described above, ch. 12.

246 5 *Avaricum*: the modern Bourges, an important town of 40,000 inhabitants, the geographical centre of France.

247 3 CHAP. 14. *longe alia ratione . . . atque*, *in a way quite different from*, etc., i.e. by purely defensive or guerrilla war.

247 6 *anni tempore*: i.e. scarcely yet spring, long before harvest; all supplies must be got from granaries or storehouses (*aedificia*), which might easily be destroyed.

247 8 *hos omnis*: i.e. *hostis*.

247 10 *incendi*: just as the Helvetians did B.C. 58.

247 11 *hoc spatio*: explained by *quo*, etc., i.e. the range of the Roman foraging parties. — [*a Boia*]: omit.

247 13 *quorum*: the antecedent is *eorum*.

247 15 *neque interesse*, *and it makes no difference* (he says). — *-ne . . . an*, *whether . . . or*.

247 19 *sint . . . receptacula*, *serve as retreats*.

247 20 *neu*, *and lest*; sc. *sint* from preceding clause. — *proposita*, *offered to be captured by the Romans*. The method of warfare here advised by Vercingetorix and afterwards consistently followed by him stamps him as a general of first-rate ability. We may fitly compare Fabius Maximus harassing and weakening the army of Hannibal, and the burning of Moscow by the Russians to drive out Napoleon.

247 26 CHAP. 15. *urbis*: Cæsar more commonly calls them *oppida*. Rome alone is always *urbs*.

248 2 *solaci*: partit. gen. with *hoc*.

248 3 *amissa*, *all they had lost* (obj. of *recuperaturos*).

248 4 *incendi*, etc.: a double indir. question, *whether . . . or*.

248 9 *flumine*: the city was just above the junction of the Auron with the Yèvre.

248 12 *volgi*: obj. gen., i.e. his compassion *for the poor people*, who would be turned out of house and home in the winter if the town should be burned.

BOOK SEVENTH, 16-30. — B.C. 52.

THE SIEGE OF AVARICUM.

For reading references, see notes at the beginning of Bk. vii.

248 16 CHAP. 16. *longe, distant.* — *certos (cerno), regular.*

248 17 *in . . . tempora, from hour to hour.*

248 21 *etsi, etc., although so far as skilful planning (ratione) could provide* (against this danger), *our men took the precaution of going at uncertain times and in different directions.*

248 22 *ut . . . iretur*: a clause of purpose, taking its construction from *provideri* though not immediately connected with it. The verbs are used impersonally.

248 24 CHAP. 17. *quae . . . habebat*: i.e. the neck of the peninsula on which the town was situated (248 ff.).

248 25 *intermissa, left free.* — [*a*]: omit.

248 26 *aggerem, etc.*: see chapter on military affairs, VIII.

Between the Yèvre and the Auron was a plateau, some 1200 to 1600 feet high, with rather steep banks. As this plateau approached the town, it narrowed to a ridge only about 400 feet wide, with the Auron on one side and a swampy brook, the Yévrette, on the other. From the Yévrette to the Yèvre extended a morass. At a distance of about 300 feet from the city wall the ridge was intersected by a sudden depression like a trench, perhaps 50 feet deep (see plan, Fig. 88). Cæsar pitched his camp on the plateau just back of the ridge, a little over half a mile from Avaricum. Along the ridge, right across the intersecting ravine, he built the *agger*.

248 29 *alteri*: the Hædui, already wavering in their allegiance; *alteri*: the Boii, a fragment of the defeated Helvetians.

249 8 *ab eis*: the source of *vox*, not the agent of *audita*. Notice again in this passage the invincible endurance of these soldiers.

249 14 *ignominiae . . . loco, in the place of* (i.e. as) *a disgrace.*

249 16 *Cenabi*: locative.

249 17 *parentarent*: = *ut parentarent*, the natural construction. As one might say irregularly in English, 'It is better to suffer anything than not avenge our comrades,' omitting 'to.'

249 23 CHAP. 18. **qui . . . consuessent** : as described Bk. i. ch. 48.

250 2 **sarcinas**, etc. : the regular preparation for battle.

250 5 CHAP. 19. **difficilis**, *hard to cross* ; **impedita**, *embarrassing* ; the two words express only different phases of the same idea.

250 7 **fiducia loci**, *trusting to the strength of the position*.

250 8 **vada** [ac saltus], *fords and open spaces*, where the way seemed practicable. — [in civitatis] : omit.

250 10 **haesitantis**, *struggling in the mud or bushes*. — **premerent** : a purpose-clause, taking its construction from **sic animo parati**, *determined* ; cf. 199 3, where the same words take a result-clause. The two constructions approach each other, but the first refers to future time, the last to present.

250 11 **propinquitatem** : i.e. the armies were separated only by the swamp. — **videret** : the contrast is between the casual observer and the careful inspector (**qui . . . perspiceret**). — **prope**, etc., *on nearly equal terms* ; **iniquitatem**, *unfair advantage*, showing that their offering battle was **inanis simulatio**.

250 14 **quod . . . possent** : follows **indignantis**, *chafing that*, etc. — **conspectus suum**, *the sight of them*.

251 2 **necesse sit**, etc., *a victory must needs cost*, with the abl. of price.

251 4 **iniquitatis** : § 220 ; B. 208. 2 ; G. 378 ; H. 409. II.

251 8 CHAP. 20. **proditionis** : see last note.

251 10 **discessisset** and **venissent** refer to the action in ch. 18. — **imperio** : = **imperatore**.

251 12 **non haec**, etc., *all these things could not, they said*.

252 1 **illum** : connect with **male habere**.

252 2 **ipsorum** : sc. **concessu**.

252 5 **persuasum (esse)** : **impers.**, *that it had been recommended*. — **qui se . . . defenderet**, *which was its own defence* (ch. 19).

252 12 **fortunae** (dat.) : as well as **huic** (referring to **alicuius**), to be construed with **habendam gratiam**, *thanks were due*.

252 16 **imperium** : the same as **regnum Galliae** above.

252 18 **quin etiam**, *nay even*. Distinguish carefully from **quin** introducing a negative result. — **remittere**, *is ready to resign* ; in direct disc., **remitto**, *I resign*. — **si** : = *(to see) whether* (indir. question).

252 27 **nec iam viris**, etc., *that no one any longer has sufficient strength* ; **viris** is from **vis**.

252 28 **posse** : sc. **quemquam**, supplied from **cuiusquam**.

252 30 [Vercingetorix] : may be omitted.

253 2 **quem** : construe with **ne . . . recipiat**, subj. of **provisum est**.

Translate and as it basely flees from this spot, I have provided that no state shall receive it within its boundaries.

253 4 CHAP. 21. suo more: cf. Tacitus (Germania, 11), 'si placuit sententia, frameas concutiant.'

253 5. in eo, in the case of him.

253 6 summum: this word is often used where we should say 'a great.'

253 7 maiore ratione, with better generalship.

253 11 si . . . retinuissent: in apposition with eo (that condition).

253 14 CHAP. 22. genus: i.e. the Gauls.

253 15 atque . . . aptissimum: cf. Bk. iv. ch. 5; atque connects the descriptive gen. summae sollertiae and the descriptive adj. aptissimum.

253 16 laqueis, etc.: see Fig. 124.

253 17 cum destinaverant, . . . reducebant: a general condition expressing repeated action in past time; cf. 234 7.

253 19 ferrariae: so of the copper mines of the Aquitani.

253 25 cotidianus agger: i.e. the daily increase in the height of the agger. — commissis malis, by splicing the upright timbers: these were the high corner beams of the towers, by which they were raised in successive stages, so that each increase in the height of the Roman works was met by a corresponding increase in the height of the defences. The towers on the walls were probably connected by covered galleries, one for each story.

253 26 apertos cuniculos . . . morabantur, etc.: this refers to the obstructions put by the Gauls in the way of the open passageways which ran through the agger, and which the soldiers used in carrying material for its advance and completion; morabantur has the force of blocked or obstructed. See Figs. 89, 90, 112, and chapter on military affairs, VIII.

254 2 CHAP. 23. directae, at right angles with the course of the wall. — perpetuae in longitudinem, along the whole length.

254 4 revinciuntur, are fastened by beams some forty feet in length, running lengthwise of the wall.

254 5 intervalla: i.e. the two feet between each two of the beams in the lower tier (ordo).

254 7 ut idem, etc., in such a way that the same space (between the beams) is preserved, and that the beams do not touch each other; but, placed at equal intervals, the individual beams are firmly bound together by the corresponding stones placed between them; i.e. so alternating in the successive layers that beams rested on stone, and stone on beams.

254 11 cum: correlative with tum below.

254 15 quadragenum: note the distributive, forty each.

255 1 introrsus revincta: i.e. the beams were mortised together at

some distance from the exposed ends, making it next to impossible to force them apart; see Fig. 91.

255 4 CHAP. 24. *frigore*: it was still very early in the year, scarcely spring; see **208 10**.

255 6 *latum*: as a width of over 300 feet is incredible, some have supposed that this is an error for *longum*; others, that the numeral should be *xxxx*. — *altum pedes lxxx*: it must be remembered that the height of the *agger* had to equal the depth of the ravine it crossed, and also the height of the Gallic wall. The latter may have been thirty feet.

255 11 *cuniculo*: i.e. a mine running under the *agger*. It should be remembered that the *agger* was built largely of wood.

255 13 *turrium*: the Roman towers, mounted on wheels or rollers, and here referring to those flanking the *agger*; see Figs. 59, 89, 124.

255 19 *partitis temporibus*: i.e. in their turn.

255 20 *reducerent*: i.e. out of reach of the fire.

255 21 *interscinderent*: i.e. they cut away the unfinished end of the *agger*, which was in flames. Thus the rest was saved.

255 25 CHAP. 25. *pluteos*: here the high wooden bulwarks (*loricae*) protecting each story of the tower; see note on **144 2**.

255 26 *nec . . . animadvertabant*, and noticed that the exposed men did not readily approach to give assistance.

256 2 *accidit*, etc., an incident occurred before my eyes, which, seeming worthy of record, I thought ought not to be omitted. Observe the use of the plural pronoun, the editorial 'we' extremely common in Latin.

256 4 *per manus . . . traditas*: i.e. his companions passed them to him to throw.

256 5 *scorpione*: this was a powerful cross-bow, for hurling darts or bolts; see chapter on military affairs, I. 5, and Fig. 92.

256 18 *palus*: probably the watery valley of the Auron.

257 3 CHAP. 26. *suorum*, their husbands.

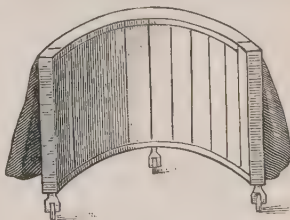


FIG. 126. — PLUTEUS.

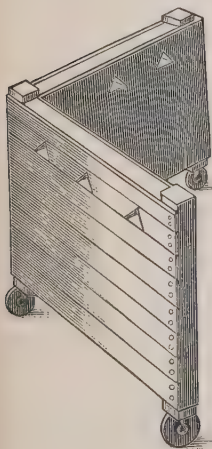


FIG. 127. — PLUTEUS.

257 5 quos: refers to se as well as to liberos.

257 8 quo timore: the regular Latin idiom where we should expect cuius rei timore.

257 16 CHAP. 27. [intra vineas]: it would be impossible for legions to find room *inside* the vineae. Either legiones here refers to the storming columns, or intra vineas means within the line of the sheds, and so out of sight. Many editors omit the words altogether. — expeditis, *put in fighting order*.

257 18 adscendissent: informal indir. disc. for the fut. perf. of the direct.

257 22 CHAP. 28. cuneatim, *in a compact body* (lit. 'wedge-fashion'), implying tactics like those of the Romans.

257 23 si qua . . . veniretur, *if an attack should be made from any side*; [contra]: may be omitted; veniretur is impersonal.

257 25 circumfundi (impers. pass.): = *that men were pouring in*.

257 27 continenti impetu, *without stopping*.

258 1 exitu: abl. of cause.

258 3 quisquam: i.e. Romanorum. — Cenabensi caede: see ch. 3.

258 10 [ut]: omit. — procul in via, etc., *placing his friends and the chiefs of the states at intervals for some distance along the road, he took care that they (the fugitives) should be separated and conducted to their own people*.

258 12 quae . . . pars: = ad eam partem . . . quae, and refers to the persons implied by suos and is explained by 250 7, where it is said that the Gallic forces were arranged generatim.

258 14 CHAP. 29. consolatus cohortatusque: the fall of Avaricum must have been a crushing blow to Vercingetorix, but he meets the disaster with a magnificent courage.

258 18 errare si qui: = *that those were mistaken who*, etc.

258 19 sibi numquam placuisse: see 248 3-13.

258 23 quae . . . dissentirent: i.e. the states that had not yet joined the rebellion.

258 27 effectum habere: see notes on 17 15, 147 16.

258 28 impetrari, etc.: i.e. he had a right to ask them to proceed to fortify, etc.; notice the modesty of these words, appropriate to the great disaster just suffered.

259 5 CHAP. 30. re integra, *before anything had happened* (see ch. 15).

259 6 ut . . . sic: correlatives.

259 9 de reliquis, etc.: follows in spem, *hope of*, etc.

259 11 homines insueti: an appositive expressing concession; translate by *although*.

After the fall of Avaricum, Vercingetorix levies new troops and prepares to continue the struggle. Cæsar sends Labienus northward with four legions, and himself proceeds towards Gergovia. This city, situated on a high and steep mountain, was almost impregnable. Both Cæsar and the Gauls occupied commanding positions before the city. In the operations that followed Cæsar was far from being as successful as he himself had hoped or wished. It was the only city that defied his assault successfully. The prestige of Vercingetorix was so greatly increased by Cæsar's failure to take the city that almost entire Gaul joined the revolt. Even the Hædui, Cæsar's oldest and most faithful allies, plotted against him. For a time his condition seemed almost desperate, but he managed to save his army and at least hold his own until Labienus returned from the north. Cæsar then turned all his energies against Vercingetorix, who was daily becoming more powerful. In a cavalry battle the Gauls were defeated and withdrew to Alesia.

BOOK SEVENTH, 68-90. — B.C. 52.

THE SIEGE OF ALESIA.

For reading references, see notes at the beginning of Bk. vii.

260 21 CHAP. 58. **Alesiam**: this famous fortress (now called Alise-Ste.-Reine) was on the territory lying just north of the Hæduan frontier. Its natural advantages — summed up in the succeeding chapters — are thus described :

“Alesia, like Gergovia, is on a hill sloping off all round, with steep and, in places, precipitous sides. It lies between two small rivers, both of which fall into the Brenne, and thence into the Seine. Into this peninsula, with the rivers on each side of him, Vercingetorix had thrown himself with 80,000 men. Alesia as a position was impregnable except to famine. The water supply was secure. The position was of extraordinary strength. The rivers formed natural trenches. Below the town, to the west, they ran parallel for three miles through an open alluvial plain before they reached the Bienne. In every other direction rose rocky hills of equal height with the central plateau, originally perhaps one wide table-land, through which the water had ploughed out the valley. To attack Vercingetorix where he had placed himself was out of the question; but to blockade him there, to capture the leader of the insurrection and his whole army, and so in one blow make an end with it, on a survey of the situation seemed not impossible.” — Froude's Cæsar. See plan, Fig. 97.

262 2 CHAP. 69. *loco* : in apposition with *colle* ; cf. § 184. *c* ; B. 169. 4 ; G. 411. 3 ; H. 363. 4. 2.

262 7 *sub muro*, etc. : this sentence is an excellent example, at the same time, both of the natural precedence of the relative in Latin and of the freedom of all real language from grammatical trammels. The student should first translate it literally thus : *Under the wall, which side of the hill (i.e. the side which) faced the east, all this space the forces of the Gauls had filled, and had carried along a ditch*, etc. The meaning of this is obvious, but it is not at all in accordance with our English idiom. Indeed, it is not strictly *grammatical* in any language. After the student has seen what it means, he should try to put it into some form that is allowable in English idiom, say : *Under the wall, the side . . . , all this space the forces . . . , and had made there*, etc.

262 10 *munitio* : Cæsar constructed a line of contravallation, i.e. a series of works entirely surrounding the town, so as to resist a sortie.

262 11 *milia* : acc. of extent, *tenebat* having here the force of *pertinebat*. — *castra*, etc. : in the remains of these works traces have been found of four infantry and four cavalry camps (see plan, Fig. 96).

262 13 *stationes*, etc. : in the daytime a mere picket guard occupied each redoubt ; at night it was necessary to station in them strong garrisons with numerous sentries (*excubitoribus*) on their walls.

262 18 CHAP. 70. *supra* : i.e. l. 4.

262 19 *Germanos* : cf. ch. 13.

262 20 *pro castris* : these were on the high ground south of the city (see plan, Fig. 96) ; *castris* is plural, = *camps*.

262 23 *angustioribus*, *too narrow*, either from unskilful construction or more easily to prevent the enemy's entrance. The gates referred to were in the stone wall (*maceria*) ; see plan.

262 24 *acrius*, *with all the more vigor*.

264 1 *venire . . . existimantes*, *thinking that an immediate attack is to be made upon them*.

264 4 *portas*, *town gates* : these were closed, lest those who manned the exterior defences (the *fossa* and *maceria*) should rush into the town in a panic.

264 7 CHAP. 71. *perficiantur* : for mood, cf. **69 7** and note.

264 11 *suae, se* : i.e. Vercingetorix. — *neu*, *and not*, the regular way of continuing a negative purpose. We say 'and not' ; the Romans said 'nor,' which is the real meaning of *neu*.

264 14 *ratione inita*, *having made a calculation*.

264 17 *opus* : i.e. the Roman works of contravallation, still unfinished.

264 ²¹ *copias omnīs*: not those that held the fortification east of the town (**262** ⁷⁻¹⁰), but the outlying pickets on all the other sides.

264 ²⁶ CHAP. 72. *pedum viginti*: i.e. in breadth.

264 ²⁷ *directis*, *vertical*, the bottom (*solum*) being as broad as the top. The ditch was usually dug with sloping sides; the object here was (as it was probably shallow) to make it harder to cross. This was the interior line of defence against the town. — *solum*: notice the quantity of the first syllable.

265 ² [*id*]: may be omitted. — *hoc consilio*, with *this design*, followed by the appositive clauses of purpose, *ne . . . possent*.

265 ³ *quoniam . . . ne*, *that, since*, etc., *not*, etc. — *esset complexus* and *cingeretur* are subjv. because integral parts of his purpose, *ne . . . possent*.

265 ⁴ *nec* = *et non*, as usual. — *totum opus*, *the entire work*, eleven miles in extent, according to **262** ¹¹.

265 ⁶ *operi*: take with *destinatos*.

265 ⁸ *eadem altitudine*, *of equal depth*. — *quarum interiorem*: i.e. the one nearer the town. — *campestribus . . . locis*: loc. abl. describing the situation.

265 ¹⁰ *aggerem*: here not the technical approach used in a siege, but a *bank of earth* serving as a rampart, on top of which was placed the *vallum* of stakes, twelve feet in height.

265 ¹¹ *loricam*, *pinnas*: these were to raise higher the defence of the *vallum*. — *cervis*: stumps with roots, or trunks with branches, projecting like stags' horns. — *ad commissuras*, *at the joining*, i.e. the place where these *plutei* were fixed in the *agger*, which would be at their lowest part.

265 ¹² *pluteorum*: the *lorica* was really a series of *plutei*, arranged side by side on a wall and bound together.

265 ¹³ *turris*: if these were ten feet wide at the base, there must have been at least 400. — *quae . . . distarent*: not 'which were distant' (this would be ind.), but *so placed as to be*, etc., hence subjv.; cf. **61** ¹³.

265 ¹⁵ CHAP. 73. *erat*: with *necesse*; its subj. is the infinitives. — *materiari*: i.e. to get timber; *lignari* would mean *to get firewood*.

265 ¹⁶ *copiis*: Cæsar had about 50,000 men.

265 ²⁰ *quo*, *in order that*.

265 ²¹ *truncis arborum*, etc.: trunks of trees or very stiff boughs were cut down; then the boughs were trimmed and sharpened at the ends, and then planted in five rows in trenches each five feet deep (*quinos pedes*), and perhaps one and a half feet wide.

265 ²⁴ *huc . . . eminebant*, *those boughs being sunk in these* (*huc*,

i.e. the trenches) and being securely fastened at the bottom so that they could not be torn up, projected from the ground only with their branches.

265 25 quini . . . ordines: these five rows of *chevaux-de-frise*, intertwined so as to be continuous, covered a space perhaps twenty-five feet wide, so that, even with the help of a pole, an enemy could not easily leap over them.

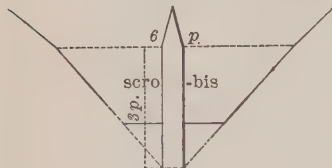


FIG. 128. — LILIUM.

265 26 quo qui intraverant, whoever entered within them; protasis of a past general condition.

265 27 cippos: i.e. boundary stones, so called jestingly by the troops; see Fig. 97.

265 29 scrobes, little pits, with sloping sides, three feet deep, dug in

eight rows, arranged, as we should say, in diamond-pattern, or as trees were planted in an orchard (in *quincuncem*), so that each should be equally distant from the six adjacent. A stout, sharp stake was set in each, packed with a foot depth of earth, its point projecting four inches, the pit being then loosely filled with twigs and brush. This funnel-shaped trap for man or beast the soldiers called a 'lily-cup' (*lilium*); see Fig. 128. — **paulatim . . . fastigio**, sloping gradually towards the bottom.

265 30 teretes, round, like a cylinder, while the word *rotundus* means round like a ball. — **huc**, in these; cf. same word in l. 24.

265 31 praeusti: to harden the point.

266 2 singuli . . . exculcabantur, a foot of each (stake) was packed down with earth at the bottom.

266 7 taleae: blocks of wood or stakes with iron barbed points fixed in them. Several of these hooks have been found in excavations on this site; see Fig. 129. — **totae**, their whole length, so that only the hooks projected.

266 10 CHAP. 74. regiones . . . aequissimas: the line of circumvallation (see plan, Fig. 96) was parallel with the works just described, and distant from it about 700 feet. It was protected by a single ditch.

266 11 xiv milia: of course the works of circumvallation included all the Roman camps, and must have had a greater circuit than the inner line of contravallation (see **262 11**).

266 12 diversas, facing the other way.

266 14 Omit the bracketed words.

266 16 habere . . . convectum: see note on *redactas habuerunt*, **17 15**.

266 19 CHAP. 75. omnis: subj. of *convocandos* (esse).



FIG. 129.
STIMULUS.

266 24 [Blannoviis]: this name is doubtful.

266 25 milia: direct obj. of imperant, the datives being the indir. obj. The same construction is continued in the next sentences, where imperant is to be supplied.

268 4 The bracketed words may be omitted.

268 6 quo . . . in numero: cf. Bk. iii. ch. 7, p. 174.

268 12 pro, in consideration of.

268 13 CHAP. 76. Commi: cf. 211 5-11, 215 7, 8, 220 12, 235 26.

268 15 civitatem: i.e. the Atrebates.—immunem, free from tribute.

268 16 attribuerat, had assigned to him as a prince.

268 19 moveretur: i.e. Gallia.

268 23 Viridomaro et Eporedorigi: these Hæduan nobles had been among Cæsar's most faithful friends and had received many favors from him.

268 24 Vercassivellauno: in this word, as in Vercingetorix, the prefix Ver is probably a title, like the modern 'Sir' or 'Lord.'

268 25 his: indir. obj. of attribuuntur.

268 29 ancipiti, with double front, having to be fought behind and before.

268 30 cum . . . foris, etc., (in a case) where they would fight in a sally from the town, and on the outside, etc.

270 1 CHAP. 77. at: to mark the change of scene.

270 7 crudelitatem: perhaps so in a Gaul, but in a Roman it would be constantiam.

270 10 deditionis: a mere 'laying down of arms.'

270 12 cum . . . est, I have to do with those.

270 14 animi est, etc.: the infinitive clause following is in apposition with ista. From the English idiom we should expect istud, but in Latin such pronouns agree with the predicate.

270 16 offerant, ferant: subjv. of characteristic.

270 17 atque, and yet.—probarem . . . viderem: apodosis and protasis in a 'contrary to fact' supposition; see § 308; B. 304; G. 597; H. 510.

270 18 tantum . . . potest: see Vocabulary.—dignitas: i.e. of those who advocate making a sally.

270 19 vitæ nostræ: depending on iacturam, to be supplied according to the Latin idiom.

270 21 quid . . . animi, what heart.

270 22 propinquis, consanguineis: dat. of possessor after fore.

270 27 prosternere, subicere: connected by nec with exspoliare.

271 2 animi causa, for the pleasure of it.—illorum: the Gauls; his: the Romans.—exerceri, are toiling.

271 4 *testibus*, as witnesses ; pred. appositive.

271 6 *consili*: pred. gen.— *facere*: sc. *meum consilium est* from the preceding.

271 7 *Cimbrorum*: see pp. 56–8. They did great damage in laying waste Gaul and Spain before they turned to Italy.

271 12 *pulcherrimum*: in pred. agreement with the two preceding infinitives.— *quid*, etc., *what was there in that war like this?*

271 17 *quos*: the antecedent is *horum*.

271 21 *finitimam*: over the border, — the Province.

271 22 *securibus*: the lictor's axes, the sign not simply of military rule, but of bloody execution (as a servile insurrection would be revenged).

271 27 CHAP. 78. *illo*: observe the emphasis. — *potius*: with *quam*. — *utendum* (esse): impers., governing the abl.; § 294. c. N.; B. 337. 7. b). 1); G. 427. N. 4; H. 544. N. 5.

272 4 *prohibebat*: one of the cruel necessities of war. The wretched creatures must have perished miserably between the city walls and the Roman lines.

272 7 CHAP. 79. *colle*: this hill is southwest from Alesia, beyond the Brenne; see plan, Fig. 96.

272 10 *demonstravimus*: see 262 4.

272 13 *concurrunt*: i.e. the Gauls in Alesia.

272 16 *fossam*: see 264 26 ff., and plan, Fig. 96.

272 23 CHAP. 80. *Galli*, etc.: the Gauls here adopt the German cavalry tactics.

272 26 *complures*: i.e. of the Roman cavalry.

273 5 *neque . . . ac*, etc. (perhaps a misreading for *neque . . . nec*), and because neither a brave nor a cowardly action, etc.

273 8 *Germani*: for the fourth time in this campaign the Germans decide the day for Cæsar; cf. 260 9 and note.

273 12 *at*: what is its force here? Cf. 272 4, 270 1 and note.

274 3 CHAP. 81. *atque*, and even.

274 4 *harpagonum*: iron hooks fastened to poles, for tearing down the defences; see Fig. 124.

274 5 *campestris munitiones*: the works in the plain; i.e. the line of circumvallation in the Plain of the Laumes, southwest from Alesia; see plan, Fig. 96.

274 6 *quā* = *ut eā*, introducing a clause of purpose.

274 8 *cratīs*, hurdles of woven twigs, to cover the trenches.

274 13 *fundis librilibus*: heavy stones fastened to a thong, by which they were hurled with great force.

274 14 *glandibus*: leaden bullets.

274 18 *his auxilio* : two datives.

274 19 *deductos* : sc. *milites*. The thought is that men were withdrawn from the more distant redoubts to defend those that were in greatest danger.

274 22 CHAP. 82. *stimulis* : cf. 266 7-9. — *scrobis* : cf. 265 28 ff.

274 23 *pilis muralibus* : large darts perhaps hurled by the engines.

274 26 *superioribus* : on the higher ground to the north and south (see next chapter).

274 29 *fossas* : this word should probably be *fossam*. It seems to refer to the ditch twenty feet wide ; see 264 26 ff. and plan. — *explant* : coördinate with *proferunt*.

275 6 CHAP. 83. *collis* : see plan ; the camp of these two legions was on the southern slope of Mont Rea.

275 13 *quoque pacto*, and in what manner.

275 15 *Vercassivellaunum* : see 268 23-5.

275 29 CHAP. 84. *multum . . . valet*, tends greatly.

276 1 *quod . . . constare* : as the attack is both from without and within, the Romans in their fortifications have enemies both in front and in the rear, and the shouting of those in their rear tends to disconcert them. As they face the enemy they feel that their safety depends on the valor of those who are defending their rear.

276 4 CHAP. 85. *idoneum locum* : i.e. where he can see everything.

276 5 *utrisque*, etc., the thought is present to the minds of both parties that this is the time of all others best suited for the greatest exertion.

276 8 *si rem obtinuerint*, if they (shall) gain the day.

276 11 *iniquum . . . fastigium*, the unfavorable downward slope of the ground (see 275 8). The Romans always aimed to have their camp where no higher ground could command it.

276 13 *agger* : i.e. earth, stones, or anything else handy.

276 15 *occultaverant* : i.e. the *stimuli*, *scrobes*, etc., described in ch. 73.

276 17 CHAP. 86. *Labienum* : he was encamped on the heights of Bussy. See plan.

276 19 *deductis . . . pugnet*, to draw off his cohorts and make a sally.

276 22 *interiores* : i.e. the Gauls within the town.

276 23 *loca praeupta* : probably the Heights of Flavigny.

276 24 [*ex*] : may be omitted.

276 26 *vallum ac lorica*m : see 265 10 ff.

277 1 CHAP. 87. *integros* : i.e. troops that had not yet been engaged. The cohorts of Brutus and Fabius were probably of those that had been defending the works in the plain.

277 2 *eo*, etc. : i.e. to the works on Mont Rea.

277 10 CHAP. 88. *ex colore*: the purple or scarlet *paludamentum*. The bracketed words may be omitted.

277 12 *de locis superioribus*, *from the high ground* occupied by the Gauls.

277 13 *declivia*, *the downward slopes*. — *cernebantur*, *were in plain sight*.

277 14 *excipit . . . clamor*: i.e. the shout of the combatants is taken up and reëchoed all along the lines. Notice the vividness and power of the following description, the short, quick sentences, the absence of connectives, and the rapidity of the whole.

277 16 *equitatus*: who had been despatched for that purpose as told in ll. 4 and 5 above.

277 22 *conspicati*: agrees with the subj. of *reducunt*; sc. Galli.

277 24 *quod*: lit. 'as to which,' referring to the preceding sentence; § 240 a; B. 176. 2; G. 610. R. 2; H. 453. 6; translate *and*.

277 25 *crebris subsidiis*, *constant service in relief parties*.

278 8 CHAP. 89. *Vercingetorix deditur*: the fate reserved for this gallant and ill-fated chieftain was to be kept for six years in chains, and then, after being led in Cæsar's triumphal procession, to be put to death. Plutarch in his Life of Cæsar describes the surrender as follows: "Vercingetorix, who was the chief author of all the war, putting on his best armor, and adorning his horse, came out of the gate, and rode round Cæsar as he sat, then dismounted from his horse, threw off his armor, and remained sitting quietly at Cæsar's feet until he was led away to be reserved for the triumph."

278 9 *si*, (to try) *whether*, indir. question.

278 10 *capita singula*, *one apiece*.

278 17 CHAP. 90. *huic*: i.e. Labienus.

278 25 *Bibracte*: loc. ablative.

From 1862 to 1865 careful excavations were made under direction of the emperor Napoleon III on the site of the works at Alesia. The discoveries that resulted were most interesting. There were found the remains of Cæsar's four infantry camps and of his four cavalry camps. Of the twenty-three redoubts, remains of only five could be traced. It is likely that the rest were mostly of wood, so that they had crumbled entirely away. The trench twenty feet wide remains in its entirety. Of the pits (*scrobes*) in which the sharp stakes were buried, more than fifty were discovered. They are all three feet deep, two feet wide at the top, and one foot wide at the bottom. Of course they do not retain the original dimensions. In the trenches were found a great number of coins. Roman and Gallic, swords, daggers, spearheads, and the like. The result of these researches was a very striking corroboration of Cæsar's narrative.

CLOSE OF THE CAMPAIGN.—If Cæsar was merciless in war, he was wise and humane in victory. Even in the moment of the fall of Alesia, he used his prisoners to make terms with the more important states (*si per eos*, etc.). His aim was “not to enslave the Gauls, but to incorporate them in the Empire; to extend the privileges of Roman citizens among them, and among all the undegenerate races of the European provinces. He punished no one. He was gracious and considerate to all, and he so impressed the central tribes by his judgment and his moderation that they served him faithfully in all his coming troubles, and never more, even in the severest temptation, made an effort to recover their independence.”

Cæsar’s own narrative closes with the great and decisive victory at Alesia. The short remainder of the story is told by his faithful officer and friend, Hirtius Pansa, in the Eighth Book. A rising of the Carnutes and Bituriges in the west, undeterred by the fate of Avaricum, was crushed by a rapid winter march across the Loire. The Remi in the north, who alone of the Gauls had been steadily true to Rome, were attacked in retaliation by the Bellovaci under Commius, but were crushed in a single battle, and Commius fled to Germany. The final rally of the patriot party was made at the stronghold of Uxellodunum, on a branch of the Garonne, in the southwest; but this was also reduced by a siege of extreme difficulty, and the one act of vindictive barbarity which stains Cæsar’s record was inflicted after its fall by cutting off the hands of the desperate defenders who had held out to the last for the independence of Gaul. Cæsar then “invited the chiefs of all the tribes to come to him. He spoke to them of the future which lay open to them as members of a splendid imperial state. He gave them magnificent presents. He laid no impositions either on the leaders or their people; and they went to their homes personally devoted to their conqueror, contented with their condition, and resolved to maintain the peace which was now established,—a unique experience in political history.”

GROUPS OF RELATED WORDS.

N.B. — These lists are not intended to be exhaustive, and pupils may do well to add to them as they increase their vocabularies.

1

acer, *sharp, violent.*
acriter, *violently.*
acerbus, *bitter, cruel.*
acerbe, *bitterly.*
acerbe ferre, *take hard.*
acerbitas, *bitterness, suffering.*
acervus, *heap.*
acies, *sharp edge, line.*
[acus, *needle.*]
acuio, *sharpen.*
acutus, *sharp.*

2

alacer, *lively.*
alacriter, *promptly.*
alacritas, *readiness.*

3

aedes, *fireplace, house.*
aedificium, *building.*
aedifico, *build.*
aestas, *heat.*
aestivus, *hot.*
aestus (boiling), *tide.*
aestuarium, *tideway.*

4

aequus, *even, level.*
iniquus, *uneven, unfavorable.*
iniquitas, *unfavorableness.*

aequitas, *fairness.*
aequalis, *equal.*
aequaliter, *evenly.*
aequinoctium, *equinox.*
aequo, *equalize.*
adaequo, *make equal.*

5

ago, *drive.*
actuarius, *fast sailing.*
agmen, *line of march.*
ager, *field.*
cogo, *compel.*
cogito, *think.*
adigo, *force.*
agito, *pursue.*
examino, *weigh.*

6

alo, *foster.*
altus, *grown high.*
altitudo, *height.*

7

alius, *other.*
alienus, *of another.*
alieno, *alienate.*
alias, *elsewhere.*
aliter, *otherwise.*
alio, *elsewhither.*

8

animus (breath), *soul*, *mind*.
anima, *breath*.
animal, *animal*.
exanimis, *out of breath*.

9

ante, *before*.
antea, *before*.
antiquus, *ancient*.
antiquitus, *anciently*.

10

ars, *art*.
articulus, *joint*.
arma, *arms*.
armo, *equip*.
armamentum, *rigging*.
armatura, *equipment*.

11

arx, *citadel*.
arceo, *keep off*.
co-erceo, *restrain*.
exerceo, *exercise*.
exercitus, *training*, *army*.
exercitatio, *exercise*.

12

augeo, *increase*.
auctor, *responsible party*.
auctoritas, *influence*.
autumnus, *harvest season*.
auxillum, *help*.
auxiliaris, *helping*.
auxilior, *assist*.

13

cado, *fall*.
casus, *fall*, *chance*.
cadaver, *body*.
caedo, *fell*.
caedes, *murder*.

accido, *be fall*.
accido, *cut into*.
concido, *fall down*.
concido, *cut down*.
incido, *happen*.
incido, *cut into*.
occido, *fall*.
occasio, *occasion*.

14

capio, *take*.
captus, *capacity*.
captivus, *captive*.
accipio, *receive*.
decipio, *deceive*.
excipio, *take up*.
excepto, *catch up*.

15

caput, *head*.
capillus, *hair*.
anceps, *double-headed*.
praeceps, *head-foremost*.

16

cerno, *separate*, *distinguish*.
certus, *fixed*, *certain*.
crimen, *charge*.
certe, *surely*.
 [certo, *decide by contest*.]
certamen, *contest*.
concerto, *contend*.
decerno, *decide*.
decerto, *decide by contest*.
decretum, *decision*, *decree*.
discerno, *decide*.
discrimen, *decision*.

17

circum, *around*.
circa, *circiter*, *about*.
circinus, *compasses*.
circuitus, *circuit*.

18

colo, *till*.
cultus, *cultivation*.
cultura, *cultivation, culture*.
[colonus, *husbandman*.]
colonia, *colony*.
incolo, *inhabit*.
incola, *inhabitant*.

19

conscius, *conscious*.
[consciens, *being conscious*.]
conscientia, *conscience*.
conscisco, *resolve*.
inscius, *not knowing*.
insciens, *unknowing*.

20

consto, *be established (stand firm)*.
constans, *firm*.
constanter, *firmly*.
constantia, *firmness*.
consisto, *take a stand*.
constituo, *establish*.

21

consul, *consul*.
consulatus, *consulship*.
consulo, *consult*.
consilium, *plan*.
consultum, *decree*.
consulto, *by determination, designedly*.
consulto, *consult*.

22

cresco, *grow*.
creber, *thick*.
crebro, *frequently*.
creo, *make to grow, create*.
[Ceres, *goddess of growth*.]

23

curro, *run*.
currus, *chariot*.

cursus, *course*.
concurro, *run together*.
concursum, *rush*.
concurso, *rush together*.
decurro, *run down*.
excursio, *sally*.
incurro, *rush upon*.
incursio, *attack*.
incursus, *rush*.
percurro, *run along*.
succurro, *run to help*.

24

de, *down from*.
desuper, *from above*.
deinde, *then*.
demum, *at last (farthest down)*.
denique, *at last*.
deterior, *worse*.

25

defatiscor, *give out (cf. 'busted')*.
defessus, *tired out*.
defatigo, *wear out*.
defatigatio, *exhaustion*.

26

dico, *say*.
indico, *ordain*.
index, *informer*.
indicium, *information*.
indico, *give information*.
iudex, *judge*.
iudicium, *trial*.
[vindex, *avenger*.]
vindico, *avenge*.
dictum, *thing said*.
dictio, *pleading*.
dico, *adjudge*.
dicio, *sway ('say so')*.
condicio, *terms*.

27

dies, *day*.
 diu, *long, all day*.
 interdiu, *by day*.
 diutinus, *long continued*.
 diurnus, *by day, daily*.
 diuturnus, *long*.
 diuturnitas, *length of time*.
 biduum, *two days*.
 triduum, *three days*.

28

dies, *day*.
 cotidie, *every day*.
 cotidianus, *daily*.
 hodie, *to-day*.
 pridie, *the day before*.
 postero die, *the next day*.
 postridie, *the day after*.
 [perendie, *day after to-morrow*.]
 perendinus (adjective).

29

do, *give*.
 dedo, *give over*.
 deditus, *devotion*.
 deditio, *surrender*.
 dediticius, *surrendered*.
 reddo, *give back*.
 trado, *hand over*.
 donum, *gift*.
 dono, *present*.

30

duo, *two*.
 bis, *twice*.
 bini, *two apiece*.
 bellum, *for duellum, war*.
 dubius, *doubtful*.
 dubium, *doubt*.
 dubito, *doubt*.
 dubitatio, *doubt*.

duplex, *double*.
 duplico, *double*.

31

emo (*take*), *buy*.
 eximius, *exceptional*.
 exemplum, *specimen*.

32

equus, *horse*.
 eques, *horseman*.
 equester, *of cavalry*.
 equitatus, *cavalry*.
 [equito], *ride*.
 adequito, *ride up*.
 perequito, *ride over*.

33

ex, *out*.
 exter, *outer*.
 extra, *outside*.
 extremus, *last*.

34

facio, *make, do*.
 beneficus, *well doing, beneficent*.
 facilis, *easy (to do)*.
 facultas, *facility*.
 difficilis, *difficult*.
 difficultas, *difficulty*.
 difficulter, *with difficulty*.
 factio, *employment, party*.
 facies, *face (the 'make')*.
 factum, *deed*.
 facinus, *deed (usually evil)*.
 artifex, *artist*.
 conficio, *make up*.
 perficio, *accomplish*.

35

fides, *faith*.
 fidelis, *faithful*.
 perfidus, *faithless*.
 perfidia, *perfidy*.

fiducia, confidence.

foedus, treaty.

infidelis, unfaithful.

confido, trust.

36

finis, bound, boundary.

fines, country.

finio, set bounds.

finitimus, neighboring.

adfinis, connection.

adfinitas, connection (by marriage).

confinis, adjacent.

confinium, neighborhood.

definio, set limits, fix.

37

fors, chance.

fortuito, accidentally.

fortuna, fortune.

fortunatus, fortunate.

38

fruor, enjoy.

fructus, enjoyment.

fructuosus, fruitful.

fruges, grain.

frumentum, grain.

frumentor, forage.

frumentatio, foraging.

frumentarius, of grain.

39

fugio, fly.

fuga, flight.

fugo, put to flight.

fugitivus, a runaway.

effugio, escape.

perfuga, refugee.

perfugio, escape to.

perfugium, refuge.

profugio, flee forth.

refugio, run away.

40

gero, carry, carry on.

res gestae, exploits.

[*aggero, heap up.*]

agger, earthworks.

congero, heap together.

suggestus, raised mound.

41

icio, throw.

iaculum, javelin.

iaceo, lie.

iactura, loss.

iacto, toss about.

42

is, this.

item, likewise.

ita, so.

itaque, therefore.

iterum, again.

idem, the same.

ideo, therefore.

ipse, himself.

eo, thither.

ea, that way.

43

iubeo, order.

iussu, by order.

iniussu, without orders.

44

ius, right.

iudex, judge.

iudicium, judgment.

iudico, judge.

adiudico, assign.

deiudico, decide (between).

iniuria, wrong.

iustus, just.

iustitia, justice.

iuro, swear.

coniuro, *conspire*.
coniuratio, *conspiracy*.

45

[lego, *choose*.]
legio, *levy, legion*.
delectus, *levy*.
legionarius, *soldier*.
lex, *law*.
[lēgo, *assign by law*.]
legatus, *lieutenant*.
legatio, *embassy*.
deligo, *select*.
diligo, *love*.
intellego, *understand*.

46

[libet], *it pleases*.
libenter, *willingly*.
liber, *free*.
liberi, *children*.
libertas, *freedom*.
liberalis, *generous*.
liberaliter, *generously*.
liberalitas, *generosity*.
libero, *set free*.

47

mane, *in the morning*.
maturus, *early, ripe*.
mature, *early*.
maturo, *make haste*.
maturesco, *ripen*.

48

memini, *remember*.
mens, *mind*.
[demens], *mad*.
dementia, *madness*.
mentio, *mention*.
[memor], *mindful*.
memoria, *memory*.
moneo, *remind*.

reminiscor, *remember*.
commemoro, *mention*.

49

moveo, *move*.
motus, *motion*.
mobilis, *mobile*.
mobilitate, *easily*.
mobilitas, *mobility*.
momentum, *means of motion*.
commuto, *change*.

50

nascor, *be born*.
natus, *birth*.
natalis, *of birth*.
nativus, *native*.
natura, *nature*.
natio, *race*.

51

navis, *ship*.
navicula, *boat*.
navalis, *naval*.
nauta, *sailor*.
nauticus, *of a sailor*.
navigo, *sail*.
navigium, *vessel*.
navigatio, *voyage*.

52

nosco, *learn*.
novi, *be acquainted with*.
notus, *known*.
notitia, *acquaintance*.
ignotus, *unknown*.
nobilis, *famous*.
ignobilis, *ignoble*.
nobilitas, *nobility*.
nomen, *name*.
nomino, *name*.
nominatim, *by name*.
ignominia, *disgrace*.

cognosco, *investigate*.
ignosco, *pardon*.

53

nuntius, *messenger, news*.
nuntio, *announce*.
denuntio, *warn*.
enuntio, *report*.
renuntio, *bring back word*.
pronuntio, *make known*.

54

obses, *hostage*.
obsideo, *blockade*.
obsidio, *blockade*.
obsessio, *blockade*.

55

[Ops], *goddess of abundance*.
opes, *resources*.
copia, *abundance*.
copiae, *resources*.
copiosus, *well supplied*.
inops, *poor*.
inopia, *want*.

56

[paciscor, *agree*.]
pango, *join*.
pactum, *agreement*.
pax, *peace*.
pacō, *pacify*.
pacatus, *subject*.

57

pario, *acquire*.
parens, *parent*.
parento, *sacrifice to ancestors*.

58

ex-perior, *try*.
peritus, *experienced*.
periculum, *danger (trial)*.

periculosus, *dangerous*.
periclitor, *be in peril*.
aperio, *open*.
reperio, *find*.

59

paro, *prepare*.
impero, *order*.
imperium, *power*.
pareo, *be on hand, obey*.

60

parum, *too little*.
parvus, *small*.
parvulus, *very small*.
paucus, *few*.
paucitas, *small number*.
paulus, *small*.
paulatim, *little by little*.
paulum, *a little*.
paululum, *a very little*.
paulo, *a little*.
paulisper, *a little while*.

61

[pasco, *feed*.]
pabulum, *forage*.
pabulor, *forage*.
pabulatio, *foraging*.
pabulator, *forager*.
pater, *father*.
patrius, *belonging to a father*.
patronus, *patron, protector*.
patruus, *uncle (on the father's side)*.

62

pes, *foot*.
pedes, *footman (man on foot)*.
peditatus, *infantry*.
pedester, *of men on foot*.
pedalis, *a foot long, etc*.
impedio, *entangle*.
impedimentum, *hindrance*.

impeditus, hampered.
expedio, disentangle.
expeditus, unincumbered.
expeditio, expedition.

63

pleo, fill.
compleo, fill up.
expleo, fill out.
plenus, full.
plene, fully.
plerique, most of.
plerumque, for the most part.
completus, filled up.
expletus, filled out.
plus, more.
plurimus, most.
complures, very many.

also

plebs, the populace.
populus, people.
publicus, of the people.
publice, publicly.
publico, confiscate.

64

porta, gate.
porto, carry.
adporto, bring in.
comporto, bring together.
deporto, carry away.
exporto, carry off.
reporto, bring back.
supporto, bring up.
transporto, carry over.
portus, harbor.
portorium, customs.

65

[putus], clean.
puto, clean up, reckon, think.
[purus, clean.]

purgo, clear, excuse.
computo, reckon.
disputo, discuss.
disputatio, discussion.

66

pro, before.
probus, good.
improbus, bad.
prope, near.
propinquus, neighboring.
propinquitas, nearness.
protinus, straight away, 'right away.'
propter, near by, on account of.
propterea, for this reason.

67

prae, in front.
praeustus, burnt at the end.
praeter, along side, beside.
praeterea, besides.
praeterita, bygones.
prior, before.
primus, first.
pridie, the day before.

68

rego, direct, rule.
rectus, straight.
regio, direction.
regnum, kingdom.
regno, reign.
rex, king.
regius, royal.
[regula, rule.]
dirigo, direct.
directus, straight.
directe, straight.
pergo, keep on.

69

sancio, bind.
sacer, sanctus, sacred.

sacerdos, *priest*.
 sacramentum, *oath*.
 sacrificium, *sacrifice*.

70

seco, *cut*.
 sectio, *a cutting, a lot*.
 sectura, *mine*.
 securis, *axe*.

71

sequor, *follow*.
 secundus, *second*.
 secus, *otherwise*.
 secius, *less*.
 sector, *pursue*.
 socius, *companion*.
 societas, *society*.

72

[sero, *bind*.]
 servus, *bondman*.
 servio, *be a slave*.
 servo, *guard*.
 conservo, *preserve*.
 servilis, *servile*.
 servitus, *slavery*.
 sermo, *speech* (connected discourse).
 praesertim, *especially* (at the head
 of the row).

73

similis, *like*.
 simul, *at the same time*.
 simultas, *quarrel*.
 simulo, *pretend*.
 dissimulo, *pretend not*.
 simulatio, *pretence*.
 similitudo, *likeness*.
 simulacrum, *image*.

74

species, *appearance*.
 conspicio, *behold*.
 conspectus, *sight*.

conspicor, *espy*.
 adspectus, *view*.
 specto, *gaze at*.
 exspecto, *expect*.
 speculator, *watch*.
 speculator, *spy*.

75

sto, *stand*.
 statio, *station*.
 statim, *forthwith*.
 status, *position*.
 statuo, *set up*.
 constituo, *establish*.
 stabilis, *stable*.
 stabilitas, *steadiness*.
 stabilio, *make firm*.

76

sub, *under, up*.
 superus, *above*.
 super, *over*.
 superior, *superior*.
 supero, *overtop*.
 supra, *over*.
 summus, } *highest*.
 supremus, }
 summa, *total*.
 superbus, *proud*.
 superbe, *arrogantly*.

77

tam, *so*.
 tamen, *nevertheless*.
 tametsi, *although*.
 tandem, *at last*.
 tantus, *so great*.
 tantulus, *so little*.
 tantum, } *only* (so much and
 tantummodo, } *no more*).

78

tango, *touch*.
 contingo, *touch, happen*.

contagio, *contact*.
 contaminio, *taint*.
 integer, *untouched, whole*.
 redintegratio, *renew*.

79

tempus, *time*.
 tempestas, *weather*.
 tempero, *control*.
 temperantia, *self-control*.

80

teneo, *hold*.
 tener, *tender*.
 tenuis, *thin*.
 tenuitas, *scantiness*.
 tenuiter, *scantily*.
 contineo, *hold together*.
 continens, *continuous (a continent)*.
 continenter, *without stopping*.
 continentia, *self-control*.
 continuus, *continuous*.
 continuo, *forthwith*.
 continuo, *continue*.
 continuatio, *continuance*.

also

tendo, *stretch*.
 tento, *try*.
 contendo, *contend*.
 contentio, *contest*.
 intendo, *strain*.
 ostendo, *show*.
 ostentatio, *ostentation*.

81

[tribus, *tribe*.]
 tribunus, *tribune*.
 tribuo, *assign*.
 tributum, *tribute*.
 distribuo, *distribute*.
 attribuo, *assign*.

82

utor, *use*.
 utilis, *useful*.
 utilitas, *advantage*.
 usus, *use*.
 usitor, *use*.
 usitatus, *customary*.

83

verto, *turn*.
 versus, *towards*.
 versus, *verse*.
 universus, *all together*.
 verso, *deal with*.
 versor, *engage in*.
 avertio, *turn aside*.
 advertio, *turn to*.
 adversus, *turned towards, opposed*.
 adversarius, *opponent*.
 animadvertio, *attend to*.
 converto, *turn about*.
 revertio, *turn back*.
 rursus, *back, again*.
 transversus, *across*.

84

vetus, *old*.
 veteranus, *veteran*.
 inveterasco, *grow old in*.

85

vir, *man*.
 virgo, *maiden*.
 virtus, *manliness*.
 viritim, *man by man*.

86

volo, *wish*.
 voluntas, *will*.
 voluntarius, *volunteer*.
 voltus, *countenance*.
 voluptas, *pleasure*.
 malo, *wish more*.
 nolo, *not wish, wish not*.

LATIN COMPOSITION.



I. COLLOQUIAL EXERCISES.

THESE exercises are put in the form of dialogues (**conloquia**) for rapid oral drill in forms and pronunciation. They are based upon the text and introduce its vocabulary, construction, and idioms. In the first few the questions and answers are given in full, to serve as models for those that follow, in which the questions only are given. In the latter the student will answer the questions in Latin after a careful study of the text. Questions should not be answered by simply 'Yes' or 'No,' but fully, as in the models. The models should be carefully studied and memorized.

1. A Letter.

¹ Ecce, aliquid novī habeō.

Quid est?

Epistula Latīna ā puerō quī hiemat in Ītaliā cum parentibus.

Gravisne est hiems in Ītaliā?

Minimē. Illīc nivem rārō vident et rīdet, ut est apud poētās, caelum.

Quam iūcundum! Et amoenane sunt loca?

Amoenissima. Illīc est Vesuvius mōns, illīc multae urbēs clārae, illīc pulchrae īnsulae in marī sitae.

Quid agit puer?

Linguae Ītalōrum et linguae Latīnae puer cotīdiē operam dat.

¹ See here, I have something new.

2. Cock-fighting.

Quae pūblica certāmina Athēniēnsēs īstituērunt?

Gallōrum pūblica certāmina īstituērunt Athēniēnsēs.

N. B. A superior figure after a word refers to that word alone; when placed before a word it refers to the next two or more words.

Cūius cōnsiliō?

Themistoclis cōnsiliō.

Quid Themistoclē vīdit cum bellō Persicō iter in hostīs faciēbat?

Duōs gallōs vīdit in viā dīmīcantīs.

Quōs ad spectāculum convocāvit?

Mīlītēs suōs ad spectāculum convocāvit.

Quam ōrātiōnem tum habuit?

“Hī gallī nōn prō patriā et cēterīs rēbus dīmīcant; dē nullā rē dīmīcant nisi dē victōriā.”

Nōne¹ excitāvit haec ōrātiō animōs mīlitum?

Excitāvit,² nec impetum eōrum hostēs sustinēre poterant.

¹ **Nōne**: an interrogative particle commonly used when the speaker expects an affirmative answer to his question. Here ‘Did not?’ etc.

² The usual manner of answering a question in Latin is to repeat the verb of the question for ‘Yes,’ and with a negative for ‘No.’

3. Gladiators.

Quibus ex spectāculis Rōmānī māgnam voluptātem capiēbant?

Gladiātōriis ē spectāculis māgnam voluptātem capiēbant.

Hāc in rē nōne cernēbātur bellicōsum populī Rōmānī ingenium?

Nōn tam bellicōsum populī Rōmānī ingenium quam prāva volgi indolēs.

Quā dē causā primō pūgnae gladiātōriae ēdēbantur?

Primō inter mortuōrum exsequiās ēdēbantur.

Posteā quī haec spectācula ēdēbant?

Eī quī magistrātum petēbant.

Quot paria Caesar simul in harēnam mīsīt?

Trecenta vīgintī paria Caesar simul in harēnam mīsīt.

Quae genera hominum ferē adscribēbantur gregī gladiātōrum?

Ferē barbarī captīvī et servī sed multī etiam aliī.

Quālia arma eis erant?

Varia et multa.

Sine dubiō permultī miserē periērunt.

Periērunt,¹ sed nōn nullī dīvitiās hōc tam atrōcī quaestū cōsecūtī sunt.

¹ Yes, or they did.

Quibus verbis salutabant Caesarem gladiatōrēs?

“Avē, Caesar, moritūrī tē salutant.”

4. The Horse and the Ass.

Quae nova fābula est haec?

Dē equō et asinō haec fābula est.

¹ Quid erat asinō?

Onere pressus asinus erat.

Cūr nōn equum rogāvit ut aliquā oneris parte sē levāret?

Rogāvit, sed ille repudiāvit comitis precēs.

Quid tum accidit?

Asinus paulō post languōre consūptus in viā conruit et efflāvit animam.

Quid dē sarcinīs quās asinus portāverat?

Sarcinīs agitātor equum onerāvit atque insuper pelle asinō detrāctā.

² Quō animō equus hōc ferēbat?

Ille dēplōrāns fortunam suam, “Quam stulte,” inquit, “contempsī comitis precēs!”

Quid sī asinō obtemperāvisset?

Tum nōn gravissimum onus portāvisset coactus.

¹ *What was the matter with?* etc.

² *Freely. How did the horse like that?*

5. The Wonderful Deliverance of Simonides.

Quis erat Simōnidēs?

Poēta Graecōrum ēgregius Simōnidēs erat.

Ubi habitābat Simōnidēs?

Diū Cranone in Thessaliā habitābat, et ibi aliquandō apud Scopam cēnābat.

Eratne Scopās quoque poēta?

Minimē, sed fortunātus homō quī paulō ante in pugilum certāmine māgnam victōriam reportāverat.

Nōne carmen cantāvit poēta in laudem victōris?

Cantāvit, et piō animō etiam Castorem et Pollūcem, certāminum patrōnōs, celebrāvit.

Nōne Scopās voluptātem ē carmine cēpit?

Minimē, sed improbāvit, invidiā commōtus, carmen, et recūsāvit dīmīdium praemī prōmissī.

Nōnne īra poētam mōvit?

Mōvit, sed is cēlāvit īram, et paulō post duo iuvenēs eum ēvocāvērunt.

Quī erant hī iuvenēs?

Castor et Pollūx; sed ille eōs nōn vīdit.

Quā rē nōn? Nōnne ante iānuam erant?

Nēminem ante iānuam invenit, sed iam vērō horribilī post tergum fragōre conturbātur.

Quid acciderat?

Obrutus erat tyrannus cum convīvīs omnibus trīstissimā ruīnā, sed mīrificē servātus est pius poēta.

6. The Roman Dinner.

1. Ubi prīscī Rōmānī cum familiā cēnābant? 2. Quādo mōs erat dominō cum hospitibus in trīcliniō cēnāre? 3. Quid rē vērā erat trīclīnium? 4. Quot convīvae in trīcliniō accumbere poterant? 5. Nōnne Rōmānī ad mēnsam cōnsidere solēbant? 6. Quot trīclīnia erant? 7. Quot in partīs Rōmānī dīvidebant cēnam? 8. Quae prīma pars vocābātur? 9. Quae altera? 10. Quae tertia? 11. Quod prōverbium erat Rōmānīs dēductum ab mēnsae mōribus? 12. Quī cēnam ministrābant? 13. Num¹ dīvitēs ēlegantēsque Rōmānī cibum digitīs capiēbant?

¹ Just as **nōnne** puts a question in the form for an affirmative answer, — 'Is he not?' 'Do they not?' etc., — so **num** usually looks to a negative reply, — 'He is n't, is he?' 'They don't, do they?' etc.; see notes, 52 7.

7. Augustus and the Veteran.

1. In equō an pedibus per urbem īre solēbat Augustus? 2. Quō modō adeuntis excipiēbat? 3. Quis eum convēnit? 4. Quā dē causā ille auxilium ab Imperātōre petivit? 5. Quem patrōnum ēlēgit Augustus? 6. Quid tum veterānus exclāmāvit? 7. Nōnne est mōtus hīs verbīs Imperātor? 8. Quis dēmum patrōnus veterānī factus est?

8. The Wolf and the Dog.

1. Eratne lupus bene saginātus? 2. Ubi canis habitābat? 3. Num famē canis ēnecābātur? 4. Nōnne lupō licuit eādē felicitātē

frui? 5. Dum ūnā eunt, quid animadvertit lupus? 6. Quid quaesivit lupus? 7. Quā dē causā interdiū canem adligābant? 8. Quid dixit lupus postquam vestīgia collāris vīdit?

9. The Lion and the Mouse.

1. Quid mūscoli petulantēs faciēbant? 2. Quō modō mūsculus excitāvit leōnem dormientem? 3. Nōne¹ leō eum comprehendit? 4. Num¹ leō eum dēvorāvit? 5. Paulō post quid leōnī accidit, nōn satis cautē praedam vestīgantī? 6. Potuitne sē liberāre? 7. Quis procul eum rugientem audīvit? 8. Cūr grātō animō erat mūsculus in leōnem? 9. Quem ad modum leōnem liberāvit mūsculus? 10. Nōne leō praeclārum misericordiae suae praemium reportāvit?

¹ See 6, foot-note 1.

10. The Dancing Horses.

1. Ubi erat Sybaris? 2. Corinthiōsne incolae lūxuriā ferē superābant? 3. Nōne artem bellicam contemnēbant? 4. Quibus rēbus vacābant? 5. Quam ad exercitātiōnem lepidē equōs instituerant? 6. Quī erant finitimī Sybarītis? 7. Quid Crotōniātae, cum bellum gererent cum illis, in aciem sēcum dūxerunt? 8. Quam diū silēbant illi? 9. Quandō cantāverunt numerōs ad saltandum aptōs? 10. His audītis, nōne equī Sybarītārum saltāre coepērunt? 11. Quid dominīs accidit?

11. Augustus and the Raven.

1. Quō annō Antōnium superāvit Augustus? 2. Post hanc victōriam reportātā,¹ quis occurrit illi triumphantī? 3. Quālem avem homō manū tenēbat? 4. Quid dixit corvus? 5. Quantī Caesar officiōsam avem ēmit? 6. Quās aliās avīs similiter salūtantis ēmit? 7. Quis hīs exemplis commōtus est ut ad eandem vōcem corvum institueret? 8. Quid saepe avī nōn respondentī dīcēbat? 9. Eratne hōc dictum Rōmānīs in prōverbiō? 10. Postquam corvus suum illud didicit, quō properat sūtor? 11. Cūr ad eum properat? 12. Audītā vōce, quid dixit ille? 13. Quid deinde ēvēnit? 14. Nōne haec rēs rīsum excussit Augustō? 15. Quantī tum avem sūtōris ēmit?

¹ Perf. partic., but in English *was won*.

12, 13: The Wolf and the Lamb.

1. Quō lupus et āgnus vēnerant? 2. Cūr illūc vēnerant? 3. Ubi lupus stābat? 4. Ubi āgnus stābat? 5. Quid improbus latrō quae-rēbat? 6. Quid latrō āgnō dīxit? 7. Quid inde respondit āgnus? 8. Quid deinde lupus dīxit? 9. Quid deinde āgnus? 10. Quid postrēmō lupus dīxit? 11. Quid ad extrēmum lupus āgnō fēcīt¹? 12. Quis poēta hanc fābulam nārrat?

¹ In English *do with, or to*.

14. The Rivalry of Two Painters.

1. Quō saeculō Zeuxis et Parrhasius flōrēbant? 2. Erantne hī virī poētae? 3. Quod certāmen hī quondam īstituērunt? 4. Quam pictūram Zeuxis pīnserat? 5. Exaequāvitne nātūrae vēritātem? 6. Quid Parrhasius pīnserat? 7. Quod cum Zeuxis vidēret, quid putāvit? 8. Quid proinde flāgitāvit? 9. Quid respondit Parrhasius? 10. Quis palmam accēpit? 11. Cūr Zeuxis illī palmam dedit?

15. The Fox and the Monkey.

1. Quam bellē sīmia in bēstiārum conventū saltāvit? 2. Nōne stultissimum hōc erat? 3. Quid prīmum volpēs ēgit? 4. Quibus verbīs tentāvit sīmiam? 5. Quid interrogāvit sīmia? 6. Ubi thē-saurum abditum esse volpēs dīxit? 7. A quō thē-saurus volpī erat indicātus? 8. Ad quem thē-saurus vidēbātur pertinēre? 9. Quid sīmia respondit verbīs volpīs? 10. Quō sīmia abdūcī volēbat? 11. Quam ob rem clandestīnīs sēmītīs volpēs sīmiam abdūcēbat? 12. Quid, tōtā silvā peragrātā, volpēs mōnstrāvit? 13. Quid inde volpēs dīxit? 14. Nōne illūc penetrābat sīmia? 15. Num quidquam invēnit? 16. Quid deinde subitō accidit? 17. Quid sērō sēnsit sīmia? 18. Cūr volpēs bēstiās convocāvit? 19. Quid cīs dīxit?

16. The River-God and the Golden Axe.

1. Quis nāvem resarciēbat? 2. Ubi erat nāvis? 3. Quem ad modum faber secūrīm āmisīt? 4. Quō modō ferēbat iactūram? 5. Quis audīvit miserābilis eius vōcēs? 6. Quid interrogāvit deus fluvī?

7. Quid respondit faber? 8. Hīs audītis quid deus fēcit? 9. Paulō post revertēns quid dextrā gerēbat? 10. Nōne haec erat secūris quam amiserat faber? 11. Cūius generis erat haec secūris? 12. Cūius generis erat altera secūris quam deus reportāvit et exhibuit fabrō? 13. Negāvitne vir probus hās esse suās? 14. Postrēmō quālem secūrim deus reportāvit? 15. Nōne hanc laetus āgnōvit ille? 16. Quid proinde fēcit deus hāc probitāte dēlectātus? 17. Quō modō alius quīdam operam dedit ut similī locuplētārētur fortunā? 18. Nōne eī adparuit deus? 19. Cum auream ostenderet secūrim, quid ille respondit? 20. Quid tum deus irātus dixit? 21. Hīs dictīs quō ivit? 22. Nōne ille oleum et operam perdidit?

II. EXERCISES FOR ORAL AND WRITTEN TRANSLATION.

17. The Husbandman and his Sons. (*Oral.*)

Subject Nominative, § 173; B. 166; G. 203; H. 368.

Predicate Noun, § 176, 185; B. 167-8; G. 205-6, 325; H. 362.

Accusative, Direct Object, § 237; B. 172; G. 330; H. 371.

1. The husbandman was an old man. 2. The husbandman called his sons together. 3. Sons sometimes quarrel. 4. The sons bring a bundle of twigs. 5. They could not break this bundle. 6. The old man distributed the twigs, one to each. 7. These were quickly broken. 8. Harmony is strong. 9. Discord is weak.

18. Demosthenes and the Judges. (*Oral.*)

Apposition, § 183-4; B. 169; G. 320-1; H. 363-4.

Predicate Adjective, § 186-7; B. 234; G. 211; H. 438-9.

Dative, Indirect Object, § 225-6; B. 187; G. 345-6; H. 384 ff.

1. Demosthenes was famous. 2. Demosthenes, the orator, was defending a certain man. 3. The jury (*iudices*) was not very attentive. 4. "Give me your attention," said he. 5. "I will tell you a good story. 6. A young man¹ was riding on an ass from Athens to Megara. 7. In the middle of the journey the heat became severe. 8. The trees did not afford shade to the youth. 9. So² he sat down in the shade of the animal. 10. But the driver forbade this. 11. 'You hired the ass,' said he, 'but not the shadow.' 12. A quarrel arose

between them. 13. They fought even with their fists. 14. At last they went to court." 15. The jury was now listening attentively. 16. But Demosthenes suddenly left the stand. 17. The jury asked for the rest of the story. 18. The orator did not tell it to them. 19. They were not willing³ to listen to the case of a man in danger of his life.

¹ Latin, 'was being carried by.' ² *itaque*. ³ Form of *volō* with the complementary infin.

19. The Death of Pompey. (*Oral*.)

Ablative Absolute Denoting Time, § 255; B. 227; G. 409-10; H. 431.

Ablative of Degree of Difference, § 250; B. 223; G. 403; H. 423.

1. Pompey, after giving up his plan of going to Syria, put¹ a vast sum of money aboard his ships. 2. When he had put two thousand armed men on board, he came to Pelusium. 3. King Ptolemy was a boy in years. 4. He was waging war with his sister Cleopatra. 5. She was a² few years older (*senior*). 6. A few months before, he had driven her from the throne. 7. The camp of Cleopatra was not far distant from his camp. 8. Ptolemy, the king, did not receive Pompey, his father's friend. 9. Pompey's messengers, after their duty was done, talked very kindly to the soldiers of the king. 10. When this was known, the king's friends began to fear Pompey. 11. They commanded Pompey to come to the king. 12. ³A few hours later Pompey was killed.

¹ Latin, 'a great weight of bronze.' ² Latin, 'older by a few years.'

³ Latin, 'afterwards (*post*) by a few hours (*hōra*).'

20. Niobe and her Children. (*Written*.)

1. Niobe, a most beautiful woman, was the wife of Amphion, the king of Thebes. 2. She was not only very beautiful, but also very proud, because she had seven sons and seven daughters. 3. Once, when the Thebans were preparing sacrifices to Latona, the mother of Apollo and Diana, Niobe said, "Latona has only two children, I have fourteen. Why don't you make sacrifice to me?" 4. ¹On hearing these words, Latona, roused to anger,² besought her children³ to

avenge the insult. 5. And so all of Niobe's fourteen children were killed, and ⁴ she herself was turned to stone.

¹ Latin, 'these words having been heard.'

² Latin, 'by anger.'

³ An *ut*-clause of purpose.

⁴ *ipsa*.

21. Cræsus, King of Lydia. (*Oral.*)

I. Subjunctive of Purpose: Pure Purpose with *ut* or *nē*, § 317; B. 282; G. 545; H. 497. II; Purpose Expressed by the Supine, § 302; B. 340; G. 435; H. 546.

1. Cræsus was king of the Lydians. 2. The fame of his riches had filled both Europe and Asia. 3. Many came ¹ to see the king. 4. Among these was Solon, who was counted among the seven sages of Greece. 5. Cræsus asked him: "² Am I not the most blest of all men?" 6. "No one is happy before he is dead," said Solon. 7. Soon after, the king found out ³ that this was true. 8. Cyrus, the king of the Medes and Persians, was at that time terrifying the neighboring nations by his victories. 9. In order to check him, Cræsus was preparing for war. 10. At the same time he sent messengers to Delphi ¹ to ask about the issue of the war. 11. The god replied: "Cræsus will destroy a great empire."

¹ Express the purpose in two ways.

² Notice that this is a direct question, ●

expecting an affirmative answer.

³ An infinitive clause.

2. Sequence of Tenses, § 285-7; B. 267-8; G. 509 ff.; H. 491 ff.

Subjunctive of Pure Result with *ut* and *ut nōn*, § 319; B. 284; G. 552; H. 500. II.

I. ¹ Upon obtaining this reply, Cræsus hoped for victory. 2. He invaded the kingdom of Cyrus in order to fight with him. 3. ² But the issue of the battle was such that neither was victorious. 4. ³ In the second battle, however, ⁴ Cyrus won the victory from the Lydians. 5. Then Cræsus, being taken captive, is condemned to be burned. 6. The wood is brought and he is bound. 7. Suddenly ⁵ he called "O Solon!" in a loud voice. 8. And told Cyrus about the words of the Athenian. 9. Cyrus was so moved that he set Cræsus free. 10. And before his death he advised his son ⁶ to preserve the old man's friendship.

¹ Abl. abs.

² See text.

³ Latin, 'by another battle.'

⁴ *autem*, always.

postpositive.

⁵ *subitō*.

⁶ Subj. of purpose.

22. An Epitome of Roman History. (*Oral.*)

Accusative of Extent and Duration, § 256-7; B. 181; G. 335-6; H. 379.
Ablative of Time, § 256; B. 230-1; G. 393; H. 429.

1. Rome was founded in the 753d year before Christ. 2. Kings ruled the state for about 250 years. 3. In the 509th year two consuls were chosen. 4. There were two, in order that one might check the power of the other. 5. The Romans kept up this custom for nearly five centuries. 6. Learned men divide this period of time into two equal parts. 7. In the middle of the third century the Romans had subdued the nations of Italy. 8. They declared war upon the Carthaginians in the year 264. 9. The First Punic War was finished in the 241st year. 10. The Second Punic War began in the 218th year. 11. It lasted ¹ 18 years. 12. The Third Punic War lasted only ² three years. 13. Carthage was destroyed in the 146th year before Christ. 14. Corinth was destroyed in the same year. 15. Cæsar was killed in the 44th year. 16. The empire was established by Augustus in the 31st year.

¹ *dūrō*.² *tantum*.23. The Omen of the Puppy. (*Written.*)

1. Æmilius Paulus, the consul, whose father fell at ¹ Cannæ, obtained Macedonia as his province. 2. At that time Perses was king there, and had renewed the war against the Romans which his father had begun ² many years before. 3. Tertia, Paulus's little daughter, had a puppy which she called ³ Persa.⁴ 4. When Paulus was about to set out against Perses, Tertia was so ⁵ sad that her father noticed it. 5. ⁶ When he asked the cause, she replied: "My father, Persa is dead." 6. Paulus thought this chance remark an omen of his triumph, and straightway set out for the enemy.

¹ Latin, 'near.'² Cf. *paucīs ante mēnsibus*, p. 12, l. 19.³ *nōminō*.⁴ Pred. acc.⁵ *tam*.⁶ Latin, 'to whom asking,' dat. indir. obj.24. Scipio Æmilianus. (*Oral.*)

Temporal Clauses with *cum*, § 325; B. 288-9; G. 580, 585; H. 521.

1. When Scipio was serving as a soldier in Spain, he was under Lucullus, the general. 2. When a very strong city was being besieged,

Scipio ¹ was the first to mount its walls. 3. There was no one in that army whose life ² was more precious. 4. But at that time the most illustrious youths undertook ³ the greatest perils. 5. Scipio demanded this military service for himself. 6. He did this in order that he might not be surpassed by others in valor.

¹ See text. ² Latin, 'ought to be looked out for more.' ³ Latin, 'the most of peril.'

25. The Battle of Thermopylæ. (*Oral.*)

1. The Complementary Infinitive, § 271; B. 328; G. 423; H. 533.

1. The Greeks could not defend the passes of Thessaly. 2. They determined to seize Thermopylæ. 3. They sent 8000 men to hold ¹ that place. 4. King Leonidas wished to fight. 5. When he had led forth his forces, he waited for the approach of the Persians. 6. Xerxes at first began to laugh, when he saw the Greeks. 7. Then he ordered ² them to lay down their arms. 8. Will not the Persian arrows hide the light of day? 9. Yes, but the Greeks will fight in the shade.

¹ Not infin.

² *iubeō* with infin.

2. Ablative of Agent, § 246; B. 216; G. 401; H. 415. I.

Partitive Genitive, § 216; B. 201; G. 367-72; H. 397.

1. Many thousand men waited. 2. Xerxes waited four days. 3. The troops were not withdrawn by Leonidas. 4. On the fifth day Xerxes joined battle. 5. A great number of Persians was killed by the Greeks. 6. There were ten thousand ¹ picked men. 7. The Immortals were thrown into the pass by the king. 8. Ephialtes had been bribed by the Persians. 9. He had been bribed with money. ² 10. He pointed out the pass to the Persians. 11. Then Leonidas sent back a great part of his army. 12. He, with his three hundred Lacedæmonians, remained. 13. ³ After fighting a long time, they were all killed by the Persians.

¹ See text.

² Note that this is means, not agency; hence use no preposition.

³ Latin, 'when they had fought.'

26. A Roman Maiden. (*Written.*)

1. Pliny has written a very sad letter concerning the death of the younger daughter of Fundanus, who was so ¹ lovely that she seemed ²

almost worthy of immortality. 2. She was not yet fourteen when she died, but already had³ the dignity of a matron, combined⁴ with the sweetness of maidenhood. 3. She loved her nurses, attendants, and teachers, each according to his service, and was loved by all. 4. She bore her last illness with remarkable⁵ fortitude and self-control, in order that she might encourage her father and sister. 5. Truly her death was sad and bitter. 6. Her wedding day had already been set. 7. To what sorrow was this joy changed when Fundanus spent on spices and perfumes what⁶ he had intended to pay out for dresses and jewelry!

¹ tam. ² Subjv. of result. ³ Latin, 'was to her,' dat. of possessor.

⁴ Omit. ⁵ mirābilis. ⁶ What = that which.

27. Aemilius Paulus and his Sons. (*Oral.*)

Substantive Clause of Purpose, § 331; B. 295-6; G. 546-9; H. 498, 499. 3.

Ablative of the Gerund, § 301; B. 338. 4; G. 431, 433; H. 542. IV.

1. Paulus made over two of his four sons to the Cornelian and Fabian families. 2. Two fortune took from him.¹ 3. One of these died three days before his father's triumph, the other two days after. 4. ² So he was suddenly left childless. 5. He bore this calamity with a ³ courageous heart. 6. He made a speech to the people concerning his exploits. 7. He made his spirit ⁴ clear to all by adding the following ⁵ closing words. 8. "I feared that some evil threatened the Roman people. 9. I prayed the gods to turn it all against my house. 10. By granting⁶ my prayers, they have brought this to pass. 11. You are grieving for my calamity,⁷ not for your own."

¹ Not abl. ² Note the idiom of the text. ³ Latin, 'strength of heart.' ⁴ Latin, 'doubtful to no one.' ⁵ One word. ⁶ Latin, 'assenting to,' hence followed by the dat. ⁷ Abl. of cause.

28. Androclus and the Lion. (*Oral.*)

I. Ablative of Accompaniment, § 248. 7; B. 222; G. 392; H. 419. I. and 1.

Ablative with **ex** instead of the Partitive Genitive, § 216. c; B. 201. 1. a; G. 372. 2; H. 397. N. 3.

1. The Romans ¹ used to provide splendid shows to amuse the people. 2. Often men fought¹ with wild beasts. 3. Once² a Roman general ordered some ³ wretched slaves to fight⁴ with lions. 4. One

of these was Androclus. 5. He, with the rest of his companions, was led into the arena. 6. One of the beasts, a huge lion, chose out Androclus from the rest. 7. He was so frightened that he expected sure⁵ death. 8. Suddenly the lion stopped. 9. And threw himself at his feet. 10. The general called Androclus to him to ask⁴ him about this wonderful event.⁶

¹ Imperf. ind. ² *olim*. ³ *nōn nūllī*. ⁴ Not infin. ⁵ *certus*, -a, -um. ⁶ *rēs*.

2. Ablative of Means, § 248. 8; B. 218; G. 401; H. 420.

1. Androclus had once ¹ committed a fault. 2. He fled to escape² punishment. 3. He entered a cave to conceal² himself. 4. He was seized with great fear when a lion entered it. 5. There was no chance of escaping. 6. Androclus thought the lion would attack him. 7. But the lion by pitiful moaning gave evidence of great pain. 8. His foot had been pierced³ by a great thorn. 9. Androclus pulled this out. 10. The grateful lion regarded him as a friend. 11. Daily he provided food by hunting. 12. ⁴ One day he was off hunting.⁵ 13. Androclus determined to depart. 14. Three days later he was captured by soldiers. 15. After a short time he was condemned to death. 16. But the grateful lion knew him. 17. The general was moved by this wonderful event. 18. Not only liberty, but also the lion was given to Androclus.

¹ One word. ² Not infin. ³ *trānsfodiō*. ⁴ *olim*. ⁵ Latin, 'in order to hunt.'

29. Cicero's Letters. (*Oral.*)

The Roman Calendar, § 259. *e*, 276; B. 371-2; G. p. 491; H. 641 ff.

1. Paulus sends greetings to his Tertia. 2. I want you to write¹ to me on the 17th of May. 3. On the 2d of June he informed me of the fever. 4. Take good care of your health. 5. They expect to arrive on the 1st. 6. See to it that all things necessary be ready. 7. I think that several friends will come on the 9th of October.

¹ Subjv. of purpose with *ut* omitted, as usual after forms of *volō*.

30. A Roman Ultimatum. (*Written.*)

1. When Popilius, the Roman ambassador, came to Antiochus, who was harassing Ptolemy with war, he handed over to him a

decree of the senate. 2. This decree forbade¹ the war. 3. Antiochus read the tablets and said he would consult his friends. 4. But Popilius marked off the ground on which the king was standing and said,² "Give me an answer before you move from this circle." 5. The king was so terrified by his³ abrupt and impressive manner that he immediately gave assurance⁴ that he would abstain from war with Ptolemy.

1 *vetō*. 2 *inquam*: note its position. 3 *abscisa gravitās*. 4 Subjv. of result.

31. The Haunted House. (*Oral*.)

Ablative of Quality or Description, § 251; B. 224; G. 400; H. 419. II.
The Historical Infinitive, § 275; B. 335; G. 647; H. 536. I.

1. In a large house at Athens there was a ghost. 2. The ghost was a¹ very gaunt old man. 3. The ghost² had a long beard. 4. The ghost had² shaggy hair. 5. The inhabitants left the house through fear. 6. Athenodorus, the philosopher, came to Athens. 7. ³After hearing the price of the house, ⁴he became suspicious because of its cheapness. 8. He learned everything, but none the less rented the house. 9. Was he not a man of great courage? 10. When it began to grow dark, he dismissed all his companions. 11. He turns his attention⁵ to writing, that he may not imagine vain fears. 12. At first there was silence. 13. Then iron was shaken,⁶ and chains rattled.⁶ 14. He neither raised⁶ his eyes nor dropped⁶ his pen. 15. Then the noise increased,⁶ drew near,⁶ and was now heard⁶ within the threshold. 16. He looked round and saw the ghost. 17. It stood⁶ and beckoned⁶ with its finger. 18. Athenodorus, without delay, followed it to the courtyard of the house. 19. Suddenly it disappeared. 20. Athenodorus marked⁷ the spot with leaves. 21. The next day he advised the magistrates to dig up that spot. 22. Bones were found bound with chains. 23. ⁸After these had been buried, the house was free from ghosts.

¹ Latin, 'used up by leanness.' ² Latin, 'was of,' abl. of description. ³ Abl. abs.

⁴ Latin, 'he suspected the cheapness.' ⁵ Latin, 'mind.' ⁶ Hist. infin.

⁷ *dēsīgnō*, -āre. ⁸ Abl. abs.

32. An Eclipse Foretold. (*Oral.*)

Causal Clauses with **quod**, **quia**, **quoniam**, **quandō**, § 321; B. 286; G. 539-42; H. 516.

1. Gallus called the soldiers to an assembly. 2. He called them together because he wished¹ to foretell the eclipse² of the moon. 3. An eclipse can be known beforehand, because it takes place at stated intervals. 4. The moon goes into an eclipse because it is concealed by the shadow of the earth. 5. Do you count it a prodigy that the moon shines now with full orb and now with a small crescent? 6. When was³ this eclipse? 7. It was on the night⁴ preceding the 4th of September. 8. To the Romans the wisdom of Gallus seemed almost supernatural, ⁵because he had foretold the eclipse.

¹ That is, 'he wished, as he said,' the reason being on the authority of Gallus and not on that of the speaker. ² **dēfectus**, -ūs, M. ³ Perf. ind. ⁴ See text.

⁵ Give as on the authority of the Romans.

33. Anthony and the Usurer. (*Oral.*)

Relative Clauses of Purpose, § 317. 2; B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 497. I.

Ablative with **opus** and **ūsus**, § 243. e; B. 218. 2; G. 406; H. 414. IV.

1. Anthony met one or two jolly fellows. 2. The priest was in need of money. 3. There was no provision for a feast. 4. There was need of ready wit. 5. ¹After he had taken one of the money-lender's kettles, he ordered the meat and broth to be poured out. 6. He sent a servant ²to polish the kettle. 7. Then he sent him ²to borrow two francs from the usurer. 8. The usurer could not recognize the kettle. 9. The pledge was received and the money counted out. 10. With this money they bought the wine ³which they needed. 11. ⁴The cook was scolded because the kettle was missing. 12. What is the need of many words? 13. Men were sent ²to search Anthony's house. 14. In the presence of many witnesses, Anthony showed his receipt.

¹ Change the voice and use the abl. abs.
'of which there was need.'

² Relative clause of purpose.

³ Latin,

⁴ Note the idiom in the text.

34. A Practical Joke. (*Written.*)

1. ¹ Maccus had the habit ² of making himself known by a joke.
 2. ³ Once he walked into a shoemaker's shop. 3. By simply ⁴ casting ⁵ his eyes upon some leggings and shoes, and by nodding assent ⁵ to the shoemaker's questions, ⁶ both shoes and leggings were given to him for nothing, ⁷ for neither ⁸ of them made any mention of price.
 4. After he was thus equipped for running, he took to his heels.
 5. The shoemaker chased him with all his might, but could not catch him.
 6. Afterwards, when an action for theft was brought against Maccus, he ⁹ said that he had touched nothing belonging to another ¹⁰ against the owner's will.

¹ Latin, 'the custom was to,' etc. ² Gen. of gerund. ³ *aliquandō*. ⁴ *tantum*.
⁵ Abl. of gerund. ⁶ *quaestiō*. ⁷ *grātis*. ⁸ *neuter*. ⁹ Latin, 'denied that he had touched a thing.'
¹⁰ Latin, 'the owner being unwilling.'

35. The Priest, the Vender, and the Impostor. (*Oral.*)

Substantive Clauses of Result, § 332; B. 297; G. 553; H. 501.

1. An impostor caused ¹ a priest to lose ² a purse full of money.
 2. Priests wear a sacred robe when they make ³ sacrifice. 3. Did the citizens send the impostor to buy a robe for the priest? 4. There is no doubt ⁴ that they did not send him. 5. The vender caused the priest to put on a robe. 6. It happened ⁵ that the robe fitted wonderfully. 7. But the impostor looked at it in front and behind. 8. And pretended that it was too short in front. 9. Then the vender feared that the bargain would fall through. 10. "The full purse ⁶ makes it look short," said he. 11. He asked the priest to lay ⁷ aside the purse. 12. ⁸ When the priest's back was turned, the thief seized the purse. 13. The thief took to his heels and escaped.

¹ *efficiō*. ² *perdō*. ³ Perf. ind. ⁴ *quīn*, clause of result. ⁵ *fiēbat*.
⁶ Latin, 'causes the shortness to offend.' ⁷ Not infin. ⁸ Abl. abs.; see text.

Cyrus, King of Persia, Chaps. 1 and 2. (*Oral.*)

The Dative with Special Verbs, § 227; B. 187. II; G. 346; H. 385.

1. Astyages had a grandson whose name was Cyrus. 2. Astyages feared ¹ that his grandson would be king in his ² place. 3. Cambyses,

the Persian, had married Mandana. 4. Astyages ordered Harpagus to kill⁸ his grandson. 5. Harpagus was moved with pity for⁴ the boy's fate. 6. He did not obey the command of the king. 7. ⁵ He gave the same orders to the king's shepherd that the king had given him. 8. The king's shepherd did not obey the orders of Harpagus. 9. He kept the boy and brought him up. 10. Once the son of a noble Mede did not obey Cyrus. 11. Cyrus, with the shepherd, was led⁶ into the presence of the king. 12. The face of Cyrus was⁷ like that of Mandana, and the king recognized him. 13. Astyages took vengeance on Harpagus by a very cruel punishment, because he had not obeyed his orders. 14. But Cyrus he kept with⁶ him.

¹ A *nē*-clause of purpose. ² *suus*, as indir. reflex. ³ Not infin. ⁴ Latin, 'because of,' hence abl. ⁵ Latin, 'he ordered the same to.' ⁶ *apud*. ⁷ Latin, 'like Mandana.' The redundant 'that of' in such expressions is regularly omitted in Latin.

Cyrus, King of Persia, Chaps. 3 and 4. (Oral.)

The Subjunctive in Indirect Questions, § 334; B. 315; G. 460, 467; H. 529. I.

1. Harpagus brought it about that Cyrus was very well liked both by Medes and Persians. 2. He often asked Cyrus why he did not drive his grandfather from the throne. 3. Did Cyrus obey this counsel? He did. 4. Astyages ordered the Persians to obey Cyrus in all things. 5. Cyrus asked them whether they chose hardships or pleasures. 6. Then he urged them to attack¹ Astyages and declare their independence. 7. Astyages placed Harpagus in command of all the forces. 8. We know how² Astyages had once³ aroused the bitterest hatred in him. 9. Harpagus urged Cyrus to join¹ battle without fear. 10. The Medes fled, and Astyages was captured. 11. After this victory he conquered and captured Cræsus, the king of the Lydians. 12. Don't you wish to know⁴ in what year he began the war with the Babylonians?

¹ Not infin. ² *quō modō*. ³ Latin, 'set him on fire with,' etc. ⁴ *scire*.

Cyrus, King of Persia, Chaps. 5 and 6. (Oral.)

The Demonstrative Pronouns, § 100-2, 195; B. 246; G. 305-11; H. 450-2.

✓ 1. Babylon, that famous and powerful city, had great walls. 2. By means of a stratagem Cyrus¹ made a way into that city for his soldiers.

3. Cyrus took possession of the gates² and walls by night. 4. Those who dwelt in the ³ middle of the city did not hear⁴ about that event.⁵ 5. He allowed the Jews to rebuild the temple. 6. Revolts of the same tribes called Cyrūs into those parts a second time. 7. Among those barbarians were the Massagetæ and their queen Tomyris. 8. Cyrus determined to marry her. 9. But she spurned his ⁶ offer of marriage. 10. And invited him to cross the Araxes river ⁷ for a battle. 11. Cyrus himself did not know what to do. 12. He asked Cræsus what he advised. 13. "I advise you to do what Tomyris has asked," said Cræsus. 14. By following⁸ this advice, Cyrus killed a great part of them and captured the queen's son.

¹ For idiom, see text, 37 21. ² Gen.; see text. ³ Latin idiom, 'the middle city.' ⁴ *nūntium accipere*. ⁵ *rēs*. ⁶ Omit 'offer of.' ⁷ Latin, 'for fighting,' gerund of purpose. ⁸ *ūtor*; use abl. of gerund.

Cyrus, King of Persia, Chap. 7. (*Written.*)

1. After Cyrus had invaded¹ the territory of Tomyris, a very brave woman, and had defeated a large force and captured her son, the queen advised Cyrus to send back her boy and lead away his army. 2. Cyrus did not obey these words, but collected his forces and joined battle. 3. The captive son, meanwhile,² had seized a sword and killed himself. 4. In a bloody battle, both Persians and barbarians fought bravely, the former³ for life, the latter³ for freedom; but finally⁴ Cyrus was killed, and a large part of his army fell with him. 5. Tomyris ⁵ cut off his head and threw it into the gore, ⁶ because she had promised ⁷ to give him all the blood he wanted.

¹ *ingredior*. ² *interim*. ³ Forms of *ille* and *hic*; see grammar. ⁴ *dēnique*. ⁵ Follow the idiom of the text. ⁶ Write the reason as on the authority of Tomyris. ⁷ Fut. infin. Follow idiom of the text.

The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 1 and 2. (*Oral.*)

Accusative of Limit or End of Motion, § 258. *b*; B. 182; G. 337; H. 380.
Ablative of Place from which, § 258; B. 229; G. 390-1; H. 412.

1. The city of Troy was besieged for ten years. 2. From Troy the Greeks hastened to return home. 3. They set sail with great joy, for they were wearied with the long war. 4. Ulysses wished to return to

the island Ithaca. 5. A very beautiful wife was ¹ waiting for him at home. 6. He had married her before he set out for the war. 7. A storm carried the ship of Ulysses to the south. 8. Some ships were carried in one direction, and others in another. 9. In ten days the ship of Ulysses was carried from the coast of Troy to the coast of Libya. 10. He put some of his companions ashore. 11. They met some of the inhabitants. 12. The food of the inhabitants consists almost entirely of the lotus. 13. Those who eat the lotus wish to remain in that land forever. 14. The Greeks forgot their fatherland² and companions.

¹ *exspectō*, with acc.

² Gen.; see text.

The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 3 and 4. (*Oral.*)

The Reflexive Pronoun, § 196; B. 244; G. 309; H. 448-9.

1. Ulysses fears that his companions are in danger. 2. Some of the remaining companions are put on shore. 3. They go to a village and find¹ the others drunk as if with wine. 4. They were unwilling² to return with them to the ship. 5. Ulysses himself in vain attempted to persuade them. 6. Finally³ he carried his companions back⁴ against their will and set sail as quickly as possible. 7. They cried out that they would never leave⁵ that spot of their own accord. 8. The next day Ulysses and twelve of his companions disembarked upon an unknown shore. 9. Soon they perceived the fortified entrance of a huge cave. 10. "I wonder who inhabits this abode,"⁶ said Ulysses. 11. A giant of immense size lived there.⁷ 12. He was of human form, but had only one eye. 13. Ulysses had already heard about the Cyclops, but had never seen one of them.

¹ Distinguish carefully between *reperiō*, to find by seeking, and *inveniō*, to come upon by chance. ² *nōlo*. ³ *tandem*. ⁴ Latin, 'unwilling.' ⁵ Latin, 'go from.' ⁶ Remember to insert this phrase in the quotation. ⁷ *ibi*.

The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 5 and 6. (*Oral.*)

The Second Periphrastic Conjugation, § 129, 294, *b*; B. 115; G. 251; H. 234.
Dative of Agent, § 232; B. 189; G. 354-5; H. 388.

1. Vulcan had his workshop under Mount Ætna. 2. The Cyclops were his servants. 3. The Greeks hid themselves in the cave, because

they were almost frightened to death. 4. The giant saw them and asked who they were. 5. ¹ Ulysses had to reply that they were Greeks returning from Troy. 6. When the giant asked about the ship, Ulysses had to be on his guard. 7. Then Polyphemus ate two of the Greeks. 8. They were so frightened by this horrible meal that they gave up all hope of safety. 9. Ulysses must not let a ² favorable opportunity for action³ go by. 10. Ulysses was ⁴ on the point of killing Polyphemus. 11. But the stone must first be removed from the entrance. 12. ⁵ Even in many great perils we must not despair of safety. 13. There is no doubt that the gods will give us aid.

¹ Latin, 'It had to be replied by Ulysses.' Do not forget that the second periphrastic is always passive, and with intrans. verbs impersonal. ² *occāsiō*. ³ *rei gerendae*. ⁴ *in eō ut*. ⁵ Latin, 'not even in,' etc., *nē . . . quidem*, putting the emphatic word or phrase between.

The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 7 and 8. (*Written.*)

1. At daybreak Polyphemus, in the same way as before, seized and ate two of the remaining Greeks. 2. When he removed the great stone from the door, the Greeks ¹ had great hopes of escaping,² but after all his sheep had gone forth, he put the stone back into its place. 3. The situation was critical, but Ulysses did not give way to tears. 4. He sharpened a great stake and awaited the return of the giant. 5. At evening, when the giant had returned home, Ulysses filled a great bowl with wine and invited him to drink.³ 6. Polyphemus thanked him for the wine and asked him ⁴ what his name was, and soon thereafter was overcome by sleep. 7. Ulysses thought that so favorable an opportunity for action should not be let slip.

¹ Latin, 'came into great hope.' ² Gen. of the gerund. ³ Latin, 'for drinking,' gerund with *ad*, expressing purpose. ⁴ See text.

The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 9 and 10. (*Oral.*)

Temporal Clauses with *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, etc., § 324; B. 287; G. 561-3; H. 518.

1. After the Greeks¹ had bored out the giant's eye with the ² end of a stake, they hid. 2. Polyphemus, as was to be expected, raised a frightful outcry. 3. When the other Cyclops heard the noise, they came to the cave from every side. 4. They asked Polyphemus what the matter was. 5. He replied that violence had been done him

by nobody. 6. After the Cyclops¹ heard that, they thought that Polyphemus had become insane. 7. When his friends had gone away, Polyphemus tried to lay hands on Ulysses. 8. After he had removed the stone from the entrance, the sheep went out to pasture.³ 9. Polyphemus had to sit⁴ at the entrance. 10. He felt of each sheep's back, in order that Ulysses might not escape. 11. Ulysses so tied his friends to the sheep that they were completely hid. 12. After Polyphemus had allowed all the sheep to pass by, Ulysses himself escaped last.

¹ The common subj. of a principal and a subordinate clause usually stands before both. ² Note the idiom in the text. ³ Latin, 'to the fields.' ⁴ 'Sit' being intrans., will of course be impersonal in the passive.

The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 11 and 12. (*Oral.*)

Ablative of Specification, § 253; B. 226; G. 397; H. 424.

Partitive Genitive, § 216; B. 201; G. 367-72; H. 397.

1. Some¹ of the Greeks had been left behind ²to guard the ship. 2. They received Ulysses with great joy. 3. They feared that Ulysses had fallen into serious danger. 4. Ulysses determined to hasten from the shore as quickly as possible. 5. Polyphemus paid the just penalty for his cruelty. 6. After the Greeks had sailed a few thousand feet into the deep, Polyphemus hurled a huge rock in that direction. 7. The Greeks³ did not lack much of being drowned. 8. They sailed a few miles⁴ to a certain island. 9. This island was Æolia by name. 10. The Greeks tarried there a few days. 11. Were they not desirous of seeing their native land? 12. Æolus shut up all the winds but Zephyrus in a bag. 13. The Zephyrus was a favorable wind for sailing. 14. At midday Ulysses tied the bag to the mast. 15. When all was prepared, he sailed from the harbor.

¹ *nōn nūlli*. ² Latin, 'for a guard to the ship.' ³ Note the idiom in the text. ⁴ Latin, 'thousands of paces.'

The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 13 and 14. (*Oral.*)

Accusative of the Gerund and the Gerundive, § 300; B. 338. 3, 339; G. 430, 432; H. 542. III., 543 ff.

1. On the ninth day he came in sight of his native land. 2. His native land was an island, Ithaca by name. 3. Ulysses lay down to

rest. 4. His companions thought that gold was shut up in that bag. 5. Ulysses was worn out with fatigue. 6. This was a favorable opportunity¹ for opening the bag. 7. A great storm aroused Ulysses from sleep. 8. The daughter of the sun, Circe by name, lived on an island. 9. Ulysses and his companions approached this island² to get supplies. 10. He brought the ship to land² for the purpose of disembarking. 11. All remembered the cruelty of the Cyclops. 12. No one could be found who was willing³ to disembark on Circe's island. 13. Finally they cast lots, and Eurylochus was chosen⁴ to⁵ make this venture.

¹ *ad* with the gerundive. ² *ad* with the gerund, or as in the text. ³ Subjv. in relative clause of characteristic. ⁴ *dēligō*. ⁵ See text.

The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 15 and 16. (*Written.*)

1. Eurylochus and his twenty-two companions, who had been chosen by lot, did¹ not at all doubt that they were going to meet death. 2. When they came² to Circe's house, they heard a voice of such sweetness that they could in no way be restrained³ from entering. 3. Circe set a magnificent banquet before them,⁴ but after she had touched their heads with her golden wand, they were suddenly all changed to pigs. 4. Eurylochus, who was waiting outside, finally returned to the ship alone, so alarmed that he could hardly tell what he had seen. 5. He begged Ulysses not to expose himself to danger, and said, "If anything serious happens⁵ to you, the safety of all will be in the greatest peril." 6. But Ulysses replied, "I will take no one with me⁶ against his will," and⁷ set out alone.

¹ *nihil*. ² Pluperf. subjv. with *cum*. ³ *quān* with imperf. subjv. ⁴ Dat. with compound. ⁵ Fut. perf. ind. ⁶ Latin, 'unwilling.' ⁷ See text.

The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 17 and 18. (*Oral.*)

The Interrogative Particles *-ne*, *nōne*, *num*, § 210. *a. c.*: B. 162, 2; G. 454-6; H. 351. 1, 2.

1. When Ulysses was on the point of entering Circe's house, Mercury stood before him. 2. ¹ Mercury said, "Don't you know that this is Circe's house?" 3. Did Circe change Ulysses's friends into pigs? She did. 4. Ulysses didn't wish to suffer² the same fate, did he?

No. 5. "I will give you a drug which is very powerful," said Mercury. 6. Was not Ulysses prepared to meet all dangers? 7. Circe did everything just as before. 8. Matters often come out ³quite differently from what we expect. 9. Circe could n't change Ulysses into a pig by her golden wand, could she? 10. Neither by her poison nor by her words could she accomplish anything.⁴ 11. Will not Ulysses make an attack upon Circe with drawn sword? 12. Yes, and she will beg him with many tears ⁵not to take her life.

- ¹ Latin order, "Don't you know?" said Mercury,' etc. ² Latin, 'come into.'
³ **omninō aliter atque.** ⁴ **quidquam**: learn to use this word in neg. clauses.
⁵ **nē** with pres. subjv.

The Story of Ulysses, Chaps. 19 and 20. (*Oral.*)

Ablative of Separation, § 243; B. 214; G. 390; H. 414.

1. Mercury informed Ulysses that his companions had been changed to pigs. 2. Unless Circe restores¹ them to human form without delay, Ulysses will inflict merited punishment. 3. "I will do ²all that you have asked," said Circe. 4. The pigs recognized their leader. 5. But could not inform him of their misfortunes.³ 6. In a short time, however, they were set free⁴ from their great sorrow. 7. Ulysses spent a whole year with⁵ Circe. 8. ⁶He could not be persuaded to stay longer. 9. His ship, battered by the storms, was almost useless for sailing. 10. Within three days everything which is of use⁷ for refitting ships was prepared. 11. Ulysses intended to sail as soon as possible. 12. Circe took it ill, but could not persuade Ulysses ⁸to give up that design. 13. Ulysses set sail, that he might not be cut off from navigation by the time of the year. 14. ⁹It would be tedious to tell about his other¹⁰ adventures.

- ¹ The fut. perf. ind. in a vivid fut. cond. ² **omnia quae.** ³ Latin, 'things,' **rēs.** ⁴ **liberō**, -āre. ⁵ **apud.** ⁶ Latin, 'it could not be persuaded to him.' See notes, 18 17. ⁷ Dat. of service. ⁸ Latin, 'desist from.' ⁹ **longum est**, an idiomatic use of the present ind. where the subjv. might have been expected. ¹⁰ **reliquus**, -a, -um.

Life of Caius Marius, Chaps. 1 and 2. (*Oral.*)

The More Vivid Future Condition, § 307; B. 302; G. 595; H. 508.

- ✓1. Marius was dear to Scipio, though¹ born in a lowly station.
 2. If Scipio wishes² to inspect the horses, he will find the horse of

Marius well cared for. 3. If anything serious happens² to Scipio, the republic will have Marius. 4. Marius was the lieutenant of Metellus,³ who had been sent against Jugurtha. 5. Marius said, "If the Romans make⁴ me consul, I will subdue Jugurtha in a short time." 6. After Marius had been elected consul, Jugurtha fled to Bocchus. 7.⁵ Bocchus was persuaded to give up Jugurtha to Sulla, the quæstor. 8. Marius,⁶ in his triumph, drove Jugurtha in chains before his chariot. 9. Jugurtha called⁷ his prison a cold bath-room.

¹ Omit. ² The English pres. may express fut. or even fut. perf. time. ³ Translate the relative clause by the perf. pass. partic. ⁴ Fut. perf. ⁵ Latin, 'it was persuaded to, etc., that he,' etc. ⁶ Latin, 'triumphing.' ⁷ *nōminō*, -āre.

Life of Caius Marius, Chaps. 3 and 4. (Written.)

1. The Cimbri and Teutons, wanderers from the frontiers of Germany, had been shut out from Gaul and Germany,¹ and so asked the Romans to give them² some land. 2. Marius first crushed the Teutons, and the slaughter was so great that there was more blood than water in the river³ between them. 3. The Cimbri did not know of the calamity of their brethren and entered Italy from another direction. 4. As soon as the Cimbri came up, they demanded land for themselves and their brothers. 5. "Never mind your brothers," said Marius, "they have already received land from us." 6. The Cimbri thought that they were being held in derision, but⁴ soon thereafter the chiefs of the Teutons were led out in chains.

¹ *itaque*. ² Latin, 'something of land,' partit. gen. ³ *medius*, -a, -um. ⁴ *post breve tempus*.

Life of Caius Marius, Chaps. 5 and 6. (Oral.)

Construction after *petō*, § 239. c. N. 1; G. 339. R. 1 and N. 1; H. 374. 2. N. 4. Causal Clauses with *cum*, § 326; B. 286. 2; G. 586; H. 517.

1. The Cimbri then¹ went forth from the camp. 2. They asked² Marius, the Roman general, to set a time for battle. 3. The next day Marius destroyed the Cimbri with terrible slaughter. } 4. There was a great battle with the women, since they fought from the wagons as if from towers. 5. The conquered women³ hung themselves on the trees, since they could⁴ not obtain liberty from⁵ Marius. 6. The

chief men of the state had envied Marius.⁶ 7. Now they confessed that he had saved the state. 8. He presented two cohorts with the citizenship. 9. At that time Sulpicius asked⁷ the people to depose⁸ Sulla from the chief command. 10. Marius hid in a swamp, but was seized and put in prison. 11. They sent a Cimbrian slave to kill him. 12. ⁹ When he saw Marius, he did not dare to kill him.

¹ *deinde*. ² *petō*. ³ May be omitted. ⁴ Imperf. subjv. of *possum*. ⁵ *ab*.

⁶ Not acc. ⁷ *peto*. ⁸ Note the idiom in the text. ⁹ The idea of time is here combined with that of cause as an added circumstance; see notes, 7 5.

Life of Caius Marius, Chaps. 7, 8, and 9. (*Oral*.)

The Gerundive, in Agreement with the Object, to Express Purpose, § 294. *d*; B. 337. 7. *b*). 2); G. 430; H. 544. N. 2.

1. After Marius was let out of prison, he went to Africa. 2. He expected kindness from the Roman prætor, since he had never done him injury. 3. "Depart from the province," said the lictor. 4. The lictor reported to the prætor that he had seen Marius sitting on the ruins of Carthage. 5. We have these two very conspicuous examples of the fickleness of human fortune ¹to place before our eyes. 6. Marius was more enraged than subdued by misfortune. 7. After he returned to Italy, he gave² Rome up ³to destruction by murder and robbery. 8. The houses of the slain he gave to the mob ⁴for plunder. 9. It is not easy to say whether Marius was better in war or more dangerous in peace. 10. Marius despised the artists of Greece, since he was too rough for the pursuits of culture. 11. He ⁵had the temple of Honor built of common stone.

¹ Gerundive. ² *trādō*. ³ Latin, 'to be destroyed,' gerundive. ⁴ Latin, 'to be plundered.' ⁵ 'Had . . . built'; note the idiom in the text.

Life of Caius Julius Cæsar, Chaps. 1 and 2. (*Oral*.)

Two Datives, — **to which** and **for which**, § 233; B. 191; G. 356; H. 390.

1. Did not Cæsar lose his father in his sixteenth year? 2. Cæsar married the daughter of Cinna. 3. Cæsar was stripped of his possessions ¹because he would not divorce her. 4. He escaped from the city by night. 5. He was seized by a freedman of Sulla, although he changed his hiding place almost every night. 6. The most distin-

guished men pleaded for Cæsar.² 7. He will be ³the cause of their destruction. 8. "Have your own way! there are many Mariuses in Cæsar," said Sulla. 9. Cæsar wished ⁴to attend upon Apollonius, the teacher of oratory. 10. He crossed to Rhodes and was captured by pirates. 11. He was a ⁵source of terror to them. 12. He sent servants to get money. 13. He threatened ⁶the pirates with punishment.

¹ Latin, 'because he was unwilling to,' etc. ² Dative. ³ Latin, 'for destruction to them.' ⁴ *operam dare*. ⁵ Cf. 7th sentence. ⁶ Latin, 'punishment to the pirates.'

Life of Caius Julius Cæsar, Chaps. 3 and 4. (*Oral*.)

Simple Conditions, § 306; B. 302; G. 595; H. 508.

1. Cæsar had rather be first in a small village than second at Rome. 2. If Cæsar is greedy for power, he covets the sovereignty. 3. Cæsar groaned ¹at the sight of a statue of Alexander. 4. If he violated the law, he did ²it for the sake of sovereignty. 5. He wasted his patrimony on hunts and games. 6. I need a hundred million sesterces to have nothing. 7. I will make an alliance with Pompey and Crassus. 8. Cæsar wished to divide the Campanian land among ³the people. 9. If he proposed the law, the senate opposed it.⁴ 10. ⁵Bibulus had his fasces broken for him. 11. After that, Cæsar was consul alone. 12. The wags ⁶used to write in jest, "In the consulship of Julius and Cæsar."

¹ Express by abl. abs., as in the text. ² Repeat the first verb. ³ Latin, 'to.' ⁴ Omit. ⁵ Latin, 'the fasces of Bibulus were,' etc. ⁶ Imperf. tense.

Life of Caius Julius Cæsar, Chaps. 5 and 6. (*Oral*.)

Ablative with *ūtor*, *fruor*, etc., § 249; B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 421. 1.

1. Cæsar was in command of Gaul for nine years. 2. ¹He was the first of the Romans to attack the Germans. 3. This he did ²after he had completed his consulship. 4. ³When the army wavered in flight, Cæsar seized a shield from the hand of a fleeing soldier. 5. In another battle he drew a fleeing standard-bearer in the opposite direction. 6. By using ⁴such exhortations he taught those ⁵how to conquer ⁶who were ready to be conquered. 7. A hostile ⁷rivalry

arose between Cæsar and Pompey. 8. The former could not bear⁸ a superior nor the latter an equal. 9. Since Cæsar was detained in Gaul,⁹ he was not allowed to seek a second consulship. 10. He crossed the Rubicon with an army¹⁰ to make war. 11. After he had crossed this stream, he could not turn back. 12. Pompey and the consuls used Brundisium as a refuge.¹¹

- ¹ Latin, 'he first attacked.' ² Express by the perf. partic. ³ Abl. abs. ⁴ Abl. of gerund of *ūtor*. ⁵ Infin. ⁶ Perf. partic. ⁷ *infēnsus*, -a, -um. ⁸ Imperf. ind. ⁹ Latin, 'it was not permitted to him.' ¹⁰ The gerund with *causā*.
¹¹ *perfugium*.

Life of Caius Julius Cæsar, Chaps. 7 and 8. (*Written.*)

1. After Cæsar had followed Pompey into Epirus, his troops delayed to follow. 2. Impatient of the delay, he performed a deed of remarkable daring; for he secretly embarked on a little skiff, and, though the sea was raging with a wild tempest, he ordered the trembling skipper to steer his craft out to sea. 3. After the battle of Pharsalia, Cæsar first¹ made war upon Ptolemy and then² upon Pharnaces, the son of Mithradates, whom he destroyed in a single battle in four hours. 4. In his Pontic triumph Cæsar used only³ three words to recount⁴ this victory: "I came, I saw, I conquered."

- ¹ *primum*. ² *deinde*. ³ *tantum*. ⁴ *commemoro*, -āre; use gerundive with *ad*.

Life of Caius Julius Cæsar, Chaps. 9, 10, and 11. (*Oral.*)

Participles, § 289 ff.; B. 336-7; G. 664 ff.; H. 548 ff.

1. The son of Magnus had aroused a great and terrible war in Spain. 2. Those¹ who followed the lustre of his father's name came together² from every quarter. 3. When the conflict became fierce and doubtful, he declared to his soldiers that he would never retreat. 4. If Cæsar is³ victorious, he will pardon all that have borne arms against him. 5. Then he will turn his attention to ordering the condition of the state. 6. Those convicted⁴ of extortion were removed from the senate. 7. Cæsar⁵ made more and greater plans daily for the beautifying of the city. 8. ⁴While he was doing these and other things, death prevented him. 9. ⁴After he had been chosen dictator, he received the senate sitting. 10. Antony placed a crown on Cæsar's

head ⁴ as he was sitting on a golden chair. 11. For these reasons ⁶ a conspiracy was made against him.

¹ Pres. partic. ² Latin, 'from the whole world.' ³ Fut. in force. ⁴ Express by a partic. ⁵ Latin, 'planned more and greater things.' ⁶ Latin, 'it was conspired.'

Life of Caius Julius Cæsar, Chaps. 12 and 13. (*Oral.*)

Infinitive with Subject Accusative, § 272, 330; B. 329 ff.; G. 527, 532-3; H. 534, 535.

1. Spurrinna, the soothsayer, warned Cæsar¹ to beware of the Ides of March. 2. Cæsar said that the Ides had already come. 3. Spurrinna replied that they were not yet past. 4. One of the conspirators seized Cæsar's toga ² by the shoulders. 5. Cæsar cried out that this was violence. 6. Then he saw ³ daggers drawn against him on every side. 7. ⁴ It is said that he was pierced with twenty-three wounds. 8. Cæsar read in Xenophon that Cyrus had given certain orders about his own funeral. 9. Nearly all agree ⁵ that Cæsar wished for a quick and unexpected death. 10. All the conspirators died in less than three years.⁶ 11. None of them died a natural death. 12. They perished ⁷ by different fates.

¹ Dat. ² Latin, 'from each shoulder.' ³ See text. ⁴ Use the personal construction, 'he is said,' etc. ⁵ *cōnstat*, impers. ⁶ Abl. ⁷ See idiom in text.

Life of Caius Julius Cæsar, Chaps. 14 and 15. (*Oral.*)

Genitive with Adjectives, § 218; B. 204; G. 374; H. 399.

1. The rarer moderation is in kings, the more it should be praised. 2. Cæsar ¹ used to forget nothing excepting injuries. 3. Cæsar was of tall stature, and had ² bright black eyes. 4. He was bald-headed, a ³ defect which ⁴ annoyed him. 5. He received from the senate the right of wearing a laurel wreath constantly. 6. Cæsar was very temperate in his use of wine. 7. He was very skilful in his use of weapons and in horsemanship. 8. He could endure hardship beyond belief. 9. He was eager ⁵ for power, but used his victory very mercifully.

¹ The imperf. ind. expressing customary action. ² Continue the construction of the first clause. ³ Latin, 'which defect'; see note, 17 8. ⁴ Latin, 'he bore ill.' ⁵ *avidus*, -a, -um.

Life of Hannibal, Chaps. 1 and 2. (*Written.*)

1. No one doubts that¹ Hannibal excelled all other generals in skill, for as often as he contended with the Romans, he always left the field victorious. 2. He was crippled by the envy of his countrymen at home, and finally² driven from his fatherland, but he never gave up his design of carrying on war with the Romans. 3. He was so desirous³ of fighting that he made both Philip and Antiochus enemies to Rome.⁴ 4. ⁵When he was a little boy not more than nine years old, his father, Hamilcar, ⁶who was just leaving Carthage for Spain, took him to the altar and ordered him to swear that he would never be friendly⁷ to the Romans.

¹ *quīn* with subjv.; see note, 44 14. ² *dēmum*. ³ *cupidus*. ⁴ Latin, 'to the Romans.' ⁵ May be expressed by an appositive, 'him a little boy,' etc. ⁶ Pres. partic. ⁷ Latin, 'in friendship with.'

Life of Hannibal, Chaps. 3 and 4. (*Oral.*)

The Locative Case, § 258. 4; B. 232; G. 411; H. 425. II, 426.

1. Hamilcar set out from Carthage for Spain. 2. Hannibal did not remain at Carthage,¹ but went with his father. 3. After the death of Hasdrubal, the supreme authority was conferred upon Hannibal. 4. He got together three very large armies. 5. One went to Africa. 6. One remained in Spain with his brother. 7. He led the third into Italy across the Pyrenees and the Alps. 8. The inhabitants tried to prevent him from crossing. 9. At Rome there was great terror. 10. At Clastidium, on the Po, he fought with Scipio. 11. He defeated the same man at the Rhone and at the Trebia. 12. After his journey to Etruria through the Apennines, he never ²had perfect use of his right eye. 13. At Cannæ³ two consuls came to meet him.

¹ Loc., *Carthāginī*. ² See text. ³ *Cannae*, -ārum.

Life of Hannibal, Chaps. 5 and 6. (*Oral.*)

The Supine in *u*, § 303; B. 340. 2; G. 436; H. 547.

1. He pitched his camp in the mountains near Rome. 2. He delayed several days at Capua. 3. He escaped from Fabius by a stratagem without any loss to his army.¹ 4. The cattle caused great

terror in the Roman army. 5. Minucius was master of horse, with the authority of dictator. 6. It would be tedious to recount all the victories of Hannibal. 7. Many armies were sent to fight² with him. 8. But, wonderful³ to tell, no one could resist him in the battle line. 9. He was called back to Africa to defend² his fatherland. 10. This was hard³ to do, for the resources of his country were exhausted. 11. Incredible to relate, he was defeated by Scipio near Zama. 12. Zama is about three hundred miles from Hadrumetum. 13. At Hadrumetum he gathered together many soldiers in a few days.

¹ Objective gen.; see note, 37 12. ² Supine of purpose. ³ Supine in ū.

Life of Hannibal, Chaps. 7 and 8. (*Oral.*)

Conditions Contrary to Fact, § 308; B. 304; G. 597; H. 510.

1. Hannibal and Mago, his brother, were busily engaged in making preparations. 2. Ambassadors came to thank the Romans. 3. They will ask that their hostages be kept¹ at Fregellæ. 4. The Romans would have let the captives go, if Hannibal had not had command of an army. 5. The Carthaginians called Hannibal home and made him king. 6. There will be money² to pay the Romans according to the treaty. 7. Ambassadors came from Rome to Carthage³ to demand Hannibal. 8. The Carthaginians would have caught him, if they had been able.⁴ 9. If they had been roused to war, Antiochus would have set out for Italy with his armies. 10. Some write that Mago was killed by shipwreck,⁵ others by his slaves.⁵ 11. If Antiochus had obeyed Hannibal's counsel, he would have carried on the war nearer to the Tiber.

¹ Omit. ² Relative clause of purpose. ³ Gerundive construction with *grâtia*. ⁴ See note, 75 8. ⁵ Note the difference between means and agency here.

Life of Hannibal, Chaps. 9 and 10. (*Written.*)

1. Since Hannibal was carrying¹ a large sum of money with him to Crete, he feared that he would be² in great danger, because of the avarice of the Cretans. 2. He therefore³ placed some amphoras full of lead in the temple of Diana, pretending that they were full of gold. 3. The Cretans would not have guarded the temple so carefully,⁴ if

they had known what he carried in the bronze statues. 4. From Crete he went to Prusias in⁵ Pontus, where he carried on war against Eumenes, ⁶ who was very friendly to the Romans. 5. In a naval battle he promised ⁷ his seamen a great reward, if they should capture ⁸ or kill ⁸ him.

¹ Imperf. subjv. in a **cum**-clause of circumstance. ² Cf. **ne dederetur** of text. ³ **itaque**.

⁴ Latin, 'with such great care,' abl. of manner. ⁵ Latin, 'into.' ⁶ Express by adj. apposition. ⁷ Fut. infin. with two datives, as in the text. ⁸ Pluperf. subjv. for fut. perf. ind. of the direct form.

Life of Hannibal, Chaps. 11, 12, and 13. (Oral.)

Temporal Clauses with **antequam** and **prinsquam**, § 327; B. 291-2; G. 574-7; H. 520.

1. Before the battle began, Hannibal sent a letter to Eumenes. 2. The letter carrier made it clear where the king was. 3. ¹ After opening the letter, Eumenes did not hesitate to join battle. 4. The jars aroused laughter among the soldiers before they saw the serpents. 5. While they ² were dining at the house of Flaminius, mention was made of Hannibal. 6. Ambassadors were sent to demand Hannibal from the king. 7. The king said, "Catch him, ³ if you can." 8. If Prusias had surrendered Hannibal, it would have been contrary to the law of hospitality. 9. The boy did not see the armed men before they had surrounded the house. 10. Hannibal took poison because he was mindful of his former ⁴ heroic deeds.

¹ Abl. abs. ² Pres. tense; see note, 41 2. ³ A simple condition. ⁴ Plural of **virtūs**.

SIGNS AND ABBREVIATIONS.



a., act.	<i>active.</i>	neg.	<i>negative(ly).</i>
abs.	<i>absolute (ly).</i>	n.	<i>neuter (intransitive).</i>
adv.	<i>adverb, adverbially.</i>	N., neut.	<i>neuter.</i>
borr.	<i>borrowed.</i>	num.	<i>numeral.</i>
cf.	<i>compare.</i>	opp.	<i>opposed.</i>
cog.	<i>cognate.</i>	orig.	<i>originally.</i>
comp.	<i>composition.</i>	p.	<i>present participle.</i>
compar.	<i>comparative.</i>	pass.	<i>passive.</i>
conn.	<i>connection.</i>	perf.	<i>perfect.</i>
decl.	<i>declined.</i>	perh.	<i>perhaps.</i>
def.	<i>definite, defective.</i>	pl., plur.	<i>plural.</i>
dep.	<i>deponent.</i>	poss.	<i>possibly.</i>
dim., dimin.	<i>diminutive.</i>	possess.	<i>possessive.</i>
distrib.	<i>distributive.</i>	p. p.	<i>perfect participle.</i>
emph.	<i>emphatic.</i>	prob.	<i>probably.</i>
end.	<i>ending.</i>	pron.	<i>pronoun, pronominal.</i>
Eng.	<i>English.</i>	reduced	indicates the loss of a syllable in derivation or composition.
esp.	<i>especially.</i>		
F., fem.	<i>feminine.</i>	redupl.	<i>reduplicated.</i>
f. p., fut. p.	<i>future participle.</i>	reflex.	<i>reflexive(ly).</i>
fig.	<i>figurative(ly).</i>	rel.	<i>relative.</i>
fr.	<i>from.</i>	sc.	<i>supply.</i>
freq.	<i>frequentative.</i>	sing.	<i>singular.</i>
Gr.	<i>Greek.</i>	Sk.	<i>Sanskrit.</i>
impers.	<i>impersonal.</i>	st.	<i>stem.</i>
inv.	<i>imperative.</i>	subjv.	<i>subjunctive.</i>
increased	indicates the addition of a letter or letters.	subst.	<i>substantive(ly).</i>
ind.	<i>indicative.</i>	superl.	<i>superlative.</i>
indecl.	<i>indeclinable.</i>	term.	<i>termination.</i>
indef.	<i>indefinite.</i>	transf.	<i>transferred (i.e. fr. a proper to a forced meaning).</i>
insep.	<i>inseparable.</i>	unc.	<i>uncertain.</i>
instr.	<i>instrumental.</i>	v.	<i>verb.</i>
intens.	<i>intensive.</i>	weakened	indicates a change of vowel.
interr.	<i>interrogative.</i>	wh.	<i>which, whence.</i>
irr.	<i>irregular.</i>		
lit.	<i>literal(ly).</i>		
loc.	<i>locative.</i>		
M., masc.	<i>masculine.</i>		

Other common abbreviations will be readily understood.

(-). A hyphen at the end of a word means that the word is a stem; between two words it means composition.

(+). A plus sign indicates derivation by means of a derivative suffix following the sign.

A root is generally given in SMALL CAPITALS.

(†). A dagger denotes a word not actually found, but assumed as having once existed.

(*). An asterisk is prefixed to a word not found in classical Latin.

(?). A query denotes a doubtful etymology or meaning.

Full-faced type in parentheses denotes other spellings or forms.

1, 2, 3, 4 refer to conjugations of verbs.

VOCABULARY.



A

ā, see **ab**.

ab (**ā**, **abs**) [akin to Eng. *off*, *of*], adv. (in comp.). — Prep. with abl., *away from*, *from* (cf. **ex**, *out of*). — Of place, with idea of motion, *from*: **ab Arari iter convertere**. — Of time, **ab hora quarta**. — Fig., *from*, with more or less feeling of motion: **ab cohortatione profectus**; **ab ramis** *from the branches* (as far as where they begin). — With expressions of measure, *off*, *away*, *at a distance of*: **a milibus passuum duobus**, *two miles off*. — With different notion in Eng.: **oriri ab**, *begin with*; **vacuum ab**, *desitute of*; **ab tanto spatio**, *so far off*. — Esp. with passives and similar notions, *by*. — Esp. also (prob. as the place whence the impression comes), *on the side of*, *on*, *at*, *in*, *on the part of*: **a fronte**; **a tergo**; **ab infimo**; **ab altero latere**; **a re frumentaria** (*in respect to*). — In comp., *off*, *away*, *apart*; *not*, *dis-*, *un-*.

abditus, -a, -um, p. p. of **abdo**.

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [**ab-do**, *put*], 3. v. a., *put away*, *remove*, *hide*. — With reflex., *conceal one's self*, *hide*. — With **in** and acc., *hide in*, *withdraw to* (*take refuge among*),

withdraw and hide away. — **abditus**, -a, -um, p. p., *hidden*, *remote*, *removed*.

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [**ab-duco**], 3. v. a., *lead away*, *draw away*, *take away*, *lead off*, *carry away* (of persons or things which move of themselves).

abeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus [**ab-eo**], irr. v. n., *go away*, *go off*, *retire*, *go* (out of sight or away).

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [**ab-ia-cio**], 3. v. a., *throw away*, *throw down*, *throw* (away from one's self), *throw aside*.

abiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **abicio**.

abiēs, -ietis [?], F., *fir* or *spruce* (tree or wood).

abrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ab-rogo** (in its political sense)], 1. v. a., *pass a vote to annul*, *annul*, *take away*.

abs, see **ab**.

abscēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus [**abs-cedo**], 3. v. n., *withdraw*, *depart*.

abscidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsus [**abs-caedo**], 3. v. a., *cut off*, *lop off*, *tear off*, *tear away*. — Fig., p. p. as adj., *abrupt*, *rough*, *severe*: **dignitas**.

abscisus, -a, -um, p. p. of **abscido**.

absconditus, -a, -um, p. p. of **abscondo**.

abscondō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [abscondo], 3. v. a., *hide away, hide, conceal*.

absēns, -entis, see **absum**.

absimilis, -e [ab-similis, *like*], adj., *unlike*.

absistō, -sistere, -stitī, no p. p. [absisto], 3. v. n., *stand off, stand away, withdraw*.—Fig., *leave off, keep aloof*.

abstinentia, -ae [abstinent- (cf. **abstineō**) + ia], f., *self-restraint* (abstaining from gratifying one's passions), *self-control*.

abstineo, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [abs-teneo], 2. v. a. and n., *hold* (one's self) *off*.—With **se**, *keep away*.—Fig., *refrain, spare*: **proelio** (*refrain from giving*); **mulieribus** (*spare*).

abstrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **abstraho**.

abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [abs-traho], 3. v. a., *drag off, drag away*.

abstulī, see **aufero**.

absum, -esse, -fuī (āfuī), -futūrus [ab-sum], irr. v. n., *be away, be absent, be off* (at a distance), *be distant*.—Fig., **non multum aberat** (*not far away*); **ab eo quin** (*be far from being*); **multum quin** (*lack much of, etc.*); **minimum quin** (*came very near being*); **a bello** (*keep aloof, take no part in*).—**absens**, p. as adj., *away, absent, in one's absence*.

absūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmp-tus [ab-sumo], 3. v. a., (*take away*), *consume*.

abundō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [† abundō-, lost adj. st., *abounding*; cf.

abundē, *abundantly*], 1. v. n., *overflow*.—Fig., *abound*.—Transf. (of the place, etc., containing the thing), *be strong in, be rich in, abound in*.

āc, see **atque**.

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus [ad-cedo, *go or come*], 3. v. n., *move towards, draw near, approach, come up, come* (to), *advance to, advance*.—Fig., *come to*: **Remis studium** (*be inspired in*; cf. **discedo**).—Esp., *be added*, where often an explanatory word is necessary in Eng.: **huc accedere**, *be in addition to this*; **huc accedebat ut**, *there was also this* (disadvantage) *that*; so with **quod**, *there was also the fact that, there was also the reason that*, or simply *moreover, then again*.

accelerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad-celero, *hasten*; cf. **celer**, *swift*], 1. v. a. and n., *hasten*.

accendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsus [ad-†cando, cf. **candēō**, *glow, burn*], 3. v. a., *kindle, light*: **ignem**.

acceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **accipio**.

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, no p. p. [ad-cado], 3. v. n., *fall to, fall upon, fall*: **tela gravius** (*strike*).—Fig., *happen, befall, occur, present itself, turn out, arise*.—Often euphemistically for death, defeat, etc.: **si quid gravius ei**.

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [ad-capio], 3. v. a., *take, receive*: **exercitum** (*take command of*).—Less exactly, *volnus*; *incommodum* (*suffer, meet with*).—Fig., *accept, learn, hear, get, take*: **usus** (*acquire*); **aliquid fama** (*hear of*).—**acceptus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *acceptable*.

acclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad-clamo, shout], I. v. n., shout to, call to, exclaim at, exclaim.

acclivis, -e [ad-clivus, slope (weakened)], adj., sloping towards, rising, sloping, ascending: collis; aditus.

acclivitās, -ātis [acclivi- + tas], F., slope (upward), inclination, steepness.

Accō, -ōnis [Celtic], M., one of the Senones, who stirred up his people against the Romans.

accommodātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **accommodo**.

accommodō (adc-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [accommodō-, fitting, or ad-commodo], I. v. a., fit on, fit: insignia (put on, adjust); annum ad cursum solis (adjust, adapt). — **accommodātus**, -a, -um, p. p., fitted, adapted.

accumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitus [ad-†cumbo, cf. cubo], 3. v. n., recline (esp. at table).

accūrātē [old case-form of **accuratus**, done with care], adv., with care, carefully.

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad-†causo (cf. causor), assign as a reason or charge], I. v. a., accuse, blame, find fault with.

ācer, -cris, -cre [AC, sharp (cf. acus, needle) + ris], adj., sharp. — Fig., keen, active, violent.

acerbē [acerbus], adv., bitterly. — Fig. (of the mind), ferre inopiam (suffer severely from, etc.).

acerbitās, -ātis [acerbō- + tas], F., bitterness. — Concrete in plur., sufferings (with a change of point of view in Eng.).

acerbus, -a, -um [acer (treated as st.) + bus (cf. superbus)], adj., bitter (to the taste). — Fig. (to the mind), bitter, hard to bear, cruel, distressing.

ācerimē, superl. of **ācritēr**.

acervus, -ī [acer (shortened as st.) + vus], M., (pointed?), a heap, a pile.

Achillās, -ae [Gr.], M., one of the murderers of Pompey.

aciēs, -ēī [AC (sharp) + ies (cf. materies)], F., point, sharp edge, edge. — Esp., line, battle line, array, army (in battle array, cf. agmen), rank (of an army in several ranks), battle, engagement: acie instructa depugnare, fight a pitched battle.

acinus, -ī (-um, -ī) [Gr.], M. (N.), a berry. — Also, a seed or stone.

ācritēr [acri- + ter], adv., sharply. — Fig., fiercely, violently, hotly (of fighting), with spirit, keenly, actively: acriter pugnatum est, a fierce battle was fought, there was hot fighting.

Actiacus, -a, -um [Actiō- + acus], adj., of Actium (a promontory and town of Greece, off which the great victory of Octavius over Antony was gained, B.C. 31).

āctiō, -ōnis [prob. †acti + o, but as if AG + tio], F., a doing (including all the activities expressed by ago). — Esp., a civil action (cf. ago, plead), a prosecution, an action (at law).

āctor, -ōris [AG + tor], M., a doer (cf. actio). — Esp., a pleader, a plaintiff, a prosecutor.

āctuārius, -a, -um [actu-, movement (AG in ago) + arius], adj., fast sailing (provided with both sails and oars).

āctum, -ī [N. p. p. of ago], N., *an act, a deed*.

āctus, -a, -um, p. p. of ago.

acuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [acu-, *sharp* (in acus, *needle*)], 3. v. a., *sharpen*. — **acūtus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *sharpened, sharp*.

acūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of acuō.

ad [?], adv. (in comp.). — Prep. with acc. — With idea of motion, *to, towards, against*. — Where the idea of motion is more or less obliterated, *to, towards, for, at, on, against, in, near, by, in regard to*. — Of time, *till, at, on*: *ad diem, on the day*. — With numerals, *about*. — Esp., *deferre ad, lay before*; *ad fortunam Caesari defuit* (*Caesar lacked to complete, etc.*); *contendere ad occupandam* (*to, for*), and often with the gerund or gerundive expressing purpose; *ad certum pondus* (*up to, i.e. of*); *ad modum* (*in*); *ad impedimenta* (*by*); *ad auxilium* (*to give assistance*); *ad arbitrium* (*according to*); *proficisci ad* (*for*); *ad unum*, *to a man*; *ad celeritatem* (*for, in the way of*); *ad extremum*, *at last, finally*. — In comp., *to, towards, up to, up against, in, by, in addition, and the like*.

a. d., see ante.

adāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of adigo.

adaequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [adaequo-, *make equal*; cf. *aequus*], 1. v. a., *make equal to*: *moles moenibus* (*make as high as*). — More commonly with the verb neuter and the acc. or dat. depending on the combined idea, *become equal to, equal*: *altitudinem muri* (*reach up to*); *cursum* (*keep up with*).

additus, -a, -um, p. p. of addo.

addō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [ad-do (1 and 2)], 3. v. a., *give to*. — Also, *place to, add* (with acc. or absolutely), *attach, put on* (*pedibus*).

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [ad-duco], 3. v. a., *lead to, draw to, bring in* (of persons), *bring, draw in* (towards one), *drive, force*: *secum* (*take*). — Fig., *induce, drive, influence*.

adductus, -a, -um, p. p. of adduco.

adēemptus, -a, -um, p. p. of adimo.

adeō, -īre, -iī (-īvi), -itus [ad-eō], irr. v. a. and n., *go to, visit, get at, come to, come up, go to* (a place), *get in* (to a place), *advance* (somewhere), *attack, approach* (speak with), *accost*: with ad, *come into the presence of*.

adeō [ad-eō, *thither*], adv., *to that point*. — Less exactly, *to that degree, so much so, so*. — Still weaker, *in fact, indeed, at all, exactly*.

adeptus, -a, -um, p. p. of adipiscor.

adequitō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus [ad-equito, *ride*, cf. *eques*], 1. v. a. and n., *ride up, ride against, skirmish with* (of cavalry).

adfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of adificio.

adferō (aff-), -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, [ad-fero], irr. v. a., *bring to, bring*: *litteras*; *auxilium* (*render*). — Fig., *cause, bring forward, allege, report, announce*.

adficiō (aff-), -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [ad-facio], 3. v. a., *do to, affect*. — With acc. and abl., *affect with, inflict upon, produce in, cause to, visit with, afflict, fill with*. — In pass., *suffer, receive, be in* (a condition), *be*

afflicted by, suffer from: magno dolore affici, *be greatly distressed, be in great pain*.

adfigō (aff-), -figere, -fixī, -fixus [ad-figo, *fix, fasten*], 3. v. a., *fasten to* (by insertion or the like).

adfigō (aff-), -figere, -fixī, -fixus [ad-figo], 3. v. a., *make up in addition*. — Of rumors, *invent more, add*.

adfinis (aff-), -e [ad-finis, *limit*], adj., *bordering on*. — Fig., *akin to* (by marriage). — As noun, *a kinsman, a relation* (by marriage).

adfinitās (aff-), -ātis [adfini- + tas], F., *nearness*. — Esp. of relation by marriage, *relationship, alliance, connection*. — Concretely, *a connection*: adfinitatibus coniuncti (*marriages*).

adfirmātiō (aff-), -ōnis [adfirmā- (cf. adfirmo) + tio], F., *assurance*. — Concretely, *an assertion*.

adfirmō (aff-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad-firmo], 1. v. a., (*establish by assertion*), *declare, assert*.

adfixus (aff-), -a, -um, p. p. of adfigo.

adflictō (aff-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [adflicto, cf. ad-fligo], 1. v. a. freq., *dash against, dash upon, dash to the ground*. Hence, *overthrow, overwhelm, wreck*.

adflictus (aff-), -a, -um, p. p. of adfligo.

adfligō (aff-), -fligere, -flixī, -flictus [ad-fligo], 3. v. a., *dash upon*. Hence, *overthrow, wreck, overturn*: navis (*shatter, damage*); arbores (*throw down*).

adfore (aff-), see adsum.

adgredior (agg-), -gredī, -gressus [ad-gradior, *step, go*], 3. v. dep., *go towards, go to, come to, approach, march against, attack, assail*.

adgregō (agg-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad-grego, *flock*, cf. grex, *flock*], 1. v. a., *unite in a flock, gather*: se (*gather around, flock to*); se ad amicitiam (*attach one's self to*).

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [ad-habeo], 2. v. a., *have in*. Hence, *call in, admit, bring with (one), invite*. — Fig., *employ, use*.

adhibitus, -a, -um, p. p. of adhibeo.

adhortātiō, -ōnis [adhortā- (cf. adhortor) + tio], F., *encouragement, exhortation, an address*.

adhortātus, -a, -um, p. p. of adhortor.

adhortor, -ārī, -ātus [ad-hortor], 1. v. dep., *encourage, address, urge, rally* (soldiers).

adiciō (adiic-), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [ad-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw to, hurl, fling*: telum adici (*be thrown to*, i.e. *reach*); aggerem (*throw up*). — Fig., *join to, add*.

adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus [ad-ago], 3. v. a., *drive to, drive up* (of cattle, etc.). — Less exactly, *drive in, drive home* (of piles), *move up* (of towers), *shoot* (of weapons).

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptus [ad-emo, *take*], 3. v. a., *take away* (the action being looked upon as done to somebody, usually in the dat.). — Fig., *destroy, cut off*: spem; prospectum (*intercept, cut off*).

adipīscor, -ipīscī, -eptus [ad-apis-cor, *lay hold of*], 3. v. dep., *obtain, secure*.

aditus, -ūs [ad-itus, cf. adeo, *go to*], M., *approach, arrival, coming, access*: defugere (*contact, intercourse*). — Concretely, *an avenue* (of approach), *access* (excuse for approaching), *admission, means of approach, means of access, way of approach, approach* (in military sense).

adiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adicio**.

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus [ad-iungo], 3. v. a., *join to, unite to, attach, unite with, add*. — Fig., *win over*: imperium (*unite, attach, enforce*).

adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtus [ad-iuvo, *help*], I. v. a., *assist, help, help on, be of advantage, be an assistance to*.

adlātus (all-), -a, -um, p. p. of **adfero**.

adligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad-ligo], I. v. a., *bind, tie up*.

admātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad-maturo, cf. maturus, *early*], I. v. a., *hasten*: defectionem (*bring to a head more quickly*).

administer, -trī [ad-minister, *servant*], M., *servant, minister*: ad sacrificia (*priest, celebrant*).

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad-ministro, *serve*], I. v. a., *carry into execution, perform, execute, manage, carry out, carry on* (war), *attend to* (duties): imperia (*give, carry out the duties of a commander*).

admīror, -ārī, -ātus [ad-mirror, *wonder*], I. v. dep., *be surprised, wonder at, admire*. — **admīrandus**, -a, -um, as adj., *surprising*.

admissus, -a, -um, p. p. of **admitto**.

admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus

[ad-mitto], 3. v. a., (*let go to*), *let go*: admisso equo, *at full speed*. — Fig., *allow* (cf. com- and per-mitto): in se facinus (*commit*); dedecus (*permit to be incurred, incur*). — Also, pass. without in se, *be committed*.

admodum [ad-modum, *measure, limit*], adv., *to a degree*. Hence, *very, very much, greatly, exceedingly, so* (very) *much*.

admolior, -īrī, -ītus [ad-molior, *struggle*], 4. v. n., *strive for*: ut faceret (*exert one's self*).

admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [ad-moneo], 2. v. a., *warn, urge, remind*.

adnuō, -nuere, -nūī, no p. p. [ad-nuo], 3. v. n., *nod to, nod assent, assent*.

adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvī, -ultus [ad-olesco, *grow*], 3. v. n., *grow up* (to maturity), *mature*. See also **adulescens**.

adoptiō, -ōnis [ad-optio, cf. adopto], F., *a taking as a child, adoption*.

ador (nom. and acc.) [?], N., *a grain, spelt*.

adorior, -orīrī, -ortus [ad-orior], 4. v. dep., (*rise up against*), *attack, assail*.

adortus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adorior**.

adpāreō (app-), -parēre, -paruī, -paritūrus [ad-pareo, *appear*], 2. v. n., *appear*.

adparō (app-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad-paro, *make ready*, cf. pareo, *be on hand*], I. v. a. and n., *prepare, get ready, make preparations*.

adpellō (app-), -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus [ad-pello, *drive*], 3. v. a. and n., *land* (ships), *bring to land, come to land, put in*.

adpetō (app-), -pētere, -petīvī (-iī), -petītus [ad-peto, *aim at*], 3. v. a. and n., *seek to gain, desire, aim at*. — Abs., *approach*.

adplicō (app-), -plicāre, -āvī (-uī), -plicātus (-plicitus) [ad-plico, *fold*], 1. v. a., (*bend towards*). — With reflex., *lean against*.

adpōnō (app-), -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [ad-pono], 3. v. a., *place before, set before* (of food), *serve up*.

adportō (app-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad-porto, *carry*], 1. v. a., *bring in, bring* (to some place).

adprehendō (app-), -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus [ad-prehendo, *seize*], 3. v. a., *seize*: *manum* (*grasp, take*).

adprobō (app-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad-probo, *esteem good*, cf. *probus, good*], 1. v. a., *approve of, agree with* (an opinion or action).

adpropinquō (app-), -āre, -āvī, no p. p. [ad-propinquo, cf. *propinquus, near*], 1. v. n., *approach, come nearer, come near*.

adpulsus (app-), -a, -um, p. p. of *adpello*.

adquiēscō (acq-), -quiēscere, -quiēvī, -quiētūrus [ad-quiesco], 3. v. n., *become quiet*. Hence, *go to one's rest, die*.

adrēpō (arr-), -rēpere, -rēpsī, no p. p. [ad-repo], 3. v. n., *creep to, creep up, steal up*.

adreptus, -a, -um, p. p. of *adripio*.

adrigō (arr-), -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus [ad-rego], 3. v. a., *set up, raise*. — Fig., *arouse, excite*.

adripiō (arr-), -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [ad-rapio], 3. v. a., *snatch up, seize, grasp*.

adscendō, see *ascendo*.

adscēnsus, see *ascensus*.

adscīscō (-asc-), -scīscere, -scīvī -scītus [ad-scisco, *approve*, fr. *scio*], 3. v. a., *attach* (by formal decree). — Less exactly, *attach to* (one's self), *unite with* (one's self).

adscribō (asc-), -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptus [ad-scribo], 3. v. a., *write down* (somewhere), *enroll, assign*.

adsequor (ass-), -sequī, -secūtus [ad-sequor], 3. v. dep., *follow after, follow up, overtake*.

adsidō (ass-), -sīdere, -sēdī, -sesūrus [ad-sido], 3. v. n., *sit down* (near or by something).

adsiduō (ass-), see *adsiduus*.

adsiduus (ass-), -a, -um [ad-†siduus (SED in *sedeo, sit, + uus*)], adj., (*sitting by*), *constant, continued, incessant*: *adsiduō*, abl. as adv., *continually*.

adsistō (ass-), -sistere, -stitī, no p. p. [ad-sisto, *place* (one's self)], 3. v. n., *stand by, attend, assist*: in *conspectu patris* (*appear*).

adspēctus (asp-), -ūs [ad-†spec-tus, cf. *adspicio, look at*], M., *a looking at*. — Transf., *an appearance, aspect*.

adspiciō (asp-), -spicere, -spēxī, -spectus [ad-†specio], 3. v. a. and n., *look upon, behold, see, observe*.

adstō (ast-), -stāre, -stitī, no p. p. [ad-sto], 3. v. n., *stand by, stand near*.

adsuēfaciō (ass-), -facere, -fēcī, -factus [†adsuē- (cf. *suesco, become accustomed*) -facio, *make*], 3. v. a., *accustom, train*. — Pass., *be accustomed*.

adsuēfactus (ass-), -a, -um, p. p. of *adsuefacio*.

adsuēscō (ass-), -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus [ad-suesco, *become accustomed*], 3. v. a. and n., *accustom, become accustomed, become 'wonted* (of animals).

adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus [ad-sum], irr. v. n., *be near, be by, be present, be at hand, be here, be there, appear*.

adsurgō (ass-), -surgere, -surrēxī, -surrēctus [ad-surgo], 3. v. n., *rise up*. Esp., *rise up, rise* (to show respect).

adtulī, perf. of **adfero**.

Aduatucī, -ōrum [Celtic], m. pl., a tribe of the Belgae (originally Germans) living on the west bank of the Meuse (later *Tongri*).

adulēscēns (adol-), -entis [p. of *adolesco, grow up*], adj., *young*. — As noun, *a youth, young man*. — With proper names, *the younger* (Jr., to distinguish one from his father).

adulēscēntia (adol-), -ae [adulescent- + ia], f., *youth*.

adveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus [ad-venio], 4. v. n., *come to, come up, arrive*.

adventō, -āre, -āvī, no p. p. [ad-†vento, through *advenio*], 1. v. n. intens., *come (to), approach*.

adventus, -ūs [ad-†ventus, cf. *advenio, come to*], m., *a coming, arrival, approach*.

adversārius, -a, -um [adversō- (reduced) + arius], adj., (*turned towards*), *opposed*. — As noun, *opponent, adversary, foe, enemy*.

adversus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adverto**, in various uses.

adversus, prep. with acc., see **adverto**.

advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [ad-verto], 3. v. a., *turn towards: animum* (*turn the attention, notice*, see **animadverto**), *turn against, turn (to anything)*. — **adversus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *in front, opposed, opposite, in opposition, adverse, unfavorable, in the face of: hostibus adversus occurrebant* (*right against, in their front*); *res adversae, adversity, want of success*. — Neut. as noun, *a calamity, a misfortune*. — **adversus**, **adversum** [petrified as adv., cf. **versus**], prep. with acc., *against*.

advesperāscit, -ere [ad-vesperascit], 3. v. impers., *grow dark, approach evening*.

advolo, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [ad-volo], 1. v. n., *fly to, fly at*. — Less exactly, of cavalry, *rush at, fly at, charge upon*.

aedēs (-is), -is [AID (cf. *aestus*) + es], f., (*hearth, fireplace, temple*). — Also (only in the plur.), *a house, a dwelling*.

aedificium, -ī [†aedific- (cf. *aedifico*) + ium], n., *building*. — Esp., buildings standing singly, *opposed to villages, farm houses*.

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†aedific- (*aedes, house, FAC in facio*)], 1. v. a., *build* (of houses). — Less exactly, of ships.

aedilis, -is [aedi- (as st. of *aedes*) + lis], m., (*belonging to a temple?*), *an aedile, an officer at Rome*.

Aegaeus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj. *Ægean* (of the Ægean Sea): *mare Aegaeum, the Ægean*.

aegerrimē, superl. of *aegre*.

aegrē [old case-form of **aeger**], adv., *feebly*. Hence, *with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely*.

Aegyptus, -ī [Gr.], F., *Egypt*.

Aemiliānus, -ī [Aemiliō (reduced) + **anus**], M., surname of P. Cornelius Scipio, who was the adopted son of one of the Scipios, and son of L. Aemilius Paulus.

Aemilius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name.—Esp.: 1. *Lucius Aemilius Paulus*, who fell at Cannae.—2. *Lucius Aemilius Paulus*, the conqueror of Perses.

aemulātiō, -ōnis [aemulā- (st. of **aemulor**, *rival*) + **tio**], F., *rivalry, competition*.

aemulus, -a, -um [? cf. **aequus**], adj., *rivalling, emulous*.—Esp., masc. or fem. as noun, *a rival*.

aēneus, -a, -um [aenō- (reduced) (cf. **aes**) + **eus**], adj., *of bronze, of copper, bronze* (adj.), *copper* (adj.).

Aeolidēs, -ae [Greek patronymic from **Aeolus**], M., *son of Aeolus*.—Esp., *Sisyphus*.

Aeolius, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., *belonging to Aeolus*.—Fem. as noun, *Aeolia*, the country of the winds, a group of islands near Sicily (now Lipari Islands).

Aeolus, -ī [Gr.], M., *Aeolus*, the god of the winds.

aequālis, -e [aequō- (reduced) + **alis**], adj., *equal*.

aequāliter [aequali- (fr. **aequus**, *even*) + **ter**], adv., *evenly, uniformly, equally*.

aequē [old case-form of **aequus**], adv., *equally, in like manner, to the same extent*.

aequinocetium, -ī [as if **aequinocet-** (indirectly fr. **aequo-**, *equal*, **nox** *night*) + **ium**], N., *the time of the equinox, the equinox*.

aequitās, -ātis [aequō- (*even, equal*) + **tas**], F., *evenness*. Hence (cf. **aequus**), *fairness, justice*.—Esp., **aequitas animi**, *evenness of mind, contentment, resignation*.

aequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [aequō-, *equal*], I. v. a., *make equal, equalize*.

aequus, -a, -um [?, perh. akin to **unus**, formed with **-cus** instead of **-nus**], adj., *even, level, equal*. Hence, *fair, just, equitable*: **mentem (unruffled)**; **aequo Marte**, *on equal terms, with equal success*.

āēr, -ēris [Gr.], M., *the air*.

aerārius, -a, -um [aer- (as st. of **aes**, *copper*) + **arius**], adj., (*having to do with copper*).—Neut. as noun, *the treasury*.

aereus, -a, -um [aer- (as st. of **aes**, *copper*) + **eus**], adj., *of copper, copper* (adj.).

aes, **aeris** [?], N., *copper* (as metal for ships, or as money). Hence, *money*.—Esp., **aes alienum**, *debt* (another man's money).

aestās, -ātis [st. akin to **aedes** (*hearth*) + **tas**], F., (*heat*), *summer* (the season for military operations).

aestimātiō, -ōnis [aestimā- (st. of **aestimo**, *value*) + **tio**], F., *valuation, estimation, value*.

aestimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [aestimō-, *assayer*], I. v. a., *value, estimate*.—Less exactly, *regard*: **gravius** (*consider more serious*, of calamities).

aestuārius, -a, -um [aestu- (cf. **aestus**, *tide*) + **arius**], adj., (*relating*

to the tide). — Only in neut., as noun, *creek, estuary, marsh*.

aestus, -ūs [AID (in *aedes*, *hearth*) + *tus*], M., *heat* (plur. in same sense). Hence, *boiling, tide*.

aetās, -ātis [for *aevitas*, fr. *aevō-* (st. of *aevum*, *age*) + *tas*], F., *age* (of old or young): *prima aetate*, *in childhood*; *aetate confectus*, *oppressed with years*. — Also, *an age* (time, generation).

aeternus, -a, -um [*aevō-* (st. of *aevum*, *age*) + *ternus*], adj., (*relating to age*), *eternal, lasting*: in *aeternum*, *forever*.

Aetna, -ae [Gr.], F., *Mt. Aetna*, the famous volcano in Sicily.

aevum, -ī [I (cf. *eo*, *go*) + *vum* (neut. of *vus*)], N., *age* (young or old), *life*: *aevi brevis*, *short-lived*. — Esp., *old age, age*.

aff-, see **adf-**.

Āfricānus, -a, -um [*Africō-* (reduced) + *anus*], adj., *of Africa, African*.

Āfricus, -a, -um [*Afrō-* (st. of *Afer*, *African*) + *cus*], adj., *of Africa*. — Esp., sc. *ventus*, *the southwest wind* (blowing from Africa to Italy). — Fem. as noun, the country or province of *Africa*.

āfuisse, **āfutūrus**, see **absum**.

agāsō, -ōnis [?], M., *a driver*.

Agēdincum, -ī [Celtic], N., chief town of the Senones, on the Yonne; now Sens.

ager, **agrī** [AG in **ago** (*drive*?) + *rus*, akin to Eng. *acre*], M., *land* (cultivated), *fields, country* (opposed to city), *territory* (country), *cultivated lands, fields* (as opposed to woods).

agg- (except **agger**), see **adg-**.

agger, -eris [ad-ger (for GES in *gero*, as st.)], M., (*that which is carried to a place*), *earth* (for a wall), *earth of a wall, a mound of earth, a wall, a rampart, a mole, a dike* (either the regular earthwork of the Romans for an entrenched camp or line of circumvallation, or the dike of approach, a long sloping mound leading up to the height of the walls): *cotidianus* (*daily addition to the dike or walls*).

agitātor, -ōris [*agitā-* + *tor*], M., *a driver*.

agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†*agitō-* (as if st. of *ago*, *put in motion*)], I. v. a. freq., *drive, chase*. Hence, *vex, trouble*. — Fig., *turn over* (in mind), *propose, discuss, purpose*.

agmen, -inis [AG (in *ago*, *put in motion*) + *men*], N., *a moving, a march*. — Concretely (of bodies in motion), *a body in motion, a column, an army, a line* (of troops in march), *a train, a fleet*. — Less exactly, *an army* (not in march). Phrases: *primum agmen*, *the van*; *novissimum agmen*, *the rear*; *claudere* (*bring up the rear*); *conferto agmine*, *in close order*; *agmine facto*, *in column* (of attack); *agmine*, *on the march*; *agmen legionum* (*the main column*); *extremo agmine*, *in the rear*.

āgnōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitus [ad-(g)nosco], 3. v. a., *recognize* (in some relation to one's self, cf. **conosco**).

āgnus, -ī [?], M., *a lamb*.

ago, **agere**, **ēgī**, **āctus** [AG, *put in motion*], 3. v. a., *drive* (apparently

from behind, cf. *da-o, cad*): *sublicas* (*drive down*); *vineas, tures*, etc. (*set in motion, move on, advance*); *ac portare* (of live stock as booty, *drive off*). — Loosely, *do* (cf. “carry on”), *act, treat, discuss, plead, cause, have business*. — Phrases: *conventum* (*hold*); *gratias* (*render, give, express*, cf. *habere* and *referre*); *convivam* (*act the part of*); *annum agens sextum et decimum*, *in his sixteenth year*; *actum erat de*, *it was all over with*; *quid agit*, *what is one about?* *quid agitur*, *what is going on?*

agrestis, -e [unc. stem (from *agrō-*) + *tis* (cf. *caelestis*)], adj., (*of the fields*), *belonging to the country* (as opposed to the town), *country, rustic*. — As noun, *a rustic, a peasant*.

agricola, -ae [*agrō-* + *cola*, cf. *incola*], M., *a husbandman, a farmer*. *agricultūra*, see *cultura*.

aiō [?], 3. def. v. n., *say, assert*.

alacer, -cris, -cre [?], adj., *active, eager, spirited*.

alacritās, -ātis [*alacri-* (*eager*) + *tas*], F., *eagerness, readiness, spirit, promptness*.

alacriter [*alacri-* + *ter*], adv., *eagerly*.

albus, -a, -um [?, cf. *Alpes*], adj., *white* (pale, opp. to *ater*, cf. *candidus*, *shining white*, opp. to *niger*): *plumbum album*, *tin*; *pōpulus* (*hoary*).

alcēs, -is [Teutonic, cf. *elk*], F., *the elk* (a large beast of the deer kind, resembling the moose).

ālea, -ae [?], F., *a die* (for playing).

Alesia, -ae [Gallic], F., a city of the Mandubii, west of Dijon; now Alise-Ste.-Reine.

Alexander, -dri [Gr.], M., a common Greek name — Esp., *Alexander the Great*, son of Philip of Macedon.

Alexandria, -ae [Gr.], F., *Alexandria*, the famous city built by Alexander the Great on the coast of Egypt.

aliās [unc. case-form of *alius*, but cf. *foras*], adv., *elsewhere*. — Of time, *at another time*: *alias . . . alias*, *now . . . now* (cf. *alius . . . alius*).

aliēnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *alieno*.

aliēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*alienō*, *another's*], I. v. a., *make another's*. — Also, *make strange, alienate, estrange*.

aliēnus, -a, -um [unc. st. akin to *alius*, *other* (prob. imitated from verb-stems of 2d conj.) + *nus*], adj., *of another, another's, of others, other people's*: *finēs (others')*; *aes alienum*, *debt*. Hence, *strange, foreign, unfavorable* (cf. *suus*), *foreign to the purpose*.

aliō [old case-form of *alius*], adv., *elsewhither, elsewhere* (of end of motion).

aliquamdiū [*aliquam-diu*, cf. *quam diu*], adv., *for some time, some time, a considerable time*.

aliquandō [*ali-* (in *alius*, *other*) -*quando*, *when*], *at some time, once*. — Emphatically, *at last* (at some time, though not before), *at length*: *tandem aliquando*, *now at length*.

aliquantō, see *aliquantus*.

aliquantus, -a, -um [*ali-* (in *alius*, *other*) -*quantus*, *how great* (cf. *aliquis*)], adj., *considerable*. — Neut.

as noun, *a good deal, a considerable part*. — **aliquantō** (as abl. of measure), *by considerable, considerably, a good deal*.

aliquis (-quī), -qua, -quid (-quod) [ali- (in **alius**, *other*) -quis, *any*], indef. pron. (more forcible than **quis**; not universal, like **quisquam**), *some, any*. — Emphatically, *some* (considerable), *any* (important). — As noun, *some one, any one, something, anything*.

aliquot [ali- (in **alius**, *other*) -quot, *how many*], indecl. adj., *several, some* (more than one, but not conceived as many).

aliter [ali- (in **alius**, *other*) + **ter**], adv., *otherwise, differently*. — Often rendered by a noun or adjective implied in the context: **aliter se habere ac**, *be different from what*, etc.

alius, -a, -ud [unc. root (cf. *else*) + **iūs**], adj. pron., *another* (any one, not all), *other, different, else, another* (of the second of three or more). — Repeated (either in separate clauses or in same), *one . . . another, one another, one one* (thing), *another another*: **alius alio casu**, *one by one fate, another by another*: **alius atque** (see **atque**).

alī-, see **adl-**.

alō, **alere**, **aluī**, **altus** [AL, *nourish*], 3. v. a., *cause to grow, feed, nurse, support* (supply with food), *foster, raise, keep* (of animals and gladiators): **staturam** (*increase*). — Fig., *foster, foment, feed*.

Alpēs, -ium [Celtic form (cf. **albus**) + **is**], f. plur., *the Alps*, more or less loosely used of the whole mass

of mountains between Italy (Cisalpine Gaul), Gaul, and Germany.

Alpicus, -a, -um [Alpi- + **cus**], adj., *of the Alps*. — Esp., m. plur. as noun, *the inhabitants of the Alpine region*.

alter, -era, -erum [AL- (in **alius**, *other*) + **ter** (for -**terus**, compar. suffix)], adj. pron., *the other* (of two) — In plur., *the other party*. — Repeated (cf. **alius**), *one . . . the other, one another* (of two). — In plur., *one party . . . the other*. — Also, *the second* (of more than two), *another* (the second of three): **dies** (*the second*). — Also (esp. with negatives), *another* (besides one's self, where all are conceived as two parties, one's self and all the rest).

alternus, -a, -um [alter- (as st.) + **nus**], adj., *alternate, reciprocal, mutual, alternating*.

altitūdō, -inis [altō- (*high*) + **tudo**], f., *height, depth* (cf. **altus**), *thickness* (of timber).

altus, -a, -um [p. p. of **alo** (*nourish*) as adj.], (*grown high by nourishing*), *high, lofty*. — From opposite point of view, *deep*. — Neut. as noun, *the sea, the deep*: **in alto**, *in deep water*; **ex alto**, *from the sea*; **exstructis in altum**, *high-piled*.

alūta, -ae [?, cf. **alumen**, *alum*], f., *leather* (of a fine sort, like morocco?).

amābilis, -e [amā- + **bilis**], adj., *lovable*.

amanter [amant- (p. of **amo**) + **ter**], adv., *lovingly, affectionately*.

amb- [akin to **ambo**, *both*], prep. only in comp., *about, round about*.

ambactus, -ī [prob. German], m., *a retainer, a vassal*.

Ambiānī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur. of adj., a Belgian tribe, whose chief town, Samarobriga, is now called from their name Amiens.

Ambibarii, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur. of adj., an Aremoric tribe living in a part of Normandy.

ambiguus, -a, -um [amb- + aguus (AG + vus), through *ambigo*, *plead on both sides*], adj., *in doubt, doubtful, dubious*.

Ambiliātī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur. of adj., a tribe on the Somme (possibly part of the Ambibarii).

Ambiorix, -igis [Celtic], M., an able prince of the Eburones. He caused a revolt of his nation against Cæsar, which was partially successful, and came near being entirely so. He caused Cæsar uneasiness for several years, and eluded every effort to capture him.

ambitiō, -ōnis [amb- + titio, cf. *ambio*], F., *a going round*.—Esp., *a canvass for office*. Hence, *ambition*.

Ambivaretī (**Ambila-**), -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur. of adj., a Gallic tribe, dependents of the Hædui.

Ambivaritī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur. of adj., a Belgic tribe on the west bank of the Meuse.

ambō, -ae, -ō (-ōrum) [akin to *amb-*, *round about*], num. adj., *both* (together, cf. *uterque*, *both separately*).

ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ambulō- (fr. *amb-*, *round about*)], I. v. n., *walk, take a walk*: in ius (*go to law*).

āmentia, -ae [ament- (*mad*) + ia], F., *madness, frenzy, (mad) folly*.

amicē [old case-form of *amicus*],

adv., *friendly, in a friendly manner*: cogitare (*have kind thoughts*).

amicitia, -ae [amicō- + tia], F., *friendship, friendly relations, alliance, personal friendship* (opp. to *hospitium*).

amicus, -a, -um [unc. st. fr. AM (in *amo*, *love*) + *cus*], adj., *friendly, well-disposed*.—Masc. as noun, *a friend, an ally*.

āmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of *amitto*.

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [ab-mitto], 3. v. a., *let go (away), let slip, let pass*. Hence, *lose* (esp. of military losses).

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [?], I. v. a., *love, be fond of*.

amoenus, -a, -um [stem akin to *amo* + *nus*, cf. *amicus*], adj., *lovely, pleasant, charming*: *rosa*.

amor, -ōris [AM (in *amo*) + or (for os)], M., *love, affection*.

āmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [ab-moveo], 2. v. a., *move away, take away, remove*.

Amphīōn, -ōnis [Gr.], M., a king of Thebes, husband of Niobe, famous for his performances on the lyre.

amphora, -ae [Gr.], F., (a large oblong vessel with two handles), *a jar, an amphora*.

amplē [old case-form of *amplus*], adv., *widely, largely*.—**amplius**, compar., *farther, more, longer*: *amplius quingenti*, *five hundred and more*; *amplius obsidum* (see *amplus*).

amplificātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *amplifico*.

amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ampli-

ficō- (**amplō-** with **FAC**, *make*), **I. V. a.**, *increase, enlarge, extend, heighten.*

ampliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**amplō-**], **I. V. a.**, *enlarge, extend.*

amplitūdō, -inis [**amplō-** + **tudo**], **F.**, *size, extent, greatness*: **cornuum** (*spread*).

amplus, -a, -um [?, perh. **amb-** (*about*) + st. akin to **plus**, **plenus**], **adj.** Of size and extent, *lit. and fig., large, wide, great, huge, spacious.* — **Esp.**, *prominent, of consequence, splendid, noble, distinguished*: **dimissis amplioribus copiis** (*the greater part of*). — **amplius**, **neut.** **compar.** as noun (cf. **plus**), *more, a number*: **amplius obsidum.**

an [?], **conj.** introducing the second member of a double question, *or, or rather.* — Often with the first member only implied, *or.* — In indir. questions, *whether.*

Anartēs, -ium [?], **M. plur.**, a people in Dacia (*Transylvania*), on the river Theiss, at the eastern end of the Hercynian forest.

Alcalites, -um [**Celtic**], **M. plur.**, a nation of Britain.

anceps, -cipitis [**amb-**, *about, caput, head*], **adj.**, (*having a head on both sides*), *double-headed.* — Less exactly, *twofold, double*: **proelium** (*on both fronts, of an army facing in two ways*).

ancora, -ae [**Gr.**], **F.**, *anchor*: in **ancoris**, *at anchor.*

Andēs, -ium [**Celtic**], **M. plur.**, a tribe of Gaul north of the Loire, in modern Anjou.

Andī, -ōrum, the same as **Andes**.

Andocombogius, -ī [**Celtic**], **M.**, a chief man of the Remi.

Androclus, -ī [**Gr.**], a slave who cured the foot of a lion, and was afterwards recognized and spared by him.

angulus, -ī [prob. **ancō-** (*st. of ancus, bent* + **lus**), **M.**, (*a little hook*), *a corner.*

angustē [old case-form of **angustus**], **adv.**, *narrowly, in narrow quarters* (*closely*). — **Fig.**, *sparingly* [cf. **ample**], *in small quantity.*

angustiae, -ārum [**angustō-** + **ia**], **F. plur.**, *narrowness* (*prop. concrete, narrows*), *a narrow pass, a pass*: **itinerum** (*a narrow pass*); **locorum** (*narrow defiles*). — **Fig.**, *straits* (*difficult position, etc.*), *hard straits, difficulties.*

angustus, -a, -um [**angor** (*squeezing*) + **tus**], **adj.**, *narrow, confined*: **angustiora castra** (*less extensive*); **angustiore fastigio** (*narrowing, sloping, drawing in*). — **Fig.**, in **angusto res est**, *the position is critical* (cf. “in a tight place”).

anhēlus, -a, -um [**an-** (?) **halus** (cf. **halo, breathe**)], **adj.**, *panting, puffing.*

anilis, -e [**anu-** (*reduced, cf. anus, an old woman*) + **ilis**], **adj.**, *of an old woman, an old woman's, an old lady's.*

anima, -ae [**ani-** (*treated as root, fr. AN, blow*) + **ma** (*F. of mus, cf. animus*), **F.**, *breath.* Hence, *soul, life.* — **Plur.**, *the soul* (*of man, abstractly*).

animadversus, -a, -um, **p. p.** of **animadverto**.

animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus (also **animum adverto**) [**ani-**

munus aduerto], 3. v. a., *turn the mind to, attend to: in aliquem* (*punish*, cf. the domestic "attend to"). — Less exactly, *observe, notice, learn*.

animal, -ālis [anima- + lis, N. of adj.], N., (*a creature endowed with life*), *an animal* (including man), *a living creature* (opp. to *booty*).

animus, -ī [ani- (st. as root, fr. AN, *blow*) + mus], M., *breath, life, soul* (vital). — Usually (the above meanings being appropriated to **anima**, wh. see), *soul* (as thinking, feeling), *mind, feelings, feeling, intellect* (but cf. **mens**), *spirit, heart: animus fortis, courage; levitas animi* (*disposition, nature*), or together, *want of constancy; animi mollitia, want of energy or endurance; animo paratus, resolute; animus advertere* (see **animaduerto**). — Esp. (in a good sense, often in plur.), *spirit, constancy, courage, resolution: confirmare* (*encourage any one*); *re-languescere; paratus ad aliquid*. — Also (as opp. to **mens**, wh. see), *the moral powers, will, desires, affections, etc., the heart, the feelings, the disposition: ex animo, from the heart, sincerely; bono animo esse, be well-disposed, be of good cheer; offendere or avertere* (*feelings*); *magni animi, of great ambition; toto animo cogitare* (*deeply*). — Also, **animus magnus, courage, magnanimity, lofty spirit; animi magnitudo, lofty spirit; permulcere (*angry spirit*); *animi causa, for pleasure, for amusement, for fancy*.**

annālis, -e [annō- (reduced) + alis], adj., *yearly, annual*. — As noun (sc. **liber**, *book*), *a record* (by years), *a chronicle, a report*.

annōtinus, -a, -um [some form of annō- (*year*) + tinus (cf. **diutinus**)], adj., *last year's, old* (of ships made the year before).

annus, -ī [?], M., *a year* (as a point of time, as the course of the year, or as a period).

annuus, -a, -um [annō- + us], adj., *annual: magistratus creatur* (*annually*).

ānser, -eris [for **hanser**, akin to *goose*], M., *a goose*.

ante [old case-form], adv., *before* (of place and time), *in front: ante dictum* (*above, before, previously*); *ante habuerat* (*formerly, once*); *iam ante, already before, already*; *paucis ante diebus, a few days before*; *ante quam, before* (with clause). — Prep. with acc., *before* (of place or time). — In dates, *ante diem* (a. d.) (*on such a day before*). — In comp., *before* (of place, time, and succession).

anteā [ante eā, case-form of **is**], adv. (of time), *before, previously, once*.

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus [ante-cedo], 3. v. n. and a. (fr. force of prep.), *go forward, advance, surpass* (in size, etc.), *exceed, precede, go in advance of*.

anteeō, -īre, -īvī (-īi), no p. p. [ante-eo], 4. v. n., *go before, go ahead, precede*.

antemna, -ae [?], F., *a yard* (for sails).

antepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [ante-pono], 3. v. a., (*place in advance*, cf. **antefero**), *think of more importance*.

antequam, see **ante**.

antevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [ante-vertō], 3. v. a., (*turn in front*, cf. **antepono**), *prefer, get the start, get ahead*.

Antiochus, -ī [Gr.], M., the name of several Eastern potentates. — Esp., *Antiochus the Great*, King of Syria, conquered by the Scipios in B.C. 190.

antiquitus [antiquō- (*ancient*) + tus], adv., *from ancient times, from early times*. — Less exactly, *long ago, in early times, anciently*.

Antistius, -ī [antisti- (*antistes, overseer*) + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Caius Antistius Reginus*, a legatus of Cæsar.

Antōnius, -ī [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. *Marcus Antonius, Mark Antony*, the famous triumvir, a legatus of Cæsar in Gaul. — 2. *Antony*, a priest.

antrum, -ī [Gr.], N., *a cave*.

anxiētās, -ātis [anxiō- + tas], F., *anxiety, solicitude*.

anxius, -a, -um [†anxō- (p. p. of **ango, throttle**) + ius], adj., *anxious, troubled, fearful*.

Ap., for **Appius**.

apage [Gr.], interj., *begone! away with you!*

aperiō, -perīre, -peruī, -pertus [ab-pario, *get off*, cf. **operio, cover**], 4. v. a., *uncover, open*. — **apertus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *open, exposed, uncovered, unobstructed, unprotected*: **latus** (*the right side*, not covered by the shield); **collis** (*without trees*); **loca** (*open country*); **impetus maris** (*unbroken*).

apertē [old case-form of **apertus**], adv., *openly*.

apertus, -a, -um, p. p. of **aperio**.

Apollō, -inis [?], M., the son of Jupiter and Latona and twin brother of Diana, god of the sun, of divination, of poetry and music, and president of the Muses. He was also god of archery, of pestilence, and, on the other hand, of healing. He is identified by Cæsar with some Celtic divinity.

Apollōnius, -ī [Gr.], surnamed Molon, a distinguished rhetorician of Rhodes.

apparō, see **adparo**.

¹ **appellō**, see **appello**.

² **appellō** (adp-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†ad-pellō-, cf. **compello**], 1. v. a., *call, name, address, call upon, style* (declare one something or address in a certain character).

Appius, -ī [?, a Sabine word?], M., a Roman prænomen.

aptus, -a, -um [AP (in **apiscor, lay hold of**) + tus], adj., (*fitted to*), *suited, adapted, fit, apt*.

apud [akin to **ab**], prep. with acc., *at, among, with, near, before, on one's part, in relation to* (a person); *at the house of, in one's house* (company, possession): **apud Xenophontem**, *in* (the works of) *Xenophon*.

Apulia, -ae [Apulō- + ia, F. of adj.], F., a division of Southern Italy east of Campania and Samnium, and north of Lucania.

aqua, -ae [?], F., *water, a water-course, a spring*: **mensurae ex aqua**, *by the waterclock* (a contrivance like an hourglass for telling time by the running of water).

aquātiō, -ōnis [aquā- (st. of

aquor, *fetch water*) + **tio**], F., *getting water* (cf. **pabulatio**).

aquila, -ae [F. of **aquilus**, *dark gray*, perh. remotely akin to **aqua**], F., *an eagle*. — Esp., the standard of the Romans, consisting of an eagle on a staff.

aquilifer, -erī [aquila-fer (reduced fr. -ferus, FER (in **fero**, *bear*) + **us**)], M., *a standard-bearer* (of the eagle).

Aquitānia, -ae [F. of adj. developed fr. **Aquitanus**], F., the part of Gaul between the Province, the Pyrenees, the Garonne, and the ocean. (See Cæsar, I. 1.)

Aquitānus, -a, -um [?], adj., *of Aquitania*. — As noun, *an inhabitant of Aquitania, an Aquitanian*.

āra, -ae [?], F., *an altar*.

Arar, -aris [?], M., *the Saône*, a river of Gaul rising in the Vosges and flowing into the Rhone at Lyons.

Araxēs, -is [Gr.], M., *the Araxes*, a river in Persia.

arbitr, -trī [stem akin to **ad-bito** (*go*) + **trus**, cf. -trum], M., (*a bystander*), *a witness*. — Less exactly, *a referee, an arbitrator*.

arbitrium, -ī [arbitrō- (*umpire, judge*) + **ium** (cf. **iudicium**)], N., *judgment, will, pleasure* (what one sees fit to do).

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus [arbitrō-, *umpire, judge*], I. v. a. and n., *think, judge, suppose*.

arbor, -oris [?], F., *a tree*.

arcessō, -ere, -ivī, -itus [akin to **accedo**, but the exact relation uncertain], 3. v. a., *summon, invite, send for, call in*.

ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsī, ārsus [prob.

aridō-, *dry*], 2. v. n., *be hot, be on fire*. — Fig., *be excited, be in a blaze, burn*.

ārdor, -ōris [ard- (as if root of **ardeo**) + **or**], M., *heat, flame*. — Fig., *fire, fury, eagerness, zeal*.

Arduenna, -ae [?], F., *the Ardennes*, a very large forest region in northeastern Gaul.

arduus, -a, -um [?], adj., *high, steep, difficult* (of ascent). — Fig., *difficult*: **arduus rebus**, *hardships*.

ārea, -ae [?], F., *a court, a courtyard*.

Arecomici, -ōrum [?], M. plur., a branch of the Volcæ.

Aremoricus (Arm-), -a, -um [Celtic **are**, *near*, and **mor**, *the sea*], adj., only F. plur., *Aremoric* (of the states of Gaul near the ocean in Normandy and Brittany).

argenteus, -a, -um [argentō- + **eus**], adj., *of silver, silver* (adj.).

argentum, -ī [akin to **arguo**, *make bright*], N., (*the shining metal*), *silver*. — Also, of things made of the metal, *silverware, silver*.

argūtus, -a, -um [p. p. of **arguo**, *make bright*], adj., *sharp, shrill*: **pecten** (*ringing*).

āridus, -a, -um [tarō- (wh. **areo**, *be dry*) + **dus**], adj., *dry*. — Neut. as noun, *dry land*.

ariēs, -ietis [?], M., *a ram*. — Fig., *a battering ram* (a long timber armed at the end with metal, for demolishing walls). — Less exactly, *a buttress* (piles driven down in a stream to brace a bridge).

Ariovistus, -ī [?], M., a chief of the Germans, called in by the Gauls in their domestic quarrels, who con-

ruled and ruled them until he was himself crushed by the Romans.

arma, -ōrum [AR, *fit* (cf. *armus*, *the shoulder joint*) + *mus*], N. plur., *arms, equipment*: in *armis esse*, *to be under arms, to be ready for service, to be in service*; *parati in armis*, *armed for war*; in *armis*, *in battle*; *arma inferre* (*war*); *armis congressi* (*in battle*), and the like.

armāmenta, -ōrum [armā- (st. of *armo*) + *mentum*], N. plur., (*fit-tings*), *implements*. — Esp., *rigging, tackle*.

armātūra, -ae [armā- (st. of *armo*) + *tura*], F., *equipment*: *levis armaturae Numidae* (*light armed, without the heavy defensive armor of the legionary*).

armātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *armo*.

Armenia, -ae [Gr.], F., a country of Asia.

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [armō- (st. of *arma*)], I. v. a., *equip, arm, fit out*. — Pass., *arm* (one's self). — **armātus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *armed, in arms, equipped*. — Masc. plur. as noun, *armed men*.

arr-, see **adr-**.

ars, *artis* [AR (*fit*) + *tis* (reduced)], F., (*skill in fitting*), *skill, art*. — Plur., *the arts, the useful arts*.

artē [old case-form of *artus*], adv., *closely, tightly*.

articulus, -ī [artu- (*joint*) + *culus*], M., *a little joint*. — Less exactly, *a joint*.

artifex, -icis [†*arti*- (*ars*) -*fex* (FAC as st.)], M. and F., *an artist*.

artificium, -ī [artific- (*artificer*) + *ium*], N., *a skillful contrivance, an*

artifice, a trick. Also, *a trade* (opp. to *ars, a higher art*).

artus, -a, -um [p. p. of *arceo* (*shut up*)], as adj., *tightly bound, close*: *silva* (*thick*). — Fig., *frugal, straitened, narrow*.

Arvernus, -a, -um [Celtic], adj., *of the Arverni* (a powerful Gallic tribe west of the Cevennes in modern Auvergne). — Masc. plur. as noun, *the Arverni*.

arvum, -ī [AR (in *aro*, *plough*) + *vum*], N., *land* (cultivated), *a field*.

arx, *arcis* [ARC (in *arceo*, *shut up*) + *is* (reduced)], F., *a stronghold, a fortress, a citadel*.

ascendō (ads-), -scendere, -scendī, -scēsus [ad-scando, *climb*], 3. v. a. and n., *climb up, climb, ascend*: *val-lum* (*mount, scale*); *navem* (*go on board*).

ascēsiō (ads-), -ōnis [ad-†scensio, cf. *ascendo*], F., (*a climbing up*), *an ascent*: *ascensionem facere*, *climb up*.

ascēsus (ads-), -ūs [ad-†scansus, cf. *ascendo*], M., *a climbing up, an ascent, a going up*. — Concr., *a way up, a means of ascent*: *prohibere ascensu* (*from climbing up*).

asciscō, see **adscisco**.

Asia, -ae [Gr.], F., the country now called *Asia Minor*. — Esp., the Roman province of *Asia*, embracing Phrygia, Caria, Mysia, and Lydia.

asinus, -ī [?], M., *an ass*.

aspectus, see **adspicere**.

asper, -era, -erum [?], adj., *rough, harsh*. — Fig., *fierce, violent, rude, ascetic*.

aspernātus, -a -um, p. p. of *aspernor*.

aspernor, -ārī, -ātus [†aspernō- (st. akin to ab-sperno), 1. v. dep., *disdain, spurn, despise*.

ass-, see **ads-**.

Astyagēs, -is [Gr.], M., king of Media, father of Mandana, and grandfather of Cyrus, by whom he was deprived of his throne.

at [prob. form of **ad**], conj., *but, but yet, at least*.

ater, -tra, -trum [?], adj., *black, dark*, opp. to **albus** (dead white), cf. **niger** (jet black). — Fig., *black, dark, gloomy, dismal*.

Athēnae, -ārum [Gr.], F. plur., *Athens*, the great city of Attica.

Athēniēnsis, -e [Athena- + **ensis**], adj., *of Athens, Athenian*. — Plur. as noun, *the Athenians*.

Athēnodōrus, -ī [Gr.], M., an Athenian philosopher.

Athesis, -is [?], M., a river in upper Italy (now the Adige).

atque (**āc**) [ad-que], conj., *and* (generally introducing some more important idea), *and even, and especially, and what is more*. — Also, *as, than*: **par atque**, *idem atque*, *the same as*; **simul atque**, *as soon as*; **aliter ac** (**atque**), *otherwise than, different from what, etc.*; **aliud atque**, *different from, etc.*

atquē [at-qui (old abl. or instr.)], conj., (*but somehow*), *but yet, but still*.

Atrebās, -ātis [Celtic], adj., *Atrebatian, of the Atrebates* (a people of Belgic Gaul), rarely sing. of one. — Plur. as noun, *the Atrebates*.

atrium, -ī [atrō- (st. of ater) + **ius**], N., *the atrium, the main room, the hall*, of a Roman house.

Atrius, -ī [atrō- (st. of ater) + **ius**], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Quintus Atrius*, a soldier in Cæsar's army.

atrōx, -ōcis [st. akin to ater + **cus** (reduced)], adj., *savage, cruel*. — Also, of things, *atrocious, inhuman, monstrous*: **proelium** (*fierce*).

attendō (**adt-**), -tendere, -tendī, -tentus [ad-tendo], 3. v. a. and n., (*stretch towards*). — With or without **animum**, *attend, notice, listen*. — **attentus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *attentive*: **quaesitis** (*devoted to his gains*).

attentus, -a, -um, p. p. of **attendo**.

atterō (**adt-**), -terere, -trivī, -tritus [ad-tero], 3. v. a., *rub against, rub*. — From the effect, *rub off, wear away*.

Atticus, -ī [Gr.], M., surname of *Titus Pomponius Atticus*, a Roman historian, a great friend of Cicero. He lived chiefly in Athens, whence his surname.

attineō (**adt-**), -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [ad-teneo], 2. v. n., (*hold out towards*). — Fig., *pertain, relate*.

attingō (**adt-**), -tingere, -tigī, -tactus [ad-tango], 3. v. a., *touch upon, touch, reach, join* (of a nation's boundaries).

attonitus, -a, -um [p. p. of **attono**, *strike with a thunderbolt*], adj., *thunderstruck, spellbound, awestruck*.

attribuō (**adt-**), -buere, -buī, -būtus [ad-tribuo], 3. v. a., *allot to, assign*.

attulī, see **adfero**.

auctor, -ōris [AUG (in **augeo**, *increase*) + **tor**], M., *a voucher* (for any act or statement), *an authority, an adviser, an author, a promoter*: **victo-**

riae (*a cause or source*); auctor esse, *approve, advise*.

auctōritās, -ātis [auctor- (as if i-st.) + tas], F., *influence, prestige, authority* (not military or political, cf. *imperium* and *potestas*), *dignity*.

auctus, -a, -um, p. p. of *augeo*.

audācia, -ae [audac- (*bold*) + ia], F., *daring, boldness, effrontery, audacity*.

audācter [audac- (*bold*) + ter], adv., *with daring, boldly, fearlessly* (but used of an enemy): *audacissime*, *with the greatest daring*.

audeō, audēre, ausus [prob. avidō-, *eager*], 2. v. a. and n., *dare, venture, risk, dare to try (or do)*. — ausus, -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, *daring*.

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [prob. akin to *auris*, *ear*], 4. v. a., *hear, hear of, listen to*.

auditiō, -ōnis [audī- (st. of *audio*) + tiō], F., *a hearing, hearsay, report*.

audītus, -a -um, p. p. of *audio*.

aufero, auferre, abstulī, ablātus [ab(s) -fero], irr. v. a., *take away, carry off, remove*.

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus [AUG (causative or fr. unc. noun-st.)], 2. v. a., *increase, magnify, enhance, add to* (something). — Pass., *increase, grow*.

Augustus, -ī [augustus, *venerable, august*], M., a title (used as a surname) of Octavius Cæsar.

Aulercus, -a, -um [Celtic], adj., *of the Aulerci* (a widespread people of several tribes in the interior of Gaul). — Plur. as noun, *the Aulerci*.

aura, -ae [AU (*blow*) + ra (F. of

rus)], F., *air (in motion), a breeze*. — More gen., *the air*.

Aurēlius, -ī [for *Auselius*, akin to *aurum*, *Aurora*, and *uro*], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Caius Aurelius Cotta*, a consul in Hannibal's time.

aureus, -a, -um [aurō- + eus], adj., *of gold, golden*.

aurīga, -ae [poss. akin to *auris* and *ago*, cf. *aurea*, *headstall*], M. and F., *a charioteer, a driver*.

auris, -is [akin to *ear* (cf. *audio*)], F., *an ear*: *auris mihi praebe*, *give attention to me*, "*lend me your ears*."

aurum, -ī [akin to *uro*, *burn*], N., *gold*.

Aurunculēius, -ī [Aurunculō- (dim. of *Auruncus*, name of an Italian tribe) + *eius*], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, a legatus of Cæsar.

auscultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†auscul- + ta-, for *auricula*], I. v. n., *hear with attention, listen*.

Auster, -trī [us (*burn*) + ter (†-tro, cf. -trum)], *the south wind* (dry and hot). — Personified, *Auster, the god of the South Wind*.

ausus, -a, -um, p. p. of *audeo*.

aut [?, but cf. *autem*], conj., *or* (regularly exclusive, cf. *vel*). — Repeated, *either . . . or*.

autem [?, akin to *aut*], conj., *but* (the weakest degree of opposition, cf. *sed*), *on the other hand, then again, now* (explanatory), *whereas* (in slight opposition to something preceding), *however*.

autumnus (auct-), -ī [for †auc-

tominus, †**auctō-** (cf. **augeo**, *increase*) + **minus**], *autumn* (the season of increase).

auxilior, -ārī, -ātus [†**auxiliō-**, *help*], I. v. dep., *give assistance*.

auxilium, -ī [†**auxili-** (akin to **augeo**, *increase*) + **ium**], N., *assistance, aid, remedy, relief*: **extremum** (*the last resource*); **ferre** (*to assist, to aid*); **auxilio** (*as a reinforcement*); **quos auxili causa habebat** (*as auxiliaries, etc.* — Plur., *auxiliaries* (as opp. to the regular heavy-armed infantry), *reinforcements*: **auxilia tardare**, *hinder from rendering assistance*.

Avaricum, -ī [Celtic], N., a town of the Bituriges, now Bourges.

avāritia, -ae [avarō- (*greedy*) + **tia**], F., *covetousness, greed, avarice*.

avārus, -a, -um [†avā- (st. akin to **aveo**) + **rus** (cf. **gnarus**)], adj., *avaricious, covetous, greedy*.

avē [imv. of **aveō**, *be happy*], *farewell, hail* (in salutations).

avēna, -ae [?], F., *oats, oat straw*.
aveō, -ēre, no perf., no p. p. [prob. †avō- (AV. (*desire*) + **us**)], 2. v. a., *desire earnestly, be eager*.

āversus, -a, -um, p. p. of **averto**.

āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [ab-vertō], 3. v. a., *turn aside, turn away, turn off, push aside*. — **āversus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *turned away*. Hence, *flying*, also, with a change of point of view in translation, *in the rear* (of that to which the word is applied): **ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur** (*by the enemy getting in their rear, etc.*).

avia, -ae [avō- + **ia**], F., a *grandmother*.

avidus, -a, -um [†avō- (cf. **aveo** and **avarus**) + **us**], adj., *eager, desirous*.

avis, -is [unc. root + **is**], F., a *bird*.

avus, -ī [?], M., a *grandfather*.

Axona, -ae [Celtic], F., a river of Gaul (now Aisne), a tributary of the Isara (Oise).

B

Babylōn, -ōnis [Gr.], F., an ancient and renowned city on the Euphrates river, taken by Cyrus the Great.

Babylōnicus, -a, -um [Babylon- + **icus**], adj., *Babylonian, Babylonian*.

Babylōnius, -a, -um [Babylon- + **ius**], adj., *Babylonian*. — M. plur. as noun, *the Babylonians*.

Bācenis, -is [Teutonic], F., with **silva**, a forest of Germany between the Cherusci and the Suevi.

baculum, -ī [?], N., a *staff, a sceptre, a wand*.

Baebius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Cnæus Bæbius Tamphilus* and *Marcus Bæbius Tamphilus*, consuls in Hannibal's time.

Baleāris, -e [?], adj., *Balearic* (belonging to the *Baleares insulae*, in the Mediterranean, now Iviza, Majorca, and Minorca, famous for their slingers).

balneum, -ī (plur. -ae or -a) [fr. the Gr.], N. and F., *a bath, a bath-room*.

barbarus, -a, -um [prob. fr. imitation of unintelligible speech, cf. **balbus**, *stammering*], adj., *foreign* (not Greek or Latin), *uncivilized, savage, barbarian, of the barbarians*. — Masc. plur. as noun, *barbarians, the barbarians or savages*.

Basilus, -ī [?], M., agnomen of *Lucius Minucius Basilus*, an officer in Cæsar's army.

Batavī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., *the Batavi or Batavians*, a nation occupying the region about the mouths of the Rhine.

beātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *beo*.

Belgae, -ārum [?], M. plur., *the Belgæ or Belgians*, a nation occupying the northern part of Gaul. — Perh. also a small tribe of that nation with this special name.

Belgium, -ī [Belga + ium], N., the country of the Belgæ.

bellē [old case-form of **bellus**], *prettily, neatly, finely, well*.

bellicōsus, -a, -um [bellicō- (*of war*) + osus], adj., *warlike*.

bellicus, -a, -um [bellō- (*war*) + cus], adj., *of war, in war*.

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [bellō-, *war*], I. v. n., *fight, make war*.

Bellovaci, -ōrum [?], M. plur., a Gallic tribe between the Seine, Somme, and Oise, about modern Beauvais.

bellum, -ī [old **duellum** (fr. **duo**)], *a strife between two*, N., *war, a war: bello persequi, etc. (in arms); bellum inferre, make war (offensive); bellum*

defendere, defend one's self from war; parare bellum, make warlike preparations, prepare for war.

bellus, -a, -um [contr. from **benu-lus**, from **bonus** (cf. **bene**)], adj., *pretty, handsome, agreeable, lovely*.

bene [old case-form of **bonus**, *good*], adv., *well: bene habet, it is well*.

beneficium, -ī [beneficō- (reduced) (cf. **bene**, FAC in **facio**) + ium], N., *well-doing, a service, a favor, a kindness*, often rendered by Eng. plur., *services, favors shown, services rendered*.

benīgnē [old case-form of **benignus**, *kind*], adv., *kindly, generously*.

benīgnitās, -ātis [benignō- (*kind*) + tas], F., *kindness, courtesy*.

beō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [?], I. v. a. *bless, make happy, gladden*. — **beātus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *happy, fortunate, blessed*.

bēstia, -ae [?], F., *a brute* (as opp. to man, cf. **belua**, *a monster or ferocious beast*), *a beast, an animal*.

bēstiola, -ae [bestia- + ola (fem. of **olus**, dim. ending)], F., *a little animal, a "beastie"*.

bibliothēca, -ae [Gr.], F., *a library*.

bibō, *bibere*, bibī, bibitus [redupl. unc. root, cf. **potus**], 3. v. a., *drink*.

Bibracte, -is [Celtic], N., the chief town of the Hædui (Mont Beauvray) near Autun, which was founded later.

Bibrax, -ctis [cf. last word], F., a town of the Remi.

Bibroci, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of southeast Britain.

Bibulus, -ī [bibō- (*drinking*) +

lus], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., *Marcus (Calpurnius) Bibulus*, Cæsar's colleague in the consulship.

bīduum, -ī [bi- (for dvi-, akin to **duo**) -duum (akin to **dies**)], N., *two days' time, two days*.

bīnī, -ae, -a [bi- (for †dvi-, akin to **duo**) + nus], distrib. num. adj., plur., *two each, two sets of, two* (of things in pairs or sets).

bipedālis, -e [biped- (bi-ped-, in **pes**, *foot*) + alis], adj., *of two feet* (in measure), *two feet* (long, wide, etc.).

bis [for dvis, unc. case-form of **duo**], adv., *twice*.

Bithyniī, -ōrum [Gr.], M. plur., *the Bithynians*, people of Bithynia in Asia Minor.

Biturīges, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Celtic Gaul, in two branches, **Vibisci** (around Bordeaux) and **Cubi** (around Bourges).

Blannovīī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a Celtic tribe, dependents of the **Hædui**.

Blithō, -ōnis [?], M., a Roman family name. See **Sulpicius**.

Bocchus, -ī [?], M., a king of the **Gætuli**, conquered by **Marius**.

Bođuōgnātus, -ī [Celtic], M., a leader of the **Nervii**.

Bōia, F. sing. of **Bōii**, *Boia*.

Bōiī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a Celtic nation, of which a part occupied lands in Cisalpine Gaul, a part settled in Pannonia, and a part joined the **Helvetii** in their emigration.

Boiorīx, -īgis [Celtic], M., a leader of the **Cimbri**, conquered by **Marius**.

bonus, -a, -um [?], adj., *good*: **bono animo esse**, *to be well disposed*; **dapis meliora** (*the better parts*); **optimum est**, *it is best*. — Neut. as noun, *good, advantage*; plur., *goods, property, estate*.

bōs, **bovis** [akin to **cow**], C., a *bull, a cow, an ox*. — Plur., *cattle, oxen*.

* **brabēum**, -ī [Gr.], N., a *prize*.

bracchium (**brāch-**), -ī [?], N., an *arm*.

Brannovīces, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a division of the **Aulerci** living near the **Hædui**.

Bratuspantium, -ī [Celtic], N., a fortified town of the **Bellovaci**, not certainly identified.

brevis, -e [for †bregus (**BRAGH**, *break* + **us**)], adj., *short* (of space or time): **dominus (short-lived)**; **brevi**, *in a short space*.

brevitās, -ātis [brevi- + **tas**], F., *shortness, short stature*: **brevitas temporis**, *want of time*.

Britanni, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., *the Britons* (including all the tribes of Britain).

Britannia, -ae [†**Britannō**- + **ia** (F. of **ius**)], F., *Britain*.

Britannicus, -a, -um [†**Britannō**- + **cus**], adj., *of Briton, Briton*: **bellum (with Britain)**.

brūma, -ae [brevi- (*short*) + **ma** (superl.), sc. **dies**], F., *the winter solstice*.

Brundisium, -ī [?], N., a port of **Apulia** (now **Brindisi**).

Brūtus, -ī [**brutus**, *heavy*], a family name at Rome. — Esp.: 1. *Decimus Junius Brutus Albinus*, a legatus

of Cæsar. He distinguished himself in command of Cæsar's fleet off the coast of Gaul, and afterwards in the Civil War on the side of Cæsar. But he joined the conspiracy against

Cæsar with Marcus Junius Brutus, and was one of Cæsar's assassins. He was afterwards killed in Gaul by order of Antony. — 2. *Marcus Junius Brutus*, mentioned above.

C

C, for *centum*, *hundred*.

C., for *Gaius*.

Cabillōnum, -ī [Celtic], N., a town of the Hædui on the Saone (Chalon-sur-Saône).

cacūmen, -inis [?], N., *the top* (of trees, mountains, etc.).

cadāver, -eris [akin to *cado*, *fall*], N., *a corpse, a body* (dead).

cadō, *cadere*, *cecidī*, *cāsūrus* [CAD, *fall*], 3. v. n., *fall, be killed*.

cādūceus, -ī [akin to Gr.], M., *a herald's staff*, the token of a peaceful embassy.

Cadūrcus, -a, -um [Celtic], adj., *of the Cadurci* (a tribe of Aquitania). — Plur. as noun, *the Cadurci*.

Caecubus, -a, -um [?], adj., *Cæcuban*, of *Cæcubum*, a place in Latium celebrated for its wine. — Neut. as noun (sc. *vinum*), *Cæcuban* (wine).

caecus, -a, -um [?], adj., *blind*.

caedēs, -is [†*caed* (as if root of *caedo*, *kill*) + *is* or *es*], F., *a murder, a massacre, slaughter, killing*.

caedō, *cadere*, *cecidī*, *caesus* [prob. causative of *cado*, cf. *fall, fell*], 3. v. a., *strike, strike down, cut, fell, cut down, slay*.

caelestis, -ē [†*caelit-* (st. of *caeles*, fr. *caelum*) + *tis*], adj., *heavenly*. — Plur. as noun, *the gods*.

caelum, -ī [?], N., *the sky, the heavens, heaven*.

caenōsus, -a, -um [*caenō-* + *osus*], adj., *filthy, foul*.

caenum, -ī [?], N., *dirt, filth, mud, mire*.

caerimōnia, -ae [?], F., *a rite, a ceremony*.

Caerōsī, -ōrum [?], M. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.

caeruleus, -a, -um [perh. akin to *caesius*, *bluish*], adj., *dark blue*.

Caesar, -aris [?], M., a family name in the gens Iulia. — Esp., *Caius Julius Cæsar*, the conqueror of Gaul and the author of the Commentaries.

caesus, -a, -um, p. p. of *caedo*.

calamitās, -ātis [?], F., *disaster*, (orig. to crops?), *defeat, misfortune, loss*.

***calceārius**, -ī [*calcō-* + *arius*], M., *a shoemaker, a dealer in shoes*.

calceus, -ī [*calc-* (*calx*, *heel*) + *eus*], M., *a shoe*.

calculus, -ī [*calc-* (*calx*, *lime*) + *ulus* (as if *calcō-* + *lus*)], M., *a pebble, a stone* for reckoning. Hence, fig., *a reckoning*: *ad calculos revo-care*, *subject to an accurate reckoning, calculate*.

calefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus [unc. case-form (akin to *caleo*, *be hot*) -*facio*], I. v. a., *heat, make hot*.

Caletes, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe in Normandy on the Seine.

Caletī, -ōrum, same as the preceding.

callidē [old case-form of **callidus**], adv., *shrewdly, craftily*.

callidus, -a, -um [†callō- (cf. **callum**, *thick skin*) + **dus**], adj., (*tough?*), *shrewd, cunning, skilful*.

cālō, -ōnis [?], M., *a servant* (of a soldier), *a camp follower*.

Calpurnia, -ae [?], F., Cæsar's wife.

calumnia, -ae [†calumnō- (cf. **calvor**, *deceive*) + **ia**], F., *a false prosecution*.

calvitium, -ī [calvō- + **tium**], N., *baldness*.

calvus, -a, -um [?], adj., *bald*.

Calvus, -ī [calvus], M., a Roman surname. — Esp., *Caius Licinius Macer Calvus*, a poet and orator.

Cambysēs, -ī [Gr.], M.: 1. The father of Cyrus the Great. — 2. Son of Cyrus.

Camers, -ertis [?], adj., *of Camerinum, Camertian*. — Masc. plur. as noun, *the Camertians*.

Campānus, -a, -um [campō- (reduced) + **anus**], *Campanian, of Campania*, a district of southern Italy.

campester, -tris, -tre [campō- + **ster**, as if †campet- + **tris** (cf. **equestris**)], adj., *of the plain: loca* (*level plains*).

campus, -ī [?], M., *a plain, a field*.

candeō, -ēre, -uī, no p. p. [†candō- (CAN in **canus**, *white*)], 2. v. n., *be brilliant, shine, glow* (with a glistering color).

candidus, -a, -um [†candō- (whence

candeo) + **dus**], adj., *shining, white, bright*.

Canīnius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Caius Caninius Rebilus*, a legatus of Cæsar.

canis, -is [?], M. and F., *a dog*.

canistrum, -ī [Gr.], N., *a basket*.

Cannae, -ārum [?], F. plur., a town of Apulia in Italy, where Hannibal totally defeated the Romans.

Cannēnsis, -e [Canna- + **ensis**], adj., *of Cannae*.

Cantium, -ī [Celtic], N., *Kent*, the southeast corner of Great Britain.

cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cantō-, *song*], 1. v. a., *produce melodious sounds, sing, sound, play* (an instrument).

cantus, -ūs [CAN (*sing*) + **tus**], M., *a song, melody, music*.

capāx, -ācis [CAP (in **capio**) + **ax** (as if, perh. really, †capā- + **cus** reduced)], adj., *wide, capacious*.

capillus, -ī [adj. form akin to **caput**, *head*], M., *the hair* (collectively).

capīō, **capere**, **cēpī**, **captus** [CAP], 3. v. a., *take, capture, take possession of, get, acquire, seize: arma* (*take up*). — Less exactly, *choose, select: locum*. — So also (esp. of ships, etc.), *reach: portus* (*arrive at, make*). — Fig., *take in* (*deceive*), *captivate, beguile, experience* (*dolorem*): **consilium** (*adopt*); **quietem** (*take, enjoy*); **fugam** (*take to*).

capitālis, -ē [capit- + **alis**], adj., (relating to the head or life), *capital, involving life: causa*.

Capitōlium, -ī [developed from **capit-**], N., *the Capitol at Rome*.

capra, ae [?], F., a *she-goat*.

captivus, -a, -um [as if †capti- (imaginary st. of capto, fr. capio) + vus], adj., *captive*. — Masc. as noun, a *captive*, a *prisoner*.

captō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [captō- (cf. capio)], 1. v. a. freq., *seize eagerly*, *catch at*, *watch for*.

captus, -a, -um, p. p. of capio.

captus, -ūs [CAP (in capio) + tus], M., a *seizing*. Hence, *what one can grasp*. — Fig., *capacity*, *character*, *nature*.

Capua, -ae [?], F., the chief city of Campania in Italy, famed for its wealth and luxury.

caput, -itis [?, akin to head], N., the *head*: *capite solo ex aqua exstare*, *have only the head above water*. — Less exactly, *person* (cf. "head of cattle"), *mouth* (of a river). — Fig., *life*: *poenam capitis* (of *death*); *capitis periculo* (of *life*); *capitis damnare* (to *death*).

carcer, -eris [Gr.], M., a *prison*.

careō, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus [?], 2. v. n., *be without*, *go without*, *be free from*, *keep away from*.

carīna, -ae [?], F., a *keel*, the *bottom* (of a ship).

carmen, -inis [akin to cano], N., a *song*, *music*, a *poem*, a *magic formula*, an *incantation*, a *charm*.

Carnutes, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic people between the Loire and the Seine, about Orleans.

carō, carnis [akin to crudus and raw], F., *flesh*, *meat*. — Plur., *pieces of meat*.

carpō, -pere, -psī, -ptus [akin to harvest], 3. v. a., *pluck*: *viam* (take).

carrum, -ī [Celtic], N., a *cart* (of the Gauls).

carrus, -ī, M., another form for carrum.

Carthāginiēnsis (Kar-), -e [Carthagin- (as if -ini-) + ensis], adj., of *Carthage*, *Carthaginian*. — Masc. as noun, a *Carthaginian*.

Carthāgō (Kar-), -inis [prob. Gr.], F., *Carthage*, the famous city in Africa once the rival of Rome.

cārus, -a, -um [?], adj., *dear*, *precious*, *valuable*.

Carvilius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Also, a king of part of Kent.

Casca, -ae [?], M., surname of *C. Servilius*, one of Cæsar's assassins.

cāseus, -ī [?], M., *cheese*.

Cassī, -ōrum [Celtic, cf. Velio-casses and Cassivellaunus], M. plur., a British tribe.

Cassius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Caius Cassius Longinus*, one of Cæsar's assassins.

Cassivellaunus, -ī [Celtic], M., a British chief ruling north of the Thames, who took command of the general resistance of his countrymen to Cæsar, but was finally reduced to submission.

castellum, -ī [castrō- (fortress) + lum (N. of lus)], N., a *fortress*, a *stronghold*, a *fort*, an *outwork*, a *redoubt*.

Castor, -oris [Gr.], M., twin brother of Pollux, son of Jupiter and Leda, worshipped as a divinity, along with his brother, by the Greeks and Romans.

castrum, -ī [SKAD (cover) +

trum], N., a fortress. — Plur., a camp (fortified, as was the manner of the Romans): in castris, in camp, also in service; castra ponere, pitch a camp; castra movere, break camp, move.

cāsus, -ūs [CAD (in cado, fall) + tus], M., (what befalls), an accident, a chance (good or bad), a fate, a mischance, a misfortune, a downfall: casu, by accident, by chance; casu devenit, chanced to, etc.; quarum rerum casus (the occurrence, the happening, the possibility); belli casum sustinere (take the chances); ad omnes casus, against all accidents; in eum casum deduci (that pass).

catellus, -ī [catulō- (whelp) + lus], a puppy.

catēna, -ae [?], F., a chain (for prisoners), a cable.

Catō, -ōnis [prob. catō- (cat) + ō (cf. Catulus)], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Marcus Porcius Cato Uticensis, famous for the constancy (perhaps obstinacy) of his character and for his death at Utica, which he sought with his own hands rather than submit to Cæsar.

Catullus, -ī [dim. of Catulus], M., Valerius Catullus, one of the greatest of Roman lyric poets.

causa, -ae [?], F., a cause, a reason, an excuse, grounds, an occasion, a motive (for an act), a right (to anything). Abl. after a gen., for the sake of, for the purpose of, for, on behalf of: libertatis causa; praedandi causa (to, etc.); insidiarum causa, for an ambush; animi causa, for amusement, for fancy. — Also, a

cause (in law), a case: causa cognita, after trial. Hence, also, a situation, a case: in eadem causa, in the same situation, on the same side.

causor, -ārī, -ātus [causa-], I. v. dep., assign or give as a reason (real or feigned), pretend, allege.

cautē [old case-form of cautus], adv., with caution, cautiously.

cautēs, -is [akin to cos, whetstone], F., a rock (sharp or jagged), a reef.

cautus, -a, -um, p. p. of caveo.

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautus [perh. SKV, cover], 2. v. n. and a., be on one's guard, guard against (something), take or give security, beware of.

cavum, -ī [N. of cavus, hollow, as noun], N., a hole, a cave.

CC, for ducenti, -ae, -a, two hundred.

CCCC, for quadringenti, -ae, -a, four hundred.

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus [?], 3. v. n., make way (in any direction). — Esp., give way, retreat, retire, depart: cedentes, the flying. — Fig., yield: fortunae.

cedrus, -ī [Gr.], F., cedar, juniper tree.

celebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [celebri- (reduced)], I. v. a., crowd, throng, frequent. Hence, celebrate, extol, praise.

celer, -eris, -ere [CEL (in cello, rush) + ris], adj., swift, quick, speedy, fast: motus (sudden).

celeritās, -ātis [celeri- (in celer) + tas], F., swiftness, activity, speed, promptness: ad celeritatem onerandi, to secure quick loading; itineris (quick marching).

celeriter [**celeri-** (in **celer**) + **ter**], adv., *quickly, speedily, very soon, soon.*

cēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [?, akin to **clam**, *secretly*, and **caligo**, *mist*], 1. v. a., *conceal, hide*: **arma**. — Pass., *pass unnoticed.*

Celtae, -ārum [Celtic], M. plur., a great race in Gaul and Britain. — More particularly, *the Celts* (in a narrower sense, occupying the interior of Gaul).

Celtillus, -ī [Celtic], M., one of the Arverni, father of Vercingetorix.

cēna, -ae [?], F., *a dinner, a meal, a repast, a banquet.*

Cēnabēnsis, -e [Cenabō- + **ensis**], adj., *of Cenabum, of the Cenabenses, the people of Cenabum.*

Cēnabum (**Gēn-**), -ī [Celtic], N., the chief city of the Carnutes, now Orleans (from its later name, **urbs Aurelianusensis**).

Cēnimāgnī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a British tribe.

cēnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cena-], 1. v. n., *dine.*

Cēnomānī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a division of the Auleri.

cēnsēō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus [?], 2. v. a., (perh. *fine*), *reckon, estimate*. — Less exactly, *give one's opinion, advise, determine.*

Centēnius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Caius Centenius*, a Roman praetor, conquered by Hannibal.

centēsimus, -a, -um [centō- + **esimus**], num. adj., *the hundredth.*

centum (**C**) [akin to **hund-red**], indecl. num. adj., *a hundred.*

centuriō, -ōnis [†centuria- (*century*) + **o**], M., *a centurion*. A subaltern officer from the ranks, commanding a 'century,' originally a hundred men.

cēra, -ae [Gr.], F., *wax, a writing tablet* (covered with wax).

cerevisia, -ae [Celtic], F., *beer.*

cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus (*sifted, separated*), certus (*determined*) [CER-, *separate*], 3. v. a., *separate*. Hence, *distinguish, see, behold, descry, discern*. — Also, *determine*.

certāmen, -inis [†certā- (in **certo**, cf. **cerno**) + **men**], N., *a struggle, a contest, rivalry.*

certē [old case-form of **certus**], adv., *certainly, surely, at least* (surely what is mentioned, if nothing more).

certo, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [certō-], 1. v. n., *strive, contend, fight.*

certus, -a, -um, p. p. of **cerno**, as adj., *determined, fixed, certain* (of the thing as well as the person), *definite, sure, established, regular*: *certiorem facere, inform, order*; *dies certa, an appointed day or time*; *certa subsidia* (*regular, as organized beforehand*); *certum in locum* (*particular*).

cervīx, -īcis [akin to **cerebrum**, *the brain*], F., *the neck.*

cervus, -ī [root of **cornu** (*horn*) + **vus**], M., *a stag*; plur., in military language, *a structure of forked stakes* (like *stag's horns*), *chevaux-de-frise*.

cessō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cessō- (p. p. of **cedo**)], 1. v. n. freq., *linger, delay.*

(**cēterus**), -a, -um [CE (in **ecce**,

behold, hic, this) + *terus* (cf. *alter*), adj., *the other, the rest of* (cf. *alius, other*, not including all).—Usually plur., *the rest, the remaining, the others*; *frumento ceterisque rebus* (*everything else* necessary, where *aliis* would mean *some other things*).

Cethēgus, -ī [?], M., a Roman family name.—Esp., *Publius Cornelius Cethegus*, a Roman consul in Hannibal's time.

Cevenna, -ae [Celtic], F., *the Cevennes*, a woody mountain region on the west side of the lower Rhone valley.

Chēruscī, -ōrum [?], M. plur., a tribe of the Germans between the Weser and the Elbe.

chīrographum, -ī [Gr.], N., *a handwriting, hand, a writing, a receipt*.

Chrīstus, -ī [Gr.], M., *Christ*.

cibārius, -a, -um [cibō-, *food* (reduced) + *arius*], adj., *pertaining to food*.—Neut. plur. as noun, *provisions*.

cibus, -ī [?], M., *food*.

cicātrix, -icis [?], F., *a scar*.

cicer, -eris [?], N., *the chickpea, chickpease*.

Cicero, -ōnis [cicer (*chickpea*) + o, orig. a nickname, possibly from excrescences on the nose], M., a name of a Roman family from Arpinum.—Esp.: 1. *Marcus Tullius Cicero*, the great orator.—2. *Quintus Tullius Cicero*, his brother, in Cæsar's service in Gaul as legatus.

Kimber, -brī [?], adj., *Cimbrian*.—As noun, *a Cimbrian*, one of a German tribe living in Jutland, who

overran Gaul and made a successful inroad into the Roman dominions in the second century B.C. They were conquered at Aquæ Sextiæ and Vercellæ by Marius and Catulus, B.C. 102 and 101.

Cingetorix, -īgis [Celtic], M.: 1. A leader of the Treveri, brother-in-law of his rival, Indutiomarus.—2. A British prince in Kent.

cingo, cingere, cinxī, cinctus [?], 3. v. a., *surround, encircle*.—Less exactly, *man* (occupy in a circuit, of walls).

Cinna, -ae [?], M., a Roman family name.—Esp., *L. Cornelius Cinna*, a colleague of Marius, and one of his adherents in the civil war with Sulla.

cippus, -ī [?], M., *a stake, a pillar, a post*.—Plur., apparently jocosely used of a peculiar form of palisades, *boundary posts* (?), *chevaux-de-frise*.

Circaeus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., *of Circe*.

Circe, -ēs (ae) [Gr.], F., a daughter of the sun, said to have fled from Colchis to Circeii in Italy. She was famous for her sorceries, by which she changed her guests into beasts.

circiter [circō- (*around*) + *ter*], adv. and prep. with acc., *about*.—Fig. (of time, number, and quantity), *about* (in the neighborhood of), *near, not far from*.

circuitus, -a, -um, p. p. of *circumeo*.

circuitus, -ūs [circum-itus], M., *a circuit* (a going round), *a circuitous route, a circumference*: in *circuitu*, *all around*.

circulus, -ī [circō- (cf. *circum*) + *lus*], M., *a circle*.

circum [acc. of *circō*-, *around* (cf. *curvus*)], adv. and prep. with acc., *about, around*.

circumclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [circum-clāudo], 3. v. a., *enclose around, encircle, place a band around*.

circumdatus, -a, -um, p. p. of **circumdo**.

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus [circum-²do], 1. v. a., *put around: murus circumdatus*, (*encircling, thrown around*).—By a confusion of ideas, *surround, encircle: aciem redis*.

circu(m)eō, -īre, -īī, -itus [circum-eo], irr. v. n., *go around*.—Becoming active, *visit, make a tour of: hiberna; make the round of: foris*.

circumfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus [circum-fundo], 3. v. a., *pour around*.—Pass. (as reflexive), *pour in, rush around, rush in on all sides*.—Also (cf. **circumdo**), *surround: multitudo praesidia* (*surround with a swarming multitude*).

circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [circum-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw around*.—Esp., in a military sense, *hurl around, throw around: circumiecta multitudo* (*assailing on all sides*).

circumiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **circumicio**.

circummūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [circum-munio], 4. v. a., *fortify around, throw fortifications around, fortify, protect* (by a fortification).

circummūnītus, -a, -um, p. p. of **circummunio**.

circumplector, -plectī, -plexus [circum-plecto, *twine*], 3. v. dep., *embrace, surround*.

circumsedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sesus [circum-sedeo], 2. v. a., *sit around, surround*. Hence, *blockade, besiege*.

circumsiliō, -silīre, no perf., no p. p. [circum-salio, *leap*], 4. v. n., *jump or hop around*.

circumsistō, -sistere, -stetī, no p. p. [circum-sisto, *place (one's self)*], 3. v. a., *stand around, flock around, rally around, surround, hem in, beset*.

circumstō, -stāre, -stetī, no p. p. [circum-sto, *stand*], 1. v. a., *surround, stand around*.

circumvallō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [circum-vallo, *intrench*], 1. v. a., *surround with walls, blockade, invest*.

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus [circum-venio, *come*], 4. v. a., *surround*.—Fig. (cf. "get round"), *impose upon, defraud, betray, circumvent*.

circumventus, -a, -um, p. p. of **circumvenio**.

circus, -ī [?], M., *a circus* (a building, orig. oval, for races, contests, etc.), *an arena*.

cis [case-form of *ce* (cf. *ec-ce, cetera*)], adv. and prep. with acc., *this side, this side of*.

Cita, -ae [perh. *ci* (in *cio*) + *ta* (cf. *nauta*)], M., a Roman family name.—Only, *Caius Fufius Cita*, a Roman knight doing business in *Cenabum*.

citātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **cito**.

citer, -ra, -rum [CE (cf. *cis*) + *terus* (reduced, cf. *alter*)], adj., *on this side* (rare and antiquated).—Usually **citerior** (compar.), *nearer*,

hither (as adj.): *Gallia* (Gaul on the Italian side of the Alps as opp. to Farther Gaul).

citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [citō- (fr. *cio*, put in motion)], I. v. a. intens., *urge on, hurry*. — *citātus*, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *in haste*: *citatus fertur*, runs very rapidly.

citō [abl. of *citus* (fr. *cio*, put in motion)], adv., *quickly*: *citissimē*, very rapidly.

citrā [case-form, F. of *citer*], adv. and prep. with acc., *this side, within* (as opp. to beyond).

cīvicus, -a, -um [civi- + *cus*], adj., of a citizen, pertaining to a citizen (more literal than *civilis*), *civic*.

cīvilis, -e [civi- (lengthened) + *lis*], adj., of a citizen (or citizens), courteous, civil, polite: *bellum (civil)*; *ius (civil)*, as opp. to natural).

cīviliter [civili- + *ter*], adv., as becomes a citizen, courteously, politely.

cīvis, -is [CI (in *quies, rest*) + *vis* (weakening of -*vus*)], M. and F., a citizen, a fellow-citizen.

cīvitās, -ātis [civi- + *tas*], F., the state of being a citizen, citizenship. — Esp., Roman citizenship, the Roman franchise. — Less exactly, a body of fellow-citizens, the citizens (as a body), one's fellow-citizens, a state (composed of citizens), a city (because the city was the state), a nation, a tribe (politically): *expellit ex civitate* (from the country).

clādēs, -is [?], F., a disaster, a defeat.

clam [case of st. akin to *caligo*, mist, etc.], adv. and prep. with abl., secretly: *fore clam*, will not be found out.

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of *clamo*], I. v. a., keep crying out, vociferate, cry out, shout.

clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [noun st. akin to *calendae*], I. v. n., shout, exclaim.

clāmor, -ōris [clam (as if root of *clamo*) + *or*], M., a shouting, a shout, a cry, an outcry.

clandestinus, -a, -um [unc. st. (perh. manufactured from *clam*) + *tinus*], adj., secret, clandestine.

clārus, -a, -um [CLA (in *clamo*) + *rus*], adj., bright, clear. — Fig., famous, conspicuous.

classiārius, -a, -um [classi- + *arius*], adj., belonging to a fleet. — Masc. plur. as noun, naval forces, seamen.

classicum, -ī [classi- + *cum* (N. of *cus*)], N., (belonging to the army, see *classis*), a signal for battle, a trumpet-call.

classis, -is [CLA (in *clamo*) + *tis*], F., (a summoning). — Less exactly, the army (called out). — Esp., an army called out for duty at sea, a fleet (the most common later meaning).

Clastidium, -ī [?], N., a town of Cisalpine Gaul.

Claudia, -ae [F. of *Claudius*], F., a Roman female name.

Claudius, -ī [claudō- (lame) + *ius*], M., a Roman gentile name, probably borrowed from the Sabines. — Esp.: 1. *Appius Claudius*, consul with L. Domitius in B.C. 54. — 2. *Marcus Claudius Marcellus*, see *Marcellus*.

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus

[of unc. form., akin to **clavis**, *key*], 3. v. a., *close, shut, fasten, shut in.* — Esp., **claudere agmen**, *close the line of march, bring up the rear.*

clausula, -ae [**clausō-** (cf. **claudio**) + **ula**, dim. ending], F., *a conclusion* (of a speech).

clausus, -a, -um, p. p. of **claudio**.

clāvis, -is [**CLAV** (*fasten*) + **is**], F., *a key*.

clāvus, -ī [akin to **clavis** and **claudio**], M., *a nail, a spike*.

clēmenter [**clement-** (*gentle*) + **ter**], adv., *mildly, mercifully, with forbearance*.

clēmēntia, -ae [**clement-** (*gentle*) + **ia**], F., *kindness, gentleness, humanity, clemency*.

Cleopātra, -ae [?], F., the famous queen of Egypt, who with Mark Antony was defeated at Actium by Octavius Cæsar, B.C. 31.

cliēns, -entis [= **cluens**, p. of **clueo**, *hear, obey*], M. and F., (*a hearer*), *a dependent, a vassal, a retainer*.

clientēla, -ae [**client-** + **ēla** (*imitating suadela*, etc.)], F., *vassalage* (as condition of a **cliens**). Hence (viewed fr. the other side), *protection*. — Phrases: **magnæ clientelæ**, *many vassals* (extensive relations of "clientage"); **Remis in clientelam se dicaverunt** (*surrendered themselves as vassals to*, etc.).

clipeus, -ī [?], M., *a shield* (round, as opp. to **scutum**).

clitellæ, -ārum [?], F. plur., *a pack-saddle*.

Clōdīus, -ī [the popular form of **Claudius**], M., a Roman gentile name, belonging to the plebeian

branch of the gens **Claudia**. — Esp., **Publius Clodius**, a most bitter enemy of Cicero. He was killed in a fray by T. Annius Milo, who was defended by Cicero in a famous oration still extant.

Cn., for **Gnaeus**.

coacervō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**con-acervo**], I. v. a., *heap up, mass together, heap on top* (of others).

coāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **cogo**.

coagmentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**coag-mentō-**, *joint*], I. v. a., *fasten together*.

coartō (-arc-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**con-arto**, *bind*], I. v. a., *press together, confine*.

coccum, -ī [Gr.], N., *a berry yielding a scarlet dye, scarlet*.

coctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **coquo**.

Cocytus, -ī [Gr.], M., a fabled river of the lower world.

coēmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēemptus [**con-emo**], 3. v. a., *buy up, purchase*.

coēemptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **coēmo**.

coeō, -īre, -īvī (-īi), no p. p. [**con-eo**], irr. v. n., *come together, unite, meet*.

coepī, -isse, **coeptus** [**con-†api** (perf. of **†apo**, cf. **apiscor**)], def. v. a., (*have taken hold of*), *began, undertook, started*. — **coeptus**, -a, -um, p. p. used in the active sense with pass. infinitives.

coeptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **coepi**.

coerceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitus [**con-arceo**], 2. v. a., *confine, keep in check, hold in check, restrain*.

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**con-agito** (in sense of *revolve, discuss*)], I. v. a., *consider, think over*. — Esp. (as

to some plan of action), *think about, ponder, reflect, discuss* (what to do), *have an idea of, intend, consider* (that something may happen), *expect* (contemplate the possibility): *idem cogitare, have the same idea or feelings.*

cōgnātiō, -ōnis [con-(g)natio, birth], F., *connection by birth*. — Concretely, *a family, a clan*.

cōgnitus, -a, -um, p. p. of **cognosco**.

cōgnōmen, -inis [con-(g)nomen], N., *a family name, a surname*.

cōgnōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [con-(g)nosco, learn], 3. v. a., *learn, find out, find, become aware*. — Esp., *investigate, inquire into, learn about, study*. — In perf. tenses (cf. **nosco**), *know, be aware*: *cognitum est de aliqua re* (*something was known*).

cōgō, cōgere, cōgēī, cōāctus [con-ago], 3. v. a., *bring together, collect, assemble, get together*. Hence, *drive, force, compel, oblige*.

cohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitus [con-habeo], *hold together, hold back, check, restrain*.

cohors, -hortis [con-†hortis (reduced), akin to **hortus**, garden], F., *an enclosure*. Hence, *a body of troops, a cohort* (the tenth part of a legion, corresponding as a unit of formation to the company of modern tactics, and containing from 300 to 600 men).

cohortātiō, -ōnis [con-hortatio, cf. **cohortor**], F., *an encouraging, encouragement*. — Esp. (to soldiers), *an address* (almost invariably a preliminary to an engagement).

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus [con-hortor],

1. v. dep., *encourage, rally, address* (esp. of a commander): *cohortati inter se, encouraging, urging one another*.

collāre, -is [N. of adj. †**collaris** (cf. **collum**)], as noun, N., *a collar*.

collis, -is [?], M., *a hill*.

collum, -ī [?], N., *the neck*.

colō, colere, coluī, cultus [?], 3. v. a., *till, cultivate*. — Fig., *attend upon, court, cultivate* (as a friend), *cherish, honor, pay court to, worship* (of divinities).

colōnia, -ae [colonō- (cf. **colo**) + ia], F., (*state of a colonist*). — Concretely, *a colony* (both of the establishment and the persons sent). The Roman colonists were and continued to be Roman citizens, and served as armed occupants of the soil where they were sent in the interests of the mother country.

colōnus, -ī [colō- (old st. akin to **colo**) + nus], M., *a farmer, a peasant*.

color, -ōris [prob. akin to **caligo** (*mist*) as opp. to *white*], M., *color*.

columba, -ae [?], F., *a dove, a pigeon*.

com- (con-, co-) [the same as **cum**], adv. in comp., *with, together, up*. Often intensifying the meaning without definite translation.

combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus [con-†buro (?), relation to **uro** very uncertain, cf. **bustum**, *funeral pyre*], 3. v. a., *burn up, consume*.

comes, -itis [con-†mitis (MA in **meo**, *go*, + tis)], C., *a companion* (esp. an inferior as attendant or follower), *a comrade*.

cōmitās, -ātis [comi- (*courteous*) + tas], F., *courtesy, affability*.

comitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of comitor.

comitium, -ī [?, perh. comit- (see comes) + ium, *the assemblage of followers* (cf. *servitium*)], N., *the Comitium*, a part of the Forum at Rome.

comitor, -ārī, -ātus [comit-, *companion*], I. v. dep., *accompany*. — comitātus, -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, *accompanying*.

commeātus, -ūs [con-meatus, cf. *commeo*, *go to and fro*], M., *a going to and fro, an expedition* (back and forth), *a trip*. Hence, *communications* (of an army). — So also, *supplies* (of an army), *provisions*.

commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-memoro, *call to mind*], I. v. a., *remind one of*. Hence, *speak of, mention, state* (in a narrative).

commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-mando, *commit*], I. v. a., *intrust, commend, recommend, surrender*.

commentum, -ī [con-†mentum (p. p. of *memini*)], N., (*thing thought up*), *a fiction, a pretence*.

commilitō, -ōnis [con-milit- (*soldier*) + o], M., *fellow-soldier, comrade*.

commissūra, -ae [con-†missura (cf. *committo*)], F., *a joint, a seam*.

commissus, -a, -um, p. p. of *committo*.

committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [con-mitto], 3. v. a., (*let go* (*send*) *together or altogether*). Hence, *join, unite, attach*: *proelium* (*join, engage, begin the engagement*). — Also,

trust: *se barbaris committere* (*put one's self in the hands of, etc.*); *nihil his committere* (*place no confidence in, etc.*); *in periculum se committere* (*expose*). — Also, *admit, allow* (*to happen*), *commit* (*suffer to be done*, cf. *admitto*), *perpetrate*: *committere ut posset, leave it possible*.

Commius, -ī [Celtic], M., a leader of the Atrebrates.

* *commodātum*, -ī [p. p. of *commodo* as noun], N., *a loan*.

commodē [old case-form of *commodus*], adv., *conveniently, fitly, readily, advantageously, to advantage*: *satis commode, to much advantage*; *non satis commode, not very easily*.

commodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-modō-, cf. *commodus*], I. v. a., *lend, loan, give*.

commodum, see *commodus*.

commodus, -a, -um [con-modus, *measure*], adj., (*having the same measure with*), *fitting, suitable, convenient, advantageous, agreeable*: *incessu commodo, of gentle mien*; *commodissimum est, it is the best thing, most advantageous*. — Neut. as noun, *convenience, comfort, advantage, interest*: *rei familiaris commodum, the interests of one's property*; *quas sui quisque commodi fecerat* (*for his own convenience*).

commorātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *commoror*.

commoror, -ārī, -ātus [con-moror], I. v. dep., *delay, stay, linger*.

commōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of *commoveo*.

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mō-

tus [con-moveo], 2. v. a., *move, stir, agitate: bellum (begin).*— With reflex., or in pass., *be moved, move* (intrans.), *stir.*— Fig., *disturb, agitate, affect, alarm, move, arouse, influence* (with idea of violent feeling).

communicātus, -a, -um, p. p. of communico.

communicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†communicō- (st. of †communicus, communi- + cus)], 1. v. a., (*make common*), *share, communicate, consult* (with a person about a thing, and so make it common), *add* (a thing to another), *put in along with* (something else).

communis, -e [con-munis (cf. munia, duties)], adj., (*having shares together*), *common, general, in common: consilium* (general plan, concerted action).

commūtatiō, -ōnis [con-mutatio (cf. commuto)], F., *change: aestūs* (turn).

commūtātus, -a, -um, p. p. of commuto.

commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-muto], 1. v. a., *change, exchange: studium belli agricultura* (exchange the pursuits of war for agriculture).

comparātus, -a, -um, p. p. of 1 comparo.

1 comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-paro], 1. v. a., *get ready, prepare, procure, gain, get together, prepare for* (with a different view of the object in English): *his rebus comparatis*, *having made these arrangements.*

2 comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-paro], 1. v. a., (*pair together*), *compare.*

compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus [con-pello], 3. v. a., *drive together* (or *altogether*), *drive in, force, drive, compel.*

compendium, -ī [com-†pendium, cf. pendo, weigh], N., (*a weighing in*, cf. expendo, weigh out), *a saving, profit, gain.*

comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertus [con-pario], 4. v. a., (*get together*), *find out* (by inquiry), *ascertain, find out, discover, learn of.*— **compertus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *certain* (cf. exploratus).

compertus, -a, -um, p. p. of comperio.

†compēs, -edis [con-pes, foot], F., generally plur., *fetters, shackles.*

compēscō, -ere, -uī, no p. p. [?], 3. v. a., *restrain, confine.*

complector, -plectī, -plexus [con-plecto, fold], 3. v. dep., *embrace, include, enclose.*

compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus [con-pleo], 2. v. a., *fill up, fill.*— With a different conception of the action from Eng., *cover, man* (of walls).

complexus, -a, -um, p. p. of complector.

complūrēs, -plūra (-ia) [con-plus], adj. plur., *very many, a great many, a great number of.*

compōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [con-pono, put], 3. v. a., (*put together*), *settle: bellum.*

comportō, -āre, -āvī, ātus [con-porto], 1. v. a., *bring together, collect.*

comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus [con-prehendo], 3. v. a., *seize,*

catch, arrest, capture, grasp (one by the hand or clothing).

comprehēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of *comprehendo*.

comprobō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*con-probo*], I. v. a., *prove, approve*: *consilium fortuna* (*justify*).

compulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of *compello*.

cōnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *conor*.

cōnātus, -ūs [*conā-* (st. of *conor*) + *tus*], M., *an attempt, an effort*.

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus [*con-cedo*], 3. v. a. and n., (*give up a thing to one*), *allow, grant, assign* (leave, where the rest is taken away); *permit, yield the palm* (to a superior), *yield, make a concession*.

concerpō, -cerpere, -cerpsī, -cerptus [*con-carpo*], 3. v. a., *pluck, pull*: *folia*.

concessus, -a, -um, p. p. of *concedo*.

concessus, -ūs [*con-+cessus* (cf. *concedo*)], M., *a concession, a permission*.

concidō, -cidere, -cidī, no p. p. [*con-cado*], 3. v. n., *fall down, fall*.

concīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [*con-caedo*], 3. v. a., *cut to pieces, cut down* (kill), *cut up* (land by estuaries).

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*conciliō-*, *assembly*], I. v. a., *bring together*. Hence, *win over, secure* (even by force), *win, gain*.

concilium, -ī [*con-+cilium* (perh. CAL (*call*) + *ium*, cf. *Kalendae*)], N., *a meeting*. — Esp., *an assembly* (of war or state), *a council, a conference*: *per concilium, in council*.

concipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [*con-capio*], 3. v. a., *take up, take on, conceive*.

concīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of *concīdo*.

concitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *con-cito*.

concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*con-cito*, cf. *cio*, *stir*], I. v. a. freq., *arouse, stir up, instigate, call out* (and so set in motion), *cause* (*stragem*).

conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*con-clamo, cry out*], I. v. n., *cry out, shout*.

conclāve, -is [*con-clavis, key*], N., *a chamber, a room* (originally locked): *per totum conclave, all over the room*.

conclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [*con-claudio*], 3. v. a., *shut up, enclose, confine*: *mare conclusum* (*enclosed, inland*).

conclūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of *concludo*.

Conconnetodumnus, -ī [Celtic], M., *a leader of the Carnutes*.

concordia, -ae [*concord-* (*harmonious*) + *ia*], F., *harmony, concord*.

concrepō, -crepāre, -crepuī, -crepitūrus [*con-crepo*], I. v. n., *rattle, clash*: *armis* (*clash their arms, of soldiers*).

concupiscō, -cupiscere, -cupivī (-īi), -cupītus [*con-+cupisco* (cf. *cupio, desire*)], 3. v. a., *desire earnestly, strive after, long for, aspire to*.

concurrō, -currere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursus [*con-curro*], 3. v. n., *run together, rush up, rush in, rush* (advance), *flock to, hasten in, make an attack*: *concursum est, there was a rush*.

concursum, -a, -um, p. p. of *concurro*.

concursum, -ūs [con-cursus (cf. *concurro*)], M., a rushing to and fro, a dashing together (collision).—Esp., a charge, onset, a crowd running, a crowd.

concutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus [con-quatio, shake], 3. v. a., shake violently, shake.

condemnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [condamno, condemn], 1. v. a., condemn, find guilty.

condiciō, -ōnis [con-DIC, say (cf. *condico*, agree)], F., terms, condition, terms of agreement, terms (of fighting), state (of slavery): ad iniquam condicionem pugnandi, to fight on unequal terms.

conditus, -a, -um, p. p. of *condo*.

condō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [con-²do], 3. v. a., (put together).—For preservation, put away, lay away, store.—For concealment, cover, hide.—So also, bury, lay to rest.

condōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [condono], 1. v. a., give up, give, grant.

Condrūsī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a Belgic tribe on the Meuse, clients of the Treveri.

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [con-duco, lead], 3. v. a., bring together, bring up (soldiers), hire.

conductus, -a, -um, p. p. of *conduco*.

cōnectō, -nectere, -nexuī, -nexus [con-necto], 3. v. a., bind together, bind, fasten.

cōnfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *conficio*.

cōnferciō, -ferciere, -fersī, -fertus [con-farcio], 4. v. a., crowd together.

—cōnfertus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., close, crowded, dense, closely crowded, in close order, in a solid body.

cōnferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus [confero], irr. v. a., bring together, get together, bring in, gather, collect, bestow.—With or without *culpam*, lay the blame on, charge.—With reflexive, betake one's self, proceed, remove, take refuge.—So with other words: *fortunās* (remove, transfer).

cōnfertus, -a, -um, p. p. of *confercio*.

cōnfestim [acc. of †con-festis (cf. *festino*, hasten)], adv., in haste, immediately, at once.

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [con-facio], 3. v. a., (do up), accomplish, complete, finish up, carry out, finish, perform.—Also, make up, write, write up (of a document), work up, dress (of skins): e corio (make).—Also (cf. Eng. "done up"), finish up, exhaust, wear out.

cōnfidō, -fidere, -fisis sum [con-fido, trust], 3. v. n., (trust fully), be confident, trust, trust to, have confidence in, rely on, feel assured.—cōnfishus, -a, -um, p. p. in act. sense, trusting in.

cōnfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus [con-figo, fix], 3. v. a., fasten together, fasten.

cōnfirmātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *confirmo*.

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [con-firmo, make firm], 1. v. a., strengthen.—Fig., strengthen, establish (*pacem*), reassure, encourage, confirm, assure (by oath): se (*resolve*). Hence (of things and statements), confirm,

declare. — cōnfirmātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *resolute, confident*.

cōnfisus, -a, -um, p. p. of confido.

cōnfixus, -a, -um, p. p. of configo.

cōnflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flictus [con-fligo, *strike*], 3. v. a. and n., *dash against, contend, fight*.

cōnflō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-flō, *blow*], 1. v. a., *blow up* (of a fire). — Fig., *excite, kindle, stir up*: aes alienum (*contract*).

cōnfluēns, -entis [pres. p. of confluō], M., *a meeting of two rivers, a confluence*.

cōnfluō, -ere, -fluxī, no p. p. [con-fluō], 3. v. n., *flow together*. — Less exactly (of persons), *flock together, assemble*.

cōnfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus [con-fodio, *dig*], 3. v. a., (*dig up*). Hence, *stab, pierce*.

cōnfossus, -a, -um, p. p. of confodio.

cōn fugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, no p. p. [con-fugio], 3. v. n., *flee, take refuge, flee for refuge*.

cōnfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus [con-fundo], 3. v. a., *pour together*. — Less exactly, *mingle, mix indiscriminately, unite without distinction, unite, combine*.

congregior, -gredi, -gressus [con-gradior, *step*], 3. v. dep., *come together*. — In peace, *unite with*. — Esp., in war, *come in contact with, engage, fight*.

congressus, -a, -um, p. p. of congregior.

congressus, -ūs [con-gressus, cf. congregior], M., *an engagement, an encounter*.

congruō, -ere, -uī, no p. p. [?], 3. v. n., (*flock together*), *correspond, agree, suit, fit*.

coniciō (-iicio), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [con-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw together, throw, hurl, cast, discharge*: oculos (*cast*); se conicere, *throw one's self, rush*; coniecit se in pedes, *took to his heels*. — Less exactly (esp. in a military sense), *throw* (in vincula), *put* (to flight), *place, station* (cf. military throw troops into, etc.), *force*. — Fig., *put together* (of ideas).

coniectūra, -ae [con-iactura, cf. conicio], F., *a guess* ("putting two and two together"), *a conjecture, a conclusion*.

coniectus, -a, -um, p. p. of conicio.

coniunctim [acc. of †coniunctis (iung (as root) + tis, cf. coniungo)], adv., *unitedly, in common, all together*.

coniunctus, -a, -um, p. p. of coniungo.

coniungo, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūntus [con-iungo, *join*], 3. v. a., *unite, join, connect, fasten together*. — In pass., or with reflexive, *unite* (neut.), *connect one's self, join*. — coniunctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *united, closely connected*.

coniūnx, -iugis [con-tiux (IUG, yoke, as st., with intrusive n as in iungo)], M. and F., *a spouse*. — Esp., F., *a wife*.

coniūrātiō, -ōnis [con-iuratio, cf. coniuro], F., *conspiracy, a confederacy*.

coniūrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of coniuro.

coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-

iuro], I. v. n., *swear together, take an oath* (together), *swear mutual oaths*. Hence, *conspire, plot*. — coniūrātī, p. p. M. plur. as noun, *conspirators*.

conlātus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of confero.

conlaudātus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of conlaudo.

conlaudō (coll-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-laudo], I. v. a., *praise* (in set terms).

conlēctus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of conligo.

conlēga (coll-), -ae [con-+lega (LEG + a)], M., *a colleague* (one of two or more persons holding an office with equal powers).

conligō (coll-), -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [con-lego], 3. v. a., *gather together, gather, collect, acquire* (by accumulation). — With reflex., *collect one's self, recover*.

conlocātus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of conloco.

conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-loco, place], I. v. a., *place, set, station* (of troops, etc.): *angustius milites* (*stow, in a vessel*). — Fig., *settle*: Boios ibi.

conloquium (coll-), -ī [con-+loquium, cf conloquor], N., *a conference, an interview, a parley, a conversation*.

conloquor (coll-), -loquī, -locūtus [con-loquor], 3. v. dep., (*talk together*), *confer, hold an interview* (or *parley*), *parley, converse*.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus [? con-, st. akin to onus, burden], I. v. dep., *attempt, try, endeavor*.

conquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsivī, -quīsītus [con-quaero, seek], 3. v. a., *search for, seek for, hunt up*.

conquīsītus, -a, -um, p. p. of conquiro.

conreptus (corr-), -a, -um, p. p. of conripio.

conripio (corr-), -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [con-rapio, seize], 3. v. a., *seize, snatch up*.

conrōdō (corr-), -rōdere, -rōsī, -rōsus [con-rodo, gnaw], 3. v. a., *gnaw, gnaw to pieces*.

conruō (corr-), -ruere, -ruī, no p. p. [con-ruo, fall], 3. v. n., *fall down, sink to the ground*.

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um [con-san-guin- (blood) + eus], adj., *akin* (by blood). — As noun, *a kinsman*.

cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus [con-scando, climb], 3. v. a., *climb, climb upon*: *navis* (in *navis*) (*go on board*); *moenia* (*scale*).

cōnscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus [con-scribo], 3. v. a., *write down*. — Esp., *enrol, conscribe, levy, enlist*. — conscrīptī, p. p. M. plur. as adj., *conscript* (fathers).

conscrīptus, -a, -um, p. p. of conscribo.

cōnsecrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of consecro.

cōnsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-sacro, make sacred], I. v. a., *hallow, consecrate*. — cōnsecrātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *consecrated, sacred*.

cōnsector, -ārī, -ātus [con-sector, cf. consequor], I. v. dep. freq., *overtake, follow up*.

cōnsecūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of consequor.

cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis [con-†sensio, cf. consensio], F., agreement, unanimity.

cōnsēnsus, -ūs [con-sensus, cf. consensio], M., agreement, consent, harmonious (or concerted) action.

cōnsentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsūrus [con-sentio, feel], 4. v. n., agree, conspire, make common cause, act with (some one).

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus [consequor], 3. v. dep., follow (and stay with), overtake, pursue. Hence, obtain, secure, attain, succeed in (some purpose). — Also, follow close upon, succeed, ensue.

cōnserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus [con-sero, bind together], 3. v. a., join: manum conserere, join battle, engage.

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-servo, save], 1. v. a., save, preserve, keep, spare. — Also, observe (law, right), regard.

cōnsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [?], 1. v. a., consider, reflect.

cōnsidō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessūrus [con-sido], 3. v. n., sit down (in a place). — Less exactly, take a position, halt, encamp, settle.

cōnsilium, -ī [con-†silium (cf. consul, akin to salio, in some earlier unc. meaning)], N., deliberation, a council (of war, more commonly concilium). — Esp., wise counsel, advice, prudence, discretion. Hence, a plan, counsel, design, purpose, ability, strategy. — And so (design carried out), course, measure, conduct. — Esp., quasi consili sit res, as if it were a matter for consultation;

commune consilium, concerted action; publicum consilium, action of the state, official action.

cōnsimilis, -e [con-similis], adj., very like, just like.

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, no p. p. [con-sisto, place (one's self)], 3. v. n., take a stand, take a position, stand, keep one's position, form (of troops). — In perf. tenses, have a position, stand. Hence, stop, halt, make a stand, hold one's ground, run aground (of ships), remain, stay. — With in, occupy, rest on. — Fig., depend on, rest on.

cōnsobrīnus, -ī [con-sobrinus, cf. soror, sister], M., first cousin (on the mother's side). — Less exactly, (any) cousin german.

cōnsociō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-socio, bind together], 1. v. a., unite, connect, join together.

cōnsōlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of consolor.

consolor, -ārī, -ātus [con-solor, comfort], 1. v. dep., console, cheer. — cōnsōlātus, -a, -um, p. p. as pres., consoling.

cōnspectus, -ūs [con-spectus, cf. conspicio], M., sight: in conspectu, in one's presence.

cōnspicātus, -a, -um, p. p. of conspicio.

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectus [con-specio, look at], 3. v. a., catch sight of, espy, see, behold.

cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus [†conspic-, cf. SPEC, see, and auspex], 1. v. dep., catch sight of, espy, see.

cōnspirō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-spiro, breathe], 1. v. n., sound to-

gether. — Fig., *harmonize, agree*. — Also, *conspire, league together*.

cōstanter [constant- (*standing firm*) + ter], adv., *consistently, uniformly, steadily, with constancy, firmly*.

cōstantia, -ae [constant- (*standing firm*) + ia], F., *firmness, constancy, undaunted courage, heroism*.

cōsternātus, -a, -um, p. p. of consterno.

¹cōsternō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†con- sternō- (cf. sterno and sternax, *prostrating*)], I. v. a., *overwhelm*. — Fig., *dismay, alarm*. — cōsternātus, -a, -um, p. p., *stricken with fear*.

²cōsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātus [con-sterno], 3. v. a., *strew over* (both of the thing thrown and that over which).

cōstituō, -stituire, -stitūī, -stitūtus [con-statuō], 3. v. a. and n., *set up, raise, put together, make up*. Hence, *establish, station, arrange, draw up* (aciem). — Fig., *determine, resolve, appoint, agree upon, determine upon, fix, decide upon*: praemia (offer).

cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus [con-sto], I. v. n., *stand together*. — Fig., *agree* (esp. of accounts), *consist* (e fructu). Hence, *be established, appear, be agreed upon, be evident, be known*. — Esp., *constat, it appears*, etc. — Also (from accounts), *cost*. — Also (with in), *depend upon*.

cōnsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus [†consuē- (cf. suesco, *become accustomed*) facio, *make*], 3. v. a., *accustom, habituate*.

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, suē-

tus [con-suesco], 3. v. n., *become accustomed*. — In perf. tenses, *be accustomed, be wont*.

cōnsuētūdō, -inis [con-†suetudo (prob. †suetu- + do), cf. consuesco], F., *habit, custom, habits* (collectively), *manners, customs, practice*: itineris (*usual manner of marching*).

cōnsul, -ulis [con-sul (cf. prae-sul, exsul), root of salio in some earlier unc. meaning], M., *a consul* (the title of the chief magistrate of Rome, cf. consilium). — With proper names in abl., the usual way of indicating dates: Cn. Pompeio M. Crasso consulibus, *in the consulship of, etc.*

cōnsulāris, -e [consul- + aris], adj., *of a consul, consular*. — Esp., masc. as noun, *an ex-consul*.

cōnsulātus, -us [†consulā- (cf. consul) + tus], M., *consulship*.

cōnsulō, -sulere, -sulūī, -sultus [prob. consul, though poss. a kindred or independent verb], 3. v. a. and n., *deliberate, consult, take counsel, decide*. — With acc., *consult, take the advice of*. — With dat., *take counsel for, consult the interests of, consult for the welfare of, look out for, do a service to*: vitae (spare).

cōnsultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-sultō-, *decision*], I. v. n., *consult*: de bello (*take measures for*).

cōnsultō [prob. an abl. abs. used impersonally], adv., *with deliberation, purposely, designedly*.

cōnsultum, -ī [N. p. p. of consulo], N., *a decision, an order, a decree*. — Esp., senatus consultum, *an order of the senate*.

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus [con-sumo], 3. v. a., (*take out of the general store*). Hence, *waste, consume, destroy, spend, exhaust*.

cōnsūmptus, -a, -um, p. p. of *consumo*.

cōnsūrgō, -sūrgere, -surrēxī, -surrectus [con-surgo, *rise*], 3. v. n., *rise, rise up*.

contabulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [contabulo, cf. *tabula, board*], 1. v. a., *build up* (with floors in stories), *floor with planks*. — Also, *build up* (generally, as of a wall with towers).

contāgiō, -ōnis [con-†tagio, fr. TAG in *tango, touch*, cf. *contingo*], F., *contact*. — Esp., with something noxious, implying *contagion*.

contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus [con-tego], 3. v. a., *cover up, cover*.

contemnō, -temnere, -tempsī, -temptus [con-temno, *slight*], 3. v. a., *despise, disregard, hold in contempt, make light of, defy*.

contemplātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *contemplor*.

contemplor, -ārī, -ātus [†contemplō- (con-templō-, *place of observation*)], 1. v. dep., *view attentively, survey*.

contemptor, -ōris [con-temptor (through *contemno*)], M., *a scorner, a despiser*.

contemptus, -ūs [con-†temptus, cf. *contemno*], M., *contempt, scorn*: *contemptui est, is a matter of ridicule*.

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus [con-tendo, *stretch*], 3. v. n., *strain, struggle, strive, try, endeavor, exert one's self, attempt, be zealous, insist, entreat*. — Esp. with verbs of motion,

press on, hasten. — Also, *fight, contend, wage war*. — With *ad* and in like constructions, *hasten, march, start to go* (in haste): *vi contendere, to force a passage*; *petere contendit, seek earnestly*.

contentiō, -ōnis [con-†tentio, cf. *contendo*], F., *struggle, efforts*. — Esp., *contest, fighting, dispute, strife*.

contentus, -a, -um, p. p. of *contendo* and *contineo*.

conterritus, -a, -um [p. p. of *conterreo, alarm greatly*], *much frightened*.

contexō, -texere, -texuī, -textus [con-texo], 3. v. a., *interweave, weave together*. — Also, *weave* (make by weaving).

contextus, -a, -um, p. p. of *contexo*.

continēns, -entis, p. of *contineo*.

continentia, -ae [continent- (*holding together*) + *ia*], F., *self-restraint, moderation*.

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [con-teneo], 2. v. a., *hold together, hold in, contain*. Hence, in many fig. meanings, *restrain, hold in check, keep* (within bounds), *hem in, retain* (in something). — Pass. or with reflex., *keep within, remain, be included in, be bounded, consist in* (be contained in). — Also, *hold on to, join*. — *continēns, -entis*, pres. p. as adj., (*holding together*), *continual, contiguous, continuous*: *continenti impetu, with one continuous rush*. — Also, *restraining one's self, continent*. — As noun, *the continuous land, the continent*. — *contentus, -a, -um*, p. p. as adj., *satisfied, content*.

contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus [con-tango, touch], 3. v. a. and n., touch, reach, join. — With dat., happen.

continuō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [con-tinuō-], 1. v. a., prolong, make continuous: dapes (serve dish after dish).

continuō [abl. of continuus], adv., immediately, straightway, forthwith.

continuus, -a, -um [con-†tenuus (TEN in teneo (hold) + uus)], adj., continuous, successive.

contiō, -ōnis [prob. for conventio], F., an assembly.

contrā [unc. case-form (instr. ?) of †conterus (con- + terus, comp. ending)], adv. and prep. with acc., opposite, contrary to, against, in opposition, on the other hand: contra atque, contrary to what, etc.

contrāctus, -ūs [con-tractus (cf. contraho)], M., (a drawing together). — Late, a contract, a bargain.

contraho, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [con-traho], 3. v. a., draw together, draw in, bring together. collect, gather together, contract, narrow, make smaller, bring into smaller compass. — Less exactly, bring about.

contrārius, -a, -um [†conterō- (see contra) + arius], adj., opposite (lit. and fig.), contrary: ex (e) contrario, on the contrary; in contrariam partem, in the opposite direction.

contrectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [con-tracto, handle], 1. v. a., touch. — Fig., take by stealth, appropriate.

contrōversia, -ae [controversō- (opposite) + ia], F., a dispute, a quarrel. — Plur., grounds of quarrel.

contumēlia, -ae [unc. adj. stem

(cf. crudelis) (akin to tumeo, swell) + ia], F., (swelling pride?), an outrage, an insult, an affront. — Fig., violence (of waves), buffeting.

contumēliōsē [old case-form of contumeliosus (cf. contumelia)], adv., abusively, insolently.

conturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [con-turbo, disturb], 1. v. a., disturb, confound.

contus, -ī [Gr.], M., a pole, a pike.

convēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of con-veho.

convehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vēctus [con-veho], 3. v. a., bring together, bring in, collect.

conveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventus [con-venio], 4. v. a. and n., come together, meet, assemble, come in, arrive, agree upon, agree. — With acc., meet, come to. — Also, of things, be agreed upon, be fitting, be necessary (in a loose sense in Eng.): convenit (impers.), it is agreed.

conventus, -ūs [con-†ventus (cf. convenio and adventus)], M., an assembly, a meeting. — Esp., an assize, court (the regular assembly of Roman citizens on stated occasions, in a provincial town at which justice was dispensed).

conversus, -a, -um, p. p. of convertō.

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [con-verto], 3. v. a., turn about, turn: se convertere, turn. — Fig., change: signa (change front, wheel); conversa signa in hostes inferre, face about and charge, etc.; in fugam conversa, put to flight; contra vim fluminis, against the current.

convictus, -a, -um, p. p. of *convinco*.

convincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus [*con-vinco, conquer*], 3. v. a., *prove, make good* (a charge, etc.). — Also, *find guilty, convict*.

convīva, -ae [*con-†viva* (cf. *agricola*)], M., a *guest*.

convīvium, -ī [*conviva-* (reduced) + *ium* (N. of *-ius*)], N., (a *meal in company*), a *feast, a banquet*.

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*con-voco*], 1. v. a., *call together, summon, call* (a council).

coōrior, -orīrī, -ortus [*con-orior, rise*], 3. v. dep., *arise, spring up, break out* (of a war).

coōrtus, -a, -um, p. p. of *coōrior*.

cophinus, -ī [Gr.], M., a *basket*.

cōpia, -ae [†cōpi- (*con-ops, aid*) + *ia*, cf. *inopia* and *inops*], F., *abundance, plenty, supply* (both great and small), *quantity, number*. — Esp., *luxury* (abundance of everything). — Plur., (esp. of forces), *forces, resources, supplies*: *magna copia locorum* (*choice*); *copia atque usus*, *necessary supplies*.

cōpula, -ae [*con-†apula* (from AP, *lay hold of*)], F., (*holding together*), a *grappling-hook*.

coqua, -ae [F. of *coquus* (cf. *coquo*)], F., a *cook*.

coquō, coquere, coxī, coctus [COC], 3. v. a., *cook*.

cor, cordis [root as *st.* (akin to Eng. "heart")], N., *the heart*: *cordi esse, be dear*.

cōram [unc. case, formed from *con* and *os, face*], adv., and prep. with abl., *face to face, present, in person*.

Corinthius, -a, -um [Gr.], adj. of *Corinth, Corinthian*.

Corinthus, -ī [Gr.], F., *Corinth*, a city of Greece.

Coriosolites, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a people of *Aremoric Gaul*.

corium, -ī [?], N., a *hide, a skin, leather*.

Cornēlia, -ae [F. of *Cornelius*], F., Cæsar's first wife, the daughter of (*Cornelius*) *Cinna*.

Cornēlius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp.: 1. *L. Cornelius Cinna* (see *Cinna*). — 2. *L. Cornelius Sulla* (see *Sulla*). — 3. *P. Cornelius Scipio* (see *Scipio*). — 4. *P. Cornelius Cethegus* (see *Cethegus*).

Cornēlius, -a, -um [same word as the preceding], adj., of *Cornelius, Cornelian*.

cornū, -ūs [?], N., a *horn*. — Fig., a *wing* (of an army), a *horn* (of the moon).

corōna, -ae [?], F., a *garland, a wreath, a crown*. — Fig., a *circle* (line, of soldiers): *sub corona, at auction* (the garland being the symbol of a captive for sale at auction).

corpus, -oris [unc. root + *us*], N., *the body, the person*. — Also, a *body* (dead), a *corpse*: *magnitudo corporis, size, stature*.

corrīgō (conr-), -rigere, -rēxī -rēctus [*con-rego, direct*], 3. v. a., *straighten*. Hence, *correct, reform*: *trepidationem* (*calm*).

corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [*con-rumpo, break*], 3. v. a., *spoil, ruin, bribe, buy over*.

corruptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **corumpo**.

cortex, -icis [?], M. (also F.), *bark*.

Cōrus (**Caurus**), -ī [?], M., *the northwest wind*.

corvus, -ī [?], M., *a raven*.

cōtēs (cau-), -is [akin to **cos**, *whetstone*], F., *a rock* (sharp or jagged), *a reef*.

cotīdiānus (quo-), -a, -um [cotidie- (reduced) + **anus**], adj., *daily*.

cotīdiē (quo-) [old case-form of **quot** (*how many*) -die, loc. of **dies**], adv., *daily, every day*.

Cotta, -ae [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, a legatus of Cæsar.

Cotuātus, -ī [?], M., a chief of the Carnutes.

Cranōn, -ōnis [Gr.], F., a town in Thessaly.

crassitūdō, -inis [crassō- + **tudo** (as if **crassitu**- + **do**)], F., *thickness*.

Crassus, -ī [crassus, *fat*], M., a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. *Marcus (Licinius) Crassus*, consul with Pompey, B.C. 55; one (with Cæsar and Pompey) of the combination called the First Triumvirate. — 2. *Publius Crassus* (called *Adulescens*, *the Younger*, only as distinguished from his father), son of the Triumvir, serving with Cæsar in Gaul as commander of cavalry.

crātēra, -ae [Gr.], F., *a bowl*.

crātēs, -is [?], F., *a hurdle*, *a fascine* (a hurdle used to hold up earthworks in fortification). — Also, *wicker* (for hurdles).

creātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **creo**.

crēber, -bra, -brum [crē- (in **creo**,

bring forth) + **ber**], adj., *thick, close, numerous, frequent*: *arbores* (*thickly growing*).

crēbrēscō, -brēscere, -bruī, no. p. p. [†**crebrē**- (cf. **creber**) + **sco**], 3. v. n., *become frequent, increase*.

crēdō, **crēdere**, **crēdidī**, **crēditus** [†**cred-**, *faith* (of unc. formation) + **do**, *place*], 3. v. a. and n., *trust, entrust, believe, suppose, think*: **mihi crede**, *take my advice*.

cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [?], 1. v. a., *burn, consume*: **igni cremari**, *be burned alive, be burned to death*.

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [st. †**crē**, akin to **cresco**], 1. v. a., (*cause to grow*), *create, bring forth, give birth to*. — Esp., *elect, choose, appoint*.

Crēs, **Crētis** [Gr.], M., *a Cretan*. — As adj., *Cretan*.

crēscō, **crēscere**, **crēvī**, **crētus** [st. **crē**- (also in **creo**, *bring forth*) + **sco**], 3. v. n., *grow, increase*.

Crēta, -ae [Gr.], F., *Crete*, a large island south of the Ægean Sea.

Crētēnsis, -e [Creta- + **ensis**], adj., *of Crete, Cretan*. — Masc. plur. as noun, *the Cretans*.

crīmen, -inis [crī- (as root of **cerno**, *sift*) + **men**], N., (*a decision*). — Less exactly, *a charge, a fault, a crime*.

crīminor, -ārī, -ātus [crimin-, *charge*], 1. v. dep., *charge, accuse of*.

crīnis, -is [?], M., *the hair* (of the head).

Critōgnātus, -ī [Celtic], M., a chief of the Arverni.

crocitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**crocitō**- (cf. **crocio**, *croak as a raven*)], 1. v. n. freq., *croak aloud*.

Croesus, -ī [Gr.], M., a king of Lydia, proverbial for his wealth.

Crotōniātēs, -ae [Gr.], M., an inhabitant of Croton, a town in southern Italy.

cruciātus, -ūs [cruciā- (st. of *crucio*, *torture*) + *tus*], M., *crucifying*. Hence, *torture*. — With a change of relation, *suffering* (of the person tortured).

crūdēlis, -ē [†*crudē*- (in *crudesco*, akin to *crudus*, *bloody*) + *lis*, cf. *Aprīlis*, *animālis*], adj., (*bloody*?), *cruel*.

crūdēlitās, -tātis [*crudeli*- + *tas*], F., *cruelty*.

cruentus, -a, -um [†*cruent*- (partic. st. akin to *crur*) + *us*], adj., *bloody*, *blood stained*.

crumēna, -ae [?], F., *a money-bag*, *a purse*.

crur, -ōris [*crū*- (in *crudus*, *bloody*) + *or*], M., *blood*, *gore*.

crūs, *crūris* [?], N., *the leg*.

crux, *crucis* [?], F., *a gullows*, *a cross*.

cubīle, -is [†*cubī*- (st. akin to *cumbo*) + *lis* (cf. *crudelis*), N. of adj.], N., *a couch*, *a resting place*, *a bed*, *a lair*.

cubō, -āre, -uī, -itus [*CUB* (*bend*)], I. v. n., *lie*, *recline*.

culīna, -ae [perh. for †*coclina* (cf. *coquo*, *cook*)], F., *a kitchen*.

culpa, -ae [?], F., *a fault*, *blame*, *guilt*.

cultūra, -ae [*cultu*- (cf. *colo*, *till*) + *ra* (F. of *rus*)], F., *cultivation*, *culture*: *agri cultura*, or *agricultura*, *the cultivation of the soil*, *agriculture*.

cultus, -ūs [*COL* (in *colo*, *till*) +

tus], M., *cultivation*. — Esp. of one's self, *care*. Hence, *civilization*, *manner of life*, *state of civilization*.

cum [?], prep. with abl., *with*.

cum (*quom*) [case-form of *qui*], conj., *when*, *while*, *whenever*. — Often rendered by a different construction in Eng.: *cum non possent*, *not being able*; *cum prohibent*, *while defending*. — Of logical relations (usually with subjv.), *when*, *while*, *since*, *inasmuch as*, *though*, *although*: *cum . . . tum*, *not only . . . but also*, *while . . . so also*; *cum primum*, *as soon as*.

cumba (*cym*-), -ae [Gr.], F., *a boat*, *a skiff*.

cumulus, -ī [†*cumō* + *lus*], M., *a mass*, *a heap*, *a pile*.

cunctor, -ārī, -ātus [?], I. v. dep., *hesitate*, *hang back*, *be reluctant*.

cūnctus, -a, -um [for *coniūnctus* ?], adj., *all*, *all together*.

cuneātim [*cuneō*-, *wedge* (reduced) + *atim*, as if acc. of †*cuneatis*], adv., *in the shape of a wedge*. — Esp. of soldiers, *in* (a peculiar wedge-shaped) *column of attack*.

cuniculus, -ī [Gr.], M., (*a cony*). — Transf., *a burrow*. Hence, *a mine* (esp. in a military sense).

cūpa, -ae [?], F., *a cask*, *a barrel*.

cupidē [old case-form of *cupidus*], adv., *eagerly*, *zealously*, *earnestly*.

cupiditās, -ātis [*cupidō*- + *tas*], F., *desire*, *eagerness*, *greed*.

cupidō, -inis [†*cupi*- (cf. *cupio*) + *do*], F., *desire*, *longing*, *eagerness*. — Personified, *Cupid*, *the god of love*.

cupidus, -a, -um [noun-st. akin to *cupio* + *dus*], adj., *eager*, *desirous*,

longing (for), fond of, ambitious (for), with a passion (for).

cupiō, -ere, -ivī, -ītus [partly root verb, partly from †cupi- (cf. **cupidus**)], 3. (and 4.) v. a. and n., *be eager (for), be anxious, desire* (stronger than **volo**). — With dat., *wish well to, be zealous for*.

cupressus, -ī [Gr.], F., *the cypress*, a tree sacred to Pluto, and a sign of death and mourning.

cūr (**quōr**) [perh. for **qua re**], adv., *why* (rel. and interr.).

cūra, -ae [akin to **caveo**, *beware*], F., *care, anxiety, attention*.

cūrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **curo**.

cūria, -ae [?], F., *a senate-house*. — Esp., *the curia Hostilia, the senate-house*. — Fig., *the senate*.

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**cura**], 1. v. a. and n., *take care, provide for, care for*. — With gerundive, *cause* (to be done), *have* (done): **cura ut**, *see that*.

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursūrus [?], 3. v. n., *run, scamper*.

currus, -ūs [CUR (?) + **us**, cf. **curro**, *run*], M., *a chariot*.

cursitō, -āre, no perf., no p. p. [†**cursitō**- (as if p. p. of **curso**)], 1. v. n. freq., *run hither and thither, bustle about*.

cursō, -āre, -āvī, no p. p. [**cursō**- (cf. **curro**)], 1. v. n., *run, rush, hurry*.

cursus, -ūs [CUR (?) + **tus**, cf.

curro, *run*], M., *a running, running, speed, a run* (in concrete sense), *a course* (space or direction run): **cursum adaequare** (*keep up with*); **cursum incitato** or **magno**, *at full speed*; **in hoc medio cursu**, *midway of this passage*, from Britain to Ireland; **cursu**, *on the run*; **certamen cursus**, *a running-match*.

custōdia, -ae [custod- (*guard*) + **ia**], F., *custody, guard* (state of being guarded). — Concretely, *a guard-house, a prison*. — Plur., *guards, keepers*.

custōdiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus [custod-, *guard*, as if **custodi**-], 4. v. a., *keep under guard, guard*.

custōditē [old case-form of **custoditus**], adv., *carefully*.

custōs, -ōdis [unc. st. + **dis** (cf. **merces**, -ēdis, **palus**, -ūdis)], M. and F., *a guard, a watchman, a keeper, a spy*.

Cyclōps, -ōpis [Gr.], M., *a Cyclops*, one of the fabled giants who had one eye in the middle of the forehead.

Cyrēnaeus, -a, -um [Cyrenā- (*Cyrene*) + **eus**], adj., *of Cyrene*, a town of northern Africa. — Masc. plur. as noun, *the Cyrenaeans*.

Cyrus, -ī [Gr.], M., *Cyrus*, the Great, the most famous king of Persia.

D

D [half of CIO = M], for **quingenti**, -ae, -a, *five hundred*.

D, for **Decimus**, also for **dicit** or **data** (in letters).

Dācus, -a, -um [?], adj., *Dacian* (of the Dacians, a people of Thrace, north of the Carpathian Mountains, occupying parts of Hungary,

Gallicia, Wallachia, etc.). — Plur., *the Dacians*.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [damnō-, loss], I. v. a., (*fine*), *find guilty, condemn*.

damnum, -ī [?, DA (*give*) + *menus* (syncopated, cf. *alumnus*)], N., (*fine*), *loss*.

Danaus, -ī [Gr.], M., a mythic king of Egypt who settled in Argos, father of the Danaides, and king of Argos.

Dānuvius (-bius), -ī [?], M., *the Danube*, the great river flowing from the mountains of Germany eastward to the Black Sea.

†daps, *dapis* [?], F., *a feast, a banquet*.

datus, -a, -um, p. p. of **do**.

DCCC, for *octingenti*, -ae, -a, *eight hundred*.

dē [unc. case-form of pron. st. DA (in *idem, dum*)], adv. (only in comp.), and prep. with abl., *down from, off from, from, away from*. Hence, *qua de causa*, *for which reason*; *de consilio* (*by*, cf. **ex**). — Esp. in partitive sense, *out of, of*: *pauci de nostris*. — Also (cf. Eng. *of*), *about, of (about), in regard to, concerning, for*: *de vita desperare*; *de iniuriis satisfacere*. — In expressions of time, *just after, about*: *de media nocte*. — Phrase: *de improviso*, *of a sudden, unexpectedly*. — In comp., *down, off, away, through* (cf. **debeo, decerto**).

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [de-habeo], 2. v. a., (*have off of one's possessions*), *owe, be bound, ought, must, cannot help*: *iudicari debere* (*might well be,*

etc.). — Pass., *be due, be owing*. — **dēbitus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *due, appropriate, deserved*.

dēbilitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†de-bilitō-, fr. *debilis, weak*], I. v. a., *weaken*.

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus [de-cedo], 3. v. n., (*make way off, cf. cedo*), *retire, withdraw, withdraw from, shun*. — Esp. (from life), *depart, die*.

decem [?], indecl. num. adj., *ten*.

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētus [de-cerno], 3. v. a. and n., (*decide off, so as to clear away*), *decide, determine, decree, assign (by decree), order (as a result of determination)*. — Esp. in a contest, *contend, fight*.

dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-certo, *fight*], I. v. a. and n., *contend* (so as to close the contest, cf. "*fight it out*"), *decide the issue, try the issue (of war), carry on war, fight (a general engagement): risk a decisive battle (with or without pugna)*.

dēcessus, -ūs [de-†cessus, cf. *cedo* and *incessus*], M., *withdrawal, departure*: *aestus* (*ebb, fall*).

dēcīdō, -cidere, -cidī, no p. p. [de-cado], 3. v. n., *fall off (or down)*.

decimus, -a, -um [†deci- (as st. of *decem*) + *mus*], num. adj., *tenth*. — Masc. as noun, a Roman praenomen (see **Brutus**).

dēclārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-claro], I. v. a., (*clear off*), *make plain, point out, declare (decide and state)*.

dēclīvis, -e [de-clivis (or *-clivus, slope*)], adj., *sloping down, inclined*. — Plur. as noun, *slopes*.

dēclīvitās, -ātis [declivi- + *tas*],

F., slope: ad declivitatem, downward.

dēcrētum, -ī [prop. N. of decretus], N., *a decree, a decision.*

dēcrētus, -a, -um, p. p. of **decerno**.

decumānus, -a, -um [decumō- (reduced) + anus], adj., *belonging to the tenth: porta (the rear gate, of a camp, where the tenth cohort was posted).*

dēcurrō, -currere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursūrus [de-curro], 3. v. n., *run down, run away, hurry off.*

dēdecus, -oris [de-decus, honor], N., *disgrace, dishonor.*

dēditicius, -a, -um [deditō- + cius], adj., *surrendered.* — Plur. as noun, *prisoners (taken by surrender), subjects, persons surrendered.*

dēditio, -ōnis [de-datio, cf. dedo], F., *surrender: in deditiōnem accipere, receive one's surrender: in deditiōnem venire, to surrender.*

dēditus, -a, -um, p. p. of **dedo**.

dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [de-dō], 3. v. a., *give over, surrender, give up, devote.* — In pass. or with reflex., *surrender one's self, submit: lamentis (give way to).* — **deditus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *devoted.*

dēducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus [de-duco], 3. v. a., *lead down or off, lead away, withdraw, conduct, draw off (praesidia), take away (of men), bring away, lead (from one place to another), bring (into a situation).* — Fig., *induce, bring, lead.* — Esp. of ships, *launch (draw down); of women, marry (lead home, used of the man, cf. nubo); of things, bring, draw, turn.* So, *raise (a man to*

fortune). — Also, *re in controversiam deducta (brought to, come to, etc.).*

dēductus, -a, -um, p. p. of **deduco**.

dēfatīgātus (-fet-), -a, -um, p. p. of **defatigo**.

dēfatīgō (-fet-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-fatigo], 1. v. a., *wear out, exhaust, worry, tire out.*

dēfectiō, -ōnis [de-factio, cf. deficio, fail], F., *falling off, defection, falling away, revolt.*

dēfectūrus, -a, -um, p. p. of **deficio**.

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus [de-fendo, strike], 3. v. a., *ward off, defend one's self against.* — Also, with changed relation, *defend, protect.*

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis [de-†fensio, cf. defendo], F., *a defence.*

dēfēnsor, -ōris [de-†fensor, cf. defendo], M., *a defender.* — Also, *a means of defence, a defence, a buffer.*

dēfēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **defendo**.

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [de-fero], irr. v. a., *carry down, carry away, carry off, bring, land (of ships).* — Pass., *be borne down or on, drift (of ships), turn aside: delati in scrobes (falling).* — Fig., *confer upon, put in one's hands, hand over, offer, report, lay before.*

dēfessus, -a, -um, p. p. of **defetiscor**.

dēfetiscor, -fetiscī, -fessus [de-fatiscor, gape], 3. v. dep., *crack open.* — Fig., *become exhausted.* — **dēfessus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *exhausted; as noun, an exhausted man.*

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [de-facio, make], 3. v. a. and n., *fail, run*

out, fall away, revolt, fall off, abandon (with *ab*): *animo* (*despond*); *luna* (*be eclipsed*).

dēfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus [de-figo, *fasten*], 3. v. a., *fix* (in or down), *plant, set, fasten, drive down*.

dēfīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [de-fīnio, *end*], 4. v. a., *set limits to, fix, appoint*.

dēfixus, -a, -um, p. p. of *defigo*.

dēflectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexus [de-flecto], 3. v. a., *turn aside*.

dēfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, -fluxūrus [de-fluo], 3. v. n., *flow down, flow apart, divide* (of a river).

dēfore, see *desum*.

dēformis, -e [de-forma, *shape*, weakened and decl. as adj.], adj., *uncomely, unshapely, ugly, bad looking*. — Fig., *unbecoming, humiliating*.

dēformitās, -ātis [deformi- + tas], F., *deformity, disfigurement*.

dēfricō, -fricāre, -fricuī, -fricātus [de-frico], 1. v. a., *rub down, rub hard, polish*.

dēfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, no p. p. [de-fugio], 3. v. a. and n., *fly from, avoid, fly, flee*.

dēfūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of *defun-
gor*.

dēfungor, -fungī, -fūctus [de-fungor], 3. v. dep., (*perform to the end*), *die*. — P. p. as adj., *dead*.

dēiciō (dēiic-), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [de-iacio], 3. v. a., *cast down, throw down, drive off, drive out, dislodge, kill* (pass., *fall*), *overthrow, throw on shore* (of ships), *deprive, reduce*.

dēiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *deicio*.

dēiectus, -ūs [de-iactus, cf. *iacio, throw*], M., *a declivity, a slope*.

dein, see *deinde*.

deinceps [dein- (cf. *deinde*) + ceps, CAP in *capio*], adv., *in succession*.

deinde (dein) [de-inde, *thence*], adv., *then, next, afterwards*.

dēlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *defero*.

dēlectātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *delecto*.

dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-†lecto, cf. *delicio*], 1. v. a., *delight, please, entertain*. — Pass., *take delight, delight in, enjoy*.

dēlēctus (dēi-), -ūs [de-lectus, cf. *deligo, select*], M., *a levy, a conscription*.

dēlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of *deligo*.

dēleo, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus [de-†leo (akin to *lino*)], 2. v. a., (*smear out*), *blot out, wipe out* (of a disgrace). — Fig., *annihilate, destroy*.

dēlētus, -a, -um, p. p. of *deleo*.

dēliberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-†libero, perh. akin to *libra, balance*], 1. v. a. and n., *discuss, consult, deliberate*: *re deliberata, after discussing the matter*.

dēlibrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†delibrō-, *barkless*], 1. v. a., *peel, strip* (of bark).

dēliciae, -ārum [perh. st. akin to *delinquo* (cf. *delicus, cosset*) + ia], F. plur., *delight, pleasure*. — Concretely, *a delight, a darling*.

dēlictum, -ī [N. p. p. of *delinquo*], N., *thing left undone, failure, offence*.

dēligātus, -a, -um, p. p. of ²*deligo*.

¹dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [de-lego], 3. v. a., *choose out, select*. —

dēlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *chosen, picked*.

² dēligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-ligo, *bind*], I. v. a., *tie down, moor, tie, fasten*.

dēlitēscō, -litēscere, -lituī, no p. p. [de-latesco (cf. *lateo, hide*)], 3. v. n., *hide away, hide, skulk, lurk*.

Dellius, -ī [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., *Q. Dellius*, to whom Horace addressed an ode.

Delphicus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., of *Delphi* (the seat of the famous oracle of Apollo in Greece), *Delphic*.

dēmentia, -ae [dement-(*mad*)-ia], F., *madness, folly*.

dēmergō, -mergere, -mersī, -mersus [de-mergo], 3. v. a., *sink, plunge*.

dēmessus, -a, -um, p. p. of *demeto*.

dēmetō, -metere, -messuī, -messus [de-meto, *reap*], 3. v. a., *reap, cut down*.

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [de-migro, *depart*], I. v. n., *move away* (change residence), *move one's effects, emigrate*.

dēminuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [de-minuo, cf. *minus*], 3. v. a. and n., *diminish, curtail, lessen, detract*.

dēminūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of *de-minuo*.

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [de-mitto], 3. v. a., *let go down* (cf. *mitto*), *let down, throw down, stick down* (at the bottom of a ditch). — In pass. or with reflex., *let one's self down, descend, set one's self down*. — Fig., *despond* (*se animo*), *be discouraged: animos* (*lose*).

dēmōnstrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *demonstro*.

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [demonstro, *show*], I. v. a., *point out, show, represent, mention, state, speak of, make known*.

Dēmōsthenēs, -is [Gr.], M., the most celebrated of Greek orators.

dēmum [acc. of †dēmus (superl. of *de*), *nethermost, last*], adv., *at last, at length* (not before), *only*.

dēnegō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-nego], I. v. a. and n., *deny, refuse, say not*.

dēnī, -ae, -a [for decnī, *decem* reduced + *nus*], distrib. num. adj., plur., *ten each, ten* (on each side), *ten* (in sets of ten).

dēnique [†denō- (*de* + *nus*, cf. *dēmum*)-que], adv., *at last*. — Of order, *finally, in a word, in short*. — Of preference, *at any rate* (if nothing better, etc.).

dēnotō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-noto], I. v. a., *mark out, mark off*.

dēns, dentis [?, cf. *tooth* for †*tonth*], M., *a tooth*.

dēnsus, -a, -um [?], adj., *thick, crowded, dense*.

dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [denuntio], I. v. a., *announce* (with notion of threat), *threaten, declare, warn, order*.

dēnuō [for *de novo*, *new*], adv., *anew, again*.

dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus [de-pello], 3. v. a., *drive off, drive* (away), *dislodge, avert: famem* (*appease, satisfy*).

dēpereō, -perīre, -perīī, -perītūrus [de-pereo, *perish*], irr. v. n., *be lost*.

dēplōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-ploro, *lament*], I. v. a., *lament, deplore*.

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus

[de-pono], 3. v. a., *lay down, take down, lay aside, deposit*. — Fig., *lose, abandon (hope), blot out (memory), resign, give up*.

dēpopulātus, -a, -um, p. p. of depopulor.

dēpopulor, āri, -ātus [de-populor], 1. v. dep., *ravage, lay waste*. — P. p. as pass., *laid waste*.

dēportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-porto], 1. v. a., *carry off, carry away, remove*.

dēposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, no p. p. [de-posco], 3. v. a., *demand earnestly, demand, call for, claim*.

dēpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of depono.

dēprecor, -ārī, -ātus [de-precor], 1. v. dep., *pray to avert something, pray (with accessory notion of relief), beg, beg off, pray for pardon, pray to be spared, resort to prayers, ask for quarter, beseech*.

dēprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus [de-prēhendo, *grasp*], 3. v. a., *capture, catch, seize, take possession of*.

dēprehēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of deprehendo.

dēpūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-pugno], 1. v. n. (and a.), *fight decisively, fight it out*.

dēpulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of depello.

dērēctē (dī-) [old case-form of derectus], adv., *straight*: ad perpendiculum (*perpendicularly*).

dērēctus (dī-), -a, -um, p. p. of derigo.

dērigō (dī-), -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus [de-rego], 3. v. a., *straighten out, direct, steer*: opera (*set in order, arrange*). — dērēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *straight, straight up and down, perpendicula r*.

dērīvātus, -a, -um, p. p. of derivo.

dērīvō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [perh. immediately fr. de-rivus (*brook*), prob. through adj.-st.], 1. v. a., *draw off (orig. water), divert*.

dērogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-rogo, in its political sense], 1. v. a., *take away, withdraw*.

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsūrus [de-scando], 3. v. n., *climb down, descend, go down*: equo (*dismount*). — Fig., *resort to, have recourse to, adopt (with ad)*.

dēsecō, -secāre, -secuī, -sectus [de-seco], 1. v. a., *cut off*.

dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus [de-sero, *join*], 3. v. a., *disunite*. — Esp., *abandon, forsake, desert, give up, leave in the lurch*. — dēsertus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *deserted, solitary*.

dēsertor, -ōris [de-†sertor, cf. desero], M., *a deserter*.

dēsertus, -a, -um, p. p. of desero.

dēsīderātus, -a, -um, p. p. of desidero.

dēsīderium, -ī [cf. desidero], N., *a desire, longing (for something lost)*.

dēsīderō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [?, fr. †desidus, *out of place*, cf. considero], 1. v. a., *feel the want of, desire, miss, need, desire (want to see), lose (of soldiers)*. — Pass., *be missing (lost)*: perpauci desiderati quin cuncti, etc. (*all with very few exceptions*).

dēsīdia, -ae [desid- (st. of †deses, *idle*) + ia], F., *idleness, sloth*.

dēsiliō, -silire, -siluī, -sultūrus [de-salio], 4. v. n., *leap down, leap (down), jump overboard, dismount*.

dēsipiēns, -entis [p. of desipio, *be*

silly], adj., *foolish*. — As noun, *a crazy man*.

dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitūrus [de-sisto], 3. v. n., *stand off, cease, stop, desist from, abandon: fuga (cease flying)*.

dēspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of despicio.

dēspectus, -ūs [de-†spectus, cf. despicio], M., *a view down, view (from a height): oppidum haberet despectūs (sheer precipices)*.

dēspērātus, -a, -um, p. p. of despero.

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [despero, cf. spes, *hope*], 1. v. n., (but see below), *cease to hope, despair*. — dēspērātus, -a, -um, as pass., *despaired of*. — Also as adj., (*hopeless?*, perh. orig. *despaired of*, hence), *desperate*.

dēspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectus [de-specio], 3. v. a. and n., *look down, look down upon*. — Fig. (cf. Eng. equivalent), *look down upon, despise*.

dēspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [despolio], 1. v. a., *strip off*. — With change of relation, *strip* (also fig., as in Eng.).

dēstinātus, -a, -um, p. p. of destino.

dēstinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [perh. dēstina-, *a prop* (fr. de-STA-nus)], 1. v. a., *fasten, make fast, make firm, get fast hold of, catch firmly*. Hence, fig., *fix upon, appoint, choose, purpose, design, destine*.

dēstituō, -tuere, -tuī, -tūtus [de-stātuo], 3. v. a., *set apart (from one's self), abandon, leave, desert*. — P. p. as adj., *destitute of*.

dēstitūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of destituo.

dēstrictus, -a, -um, p. p. of destringo.

dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus [de-stringo], 3. v. a., *strip off*. — Also (cf. despolio), *strip, draw* (of swords, stripping them of their scabbards).

dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus [desum], irr. v. n., (*be away*), *be wanting, be lacking, fail*. — Esp., *fail to do one's duty by*, etc. — Often, *lack* (changing relation of subj. and following dat.), *be without, not have*.

dēsuper [de-super], adv., *from above*.

dētēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of detego.

dētegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus [detego, *cover*], 3. v. a., *uncover*.

dēterreō, -terrere, -terruī, -territus [de-terreo], 2. v. a., *frighten off, deter, prevent* (esp. by threats, but also generally).

dētineō, -tinere, -tinuī, -tentus [de-teneo], 2. v. a., *hold off, detain, delay, stop*.

dētrāctō (-trecto), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-tracto], 1. v. a., (*hold off from one's self*), *avoid, shun*.

dētrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of detraho.

dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [de-traho], 3. v. a., *drag off, snatch (away)*. — With less violence, *take away, take off, withdraw* (with no violence at all).

dētrectō, see detracto.

dētrīmentum, -ī [de-†trimentum (tri- in tero, *rub*, + mentum), cf. detero], N., (*a rubbing off*), *loss, injury*. — Esp., *defeat, disaster*.

dētrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsus [de-trudo], 3. v. a., *thrust out, drive out*.

dēturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-turbo, disturb], 1. v. a., *drive off* (in confusion).

dēūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus [de-uro], 3. v. a., *burn off, burn up*.

deus, -ī [akin to **divus**, **Iovis**, **dies**], M., *a god*.

dēustus, -a, -um, p. p. of **deuro**.

dēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus [de-venio], 4. v. n., *come away, land* (come down from the sea), *come* (from one place to another).

dēvexus, -a, -um [prop. a p. p. of **deveho**, *carry down*], adj., *sloping*. — Neut. plur. as noun, *slopes, hill-sides*.

dēvictus, -a, -um, p. p. of **devinco**.

dēvincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus [de-vinco, conquer], 3. v. a., *conquer* (so as to prostrate), *subdue* (entirely), *overcome*.

dēvorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [de-voro], 1. v. a., *swallow up, devour, gulp down*.

dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtus [de-voveo], 2. v. a., *vow* (away). — Less exactly, *devote, consecrate*.

dexter, -era, -erum (-ra, -rum) [unc. st. (perh. akin to **digitus**?) + **terus**], adj., *right, in (on) the right hand*. — **dextra** (-era), F., (sc. **manus**), *the right hand* (esp. used as a pledge of faith, as with us).

Diablintes (-tres), -um [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe, a branch of the Aulerici.

diadēma, -atis [Gr.], N., *a royal crown, a diadem*.

Diāna, -ae [perh. akin to **Ianus**], F., the goddess of the moon and of hunting, sister of Apollo.

dicīō (less correctly **dit-**), -ōnis [st. akin to **dico** + **o**, cf. **legio**], F., (*command*, cf. Eng. "say"), *dominion, sway*.

dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†dicō- (cf. **causi-dicus**)], 1. v. a., *adjudge, assign* (in some legal manner). — Less exactly (esp. with reflex.), *assign, make over*: **se in clientelam** (*bind one's self, attach one's self*); **se in servitutem** (*surrender*).

dicō, **dicere**, **dīxī**, **dictus** [DIC, in **dico** and **-dicus**], 3. v. a. and n., (*point out?*), *say, speak, name, call, tell*. — Esp., with authority, *name, appoint, fix*: **ius** (*administer*, cf. **dīco**); **sententiam** (*give*). — Special uses: **dicunt**, *they say*; **ius dicere**, *administer justice*; **magister dicendi**, *teacher of oratory*. See also **dictum**.

dictātor, -ōris [dictā- (*dictate*) + **tor**], M., *a dictator* (a Roman magistrate appointed in times of danger, and possessing absolute power).

dictō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dictō- (cf. **dico**)], 1. v. a. freq., *declare, prescribe, dictate*.

dictum, -ī [N. p. p. of **dico**], N., *a thing said, a statement, a remark, a command, a word*: **fortuito dictum**, *a word accidentally spoken*.

dīdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [dis-duco], 3. v. a., *draw apart, lead apart, separate, divide*: **os** (*open wide*).

diēs, -ēī [prob. for **dives**, **DIU** + **AS**, cf. **-us**], M. (rarely F. in some uses), *a day* (in all Eng. senses). — Also,

time: in dies, from day to day, with idea of increase or diminution; *ad diem*, on the day.

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus [dis-fero], irr. v. a. and n., *bear apart, spread*. — Also, *postpone, defer, differ*.

difficilis, -e [dis-facilis, *easy*], adj., *not easy, difficult*.

difficultās, -ātis [difficili- (weakened) + tās], F., *difficulty*: magna difficultate adiciebatur, *was much troubled*; rei frumentariae (*difficulty of supplying grain*).

diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus [dis-fundo], 3. v. a., *spread out*.

digitus, -ī [?], M., *a finger*: pollex (*the thumb*). — As in Eng., *a finger's breadth, a finger* (as a measure).

dignitās, -ātis [dignō- + tas], F., *worthiness, worth, dignity, prestige, distinction, position* (superior); tribuere (*have respect for*).

dignus, -a, -um [?, perh. DIC (root of dico) + nus], adj., *worthy*.

dīgredior, -gredi, -gressus [dis-gradior, *step*], 3. v. dep., *step aside, go away, depart*.

digressus, -a, -um, p. p. of dīgredior.

dīlābor, -lābī, -lāpsus [dis-labor, *slide*], 3. v. dep., *glide away, slip away, vanish*.

dīlaniō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dis-lanio, *tear*], I. v. a., *tear to pieces*.

dīlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of dīligo.

dīligenter [dīligent- (*careful*) + ter], adv., *carefully, diligently, with care, with exactness, exactly, with pains*: conservavit (*took pains to save*).

dīligentia, -ae [dīligent- (*careful*) + ia], F., *care, pains, painstaking, diligence, earnestness*: remittere (*cease to take pains, take less care*).

dīligō, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctus [dis-lego], 3. v. a., (*choose out*), *love, be fond of*.

dīmēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of dīmetior.

dīmētiōr, -mētīrī, -mēnsus [dis-metior], 4. v. dep., *measure* (in parts), *measure out* (esp. of camp). — **dīmēnsus**, -a, -um, *measured*.

dīmīcātīō, -ōnis [dīmīcā- + tio], F., *a fight, a contest*.

dīmīcō, -are, -āvī, -ātūrus [dis-mico], I. v. n., (*brandish swords to decide a contest?*), *fight* (a decisive battle), *risk an engagement*.

dīmidius, -a, -um [dis-medius], adj., (*divided in the middle*), *half*. — Neut. as noun, *the half*.

dīmīttō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [dis-mitto], 3. v. a., *let go away, let slip, let pass, let go, give up, relinquish, abandon*: oppugnationem (*raise*). — Also, *send in different directions, send about, despatch, detail, disband, dismiss, send away*.

dīrēctus, -a, -um, see derectus.

dīreptus, -a, -um, p. p. of diripio.

dīrigō, see derigo.

dīripīō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [dis-rapio], 3. v. a., *seize* (in different directions), *plunder, pillage, ravage*.

dīruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus [dis-ruo], 3. v. a., *tear asunder, overthrow, destroy*.

dīrus, -a, -um [DI (*fear*) + rus], adj., *dreadful, awful, frightful*.

dis-, **dī-** (**dir-dif-**) [akin to **duo**?], inseparable prep. (adv.), in comp., *apart, asunder, in different directions, not, un-*.—Cf. **discedo**, **discerno**, **dirimo**, **diffundo**.

Dīs, **Dītis** [akin to **dives**, *rich*, as the earth is the source of riches], **M.**, *Pluto* (the god of the under world, and so of death).

discēdō, -**cēdere**, -**cessī**, -**cessurus** [**dis-cedo**, *go*], 3. v. n., *withdraw, depart, retire, leave* (with **ab**), *go away, come off*: **locus unde discesse-rant**, *the place which they had left*; **spes hostibus** (*forsake, fail*); **ab signis** (*leave the ranks*).

discernō, -**cernere**, -**crēvī**, -**crētus** [**dis-cerno**, *separate*], 3. v. a., *separate, distinguish*.

discessus, -**ūs** [**dis-+cessus**, cf. **discedo**], **M.**, *a departure, a withdrawal*.

disciplīna, -**ae** [**discipulō-** (*reduced*) + **ina**, cf. **rapina**], **F.**, (*pillage*?), *discipline, instruction, a system* (of doctrine, etc.), *a course of instruction*.

disclūdō, -**clūdere**, -**clūsī**, -**clūsus** [**dis-claudio**], 3. v. a., *shut apart, keep apart, separate, divide*.

disclūsus, -**a**, -**um**, p. p. of **discludo**.

discō, **discere**, **didicī**, no p. p. [for **†dicsco** (**DIC** + **sco**)], 3. v. a. and n., *learn*: **discendi causa**, *for instruction*.

discordia, -**ae** [**discord-** (*at variance*) + **ia**], **F.**, *discord, dissension*.

discordō, -**āre**, no perf., no p. p. [**discord-** (*at variance*)], *be at variance, differ, quarrel*.

discrīmen, -**inis** [**dis-crimen**, cf.

discerno], **N.**, *a separation, a decision*. Hence, *a moment of decision, a crisis, critical condition, danger*.

discussus, -**a**, -**um**, p. p. of **discutio**.

discutiō, -**cutere**, -**cussī**, -**cussus** [**dis-quatio**, *shake*], 3. v. a., *strike* (or *shake*) *apart, beat away, drive away, clear away*.

disiciō, -**icere**, -**iēcī**, -**iectus** [**dis-iacio**], 3. v. a., *hurl apart, break up* (a phalanx), *disperse, scatter, tear off* (yards): **domum**, (*raze, destroy*).—**disiectus**, -**a**, -**um**, p. p. as adj., *scattered, broken, in disorder*.

disiectus, -**a**, -**um**, p. p. of **disicio**.

dispālātus, -**a**, -**um**, p. p. of **dispalor**.

dispālōr, -**arī**, -**ātus** [**dis-palor**, *wander*], 1. v. dep., *wander about, straggle*.

dispār, -**paris** [**dis-par**], adj., *unequal, inferior, ill matched, different*.

disparō, -**āre**, -**āvī**, -**ātus** [**dis-paro**], 1. v. a., *scatter, separate* (cf. **disiungo**).

dispergō, -**spergere**, -**spersī**, -**sper-sus** [**dis-spargo**, *scatter*], 3. v. a., *scatter, disperse*.

dispersus, -**a**, -**um**, p. p. of **dispergo**.

displīcēō, -**plicēre**, -**plicuī**, -**plicitus** [**dis-placeo**, *please*], 2. v. n., *displease, be unsatisfactory*.

dispōnō, -**pōnere**, -**posuī**, -**positus** [**dis-pono**], 3. v. a., *place about* (in various places), *station* (variously), *array* (at several posts).

dispositus, -**a**, -**um**, p. p. of **dispono**.

disputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dis-puto, *reckon*], I. v. n. and a., *discuss, investigate*.

dissēnsiō, -ōnis [dis-†sensio (cf. dissentio)], F., *difference of opinion, disagreement, dissension*.

dissentiō, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sēnsūrus [dis-sentio, *feel*], 4. v. n., *differ in opinion* (cf. sentio), *be at variance, disagree* (ab, with).

disserō, -ere, no perf., no p. p. [dis-sero], 3. v. a., *plant here and there, place at intervals*.

dissideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, no p. p. [dis-sedeo], 2. v. n., (*sit apart*).—Hence, *disagree, have a dissension*.

dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dis-simulo, *make like*], I. v. a. and n., (*pretend something is not*), *conceal* (what is), *dissemble*.

dissipātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **dissipo**.

dissipō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dis-†supo, *throw*], I. v. a., *scatter, disperse, spread abroad*: *dissipati, straggling troops*.

dissuādēō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus [dis-suadeo], 2. v. a., *advise to the contrary, oppose* (in argument), *dissuade*.

distineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [dis-teneo], 2. v. a., *keep apart, hold asunder, keep from uniting, cut off* (in military sense), *isolate*.

distō, -stāre, no perf., no p. p. [dis-sto], I. v. n., *stand apart, be distant*: *quantum iunctura distabat* (*as far as the distance between, etc.*); *quantum summa labra distabant* (*the width [of the ditch], at the top*).

distrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [dis-traho], 3. v. a., *drag asunder, separate*.

distribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtus [dis-tribuo, *assign*], 3. v. a., *assign* (to several), *distribute, divide*.

dīstrictus, -a, -um, p. p. of **dīstringo**.

dīstringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictus [dis-stringo, *draw*], 3. v. a., (*draw apart*), *engage, occupy*.

diū [prob. acc. of st. akin to **dies**], adv., *for a time, a long time, for some time, long*: *tam diu, so long*; *quam diu, how long, as long, as long as*; *diutius, (any) longer, too long*; *diūtissimē, for the longest time, longest*.

diurnus, -a, -um [†dius (akin to diu and dies) + nus], adj., *of the day, daily* (as opposed to nightly): *diurnis nocturnisque itineribus* (*by night and day*).

dīvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -volsus (vul-) [dis-vello, *tear*], 3. v. a., *tear asunder, tear apart*.

dīversus, -a, -um, p. p. of **dīverto**.

dīvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [dis-vertō], 3. v. a. and n., *turn aside* (or *apart*), *separate*.—**dīversus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *separate, distant, diverse, different, opposite*.

dīves, -itis [?], adj., *rich, wealthy*.

Dīviciacus, -ī [Celtic], M : I. A leader of the Hædui, brother of Dumnorix.—2. A leader of the Suessiones.

dīvidō, -videre, -vīsī, -vīsus [dis-†vido, VIDH (?), cf. **vidua**, *widow*], 3. v. a., *divide, separate, sever, distribute*.—**dīvīsus**, -a, -um, p. p. as

adj., *divided*: Gallia *divisa* est. — Also, *spread out*.

dīvīnus, -a, -um [dīvō- (as if divi) + nus], adj., *of the gods, divine*: res *divinae*, *matters of religion, religion*.

dīvitiae, -ārum [divit- (cf. dives) + ia], F. plur., *wealth, riches*.

dīvolsus, -a, -um, p. p. of divello.

dīvus, -a, -um [DIV (akin to deus) + us], adj., (*of a god*). — Neut., as noun (only with sub), *the sky*: sub *divo*, *in the open air, in the light of day*.

¹ dō, dare, dedī, datus [DA, *give*, cf. ² dō], I. v. a., *give, afford, offer, allow, concede, assign, grant*: responsum (*answer, reply*); mella (*yield*); nullo dato responso, *making no reply*; se vento (*run before the wind*); se in viam (*set forth*); hostes in fugam (*put to flight*); operam (*devote one's self, take pains, exert one's self, see to it that, etc.*); negotium uti (*employ one to, etc., engage one to, etc.*); arbitros (*assign referees, a judicial function*).

² dō [DHA, *place*], confounded with ¹ dō, but appearing in comp., *place, put*, as in abdō, condō.

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus [unc. formation, akin to dīco and disco], 2. v. a., *teach, show, inform, represent, state* (in the course of the narrative), *show how*. — doctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *learned*.

doctor, -ōris [doc- (in doceo) + tor], M., *a teacher*.

doctus, -a, -um, p. p. of doceo.

documentum, -ī [docu- (?) (as st. of doceo) + mentum], N., *a means of teaching, a proof, a warning, an example*.

doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus [perh. dolō- (st. of dolus, *craft*)], 2. v. n., *feel pain, suffer*. — Esp. mentally, *be pained, grieve*.

dolor, -ōris [dol- (as root of doleo) + or], M., *pain* (physical or mental), *distress, indignation, chagrin, vexation, sorrow, grief*: magno dolore ferre, *be very indignant, feel much chagrin*; almost concrete, *a grievance*. See adificio.

dolus, -ī [perh. akin to doleo, originally *stroke?*], M., *an artifice, deceit, treachery, tricks, a stratagem, a trick*.

domesticus, -a, -um [domō- (as if domes-, cf. modestus) + ticus], adj., (*of the house*), *of one's home, one's own, at home, private, personal*: bellum (*domestic, internal, intestine*). — Plur. as noun, *the inmates of a house*.

domicilium, -ī [perh. domō- + cilium (fr. root of colo)], N., *an abode, a dwelling place, a house* (as a permanent home).

domina, -ae [fem. of dominus], F., *a mistress*.

dominātiō, -ōnis [dominā- + tio], F., *mastery, rule, dominion, supremacy*.

dominātus, -ūs [dominā- + tus], M., *mastery, rule, sovereignty*.

dominor, -ārī, -ātus [dominō-], I. v. dep., *rule, be master*.

dominus, -ī [+domō- (*ruling*) + nus], M., *a master, an owner*.

Domitius, -ī [domitō- (reduced) + ius], M., *a Roman gentile name*. — Esp., *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus*, consul in B.C. 54.

domitus, -a, -um, p. p. of domo.

domō, -āre, -uī, itus [DOM, *tame*],
I. v. a., *tame, subdue*.

domus, -ī (-ūs) [DOM (*build*?)
+ *us* (-os and -us)], F., *a house, a home*: domī, *at home*; domum, *home, to one's home*; domo, *from home*; domo excedere, *go away, emigrate*.

dōnec [?], conj., *as long as, until, till*.

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [donō-],
I. v. a., *present, give* (as a gift). — Also, *honor with a gift, present* (one with a thing); civitate aliquem donare, *give one the rights of citizenship*.

dōnum, -ī [DA (*give*) + num (N. of nus)], N., *a gift*.

dormiō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus [?], 4. v. n., *sleep*.

dorsum (-us), -ī [?], N. (and M.), *the back*. — Less exactly, *a summit* (of a long ridge), *a ridge*.

dōs, dōtis [DA (*give*) + tis (reduced)], F., (*a gift*). — Esp., *a marriage gift, a dowry, a portion* (given at marriage).

drachma, -ae [Gr.], F., *a drachma* (a Greek coin worth 19 cts.), *a franc*.

Druides, -um [Celtic], M., *the Druids*, the priests of the Gallic religion.

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [†dubitō- (partic. of lost verb *dubo*? cf. *dubius*)], I. v. n., *doubt, have doubt, feel doubtful*. — Also (absolutely, or with infin., rarely with *quin*), *hesitate, feel hesitation, vacillate*.

dubius, -a, -um [duo- + *bis*, cf. *superbus* and *dubito*], adj., *doubtful, uncertain*: est dubium, *there is doubt, it is doubtful*; sine dubio, *without doubt*; dubio Marte, *the contest doubtful*.

ducentēsismus, -a, -um [ducenti- (reduced) + *esimus*], num. adj., *two hundredth*.

ducentī, -ae, -a [duō-centi (plur. of centum)], num. adj., *two hundred*.

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus [DUC (in dux)], 3. v. a., *lead, draw, bring* (of living things), *take, conduct*: primum pilum (*be first centurion*); ensem (*make, fashion*). — Esp. of a general, *lead, march*. — With or without in *matrimonium*, *marry* (of the man, cf. *nubo*). — Less exactly, *run* (a line, ditch), *dig, draw, make*. — Fig., *prolong, drag out*. — As mercantile word, and so fig., *reckon, consider*.

dulcēdō, -inis [dulci- (reduced) + edo, as if †dulcē- + do], F., *sweetness*.

dulcis, -e [?], adj., *sweet*.

dum [pron. DA, prob. acc., cf. *tum*], conj., *at that time*. — Also, *while, so long as*. Hence, *till, until*: dum modo or dummodo, *so long as, provided*. — With negatives, *yet, as yet*.

dummodo, see *dum*.

Dumnorīx, -īgis [Celtic], M., a leader of the Hædui, brother of Diviciacus.

duo, -ae, -o [dual of st. †dvō-, cf. *bis*], num. adj., *two*.

duodecim [duo-decem], indecl. num. adj., *twelve*.

duodecimus, -a, -um [duo-decimus], num. adj., *twelfth*.

duodēnī, -ae, -a [duo-deni], num. adj., *twelve* (in a set).

duodētrīgintā [duo-de-triginta], indecl. num. adj., *twenty-eight*.

duodēvicēsismus, -a, -um [duo-de-

vicesimus, *twentieth*], num. adj., *eighteenth*.

duodēviginti [duo - de - viginti, *twenty*], indecl. num. adj., *eighteen*.

duplex, -plicis [duo-†plex, cf. plico, *fold*], adj., *twofold, double*.

duplicātus, -a -um, p. p. of duplico.

duplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [duplic-], I. v. a., *double, increase twofold*.

dūritia, -ae [dūrō- + tia], F., *hardness, hardship*.

dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dūrō-], I. v. a. and n., *harden, toughen, make hardy*. — Also, (*harden one's*

self), *hold out, persevere, last, remain*.

dūrus, -a, -um [?], adj., *hard*. — Fig., *hard, harsh, severe, difficult*. — Also, *rough, uncultivated*.

Dūrus, -ī [durus], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., *Quintus Laberius Durus*, a military tribune in Cæsar's army, killed in Britain.

dux, ducis [DUC (*lead*) as st.], M. and F., *a leader, a guide, a commander, a general*.

Dyrrachium, -ī [Gr.], N., a town in Illyria, nearly opposite Brundisium in Italy.

E

ē, shortened form of ex (esp. in composition), wh. see.

eā [instr. or abl. of is], adv., *this way, that way, thus, in that direction, in that quarter, there*.

ēbrius, -a, -um [?], adj., *drunk*.

eburnus, -a, -um [ebor- (*ivory*) + nus], adj., *of ivory, ivory* (adj.).

Eburōnes, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a Belgian tribe, dependents of the Treveri, living north of these between the Meuse and the Rhine.

Eburovīces, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe, a branch of the Aulerci living in the region of modern Perche.

ecquis (-quī), -qua, -quid (-quod) [en-quis], indef. interr. pron., (*whether*) *any? does (is, etc.) any?* — Esp., *ecquid*, N. acc. as adv., *at all: ecquid scis, pray, do you know?*

ēdiscō, -discere, -didicī, no p. p. [ex-disco], 3. v. a., *learn off, learn by heart, commit to memory*.

ēditus, -a, -um, p. p. of ēdo.

edō, edere (ēsse), ēdī, ēsus [ED], 3. v. a., *eat*.

ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [ex-do], 3. v. a., *put forth, utter, give forth, announce: pugnās (ludos) (bring out, exhibit); facinus (do, perpetrate)*. — ēditus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *elevated, raised, high*.

ēdoceō, -docēre, -docuī, -doctus [ex-doceo, *teach*], 2. v. a., *show forth, explain, inform, tell, instruct*.

ēducātus, -a, -um, p. p. of edūco.

ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†educ- (cf. redux), I. v. a., *bring up, rear, educate*.

ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [ex-dūco], 3. v. a., *lead out, lead forth, bring out* (a baggage-train).

ēductus, -a, -um, p. p. of edūco.

effarciō (-ferc-), -farcīre, -farsī, -fertus [ex-farcio], 4. v. a., *stuff out, fill in* (solid).

effectus, -a, -um, p. p. of efficio.

effēminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-†femino, or perh. †effeminō- (or -i), in either case from *femina*, woman], I. v. a., *make into a woman*. — Less exactly, (*make like a woman*), *enervate, weaken*.

efferātus, -a, -um, p. p. of ¹efferō.

¹efferō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [efferō- (st. of *efferus*, savage), I. v. a., *make savage, brutalize*.

²efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus [ex-fero], irr. v. a., *carry out, bring out, carry away*. — Less exactly and fig., *spread abroad, make known, publish abroad*.

efficāx, -ācis [effic- (as st.) + ax], adj., *effectual, powerful*.

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [ex-facio], 3. v. a., *make out, make, effect, enable, accomplish, cause, produce, cause to be, make into, make out* (furnish), *make up, complete*: *ut praeberent* (*make them afford*); *ut sint laboris* (*make capable of*); *ut posset* (*make possible*); *classem* (*get together, construct*).

effigiēs, -ēī [ex-†figies (FIG (cf. *figo*, fashion) + ies)], F., *an image, a figure*.

efflāgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-flagito], I. v. a., *demand urgently, request*.

efflō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-flo, blow], I. v. a., *breathe out*: *animam* (*breathe one's last*).

effodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus [ex-fodio], 3. v. a., *dig out, gouge out*.

effossus, -a, -um, p. p. of effodio.

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus [ex-fugio], 3. v. a., *escape, flee* (absolutely), *fly from*.

effundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fusus [ex-fundo, *pour*], 3. v. a., *pour out, empty*. — Fig., *squander, spread abroad*.

effusus, -a, -um, p. p. of effundo.

egēns, -entis, p. of egeo.

egeō, egēre, eguī, no p. p. [?, (cf. *indigus*, in want)], 2. v. n., *want, need, be in want*. — egēns, -entis, p. as adj., *needy, destitute*.

egestās, -ātis [unc. st. (perh. *egent*) + tas], F., *poverty, destitution*.

ego, meī [cf. Eng. *I*], pron., *I* (*me*, etc.). — Plur., nōs, *we, us*, etc.

ēgredior, -gredi, -gressus [ex-gradior, *step*], 3. v. dep., *march out, go out, move beyond*: *finis* (*pass beyond*); *navi* or *e navi* (*land, disembark, go ashore*); *ex oppido* (*evacuate*).

ēgregiē [old case-form of *egregius*], adv., *remarkably, finely, extremely well, excellently*.

ēgregius, -a, -um [e grege (*out of the herd*) + ius], adj., *out of the common, remarkable, superior, excellent, uncommon, special, renowned*.

ēgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of egredior.

ēgressus, -ūs [e-gressus, cf. *ingressus* and *egredior*], M., *a landing*.

ēheu [?], interj., *alas! alack!*

ēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [ex-iacio], 3. v. a., *cast out, drive out, cast up* (cf. *edo*). — With reflex., *rush out, rush*.

ēiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of eicio.

ēiusmodī [eius modi], as adj. phrase, *of this kind, of such a kind, such, of such a nature, of this nature*.

ēlābor, -lābī, -lāpsus [ex-labor],
3. v. dep., *slip out, escape*.

ēlāpsus, -a, -um, p. p. of elabor.

ēlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of eligo.

ēlegāns, -antis [p. of †elego (cf. eligo, choose out)], adj., *fastidious, nice*.

ēleganter [elegant- + ter], adv.,
neatly, elegantly.

elephantus, -ī [Gr.], M., *an elephant*.

Eleutetī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur.,
a people dependent on the Arverni.

ēlīdō, -līdere, -līsī, -līsus [ex-laedo,
strike], 3. v. a., *dash to pieces, crush*.

ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [ex-
lego], 3. v. a., *pick out, choose, select, appoint (dies)*. — ēlēctus, -a, -um, p.
p. as adj., *picked (troops)*.

ēlūdō, -lūdere, -lūsī, -lūsus [exludo,
play], 3. v. a., *escape, avoid, elude*.

ēmergō, -mergere, -mersī, -mersus
[ex-mergo, *plunge*], 3. v. n., *rise*
(from under water), *come forth, arise, emerge*.

ēmineō, -minēre, -minuī, no p. p.
[ex-†mineo, *project*], 2. v. n., *stand out, project, tower above*. Hence,
be conspicuous.

ēminus [ex manu, *hand*, cf. cominus],
adv., *at a distance, at long range*.

ēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus
[ex-mitto], 3. v. a., *let go, let out, drop, send out, throw, hurl, discharge, let loose: vocem (utter)*. —
Pass., or with reflex., *rush out*.

emō, emere, ēmī, ēemptus [EM?,
orig. *take*], 3. v. a., (*take, only in compounds*). — Esp., *buy* (cf. Eng. "sell," orig. *give*), *purchase*.

ēemptor, -ōris [EM (cf. emo) + tor],
M., *a buyer, a purchaser*.

ēn [?], interj., *lo! behold!*

ēnārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-narro,
tell], 1. v. a., *tell, relate, recount*.

ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus [ex-nascor],
3. v. dep., *grow out, spring out*.

ēnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of enascor.

ēnāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-
navigo, *sail*], 1. v. a., *sail over, traverse, pass over*.

ēnecō, -necāre, -necūī (-āvī), -nec-
tus [ex-neco, *kill*], 1. v. a., *exhaust, wear out*.

enim [prob. e (in en, ecce) +
nam] (always postpositive), conj.,
really. — Esp., as explanatory, *for, but, now, for in fact: neque enim, for of course . . . not, for you see . . . not*.

ēnsis, -is [?], M., *a sword, a blade*.

eō, īre, īvī (īī), ītūrus [root 1], irr.
v. n., *go, pass, march, advance, proceed: itum est, they went; dies (go by)*. — Pass. infin. īrī used with verbs
to form the fut. pass. inf.

eō [old dat. of is], adv., *thither, there* (in sense of *thither*). — Often
translated by more def. expressions
in Eng., *to the place* (where, etc.), *on them (it, him, etc.)*: *usque eo ut, to that degree that, so far that*.

eō, abl. neut. used as the abl. of
degree of difference. See is.

eōdem [old dat. of idem, cf. eo,
thither], adv., *to the same place, in the same place* (cf. eo), *there also: eodem illo pertinere . . . ut, favored the same idea . . . that, belonged to the same design . . . that*.

Ephialtēs, -ae [Gr.], M., the be-

trayer of the Greeks at Thermopylae.

ephippiātus, -a, -um [ephippiā- (as if st. of verb, cf. *auratus*) + *tus*, see *ephippium*], adj., *saddled, caparisoned*: *equites* (*riding on saddles*, as a less manly form of *horseman-ship*).

ephippium, -ī [Gr.], N., *a horse-cloth, caparison, housing*.

epigramma, -atis [Gr.], N., *an epigram*.

Ēpīrus, -ī [Gr.], F., *a province in northern Greece*.

epistula (*epistola*), -ae [Gr.], F., *a letter, a note, a message* (in writing), *a despatch*.

Eporēdorīx, -īgis [Celtic], M., *a nobleman of the Hædui*.

epulum, -ī, plur. -ae, -ārum [?], N. (sing.), F. (plur.), *a feast, a banquet*.

eques, -itis [equō- + *tis* (reduced)], M., *a horseman, a rider*. — Plur., *cavalry*. — Esp. (as orig. serving on horseback), *a knight* (one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate). — So also, *a knight* (of Gaul, of a corresponding class).

equester, -tris, -tre [equit- + *tris*], adj., *of knights, of cavalry*.

equitātus, -ūs [equitā- (as st. of *equito*, *ride*) + *tus*], M., *cavalry, horse* (troops serving on horseback).

equitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [equit-], I. v. n., *ride*.

equus, -ī [AK (*swift*) + *vus*], M., *a horse*.

Eratosthenēs, -is [Gr.], M., *a Greek philosopher and mathematician of Alexandria, born at Cyrene*

B.C. 276. He was famous for his investigations in geography and astronomy.

ērēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of *erigo*.

ēreptus, -a, -um, p. p. of *eripio*.

ergā [prob. instr. of same st. as *ergo*], prep. with acc., *towards* (of feeling and conduct).

ergō (-ō rarely) [unc. form, perh. dat., cf. *erga*], adv., *therefore, then*.

ērīgō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus [ex-*rego*, *make straight*], 3. v. a., *set up straight, raise up*. — With reflex., *get up*. — **ērēctus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *high, high and straight*.

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [ex-*rapio*], 3. v. a., *snatch away, take away, wrest* (a thing from), *deprive* (one of a thing, changing the relation in Eng.), *take from, rescue*.

ērōgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-*rogo*, *ask*], I. v. a., *appropriate* (orig. from the public treasury), *pay out, expend*.

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [?], I. v. n., *wander, meander* (of a river), *go astray, err, be mistaken*.

error, -ōris [ERR (as if root of *erro*) + *or*], M., *a mistake, an error*.

ērübescō, -rubescere, -rubuī, no p. p. [ex-*rubesco*, *redden*], 3. v. n., *turn red, blush*.

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [ex-*rumpo*], 3. v. a. and n., *burst out, break out, sally out, make a sally*.

ēruptiō, -ōnis [ex-*ruptio*, cf. *erumpo*], F., *a breaking out, a sally, a sortie*.

ervum, -ī [?], N., *vetch* (a kind of pulse).

essedā, -ae (-um, -ī) [Celtic], F. (and N.), *a war chariot* (of the Gauls).

essedārius, -ī [essedō- (-a) (reduced) + arius], M., *a charioteer* (a warrior fighting from an essedum).

Esuvii, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in the region of Normandy.

et, conj., *and*: **et . . . et**, *both . . . and*. — With emphasis, *and also*.

etiam [et iam], conj., *also, too, even, even now, yet, and also, besides*: **quin etiam**, *nay more*; **etiam tum**, *even then, till then*.

etiamtum [etiam-tum], adv., *even then*.

Etrūria, -ae [?], F., a division of Italy north of the Tiber and west of the Apennines.

etsi [et si], conj., *even if, although, though*.

Eumenēs, -is [Gr.], M., king of Pergamum, B.C. 198–158, a friend and ally of Rome.

euntis (gen. of iens), p. of eo.

Euphrātēs, -is [Gr.], M., a river of Asia, rising in Armenia and joining the Tigris near Babylon.

Euripidēs, -is [Gr.], M., a celebrated Greek tragic poet.

Eurōpa, -ae [Gr.], F., *Europe*.

Eurylochus, -i [Gr.], M., one of the companions of Ulysses.

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsūrus [ex-vado, go], 3. v. n., *escape*: **evadere ad**, *arrive at*.

ēvānēscō, -vānēscere, -vānuī, no p. p. [ex-vanesco], 3. v. n., *vanish away, disappear*.

ēvectus, -a, -um, p. p. of eveho.

ēvehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vectus [ex-veho, carry], 3. v. a., *(carry out)*. — Also, *bear aloft, raise, elevate*.

ēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus [ex-venio], 4. v. n., *come out, turn out, happen, fall out*.

ēventus, -ūs [ex-†ventus, cf. conventus and evenio], M., *result, issue, fate, success*.

ēvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [ex-vertō, turn], 3. v. a., *turn upside down, overturn, overthrow*.

ēvīto, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-vito, shun], 1. v. a., *avoid, escape*.

ēvocātus, -a, -um, p. p. of evoco.

ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-voco], 1. v. a., *call out, call forth, summon*.

ēvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [ex-volo], 1. v. n., *fly out, rush out*.

ex (ē) [?], adv. (in comp.), and prep. with abl., *out of* (cf. **ab**, *away from*), *out*. — Less exactly, *from* (lit. and fig.), *of* (made of): **facilia ex difficillimis redegerat**, *had made easy instead of most difficult*, as they were. Hence, *after*. — Also, *on account of, in accordance with, by means of*. — Also, *above* (raised from). — Also (cf. **ab**), *in, on*: **una ex parte**, *on one side*; **ex itinere**, *on the march*, starting from it; **ex eorum corporibus**; **ex ea civitate**, *from that nation*, belonging there; **ex fuga**, *in their flight*; **ex ordine**, *in order*. — Other phrases: **magna ex parte**, *in a great degree, for the most part*; **ex cratibus** (*of, made of*); **unus e filiis** (*one of, etc.*); **ex Hispania** (*a man from*); **ex usu**, *for the advantage*, cf. “of use”; **ex planitie editus** (*above, raised out of*); **e regione**, *opposite*; **ex litteris** (*in*

accordance with, from facts stated in, etc.); *ex* (e) *contrario*, *on the contrary*. — In comp., *out, completely* (cf. “out and out”), *off, up, after, from, un-*.

exaequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-aequo (cf. *aequus, equal*)], I. v. a., *make equal, equal*.

exagitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **exagito**.

exagitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-agito, freq. of *ago, drive*], I. v. a., *pursue, drive, harass, persecute*.

exāminātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **examino**.

exāminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-amin- (st. of *examen, tongue of the balance*)], I. v. a., *weigh*. — Fig., *examine, test*.

exanimātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **exanimo**.

exanimis, -e [ex-anima-, decl. as adj.], adj., (*out of breath*), *breathless* (from fear), *in dismay, half dead*.

exanimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-animō-], I. v. a., *deprive of breath or life, kill*. — **exanimātus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *out of breath, weakened, exhausted*.

exārdēscō, -ārdēscere, -ārsī, no p. p. [ex-ardesco, cf. *ardeo, burn*], 3. v. n., *blaze up, be kindled*. — Fig., *become enraged, become excited, burn*.

exaudiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus [ex-audio], 4. v. a., *hear* (from a distance), *hear distinctly, distinguish*.

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus [ex-cedo], 3. v. n., *go out, leave* (with abl.), *withdraw, retire*. — Absolutely, *leave the fight*.

excellō, -cellere, -celluī, -celsus

[ex-†cello], 3. v. a. and n., *raise, rise, surpass, excel*. — **excelsus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *high, elevated, tall*.

excelsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **excello**.

exceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **excipio**.

excidium (exsc-), -ī [ex-†scidium (SCID + ium, cf. *excindo, cut off*)], N., *downfall, overthrow*.

excidō, -cidere, -cidī, no p. p. [ex-cado, *fall*], I. v. n., *fall down, fall out*: ei (*from his hand*).

excīō (-cieō), -cīre, -cīvī (-iī), -cītus [ex-cio (cieo, *stir*)], 4. v. a., *call forth, summon*.

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [ex-capio], 3. v. a., *take off, take up, pick up, intercept, receive, catch* (of animals), *welcome* (of persons). Hence, *follow, come after, come next*: *vada* (*stand, of vessels*); *vim fluminis* (*break*); *alios alii* (*succeed*); *hunc alii* (*follow, take up the cry, in shout-ing*). — Also, *meet, befall*.

excitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **excito**.

excitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-cito, cf. *excio, call up*], I. v. a., *call out, arouse, rouse, excite, stimulate* (induce). — Also, *raise* (towers), *kindle* (fire).

exclāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-clamo], I. v. a. and n., *cry out, ex-claim*.

exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [ex-claudio], 3. v. a., *shut out, cut off* (from doing a thing), *prevent*.

exclūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **excludo**.

excōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-cogito], I. v. a., *think out, devise*.

excruciātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **excrucio**.

excruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-crucio, cf. *crux*, *cross*], I. v. a., *torture, torment*.

excubitor, -ōris [as if ex-†cubitor, cf. *excubo*], M., *a sentinel* (as lying out of the camp or tent).

excubō, -cubāre, -cubui, -cubiturus [ex-cubo], I. v. n., *lie outside*. — Esp., of camp, *stand guard, keep a night watch, watch*.

exculcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-calco], I. v. a., *tread down, trample down*.

excursiō, -ōnis [ex-†cursio, cf. *ex-curro*, *run out*], F., *a sally, a sortie*.

excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-†causo, cf. *causa*, *reason*], I. v. a., *give as an excuse*. — Also, with change of relation), *excuse, exculpate*.

excutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus [ex-quatio], 3. v. a., *shake out: risum (force)*.

exedō, -edere, -ēdī, -ēsus [ex-edo, *eat*], 3. v. a., (*eat out*), *devour*. — Less exactly, *wear away*.

exemplum, -ī [ex-†emplum, EM (in *emo*, *take*) + *lus* with parasitic p], N., (*something taken out*), *a sample, a copy, a precedent, an example, an instance, a case*.

exeō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus [ex-eo], irr. v. n., *go forth, come forth, go out, emigrate, march out, remove: fama (go abroad, spread)*.

exerceō, -ercēre, -ercui, -ercitus [ex-arceo], 2. v. a., (*drive off humors of the body*), *train, practise, exercise*. — Of persons, *worry, exasperate: legem (administer, carry into effect); rura (till, cultivate)*.

exercitātiō, -ōnis [exercitā- (st. of *exercito*) + *tio*], F., *practice, exercise*.

exercitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *exercito*.

exercitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [exercitō-, cf. *exerceo*], I. v. a., *train, practise*. — exercitātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *trained*.

exercitus, -ūs [as if ex-arcitus, cf. *exerceo*], M., (*a training*). — Concretely, (*a body trained or in training*), *an army* (large or small, acting independently), *a force*.

exēsus, -a, -um, p. p. of *exedo*.

exhauriō, -haurire, -hausī, -haustus [ex-haurio], 4. v. a., *drain off*. — Also, *wear out, exhaust*.

exhaustus, -a, -um, p. p. of *ex-haurio*.

exhibeō, -hibēre, -hibui, -hibitus [ex-habeo], 2. v. a., *hold out, show, exhibit*.

exiguē [old case-form of *exiguus*], adv., *scantily, meagrely: exigue habere frumentum (have a scanty supply of, etc.)*.

exiguitās, -ātis [exiguō- + *tas*], F., *scantiness, meagreness: temporis (short time, want of time); pellium (small size); castrorum (narrowness, small size)*.

exiguus, -a, -um [ex-†aguus (AG + *uus*), cf. *exigo*], adj., (*exact?*), *narrow, scanty, small, meagre*.

eximius, -a, -um [ex-†emius, EM + *ius*, cf. *eximo*, *take out*], adj., (*taken out*), *exceptional, remarkable, very high (opinio), extraordinary*.

existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-aestimo, *reckon*], I. v. a. and n., *estimate, believe, think, suppose, imagine*.

exitium, -ī [ex-†itium (itō- + *ium*), cf. *exeo*], N., *destruction, ruin*.

exitus, -ūs [ex-itus, cf. exeo], M., (*a going out*), *a passage* (out, concretely), *an outlet*. Hence, *an end*, *the last part*. — Fig., *a result*, *a turn* (of fortune), *lot*, *fate*, *an issue*.

expediō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus [prob. †expedi- (st. of adj. †ex-pes, *foot-free*)], 4. v. a. and n., *disentangle*, *extricate*, *disencumber*, *free*, *set free* (cf. impedio). — Less exactly and fig., *set in order*, *get ready*, *arrange*, *station* (of troops), *procure*, *raise* (money). — **expeditus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *unencumbered*, *easy* (iter), *not difficult*, *quick*, *active*, *light-armed* (of troops), *in light marching order* (of troops without baggage), *mobile* (of troops), *ready*.

expeditiō, -ōnis [expedi- + tio, cf. expedio], F., (*light-armed service?*), *a getting ready*, *a despatching*. Hence, *an expedition*: misit in expeditionem (*detached*).

expeditus, -a, -um, p. p. of expedio.

expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus [ex-pello], 3. v. a., *drive out*.

experior, -periri, -pertus [ex-†perior, pass. of pario, *get*], 4. v. dep., (*get for one's self?*), *experience*, *try*: fortunam (*risk*, *try*, *bear*, *endure*).

expleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus [ex-pleo], 2. v. a., *fill out*, *fill up*, *make up* (filling the required measure).

explōrātor, -ōris [as if ex-†plo-rator, cf. exploro], M., *a scout*, *a pioneer* (as a means of reconnoitring, cf. speculator, *a spy*).

explōrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of exploro.

explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-ploro, prob. *search* by calling or crying], 1. v. a., *investigate*, *explore*, *search*, *examine*, *reconnoitre*. — **explōrātus**, -a, -um, p. p., *assured*, *certain*: explorata victoria, *being assured of victory*: habere omnia explorata, *know certainly*: exploratum (est), *an inquiry was made*.

expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [ex-pono], 3. v. a., *place out*, *set out*: exercitum (*disembark*, also *draw up*, *array*): in terram (*put ashore*).

exportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [exporto], 1. v. a., *carry out*, *carry away*, *export*.

exposcō, -poscere, -poposci, no p. p. [ex-posco], 3. v. a., *demand* (with eagerness).

expositus, -a, -um, p. p. of expono.

exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus [ex-premo], 3. v. a., *press out*, *force out*. Hence, *express*. — Also (cf. edo), *raise up*: turris agger (as the mound of circumvallation rose with the towers on it as it approached the city).

expūgnātiō, -ōnis [ex-pugnatio, cf. expugno], F., *a storming* (of a city), *taking* (of a city by storm).

expūgnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of expugno.

expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [expugno, *fight*], 1. v. a., *take* (by storm), *capture* (by storming a city or boarding a ship), *overcome*, *conquer*: stipendiariis expugnatis, *the cities of their tributaries sacked*.

expulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of expello.
exsequiae, -ārum [ex-†sequia

(sequō- + ia), cf. *exsequor*, *follow out*], F. plur., *obsequies, funeral rites*.

exsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, no p. p. [*ex-salio, jump*], 4. v. a., *spring out, start up from*.

exsilium, -ī [*exsul- + ium*, cf. *exsilio*], N., *exile*.

existō, -sistere, -stitī, no p. p. [*ex-sisto*], 3. v. n., *stand out, rise up, come out*: *malacia (ensue)*; *cornu (grow out, project)*.

exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ex-specto*], I. v. a. and n., *look out for, wait for, wait, wait to see (si, whether, etc.)*, *expect, anticipate*.

expirō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ex-spiro*], I. v. n., *breathe out (esp. the last breath)*, *expire*.

exspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ex-spolio*], I. v. a., *strip off*.—Also, *strip of* (cf. *despolio*).—Fig., *deprive, rob (of, abl.)*.

extō, -stāre, -stitī, no p. p. [*ex-sto*], I. v. n., *stand out*: *ex aqua (be above)*.

extrūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of *extruo*.

exstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus [*ex-struo*], 3. v. a., *heap up, build up, pile up*.—*extrūctus*, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *well filled*.

exsul, -ulis [*ex-SAL (of salio)*], as st., with some lost connection of meaning, cf. *consul*], M. and F., *an exile*.

extemplō [*ex templō* (cf. *templum, place of the augur*)], adv., *immediately, forthwith, at once*.

exter, -tera, -terum [*ex + terus (reduced)*], adj., *outer, outside*.—

Compar., *exterior, -us, exterior*.—Superl., *extrēmus, -a, -um, farthest, extreme, last*: *extremi*, as noun, *the rear*; in *extremis lingulis (at the extremity of, etc.)*, and often in this sense); ad *extremum, till the last, to the end, at last*; ad *extremum producta casum (to the last extremity)*; ab *extrema parte, at the very end*; in *extrema spe, almost in despair*; in *extremis suis rebus, in the last extremity*; *extrema fames, the last extremity of hunger*.

externus, -a, -um [*extrō- (in exterus, outer) + nus*], adj., *from abroad, foreign*.

exterreō, -terrēre, -terrūī, -territus [*ex-terreo*], 2. v. a., *frighten away, frighten greatly, terrify*.

exterritus, -a, -um, p. p. of *exterro*.

extimēscō, -timēscere, -timuī, no p. p. [*ex-timesco*], 3. v. a. and n., *fear greatly, fear (much), dread*.

extrā [abl. or instr. (?) of *exter*, cf. *supra*], adv. and prep. with acc., *outside, out of*.

extrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [*ex-traho*], 3. v. a., *drag out, draw out, pull out*: *multum aestatis (drag out, waste)*.

extrēmus, see *exter*.

extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsus [*ex-trudo*], 3. v. a., *thrust out, push out, shut out (by dikes)*: *mercīs (dispose of, cf. "shove off")*.

extrūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of *extrudo*.

exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [*ex-, unc. verb, cf. induo*], 3. v. a., *strip off*.—Also (cf. *despolio*), *strip, deprive, despoil*: *Romanos impedimentis*.

F

faber, -brī [FA (in facio) + ber (for brus)] (M. of faber, *skilful*), M., a *mechanic, an engineer* (in an army), an *artisan, a workman, a smith*.

Fabius, -ī [? faba- (*bean*) + ius, cf. Cicero], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp.: 1. *Quintus Fabius Maximus*, a Roman consul and dictator in the Second Punic War. — 2. *Caius Fabius*, a legatus of Cæsar in Gaul. — 3. *Q. Fabius Labeo*, a Roman consul in B.C. 183. — **Fabius**, -a, -um, as adj., *Fabian*.

fabricātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **fabrico**.

fabricō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†fabrica- (†fabrō- + cus)], I. v. dep., *fashion, make, build*.

fābula, -ae [FA (in for, *speak*) + bula (F. of bulus)], F., a *myth, a fable, a story*.

faciēs, -ēī [†facō- (reduced, cf. facio) + ies], F., *form, shape*. — Concretely, *face*.

facilis, -e [†facō- (cf. *beneficus*) + lis], adj., *easy* (to do, cf. *habilis*), *convenient, without difficulty, easy* (generally). — **facile**, N. as adv., *easily, conveniently, readily, without difficulty*.

facinus, -oris [†facin- (as if root of †facino, longer form of facio) + us], N., a *deed* (of any kind). — Esp. (as in Eng.), a *deed* (of crime), a *misdeed, a crime, guilt* (referring to some particular act), *criminal conduct*. See *admitto*.

faciō, *facere*, *fēcī*, *factus* [FAC + io], irr. v. a. and n., *make, do, act*. —

Used in a great variety of senses as in Eng.: *coniurationem* (*form*); *proelium* (*bring on*); *iter* (*march, travel, proceed*); *vim* (*use violence, force a passage, offer resistance*); *testudinem* (*form*); *ea* (*perform*); *pacem* (as in Eng.); *finem epistulae* (*bring to a close*); *verba* (*speak, act as spokesman*); *potestatem* (*give an opportunity, permit, allow*). — Esp. with clause of result, *cause* (to), *do* (omitting in Eng. the connective *that*, and expressing the thing done in the indicative): *facies ut sciam*, *you will let me know*. — So in pass., *be done, be caused, happen, result, ensue, occur, turn out, be, become*: *non sine causa fit*, *it is not without reason*; *fit ut*, *the result is that*; *fieri posse*, *be possible*; *quid fit*, *what is going on*; *fit gratulatio*, *one is congratulated*. — Often with two accs. (or with adj. corresponding to second acc.), *make, render*. — Esp.: *certiorem facere*, *inform*. — So with pred. gen.: *nihil reliqui*, *leave nothing undone, leave no further possibility*; *sui commodi naves* (*make for his convenience*). — **factum**, -ī, N. of p. p., half noun and half participle, and to be translated by either, *act, thing done, fact*, etc.: *id factum graviter tulit*, *took this action much to heart*; *recte factum*, *good conduct* (but notice the adverb); *factum male*, *a woful deed*. — **fio**, *fieri*, as pass. in all senses.

factiō, -ōnis [prob. †facti + o, but treated as FAC + tio, cf. co-

hortatio], F., *a business, an employment*. — Also, *a party, a faction*.

factum, -ī, see **facio**.

factus, -a, -um, p. p. of **facio**.

facultās, -ātis [facul (for *facili*-cf. *simul*) + *tas*], F., *ease, facility*. — So, *chance, power, opportunity*: quantum facultatis dari potuit, *so far as opportunity was offered*; sui conligendi (*chance to*, etc.). Hence, concretely, *means, resources, supply*: navium.

faenerātor, -ōris [faenerā- (*lend on interest*) + *tor*], M., *a usurer*.

faenus, -oris [unc. st. fr. FE (*produce*) + *nus*, cf. *facinus*], N., *interest, usury*.

fāgus, -ī [prob. BHAG (*eat*) + *us*, from the fruit], F., *a beech, beech* (of the timber).

Falernus, -a, -um [?], adj., generally with *ager*, *the Falernian territory*, in Campania, famous for its wine. — Also, neut. (sc. *vinum*) as noun, *Falernian* (wine).

fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsus [? SPHAL, *trip up*], 3. v. a. and n., *deceive*: spes aliquem (*disappoint*); fallendo, *by deceit*. — falsus, -a, -um, p. p., *deceived*. — Also (transferred to things), *false, unfounded*.

falsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **fallo**.

fālx, falcis [?], F., *a sickle, a pruning-hook*. — Also, *a hook* (of similar form for demolishing walls).

fāma, -ae [FA (in *for*, *speak*) + *ma*], F., *speech, common talk, reputation*. — Concretely, *a rumor, a story, a report, fame, reputation*.

fāmēs, -is [?], F., *hunger, starvation*.

familia, -ae [famulō- (*servant*), reduced, + *ia*], F., *a collection of attendants, a household, a family*: gladiatorum (*a gang, a troop*). — Applied to Gauls, *a clan, retainers*.

familiāris, -e [prob. familiā- + *ris*, but treated as *famili*- + *aris* (cf. *animalis*)], adj., *of the household*: res (*estate, property*). — Esp. as noun, *a friend*.

familiāritās, -ātis [familiari- + *tas*], F., *intimacy* (with, gen.).

fāmōsus, -a, -um [fama- + *osus*], adj., *slandorous, scandalous*.

famula, -ae [F. of *famulus*, *servant*], F., *a maid-servant*.

fās [FA (in *for*, *speak*) + *us*], indecl. N., *right* (in conscience, or by divine law): non est fas (*permitted, allowed*).

fascis, -is [?], M., *a bundle*. — Esp. in plur., *the fasces*, the bundle of rods with an axe, carried by the lictor before the higher magistrates.

fastidium, -ī [akin to *fastus*, *scorn*], N., *squeamishness*. — Plur., *want of appetite*.

fastīgātē [old case-form of *fastigatus*], adv., *sloping*.

fastīgātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **fastigo**.

fastīgium, -ī [†fastigō- (unc. form, akin to *fastus*, *scorn*, cf. *castigo*) + *ium*, cf. *fastigo*], N., *elevation, slope, descent* (of a slope).

fastīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†fastigō- (cf. *fastigium*)], 1. v. a., *bring to a point*. — Esp., *fastīgātus*, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *inclined, sloping*: leniter (*with an easy slope*).

fāstus, -a, -um [fas + *tus*], adj., *secular* (of days when the courts,

etc., could rightly be held). — Masc. plur. as noun, *the fasti* (the list of such days), *the calendar*.

fātālis, -e [fatō- (*fate*) + *alis*], adj., *fated, fatal*. — Hence, *dangerous*.

fateor, -ērī, fassus [perh. akin to *fatigo*], 2. v. dep., *confess, acknowledge*.

fatigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [†*fatigō*- (†*fati*-agus, cf. *prodigus*), 1. v. a., *tire out, weary*.

†*faux*, †*faucis* [?], F. (only abl. sing. and plur.), *the throat, the jaws*. — Fig., *appetite*. — Also, *voracity, greediness*: *fauce improba*.

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautūrus [?], 2. v. n., *favor, be favorable to*.

fax, facis [?], F., *a torch, a fire-brand, fire* (lighted missiles).

febris, -is [akin to *ferveo*, *be hot*], F., *a fever, fever*.

fēlicitās, -ātis [felic- (as if *felici*-) + *tas*], F., *good fortune, good luck, lucky star*.

fēliciter [felic- (as if *felici*-) + *ter*], adv., *happily, fortunately, luckily, successfully*.

fēlix, -icis [akin to *feo*, *produce*], adj., (*fruitful*). Hence, *happy, fortunate, lucky, successful*.

fēmina, -ae [FE (*nurse*) + *mina*, cf. *alumna*], F., *a woman, a female*.

femur, -oris (-inis) [?], N., *the thigh*.

fera, see *ferus*.

ferāx, -ācis [reduced noun-st. (akin to *fero*) + *ax*, as if †*ferā* + *cus* (reduced)], adj., *fertile*.

ferculum, -ī [FER (in *fero*) + *culum*], N., (*a means of carrying, a*

dish). — Transf., *a dish, a mess, a course*.

ferē [?, old case-form of st. †*ferō*- (akin to *fero*)], adv., *almost, about*. — Also, *almost always, generally, usually, for the most part*. — With negatives, *hardly*.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (for *tlātus*) [BHAR, *bear*, and TOL (TLA) in *tollo*], irr. a. and n., *bear, carry, endure, tolerate, suffer, stand, withstand, carry off, win*. — Often in a loose sense, translated by various special words in Eng., *commit, offer*, etc. — With reflex. or in pass., *rush, pass, proceed, roll* (of a river). — With advs. indicating manner of receiving anything, *suffer, bear, take it, feel*: *acerbius ferre inopiam* (*suffer severely from*); *magno cum dolore ferre*, *be much pained or indignant at*; *moleste (graviter, aegre) ferre*, *be annoyed at, take hard, be indignant at, take to heart*. — Special uses: *auxilium* (*carry aid, assist*); *arma* (*bear arms, fight*); *condicionem* (*propose*); *legem* (*propose, carry, pass*); *signa* (*bear on the standards, march*); *ventus ferebat* (*carried the ships, blew*); *consuetudo fert (is)*; *opinio fert (goes)*; *fertur, it is said*.

fērōx, -ōcis [akin to *ferus*], adj., *fierce, savage, insolent*.

ferrāria, -ae [F. of *ferrarius*, cf. *ferrum*], F., *an iron mine*.

ferreus, -a, -um [ferō- + *eus*], adj., *of iron, iron* (as adj.).

ferrum, -ī [?], N., *iron, steel, sword*: *ad ferrum et manus, to close quarters*.

fertilis, -e [†*fertō*- + *lis* (as if FER + *tilis*)], adj., *fertile, fruitful*.

fertilitās, -ātis [fertili- + tas], F., *fertility, productiveness.*

ferus, -a, -um [FER (*rush*) + us, cf. *deer*], adj., *wild, ferocious*. — Masc. or fem. as noun, *wild beast, game.*

fervefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus [†ferve- (case-form akin to *ferveo*, *be hot*) + facio], irr. v. a., *heat, heat red-hot* (iacula).

fervefactus, -a, -um, p. p. of fervefacio.

fessus, -a, -um [?], adj., *wearied, tired, worn out.*

fēstivus, -a, -um [festō- + ivus], adj., *festive, gay*. — Also, *agreeable, pleasant.*

fēstus, -a, -um [?], adj., *festive, festal, happy*: dies.

fibula, -ae [FIG (in *figo*, *fasten*) + bula], F., *a clasp, a buckle.*

fictilis, -e [fictō- (cf. *figo*, *fashion*) + lis], adj., *of earth, earthen* (as fashioned by the potter).

fictus, -a, -um, p. p. of *figo*.

fidēlis, -e [fidē- (st. of *fides* or kindred st.) + lis], adj., *faithful.*

fidēs, -eī [FID (*bind*) + es], F., *a promise, a pledge*: *laedere* (*break faith*); *fidem facere*, *give assurance*; *fidem praestare*, *keep faith, perform one's duty*. — Also, *good faith, fidelity*: *bona fide*, *in good faith, with sincerity*. — Transf., *confidence, faith* (in), *credit, belief*. — Esp. of promised protection, *protection, dependence, alliance*: *quorum in fide* (*under whose protection*); *Caesaris fidem sequi* (*come under, surrender one's self to*); *in fidem se permittere* (*venire*), *place themselves under protection of.*

fīdūcia, -ae [†fiduc- (†fidu-, *faithful*, + cus, reduced) + ia], F., *confidence, reliance.*

fīgō, *figere*, fixī, fixus [FIG], 3. v. a., *fix, fasten* (in the ground). Hence, *erect, set up.*

figūra, -ae [†figu- (FIG, in *figo*, + us) + ra (F. of *rus*)], F., *shape, form, appearance.*

filia, -ae [F. of *filius*], F., *a daughter.*

filiola, -ae [filiō- + la (F. of *lus*, dim. ending)], F., *a little daughter.*

filius, -ī [?], M., *a son.*

filum, -ī [?], N., *a thread.*

fīngō, *ingere*, fīnxī, fictus [FIG, cf. *figura*], 3. v. a., *mould*. — Fig., *invent, contrive, imagine, feign, pretend*. — fictus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj. and noun, N. plur., *fictions*: *ficta respondeant*, *make up answers.*

fīniō, -īre, -ivī (-iī), -ītus [fini-], 4. v. a., *set bounds to, limit, bound, measure* (ending a division). — Also, *finish, end.*

fīnis, -is [?], M., *a limit, a boundary, an end*: *finem facere*, *put an end to, cease, bring to a close* (epistulae); *quem ad finem*, *as far as*. — Plur., *boundaries, limits, territories, country.*

finitimus (-umus), -a, -um [fini- + timus], adj., *on the borders, neighboring, adjacent, neighbors* (of). — Plur. as noun, *neighbors.*

fīnītus, -a, -um, p. p. of *finio*.

fīō [FU in *fui*], as pass. of *facio*, wh. see.

firmiter [firmō- + ter], adv., *firmly, stoutly, steadily.*

firmitūdō, -inis [firmō- + tudo], F., *solidity, strength* (of resistance).

firmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [firmō-],
1. v. a., *make strong, strengthen, fortify.*

firmus, -a, -um [DHAR (*hold*) + mus], adj., *strong* (for resistance), *firm, steady.*

fistūca, -ae [?], F., *a pile-driver.*

fixus, -a, -um, p. p. of figo.

flāgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [as if †flagitō-, p. p. of †flago, akin to flagro, *blaze*], 1. v. a., *ask* (in heat?), *demand earnestly.*

flagrō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus [†flagrō- (FLAG, *blaze*)], 1. v. n., *burn, be on fire.*

Flāminīnus, -ī [Flaminiō- + inus], M., *a Roman family name.* — Esp., *Titus Quintius Flamininus*, envoy of the Romans to King Prusias to demand the surrender of Hannibal.

Flāminius, -ī [flamin- (*priest*) + ius], M., *a Roman gentile name.* — Esp., *Caius Flaminius*, a Roman consul, who commanded the Romans at the Battle of Lake Trasumenus.

flamma, -ae [FLAG (*blaze*) + ma], F., *flame, fire.*

flavus, -a, -um [?], adj., *yellow.*

flectō, flectere, flēxī, flexus [?],
3. v. a., *bend, turn.*

flēō, flēre, flēvī, flētus [?], 2. v. a. and n., *weep*: flentes, *in tears.*

flētus, -ūs [fle- (st. of fleo as root) + tus], M., *weeping, lamentation.*

flō, flāre, flāvī, flātus [?], 1. v. n. and a., *blow.*

flōrēns, -entis [p. of floreo, *bloom*], as adj., *blooming.* — Fig., *flourishing, prosperous, influential* (iuvenis).

flōs, flōris [?], M., *a flower, a blossom.* — Fig., *the flower* (of troops).

fluctus, -ūs [FLUG (in fluo, cf. fluxi) + tus], M., *a wave.*

flūmen, -inis [FLUG (in fluo, *flow*) + men], N., *a river, a stream, a current.*

fluvius, -ī [†fluō- (cf. fluidus) + ius], M., *a river, a stream.*

fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossus [?],
3. v. a., *dig.*

foederātus, -a, -um [p. p. of foedero], adj., *allied, federated.*

foedus, -eris [FID (in fides, cf. fidus) + us], N., *a treaty, a league, a compact.*

folium, -ī [?], N., *a leaf.*

forās [acc. plur. of †fora, cf. forīs], adv., (*to the doors*), *outdoors, out of the door* (as end of motion).

fore, for futurum esse; see sum.

forem, for essem; see sum.

foris, -is [FOR (akin to Eng. "door") + is], F., *a door.* — Plur., *doors, a door* (double).

foris [abl. plur. of †fora], adv., *out of doors.* — Less exactly, *outside* (of anything, as beyond the siege lines).

forma, -ae [DHAR (in firmus) + ma], F., *shape, form.* — Esp., *fine form, beauty.* — Concretely, *a shape, a form.*

formīca, -ae [?], F., *an ant.*

formidō, -inis [†formidō- (unc. st., cf. formidō, perh. akin to formus, *warm*) + o], F., *fear* (generally violent), *dread, terror.*

formōsus, -a, -um [forma- (reduced) + osus], adj., *beautiful, lovely.*

fors, **fortis** [FER (in *fero*) + *tis* (reduced)], F., *chance*. — **forte**, abl. as adv., *by chance, perchance, accidentally, as it happened*.

fortasse {?, akin to **forte**], adv., *perhaps, possibly*.

forte, see **fors**.

fortis, -e [akin to **firmus**], adj., *strong, stalwart, brave, courageous*: **vir fortis**, *a man of courage*.

fortiter [forti- + *ter*], adv., *bravely, stoutly, undauntedly*: **aliquid fortius factum**, *any deed of prowess*.

fortitūdō, -inis [forti- + *tudo*], F., *bravery, prowess*.

fortuitō [abl. of †**fortuitus**, p. p. of verb in -uo, cf. **fortuna**], adv., *by chance, accidentally, fortuitously*.

fortūna, -ae [†**fortu-** (FER + *tus*, cf. **fortuito**) + *na* (F. of *nus*)], F., *fortune, chance, fate, lot* (one's *fortune*), *chances* (*belli*), *success* (good or bad). — Plur., *fortunes, resources, chances* (*means*) *of success*. — Esp., *good fortune, success*: **fortu-nam temptare**, *try one's chances*. — Personified, *Fortune*, the goddess.

fortūnātus, -a, -um [p. p. of **fortuno**], adj., *fortunate, prosperous*.

forum, -ī [akin to †**fora**], N., (*an open place*), *a market-place* — Esp., *the Forum* (the great market-place at Rome, used also for all public purposes).

fossa, -ae [F. of **fossus**, p. p. of **fodio**, *dig*], F., *a ditch, a trench*.

fovea, -ae [?, perh. akin to **foveo**, as orig. a pit for storage], F., *a pitfall*.

frāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **frango**.

fragor, -ōris [FRAG (cf. **frango**) +

or], M., (*a breaking*), *a crash, a din, a noise*.

frangō, **frangere**, **frēgī**, **frāctus** [FRAG], 3. v. a., *break* (as a solid body). — Esp., of ships, *wreck*: **fractis fluctibus** (*breaking*).

frāter, -tris [prob. FER + *ter*, akin to *tor*, cf. **pater**], M., *a brother*.

fraus, **fraudis** [?, akin to **frustra**], F., *loss*. Hence, *treachery, deceit*.

Fregellae, -ārum [?], F. plur., a town of Latium.

fremitus, -ūs [fremi- (st. of *fremo*, *roar*) + *tus*], M., *a murmur, a confused noise, a roar*.

frēnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [frenō-], 1. v. a., *bridle, curb, check, restrain*.

frēnum, -ī (plur. also -ī, -ōrum) [root or verb-st. (akin to **firmus**) + *num*], N. and M., *a bridle, a curb, a bit*.

frequēns, -entis [orig. p. akin to **farcio**, *stuff*], adj., *crowded, numerous, in great numbers*.

frequenter [frequent- + *ter*], adv., *often, frequently*.

frīgīdus, -a, -um [†**frigō-** (whence **frigeo**, *be cold*) + *dus*], adj., *cold*.

frīgus, -oris [FRIG (in **frigeo**, etc.) + *us*], N., *cold*. — Plur., *cold* (*cold "snaps," frosts*).

frōns, **frontis** [?, akin to *brow*], F., *brow, face*: **media frons**, *the middle of the forehead*. — Less exactly, *front, brow*: **a fronte**, *in front*.

frūctus, -ūs [FRUG + *tus*], M., *enjoyment*. Hence (*what one enjoys*), *fruit, crops, income, profit, interest* (from money): **victoriae** (*advantages of victory*).

frūmentārius, -a, -um [frumentō-

(reduced) + arius], adj., of grain: loca (*fruitful in grain*); res (*grain supply, provisions*).

frūmentātiō, -ōnis [frumentā- (st. of frumentor) + tio], F., foraging, gathering grain, harvesting, foraging expedition.

frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus [frumentō-], I. v. dep., forage, gather grain, get supplies.

frūmentum, -ī [FRUG (in fruor) + mentum], N., grain (cf. fructus). — Plur., standing grain, crops.

fruor, fruī, frūctus [FRUG, cf. fructus], 3. v. dep., enjoy.

frūstrā [abl. or instr. of st. akin to fraus, loss], adv., to no purpose, without effect.

frūstum, -ī [FRUD (in fraus) + tum (N. p. p. of lost verb, cut off?)], N., a bit, a piece.

Fūsius (-sius), -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. See Cita.

fuga, -ae [FUG + a], F., flight, escape: fit fuga, a rout ensues; fugae mandare se, fugam inire, take to flight; in fugam dare, put to flight; fugam petere, seek safety by flight, escape.

fugātus, -a, -um, p. p. of fugo.

fugāx, -ācis [as if fug- + ax, prob. †fugā- + cus (reduced)], adj., fleeing, fleeting, swift.

fugīō, fugere, fugī, fugitūrus [FUG (in fuga)], 3. v. a. and n., fly, fly from, run away, flee. — Fig., shun, avoid.

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [fuga-], I. v. a., put to flight, rout.

fulgeō, fulgēre, fulsī, no p. p. [FULG, blaze], 2. v. n., shine.

fulmen, -inis [FULG (in fulgeo) + men], N., a thunderbolt, a lightning flash.

fūmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [fumō-], I. v. n., smoke.

fūmus, -ī [FU (DHU) + mus, akin to dust], M., smoke.

fūnctus, -a, -um, p. p. of fungor.

funda, -ae [akin to fundo], F., a sling.

fundāmentum, -ī [fundā- (set fast) + mentum], N., a foundation: a fundamentis, to the ground, utterly.

Fundānus, -ī [Fundō- (st. of Fundi, a town of Latium) + anus], M., a Roman family name.

funditor, -ōris [funda (as if verb-st.) + tor], M., a slinger.

fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus [FUD], 3. v. a., pour. — Less exactly, scatter. — Esp. of battle, put to rout, rout.

fūnebris, -e [cf. funus], adj., of a funeral. — Neut. plur. as noun, funeral rites.

fungor, fungī, fūnctus [?], 3. v. dep., perform, discharge (abl.).

fūnis, -is [?], M., a rope.

fūnus, -eris [unc. root + us], N., (murder?), death, a funeral.

fūr, fūris [FUR (perh. akin to fero) as st.], M. and F., a thief.

furēns, -entis [p. of furo, rage], adj., raging, mad, crazy.

furibundus, -a, -um [†furi- (as st. of furo, rage) + bundus], adj., raging, frenzied, furious.

Fūrius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp. Lucius Furius, a Roman consul in Hannibal's time.

furor, -ōris [FUR (cf. *furo*, *rage*) + *or*], M., *madness, frenzy, fury*.

fūrtum, -ī [N. p. p. of lost verb

akin to *fur*, *thief*], N., *theft, a theft*.

futūrus, -a, -um, p. p. of *sum*.

G

Gabali, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic people, dependants of the Arverni.

Gādēs, -ium [?], F. plur., a town in southern Spain, now Cadiz.

Gaetūlus, -a, -um [?], adj., of the *Gætulians* or *Gætuli*, a tribe of northern Africa.—Masc. plur. as noun, *the Gætulians*.

Gāius (**Cāius**, **C.**), -ī [?], M., a Roman prænomen.

Galba, -ae [Celtic, meaning *fat*], M., a Gallic and Roman family name.—Esp., a king of the Suesiones.

galea, -ae [?, akin to *galerus*, *leather cap*], F., a *helmet* (of leather, worn by cavalry).

Gallia, -ae [F. of adj. in -ius (*Gallō* + *ius*)], F., *Gaul*, including all the country bounded by the Po, the Alps, the Rhine, the ocean, the Pyrenees, and the Mediterranean, thus occupying all northern Italy, France, and Belgium.

Gallicus, -a, -um [*Gallō* + *cus*], adj., of the *Gauls*, *Gallic*.

gallīna, -ae [*gallo* (*cock*) + *ina*], F., a *hen*.

gallus, -ī [?], M., a *cock, a rooster*.

Gallus, -a, -um [Celtic], adj., of *Gaul*, *Gallic*.—As noun, a *Gaul*, *the Gauls*.—Also, as a Roman family name. See **Trebius**.

Garumna, -ae [Celtic], C., a river

of southwestern Gaul, now the Garonne.

gaudeō, *gaudēre*, *gāvisus* [†*ga-vidō*-, cf. *avidus*], 2. v. n., *be delighted, rejoice*.

gaudium, -ī [†*gavidō*- (reduced) + *ium*, cf. *gaudeo*], N., *joy, delight, pleasure*.

gāvisus, -a, -um, p. p. (neut. pass.) of *gaudeo*.

Geminus, -ī [?], M., a Roman family name. See **Servilius**.

gemitus, -ūs [†*gemi*- (as st. of *gemo*, *groan*) + *tus*], M., a *groan, a roar, a roaring*: *gemitus iraeque*, *angry roaring*.

gemma, -ae [?], F., a *gem, a precious stone*.

gener, -erī [?], M., a *son-in-law*.

generātim [as if acc. of †*generatis* (*generā* + *tis*)], adv., *by tribes*.

genitus, -a, -um, p. p. of *gigno*.

gēns, *gentis* [GEN (*beget*) + *tis* (reduced)], F., a *family, a tribe, a clan, a people, a nation, a race*.

genus, -eris [GEN (*beget*) + *us*], N., a *generation, a race, a family (stock), a nation, a tribe*.—Less exactly, a *kind, a sort, a class*.—Also, abstractly, *kind, character, nature, method (pugnae)*: *genus hominum*, *the character of the inhabitants*.

Gergovia, -ae [Celtic], F., a city in the lands of the Arverni.

Germânia, -ae [F. of adj. in -ius,

fr. **Germanus**], F., *Germany*, the whole country between the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea.

Germānicus, -a, -um [Germānō- + **cus**], adj., of the Germans, German, Germanic.

Germānus, -a, -um [?], adj., *German* (of the country of Germany or its people. The name of the people is the original, but as usual is an adj.). — Plur. as noun, *the Germans*.

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus [GES, of unc. kin], 3. v. a., *carry* (indicating a more lively action than **fero**), *carry on, accomplish, manage, wage (war), hold (a magistracy), do (any business), wear (chains)* : **se gerere**, *conduct one's self, act, behave*. — Pass., *be done, go on* (of operations) : **rem bene (male)** (*operate successfully or otherwise, carry on operations, succeed well or ill*) ; **occasio rei bene gerendae** (*for striking a successful blow*) ; **his rebus gestis**, *after these operations* ; **res gestae**, *exploits, operations, a campaign* ; **gesta**, *events*.

Gēryon, -onis [Gr.], M., a famous monster in Spain, whose oxen were carried off by Hercules.

gestō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [gestō-, cf. **gero**], 1. v. a., *bear, carry, wear*.

gestus, -a, -um, p. p. of **gero**.

gigās, -antis [Gr.], *a giant*.

gignō, gignere, genuī, genitus [GEN, redupl.], 3. v. a., *beget, give birth to, produce*.

glaber, -bra, -brum [?], adj., *smooth*.

gladiātor, -ōris [gladiā- (cf. **gladius**) + **tor**], M., *a gladiator*.

gladiātōrius, -a, -um [gladiator- + **ius**], adj., *gladiatorial*.

gladius, -ī [?], M., *a sword*.

glāns, glandis [?], F., *a nut, an acorn*. — Also, *a ball* (for shooting).

glēba (glac-), -ae [?], F., *a clod* (of earth), *a lump*.

glōria, -ae [akin to **inclutus**, *renowned*], F., *fame, glory*.

glōrior, -ārī, -ātus [gloria-], 1. v. dep., *glory in, boast of* (abl.).

Gnaeus (**Cnēius**, **Cn.**), -ī [akin to **gnavus**, *active*], M., a Roman praenomen.

Gobannitiō, -ōnis [Celtic], M., one of the Arverni, uncle of Vercingetorix.

Gorgobina, -ae [Celtic], F., a city in the territory of the Hædui, founded by the Boii emigrating from Cisalpine Gaul.

Gortȳnius, -a, -um [gortyna- (reduced) + **ius**], adj., *Gortynian*, of Gortyna, a city of Crete. — Masc. plur. as noun, *the Gortynians*.

Gracchus, -ī [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., *Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus*, a Roman consul in Hannibal's time.

gradus, -ūs [GRAD (cf. **gradior**, *step*) + **us**], M., *a step*.

Graecia, -ae [Graecō- + **ia** (F. of **ius**)], F., *Greece*.

Graecus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., of the Greeks, *Greek*. — As noun, *a Greek, the Greeks*. Cf. **Germanus** for relation of noun and adj.

Grāius, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., *Graian*, referring to a section of the Alps.

grāmen, -inis [akin to **germen**,

a sprout], N., *grass, an herb: in remoto gramine, in some grassy nook.*

grandis, -e [?], adj., *large, of great size.*

graphium, -ī [Gr.], N., *a pen, a style* (for writing).

grātia, -ae [gratō- (reduced) + ia], F., "*gratefulness*" (in both Eng. senses of *grateful*), *gratitude* (that one has from others or towards others), *good will, favor.* Hence, *influence, friendship, source of influence, ground of friendship.* — Also, *a return, a recompense.* — Esp.: *gratias agere, express gratitude, render thanks, thank; gratias habere, feel gratitude, be grateful; gratias [gratiam] referre, make a grateful return, return thanks, pay off an obligation, requite.* — **gratiā**, with gen., *for the sake of, on account of, for, to* (for the purpose of).

grātulātiō, -ōnis [gratulā- + tio, cf. *frumentatio*], F., *a congratulation* (of others or one's self), *rejoicing: fit gratulatio, there is great rejoicing.*

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus [gratulō- (gratō + lus)], I. v. dep., *congratulate.*

grātus, -a, -um [p. p. of lost verb], adj., *pleasing, acceptable, grateful.* — Also, *pleased, thankful: gratum facere, do a favor.*

gravātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *gravo.*

gravis, -e [for †garvis, †garus], adj., *heavy.* — Fig., *serious, severe, hard, dangerous.* — Also, *weighty,*

strong (causas, imperium); *gravioris aetatis, of more advanced years; si gravius quid accideret, if anything serious should occur; caerimonia* (solemn, binding).

gravitās, -ātis [gravi- + tas], F., *weight.* — Fig., *importance, power, dignity.*

graviter [gravi- + ter], adv., *heavily, with great weight, with force.* — Fig., *severely, seriously: graviter ferre, take to heart, suffer from; premere* (press hard); *multo gravius exarsit* (more violently); *gravius consulere, take severer measures.*

gravō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [gravi- (as if grava-)], I. v. a., *make heavy* (cf. *levo*), *load, burden, oppress, overcome, press, upbraid.* — Pass. as dep., (make heavy for one's self), *be reluctant, be unwilling, be vexed.*

gremium, -ī [?], N., *the lap, the bosom.*

grex, gregis [?], M. (rarely F.), *a herd, a flock.* — Also, *a gang, a band, a troop.*

gubernātor, -ōris [gubernā- (steer) + tor], M., *a pilot, a helmsman.*

gubernō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [Gr.], I. v. a., *steer, pilot.*

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [gustō-, (st. akin to *gustus*, Eng. "choose")], I. v. a., *taste, eat.*

gustus, -ūs [unc. root + tus], M., *a tasting.* — Esp., *a light dish beginning a meal, a relish.*

H

habeo, habēre, habuī, habitus [?], 2. v. a. and n., *have, hold, keep, occupy, possess*: *aditum* (*have in itself, and so offer*); *castra* (*occupy*); *se habere*, *be*; *secum* or *apud se habere*, *have with him, also detain*; *censum* and the like (*hold, conduct*); *in animo habere*, *intend*; *orationem* (*make, deliver*); *bene habet*, *it is well*. — Esp., with p. p. as a sort of continued perf. (whence the perf. of modern languages), *have, hold, keep*: *equitatum coactum* (*get and keep*). — Also, *treat*: *ludibriō*, *pro amico*. Hence, *consider, regard* (cf. *hold*). — Esp.: *rationem habere*, *keep an account, take an account of, have regard for, consider, regard, act in view of*; *habere quemadmodum oppida defende-rent* (*have any means of, etc.*).

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*habitō*-, cf. *habeo*], 1. v. a. and n., *dwell, live, dwell in, inhabit*.

hāctenus [*hac tenus*], adv., *thus far, to this point*.

Hadria (*Adr*-), -ae [Gr.], M., *the Adriatic Sea*.

Hadrumētum, -ī [?], N., a town on the coast of Africa.

Haeduus (*Aed*-), -a, -um [Celtic], adj., *of the Hæduans*, a powerful Gallic tribe between the Loire and the Saône. — As noun, *a Hæduan, the Hæduans* or *Hædui*.

haesitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [freq. of *haereo*, *stick*, cf. *dictito*], 1. v. n., *get caught, stick, struggle* (*caught in a marsh*).

Hamilcar, -aris [?], M., the father of Hannibal.

hāmus, -ī [?], M., *a hook*.

Hannibal, -alis [?], the great general of the Carthaginians in the Second Punic War.

harēna (*arēna*), -ae [*tarē*- (st. of *areo*, *be dry*) + *na* (F. of *nus*)], F., *sand, an arena, an amphitheatre*.

harpagō, -ōnis [Gr.], M., *a hook* (esp. for walls, like a fire-hook), *a grappling iron*.

Harpagus, -ī [?], M., a Median nobleman who is said to have preserved the infant Cyrus. He was afterwards one of Cyrus's generals.

haruspex, -icis [unc. st. + SPEC (see) as st.], M., *a soothsayer, a diviner*.

Hasdrubal, -alis [?], M.: 1. Hannibal's brother-in-law, who succeeded Hamilcar. — 2. Hannibal's brother, who fell in battle.

hau, same as *haud*.

haud [?], adv., *not* (negating single words), *not at all*.

hauriō, *haurire*, *hausi*, *haustus* [cf. *haustus*], 4. v. a., *drain, drink, drink off*.

haustus, -ūs [*HAUS* (in *haurio*) + *tus*], M., *a draught, a drinking*: *ad meos haustus*, *to me to drink, to my lips*.

Helvēticus, -a, -um [*Helvetiō*- (reduced) + *cus*], adj., *Helvetian* (see *Helvetius*).

Helvētius, -a, -um' [Celtic], adj., *of the Helvetii* (a tribe between Lake Geneva, the Rhone, and the Rhine). Cf. *Germanus* for the form. — Plur. as noun, *the Helvetii* or *Helvetians*.

Helvii, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Roman province.

herba, -ae [?], F., *an herb, a plant grass*. — Also (from plants), *a drug*.

Hercle [contr. voc. of **Hercules**], interj., *indeed! bless me! at any rate!*

Herculēs, -is [Gr.], M., the famous demigod, renowned for his strength and for his services to mankind.

Hercynius (**Orcyn**), -a, -um [Teutonic], adj., (only with **silva**), *Hercynian* (the great forest embracing all the mountain country of Germany).

hērēditās, -ātis [hered-, *heir* (as if heredi-), + **tas**], F., *inheritance, an inheritance*.

hērēs, -ēdis [?], M. and F., *an heir*.

hērōs, -ōis [Gr.], M., *a demigod, a hero*.

hesternus, -a, -um [hesi- (cf. **heri**, *yesterday*) + **ternus**], adj., *of yesterday, yesterday's: hesterno die, yesterday, the day before*.

Hibernia, -ae [?], F., *Ireland*.

hībernus, -a, -um [hiem- + **ernus**, cf. **nocturnus**], adj., *of winter, winter* (adj.). — Neut. plur. (sc. **castra**), *winter quarters, a winter encampment*.

hīc [†hi- (loc. of hi-c) + **ce**], adv., *here, in this place, there* (of a place just mentioned), *at this point*.

hīc, **haec**, **hōc**, **hūius** [hi- (pron. st.) + **ce**, cf. **ecce**, **cetera**], dem. pron. (pointing to something near the speaker in place, time, or interest), *this, these, he, they, this man* (woman or thing). — Referring to things before mentioned (but with more emphasis than **is**). — Less

commonly, of what follows: **his mandatis** (*the following, as follows, these*). — Esp.: **haec memoria**, *the present generation; tempus* (*the present*); **his paucis diebus** *within a few days*. — **hoc**, N. abl. used adverbially, *in this respect, on this account, by so much the* (emph. with comparatives). — Often where a more definite word is used in Eng.: **his ita respondit** (*to this embassy*). — Often **hic . . . ille**, *the one . . . the other, this* (near by) . . . *the other* (farther off), *this last* (nearer on the page) . . . *the other, the latter . . . the former*.

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [hiem- (as if hiema-)], I. v. n., *winter, pass the winter*.

hiems (-mps), -emis [?], F., *winter, a storm*.

hinc [†him (loc. of †hi) + **ce**], adv., *from here, hence*.

hirundinīnus, -a, -um [hirundin- + **īnus**], adj., *of a swallow, a swallow's*.

hirundō, -inis [?], F., *a swallow*.

Hispānia, -ae [Hispanō- + **ia** (F. of **ius**)], F. (of adj., cf. **Gallia**), *Spain*.

Hispāniēnsis, -e [Hispania- + **ensis**], adj., *of Spain, Spanish*.

historia, -ae [Gr.], F., *a story, an account*.

historiola, -ae [historia- + **ola**, dim. ending], F., *a little story*.

hōdiē [†hō- (abl. of hic) -diē], adv., *to-day*. — Weakened with negs., *now, surely: numquam hodie*.

hodiernus, -a, -um [hodie- + **ernus**], adj., *of to-day, to-day's*.

homō, -inis [prob. humō- (*the*

earth) + o], C., a human being (cf. *vir*, a man, as a male), a man (including women), a person.

homunculus, -ī [homun- (for homin-) + culus, dim. ending], M., (a little man). — Late, a fine fellow.

honestus, -a, -um [honos- (orig. st. of honor) + tus], adj., esteemed, respected, worthy, honorable.

honor- (ōs), -ōris [unc. root + or], M., honor, respect: *honoris causā*, out of respect. — Also, of honors conferred by the people, an honorable position, an honor, an office. — Personified, *Honor*.

hōra, -ae [Gr.], F., an hour (of the day). — The Romans divided their day into twelve hours from sunrise to sunset, which were not of equal length at all times of the year, but were always so many twelfths of the solar day.

hōrnus, -a, -um [Gr., cf. *hora*, season], adj., of this season, this year's.

horreō, horrēre, horruī, no p. p. [horrō- (HORR, orig. HORS, bristle, + us), prob. used orig. of the sensation called "goose pimples," where the hair seems to stand on end], 2. v. n. and a., bristle (see above). Hence, shudder at, dread.

horreum, -ī [?], N., a storehouse, a granary.

horribilis, -e [horri- (as if st. of horreo) + bilis], adj., to be shuddered at, frightful, dreadful.

horridus, -a, -um [†horrō- (cf. horreo) + dus], adj., bristling, horrible, dreadful, frightful.

hortātus, -a, -um, p. p. of hortor. **hortor**, -ārī, -ātus [for horitor,

freq. of old †horior, urge], 1. v. dep., encourage, urge on, urge, address. — Less exactly, of things, urge, move, prompt.

hortus, -ī [?], M., a garden.

hospes, -itis [prob. GHAS-PATIS, orig. host (lord of eating)], M., a host. — Also, a guest, a stranger, a visitor. Hence, a guest-friend (in the peculiar relation of **hospitium**, which was a kind of hereditary friendship between persons of different countries, not personal, but of a family or state), a friend (of the kind above mentioned).

hospitālis, -e [hospit- + alis], adj., (relating to a guest or host). Hence, hospitable, friendly, inviting.

hospitium, -ī [hospit- + ium], N., the relation of host (or guest). Hence (cf. hospes), friendship: *hospitium atque amicitia*, alliance and friendship, family and personal friendship, hospitality: in *hospitium*, to a hospitable reception.

hostia, -ae [prob. hosti- (st. of hostis, reduced) + ia], F., a victim (for sacrifice).

hostīliter [hostili- (hostile) + ter], adv., as an enemy.

hostis, -is [GHAS (cf. hospes) + tis], C. (orig. guest), a stranger, an enemy (of the state), the enemy (collectively, either sing. or plur.).

hūc [hō- (dat. of hi-, see hīc) + ce], adv., hither, here (in sense of hither), to this (place, etc., cf. eo): *huc accedebant*, to these [ships before mentioned], were added (see accedo); *accedebat huc*, to this was added the fact that, etc.

hūiusmodī, see *hic* and *modus*.

hūmānitās, -ātis [humanō- + tas], F., *humanity* (as opp. to brutishness), *civilization, cultivation, refinement, courtesy*.

hūmānus, -a, -um [st. akin to *homo*, *man*, + nus], adj., *civilized, cultivated, refined, human*.

humilis, -e [humō- (*ground*) +

lis], adj., *low, shallow* (cf. *altus, deep*).—Fig., *low, humble, poor*: Ubios humiliores redegerunt (*humiliated, rendered less important*).

humilitās, -ātis [humili- + tas], F., *lowness, shallowness*.

humus, -ī [?], M., *the ground*: humi, *on the ground*.

I

I., for *unus*, etc., *one*.

iaceō, -cēre, -cuī, -citūrus [?, cf. *iaculum*], 2. v. n., *lie, lie dead*: iacentes, p. as noun, *the slain*.

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus [?, cf. *iaceo*], 3. v. a., *throw, hurl, cast*: aggerem (*throw up*); ancoras (*cast, drop*).

iactūra, -ae [iactu- + ra (F. of *rus*)], F., *a throwing away, a loss, a sacrifice* (of men in war), *an offer* (of reward).

iactus, -a, -um, p. p. of *iacio*.

iam [acc. of pron.-st.], adv., *now* (of progressive time, cf. *nunc*, emphatic and instantaneous), *by this time, at last, already, at length, presently, at once*: iam non, *no longer*; iam ante, *some time before, even before*; iam utebatur, *was getting to use*; iam reverti (*was at last, etc.; was beginning to, etc.*); nihil iam, *no longer*; also with no idea of time, *even, in fact*; iam dudum, iam pridem, *now for a long time, long ago, long since*.

iamdūdum, see *iam*.

iānua, -ae [akin to *Ianus*, *the god of openings*], F., *a door*.

ibi [old case-form of *is* (cf. *tibi*)], adv., *there* (in a place before mentioned), *in it, thereupon*.

ibit, ibat, see *eo*.

Iccius, -ī [?], M., *a nobleman* of the Remi.

ictus, -ūs [ic (in *ico*, *strike*) + tus], M., *a stroke*: ictus scorpionis (*a shot of, etc.*).

Id., for *Idus*.

idcircō [id (N. acc. of *is*) -circo (case-form of same st. as *circa*, *circum*)], adv., *for that reason, for this reason, therefore*.

īdem, eadem, idem [is dem, cf. *dum*], dem. adj. pron., *the same*.—Often as noun, *the same thing (things), the same*: idem imperavit, *gave the same command*: idem castellum, *this very fort*.

identidem [cf. *idem* and word akin to *tandem*], adv., *repeatedly, again and again*.

ideō [id-eo, *this for this reason*], adv., *therefore, for this reason*.

īdōlon, -ī [Gr.], N., *a spectre, an apparition, a ghost*.

idōneus, -a, -um [?, akin to *idem*?], adj., *fit, suitable, adapted*:

homo (*capable*); *tempestas* (*favorable*).

Īdūs, -uum [?, perh. akin to *aestus*], F. plur., *the Ides* (a day of the lunar month falling at the full moon, conventionally on the 15th of March, May, July, October, and the 13th of the other months, and used by the Romans to reckon dates).

igitur [perh. unc. st. + *tus* (cf. *divinitus*)], conj., *therefore, then, accordingly*.

ignārus, -a, -um [in-gnarus (GNA, *know*, + *rus*)], adj., *ignorant, not knowing*.

ignāvia, -ae [ignavō- (reduced) + *ia*], F., *inactivity, idleness, sloth*.

ignis, -is [?, same word as Sk. *agnis*, *the god of fire*], M., *fire*. — Plur., *camp-fires*.

ignōminia, -ae [†ignomin- (in-(g)nomen, *name*) + *ia*], F., *want of fame, disgrace*. — Almost concr., *disgraceful defeat*.

ignōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ignarō-, *ignorant*], I. v. a., *fail to notice, not know, be ignorant of*.

ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtus [in- (unc. which meaning) -(g)nosco, *know*], 3. v. n. and a., *overlook, pardon*.

ignōtus, -a, -um [in- (g)notus], adj., *unknown, strange*.

III, for *quattuor*, *four*.

Īlias, -adis [Gr.], F., *the Iliad*.

ilicō [in-loco], adv., *at once, immediately*.

ille, -a, -ud [old *ollus*, fr. pron. root + *lus* (?)], dem. pron., *that* (of something remote, cf. *hic*). — Also, *the well-known, the famous*. Often

as noun (opposed to some other emphatic word), *he, she, it, they: hic . . . ille, this . . . that, the other, the latter . . . the former*.

illic [loc. of *ille* + *ce*, cf. *hic*], adv., *there* (more remote, opposed to *hic*, near by), *in that place* (*nation, country, etc.*): *illic . . . quo, in the place to which* (but with more emphasis than *ibi . . . quo*).

illō [dat. of *ille*, cf. *eo*], adv., *thither, there* (in sense of *thither*), *that way*.

illūc [illo- (cf. *eo*) -*ce* (cf. *hic*)], adv., *thither, to that place, there* (in the sense of *thither*).

Īllyricum, -ī [?, N. of adj.], N., *Illyria* (the country east of Venetia and the Adriatic, and west of Macedonia and Thrace. It belonged to Cæsar's province along with the two Gauls).

imāgō, -inis [akin to *imitor*], F., (*an imitation, a copy*). — Concretely, *a statue, a bust, a picture*. — Esp., *a phantom, a ghost, an apparition*.

imbēcillis, -e (-us, -a, -um) [?], adj., *weak*.

imbēcillitās, -ātis [imbecillō- + *tas*], F., *weakness, feebleness: animi* (*feebleness of purpose, pusillanimity*).

imber, *imbris* [?], M., *a rain-storm, a rain*.

imitor, -ārī, -ātus [†imitō-, p. p. of *timo* (cf. *imago*)], I. v. dep., *imitate, copy*.

immānis, -e [in-†*manus*, *good*?], adj. ("uncanny?"), *monstrous, huge, enormous*.

immānitās, -ātis [immani- + *tas*], F., *cruelty, barbarity, ferocity*.

immēsus, -a, -um [in-mensus, *measured*], adj., (*unmeasured*), *vast, immense, boundless*.

immergō, -mergere, -mersi, -mersus [in-mergo, *plunge*], 3. v. a., *plunge in*. — With reflex. or in pass., *plunge* (one's self) *in*.

immineō, -minēre, no perf., no p. p. [in-mineo], 2. v. n., *overhang, project*. — Fig., *threaten*.

immissus, p. p. of **immitto**.

immītis, -e [in-mitis, *gentle*], adj., *ungentle, fierce, cruel*.

immittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [in-mitto], 3. v. a., *let in, drive in, let down (into), insert, throw (upon), send against, let loose*.

immō [abl. of **imus** (in-mus, superl. of **in**), adv., (*in the lowest degree*), *nay, nay rather, nay more*.

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [timmola- (in-mola, *meal*)], 1. v. a., (*sprinkle with the sacred meal*), *sacrifice*.

immortālis, -e [in-mortalis], adj., *immortal*. — Plur. as noun, *the immortals*.

immortālītās, -ātis [immortali- + tas], F., *immortality*.

immūnis, -e [in-†munis, cf. **communis** and **munia**], adj., *free from tribute*.

immūnītās, -ātis [immuni- + tas], F., *freedom from public burdens*.

impatiēns, -entis [in-patiens], adj., *impatient*.

impedimentum, -ī [impedī- + mentum], N., *a hindrance*: esse **impedimento**, *to hinder*. — Esp., in plur., *baggage, a baggage-train* (including the beasts of burden), *pack-horses*.

impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [†imped- (in-pes, *foot*, as if *impedi-*)], 4. v. a., *entangle, hamper, interfere with*. — Fig., *hinder, embarrass, impede*. — **impeditus**, -a, -um, p. p., *hampered, entangled, occupied, difficult* (*navigatio*), *impassable* (*loca*): esse **victoribus nihil impeditum** (*there is no obstacle in the way of, etc.*); **prospectus** (*interrupted*).

impeditus, p. p. of **impedio**.

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus [in-pello], 3. v. a., *drive on*. — Fig., *instigate, incite, impel, move*.

impendō, -pendere, -pendī, -pēnsus [in-pendo, *weigh*], 3. v. a., *lay out, expend, apply, devote*. — **impēnsus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *expensive, very high* (of price). — Fem. as noun (sc. **pecunia**), *expenditure, outlay*.

impēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **impendo**.

imperātor, -ōris [imperā- + tor], M., *commander* (in chief), *general, emperor*.

imperātum, -ī [N. p. p. of **impero**], N., *an order, a command*.

imperātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **impero**.

imperfectus, -a, -um [in-perfectus], adj., *unfinished*: re **imperfecta**, *without accomplishing one's purpose, unsuccessful*.

imperītus, -a, -um [in-peritus, *skilled*], adj., *unacquainted with, ignorant, unversed in*.

imperium, -ī [†imperō- (whence **impero**, cf. **pario**, *get*) + **ium**], N., *command, supreme authority, control, supremacy, supreme power, power* (military), *rule, sway* (both

sing. and plur.), *the empire, the state*. — Concretely, *an order, a command*. — Esp.: *novis imperiis studere* (*new forms of government*); *nullo certo imperio* (*command of any particular person*); *imperi aut potestatis*, *military or civil authority*.

imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*im-perō* (in-†parus, cf. *pario*, *get*)], I. v. a. and n., *demand* (*make requisition for*, prob. orig. meaning), *require* (in same sense). Hence, *order* (in military sense), *rule, command, give orders, control*: *illo imperante*, *under his command*.

impetrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*in-patro*, *bring to pass*], I. v. a., *accomplish* (anything by a request), *succeed in* (obtaining), *obtain, gain* (a request): *impetro a*, *prevail upon, persuade*; *ab eis impetrari ut*, *they be persuaded to*; *impetro ut*, etc., *obtain a request to, be allowed to*, etc., *succeed in having*.

impetus, -ūs [*in-†petus* (cf. *peto*, *aim at*)], M., *a rush, an attack, an onset, a charge, an assault, violence, fury*: *facere* (*inroad, charge, invasion*); *is impetus*, *such fury*, etc.

impiger, -gra, -grum [*in-piger*, *slow*], adj., *active, energetic*.

impius, -a, -um [*in-pius*], adj., *impious* (offending divine law).

impleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētus [*in-†pleo*, cf. *compleo*], 2. v. a., *fill, fill up, cover, complete*.

implicātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *implico*.

implico, -āre, -āvi (-uī), -ātus (-itus) [*in-plico*, *fold*], I. v. a., *entangle, interweave, entwine, encircle*.

implōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*in-ploro*, *cry out*], I. v. a., *implore, beseech*.

impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [*in-pono*], 3. v. a., *place upon, place*: *in navis* (or dat.) (*put on board*). — Fig., *impose, impose upon*.

importātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *importo*.

importō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*in-porto*, *carry*], I. v. a., *import*.

impositus, -a, -um, p. p. of *impono*.

* **impostor**, -ōris [*in-†positor* (*positor*, fr. *pono*)], M., *a deceiver, an impostor*.

impraesentiārum [*for in praesentia rerum*], adv., *for the present*.

imprimīs [*in primis*], adv., *among the first, especially, particularly* (*more than anything else*).

improbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*in-probō*], I. v. a., (*hold as bad*), *disapprove, blame, censure*.

improbus, -a, -um [*in-probus*, *good*], adj., *bad, wicked, unprincipled, impious*. — Also, *cruel, greedy, voracious* (*fauce*).

imprōvīsus, -a, -um [*in-provisus*], adj., *unforeseen*: *improviso* (*de improviso*), *on a sudden, unexpectedly, unawares*.

imprūdēns, -entis [*in-prudens*, *foreseeing*], adj., *not expecting, incautious, unsuspecting, off one's guard, unguarded, not being aware*.

imprudenter [*imprudenter* + *ter*], adv., *unwisely, imprudently*.

imprudentia, -ae [*imprudenter* + *ia*], F., *ignorance, want of consideration, want of forethought*.

impūbēs, -eris (-is) [in-pubes], adj., *beardless, immature*. Hence, *chaste, unmarried*.

impulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **impello**.

īmus, -a, -um [in + mus], superl. of **inferus**.

¹ **in** [cf. Eng. "un-"], neg. particle, only in comp. with nouns and adjs., not verbs.

² **in** [?, cf. Eng. "on"; cf. also **inde**], prep. *a*. With acc., of motion, having its terminus within or on (cf. **ad**, with terminus at or near), *into, upon, within, to, against, among*: **in volgus elatum est** (*spread abroad, among*).—Of time, *for, to, till*.—Fig., without actual motion, but only direction, *towards, against, upon*.—Often where Eng. has a different conception, *in, on*: **abdere in silvas**, *hide in the woods*; **in conspectum venire** (*in sight*).—In adverbial expressions where no motion appears, *in, according to, with, to*: **in altitudinem**, *in height*, cf. *to the height of*.—Esp.: **in horas**, *from hour to hour*; **in Morinos** (*into the country of, etc.*); **in fugam conicere**, *put to flight*.

b. With abl., of rest (lit. and fig.), *in, on, among, within*.—Often, *in the case of, in respect to*: **in eo, in his case, in regard to him**.—Esp.: **in Meldis** (*in the country of*); **in ancoris**, *at anchor*; **in praesentia**, *for the present*; **in potestate**, *under the power*; **in opere esse**, *to be engaged in the work*; **in proverbio esse**, *be a common saying, proverb*; **in illo vestigio temporis positum** (*depending*

on, etc.); **in eo constare** (*depend upon, etc.*).—In comp. as adv., *in, upon, towards, and the like*.

inaccessus, -a, -um [in-accessus], adj., (*unapproached*), *inaccessible*.

Īnachus, -ī [Gr.], M., the son of Oceanus and Tethys, the mythic founder of Argos, and father of Io.

inānis, -e [?], adj., *empty*.—Fig., *empty, vain, idle, mere, bare*.

incalēscō, -calēscere, -caluī, no p.p. [in-calesco], 3. v. n., *grow warm*.

incautē [old case-form of **incautus**], adv., *incautiously, carelessly*.

incautō [abl. of **incautus**], adv., *carelessly*.

incendium, -ī [in-†candium, cf. **incendo**], N., *a burning, a fire*: **incendia aedificiorum**, *the burning of buildings*, each one being conceived as a separate burning, as is usual in Latin.

incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsus [in-†cando, cf. **candeo**, *glow*], 3. v. a., *set fire to, set on fire, burn*.—Fig., *rouse, excite, fire, inflame*.

incēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **incendo**.

incertus, -a, -um [in-certus], adj., *uncertain, dubious, untrustworthy* (*rumores*): **ordinibus** (*in disorder*).

incessus, -ūs [in-†cessus, cf. **incedo**], M., *a gait, a walk, bearing, mien*.

incidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus [in-cado], 3. v. n., *fall upon, fall*.—Less exactly and fig., *fall in with, meet, occur, happen*: **in morbum** (*fall sick*); **in insaniam** (*become insane*).

incīdō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsus [in-caedo], 3. v. a., *cut into, half cut down* (trees).

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [in-capio, *take*], 3. v. a. and n., *begin, undertake*.

incīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of incīdo.

incitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of incito.

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-cito], 1. v. a., *set in motion* (in some particular direction) (lit. and fig.), *urge on, drive, impel, excite, rouse, incite*. — **incitātus**, -a, -um, p. p., *excited to anger, angered, spurred on*: *incitato equo, at full gallop*; *incitato cursu, at full speed*. — Esp.: *se aestus incitare* (*rush in*).

inclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [in-claudio, *close*], 3. v. a., *shut up, enclose, confine*.

incōgnitus, -a, -um [in-cognitus], adj., *unknown*.

incola, -ae [in-†cola (COL + a), cf. *agricola*], M. and F., *an inhabitant*.

incolō, -colere, -coluī, no p. p. [in-colo], 3. v. a. and n., *inhabit, live, dwell*: *incolendi causa, for a permanent abode*.

incolumis, -e [?], adj., *unharméd, unhurt, preserved, safe, safe and sound, uninjured*.

incommodus, -a, -um [in-commodus], adj., *inconvenient, unfortunate*. — Esp., *incommodum*, N. as noun, *disadvantage, misfortune, euphemism for defeat, loss, disaster, harm*.

incōstantia, -ae [inconstant- + ia], F., *inconsistency, changeableness*.

incrēdibilis, -e [in-credibilis], adj., *incredible, marvellous, extraordinary*.

increpitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-crepito (cf. *increpo*)], 1. v. a. freq., *upbraid, taunt, revile*.

increpō, -crepāre, -crepuī, -crepitus [in-crepo], 1. v. a., *rattle, sound*. Hence, *chide, rebuke*.

incumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitūrus [in-cumbo], 3. v. n., *lie upon*. — Esp. fig., *bend to, bend one's energies to*: *animo et opibus in* (*bend one's mind and energies to*).

incursiō, -ōnis [in-†cursio, cf. *in-curro*, *rush upon*], F., *an inroad, an attack, an invasion, a raid*.

incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-†causo, cf. *causa, cause*], 1. v. a., *upbraid, rebuke, chide*.

inde [†im (loc. of *is*, cf. *interim, hinc*) -de (form akin to -dem, dum, cf. *indu*, old form of *in*)], adv., *from there, thence, from the place* (which, etc.), *after that, then*.

indiciū, -ī [indic- + ium], N., *information*. Hence, *an indication, a sign*.

indicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [indic-, *an informer*], 1. v. a., *point out, reveal, show, indicate*.

indico, -dicere, -dixī, -dictus [in-dico, *say*], 3. v. a., *order, proclaim, appoint*: *bellum* (*declare*).

indigeō, -ēre, -uī, no p. p. [indigo-, *needing*], 2. v. n., (*need, want*), *be dependent on*.

indīgnātiō, -ōnis [indignā- + tio], F., *displeasure, indignation*.

indīgnitās, -ātis [indignō- + tas], F., *unworthiness, disgrace, outrage, an indignity*.

indīgnor, -ārī, -ātus [indignō-], 1. v. dep., *be indignant* (*deem unworthy of one's self*).

indīgnus, -a, -um [in-dignus], adj., *unworthy, intolerable*.

indiligēns, -entis [in-diligens], adj., *negligent, careless, heedless*.

indiligenter [in-diligenter, cf. indiligens], adv., *carelessly, negligently*.

indiligentia, -ae [indiligent-+ia], F., *carelessness, want of care, want of energy* (application).

indolēs, -is [indu- (old form of in) -toles (OL, *grow*, cf. *olesco*)], F., *nature, natural disposition, character*.

indomitus, -a, -um [in-domitus], adj., (*untamed*). — Less exactly, *indomitable, inexorable*.

inducō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [in-duco], 3. v. a., *draw on, try on* (ocreas). Hence, *cover*: scuta pellibus. — Also, *lead on, draw in, draw over*. Hence, *induce, instigate, impel*: animum inducere, *conclude*.

inductus, -a, -um, p. p. of induco.

induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtus [?, cf. exuo], 3. v. a., *put on, clothe, dress*. Hence, fig. with reflex., *pierce, impale* (one's self): se vallis; se stimulis (*be pierced by*).

indūtia (indūc-), -ārum [?], F. plur., *a truce, an armistice*.

Indūtiomārus, -ī [Celtic], M., a chief of the Treveri.

ineō, -īre, -īvī (-īi), -itus [in-eo], irr. v. a., *enter upon, go into*. — Fig., *adopt, make, begin, gain, secure*. — Esp.: *inita aestate, at the beginning of summer*; *inire rationem, take an account, adopt a scheme*; *inire consilium, form a plan*; *inire numerum, enumerate*.

inermis, -e (-us, -a, -um) [in-arma], adj., *unarmed, defenceless*.

inerrō, -āre, no perf., no p. p. [in-

erro, *wander*], I. v. n., *wander about*: in oculis (*hover before*).

iners, -ertis [in-ars, *skill*], adj., *shiftless, cowardly, sluggish, unmanly*.

infāmia, -ae [infami- (*disreputable*) + ia], F., *dishonor, disgrace*: latrocinia nullam habent infamiam (*bring no dishonor, are not held dishonorable*).

infāmis, -e [in-fama, infl. as adj.], adj., (*of ill report*), *infamous, notorious*.

infāns, -antis [in-fans, p. of *for, speak*], M. and F., (*not speaking*), *a child, an infant, an infant child*.

infantia, -ae [infant- + ia], F., *infancy*.

infectus, -a, -um [in-factus], adj., *not done*. — Esp.: *re infecta, without success*, cf. *imperfectus*; *re infecta discedere, redire* (*without accomplishing one's purpose*).

infēlix, -īcis [in-felix], adj., *unlucky, unhappy*.

inferior, compar. of inferus.

inferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [in-fero], irr. v. a., *bring in, import, put upon*: bellum (*make, of offensive war*); signa (*make a charge, advance*); volnera (*inflict*). — Fig., *cause, inflict, commit*: periculum (*create, cause*); spem (*inspire*); causam (*adduce, assign, allege, get up*).

inferus, -a, -um [unc. st. + rus (cf. *superus*)], adj., *low*. — **inferior**, *lower*: inferior pars, *the lower end*; ab inferiore parte, *down below, of a river*. — Superl., **īnīmus** (īmus), *lowest, the bottom of, at the bottom*: īnīmus collis, *the foot of the hill*.

— Fig., *most ignoble*. — Neut. as noun, *the bottom*.

infestus, -a, -um [in-festus, conn. unc.], adj., *hostile, in hostile array*.

inficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [?, in-facio], 3. v. a., (*work into?*), *dye, stain*.

infigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus [² in-figo], 3. v. a., *fasten in, fix in, fix on*.

infirmus [inferō- + mus], superl. of inferus.

infinītus, -a, -um [in-finitus], adj., *unbounded, countless, endless, numberless, infinite*.

infirmītās, -ātis [infirmō- + tas], F., *feebleness, unsteadiness, inconstancy, fickleness*.

infirmus, -a, -um [in-firmus, strong], adj., *weak, feeble*: *arbores* (*unsound, weakened*); *infirmior*, *less powerful*; *naves* (*unseaworthy*).

infītor, -ārī, -ātus [in-fitia- (st. akin to fateor, confess)], 1. v. dep., *deny*.

infixus, -a, -um, p. p. of infigo.

inflātus, -a, -um, p. p. of inflo.

inflectō, -flectere, -flēxī, -flexus [in-flecto], 3. v. a., *bend down*. — Pass., *become bent*.

inflexus, -a, -um, p. p. of inflecto.

inflō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-flo], 1. v. a., *blow upon, blow into, inflate*.

inflūō, -fluere, -flūxī, -fluxūrus [in-fluo], 3. v. n., *flow into, empty into*.

infodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus [in-fodio], 3. v. a., *dig in, bury*.

infrā [instr. (?) of inferus], adv. and prep. with acc., *below, farther down, less than*.

infringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -fractus [in-frango], 3. v. a., *break, shatter*. — Fig., *break down, crush, overcome*.

ingemiscō, -gemiscere, -gemuī, no p. p. [in-gemisco, groan], 3. v. n., *mourn, lament*.

ingemō, -gemere, -gemuī, no p. p. [in-gemo, groan], 3. v. n., *groan, sigh*.

ingenium, -ī [in-+genium (GEN + ium, cf. genius)], N., *inborn nature, character, nature, natural bent*.

ingēns, -entis [in-gens, not belonging to the kind (?)], adj., *huge, great, enormous, very large, mighty, immense*.

ingenuus, -a, -um [in-+genuus (GEN + uus)], adj., (*inborn, free-born*). Hence, *noble, liberal*.

ingrātus, -a, -um [in-gratus], adj., *unpleasing*.

ingravescō, -ere, no perf., no p. p. [in-gravesco, be weighed down], 3. v. n., *grow serious, become oppressive*.

ingredior, -gredī, -gressus [in-gradior, step], 3. v. dep., *march into, enter, march in*.

inhabitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-habito], 1. v. a., *dwell in, inhabit*. — p. as noun, *an inhabitant, an inmate*.

iniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [in-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw into, throw in, throw upon, put upon, lay upon*. — Less exactly, *place in, put on*. — Fig., *inspire*.

inictus, -a, -um, p. p. of inicio.

inimicitia, -ae [inimicō- + tia], F., *enmity, hostility*.

inimicus, -a, -um [in-amicus], adj., *unfriendly, hostile*. — As noun, *an enemy* (personal, or not in war,

cf. *hostis*, an enemy of the state, or an enemy at war), a rival, an opponent: *inimicissimus*, worst enemy.

inīquitās, -ātis [iniquō- + tas], F., inequality, irregularity, unevenness. — Fig., unfairness, unequal nature, unfavorableness.

inīquus, -a, -um [in-aequus], adj., uneven. — Fig., unfavorable, unfair, disadvantageous. — Compar., *iniquior locus*, less favorable position.

initium, -ī [in-itiūm (itō- + ium), cf. *ineo*], N., a beginning, the first of: *initium capere, facere*, begin, start; *transeundi* (the initiative, the first steps, the first attempt to, etc.); *initium fit ab*, the start is first made at (also by); *fugae factum* (the first tendency to fly was shown); *retinendi* (the first detention); *silvarum* (the edge); *Remorum* (boundary); *artificiorum initia* (the first principles, the first knowledge of, etc.). — *initio*, abl. as adv., in the beginning, at first.

initus, -a, -um, p. p. of *ineo*.

iniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus [in-iungo], 3. v. a., attach to. — Fig., impose upon (his . . . servitutum).

iniūria, -ae [in-ius (right) + ia, cf. *iniurius*], F., injustice, outrage, injury, wrong, violence (as opposed to right), abuse.

iniustus, -a, -um [in-iustus], adj., unjust.

inlacrimābilis (ill-), -e [in-lacrimābilis, tearful], adj., (not moved by tears), pitiless.

inlātus (ill-), -a, -um, p. p. of *infero*.

inligātus (ill-), -a, -um, p. p. of *inligo*.

inligō (ill-), -āre, -āvi, ātus [in-ligo, bind], 1. v. n., bind on, attach, fasten to.

inlūdō (ill-), -lūdere, -lūsī, -lūsus [in-ludo, sport], make sport of, mock at, deceive.

inlūstris (ill-), -e [in-lustrō- (or kindred st.), cf. *lusto*, light], adj., distinguished, renowned, remarkable, famous: *inlustriore loco natus*, of any prominence.

inlūsus (ill-), -a, -um, p. p. of *inludo*.

innītor, -nīti, -nīsus (-nīxus) [innitor], 3. v. dep., lean upon, support one's self on. — *innīxus*, -a -um, p. p. in present sense, leaning on, supported by.

innīxus, -a, -um, p. p. of *innitor*.

innocēns, -entis [in-nocens, p. of *noceo*, injure], adj., harmless, guiltless, innocent. — Plur. as noun, the innocent.

innotēscō, -notēscere, -notuī, no p. p. [in-notesco], 3. v. n., become known, make one's mark.

innuō, -nuere, -nuī [in-nuo], 3. v. n., nod, give a sign.

inopia, -ae [inop- (needy) + ia], F., scarcity, dearth, destitution, want, privation, want of supplies.

inopīnāns, -antis [in-opinans], adj., unsuspecting, not suspecting.

inopīnātus, -a, -um [in-opinatus], adj., unexpected.

inops, -opis [in-ops, help], adj., without resources, poor, needy.

inquam [?], def. v. n., say.

inretiō (irr-), -īre, -īvi, -ītus [in-reti- (in-rete, net)], 4. v. a., entrap, ensnare.

inrīdeō (irr-) -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsus [in-rīdeo, *laugh*], 2. v. n., *ridicule, laugh at, make sport of*.

inrumpō (irr-) -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [in-rumpo], 3. v. n. and a., *break in, break into, storm*.

inruō, -ruere, -ruī [in-ruo], 3. v. n., *rush in, rush upon*.

inruptiō (irr-), -ōnis [in-†ruptio, cf. *eruptio* and *inrumpo*], F., *a breaking in, an attack (on a fortified place), raid, incursion*.

īnsānia, -ae [īnsanō- (*unsound*) + ia], F., *insanity, madness*.

īnsatiābilis, -e [in-†satiabilis (cf. *satio, satisfy*)], adj., *insatiable*.

īnsciēns, -entis [in-sciens], adj., *not knowing, unaware: insciente Caesare, without C.'s knowledge*.

īnscientia, -ae [in-scient- + ia], F., *ignorance, lack of acquaintance with*.

īnscītus, -a, -um [in-scītus, *clever*], adj., *silly, stupid*.

īnscius, -a, -um [in-†scius, cf. *conscius* and *scio*], adj., *not knowing, unaware, ignorant*.

īnsecūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of *insequor*.

īnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus [in-sequor], 3. v. dep., *follow up, pursue, follow*.

īnserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus [in-sero, *join*], 3. v. a., *insert, stick in, mingle with*.

īnsertus, -a, -um, p. p. of *insero*.

īnsīdiae, -ārum [†insid- (cf. *insideo, sit in, and obses*) + ia], F. plur., *an ambush, a stratagem, a trick, a plot, a trap, a surprise: per insīdias, with deception, treacherously*.

īnsīdior, -ārī, -ātus [insidia-], 1. v. dep., *lie in wait, make treacherous attacks, plot against*.

īnsīgnis, -e [in-sīgnō-, *mark*, decl. as adj.], adj., *marked, memorable, signal, conspicuous*. — **īnsīgne**, N. as noun, *a signal, a sign, a decoration (of soldiers), a mark, an honor, a distinction*. — Also, *a memorable act*.

īnsimulātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *insimulo*.

īnsimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-simulo, *make like*], 1. v. a., *charge, accuse*.

īnsinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-sinuo], 1. v. a. and n., *wind in*. — With reflex., *work one's way into, slip in*.

īnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, no p. p. [in-sisto], 3. v. a. and n., *stand upon, set foot upon, stand, keep one's footing*. — Fig., *adopt (rationem pugnae), devote one's self (in bellum)*.

īnsolēns, -entis [in-solens, cf. *soleo, be wont*], adj., *unusual, excessive, arrogant*.

īnsolenter [insolent- (cf. *soleo, be wont*) + ter], adv., (*in an unusual manner*), *insultingly, insolently, arrogantly*.

īnsonō, -sonāre, -sonuī, no p. p. [in-sono, *sound*], 1. v. n., *sound, resound: catenis (rattle the chains over)*.

īnspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-specto], 1. v. a. and n., *look upon, look on: inspectantibus nobis, before our eyes*.

īnspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectus [in-†specio], 3. v. a., *look upon, inspect, examine*.

īnstābilis, -e [in-stabilis, cf. *sto*],

adj., *unsteady*.—Fig., *changeable, uncertain*.

instar [instā + ris (? , reduced)], N. indecl., (*an image*), *in the likeness of* (with gen.), *like, in the manner of*.

instituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [in-statuo], 3. v. a., *set up, set in order, array: opus (finish)*.—Also, *provide, procure, get ready*.—Also, *set about, undertake, begin to practice, adopt (a plan, etc.), begin, set on foot, establish, fix, arrange*.—So, *teach, train; habituate*.

institutum, -ī [N. p. p. of instituo], N., *a habit, a practice, an institution, a custom*.

institutus, -a, -um, p. p. of instituo.

instō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus [insto, stand], 1. v. n., *be at hand, press on*.—Fig., *threaten, impend, menace: instans senecta (advancing)*.

instrūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of instruo.

instruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus [in-struo, build], 3. v. a., *build, fit up, fit out, array, furnish, draw up* (of troops), *provide, prepare*.

insuēfactus, -a, -um [p. p. of †insuefacio], *trained*.

insuētus, -a, -um [in-suetus], adj., *unaccustomed, unused*.

insula, -ae [akin to in-salio ?], F., (*"tussocks" in a swamp*), *an island*.

insum, -esse, -fuī [in-sum], irr. v. n., *be in*.

insuper [in-super, above], adv., *on the top, above, at the top*.—Also, *besides*.

integer, -gra, -grum [in-†teger

(TAG, in tango, touch, + rus)], adj., *untouched, unimpaired, unwearied, fresh*.—Plur. as noun, *fresh troops*.—Esp., *not entered upon* (of business); *re integra*, *before anything was done, before being committed to any course of action*.

integō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus [intego], 3. v. a., *cover over, face* (turris coriis).

intelligenter [intelligent- + ter], adv., *intelligently, appreciatively*.

intelligō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus [inter-lego], 3. v. a., (*pick out [distinguish] between*), *learn, know, find out, discover, see plainly, be aware*.

intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus [in-tendo], 3. v. a., *stretch, strain, direct, bring against, bring forward*.—Esp., *of the mind or eyes, be intent, be absorbed*.

intentātus, -a, -um, p. p. of intento.

intentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-tentō, cf. intendo], 1. v. a. freq., *direct, aim at, threaten*.

inter [in + ter, cf. alter], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with acc., *between, among, amid, at, during* (epulas), *in the midst of: arbitros inter civitatis* (referees to decide between).—Of time, *within, for*.—Often in a recip. sense: *inter se*, *with, to, from, etc., each other, one another, together*; *cohortati inter se*, *encouraging each other, one another*; *obsides inter se dare*, *to exchange hostages*.

intercalārius, -a, -um [intercalari- (cf. intercalo) + us], adj., *intercalary*.

intercalō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [inter-

calo, *call*], 1. v. a., *insert in the calendar, intercalate*.

Intercatia, -ae [?], F., a town in Spain.

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessurus [inter-cedo], 3. v. n., *come between, go between, lie between, intervene, exist between, occur between, be, pass (of time), come in: mentionem (be made)*.

interceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **intercipio**.

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [inter-capio, *take*], 3. v. a., *intercept, cut off*.

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [inter-claudio, *shut*], 3. v. a., *cut off, shut off, block (roads): fugam (stop, cut off)*.

interdicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictus [inter-dico], 3. v. a., (*intervene by an order*), *forbid, prohibit: interdicere ne, forbid to, order not to*.

interdiū [inter diu (acc. or abl.?, akin to *dies*)], adv., *in the daytime, by day*.

interdum [inter dum (orig. acc.)], adv., *for a time, sometimes*.

intereā [inter ea (prob. abl.)], adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime*.

interēptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **interimo**.

intereō, -īre, -ivī (-ī), -itūrus [inter-eo (*go into pieces?*, cf. **interficio**)], irr. v. n., *perish, die, be killed*.

interest, see **intersum**.

interfector, -ōris [inter-factor, cf. **interficio**], M., *a slayer, a murderer*.

interfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **interficio**.

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus

[inter-facio], 3. v. a., (*cut to pieces*, cf. **intereo**), *kill, put to death*.

intericio, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [inter-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw in (between)*. — Pass., *lie between, intervene: spatio interiecto (intervening), i.e. leaving a short interval; portubus interiectis (lying at intervals); sagittariis (thrown in at intervals)*.

interiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **intericio**.

interim [loc. of †**interus**, cf. **inter**, **interior**], adv., *meanwhile*.

interimo, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptus [inter-emo, *take*], 3. v. a., *kill, slay, put to death*.

interior, -us [compar. of †**interus** (**in-terus**, cf. **alter**)], adj., *inner, interior: nota (older, as more remote in the wine-cellar)*. — Masc. as noun, *interiores, men in the interior, men in the town*. — Neut. plur. as noun, *the inner part*.

interitus, -ūs [inter-itus, cf. **intereo**], M., *destruction, death*.

intermissus, see **intermitto**.

intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [inter-mitto], 3. v. a. and n., (*let go between*), *leave off, discontinue, stop, interrupt, cease: spatiis intermissis, leaving intervals; brevi tempore intermisso, waiting a short time; spatio intermisso, after a time; subeuntes non intermiserunt (did not cease, etc.); intermissa profectio (delaying); vento intermisso (ceasing, failing); nocturnis temporibus ad laborem intermissis, ceasing their toil in the night time; tempus ab opere, at any time cease the work; intermissae trabes (separated); inter-*

missis magistratibus, *passed over for a year*; pars oppidi intermissa a flumine (*left unprotected*); planities intermissa collibus (*broken by, lying between*).

interneciō, -ōnis [inter-†necio, same root as neco, *kill*], F., *extermination, annihilation* (exercitus).

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [inter-pono], 3. v. a., *put in between* (lit. and fig.), *interpose, allege* (an excuse to break off something): moram; nulla suspicione belli interposita, *no suspicion of war appearing to hinder*; fidem interponere, *pledge one's honor*.

interpretor, -ārī, -ātus [interpret-], 1. v. dep., *interpret, explain*.

interrogātus, -a, -um, p. p. of interrogo.

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [inter-rogo], 1. v. a., (*ask at intervals*), *question, interrogate, ask*.

interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [inter-rumpo], 3. v. a., *break off* (between two points), *break down* (bridges), *destroy*.

interscindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissus [inter-scindo], 3. v. a., *cut off* (between two points), *break down, tear down*.

intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus [inter-sum], irr. v. n., *be between, be among, be in, be engaged in*: non amplius intersit, *there is an interval of not more than, etc.*; proelio, divinis rebus (*be engaged in, take part in*). — Also, *be different, differ*. — Esp., impers., *it is of importance, it interests, it concerns*; with neg., *it makes no difference*.

intervāllum, -ī [inter-vallus, *distance between stakes in a rampart*], N., *distance* (between two things), *distance apart, interval*.

intervenīō, -venīre, -vēmī, -ventūrus [inter-venio], 4. v. n., *come between, come up* (at a particular juncture), *arrive*.

interventus, -ūs [inter-†ventus, cf. eventus and intervenio], M., *a coming* (to interrupt something), *intervention*.

intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textus [intexto], 3. v. a., *weave in, weave together*.

intextus, -a, -um, p. p. of intexo.

intrā [instr. (?) of †interus, cf. inter and extra], adv. and prep. with acc., *into, within, inside, in*.

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [interō-], 1. v. a., *enter, go in*.

intrōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [intro-duco], 3. v. a., *lead in, bring in, march in* (troops).

introitus, -ūs [intro-itus, cf. introeo], M., *an entrance, an approach* (means of entrance).

intrōmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of intromitto.

intrōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [intro-mitto], 3. v. a., *let go in, send in*. — With reflex. or in pass., *rush in*: intromissus, p. p., *rushing in*.

intrōrsus [intro-vorsus (petrified nom., p. p. of vorto, *turn*)], adv., *into the interior, inside, within*.

intueor, -tuērī, -tuitus (-tūtus) [intueor], 2. v. dep., *gaze upon, gaze at, cast one's eyes upon*.

intulī, see *infero*.

intumescō, -tumescere, -tumui, no p. p. [in-tumescō, *swell*], 3. v. n., *be swollen, swell, swell with rage, rage*.

inūsitātus, -a, -um [in-usitatus], adj., *unwonted, unaccustomed: inusitator, less familiar*.

inūtilis, -e [in-utilis], adj., *of no use, unserviceable, useless*. — In a pregnant sense, *unfavorable*.

invehō, -vehere, -vēxi, -vectus [in-veho], 3. v. a., *carry in*. — Pass., *sail in*.

inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus [in-venio], 4. v. a., *find (come upon, cf. reperio, find by search), learn*.

inventor, -ōris [in-+ventor, cf. invenio], M., *a discoverer, an inventor*.

inventus, -a, -um, p. p. of invenio.

inveterāscō, -āscere, -āvī, -ātūrus [in-veterasco], 3. v. n., *grow old in, become established in*.

invicem (often as two words) [invicem], adv., *by turns, in turn*.

invictus, -a, -um [in-victus], adj., *unconquered*. — Also, *unconquerable, invincible*.

invidēō, -vidēre, -vidī, -vīsus [in-video, *see*], 2. v. n. and a., (*look askance at*), *envy, be jealous of, grudge*. — invīsus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *hated, hateful, detested, odious*.

invidia, -ae [invidō- (*envious*) + ia], F., *envy, odium*.

inviolātus, -a, -um [in-violatus], adj., *inviolate*. — Also (cf. invictus), *inviolable, sacred*.

invīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of invideo.

invītātus, -a, -um, p. p. of invito.

invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [?], 1. v. a., *invite, request, attract*.

invītus, -a, -um [?], adj., *unwilling*. — Often rendered as adv., *against one's will*.

iō [Gr.], interj., *ah! oh!*

iocus, -ī [?], M., also N. in plur., *a jest, a joke: inter (per) iocum, in jest*.

Iovem, see *Juppiter*.

ipse, -a, -um [is-potis (?)], intens. pron., *self, himself*, etc. (as opp. to some one else, cf. sui, reflex., referring to the subject), *he*, etc. (emph.), *he himself*, etc., *in person, very: hoc ipso tempore, at this very time; ipsi inter se (see sui), each other, with each other, by each other, etc.*

īra, -ae [?], F., *anger, wrath*.

īrātus, -a, -um [p. p. of irascor, *be angry*], adj., *angry, in anger*.

īrem, etc., see *eo, go*.

is, ea, id [pron. ī], dem. pron., *this (less emph. than hic), that (unemph.)*, *these, those, etc., the, a, he, she, it, such: quae pars ea, etc., the part which, etc.; et id, and that too; ea quae, the things which, what; cum ea ita sint, since this is so; is locus quo, a place where; in eo erat ut, was on the point of. — eō, N. abl., the (old Eng. instr.), so much, on that account, therefore; eo magis, all the more*.

iste, -a, -ud [is-te (cf. tum, tantus, etc.)], dem. pron., *that, that of yours*.

ita [I + ta (instr. (?) of TA)], adv., *so, in such a way, in this way, thus, to such an extent, as follows: ut . . . ita, as . . . so, though . . . yet, both . . . and; ita . . . ut, in propor*

tion as, as; ita narravit, told this story.

Italia, -ae [†Italō- (reduced) + ia (F. of -ius)], F., *Italy*.

Italus, -a, -um [prob. Gr.], adj., *Italian*. — Masc. plur. as noun, *the Italians*.

itaque [ita que], adv., *and so, accordingly, therefore*.

item [i-tem (acc.?, cf. idem)], adv., *in like manner, so also, in the same way* (before mentioned), *likewise*.

iter, itineris [st. fr. I (*go*) + unc. term.], N., *a road, a march, a way, a route, a course, a journey: in itinere, on the road; in eo itinere, on the way; iter facere, march, travel; iter dare, allow to pass; magnis itineribus, by forced marches; tutum iter, a safe passage*.

iterum [I (in is) + terus, cf. alter], adv., *a second time, again*.

Ithaca, -ae [Gr.], F., *an island in the Ionian Sea, the home of Ulysses*.

Itius [Celtic], adj., (with portus), *the port where Cæsar embarked for Britain the second time; either Wissant or Boulogne*.

itum, see eo, go.

Iuba, -ae [?], M., *a king of Numidia, who was defeated by Julius Cæsar at Thapsus, B.C. 46*.

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus [prob. ius-habeo, cf. praebeo], 2. v. a., *order, command, bid*.

iucundus, -a, -um [perh. akin to iuvo, aid], adj., *pleasant, agreeable*.

Iūdaei, -ōrum [?], M. plur., *the Jews*.

iūdex, -icis [ius- + dex (DIC, as st.)], M. and F., *a judge*.

iūdicium, -ī [iudic- (in iudex, judge) + ium], N., *a judgment (judicial), a trial, an opinion* (expressed officially); *an opinion* (generally), *advice*; often translated by *court*.

iūdicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [iudic- (in iudex, judge)], 1. v. a., *formally decide, decide, judge, adjudge, think, consider*.

iugulum, -ī [iugō- + lum], N., *the collar-bone* (forming a kind of yoke). — Less exactly, *the throat, the neck*.

iugum, -ī [IUG (in iungo) + um], N., *a yoke*. Hence, *a ridge, a crest* (of a row of hills).

Iugurtha, -ae [?], M., *a king of Numidia, who was defeated and captured by Marius*.

Iūlia, -ae [F. of Iulius], F., *Cæsar's daughter, who was married to Pompey*.

Iūlius, -ī [?], M., *a Roman gentile name*. See *Caesar*.

iumentum, -ī [IUG- (?) + mentum], N., *a beast of burden, a pack-horse, a horse*.

iūctūra, -ae [iunctu- + ra (F. of -rus)], F., *a joining, a joint: quantum distabat iunctura, as far as the distance apart, of two things joined*.

iūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of iungo.

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūctus [IUG], 3. v. a., *join, unite, attach together: societātem (form)*. — In pass. or with reflex., *unite with, attach one's self to*.

iūnior, compar. of iuvenis.

Iūnius, -ī [?, prob. iuveni- + ius,

but cf. **Iuno**], M., a Roman gentile name. See **Brutus**.

Iūnius, -a, -um [see the foregoing], adj., of *June*.

Iūnō, -ōnis [prob. for **Iovino**, akin to **Iuppiter**], F., the queen of the gods, wife of **Jupiter**.

Iuppiter, **Iovis** [**Iovis-pater**], M., the god of the visible heavens and the atmosphere, who was regarded as the supreme divinity of the Romans.

iūrgium, -ī [†**iurgō**- (**ius-agus**, cf. **prodigus**) (reduced) + **ium**], N., a quarrel, a complaint, a reproach.

iūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**iur**- (st. of **ius**)], I. v. n., swear, take an oath.

¹ **iūs**, **iūris** [?], N., broth, soup.

² **iūs**, **iūris** [**YU** (akin to **IUG**) + **us**], N., justice, law, right, rights (collectively), rights over (anything), claims: in **ius vocare** (into court).—**iure**, abl. as adv., rightly, justly.

iūs iurandum, **iūris iurandi** [see the two words], N., an oath.

iūssū [abl. of **†iussus**], used as adv., by order, by command.

iūstitia, -ae [**iusto**- + **tia**], F., justice (just behavior), sense of justice, fair dealing.

iūstus, -a, -um [**ius** + **tus**], adj., just, lawful, right.—Also, complete, perfect, regular.

iuvencus, -ī [†**iuven**- (earlier form of **iuveni**-) + **cus**], M., a bullock, a steer.

iuvenis, -e [?], adj., young.—As noun, a young man (not over 45), a youth: **iuniores**, the younger soldiers.

iuventūs, -ūtis [**iuven**- (orig. st. of **iuvenis**) + **tus**], F., youth.—Concretely in a collective sense, the youth, the young men.

iuvō, **iuvāre**, **iūvi**, **iūtus** [?], I. v. a., help, aid, assist.—Also, please, delight.

iūxtā [instr. (?) of **†iuxtus**, superl. of **†iugis** (**IUG** + **is**)], adv. and prep. with acc., next, near, near by.

K

Kal., for **Kalendae** and its cases.

Kalendae (**Cal**-), -ārum [F. plur. of **†calendus**, pass. p. of verb akin to **calo**, **call**], F. plur., the *Calends* (the

first day of the Roman month, when, as it would seem, the times of the moon were announced to the assembled people).

L

L., for **Lucius**.

L (**ψ**) [a corrupt form of the Greek letter **ψ** (prop. **χ**), originally used for 50, and retained in the later notation, prop. **ψ**], a sign for **quīnquāgīntā**, fifty.

Labeō, -ōnis [?], M., a Roman family name. See **Fabius**.

Laberius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. See **Durus**.

Labiēnus, -ī [?, perh. **labia** (*lips*) + **enus**], M., a Roman family name.

— Esp., *Titus Atius Labienus*, a violent partisan of Cæsar, a legatus under him in Gaul, but afterwards on the side of Pompey in the Civil War.

labor, -ōris [RABH (*seize*) + or (for -os)], M., *toil, exertion* (in its disagreeable aspect), *labor* (as painful), *trouble, hardship*.

lābor, lābī, lāpsus [unc., cf. *lābō*, *totter*], 3. v. dep., *slip, slide, fall*: *annus* (*glide by*). — Fig., *commit an imprudence, go wrong, be disappointed*.

labōriōsē [old case-form of *laboriosus*, *toilsome*], adv., *laboriously, industriously*.

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [labor-], 1. v. n., *toil, exert one's self, struggle*. — Also, *suffer labor, be hard pressed, labor, suffer, be afflicted*.

labrum, -ī [LAB (in *lambo*, *lick*, cf. *labia*, *lips*) + rum], N., *the lip*. — Less exactly, *the edge* (of a horn, of a ditch), *the rim* (of a cup).

lābrum, -ī [akin to *lavo*, *wash*?], N., *a basin, a tub*.

lāc, lactis [?], N., *milk*.

Lacedaemonius, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., *Lacedæmonian, Spartan*. — Plur. as noun, *the Lacedæmonians, the Spartans*.

lacerātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *lacero*.

lacerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [lacerō-, *torn*], 1. v. a., *tear to pieces, tear*. — Fig., *slander, abuse*.

lacessō, -cessere, -cessivī, -cessitus [st. akin to *lacio* (*entice*) + unc. term.], 3. v. n., *irritate, provoke*. — Esp., *attack, harass, assail, skirmish with*.

lacrima, -ae [†dakru- + ma], F., *a tear*.

laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus [unc.], 3. v. a., *wound, injure*. — Esp. fig., *break* (one's word, etc.), *violate*.

laesus, -a, -um, p. p. of *laedo*.

laetitia, -ae [laetō- + tia], F., *joy, gladness, pleasure* (cf. *laetus*), *exultation*.

laetus, -a, -um [unc. root (perh. akin to *glad*) + tus], adj., *joyful* (of the inner feeling), *rejoicing, glad*. — Also, *pleasing, agreeable*.

lamentum, -ī [unc. root + mentum], N., *a shriek, a lament, a lamentation*.

lāna, -ae [?], F., *wool*: *lanam facere*, *spin wool*.

lancea, -ae [prob. Gr.], F., *a spear, a lance*.

languidē [old case-form of *languidus*], adv., *with little energy, feebly*.

languidus, -a, -um [cf. *languedo*, *be weary*], adj., *spiritless, listless, languid*.

languor, -ōris [LANG (in *languedo*, *be weary*) + or], M., *want of spirit, listlessness, weariness*.

lāniger, -era, -erum [lana- (weakened) -ger (cf. *gero*)], adj., *wool-bearing, fleecy*. — As noun, *a fleecy sheep, woolly-back*.

lapis, -idis [?], M., *a stone* (to throw, etc.). — Collectively, *stone, stones*.

lāpsus, -a, -um, p. p. of *labor*.

laqueus, -ī [LAC (in *lacio*, *entice*) + eus], M., *a slip-noose, a snare, a trap*.

lārdum (-idum), -ī [akin to Gr.], N., *bacon, lard*.

largior, -īrī, -ītus [largō-, abundant], 4. v. dep., give lavishly, bestow upon, supply with.

lassitūdō, -inis [lassō- (weary) + tudo, cf. fortitudo], F., weariness, exhaustion.

lātē [old case-form of latus], adv., widely: latius, too far; longe lateque, far and wide.

latebra, -ae [latē- (in lateo) + bra], F., a hiding-place.

lateō, latēre, latuī, no p. p. [?], 2. v. n., lie concealed, lurk, be concealed, pass unnoticed.

Latīnus, -a, -um [Latiō- (or simpler st.) + inus], adj., of Latium, Latin.

lātītūdō, -inis [latō- + tudo], F., breadth, width.

Latōna, -ae [Gr.], F., the mother of Apollo and Diana.

latrō, -ōnis [prob. st. borrowed fr. Greek + o], M., a mercenary (?), a robber, a brigand.

latrōcinium, -ī [latron- + cinium, cf. ratiocinor], N., freebooting, robbery, highway robbery.

lātus, -a, -um [prob. for †platus, cf. Eng. "flat"], adj., broad, wide, extensive.

latus, lateris [prob. latō-], N., the side (of the body). — Also, generally, a side, a flank, an end (of a hill).

lātus, -a, -um [for tlatus, TLA (cf. tollo, tuli) + tus], p. p. of fero.

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [laud-], 1. v. a., praise, commend, approve.

laurea, -ae [laurō- + ea (F. of eus)], F., laurel, a laurel crown.

laus, laudis [?], F., praise, credit, glory, merit (thing deserving praise).

lautē [old case-form of lautus, splendid], adv., splendidly, sumptuously.

lavō, -āre (-ere), -āvī (lāvī), -ātus (lautus, lōtus) [?], 1. v. a., wash, lave. — In pass. used reflex., bathe.

laxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [laxō-, loose], 1. v. a., loosen, open out, extend.

lectica, -ae [lectō- + ica, F. of icus], F., a litter, a sedan.

lēctitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [lectō-, cf. lego, read], 1. v. a. freq., read often, read.

lectus, -ī [?], M., a bed, a couch.

lēgātīō, -ōnis [legā- (despatch) + tio], F., (a sending or commission), an embassy, an embassy (message of ambassadors).

lēgātus, -ī [prop. p. p. of lēgo, commission, despatch], M., an ambassador, envoy. — Also, a lieutenant, a legatus. To a Roman commander were assigned (legare) one or more subordinate officers capable of taking command in his absence or engaging in independent operations under his general direction. These were the legati, and with the quæstor composed a kind of staff.

legiō, -ōnis [LEG (select) + io], F., (a levy). Hence, a legion (originally the whole levy, later the unit of army organization, numbering from 3000 to 6000 men, divided into ten cohorts).

legiōnārius, -a, -um [legion- + arius], adj., of a legion, of the line, legionary (the Roman heavy infantry of the legion as opposed to all kinds of auxiliary troops).

legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus [LEG,

gather], 3. v. a., *collect, choose, pick out*. Hence, *read*.

Lemovīces, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in modern Limousin. The name is preserved in Limoges.

lēnis, -e [?], adj., *gentle, smooth, soft, calm*.

lēniter [leni- + ter], adv., *gently*: **lenius**, *with less vigor*.

lentus, -a, -um [perh. akin to **lenis**], adj., *sluggish, slow*.

leō, -ōnis [poss. Gr.], M., *a lion*.

Leōnidās, -ae [Gr.], M., a Spartan king, commander of the famous three hundred at Thermopylæ, B.C. 480.

lepidē [old case-form of **lepidus**], adv., *wittily, ingeniously*.

lepidus, -a, -um [†lepō- (LAP, *shine*) + dus], adj., *pleasant, agreeable, charming, witty*.

Lepontiī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Alps on the Italian side of St. Gothard.

lepus, -oris [?], M., *a hare*.

lētum, -ī [?], N., *death*.

levis, -e [for †legavis, LAGH (*jump*) + us (with inserted i, cf. **brevis**), Eng. "light"], adj., *light, slight, unimportant, of no weight*. — Also, *quick, nimble*. — Also (cf. **gravis**), *inconstant, fickle, wanting in character*.

levitās, -ātis [levi- + tas], F., *lightness*. — Also (cf. **levis**), *inconstancy, fickleness*.

levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [levi- (as if **levō**)], 1. v. a., *lighten*. Hence, *free from a burden, relieve*.

lēx, **lēgis** [LEG (in **lego**, *select*)], F., *a statute, a law*.

Lexovii, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in modern Normandy.

***Leydis**, -is [?], F., *Leyden*.

libēns, see **libet**.

libenter [libent- + ter], adv., *willingly, with pleasure, gladly*. — With a verb, *be glad to*, etc.

liber, -brī [?], M., *a book*.

liber, -era, -erum [†libō- (whence **libet**, *it pleases*) + rus (reduced)], adj., *free* (of persons and things), *unrestricted, undisturbed, unencumbered*.

liberāliter [liberali- + ter], adv., *generously, kindly* (**respondit**): **oratione prosecutus** (*addressing in generous language*).

liberātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **libero**.

liberē [old case-form of **liber**], adv., *freely, boldly, without restraint*: **liberius**, *with too little restraint, rather freely*.

liberī, -ōrum [prob. M. plur. of **liber**, *the free members of the household*], M. plur., *children*.

liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [liberō-], 1. v. a., *free, set free, relieve* (from some bond); **liberare se**, *secure one's freedom*.

libertās, -ātis [liberō- (reduced) + tas], F., *liberty, freedom, independence*.

libertus, -ī [liberō- (reduced) + tus], M., *a freedman*.

libet, -ēre, -uit (-itum est) [?, cf. **liber**], 2. v. impers., *it pleases, one desires*. — **libēns**, -entis, p. as adj., *willing, glad*.

librilis, -e [libra- (*pound*) + ilis], adj., *of a pound weight: fundae* (*heavy missiles from slings, one-pounders*).

Libya, -ae [Gr.], F., a region of Africa.

licentia, -ae [licent- (cf. licet) + ia], F., *lawlessness, want of discipline, liberty, license*.

licet, -ēre, -uit (-itum est) [†licō-, cf. **delicus**, **reliquus**], 2. v. n., *be allowed, be permitted, one may (might)*; **id sibi**, etc. (*that they be allowed*); **licet conspicari**, *one can see*; **petere ut liceat**, *to ask permission*.

lictor, -ōris [?], M., a *lictor* (the attendant of the higher Roman magistrates).

Liger, -eris [Celtic], M., a river of Gaul between the Hædui and the Bituriges, the *Loire*.

lignum, -ī [?], N., a *piece of wood, a log*.

ligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [?], 1. v. a., *bind, tie, fasten*.

Ligures, -um [?], M. plur., the *Liburians*, a people of Cisalpine Gaul.

lilium, -ī [?], N., a *lily*. The name is applied jocosely to a peculiar kind of *chevaux-de-frise*.

līmen, -inis [unc. root (in **limus**, *aslant*, and **limes**, *boundary*) + men], N., a *threshold*. — Less exactly, *an entrance, a portal*.

līnea, -ae [linō- (*flax*) + ea (F. of **eus**)], F., a *line*.

Lingones, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Vosges Mountains.

lingua, -ae [?], F., *tongue*. Hence, *language*.

lingula, -ae [lingua- + la (F. of **lus**)], F., a *little tongue, a tongue of land*.

linquō, -ere, liqui, lictus [LIQU], 3. v. a., *leave, forsake*.

linteum, -ī [linō- (through **st** in -to) + eus], N., a *curtain*.

līnum, -ī [prob. borr. fr. Gr.], N., *flax*.

liquor, -ōris [liquō- (reduced, cf. **liquidus**) as root + or], M., a *fluid, a liquid, water*.

lis, **litis** [for †stlis, cf. **locus** and Eng. "strife"], F., a *suit at law*. — Also, *the amount in dispute, damages*.

littera (līt-) [?, akin to **lino**, *smear*], F., a *letter* (of the alphabet). — Plur., *letters, writing, an alphabet, a letter* (an epistle), *records*. — Also, *letters, literature*.

lītus, -oris [?], N., a *shore, a beach*.

locō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [locō-], 1. v. a., *place, put, lay*. — Hence, *let* (for hire), *contract for*.

loculī, -ōrum [locō- + ulus, dim. end.], M. plur., (*a receptacle with compartments*), a *coffer, drawers, a pocket*.

locuplēs, -ētis [?, locō- + ples (ple + tus, reduced)], adj., (*with full coffers?*), *rich, wealthy, well-stored*.

locuplētō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [locuplet-], 1. v. a., *enrich*.

locus, -ī [for †stlocus (STLA, *place*) + cus], M. (sing.), N. (commonly in plur.), a *place, a spot, a position, a region* (esp. in plur.), a *point, the ground* (in military language), *space, extent* (of space), *room*. — Fig., *position, rank, a point, place* (light, position, character), a *situation, an opportunity, a chance*: **obsidum loco**, *as hostages*; **in loco**, *instead*; **in loco amici**, *as a friend*.

locūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of loquor.

lolium, -ī [?], N., *darnel*, a weed.

longē [old case-form of longus], adv., *far, too far, absent, far away, far off, distant*: non longius mille (*not more than*); longius aberat, *was rather far away*; errat longe, *is much mistaken*.

longinquus, -a, -um [case-form of longus (perh. loc.) + cus], adj., *long, distant*.

longitūdō, -inis [longō- + tudo], F., *length*.

longurius, -ī [longō- + urius], M., *a long pole*.

longus, -a, -um [?], adj., *long* (of space and time); navis longa, *a ship of war, a war galley* (opposed to the broader naves onerariae); longum est, *it would take too long* (with infin.).

Longus, -ī [?], M., a Roman family name.—Esp., *Tiberius (Sempronius) Longus*, a consul defeated by Hannibal at the Trebia.

loquor, loquī, locūtus [?], 3. v. dep., *speak, talk, converse*.

lōrica, -ae [lōrō- (*strap*) + ica], F., *a coat of mail* (orig. of leather thongs).—Also, *a breastwork, a rampart* (on a wall).

lōrum, -ī [?], N., *a thong, a strap*.

lōtus, -ī [Gr.], F., *water-lily, lotus*.

Lūcānī, -ōrum [?], M. plur., *the Lucanians*, a people of lower Italy.

lūcidē [old case-form of lucidus, *bright*], adv., *clearly*.

Lūcius, -ī [luc- (in lux) + ius], M., a Roman prænomen.

lucrum, -ī [?], N., *gain, wealth*.

Lucterius, -ī [?, perh. Celtic], M.,

a Gallic name, perh. borrowed from the Romans.—Esp., *Lucterius Caudurcus*, a commander under Vercingetorix.

lūctor, -ārī, -ātus [?], 1. v. dep., *struggle, strive, contend*.

lūctus, -ūs [LUG (cf. lugeo) + tus], M., *mourning, lamentation, grief, distress*.

Lūcullus, -ī [?], M., a Roman family name.—Esp., *Lucius Lucullus*, consul in B.C. 151.

lūcus, -ī [prob. LUC (*shine*) + us (orig. opp. to thick, dark woods)], M., *a grove*.

lūdibrium, -ī [ludibri- (cf. ludus and ludicer) + ium], N., *sport*.—Transf., *a laughing-stock, a butt*.

lūdicrum, -ī [N. of ludicer, *sportive*], N., *sport, jest*.—Also, *a show, a public game*.

lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsus [LUD], 3. v. n., *play, sport*.

lūdus, -ī [LUD + us], M., *a sport, a game*: ludos facere, *play tricks upon, mystify*.

lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, lūctus [?], 2. v. n., *mourn, lament*.

Lugotorīx, -īgis [Celtic], M., a British prince.

lūmen, -inis [LUC (*shine*) + men], N., *a light* (also fig.).—Also, *a lamp*.

lūna, -ae [LUC (in luceo, *shine*) + na], F., *the moon*. Also personified, *Luna, the Moon*.

lupus, -ī [?], *a wolf*.

lūx, lūcis [LUC, *shine*, as st.], F., *light, daylight*: prima luce, *orta luce*, or luce, *at daybreak*.

lūxuria, -ae [†luxurō- (*luxu-*

(*excess*) + rus) + ia], F., *luxury, riotous living*.

Lȳdī, -ōrum [Gr.], M. plur., *the Lydians*, a people of Lydia in Asia Minor.

lymp̄ha, -ae [?], F., *clear water, water*.

LX, for sexagintā, *sixty*.

LXX, for septuagintā, *seventy*.

LXXX, for octogintā, *eighty*.

M

M., for **Marcus**.

M [corruption of CIO (orig. Φ) through influence of mille], 1000.

Maccus, -ī [?], M., a family name.

Macedones, -um [Gr.], M. plur., *the Macedonians*, people of northern Greece.

Macedonia, -ae [Gr.], F., a country of northern Greece.

māceria, -ae [†mācerō- (reduced) (cf. macerō, *soften*) + ia], F., (*mortur* ?), a wall.

māchinātiō, -ōnis [machinā- + tio], F., *contrivance* (mechanical). — Concretely, *a contrivance, an engine, a derrick*.

māciēs, -ēī [MAC (cf. macer, *lean*) + ies], F., *leanness, emaciation*.

maeror, -ōris [maes- (cf. maestus) + or], M., *grief, sorrow, sadness*.

maestus, -a, -um [p. p. of mae-reo, MIS (in miser, *wretched*) + tus], adj., *sad, sorrowful, dejected*.

magicus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., *of magic, magic* (adj.).

magis [MAG (in magnus) + ius (N. compar.)], adv., *more, rather, more and more*: eo magis, *so much the more, all the more*. See also maxime.

magister, -trī [magis (for magius) + ter (for terus)], M., *a master, a teacher, a commander*.

magistrātus, -ūs [magistrā- (as if st. of †magistro, cf. magister) + tus], M., *an office, a magistracy* (office of a magistrate). — Concretely, *a magistrate* (cf. “the powers that be”).

māgnificē [old case-form of magnificus], adv., *splendidly, grandly*.

māgnificentia, -ae [†magnificent- (as if p. stem) + ia], F., *splendor, magnificence*.

māgnificus, -a, -um [magnō-ficus (FAC (in facio) + us)], adj., *splendid, grand, magnificent*.

māgnitūdō, -inis [magnō- + tudo], F., *greatness, great size, size, extent, stature, force* (venti), *severity* (supplici): corporum (*size, stature*).

māgnopere, see opus.

māgnus, -a, -um [MAG (increase) + nus, cf. magis], adj., *great* (in any sense, of size, quantity, or degree), *large, extensive, important, high* (aestus), *loud* (vox): magni habere, *to value highly, make much account of*; magni interest, *it is of great importance*. — māior, compar. in usual sense. — Also, māior (with or without natu), *elder, older*. — In plur. as noun, *elders, ancestors*. — **māximus** [mag- + timus], superl., *largest, very large, greatest, very great*, etc.: maximis itineribus, *by*

forced marches. See also **Maximus**.

Māgō, -ōnis [?], M., a brother of Hannibal.

māiestās, -ātis [maios- (orig. st. of maior) + tas], F., (*superiority*), *majesty, dignity*.

māior, see **magnus**.

malacia, -ae [borr. fr. Greek], F., (*soft weather*), *a calm*.

male [old case-form of **malus**], adv., *badly, ill, unsuccessfully, barely, scarcely*: **male** sit, *ill betide*. — **peius** [see **malus**], compar. — **pessime**, superl.

maledicō, -dicere, -dīxī, -dictus [**male**- (*ill*), **dicō** (*say*)], 3. v. a., *revile, abuse*.

maleficium, -ī [**maleficō**- (*mischievous*) + **ium**], N., *harm, mischief*.

mālō, **mälle**, **māluī**, no p. p. [**mage**- (for **magis**) -**volo**], irr. v. a. and n., *wish more, wish rather, prefer, prefer rather*.

mālum, -ī [Gr.], N.; *an apple*.

malus, -a, -um [?], adj., *bad* (in all senses), *ill, wicked*. — **peior** [?], compar. — **pessimus**, superl. — Neut. as noun, *an evil, a mischief, a misfortune, a punishment*.

mālus, -ī [Gr.], M., (cf. the meaning *apple tree*), *mast, beam* (upright).

Mandana (ē), -ae [Gr.], F., mother of Cyrus the Great.

mandātum, -ī [N. p. p. of **mando**], N., *a trust* (given to one), *instructions* (given), *a message* (given to some one to deliver).

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [?, †**mandō**- (akin to **manu-do**)], 1. v. a., *put*

into one's hands, entrust, instruct (give instructions to), *order, command, enjoin, commit*: **se fugae** (*take to*); **quaedam mandare**, *give certain instructions*.

Mandubiī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe north of the Hædui.

Mandubracius, -ī [Celtic], M., a Briton, prince of the Trinobantes.

māne [old case-form of †**manis** (?), **ma** + **nis**, cf. **Matuta**, goddess of dawn], adv., *in the morning*.

maneō, **manēre**, **mānsī**, **mānsūrus**, 2. v. n., *stay, remain, stay at home* (absolutely, opp. to **proficiscor**).

mānēs, -ium [cf. **immanis**], M. plur., *departed spirits, a ghost, a shade*.

manipulus, -ī [**manu**-†**pulus** (PLE + **us**)], M., (*a handful*, esp. of hay, used as an ensign), *a manipule* (two centuries, a third of a cohort).

Mānlius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp.: 1. **Lucius Manlius**, as proconsul, beaten by the Aquitani in B.C. 78. — 2. **Cnæus Manlius Volso**, a Roman consul in Hannibal's time.

mānsuēfaciō, -**facere**, -**fēcī**, -**factus** [†**mansuē**- (cf. **mansuesco**, *grow tame*, and **calefacio**) -**facio**], 3. v. a., *tame*. — Pass., **mānsuēfiō**, *be tamed*.

mānsuētūdō, -inis [†**mansue**- (cf. **mansuefacio**) + **tudo**], F., *tameness, gentle disposition, kindness*.

manubiae, -arum [akin to **manus**], F. plur., *booty, prize money, spoils*.

manus, -ūs [?], F., *the hand*: in **manibus nostris**, *just at hand, within reach*; **manu defendere** (*by arms*). — Also (cf. **manipulus**), *a company*,

a band, a troop. — Also, *handwriting, hand*.

Mārcellus, -ī [Marculo- (Marco- (*hammer*) + *lus*) + *lus*, second dim. of **Marcus**], M., a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. *Marcus Claudius Marcellus*, a famous Roman general, five times consul, conqueror of Syracuse in B.C. 212. — 2. *M. Claudius Marcellus*, a Roman consul in B.C. 183.

Mārcus, -ī [*the hammer, akin to marceo, be soft, and morior, die*], M., a Roman prænomen.

mare, -is [?], N., *the sea*: **mare oceanum**, *the ocean*: **nostrum** (i.e. the Mediterranean).

margaritum, -ī (-a, -ae) [Gr.], N. (F.), a *pearl*.

maritimus (-umus), -a, -um [mari- + *timus*, cf. *finitimus*], adj., *of the sea, sea-, maritime, naval, on the sea*: **aestus** (*in the sea*); **ora** (*the seashore*).

marītus, -ī [st. akin to *mas* (*male*) + *tus*], M., a *husband*.

Marius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Caius Marius*, the opponent of Sulla and the champion of the popular against the aristocratic party. He conquered the Cimbri and Teutones (B.C. 101) and freed Rome from the fear of a Northern invasion.

marmor, -oris [?], N., *marble*.

Mārs, **Mārtis** [?, perh. MAR (in *morior, die*) + *tis, the slayer*, but more probably of wolves than of men in battle], M., *Mars*, orig. prob. a god of husbandry defending the sheep, but afterwards identified with Gr. *Ἄρης* and worshipped as the

god of war. Cæsar again identifies him with the Celtic *Hesus*. For phrases, see *aequus* and *dubius*.

Mārtius, -a, -um [Mart- + *ius*], adj., *of Mars*. — Esp. (sc. *mensis*), *of March*.

mās, **maris** [?], adj., *male*. — As noun, a *male*.

Massagetæ, -ārum [Gr.], M. plur., a people of Scythia.

māter, -tris [?, prob. MA (*create*) + *ter*], F., a *mother, a matron*.

māter familiās (old gen. of *familia*), F., a *matron*.

māteria, -ae (-es, -ēī) [?, prob. *mater* + *ia* (F. of -*ius*)], F., *wood* (cut, for material), *timber* (cf. *liignum, wood for fuel*).

māterior, -ārī, -ātus [*materia*], I. v. dep., *get timber, bring wood*.

Matiscō, -ōnis [Celtic], F., a city of the Hædui, now Macon.

mātrimōnium, -ī [*mater* (as if *matri*) + *monium*], N., (*motherhood*), *marriage, matrimony*.

Matrona, -ae [Celtic], M., *the Marne*, a river of Gaul, joining the Seine near Paris.

mātrōnālis, -e [*matrona* + *alis*], adj., *of a matron, a matron's*.

mātūrē [old case-form of *maturus*], adv., *early, speedily*.

mātūrēscō, -tūrēscere, -tūruī, no p. p. [*maturē* (cf. *maturo*) + *sco*], 3. v. n., *get ripe, ripen*.

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*maturō*], I. v. a. and n., *hasten, make haste*.

mātūrus, -a, -um [*matu-* (MA (in *mane*) + *tus*) + *rus*], adj., *early*.

māximē [old case-form of *maximus*], adv., *in the greatest degree*,

most, very, in the highest degree, especially, very much: maxime confidebat, had the greatest confidence.

māximus, -a, -um, see *magnus*.

Māximus [superl. of *magnus*], M., a Roman family name.

mē, see *ego*.

mēd, old form for *me*.

medicāmentum, -ī [medicā- (*heal*) + mentum], N., a *drug*.

medicus, -ī [†medō- (cf. *medeor*, *heal*) + cus], M., (a *healer*), a *physician*, a *doctor*.

mediōcris, -cre [mediō- + cris], adj., *middling, moderate: spatium, summam* (a *little, no great*).

Mediomatrici, -ōrum (-um) [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe between the Meuse and the Rhine, about Metz.

mediterrāneus, -a, -um [mediō-terra (*land*) + aneus], adj., *inland*.

meditor, -ārī, -ātus [†meditō-, as if p. p. of *medeor*, *heal*], I. v. dep., *practise*. — Also, *plan, devise*.

medius, -a, -um [MED (cf. Eng. "mid") + ius], adj., *middle, the middle of* (as noun in Eng.), *mid-: in colle medio* (*half way up*): *simiam* (*about the waist*).

Mēdus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., *Median, of Media*, a country of Asia, south of the Caspian. — As noun, a *Mede, a Median*.

Megara, -ae [Gr.], F., a city of Greece near Athens.

mel, mellis [Gr.], N., *honey*.

Meldī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul.

melior, compar. of *bonus*.

mellitus, -a, -um [melli- (as if verb-st.) + tus], adj., *honey-sweet*. — Fig., *darling*.

membrum, -ī [prob. formed with suffix -rum (N. of -rus)], N., a *limb, a part of the body*.

meminī, -isse [perf. of MAN, in mens, etc.], def. v. a., *remember*.

Memmius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Caius Memmius*, an opponent of Cæsar.

memor, -oris [prob. SMAR (*think*), redupl. as st.], adj., *remembering, mindful*.

memorābilis, -e [memorā- (cf. *memoro*, *mention*) + bilis], adj., *worth telling, remarkable*.

memoria, -ae [memor- + ia], F., (*mindfulness*), *memory, recollection, power of memory*. — Also, *time, period of recollection: duplex memoria, two accounts; Romanorum* (*history*); *memoria tenere, remember; memoriam prodere, hand down the memory* (of something just mentioned); *memoriae proditum, handed down by tradition; memoriae mandare, relate, tell; supra hanc memoriam, beyond the memory of this generation; dignum memoria, worthy of remembrance; nostrā memoriā, within our memory, in our own time*.

Menapii, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe between the Meuse and the Scheldt.

mendāx, -ācis [st. akin to *menda*, a *fault* (cf. also *mentior, lie*) + ax], adj., *false, lying, deceitful*.

mēns, mentis [MAN + tis (reduced)], F., (a *thought?*), the *intellect* (as opposed to the moral powers,

cf. *animus*), *the mind, a state of mind, feeling, temper, disposition.*

mēnsa, -ae [F. of p. p. of *metior* (*measure*), sc. *tabula*, *a board*], F., *a table.*

mēnsis, -is [unc. form fr. MA, *measure* (cf. *moon, month*)], M., *a month.*

mēnsūra, -ae [mensu- (MA, *measure*, as if *man-* + *tu*) + *ra* (F. of *rus*)], F., *measure: ex aqua mensurae, measures by the water-clock; itinerum (accurate length).*

mentiō, -ōnis [as if MAN (in *memini*) + *tio* (prob. †*menti* + *o*)], F., *mention.*

mercātor, -ōris [†*mercā-* (cf. *mercor*, *trade*) + *tor*], M., *a trader* (who carries his own wares abroad).

mercātūra, -ae [†*mercātu-* + *ra* (F. of *rus*)], F., *traffic, trade, commercial enterprise.*

mercor, -ārī, -ātus [merc-, *goods*], I. v. dep., *buy, purchase.*

Mercurius, -ī [unc. form, akin to *merces*, etc.], M., *Mercury*, the Roman god of gain, traffic, etc. Afterwards, identified with the Greek *Hermes*, he was considered also the god of eloquence as well as of trade, the messenger of the gods, and the god of roads, etc. He is identified by *Cæsar* with a Celtic divinity, probably *Teutates*.

mereor, -ērī, -itus (also *mereo*, act.) [?], 2. v. dep., *win, deserve, gain.*—Also (from earning pay), *serve: mereri de, serve the interests of.*

mergō, -ere, *mersī*, *mersus* [MERG, *dip*], 3. v. a., *sink.*

merīdiānus, -a, -um [meridiē- + *anus*], adj., *of midday: tempus (noon).*

merīdiēs, -ēī [prob. medio- (reduced) -*dies*], M., *midday, noon.*—Also, *the south.*

meritum, -ī [N. p. p. of *mereo*], N., *desert, service.*—*meritō* (abl. as adv.), *deservedly: minus merito, without the fault; magis . . . quam merito eorum, more than by any act of theirs; merito eius a se fieri, that he deserved that he should do it, "served him right."*

meritus, -a, -um, p. p. of *mereo*, both act. and pass.

merus, -a, -um [?], adj., *pure, unmixed.*—Neut. as noun, sc. *vinum*, *unmixed wine, wine.*

merx, *mercis* [perh. root of *mereo* + *cus* (reduced)], F., *goods, merchandise.*

-*met* [?], intens. enclitic particle, used with prons., *self.*

Metellus, -ī [?], M., a Roman family name.—Esp., *Quintus Metellus (Numidicus)*, consul B.C. 109, superseded by *Marius* in the *Jugurthine War*.

mētior, *mētīrī*, *mēnsus* [†*meti-* (MA + *tis* ?)], 4. v. dep., *measure, measure out, deal out (rations), distribute.*

metō, *metere*, *messuī*, *messus* [?], 3. v. a., *cut, reap, gather.*

metuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [metu-], 3. v. a. and n., *fear.*

metus, -ūs [unc. root + *tus*], M., *fear.*—Often superfluous with other words of fearing: *metu territare, terrify.*—Esp.: *hoc metu, fear of this.*

meus, -a, -um [MA (in *me*) + *ius*], possess. adj. pron., *my, mine*.

mī, voc. of **meus**.

mihi, see **ego**.

mīles, -itis [unc. st., akin to **mille** as root + **tis** (reduced), not fr. **eo**], C., a *soldier, a common soldier* (as opposed to officers), a *legionary soldier* (heavy infantry, as opposed to other arms of the service). — Collectively, *the soldiers, the soldiery*.

Mīlētus, -ī [Gr.], F., a city of Asia Minor.

mīliēns(-ēs) [**mille**- + **iens**], num. adv., a *thousand times*.

mīlitāris, -e [**milit**- + **aris**], adj., of *the soldiers, military*: **signa** (*battle-standards*). See **res**.

mīlitia, -ae [**milit**- + **ia**], F., *military service, service* (in the army).

mīlitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**milit**-], I. v. n., *be a soldier, serve as a soldier, serve*.

mīlle, indecl. **mīlia**, -ium [akin to **miles**], adj. (apparently) in sing., noun in plur., a *thousand*: **mille passuum**, a *thousand paces, a mile*.

minātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **minor**.

Minerva, -ae [unc. form, akin to **memini**, etc.], F., *Minerva*, the goddess of intellectual activity, and so of skill and the arts, identified with the Greek *Athene*.

minimē [old case-form of **minimus**], adv., *in the smallest degree, least, very little, not at all*.

minimus, -a, -um [lost st. (whence **minuo**) + **mus** (cf. **infimus**)], used as superl. of **parvus**, adj., *smallest, least*. — Neut. as noun and adv., *the least, least, very little*.

ministrō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātus [**mini**- + **strō**, *servant*], I. v. a., *serve, supply*.

minitor, -ārī, -ātus [**minitō**, as if p. p. of **minor**], I. v. dep. freq., *threaten, menace*.

minor, -ārī, -ātus [**mina**-, st. of **minae**, *threats*], I. v. dep., *threaten*.

minor, -us [lost st. (cf. **minimus**) + **ior** (compar. end.)], adj. (used as compar. of **parvus**), *smaller, less, younger*: **dimidio minor**, *half as large*. — Neut. as noun and adv., *less, not much, not very, not so much, not so*: **quo minus**, *in order that . . . not*; **si minus**, *if not*; **minus valebat**, *was not so strong, was less, etc.*; **minus uti** (*not so well*); **minus magnus fluctus** (*less violent, smaller*).

Minturnae, -ārum [?], F. plur., a city in Campania.

Minucius (**Minut**-), -ī [perh. akin to **minus**], M., a Roman gentile name. See **Basilus** and **Rufus**.

minuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [†**minu**- (cf. **minus**)], 3. v. a. and n., *lessen, weaken, diminish*: **aestus** (*ebb*); **vim** (*break the force, etc.*); **controversias** (*settle*); **desidiam** (*cure, correct*).

mīrābilis, -e [**mīrā**- + **bilis**], adj., *wonderful, marvellous*.

mīrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **miror**.

mīrē [old case-form of **mirus**], adv., *wonderfully*.

mīrifīcē [old case-form of **mīrifīcus**], adv., *wonderfully*.

mīror, -ārī, -ātus [**mīrō**-], I. v. dep., *wonder, wonder at, admire, be surprised*. — **mīrātus**, -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, *surprised*.

mīrus, -a, -um [?, SMI (cf. *smile*)]

+ rus], adj., *surprising, marvelous, wonderful.*

miscēō, -ēre, -uī, mixtus (mistus) [†miscō-, cf. promiscus, in common], 2. v. a., *mix, mingle.*

misellus, -a, -um [miserō- (reduced) + ellus, dim. end.], adj., (*rather wretched*): *passer, poor little.*

miser, -era, -erum [MIS (cf. mae-reo) + rus], adj., *wretched, pitiable, miserable, poor.*

miserābilis, -e [miserā- + bilis], adj., *pitiable, miserable, wretched.*

miserābiliter [miserabili- + ter], adv., *pitifully, pitifully.*

miserē [old case-form of miser], adv., *wretchedly, miserably.*

misericordia, -ae [misericord- + ia], F., *mercy, pity, clemency.*

misericors, -cordis [miserō-cor (heart), decl. as adj.], adj., *merciful, compassionate.*

miseror, -ārī, -ātus [†miserō-], 1. v. dep., *bewail, complain of, pity: nil miserans, un pitying, pitiless.*

missiō, -ōnis [mit- (as root of mitto) + tio], F., *a release, a discharge from service.*

missus, -a, -um, p. p. of mitto.

Mithradātēs (-idātēs), -is [Gr.], M., a name of several kings of Pontus in Asia.—Esp., *Mithradates VI*, called the Great, with whom the Romans were at war B.C. 88–61.

Mithradāticus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., *of Mithradates, Mithradatic.*

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus [?], 3. v. a., *let go* (cf. omitto), *send, despatch, discharge, shoot.*

Mitylēnae, -ārum [Gr.], F. plur.,

Mitylene, a famous city on the island of Lesbos in the Aegean Sea.

mōbilis, -e [prob. movi- (as if st. of moveo, or a kindred st.) + bilis], adj., *easily moved, movable, mobile, fickle, hasty.*

mōbilitās, -ātis [mobili- + tas], F., *mobility, activity* (of troops), *inconstancy, fickleness.*

mōbiliter [mobili- + ter (prob. terem, reduced)], adv., *easily* (of motion), *readily.*

moderātiō, -ōnis [moderā- + tio], F., *self-control, moderation.*

moderor, -ārī, -ātus [†moder- (akin to modus, cf. genus, genero)], 1. v. dep., *control, regulate, restrain.*

modō [abl. of modus], adv., (*with measure?*), *only, merely, just, even, just now, lately: paulum modo* (*just, a very*); *non . . . modo*, *not only*; *modo . . . modo*, *now . . . now*; *aspectum modo*, *the mere sight.*

modus, -ī [MOD (cf. moderor) + us], M., *measure, quantity.* Hence, *manner, fashion, kind, style, method, way.*—Also, *a code: ad hunc modum*, *after this fashion*; *nullo modō*, *in no way*; *in modum*, *after the manner*; *quo modo*, *how, as.* See *eiusmodi.*

moenia, -ium [MI (*distribute?*) + nis (cf. communis) (orig. shares of work done by citizens?)], N. plur., *fortifications, walls of a city.*

mōlēs, -is [?, cf. molestus], F., *a mass.*—Esp., *a dike, a dam.*

molestē [old case-form of molestus], adv., *heavily, severely: moleste ferre*, *take hard, be vexed at.*

molestus, -a, -um [moles (*a burden*) + tus], adj., *troublesome, irksome.*

mollis, -e [?], adj., *soft, tender*. — Fig., *weak, feeble, not hard, not firm*: **litus** (*gently sloping*).

mollitiēs, -ēī (also, -a, -ae) [mollī + ties (cf. -tia)], F., *softness*. — Fig., *weakness*: **animi** (*feebleness of purpose, weakness of character*).

Molō, -ōnis [Gr.], M., see **Apolonius**.

Molossus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., *of the Molossi* (a people of Crete), *Molossian*.

mōmentum, -ī [movi (as st. of *moveo, move*) + mentum], N., *means of motion, cause of motion*. — Fig., *weight, importance, influence, vigorous action*: **habere** (*be of importance*). — Also, *moment, instant*.

Mona, -ae [Celtic], F., the Isle of Man, off the coast of Britain, but confounded with Anglesea.

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [causative of MAN (in **memini**) or denominative fr. a kindred st.], 2. v. a., *remind, warn, advise, urge*.

mōns, montis [MAN (in **mineo**, *project*) + tis (reduced)], M., *a mountain, a mount, a height*.

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [monstrō-], 1. v. a., *point out, show*.

mōnstrum, -ī [mon- (as root of **moneo**) + trum (the s of doubtful origin)], N., *a prodigy, a supernatural appearance, a monster*.

mora, -ae [prob. root of **memor** (*thoughtful*) + a], F., *delay, grounds of delay*: **in mora est**, *hinders*.

morātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **moror**.

morbus, -ī [MAR (in **morior**, *die*) + bus, cf. **turba**, **probus**], M., *sickness, illness, disease*.

mordeō, -ēre, momordī, morsus [?], 2. v. a., *bite*: **frenos** (*chamf*).

Morinī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Belgæ on the coast of modern Picardy.

morior, morī (morīrī), mortuus (moritūrus) [MAR (cf. **mors**)], 3. v. dep., *die*. — **mortuus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *dead*. — Plur. as noun, *the dead*.

moritūrus, -a, -um, fut. p. of **morior**.

moror, -ārī, -ātus [mora-], 1. v. dep., *retard, hinder, check* (the advance of), *delay, wait, stay, linger*. — With neg., *care for, desire, prize*. — Also, **nec moratus**, *without delay*.

mors, mortis [MAR (cf. **morior**) + tis (reduced)], F., *death*: **sibi mortem consciscere**, *commit suicide*.

morsus, -ūs [mord- (as root of **mordeo**) + tus], M., *a biting, a bite, a sting*. — Fig., *jaws, teeth*.

mortālis, -e [mort- (shorter st. of **mors**) + alis], adj., *mortal, human, of men*. — Masc. plur. as noun, *mortals*.

mortuus, -a, -um, p. p. of **morior**.

mōs, mōris [?], M., *a custom, a usage, a way* (of acting), *a manner*: **more fulminis**, *like a thunderbolt*. — Plur., *customs, habits, character* (as consisting of habits, cf. **ingenium** and **indoles**, of native qualities).

Mosa, -ae [Celtic], M., a river in Belgic Gaul, now the Meuse or (Flemish) Maas.

mōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **moveo**.

mōtus, -ūs [movi- (as st. of **moveo**) + tus], M., *a movement, a disturbance, an uprising*: **expeditior** (*movement of ships*); **celer atque instabilis** (*changes, of the passage of events*).

in maritime warfare); *siderum* (*revolutions*).

moveō, *movēre*, *mōvī*, *mōtus* [?], 2. v. a., *set in motion, move, stir, affect, cause, produce, occasion*. — Also, *remove, expel*: *castra* (*move from a place to another*; also, absolutely, *break camp*, cf. Eng. “move”).

mox [?], adv., *presently, soon, hereafter, later*.

mulier, -eris [?], F., *a woman*.

multiplex, -icis [*multō-plex* (cf. *duplex*)], adj., *many fold, manifold*.

multitūdō, -inis [*multō- + tudo*], F., *a great number, a multitude, great numbers, number* (generally). — Esp., *the multitude, the common people*.

multus, -a, -um [?, poss. root of *mille* (and *miles*) + *tus*], adj., *much, many*: *multo die*, *late in the day*; *ad multam noctem*, *till late at night*. — **multum**, neut. as noun and adv., *much*. — Also, plur., *multa*, *many things, much, a great deal*. — **multō**, abl. as adv., *much, long, far*. — Compar., **plūs**, *plūris* [akin to *pleo*], N. noun and adv.; plur. as adj., *more, much, very*: as noun, *several, many*. — As superl., **plūrimus**, -a, -um [st. of *plus* + *mus*], *most, very many, very much*: *quam plurimi*, *as many as possible*; *quam plurimos possunt*, *the most they can*; *plurimum posse*, *have most power, be very strong or influential*; *plurimum valere*, *have very great weight*.

mūlus, -ī [?, perh. akin to *molo*, *grind*], M., (*the mill-beast?*), *a mule*.

mundus, -ī [?], M. (orig. adj., *well ordered*), *the universe, the world*.

mūnīmentum, -ī [*munī- + mentum*], N., *a fortification*. — Plur., *a defence*.

mūniō, -īre, -īvī (-īi), -ītus [*munī-* (st. of *moenia*, orig. *shares*, cf. country highway laws)], 4. v. a. and n., *fortify*. — Less exactly, *protect, defend, furnish* (by way of protection), *make* (by embankment), *construct*: *castra*; *iter*; *viam*; so *munitissimum oppidum* (*very strongly fortified*).

mūnitiō, -ōnis [*munī- + tio*], F., *fortification* (abstractly). — Concretely, *a fortification, works, fortifications, defences*.

mūnītus, -a, -um, p. p. of *munio*.

mūnus, -eris [MIN (as if root of *moenia*) + *us*, orig. *share* (cf. *moenia*)], N., *a duty, a service, a task*: *munus militiae*, *military service*. — Also, (*a contribution*), *a tribute, a gift, a present, bounty*.

mūrālis, -e [*murō- + alis*], adj., *of a wall, wall*: *pila* (*heavy javelins for service in siege operations*).

mūrus, -ī [?], M., *a wall* (in itself considered, cf. *moenia, defences*).

mūs, *mūris* [MUS, *steal?*], M. and F., *a mouse*.

musca, -ae [cf. preceding word], F., *a fly*.

mūsculus, -ī [*mus + culus*, dim. end.], M., (*little mouse*), hence, from fancied resemblance, *a shed* (small and very strong, for covering besieging soldiers).

mūtātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *muto*.

mutilus, -a, -um [?], adj., *mutated*: *cornibus* (*with short broken horns, of the elk*).

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [perh. †mutō- (for movitō-); cf. *moveo* and *mutuus*], I. v. a., *change, turn*.

mūtuō [old case-form of *mutuus*], adv., *in exchange, in return*.

mūtuus, -a, -um [akin to *muto*], adj., *mutual, in return*.

N

nactus, -a, -um, p. p. of *nanciscor*.
nam [old case-form, cf. *tām, quam*], conj., *for*.

Namnetes, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe on the Loire around Nantes.

namque [nam-que], conj., *for* (a little more emphatic than *nam*, cf. *etenim*).

nancīscor, -cīscī, nactus (nactus) [NAC], 3. v. dep., *find, get, procure, light upon, get hold of, obtain, meet with, secure*.

nanctus, -a, -um, p. p. of *nanciscor*.

Nantuātes, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul of uncertain position, probably in Savoy.

Narbō, -ōnis [Celtic], M., a city of the Roman province of Gaul, early made a Roman colony, now Narbonne.

nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [for old *gnarigo*, †*gnarigō* (gnarō-, *knowing*, + *tagus*, cf. *prodigus*)], I. v. a., *tell, relate, recount*.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus [GNA, cf. *gigno*], 3. v. dep., *be born, arise, be produced, spring up, be raised* (of beasts), *be found* (*plumbum*). — **nātus**, -a, -um, p. p., *sprung, born*. — As noun, *a son*: *natus ab*, *a descendant of*.

nātālis, -e [natu- (reduced) + *alis*], adj., *of birth*: *dies natalis*, *a birthday*.

nātiō, -ōnis [GNA (cf. *nascor*) + *tio*, perh. through intermediate st.], F., (*a birth*), *a race, a nation, a tribe, a clan*.

nātīvus, -a, -um [natu- (reduced) + *ivus*], adj., *native, natural*.

nātūra, -ae [natu- + *ra* (F. of -rus)], F., (*birth*), *nature, character* (of living creature), *character, nature* (of inanimate things); *ea rerum natura*, *such the state of the case*; *secundum naturam fluminis*, *down stream*; *natura triquetra* (*in form*); *de rerum natura* (*physical science*); *eadem feminae marisque* (*form, organization*); *natura loci*, *nature of the ground*.

nātūrālis, -e [naturā- + *lis*], adj., *of nature, natural*.

nātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *nascor*.

nātus, -ūs [GNA (cf. *nascor*) + *tus*], M., *birth*: *maiores natu, elders*.

naufragium, -ī [naufragō- (*shipwrecked*) + *ium*], N., *a shipwreck*.

nauta, -ae [borr. from Gr.], M., *a sailor, a boatman, a mariner*.

nauticus, -a, -um [nauta- + *cus*], adj., *of a sailor* (or *sailors*), *naval*.

nāvālis, -e [navi- (reduced) + *alis*], adj., *of ships, naval*: *navalis pugna*, *sea-fight*.

nāvicula, -ae [navi- + *cula*], F., *a boat, a small vessel, a skiff*.

nāvigātiō, -ōnis [navigā- + tio], F., *a sailing, a voyage, travelling by sea, sailing, a trip* (by sea).

nāvigium, -ī [†navigō- (navi- + tagus) + ium], N., *a vessel* (general), "*a craft*," *a boat*.

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†navigō- (cf. **navigium**)], I. v. n., *sail*.

nāvis, -is [(s)NU, *float* (increased), with added i], F., *a ship, a vessel, a boat: oneraria* (*a transport*); *longa* (*a war galley*); *navi egredi*, *land*; *navem adpellere*, *put in*.

nāvita, -ae, same as **nauta**.

nāvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [(g)navō-, *busy*], I. v. a., *do one's best: operam* (*do one's best*).

nē [NA, unc. case-form], conj., *lest, that . . . not, not to* (do anything), *from* (doing anything), *so that . . . not, for fear that*. — After verbs of fearing, *that*. — Also adv., *ne . . . quidem, not . . . even, not . . . either*.

-ne (enclitic) [prob. same as **nē**, orig. = **nonne**], conj., *not?* (as a question, cf. **nonne**), *whether, did* (as question in Eng.), *do, etc.* See also **neque, neque**.

nec, see **neque**.

necessārius, -a, -um [†necessō- (reduced) + arius], adj., (*closely bound?*), *necessary: res* (*absolutely necessary, needful, indispensable*). — **necessariō**, abl. as adv., *of necessity, necessarily, unavoidably*.

necesse [?, **ne-cessō**, cf. **cedo**], indecl. adj., *necessary*. — With **est**, *one must, one cannot but, one must inevitably*.

necessitās, -ātis [†necessō- +

tas], F., *necessity, constraint, compulsion: temporis* (*exigency*); *suarum necessitatum causa* (*interests*).

necō, -āre, -āvī (-uī), -ātus (-tus), [nec (st. of **nex**, *death*)], I. v. a., *put to death, kill, murder* (in cold blood).

nefārius, -a, -um [nefas + -ius], adj., *wicked, infamous, abominable*.

neglegō (necl-), -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus [nec (= ne) -lego], 3. v. a., *not regard, disregard, neglect: iniurias* (*leave unavenged, leave unpunished*); *hac parte neglecta* (*leave unnoticed*); *metu mortis neglecto* (*careless of, etc.*).

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [?, poss. **ne-aio**], I. v. a. and n., *say no, say . . . not, refuse, deny*.

negōtiōr, -ārī, -ātus [negotiō-], I. v. dep., *do business* (on a large scale, as in money, etc.).

negōtium, -ī [nec-otium, *ease*], N., *business, occupation, an undertaking*. — Less definitely, *a matter, a charge, a thing*. — Also, *difficulty, trouble: dare negotium alicui, employ one, give in charge to*.

Nemetes, -um [Teutonic], M. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine.

nēmō, †nēminis [ne-homo, *man*], M. and F., *no one, nobody: non nemo, many a one*.

nemus, -oris [NEM (*assign*) + us], N., (*assigned pasture land*), *a wooded pasture*. — Less exactly, *a wood, a grove*.

nepōs, -ōtis [?], M., *a grandson*.

nēquam [?], adj., indecl., *worthless, good for nothing, vile*. — Superl., **nequissimus**.

nēquāquam [ne-quaquam, *anyway* (cf. *eā*, *quā*)], adv., *in no way, by no means*.

neque (nec) [ne-que], adv., *and not, and yet . . . not, nor*: neque . . . neque, *neither . . . nor*.

nequeō, -quīre, -quīvī, -quītus [ne-queo, *be able*], 4. v. n. def., *cannot, be unable*.

nēquī(d)quam (nēquic-) [ne . . . qui(d)quam, *anything*], adv., *to no purpose, in vain, not without reason*.

nēquissimus (-imus), -a, -um, see nequam.

Nervius, -a, -um [Celtic], adj., *Nervian*. — Masc. plur., *the Nervii*, a powerful tribe of Belgic Gaul.

nervus, -ī [prob. for *†nevrus*], M., *a sinew*. — Fig., in plur., *strength, vigor*.

nesciō, -scīre, -scīvī (-īī), -scītus [ne-scio], 4. v. a., *know not, know not how*: nescio quo modo, *in some way or other*.

neu, see neve.

neuter, -tra, -trum [ne-uter, *which* (of two)], adj. pron., *neither*. — Plur., *neither party, neither side*.

nēve (neu) [ne-ve], conj., *or not, and not, nor*.

nex, necis [?], F., *death, violent death, execution*.

nī, for nisi.

nīdus, -ī [?], M., *a nest*.

niger, -gra, -grum [?], adj., *black, dark*.

nihil, see nihilum.

nihildum [nihil-dum], N., indecl., *nothing as yet*.

nihilum (nihil), -ī [ne-hilum, *trifle, what?*], N. (also indecl.),

nothing: nihil reliqui, *nothing left*; nihil dubitare, *have no doubt*. — nihilō, abl. as adv., *none, no*. — nihil, acc. as adv., *not at all*: non nihil, *something, somewhat*.

nīl, same as nihil.

nimius, -a, -um [nimi- (?), st. of nimis, *too much*] + ius], adj., *too much, too great, excessive*. — Neut. as adv., *too, too much*. — nimiō, abl. as adv., *by far*.

Niobē (-a), -ēs (-ae) [Gr.], F., daughter of Tantalus and wife of Amphion. Her children were killed by Apollo and Diana, and she became a rock dripping with water.

nisi [ne-si], conj., (*not . . . if*), *unless, if not, except, except in case*: nisi cum, *until*; nihil nisi, *nothing but*.

niteō, -ēre, no perf., no p. p. [?], 2. v. n., *shine, glisten*.

Nitiobriges (-broges), -um [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Aquitania, on the Garonne.

nītor, nītī, nīsus (nīxus) [prob. genu, *knee*], 3. v. dep., (*strain with the knee against something*), *struggle, strive, exert one's self, rely upon*.

nix, nivis [?], F., *snow*.

nō, nāre, nāvī, no p. p. [akin to navis], 1. v. n., *swim*.

nōbilis, -e [as if (g)no (root of nosco, *know*) + bilis], adj., *famous, noble, well-born* (cf. "notable"). — Plur. as noun, *the nobles*.

nōbilitās, -ātis [nobili- + tas], F., *nobility, excellence, superiority*. — Concretely, *the nobility, the nobles*.

noceō, nocēre, -uī, no p. p. [akin to nex, *death*], 2. v. n., *do harm to*,

injure, harm, harass. — **nocēns**, -entis, p. as adj., *hurtful, harmful, guilty* (of some harm).

noctū [abl. of †**noctus** (noc- + tus)], as adv., *by night*.

nocturnus, -a, -um [noct- + **urnus**, cf. **diurnus**], adj., *of the night, nightly, nocturnal, in the night, by night: tempus* (night time).

nōdus, -ī [?], M., *a knot, a joint: nodi et articuli, protuberant joints*.

nōlō, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, no p. p. [**ne-volo**], irr. v. a. and n., *not wish, be unwilling, wish not, not like to have: noli* (nolite), *do not* (with infin.).

nōmen, -inis [(G)NO (as root of **nosco**, *know*) + **men**], N., *a name* (what one is known by), *name* (fame, prestige). — As a name represents an account, *an account: nomine dotis* (on account of, as); *suo nomine*, *on his own account*.

nōminātim [acc. of real or supposed †**nominatis** (nominā- + tis)], adv., *by name* (individually).

nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**nomin-**], I. v. a., *name, mention, call by name, call*.

nōn [**ne-oenum** (unum)], adv., *not*.

nōnāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *ninety*.

nōndum, *not yet*. See **dum**.

nōnne [**non-ne**], adv., *is not? does not? etc.*

nōnnūllus, *some*. See **nullus**.

nōnnumquam, *sometimes*. See **numquam**.

nōnus, -a, -um [†**novi-** (?) + **nus** (mus)], num. adj., *ninth*. — Esp., **nōnae**, F. plur. as noun, *the Nones* (the ninth day before the Ides,

falling either on the fifth or seventh of the month).

nos, see **ego**.

nōscō, -nōscere, **nōvī**, **nōtus** [(G)NA, *know*], 3. v. a., *learn, become acquainted with*. — In perf. tenses, *know*. — **nōtus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *known, familiar, well-known: notis vadis* (being acquainted with, etc.).

noster, -tra, -trum [prob. **nos** (nom. plur.) + **ter**], possess. adj. pron., *our, ours*. — In plur., *our men* (the Romans), *our forces*.

nota, -ae [GNO (*know*) + **ta**], F., *a mark, a brand*.

nōtitia, -ae [**notō-** + **tia**], F., *acquaintance with, knowledge*.

nōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **nosco**.

novem [unc. reduced case-form], indecl. num. adj., *nine*.

Noviodūnum, -ī [Celtic, *New town*], N.: 1. A town of the Bituriges, on the Loire. — 2. A town of the Hædui. — 3. A town of the Suessiones.

novitās, -ātis [**novō-** + **tas**], F., *novelty, strangeness, strange character*.

novus, -a, -um [?, cf. Eng. "new"], adj., *new, novel, fresh: res novae*, *a change of government, revolution*. — **novissimus**, -a, -um, superl., *latest, last: agmen* (the rear, the last to come into the fight).

nox, **noctis** [NOC (in **noceo**, *harm*) + **tis**], F., *night: multa nocte*, *late at night*.

noxia, -ae [NOC (in **noceo**, *harm*) + unc. term.], F., *harm, crime, guilt*.

nūbēs, -is [NUB (cf. **nubo**) + **es**], F., *a cloud*.

nūbilus, -a, -um [nubi- (cf. *nubes*) + *lus*], adj., *cloudy*. — Fig., *dark, gloomy*.

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptus [akin to *nubes*, *cloud*], 3. v. n., *veil one's self* (of a bride), *be married, marry* (of the woman).

nūdātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *nudo*.

nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nudō-], 1. v. a., *lay bare, expose, strip*. — Less exactly, *clear* (*murum defensoribus*).

nūdus, -a, -um [?, root (akin to *naked*) + *dus*], adj., *naked, bare, unprotected, exposed*.

nūllus, -a, -um [ne-ullus], adj., *not any, no, none, not one*. — As noun, *no one*. — **nōn nūllus**, *some*. — Plur. as noun, *some, some persons*.

num [pron. NA, cf. *tum*], adv., interr. particle, suggesting a neg. answer, *does, is, etc., it is not, is it?* and the like. — In indir. question, *whether*.

nūmen, -inis [NU (in *nuo*, *nod*) + *men*], N., (a *nod*), *will, power*. Hence, *divinity*.

numerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [numerō-], 1. v. a., *number, reckon, count, pay*.

numerus, -ī [†numō- (cf. *nummus*, *Numa*) + *rus*], M., *a number, number*: *totidem numero*, *the same number*; *impedimentorum* (*quantity*, i.e. number of pack-horses); *ad numerum*, *to the required number*; *aliquo numero*, *of some account*. — Also, *musical measure, time, tune, music, strains*.

Numidae, -ārum [?], M. plur., *the*

Numidians, a people of northern Africa, famous as archers.

Numidia, -ae [?], F., a country of northern Africa.

Numidicus, -a, -um [Numida- + *cus*], adj., *of Numidia, Numidian*.

nummus, -ī [akin to *numerus*], M., *a coin*: *pro nummo*, *for coin*.

numquam (nun-) [ne-umquam], adv., *never*. — Less exactly, *not*.

nunc [num-ce, cf. *hic*], adv., *now* (emph., as an instantaneous *now*, cf. *iam*, unemph. and continuous): *nunc . . . nunc*, *now . . . now*, *at one time . . . at another*.

nūntiātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *nuntio*.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nūntiō-], 1. v. a., *send news, report, make known, announce*: *nuntiatum est ei . . . ne* (*he was ordered not to, etc.*).

nūntius, -ī [†novent- (p. of †noveau, *be new*) + *ius*], M., (*newcomer*), *a messenger*. Hence, *news, a message*: *nuntium mittere* (*send word*).

nūper [for *novi-per*, cf. *parumper*], adv., *lately, recently, not long ago*.

nūptiae, -ārum [nupta- + *ius*], F. plur., *a wedding, a marriage*.

nūptus, -a, -um, p. p. of *nubo*.

nūsquam [ne-usquam], adv., *nowhere, in no case* (almost equal *never*).

nūto, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nutō-], 1. v. n., *nod, totter, waver*.

nūtrīx, -īcis [akin to *nutrio*, *nurse*], F., *a nurse*.

nūtus, -ūs [NU + *tus*], M., *a nod, a sign*: *ad nutum*, *at one's beck, at one's command*.

O

ō, interj., *oh! O!*

ob [unc. case-form], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with acc., (*near*), *against*. Hence, *on account of, for*: ob eam rem, *for this reason, on this account*.—In comp., *towards, to, against, over*.

obdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [ob-duco], 3. v. a., *lead towards, lead against*: fossam (*throw out, in a military sense, carry along*).—Also, *cover, overspread*.

obductus, -a, -um, p. p. of obduco.

obicīō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [ob-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw against, throw in the way of, present, throw up (against the enemy, etc.), set up, offer, expose*.—obiectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *lying opposite, lying in the way*.

obiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of obicio.

obitus, -ūs [ob-itus, cf. obo], M., *a going to*.—Esp., *a going to death* (cf. obire mortem), *destruction, annihilation, death*.

obiürgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob-iurgo, scold], 1. v. a., *blame, chide, rebuke*.

oblātus, -a, -um, p. p. of offero.

oblīnō, -linere, -lēvī, -litus [ob-lino, smear], 3. v. a., *smear, besmear, defile*.

oblīquē [old case-form of obliquus], adv., *obliquely, slanting*.

oblīquus, -a, -um [ob-†liquus, cf. li(c)mus, *aslant*], adj., *slanting, winding*.

oblitus, -a, -um, p. p. of oblino.

oblītus, -a, -um, p. p. of obliviscor.

oblīvīscor, -līvīscī, -lītus [ob-

†livi- (cf. liveo) + sco], 3. v. dep., (*grow dark against?*), *forget*.

obnoxius, -a, -um [ob-noxius], adj., (*guilty towards*). Hence, *liable to, exposed to*.

oboediō, -īre, -īvī (-īī), -ītus [ob-audio, *hear*], 4. v. n., *give ear to*. Hence, *obey, be subject*.

obruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus [ob-ruo, *fall*], 3. v. a., *bury, overwhelm, cover*.

obscurō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob-scurō-, *dark*], 1. v. a., *darken, obscure, hide*.

obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [manufactured from ob sacrum (*near or by some sacred object*)], 1. v. a., *entreat, adjure, implore*.

obsequentia, -ae [obsequent- (*yielding*) + ia], F., *compliance, deference*: nimia obsequentia, *too ready compliance*.

obsequor, -sequī, -secūtus [ob-sequor, *follow*], 3. v. dep., *yield, submit, comply*.

observātus, -a, -um, p. p. of observo.

observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob-servo], 1. v. a., (*be on the watch towards?*), *guard, maintain, keep, observe*: dies natalis (*keep, celebrate*).

obses, -idis [ob-†ses, cf. praeses and obsideo], C., (*a person under guard*), *a hostage*.

obsessus, -a, -um, p. p. of obsideo.

obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus [ob-sedeo], 2. v. a., (*sit down against*), *blockade, beset, guard, besiege*.

obsidiō, -ōnis [ob-sidiō- (*reduced*)

+ o], F., a *siege* (cf. *obsessio*), a *blockade*: *obsidione liberare* (from *besetting enemies*). — Also, *the art of siege*.

obsistō, -sistere, -stiti, no p. p. [ob-sisto], 3. v. n., *withstand, resist, oppose*.

obstinātē [old case-form of *obstinatus*, fr. *obstino*, *persist*], adv., *persistently*.

obstrūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of *obstruo*.

obstruō, -struere, -struxi, -strūctus [ob-struo, *pile*], 3. v. a., *block up, barricade, obstruct*.

obtegō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctus [ob-tego, *cover*], 3. v. a., *cover over, protect*.

obtemperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [ob-tempero], 1. v. n., (*conform to*), *comply with, submit to, yield to, attend*.

obtestātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *obtestor*.

obtestor, -ārī, -ātus [ob-testor, cf. *testis, witness*], 1. v. dep., *implore* (calling something to witness).

obtimeō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [ob-teneo], 2. v. a., *hold* (against something or somebody), *retain, maintain, occupy, possess*: *provinciam* (*have control of as praetor*).

obtingō, -tingere, -tigi, no p. p. [ob-tango, *touch*], 3. v. n., *fall* (to one's lot), *be fall, happen*.

obrectātiō, -ōnis [obrectā- (*disparage*) + tio], F., *detractio, disparagement*.

obrectātor, -ōris [obrectā- (*disparage*) + tor], M., a *detractor, a traducer*.

obtulī, perf. of *offero*.

obveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus [ob-venio], 4. v. n., *come to, come in one's way, fall to* (by lot).

obviam [ob vīam], adv., *in the way of, before, to meet* (any one): *obviam venire, come to meet*; *obviam ire, go to meet*; *obviam facti, having met*.

obvius, -a, -um [ob-vīa (decl. as adj.)], adj., *met in the way, met*: *obvia ferre, offer, present*.

obvolūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of *obvolvo*.

obvolvō, -volvere, -volvī, -volūtus [ob-volvo, *roll*], 3. v. a., *wrap up, cover*.

occāsiō, -ōnis [ob-†casio, cf. *occido*], F., *opportunity*.

occāsus, -ūs [ob-casus, cf. *occido*], M., a *falling, a setting* (of the sun): *solis* (*the sunset, the west*). — Also, a *downfall*.

occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus [ob-cado], 3. v. n., *fall, be slain, set*: *sol occidens, the west*.

occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsus [ob-caedo, *cut*], 3. v. a., *kill, slay, massacre*: *occīsī*, p. p. as noun plur., *the slain*.

occīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of *occidō*.

occultātiō, -ōnis [occulta- + tio], F., *concealment*.

occultē [old case-form of *occultus*], adv., *secretly*.

occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [occultō-], 1. v. a., *conceal, hide*.

occultus, -a, -um [p. p. of *occulto*], as adj., *concealed*: *in occulto, in secret*; *in occulto sese continere, keep themselves hidden*.

occumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, no

p. p. [ob-cumbo, *lie down*], 3. v. n., *fall, die, perish*.

occupātiō, -ōnis [occupā- + tio], F., *occupation* (engagement in business), *business affairs* (of business): occupationes tantularum rerum, *engagement in such trifling matters*.

occupātus, -a, -um, p. p. of occupo.

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†occupō- or occup- (ob and st. akin to capio)], I. v. a., *seize, take possession of, seize upon, occupy* (only in military sense): regna (*usurp*); occupati in (*engaged, employed*).

occurrō, -currere, -currī (-cucurrī?), -cursūrus [ob-curro], 3. v. n., *run to meet, meet, come upon, find, fall in with*. Hence in pregnant sense, *thwart, baffle, frustrate*: eo (*run to meet an enemy*); ad animum (*occur*).

Ōceanus, -ī [Gr.], M., *the ocean* (with or without mare).

ocellus, -ī [dim. of oculus], M., *a little eye, a pretty eye*.

ōcius [N. of ocior, *swifter*], adv., *more quickly, sooner*.

ocrea, -ae [?], F., *a greave, a legging*, orig. of metal. — Later, *a legging, a gaiter*.

ocreātus, -a, -um [ocrea- (as if verb-st.) + tus], adj., *furnished with leggings, gaitered*.

Octāviānus, -ī [octaviō- + anus], M., *Octavianus, Octavian*, a surname of Octavius Cæsar after his adoption by Julius Cæsar.

octāvus, -a, -um [octo + vus, poss. †octau + us], num. adj., *eighth*.

octingentī, -ae, -a [st. akin to octo + centum], num. adj., *eight hundred*.

octō [?], indecl. num. adj., *eignt*.

Octōber, -bris, -bre [octo- + ber, cf. saluber], adj., *of October*, the eighth month.

octōdecim [octo-decem], indecl. num. adj., *eighteen*.

octōgintā [octo + ?], indecl. num. adj., *eighty*.

octōnī, -ae, -a [octo + nus], adj., *eight at a time, eight each, eight*.

oculus, -ī [†ocō- (cf. AK, see) + lus], M., *the eye*: sub oculis, *in sight, before the eyes*; ex oculis, *from sight*.

ōdī, ōdisse [perf. of lost verb (with pres. sense), akin to odium], irr. v. a., *hate, detest*.

odiōsus, -a, -um [odiō- + osus], *hateful, odious, offensive*.

odium, -ī [VADH (*spurn*) + ium], N., *hatred*.

odor, -ōris [OD (*smell*) + or], M., *a perfume, perfumery, spices*.

odorātus, -a, -um [p. p. of odorō], adj., *sweet-smelling, fragrant*.

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus [ob-fendo], 3. v. a. and n., *dash against, hit, hurt*. Hence, *offend; be displeasing*.

offēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of offendo.

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus [ob-fero], irr. v. a., (*bring to*), *throw in one's way, offer*: se hostibus (*throw themselves upon*); se morti (*expose one's self to*); quos sibi oblato (*placed in his power*).

officina, -ae [for opificina (opific- + ina)], F., *a workshop, a shop*.

officiōsus, -a, -um [officiō- + osus], adj., *dutiful, obliging, polite*.

officium, -ī [ob-†facium, cf. beneficium], N., (*doing something to one*),

a service, performance of a duty, official duty, business. — Transf., *a duty, a favor, allegiance, an obligation.*

offirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob-firmo],

1. v. a., *keep fixed.*

oleum, -ī [akin to olea, olive], N., oil.

ōlim [case-form of ollus (ille)], adv., *once upon a time, once, formerly.*

ōlla, -ae [?], F., *a pot, a jar, a kettle.*

ōmen, -inis [?], N., *an omen, a portent.*

omittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [ob-mitto], 3. v. a., *let go by, disregard, neglect, say nothing of, not mention: consilium (leave untried, neglect).*

omnīnō [abl. of totmninus (omni + nus)], adv., *altogether, entirely, only, utterly, in all, at all, any way, only just, whatever (with negatives).*

omnis, -e [?], adj., *all, the whole of (as divisible or divided, cf. totus as indivisible or not divided).* — In sing., *every (without emphasis on the individuals, cf. quisque, each, emphatically); celerius omni opinione (of any one); omni tempore, on all occasions, always; omnes preces, every form of prayers; omnibus rebus, everything, everything else; per omnia, etc. (through nothing but, etc.).* — In plur. as a short expression for *all others; omnia, all things, everything.*

onerārius, -a, -um [oner- (as st. of onus) + arius], adj., *for burdens: naves (transports).*

onerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [oner- (as st. of onus)], 1. v. a., *load: celeritas onerandi (of ships), facility of loading.*

onus, -eris [unc. root + us], N., *a burden, a load, a freight, a cargo.* — Abstractly, *weight.* — Esp.: *tanta onera navium, ships of such weight.*

onustus, -a, -um [onus + tus], adj., *laden, loaded.*

opera, -ae [oper- (as st. of opus) + a (F. of us)], F., *work, pains, attention, aid, help, agency: operam navare, do one's best; operam dare, devote one's self, exert one's self, take pains, give attention, listen; opera uti (services, help, etc.); quorum opera, through whose means, agency; tuā operā, by your means, on your account.*

operiō, -perīre, -peruī, -pertus [ob-pario, procure], 4. v. a., *cover over, conceal.*

opīniō, -ōnis [opinō- (cf. nec-opinus) + o], F., *notion, expectation: celerius omni opinione, quicker than any one would suppose; opinio virtutis (reputation for, etc.); tanta opinio huius belli (impression); also, opinio timoris (display, cause for an impression); speciem atque opinionem pugnantium praeberere, make a show and give an impression of being combatants; nomen atque opinio (reputation); ut fert illorum opinio, as their notion is; opinione praecipere, to anticipate.*

oportet, -ēre, -uit, no p. p. [noun-st. from ob and st. akin to portus, cf. opportunus], 2. v. impers., *it behooves, it ought, it is best.*

oppidānus, -a, -um [oppidō- (reduced) + anus], adj., *of a (the) town*. — Plur. as noun, *the townspeople*.

oppidum, -ī [ob-†pedum (*a plain?*)], N., (the fortified place which, according to ancient usage, commanded the territories of a little state), *a stronghold, a town* (usually fortified).

oppignerō, -āre, no perf., no p. p. [ob-pignero, cf. pignus, *a pledge*], I. v. a., *pledge, pawn*.

oppleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus [ob-pleo, *fill*], 2. v. a., *fill up, fill*.

opplētus, -a, -um, p. p. of **oppleo**.

oppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [ob-pono], 3. v. a., *set against, oppose* (something to something else): *novem oppositis legionibus, with nine legions opposed to the enemy*. — **oppositus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *opposed, opposing, lying in the way, opposite*.

opportūnē [old case-form of **opportunus**], adv., *opportunately, seasonably*.

opportunitās, -ātis [opportunō- + tas], F., *timeliness, fitness* (of time or circumstance), *good luck* (in time or circumstance), *favorable chance, convenience* (of a means of fortification).

opportūnus, -a, -um [ob-portunus, cf. portus, *harbor*, and Portunus], adj., (*coming to harbor?*), *opportune, advantageous, lucky*.

oppositus, -a, -um, p. p. of **oppono**.

oppressus, -a, -um, p. p. of **opprimo**.

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus [ob-premo], 3. v. a., (*press against*), *overwhelm, crush, overpower, overtake* (*surprise*), *oppress*.

oppugnatio, -ōnis [oppugnā- + tio], F., *a siege* (of actual operations, cf. obsidio, *blockade*), *besieging, an attack* (in a formal manner against a defended position).

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob-pugno, *fight*], I. v. a., *attack* (formally, 'but without blockade), *lay siege to, carry on a siege, assail* (a defended position).

†ops (cf. Ops, the goddess), opis [?], F., *help, aid*. — Plur., *resources, means, strength, blessings, wealth*. — Also, *help* (from several sources).

optimās, -ātis [optimō- + as], adj., *of the best*. — Esp., plur. as noun, *the better classes, the aristocracy*, all who held opinions opposed to the common people.

optimē, superl. of bene.

optimus, -a, -um [op (cf. ops?) + timus (cf. finitimus)], superl. of bonus.

optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†optō- (p. p. of op, cf. ops, optimus)], I. v. a., *choose, desire, wish*.

opulentus, -a, -um [op- (as if opu-) + lentus], adj., *rich, fine, splendid, sumptuous*.

opus, operis [OP + us], N., *work, labor* (as accomplishing its purpose, cf. labor, as tiresome). — In concrete sense, *a work, works, fortifications: natura et opere munitus* (*by nature and art*); *operum atque artificiorum* (*trades, handicrafts*). — In abl., *magno (quanto) (tanto) opere, very*

much, very, greatly, urgently, how much, so much, so, so earnestly; often as one word, magnopere, quantopere, tantopere.

opus [same word as preceding], N. indecl., *need, necessity: regi opus est, a king needs; haud mihi opus, I have no desire.*

ōra, -ae [?], F., *a shore, a coast.*

ōrāculum, -ī [orā- (*speak*) + culum], N., (*an announcement*). — Esp. of the gods, *a response, a prophecy, an oracle.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis [orā- (*speak*) + tio], F., *speech, words, talk, address, discourse, argument, a remark.*

ōrātor, -ōris [orā- (*speak*) + tor], M., *a speaker, an ambassador, an envoy, an orator.*

orbis, -is [?], M., *a circle (a circular plane): orbis terrarum (orbis), the circle of lands, the whole world.* — Less exactly, *a hollow square (in military language), a circle.*

orbitās, -ātis [orbō- (*bereaved*) + tas], F., *bereavement.*

Orcus, -ī [perh. akin to arceo, *enclose*], M., *a god of the lower world identified with Pluto, Death.* — Also, *the world below, Hades.*

Orcynia, -ae [Teutonic or Celtic], F., see **Hercynius**.

ōrdinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ordin-], I. v. a., *set in order, arrange, adjust.*

ōrdō, -inis [akin to ordior, *begin (i.e. a web)*], M., *a series, a row, a tier, a rank (of soldiers), a grade (of centurions, as commanding special ordines of soldiers, also the centurions themselves), an arrangement,*

an order, a body (senatorius): perturbatis ordinibus, the ranks being broken; ratio ordoque agminis, the plan and arrangement of the march; ordines servare, to keep their places (of soldiers, also of anything laid in rows or tiers, preserve the arrangement, not deviating from it).

orior, orīrī, ortus [?], 3. (and 4.) v. n., *arise, spring up: orta luce, at daybreak.* — Fig., *begin, start, spring from, arise, be started, have its source.* — **oriēns**, -entis, p. as adj., *rising: sol (sunrise, the east).*

ōrnāmentum, -ī [ornā- + mentum], N., *an adornment.* — Fig., *an honor (an addition to one's dignity), a source of dignity.*

ōrnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of orno.

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [unc. noun-st.], I. v. a., *adorn, equip, furnish.* — Fig., *honor.* — **ōrnātus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *furnished, adorned, well-equipped, honored.* — Also, *eminent, illustrious.*

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [or- (as st. of os, *mouth*)], I. v. a. and n., *speak.* — Esp., *pray, entreat, beg, sue for.*

ortus, -a, -um, p. p. of orior.

ortus, -ūs [OR (in orior) + tus], M., *a rising.*

ōs, ōris [?], N., *the mouth, the face.*

os, ossis [?], N., *a bone.*

ōsculor, -ārī, -ātus [osculō-, *mouth*], I. v. dep., *kiss.*

Osismī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., *a people of Gaul (in Brittany).*

ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus [obs-tendo], 3. v. a., (*stretch towards*), *present, show, point out, make known, state, declare: se (discover, unmask).*

ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ostentō-],

I. v. a. freq., *display, exhibit*.

ōstium, -ī [perh. akin to **ōs**, *mouth*], N., *a door, an entrance*.

ōtium, -ī [?], N., *repose, inactivity*,

quiet (freedom from disturbance):
per otium, *at ease*.

ovis, -is [cf. Eng. "ewe"], F., *a sheep*.

ōvum, -ī [perh. avi- + um] (*be-*
longing to a bird?), N., *an egg*.

P

P., for **Publius**.

pābulātiō, -ōnis [pabulā- + tio],

F., *a foraging, getting fodder*.

pābulātor, -ōris [pabulā- + tor],

M., *a forager*.

pābulor, -ārī, -ātus [pabulō-], I. v.
dep., *forage, gather fodder*.

pābulum, -ī [PA (in **pasco**, *feed*)
+ bulum], N., *fodder* (for animals,
including the stalk as well as the
grain), *green fodder*.

pācātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **paco**.

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pac-, in **pax**,
peace], I. v. a., *pacify, subdue*. — **pā-**
cātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *peace-*
able, quiet, subject (as reduced to
peace).

pāctum, -ī [see **pactus**], N., (*a*
thing agreed), *an agreement, an ar-*
rangement. Hence, *a method, a way*
(of doing anything): **quo pacto**, *in*
what way, how.

Padus, -ī [Celtic], M., *the Po*, the
great river of Northern Italy (Cis-
alpine Gaul).

paedagōgus, -ī [Gr.], M., *a gov-*
ernor, a preceptor, a pedagogue (a
slave to guide and attend children).

Paemānī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur.,
people of the Belgians.

paene [?], adv., *almost, nearly*.

paenitet, -ēre, -uit [paenitō- (perh.
p. p. of verb akin to **punio**, *punish*)],

2. v. a. impers., *it repents* (one), *one*
repents, one regrets.

pāgus, -ī [PAG (in **pango**) + us
(with unc. connection of ideas)], M.,
a district, a canton (cf. **vicus**, a
smaller collection of dwellings).

palam [unc. case-form, cf. **clam**],
adv., *openly, publicly, without con-*
cealment: **palam facere**, *make clear,*
disclose.

palea, -ae [perh. akin to **palor**,
wander], F., *chaff*.

palliātus, -a, -um [palliō- + atus],
adj., *dressed in a pallium, with the*
surplice on.

pallium, -ī [?], N., *a cloak, a*
mantle. — Late, **pallium sacrum**, *a*
priest's robe, a surplice.

palma, -ae [Gr.], F., *the palm* (of
the hand). — Also, *a palm-branch*
(symbol of victory), *a prize* (of vic-
tory).

pālus, -ī [PAG (*fix*, cf. **pango**) +
lus], M., *a stake, a bar, a post*.

palūs, -ūdis [?], F., *a marsh, a*
swamp.

palūster, -tris, -tre [palud- + tris],
adj., *marshy, swampy*.

Pamphȳlius, -a, -um [Gr.], adj.,
Pamphylian, of Pamphylia, a coun-
try of Asia Minor.

pandō, **pandere**, **pandī**, **passus**
[akin to **pandus**, *bent*], 3. v. a.,

spread out (perh. orig. of the hands, bending back the wrist): *passis manibus*, with outstretched hands.

pār, *paris* [perh. akin to **paro**, **pario** (through the idea of barter or exchange)], *adj.*, *equal, alike, like, right, proper*: **par ac**, *equal with*; **intervallum** (*the same*). — *Esp.*, *equal in power, a match for*. — *As noun*, *M.*, *an equal*, *N.*, *a pair*. See *refero*.

parātus, -a, -um, *p. p.* of **paro**.

parcē [old case-form of **parcus**], *adv.*, *sparingly, frugally, cautiously*.

parcō, *parcere, pepercī* (*parsi*), *parsūrus* (*parcitūrus*) [akin to **parcus**], *3. v. n.*, *spare, preserve*. — *Esp.*, *save alive*: **parcendo**, *by economy, by frugality*.

parcus, -a, -um [akin to **parco**], *adj.*, *sparing, frugal*.

parēns, -entis [**PAR** (in **pario**) + **ens**], *C.*, *a parent*.

parentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**parent-**], *1. v. n.*, *make a funereal offering* (to deceased relatives, *esp. parents*). Hence, *avenge* (making an offering of the wrong-doer).

pāreō, *pārēre, pārui, pāritūrus* [**parō-** (cf. **opiparus**)], *2. v. n.*, *be prepared, appear, obey, submit to, yield to, follow*.

pariō, *parere, peperī, partus* (*paritūrus*) [**PAR**, *procure* (perh. orig. by barter, cf. **par**)], *3. v. a.*, *produce, bring forth, bear*.

Parisiī, -ōrum [**Celtic**], *M. plur.*, *a Celtic tribe around modern Paris, whose town Lutetia takes its modern name from them, cf. Rheims (Remi), Trèves (Treveri)*.

pariter [**pari-** (as *st.* of **par**) + **ter**], *adv.*, *equally*.

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**parō-**, cf. **opiparus** and **pareo**], *1. v. a.*, *procure, provide, prepare, begin, be about to, get ready for* (*bellum* used concretely for the means of war), *arrange*. — **parātus**, -a, -um, *p. p.* as *adj.*, *ready, prepared*: *animo parati* (with mind resolved), *resolute, determined*; *paratus in armis*, *armed for war*.

parochus, -ī [**Gr.**], *M.*, *a purveyor*. — *Late*, *a priest, a vicar*.

Parrhasius, -ī [**Gr.**], *M.*, *a famous Greek painter*.

pars, *partis* [**PAR** + **tis** (reduced)], *akin to portio*, and perh. to **par**, through idea of barter], *F.*, (*a dividing*), *a portion, a part, a share, a party* (also *plur.*). — Often of position or direction merely, *side, direction, region*: *una ex parte*, *on one side*; *ex utraque parte*, *on both sides*; *sinistra pars*, *the left flank*; *pars fluminis* (*bank*). — *Fig.*: *omnibus partibus*, *in all respects*; *in neutris partibus*, *on neither side, neutral*. — *Esp.*: *ad inferiorem partem fluminis*, *down the river*; *ab inferiore parte fluminis* (*further down, etc.*). — **partim**, *acc.* as *adv.*, *in part, partly, some . . . others*.

Parthī, -ōrum [**Gr.**], *M. plur.*, *the Parthians, a warlike people of Scythia, famous as archers*.

partim, see **pars**.

partior, -īrī, -ītus [**parti-**], *4. v. dep.*, *divide*: *partitis temporibus*, *alternately*.

partitus, -a, -um, *p. p.* of **partior**.

parum [akin to **parvus**, perh. for **parvum**], adv., *not very, not much, not sufficiently, but little*.

parvulus, -a, -um [parvō- + lus], adj., *small, slight, insignificant*: ab **parvulis**, *from infancy*.

parvus, -a, -um [perh. for **paurus**, cf. **paucus**], adj., *small, slight, little*.

passer, -eris [?], M., *a sparrow*.

passim [acc. of **passis** (PAD (in **pando**, *spread*) + **tis**)], adv., *in all directions, all about*.

passus, -a, -um, p. p. of **pando**.

passus, -a, -um, p. p. of **patior**.

passus, -ūs [PAD (in **pando**) + **tus**], M., (*a spreading of the legs*), *a stride* (of both feet), *a step, a pace* (esp. as a measure, about five Roman feet): **mille passuum**, *a Roman mile, five thousand feet*; **passum retinere**, *stop*.

pāstor, -ōris [pas- (as if root of **pasco**) + **tor**], M., *a shepherd, a herdsman*.

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus [noun-st. akin to **pateo** + **facio**], 3. v. a., *lay open, open, open up*.

patefactus, -a, -um, p. p. of **patefacio**.

patefiō, pass. of **patefacio**.

pateō, -ēre, -uī, no p. p. [?], 2. v. n., *be extended, lie open, spread, extend, be wide, be open*. — **patēns**, -entis, p. as adj., *open, exposed*.

pater, -tris [PA (in **pasco**?) + **ter**], M., *a father*. — Plur., *ancestors*.

paternus, -a, -um [pater- (as st. of **pater**) + **nus**], adj., *paternal, of one's father*.

patienter [patient- + **ter**], adv., *patiently*.

patientia, -ae [patient- + **ia**], F., *patience, endurance*.

patior, patī, passus [?], 3. v. dep., *suffer, endure, allow, permit*: **vim tempestatis** (*endure, stand*). — **patiēns**, -entis, p. as adj., *enduring, patient, contented*.

patria, see **patrius**.

patrimōnium, -ī [patri- (as if st. of **pater**) + **monium**], N., *an ancestral estate, a patrimony*.

patrius, -a, -um [patr- + **ius**], adj., *of a father, ancestral, of one's fathers*: **hoc patriumst**, *this is a father's (duty)*. — **patria**, -ae, fem. as noun (sc. **terra**), *fatherland, native country, country*.

patrōnus, -ī [fr. **pater** (for form cf. **colonus**) + **nus**], M., *a patron, a protector*.

patruus, -ī [pat(e)r- + **vus** ?], M., *an uncle* (on the father's side; cf. **avunculus**, on the mother's).

paucitās, -ātis [paucō- + **tas**], F., *small number*.

paucus, -a, -um [PAU (cf. **paulus** and **parvus**) + **cus**], adj., *almost always in plur., few, some few* (but with implied *only* in a semi-neg. sense).

paulātim [paulō- (reduced) + **atim**, as if acc. of †**paulatis** (†**paulā** + **tis**)], adv., *little by little, a little at a time, gradually, few at a time*.

paulisper [paulis (abl. plur. of **paulus** ?) per], adv., *a little while*.

paululum [acc. of **paululus**, dim. of **paulus**], as adv., *a very little*.

paulus, -a, -um [?, akin to **paucus**], adj., *small, little, a trifle*. — Esp., **paulum**, acc. as adv., *a little, a short*

distance, somewhat, a little way, a little while. — **paulō**, abl. as adv., *a little, slightly*.

Paulus, -ī [**paulus**], M., a Roman family name. See **Aemilius**.

pauper, -eris [?], adj., *poor, in humble circumstances, lowly*.

paveō, -ēre, no perf., no p. p. [prob. †**pavō**- (cf. **pavidus**)], 2. v. n., *be in terror, be afraid, tremble*.

pavidus, -a, -um [prob. †**pavō**- (cf. **paveo**) + **dus**], adj., *terrified, frightened, in alarm*.

pavimentum, -ī [**pavī**- (*beat*) + **mentum**], N., (*a beaten surface*), *a pavement*.

pāx, **pācis** [**PAC** (*fix*) as st.], F., (*a treaty?*), *peace, favor*.

peccō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [?], 1. v. n., *go wrong, commit a fault, err*.

pecten, -inis [**pect**- (as root of **pecto**, *comb*) + **en**], M., *a comb*. — Esp., *a sley or reed*, by which the thread is pushed into place in a loom.

pectus, -oris [perh. **pect**- (as root of **pecto**, *comb*) + **us**, from the rounded shape of the breast, cf. **pectinatus**], N., *the breast*.

pecūnia, -ae [†**pecunō**- (*pecu*- (*cattle*) + **nus**, cf. **Vacuna**) + **ia**], F., *money* (originally *cattle*), *a sum of money, wealth*.

pecus, -oris [**PEC** (*tie?*) + **us**], N., *cattle* (especially *sheep* and *goats*): **pecore vivere** (*flesh of cattle*). — Plur., *cattle, flocks, flocks and herds*.

pedālis, -e [**ped**- + **alis**], adj., *of a foot* (in thickness), *a foot thick*.

pedes, -itis [**ped**- (as if **pedi**) + **tis** (reduced)], C., *a footman, a foot-soldier*. — Collectively, *the infantry*.

pedester, -tris, -tre [**pedit**- + **tris**], adj., *of infantry, of persons on foot*: **itinerā** (*journeys on foot, marches, land routes*); **proelium** (*on land*); **copiae** (*the foot, the infantry*).

peditātus, -ūs [**pedit**- + **atus**, cf. **consulatus**], M., *foot, infantry*.

Pedius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., **Quintus Pedius**, a nephew of **Cæsar** and a **legatus** under him in Gaul. He sided with **Augustus**, and was afterwards made consul by **Augustus's** patronage.

pēior, see **malus**.

pēius, see **male**.

pellis, -is [?], F., *a hide, a skin* (either on or off the body of an animal).

pellō, **pellere**, **pepulī**, **pulsus** [?], 3. v. a., *strike, beat, drive, drive out, expel, defeat, repulse, route*. — Also, *affect, impress*.

Pēlūsium, -ī [Gr.], N., a city of Egypt.

pendeō, -ēre, **pendī**, no p. p. [†**pendō**- (**PEND** + **us**, cf. **pendulus**)], 2. v. n., *hang, be suspended, hang one's self*.

pendō, **pendere**, **pendī**, **pēnsus** [?], 3. v. a., *hang, weigh, weigh out*. Hence (since money was earlier weighed, not counted), *pay, pay out*. — Esp. with words of punishment, *pay* (a penalty), *suffer* (punishment, cf. **dare** and **capere**).

Pēnelopē, -ēs [Gr.], F., the wife of **Ulysses**.

penes [prob. acc. of st. in -os, akin

to **penitus**], prep. with acc., *in the power of*.

penetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [penetrō- (pene + trus, cf. **penes**, **penitus**)], I. v. a., (*set within*). — Without immediate object, *penetrate, enter, go in*.

penitus [st. akin to **penes**, **penus**, etc., + **itus**, cf. **antiquitus**], adv., *far within, deeply, entirely, utterly*: **penitus ad extremos finis** (*clear to, all the way to*).

pēnsilis, -e [pensō- (cf. **pendo**) + **ilis**], adj., *hanging*.

populī, see **pello**.

¹**per** [unc. case-form], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with acc., *through, along, in, over, among*. — Fig., *through, by means of* (cf. **ab**, *by, directly*), *by the agency of, on account of*. — Often accompanied by the idea of hindrance: **per anni tempus potuit**, *the time of the year would allow*; **per aetatem non poterant** (*on account of*). — Of time, *through, for*: **per singulas noctis**, *every night*. — Often in adv. expressions: **per concilium**, *in council*; **per cruciatum**, *with torture*; **per vim**, *forcibly*; **per casum**, *by chance*; **per ludicrum**, *in sport*.

²**per** [prob. a different case of same st. as ¹**per**], adv. in comp., *very, exceedingly*.

perāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **perago**.

peragō, -agere, -ēgī, -āctus [¹**perago**], 3. v. a., *conduct through, finish, accomplish*: **conventus** (*finish holding*); **rem divinam** (*perform*).

peragrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [[†]**peragrō** (cf. **peregre**, *abroad*)], I. v. a., *wander through, traverse*.

perangustus, -a, -um [²**perangustus**], adj., *very narrow*.

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [¹**per-capio**], 3. v. a., *take in* (completely), *learn, acquire, hear, feel*. — Esp. of harvests, *gather*. Hence, fig., *reap*: **fructum victoriae**.

percontātiō, -ōnis [percontā- (*inquire*) + **tio**], F., *inquiry, inquiries* (though sing. in Latin).

percontor, -ārī, -ātus [[†]**percontō** (**per-contus**, *a pole*)], I. v. dep., *inquire, make inquiries, investigate*.

percurrō, -currere, -cucurrī (-currī), -cursus [¹**per-curro**], 3. v. n. and a., *run along, run over or through*.

percussor, -ōris [per-[†]**quassor**, cf. **percutio**], M., *a murderer, an assassin*.

percussus, -a, -um, p. p. of **percutio**.

percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus [¹**per-quatio**, *shake*], 3. v. a., *hit, strike, run through*.

perdiscō, -discere, -didicī, no p. p. [¹**per-disco**], 3. v. a., *learn thoroughly, get by heart*.

perditus, -a, -um, p. p. of **perdo**.

perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus [¹**per-do**], 3. v. a., *destroy* (cf. **interficio**), *ruin, lose, waste*. — **perditus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *ruined, desperate, abandoned*.

perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [¹**per-duco**], 3. v. a., *lead through, lead along, conduct, bring over, carry along, make (fossam)*. — Fig., *prolong, win over, bring*.

peregrīnus, -a, -um [[†]**peragrō** (cf. **peregre**, *abroad*) + **inus**], adj., *foreign, from abroad*.

pereō, -ire, -ī (-ivī), -itūrus [¹per-
eo, *go*], irr. v. n., *perish, be killed*
(in battle), *be dead*.

perequitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [¹per-
equito, cf. *eques*], i. v. a. and n.,
ride over (or around).

perexiguus, -a, -um [²per-
exiguus], adj., *very small*.

perfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of per-
ficio.

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [¹per-
fero], irr. v. a., *carry through or*
over: opinionem (spread among); con-
silium (carry over); famam (bring).
— Also, *bear through (to the end),*
endure, suffer, submit to.

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [¹per-
facio, *make*], 3. v. a., *accomplish,*
complete, finish, make (complete).

perfidia, -ae [*perfidō* - (*false*) +
ia], F., *perfidy, treachery, faith-*
lessness.

perflō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [¹per-flō],
i. v. a., *blow over*.

perfractus, -a, -um, p. p. of per-
fringo.

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāc-
tus [¹per-frango], 3. v. a., *break*
through, break in pieces, shatter,
wreck.

perfuga, -ae [¹per-†fuga (*FUG* +
a, cf. *scriba*)], M., *a refugee, a fugi-*
tive, a deserter.

perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, no p. p.
[¹per-fugio], 3. v. n., *run away, flee*
(to a place), *escape to*.

perfugium, ī [¹per-†fugium, cf.
perfugio], N., *a place of refuge,*
refuge.

perfūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of per-
fungor.

perfungor, -fungī, -fūctus [¹per-
fungor], 3. v. dep., *fulfill, perform (to*
the end).

Pergamēnus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj.,
of Pergamum (a city of Mysia), Per-
gamenian. — Plur. as noun, *the*
Pergamenians.

pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctus
(?) [¹per-rego, *keep straight*], 3. v. n.,
(*keep one's direction ?*), *keep on, con-*
tinue to advance, advance, proceed.

periclitōr, -ārī, -ātus [¹periclitō-
(as if p. p. of †periculus, cf. peri-
culum)], i. v. dep., *try, make a trial,*
be exposed, be put in peril, be in peril.

periculōsus, -a, -um [*periculō* +
osus], adj., *dangerous*.

periculum (-clum), -ī [¹perī- (cf.
experior, try) + *culum*], N., *a trial,*
an attempt. Hence, *peril, danger,*
risk.

perītus, -a, -um [¹perī- (cf. *ex-*
perior, try) + *tus*], p. p. as adj.,
(*tried*), *experienced, skilled, skilful*.

perlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of perfero.
perlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of per-
lego.

perlegō, -legere, -lēgī, -lēctus
[¹per-lego], 3. v. a., *read through,*
read (aloud).

perluō, -luere, -luī, -lūtus [¹per-
luo], 3. v. a., *wash all over*. — Pass.
(as reflex.), *bathe*.

perlūstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [¹per-
lūstro], i. v. a., (*wander all through*).
Hence, *examine carefully, survey*.

permaneo, -manēre, -mānsī, -mān-
sūrus [¹per-maneo], 2. v. n., *remain*
(to the end), *continue, hold out, per-*
sist: in eadem libertate (continue to
live, etc.).

permissus, -ūs [per-missus (cf. *permitto*)], M., *leave, permission*.

permissus, -a, -um, p. p. of *per-mitto*.

permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [¹per-mitto], 3. v. a., (*give over*), *grant, allow, give up, entrust*: *fortunas (trust)*; *summam imperi (place in the hands of, etc.)*.

permōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of *per-moveo*.

permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [¹per-moveo], 2. v. a., *move (thoroughly), influence, affect*. — **permōtus**, -a, -um, p. p., *much affected, much influenced, overcome*.

permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsī, -mulsus [¹per-mulceo], 2. v. a., *smooth over*. Hence, *soothe, pacify*.

permultus, -a, -um [²per-multus], adj., *very many, very much*.

permūniō, -īre, -īvī (-īī), -ītus [¹per-munio], 4. v. a., *fortify thoroughly*.

pernegō, -āre, -āvī, no p. p. [¹per-nego], 1. v. a., *deny stoutly*.

perniciēs, -ēī [?, akin to *nex*, *death*], F., *destruction, ruin, death*.

perniciōsus, -a, -um [*pernicie* + *osus*], adj., *ruinous, dangerous, pernicious*.

perpaucus, -a, -um [²per-paucus], adj. — Plur., *very few, but very few, only a very few*.

perpendiculum, -ī [*perpendi* (st. of *perpendo*, *hang down*) + *culum*], N., *a plumb line*: *ad perpendiculum, perpendicularly*.

perpetior, -petī, -pessus [¹per-patior], 3. v. dep., *suffer, endure*.

perpetuus, -a, -um [¹per-†petuus (PET (*aim*) + *vus*)], adj., (*keeping on*

through), *continuing, continued, continuous, without interruption, lasting, permanent, perpetual*; *paludes (continuous)*; *in perpetuum, forever, permanently*. — **perpetuō**, abl. as adv., *forever, constantly, continually*.

perquirō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus [¹per-quaero], 3. v. a., *search for, inquire about*.

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [¹per-rumpo], 3. v. a. and n., *break through, force one's way through, break, force a passage*.

perruptus, -a, -um, p. p. of *per-rumpo*.

Persa, -ae [Gr.], M., *a Persian*. — Also, the name of a puppy. — Plur., *the Persians*.

persaepe [²per-saepe], adv., *very often, many times*.

perscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptus [¹per-scribo], 3. v. a., *write out (in full)*.

persecūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of *persequor*.

persequor, -sequī, -secūtus [¹persequor], 3. v. dep., *follow up, pursue, attack*. — Also, *avenge, punish*.

Persēs (-a), -ae [Gr.], M., *a king of Macedonia, conquered by Aemilius Paulus, B.C. 168*.

Persicus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., *Persian*.

persōna, -ae [¹per-†sona (cf. *sonus*, *sound*)], F., *a mask*. Hence, *a character, a personage, a person*.

personō, -āre, -uī, -itus [¹per-sono], 1. v. n., *resound, reëcho*.

perspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *perspicio*.

perspicio, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectus

[¹per-†specio], 3. v. a., *see through, see, inspect, examine*. — Also, *see thoroughly*. — Fig., *see clearly, see, understand, learn, observe, find, discover*.

perstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus [¹per-sto], 1. v. n., *stand firm, persist, remain firm, be firm*.

persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus [¹per-suadeo, advise], 2. v. a. and n., *induce, persuade*: *hoc volunt persuadere (make people believe)*. — Pass. (impers.), *be persuaded* (dat. of person), *be satisfied, believe*.

pertaedet, -taedēre, -taesum est [²per-taedet], 2. v. impers., *it wearies, it disgusts*. — pertaesus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *weary of, disgusted with*.

pertaesus, -a, -um, p. p. of pertaedet.

perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus [¹per-terreo], 2. v. a., *terrify, alarm*: *perterritus equitatus (put in a panic)*; *timore perterritus, struck with terror*.

perterritus, -a, -um, p. p. of perterreo.

pertināciter [pertinaci- (obstinate) + ter], adv., *persistently, perseveringly*.

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, no p. p. [¹per-teneo], 3. v. n., (*hold a course towards*), *tend, extend*. — Fig., *have to do with, tend, pertain, belong*: *eodem illo ut, etc., (have the same purpose, look in the same direction)*.

pertulī, see perfero.

perturbātiō, -ōnis [perturbā- + tio], F., *disturbance, alarm, panic, demoralization*.

perturbātus, -a, -um, p. p. of perturbo.

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [¹per-turbo, disturb], 1. v. a., *disturb, throw into confusion, confuse, throw into disorder, alarm, terrify*.

pervagor, -ārī, -ātus [¹per-vagor], 1. v. dep., *roam about, scatter*.

pervenīō, -venīre, -venī, -ventus [¹per-venio], 4. v. n., (*come through to*), *arrive at, get as far as, reach, come*. — Fig., *arrive*: *ad hunc locum (come to this point)*; *pars (of property, come, fall)*.

pēs, pedis (PAD, tread, as st.), M., *the foot*. — Also, as a measure, *a foot*. — Esp.: *pedem referre, draw back, give way*; *pedibus proeliari (ire) (on foot)*; *ad pedes desilire (to the ground, from on horseback, etc.)*; *pedibus aditus, approach by land*.

pestilēns, -entis [akin to pestis, plague], adj., *unhealthy, infected*.

petitiō, -ōnis [petī- (as st. of peto) + tio], F., (*a seeking*), *a canvass, (for office), a candidacy*.

petō, -ere, -īvī (-iī), -ītus [PAT], 3. v. a. and n., (*fall?, fly?*), *aim at, attack, make for, try to get, seek, seek for, go to get, go to*. Hence, *ask, request, look for, get*: *fugam (take to)*.

Petrocoriī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., *a tribe on the Garonne (Perigord)*.

petulāns, -antis [p. of †petulo (cf. peto)], adj., *wanton, impudent, saucy*.

Pharnacēs, -is [Gr.], M., *a king of Pontus, son of Mithradates, conquered by Cæsar, B.C. 47*.

Pharsālicus, -a, -um [Gr.], adj., *of Pharsalus or Pharsalia*.

Philippus, -ī [Gr.], M., *Philip* (V), king of Macedonia, father of Perses. He formed an alliance with Hannibal.

Philomēla, -ae [Gr.], F., a daughter of Pandion, king of Thebes. She was changed into a nightingale.

philosophus, -ī [Gr.], M., *a philosopher*.

Phrygia, -ae [Gr.], F., a country of Asia Minor.

pīca, -ae [?], F., *a magpie*.

Pictones (Pect-), -um [Celtic], M. plur., a Celtic tribe south of the Loire (Poitou).

pictor, -ōris [PIG (in *pingo*, *paint*), + tor], M., *a painter*.

pictūra, -ae [†pictu- (cf. *pingo*, *paint*) + ra (F. of *rus*)], F., *a picture*.

pietās, -ātis [piō- (*dutiful*) + tas], F., *filial affection, affection* (for the gods or one's country, etc.), *patriotism, piety*.

pīgnus, -oris [prob. pang- (as root of *pango*, *fasten*) + us], N., *a pledge, a security*.

pīlum, -ī [?], N., *a pestle*. — Also, *a javelin* (the peculiar weapon of the Roman legion, with a heavy wooden shaft about 4 ft. long, and an iron head on a long iron shank, making a missile more than 6 ft. long): **pīlum murale**, a heavier missile of the same kind for use in siege works.

pīlus, -ī [?], M., *a hair*.

pīlus, -ī [pīlum], M., *a century* (of soldiers, a name applied to indicate the rank of centurions, see

centurio). — Also, *a centurion* (of a particular rank): **primus pīlus**.

pingō, -ere, pīnxī, pictus [PIG], 3. v. a., *paint*.

pinguis, -e [?], adj., *fat*.

pinna, -ae [= *penna*, *feather* (PET (*fly*) + na)], F., *an artificial parapet* (of osier or the like, run along the top of a wall).

pīnus, -ī (-ūs) [akin to *pix*, *pitch*], F., *a pine tree, a pine*. — Fig., *a ship, a vessel*.

pīpiō, -āre, no perf., no p. p. [?], 1. v. n., *peep, chirp*.

pīrāta, -ae [Gr.], M., *a pirate*.

Pīrūstae, -ārum [?], M. plur., a tribe of Illyria.

piscis, -is [?], *a fish*. — Collectively, *fish*.

Pīsō, -ōnis [pisō- (*pease*) + o], M., (a man with a wart like a pea?, cf. *Cicero*), a Roman family name. — Esp., *Piso*, an Aquitanian (probably enfranchised by a Roman of the name).

pīus, -a, -um [?], adj., *dutiful, pious, devout, good*.

pix, picis [?], F., *pitch*.

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [†placō- (cf. *placo* and *placidus*)], 2. v. n., *please*. — Esp. in third person, *it pleases* (one), *one likes, one determines, one decides*. — **placēns**, -entis, p. as adj., *pleasing, agreeable*.

placidus, -a, -um [†placō- (cf. *placeō*) + dus], adj., *calm, quiet, placid, mild*.

plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [st. akin to *placeo*], 1. v. a., *pacify, appease*.

plāga, -ae [Gr.], F., *a blow, a wound*.

plānē [old case-form of **planus**], adv., *flatly; clearly, entirely, utterly, absolutely.*

plānitiēs, -ēī [planō- + ties, cf. -tia], F., a *plain*.

plānus, -a, -um [unc. root + nus], adj., *flat, level, even*: *carinae planiores* (*less deep, less rounding*).

plaustrum, -ī [PLAUD (*clap*) + trum], N., a *wagon, a cart*.

plēbs (plēbēs), -is (-ēī) PLE (in **plenus**) + unc. term. (cf. **turba**), F., *the populace, the multitude, the common people.*

plēnus, -a, -um [PLE (in **pleo**, *fill*) + nus], adj., *full*: *luna*.

plērūmque, see **plerusque**.

plērusque, -aque, -umque [PLE (in **pleo**, *fill*) + rus-que (cf. -pletus, **plenus**)], adj. only in plur., *most of, very many*. — **plērūmque**, N. acc. sing. as adv., *generally, usually, for the most part, very often*.

plumbum, -ī [?], N., *lead*. — **plumbum album**, *tin*.

plūrimus, see **multus**.

plūs [akin to **pleo**, *fill*], see **multus**.

pluteus, -ī [?], M., a *mantelet, a cover* (movable, for defence). — Also, a *bulwark, a defence, a breastwork*.

Plūtōn (-ō), -ōnis [Gr.], M., *Pluto*, the god of the lower world, brother of Jupiter and Neptune.

pōculum, -ī [root (or st.) PO- (in **potus**, *drink*) + culum], N., a *drinking-cup*.

poena, -ae [perh. †povi- (PU) + na (cf. **punio**, *punish*)], F., a *penalty* (paid). Hence, a *punishment* (suffered).

Poenus, -a, -um [borr. fr. Gr.], adj., *Carthaginian*. — Masc. plur. as noun, *the Carthaginians*.

poēta, -ae [Gr.], M., a *poet*.

pollex, -icis [?], M., *the thumb* (with or without **digitus**).

polliceor, -licēri, -licitus [†por- (cf. **portendo**) -liceor, *bid*], 2. v. dep., *offer, promise* (voluntarily): *liberaliter* (*made liberal offers*).

pollicitātiō, -ōnis [pollicitā- + tio], F., *an offer, a promise*.

pollicitus, -a, -um, p. p. of **polliceor**.

Pollūx, -ūcis [Gr.], M., twin brother of Castor, son of Jupiter and Leda, worshipped as a divinity, along with his brother, by the Greeks and Romans.

Polybius, -ī [Gr.], M., a celebrated Greek historian.

Polyphēmus, -ī [Gr.], M., the Cyclops whose eye was put out by Ulysses.

Pompēiānus, -a, -um [Pompeïō- + anus], adj., *of Pompey or Pompeius*.

Pompēius, -ī [†pompe- (dialectic form of **quinque**) + eius], M., a Roman gentile or family name. — Esp.: 1. *Cnaeus Pompeius Magnus*, *Pompey the Great*, the rival of Cæsar, consul with Marcus Crassus in B.C. 58. — 2. Son of 1.

Pomptīnus, -a, -um [?], adj., *Pomptine*. — Esp., *Pomptinae paludes*, *the Pomptine* (or *Pontine*) *marshes*, near the coast of Latium.

pondus, -eris [PEND (in **pendo**, *weigh*) + us], N., *weight, quantity*.

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus [prob.

†por-sino (cf. polliceor)], 3. v. a., *lay down, place, put*: posita tollere (*things laid up, consecrated*); tirocinium (*spend*); castra (*pitch*); praesidium (*station, but see below*). — Fig., *place, lay, make, depend on*: in fuga praesidium; spem salutis in virtute (*find, found, seek*). — positus, -a, -um, p. p., *situated, lying, depending on*: posita est, *lies*; positum est in, etc., *depends on, etc.*

pōns, pontis [?], M., *a bridge*.

ponticulus, -ī [ponti- (as st. of pons) + culus, dim. end.], M., *a little bridge*.

Ponticus, -a, -um [Pontō- + cus], adj., *of Pontus, Pontic*.

pontifex, -icis [ponti- (as st. of pons) + fex (FAC as st.)], M., (*from early functions of priests*), *a high priest, a pontiff*.

Pontus, -ī [Gr.], M., *a country of Asia Minor, south of the Euxine Sea*.

Popilius, -ī [?], M., *a Roman gentile name*. — Esp., *Caius Popilius*, *a Roman ambassador to Antiochus the Great*.

populāris, -e [populō- + aris], adj., *of the people*. — Masc. as noun, *a fellow-countryman, a comrade*.

populor, -ārī, -ātus [populō-, unc. connection], 1. v. dep., *ravage, devastate*.

populus, -ī [root in pleo, *fill*, redupl. + us], M., (*the full number, the mass*), *a people* (in its collective capacity), *a nation, a tribe* (as opposed to individuals): *populus Romanus* (*the official designation of the Roman state*).

pōpulus, -ī [?], F., *a poplar tree, a poplar*.

por-, port- [akin to pro], obsolete prep., only in comp., *forth*.

porcus, -ī [?], M., *a swine, a hog, a pig*.

porrēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of por-rigo.

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus [†por- (cf. polliceor) -rego], 3. v. a., *stretch forth, hold out, stretch out at length*: *porrecta loca pertinent* (*stretch out in extent*).

porta, -ae [POR (*go through*) + ta], F., (*way of traffic?*), *a gate, a door, a passage*.

portendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus [por-tendo, *hold out*], 3. v. a., *presage, foretell*.

portentum, -ī [N. p. p. of portendo], N., *an omen, a portent*.

porticus, -ūs [porta- + cus], F., *a colonnade, a portico*.

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [porta-?], 1. v. a., *carry* (perh. orig. by way of traffic), *bring, convey*.

portōrium, -ī [?, porta (reduced) + orium (N. of orius), perh. orig. †portor + ius], N., (*gate-money? or carrier's money?*), *a duty* (an impost), *a toll*.

portus, -ūs [POR (cf. porta) + tus], M., (*a place of access*), *a harbor, a haven, a port*.

poscō, poscere, poposcī, no p. p. [perh. akin to prex, *prayer*], 3. v. a., *demand* (with some idea of claim, stronger than peto, weaker than flagito), *require, claim*.

positus, -a, -um, p. p. of pono.

possessiō, -ōnis [†por-†sessio (cf.

obsessio)], F., *possession, occupation*. — Concretely (as in Eng.), *possessions, lands* (possessed)

possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus [†por-sedeo], 2. v. a., (*settle further on?*), *occupy* (in a military sense), *possess* (lands, of a people), *hold possession of*.

possum, posse, potuī [pote- (for potis) -sum], irr. v. n., *be able, can*, etc.: plurimum posse, *be most powerful, have very great influence*; tantum potest, *has so much weight, power, influence*; multitudo posse, *be strong in numbers*; equitatu nihil posse, *have no strength in cavalry*; quicquid possunt, *whatever power they have*; fieri posse, *be possible*; quam maximum potest, *the greatest possible*.

post [?], prob. abl. of st. akin to postis (cf. ante, antes, rows, and antae, pilasters)], adv. and prep. with acc., *behind, after, afterwards*: post diem tertium, *three days after*: post se, *in their rear*; post hunc, *next to him*.

postea [post ea], adv., *afterwards*.

posteaquam [postea quam], conjunctive adv., (*later than*), *after* (only with clause), *since*.

posterus, -a, -um [post- (or st. akin) + terus (orig. compar.)], adj., *the next, later*: postero die, *the next day*; in posterum, *the next day*. — Plur. as noun, *posterity*. — postrēmus, -a, -um, superl., *last*. — postrēmō, abl. as adv., *lastly, finally, at last*.

posthāc [post hac (prob. abl. or instr.)], adv., *hereafter*.

postibi [post ibi, *there*], adv., *hereupon, afterwards*.

postpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [post-pono], 3. v. a., *place behind, postpone*: omnibus rebus postpositis, *disregarding everything else*.

postpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of post-pono.

postquam [post quam], conjunctive adv., (*later than*), *after*.

postrēmus, see posterus.

postrīdiē [†poster- (loc. of posterus) -die], adv., *the next day*: postridie eius diei, *the next day after that*.

postulātum, -ī [N. p. p. of postulo], N., *a demand, a requirement, a request, a claim*.

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [?], 1. v. a., *claim* (with idea of right, less urgent than posco), *ask, request, require, demand*.

Postumus, -ī [postumus], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., *Postumus*, to whom one of Horace's odes is addressed.

potēns, -entis [p. of possum as adj.], adj., *powerful, potent*: homo (*influential*); potentiōrēs, compar. plur. as noun, *the powerful, men of influence*.

potentia, -ae [potent- + ia], F., *power* (political influence), *authority* (not official or legal).

potestās, -ātis [potent- + tas], F., *power* (official, cf. potentia, and civil, not military, cf. imperium), *power* (generally), *control, ability, opportunity, chance*: sui potestatem facere, *give a chance at them (him)*, *give an opportunity to fight them*.

(him); se potestati alicuius permittere (*surrender, etc.*); consistendi potestas erat nulli (*chance, possibility*); discedendi potestatem facere (*give permission, etc.*); imperium aut potestas, *military or civil power*; deorum vis ac potestas, *the power and dominion of the gods*.

potior, potiri, potitus [poti-, cf. potis, *able*], 4. v. dep., *become master of, possess one's self of, get possession of, get control of*: oppidum (*capture*).

potior, -us, -oris (compar. of potis], adj., *preferable*. — potius, N. acc. as adv., *rather, preferably*. — potissimum, N. acc. of superl. as adv., *rather than any one (anything) else, chiefly, especially, most of all*.

potitus, -a, -um, p. p. of potior.

prae [unc. case-form of same st. as pro], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with abl., *before, in comparison with*. — In comp., *before others, very, before, at the head of*.

praeacūtus, -a, -um [prae-acutus (p. p. of acuō)], p. p. as adj., *sharpened to a point, pointed*.

praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [prae-habeo], 2. v. a., (*hold before one*), *offer, present, yield, furnish, show (diligentiam): munimenta, laetitiam (furnish, and so afford, make)*; aurēs praebete, *give attention*.

praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautus [prae-caveo], 2. v. n., *take care beforehand, take precaution, be on one's guard*.

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus [prae-cedo], 3. v. a., *go before, precede*.

praeceps, -cipitis [prae-caput],

adj., *headlong, in haste*: locus praecipex, *a steep incline*.

praeceptor, -ōris [prae-captor, cf. praecipio] + tor], M., *a teacher, an instructor*.

praeceptum, -ī [p. p. of praecipio], N., *an instruction, an order*.

praecipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [prae-capio], 3. v. a., *take beforehand, anticipate*. — Also, *order, give instructions, direct*.

praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [praecipit-], 1. v. a., *throw headlong*: se (*plunge headlong*).

praecipuē [old case-form of praecipuus], adv., *especially, chiefly*.

praeclārus, -a, -um [prae-clarus], adj., *very bright*. — Fig., *very fine, very beautiful, splendid*.

praeclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [prae-claudo], 3. v. a., (*close in front of some one or something*), *shut off, barricade*.

praecurrō, -currere, -cucurrī (-currī), -cursūrus [prae-curro], 3. v. n., *run on before, run ahead, hasten on before, hasten in advance, hurry on before*: celeritate (*get the start of, etc.*).

praeda, -ae [prob. prae-†hida (fr. root of -hendo, *seize* + a)], F., *booty, prey, plunder*.

praedicātiō, -ōnis [prae-dicatio, cf. praedico], F., *an assertion, a boast, praise*.

praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†prae-dico (or st. akin, from prae with DIC)], 1. v. a. and n., *make known (before one), proclaim, assert, describe, boast, vaunt one's self*.

praedicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictus

[*prae-dīco*], 3. v. a., *foretell, predict, warn*.

praedō, -ōnis [*praeda*- + *o*], M., *a robber, a freebooter, a pirate*.

praedor, -ārī, -ātus [*praeda*], 1. v. dep., *plunder, take booty*:

praedūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [*prae-duco*], 3. v. a., *lead (etc.) before*: *fossam (make in front)*.

praefectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *praeficio*. — As noun, see *praeficio*.

praefērō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [*prae-fero*], irr. v. a., *place before, carry before (one), prefer*: *se alicui (show one's self better than)*.

praefērōx, -ōcis [*prae-ferox*], adj., *very violent, insolent*.

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*prae-facio*], 3. v. a., *put before, place in command of, set over*. — *praefectus*, p. p. as noun, *a captain (esp. of cavalry), a commander, an officer, a governor*.

praefigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus [*prae-figo*], 3. v. a., *fix in front, set on the edge (of something)*.

praefīxus, -a, -um, p. p. of *praefigo*.

praelambō, -ere, no perf., no p. p. [*prae-lambo*], 3. v. a., *lick (taste) beforehand*.

praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [*prae-mitto*], 3. v. a., *send forward, send on, send ahead*.

praemium, -ī [*prae-+emium (EM in emo, take, the orig. meaning, + ium)*] (taken before the general distribution or disposal of booty?), N., *a reward, a prize, distinction (as a reward or prize)*.

praeeccupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*prae-*

occupo], 1. v. a., *take in opposition or beforehand*: *vias (close against one), preoccupy*.

praeparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*prae-paro*], 1. v. a., *prepare beforehand*.

praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [*prae-pono*], 3. v. a., *put before, prefer*.

praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [*prae-rumpo*], 3. v. a., *break off (at the end or in front)*. — *praeruptus*, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *precipitous, rugged*.

praeruptus, -a, -um, p. p. of *praerumpo*.

praesaepe, -is [*prae-saepe* (akin to *saepio, inclose*), N., *a fold, a stall, a stable*.

praesaepiō (-sēp), -saepīre, -saepī, -saeptus [*prae-saepio*], 4. v. a., *hedge in, wall off*.

praesaeptus, -a, -um, p. p. of *praesaepio*.

praescribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptus [*prae-scribo*], 3. v. a., (*write down beforehand*), *prescribe, order, direct, give directions*.

praesēns, -entis, p. of *praesum*.

praesentia, -ae [*praesent*- + *ia*], F., *the present moment*: *in praesentia, for the moment, at the moment*.

praesentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus [*prae-sentio*], 4. v. a., *see beforehand, find out in time, find out (beforehand)*.

praesertim [as if acc. of †*praesertis* (SER, in *sero (join) + tis*)], adv., *especially, particularly*.

praeses, -idis [*prae-ses* (SED as st.)], M. and F., *a protector, a guardian*.

praesideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, no p. p. [**prae**-sideo, *sit*], 2. v. n., *preside over*.

praesidium, -ī [**prae**-†sidium (SED + ium), or **praesid**- + ium, cf. **obsidium**], N., (*a sitting down before*), *a guard, a garrison, a force* (detached for occupation or guard): **intra praesidia**, *within the lines or in-trenchments*. — **Fig.**, *protection, assistance, support*: **praesidio litterarum** (*with the assistance of, etc.*); **in fuga praesidium ponere**, *seek safety in flight*.

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātus (-stitus) [**prae**-sto], 1. v. a. and n., *stand before, be at the head, excel, be superior*: **praestat**, *it is better*. — Also, *causatively*, (*bring before*), *furnish, display*: **officiū** (*discharge, perform*); **stabilitatem** (*afford, possess*).

praesum, -esse, -fuī [**prae**-sum], irr. v. n., *be in front, be at the head of, be in command, command*. — **praesēns**, -entis, p. as adj., *present, immediate*: **praesentibus principibus**, *in the presence of the leaders*.

praesūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus [**prae**-sumo, *take*], 3. v. a., *foresee, take for granted, anticipate*.

praetendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tensus [**prae**-tendo, *hold out*], 3. v. a., *stretch out, hold before*.

praeter [**compar.** of **prae** (cf. **inter**)], **adv.** and **prep.** with **acc.**, *along by, past, beyond*. — **Fig.**, *except, beside, contrary to, besides*.

praetereā [**praeter** ea (abl.)?], **adv.**, *furthermore, besides*.

praetereō, -īre, -iī, -itus [**praeter**-eo], irr. v. a. and n., *go by, pass by, pass over*. — **praeteritus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *past*.

praeteritus, -a, -um, p. p. of **praetereō**.

praetermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [**praeter**-mitto], 3. v. a., *let go by, let slip, omit, neglect, pass by*.

praeterquam [**praeter**-quam], **conjunctive adv.**, *except, besides*.

praetor, -ōris [**prae**-†itor (I, go, + tor)], M., (*a leader*), *a commander*. — **Esp.**, *a praetor*, one of a class of magistrates at Rome. In early times two had judicial powers, and the others regular commands abroad. Later all had judicial powers during their year of office, but like the consuls (who were originally called praetors) they had a year abroad as proprætors.

praeūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus [**prae**-uro], 3. v. a., *burn at the end* (in front); **praeustae stipites** (*burnt at the point, to harden them*).

praeūstus, -a, -um, p. p. of **praeuro**.

praevalidus, -a, -um [**prae**-validus], **adj.**, *very strong*.

praeveniō, -venīre, -vērī, -ventus [**prae**-venio], 4. v. n., *come before, precede, anticipate, outstrip, prevent*.

prandium, -ī [?], N., *breakfast, luncheon*.

prāvus, -a, -um [?], **adj.**, *crooked*. — **Fig.**, *wrong, vicious, bad*.

precor, -ārī, -ātus [**prec**-], 1. v. dep., *pray to, supplicate, entreat*.

premō, **premere**. **pressī**, **pressus**

[?], 3. v. a., *press*. — Esp., *press hard, attack fiercely, harass, oppress, load* (ratem). — Also, *burden, overwhelm, weigh down*. — Also, *cover* (nubibus), *obscure*. — Also, *curb, restrain*: *se ipsi, crowd, impede, embarrass each other*.

pressus, -a, -um, p. p. of **premo**.

pretium, -ī [?], N., a *price, cost, value*.

†**prex**, **precis** (dat., acc., and abl. only; plur. entire) [?], F., a *prayer, an entreaty, an imprecation*.

prīdem [prae-dem, cf. **idem**], adv., *long ago, long since*.

prīdiē [loc. of st. of **pro** (prae?) -die, cf. **postridie**], adv., *the day before*.

prīmipīlus [primō-pīlus], M., the *first centurion*. See **centurio** and **pīlus**.

prīmō [abl. of **primus**], adv., *at first* (opposed to *afterwards*, cf. **primum**).

prīmōrēs, -um [primō- + unc. term., perh. compar. on analogy of **prior**], M. plur., *chiefs, nobles, leaders*.

prīmum [acc. of **primus**], adv., *first* (in order of incidents, opposed to *next*, etc.), *in the first place*: **cum primum**, *as soon as*; **quam primum**, *as soon as possible*.

prīmus, -a, -um, see **prior**.

prīnceps, -īpis [primō- (reduced) -†ceps (CAP as st.)], adj., (*taking the lead*), *first, chief, foremost, leading*. — Often as noun, *leading man, leader, chief man, chief*.

prīncipātus, -ūs [princip- + atus, cf. **consulatus**], M., *foremost position,*

first place, highest place, the lead (in power and influence among states), *leadership*.

prior, -us, -ōris [compar. of st. of **pro**], adj., *former, before, first*: **priores**, *those in front*; **non priores inferre** (*not the first to*, etc.). — **prius**, N. as adv., *before* (see also **priusquam**). — **prīmus**, -a, -um [prae + mus], superl., *first*: **pars domus** (*front*); **primos civitatis** (*the best men*); in **primis**, *especially*. See **primo** and **primum**.

prīscus, -a, -um [prius- + cus], adj., *ancient, early*.

prīstinus, -a, -um [prius-tinus, cf. **diutinus**], adj., (*of former times*), *old, former*: **prīstinus dies**, *the day before*.

prius, see **prior**.

priusquam [prius-quam], conjunctive adv., *earlier than, sooner than, before*. Often separated.

prīvātīm [as if acc. of †**privatis** (privā- + tis)], adv., *privately, as private persons* (opposed to officially): **de suis privatim rebus** (*their own private affairs*).

prīvātus, -a, -um [p. p. of **privo**, *deprive*], adj., (*destitute of official character*), *private, personal*.

prō [for **prođ**, abl. of st. akin to **prae**, **prior**, etc.], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with abl., *in front of, before*. Hence, *in place of, instead of, for, as, on behalf of, on account of*: **nihil pro sano**, *nothing prudent*. — Also, *in view of, in accordance with, in proportion to, according to, considering, in return for, for*. — In comp., *before, forth, away, for, down* (as falling forward).

prō [?], interj., *O! ah! alas!*

probātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **probo**.

probitās, -ātis [probō- + tas], F., *honesty, integrity*.

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [probō-], I. v. a., (*make good, find good*), *ap-prove, test, prove, show, be satisfied with, favor (a plan), adopt (a measure)*.

probus, -a, -um [pro- + bus, cf. morbus], adj., *superior, good, honest*.

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus [pro-cedo], 3. v. n., *go forward, advance, proceed: longius (go to a distance); contractus (be concluded); nox (pass)*.

prōcērītās, -ātis [procerō- (*tall*) + tas], F., *height, tallness*.

prōclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pro-clamo], I. v. a., *call, cry out, exclaim*.

procul [†procō-, “off” (pro + cus) + lus (reduced, cf. simul)], adv., *at a distance (not necessarily great), at some distance, afar, from afar, at one side, remote from*.

prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, no p. p. [pro-cumbo, *lie*], 3. v. n., *fall, (forward), fall (generally), sink down, lie down (for rest)*.—Less exactly, *incline, slope, lean*.

prōcūrātiō, -ōnis [procurā- + tio], F., *charge, management, control*.

prōcūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pro-curo], I. v. a., *care for, have charge of, attend to*.

prōcurrō, -currere, -curri (-currī), -cursurus [pro-curro], 3. v. n., *run forward, charge, rush out*.

prōdigium, -ī [poss. pro-†digium (DIC + ium, cf. digitus)], N., *an omen, a portent*.

prōditiō, -ōnis [pro-†ditio, cf. prodo], F., *a giving away, treason, treachery*.

prōditōr, -ōris [pro-dator (cf. prodo)], M., *a traitor, a betrayer*.

prōditus, -a, -um, p. p. of **prodo**.

prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [pro-do], 3. v. a., (*give forward*), *give forth, publish, betray (give away), transmit, hand down: memoria proditum, told in tradition, handed down*.

prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [pro-duco], 3. v. a., *lead forth, lead out, draw out, bring out (iumenta), draw up (troops)*.—Fig., *protract, prolong*.

prōductus, -a, -um, p. p. of **produco**.

proelior, -ārī, -ātus [proeliō-], I. v. dep., *fight (in war)*.

proelium, -ī [?], N., *a battle (a single encounter, great or small), a contest, an engagement, a general engagement, a skirmish: committere (engage, join battle, risk a battle, begin an engagement, begin the fight, fight)*.

profectiō, -ōnis [pro-factio (cf. proficiscor)], F., *a setting out, a departure, retreat (the special idea coming from the context), starting, evacuation*.

prōfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **proficio**.

prōfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **proficiscor**.

prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [pro-fero], irr. v. a., *bring forth, bring out, produce*.

prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fecturus [pro-facio], 3. v. n., (*make way for*

ward), *advance* (cf. *proficiscor*). — Fig., *gain advantage* ("get on"), *gain* (much or little), *accomplish* (something): *satis ad laudem profectum est*, *enough has been done for glory*; *plus multitudine telorum proficere* (*have the advantage in*).

proficīscor, -ficīscī, -fectus [*pro-†faciscor* (cf. *proficio*)], 3. v. dep., (*make way forward*). — Esp., *start*, *leave*, *depart*, *set out*, *withdraw*, *march out*, *go out*, *proceed*, *come out*, *sail out*: *quo proficiscimur*, *whither we are going*; *unde erant profecti*, *whence they had come*.

profiteor, -fitērī, -fessus [*pro-fateor*, *confess*], 2. v. dep., *declare publicly*; *offer one's self*, *volunteer*, *offer*: *nomen* (*volunteer*).

prōfligātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *profligo*.

prōfligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*profligō- (pro-†fligus, FLIG + us)*], 1. v. a., (*dash to the ground*). — Esp., *put to rout*.

prōfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, no p. p. [*pro-fluo*], 3. v. n., *flow forth*, *rise*.

prōfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus [*pro-fugio*], 3. v. n., *flee forth*, *flee*, *escape*, *make one's escape*.

profugus, -a, -um [*pro-†fugus (FUG + us)*], adj., *flying*. — As noun, *a fugitive*.

profundus, -a, -um [*pro-fundus*, *bottom*], adj., *deep*. — Neut. as noun, *the deep*.

prōfutūrus, -a, -um, f. p. of *prosum*.

prōgnātus, -a, -um [*pro-(g)natus*], p. p. as adj., *spring from*: *prognati ex*, *descendants of*.

Prognē, -ēs [Gr.], F., a daughter of Pandion, king of Thebes. She was changed into a swallow.

prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus [*progradior*, *step*, *go*], 3. v. dep., *go forward*, *march forward*, *march out*, *come out*, *advance*. — Also, fig., *proceed*, *go*: *amentia longius (go)*.

prōgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of *progredior*.

prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitus [*pro-habeo*], 2. v. a., *hold off*, *keep off*, *repel*, *stop*, *prevent*, *restrain*, *hinder from*, *forbid*. — Also (by a change of relation of the two things concerned), *protect*: *aliquem ab omni militum iniuria* (*keeping one protected from the assailant*).

prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*pro-iacio*], 3. v. a., *throw forward*, *throw away*, *throw*, *cast* (down, cf. *pro*), *abandon*: *proiectae*, *casting themselves*; *se ex navi* (*leap*, *spring*).

proinde [*pro-inde*], adv., (*from there forward*), *therefore*, *hence*.

prōmineō, -minēre, -minuī, no p. p. [*pro-†mineo* (cf. *minor*, *project*)], 2. v. n., *lean forward*, *lean over*.

prōmiscuē [old case-form of *promiscuus*], adv., *in common*.

prōmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of *promitto*.

prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [*pro-mitto*], 3. v. a., (*let go forward*), *let grow* (of the hair): *promisso capillo sunt*, *they wear long hair*; *promissa barba*, *with flowing beard*. — Also, *promise*.

prōmō, -ere, prōmpsī, prōmptus [*pro-emo*, *take*], 3. v. a., *take out*, *bring forth*. — *prōmptus*, -a, -um,

p. p. as adj., (taken out of the store ready for distribution), *ready, quick, active*.

prōmōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **pro-moveo**.

prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [pro-moveo], 2. v. a., *move forward, advance, push forward*.

prōmptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **promo**.

prōmunturium (-mon-), -ī [akin to **promineo**], N., *a headland*.

prōnē [old case-form of **pronus**, *leaning*], adv., *with a slope*.

prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pronuntio], 1. v. a., (*publish forth*), *make known, communicate, declare, give orders, make proclamation*.

prōpāgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†propagō (PAG, in **pango**, *fix*)], 1. v. a., *propagate* (by pegging), *extend, enlarge*.

prōpatulus, -a, -um [pro-patulus, *open*], adj., *open in front*. Neut. as noun, *an open court*.

prope [?, akin to **pro**, cf. **procul** and **proximus**], adv. and prep. with acc., *near*. — Fig., *almost, nearly*. — Compar., **propius**, *nearer*: **propius Tiberi**. — Superl., **proximē**, *nearest, lately, last*.

prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus [pro-pello], 3. v. a., *drive away* (cf. **pro**), *repulse, rout, dislodge, force back* (changing the point of view).

propemodum [prope modum, *near the limit*], adv., *nearly, very nearly*.

properē [old case-form of **properus**, *in haste*], adv., *quickly, hastily*.

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [properō, *quick*], 1. v. a. and n., *hasten, be in haste, make haste*.

propinquitās, -ātis [propinquō + tas], F., *vicinity, a being near, a position near*. — Esp., *nearness in blood, relationship, a relation* (by blood).

propinquus, -a, -um [st. akin to **prope** (or case-form) + **cus**], adj., *near at hand, near, neighboring*. — Esp. by blood, *related*. — As noun in plur., *relatives*.

propior, -us, -ōris [compar. of st. of **prope**], adj., *nearer*. — **proximus**, superl. [of st. †procō-, cf. **procul**], *nearest, next, neighboring*: **bellum, nox** (*last*); **e proximo**, *close at hand*. — With force of prep. (cf. **prope**): **proximi Rhenum**, *nearest the Rhine*. — Plur. as noun, *the bystanders*.

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [pro-pono], 3. v. a., *place before, set before, lay before, set up*: **vexillum** (*hang out*). — Less exactly, *offer, propose, put in the way, present* (difficulty), *make known, state, represent*.

prōpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of **pro-pono**.

proprius, -a, -um [?, akin to **prope** ?], adj., *of one's own*: **fines** (*particular*); **hoc proprium virtutis** (*a peculiar property, a mark*).

propter [prope + ter, cf. **aliter**, **praeter**], adv. and prep. with acc., *near by*. — Also, *on account of* (cf. "all along of").

propterea [propter ea (prob. abl. or instr. of is)], adv., *on this account*. — With **quod**, *because, inasmuch as*.

prōpūgnātor, -ōris [pro-pugnator (cf. **propugno**)], M., *a defender*.

prōpūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [pro-pugno], 1. v. n., (*rush forward to fight, or fight in front*), *rush out* (fighting), *discharge missiles* (ex silvis).

prōpulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [propulso (cf. propello)], 1. v. a., *repel, keep off, drive off, defend one's self against*.

prōra, -ae [Gr.], f., *the prow* (of a ship).

prōscrībō, -scrībēre, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus [pro-scribo], 3. v. a., *advertise, publish* (in writing).

prōsecūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of prosequor.

prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus [prosequor], 3. v. dep., *pursue, follow* (on one's way), *escort*. — Fig. (from escorting), *address, take leave of one* (with some kind of attention).

prōsiliō, -silire, -siluī (-ivī), nō p. [pro-salio], 4. v. n., *leap forward, rush out, rush forth*.

prōspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of prospicio.

prōspectus, -ūs [pro-spectus (cf. prospicio)], m., *outlook, view*: in prospectu, *in sight*; prospectu tenebris adempto, *the view cut off by the darkness*.

prōsperē [old case-form of prosperus], adv., *favorably, propitiously*.

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectus [pro-†specio], 3. v. a., *look forward, look out*. — Fig., *provide for, take care, look out*: prospectum est convivio, *the feast was provided for*.

prōsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātus [pro-sterno], 3. v. a., *dash to the ground, overthrow* (lit. and fig.). —

prōstrātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *prostrate*.

prōstrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of prosterno.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus [pro(d)-sum], irr. v. n., *be for the advantage of, benefit, avail*.

prōterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus [pro-terreo], 2. v. a., *frighten away, drive away in fright*.

prōtinus (-tenus) [pro-tenus, as far as], adv., *forward, straight on*. Hence, *straightway, forthwith, at once, instantly* (keeping right on).

prōturbātus, -a, -um, p. p. of proturbo.

prōturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [proturbo, disturb], 1. v. a., *drive in confusion, drive off, dislodge*.

prōvectus, -a, -um, p. p. of proveho.

prōvehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vectus [pro-veho], 3. v. a., *carry forward*. — In pass., *be carried forth, sail out, set sail*: leni Africo provectus (*sail with, be driven by*).

prōventus, -ūs [pro-†ventus, cf. eventus and provenio], m., *a growth, an issue* (a coming forth), *success, a result*: in maximo proventu, *at the climax*.

proverbium, -ī [pro verbo (word) + ium], n., *a common saying, a proverb*.

prōvideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsus [pro-video], 2. v. a., *foresee, see beforehand, take care, make provision, provide, arrange beforehand, take precautions*.

prōvincia, -ae [†provincō- (vinc- as root of vinco (conquer) + us)

+ *ia*], *F.*, (office of one extending the frontier by conquest in the field), *office* (of a commander or governor), *a province* (in general), *a function*.—*Transf.*, *a province* (governed by a Roman magistrate).—*Esp.*, *The Province* (of Gaul); so with *nostra*, *ulterior*, *citerior* (the province, as opposed to the unconquered parts of Gaul).

prōvinciālis, -e [*provincia*- + *lis*], *adj.*, of a province.—*Esp.*, of the province (of Gaul).

prōvīsus, -a, -um, *p. p.* of *provideo*.

prōvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*pro-voco*, *call*], *I. v. a.*, *call forth*, *challenge*, *invite*.

prōvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [*pro- volo*], *I. v. n.*, *fly forth*.—Less exactly, *rush forth*, *rush out*, *fly out* (of cavalry, etc.).

proximē, see *prope*.

proximus (-umus), see *propior*.

prūdēns, -entis [*pro-videns*], *adj.*, *wise*, *intelligent*, *sagacious*.

prūdētia, -ae [*prudent*-, + *ia*], *F.*, *foresight*, *discretion*, *wisdom*, *strategy*.

Prūsīās (-a), -ae [*Gr.*], *M.*, a king of Bithynia, to whom Hannibal fled for refuge.

psittacus, -ī [*Gr.*], *M.*, a *parrot*.

Ptolemaeus, -ī [*Gr.*], *M.*, *Ptolemy*, the name of several kings of Egypt.

pūblicē [old case-form of *publicus*], *adv.*, *publicly*, *in the name of the state*, *as a state*, *on behalf of the state*, *by the state*: *publice iurare* (for the people, making the oath bind them).

pūblicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*publicō*-], *I. v. a.*, (make belong to the people), *confiscate*.—Also, *make public*, *open to the public*.

pūblicus, -a, -um [*populō*- + *cus*], *adj.*, of the people (as a state), of the state, *public*: *consilium* (a state measure, a public measure, action by the state, action by general consent); *res publica*, the commonwealth, the state, the interests of state, *public business*; *relatis in publicum cornibus* (publicly displayed); *mulieres in publicum procurrere* (abroad into the streets).

Pūblius, -ī [prob. *populō*- + *ius*, cf. *publicus*], *M.*, a Roman *prænomen*.

puella, -ae [*puerō*- + *la*], *F.*, a *girl*, a *maiden*.

puellāris, -e [*puella*- + *aris*], *adj.*, of a girl, a *girl's*.

puer, -ī [?], *M.*, a *boy*.—*Plur.*, *children* (of either sex); a *pueris*, from childhood.

puerīlis, -e [*puerō*- (reduced) + *ilis*], *adj.*, of a child: *aetas* (of childhood).

pueritia, -ae [*puerō*- + *tia*], *F.*, *boyhood*, *childhood*.

puerulus, -ī [*puerō*- (reduced) + *ulus*, *dim. end.*], *M.*, a *little boy*.

pugil, -ilis [*†pugi*- (*PUG*, in *pungo*, *punch*) + *lis* (reduced)], *M.*, a *boxer*, a *pugilist*.

pugillāris, -e [*†pugillō*- (a small handful) + *aris*], *adj.*, (that can be held in the hand).—*Masc. plur.* as noun (sc. *libelli*), *writing tablets*.

pugiō, -ōnis [*†pugi*- (*PUG*, in *pungo*, *punch*) + *o*], *M.*, a *short dagger*, a *poniard*.

pūgna, -ae [PUG (in **pugno**) + **na**], F., ("fisticuffs"), a fight, a battle (less formal than **proelium**): ad **pugnam**, for fighting; genus **pugnae** (of fighting).

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pugna-], I. v. n., fight, engage. — Often impers. in pass., **pugnatum est**, etc., an engagement took place, they fought, the fighting continued: **pūgnantēs**, p. as noun., those engaged.

pūgnus, -ī [PUG (in **pungo**, punch) as st. + **nus**], M., a fist.

pulcher (-cer), -chra, -chrum [?], adj., beautiful, handsome, fine. — Fig., fine, noble, splendid.

pulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pulsō-, cf. **pello**, strike], I. v. a. and n., strike, knock at (ianuam).

pulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **pello**.

pulsus, -ūs [PEL (in **pello**) + **tus**], M., a stroke, a beat: **pulsu remorum praestare** (the working, etc.).

pulvis, -eris [?], M., dust.

Pūnicus, -a, -um [Poenō- + **cus**], adj., Carthaginian, Punic: **bellum** (of the wars with Carthage).

puppis, -is [?], F., the stern.

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†purigō- (purō- + †agus, cf. ago)], I. v. a., clean, clear. — Fig., excuse, exonerate, free from suspicion, exculpate.

purpureus, -a, -um [purpura- (reduced) + **eus**], adj., purple, red, crimson.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [putō- (st. of putus, clean)], I. v. a., clean up, clear up. — Esp.: **rationes** (clear up accounts). Hence alone, reckon, think, suppose.

putrefactus, -a, -um [p. p. of **putrefacio**, rot], adj., decayed.

Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um [?], adj., of the Pyrenees Mountains, between France and Spain. — Masc. plur. as noun (sc. montes), the Pyrenees.

Q

Q., for **Quīntus**.

quā [abl. or instr. (?) of **qui**], rel. adv., by which (way), where.

quācumque [qua-cumque], rel. adv., wherever.

quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a [quadrāginta (reduced) + **nus**], distrib. num. adj., forty each, forty (each often omitted in Eng.).

quadrāgēsīmus, -a, -um [quadrāginta (reduced) + **esīmus**], num. adj., fortieth.

quadrāgintā [akin to **quattuor**], indecl. num. adj., forty.

quadrīngentī, -ae, -a [akin to

quattuor], num. adj., four hundred.

quaerō, **quaerere**, **quaesivī**, **quaesītus** [?, with r for original s], 3. v. a., search for, look for, inquire about, inquire, ask, ask for, seek. — **quaesita**, -ōrum, N. p. p. as noun, earnings, gains.

quaesītus, -a, -um, p. p. of **quaero**.

quaesō, -ere [orig. form of **quaero**], 3. v. def., ask, beg, pray.

quaestiō, -ōnis [quaes (as root of **quaero**) + **tio**], F., an investigation: **habere de aliquo** (examine, as witnesses, usually by torture).

quaestor, -ōris [quaes (as root of **quaero**) + **tor**], M., (*investigator*, or *acquirer*, perh. both). — Esp., a *quaestor* (the Roman officer who had charge of the finances of an army).

quaestus, -ūs [quaes (as root of **quaero**) + **tus**], M., *acquisition*. — Also, *business* (for profit).

quālis, -e [quō- (st. of **quis**) + **alis**], adj.: 1. Interr., *of what sort? what?* — 2. Rel. (sc. **talis**), *as, such as*.

quam [case-form of **quis** and **qui**, cf. **tam**, **nam**], adv. and conj.: 1. Interr., *how?* — 2. Rel., *as, than*. — Often with superlatives, *as much as possible*: **quam maximus**, *the greatest possible*; **quam maxime**, *very much*; **quam celerrime**, *as quickly as possible*; **quam primum**, *as soon as possible*. — Also, **prīdiē quam**, conjunctive phrase, *the day before*. — See also **postquam**, **posteaquam**, **priusquam** (often separated), which are best translated by a single word, omitting the relative part, according to the common English idiom.

quamdiū (often written separately), adv.: 1. Interr., *how long?* — 2. Rel., *as long, as long as* (with antecedent omitted). See **diu**.

quamvis [**quam vis**], adv., *as you please, however, no matter how, although*.

quandō [**quam** + unc. case-form akin to **de**], adv.: 1. Indef., *at any time*: **si quando**, *if ever, whenever*. — 2. Rel., *when, since*.

quantus, -a, -um [prob. for quō-

(root of **qui**) + **vant** + **us**], adj.: 1. Interr., *how great? how much?* **quantum luctūs**, *how much distress?* **quantae civitates** (*how important?*). — 2. Rel., *as great as, as much as*: **tantum . . . quantum**, *so (as) much . . . as*; **so quanta . . . tanta pecunia**.

quāpropter [**qua-propter**], adv., *on which account, wherefore*.

quā rē, adv. phrase, *by which thing, wherefore, therefore, on account of which* (circumstance, etc.), *why, how*. — The relative and interrogative senses are not always distinguishable.

quartānus, -a, -um [quartō- + **anus**], adj., *recurring on the fourth day*. — Fem. as noun (sc. **febris**), *the quartan ague*.

quartus, -a -um [quattuor- (reduced) + **tus**], num. adj., *fourth*.

quasi [**quam** (or **quā**) -**si**], conj., *as if, as it were*.

quatiō, -ere, quassī (in comp.), quassus [?], 3. v. a., *shake*.

quattuor [?, reduced plur.], indecl. num. adj., *four*.

quattuordecim [quattuor-decem], indecl. num. adj., *fourteen*.

-**que** [unc. case-form of **qui**] (always appended to the word or to some part of the phrase which it connects), conj., *and*. — Sometimes connecting the general with the particular, *and in general, and other*.

quem ad modum, phrase as adv., *how, just as, as*.

queō, quīre, quīvī, quītus [?], 4. v. n., *be able, can*.

quercus, -ūs [?], F., *an oak*.

querēla, -ae [as if querē-, sup-

posed st. akin to **queror** (cf. **suadela**) + **la**], F., *a complaint, a lament*.

queror, **querī**, **questus** [?, with **r** for original **s**], 3. v. dep., *complain, complain of, find fault, find fault with, bewail, lament*.

questus, -a, -um, p. p. of **queror**.

quī, quae, quod, cūius [prob. quō- + **i** (demon.)], rel. pron., *who, which, what, that*. — Often where a demon. is used in Eng., *this, that*. — Often implying an antecedent, *he who*, etc.: **ea quae**, *things which, whatever*; **qua de causa**, *for this reason*; **qui videant**, *men to see, scouts*; **qui**, *and they*; **habere sese quae**, with subjv. (*something to*, etc.); **qui potuissent** (*men who*); **qui postulant**, *to demand*; **haec esse quae**, *this was what*; **paucis diebus quibus** (*after*); **idem quod**, *the same as*. — **quō**, abl. as adv., *whence, wherefore*. — **quō**, abl. of degree of difference as adv., *the* (more, less, etc.). — See **quis**, **quod**, ²**quo**, and ³**quo**, also **quominus**.

quī [old abl. or instr. of **quis**], adv., *how*.

quia [case-form of **qui** (prob. N. acc. plur.)], conj., *because*.

quicquam, see **quisquam**.

quicumque, quae-, quod- [**quicumque** (cf. **quisque**)], indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whichever, whatever*.

quīdam, quae-, quod- (**quid-**) [**qui-** + **dam** (case of **DA**, cf. **nam**, **tam**)], indef. adj. pron., *a* (possibly known, but not identified), *a certain, certain, a kind of* (referred to as belonging to the class, but not exactly the thing spoken of), *a certain man*:

artificio quodam, *a kind of trick*; **quidam ex suis** (*one*).

quidem [unc. case-form of **qui** + **dem** (fr. **DA**, cf. **tandem**, **idem**)], adv., giving emphasis, but with no regular Eng. equivalent, *certainly, truly, at least*. — Concessive, *to be sure*. — Adversative, *but, however, yet*: **ne . . . quidem**, *not . . . even, not . . . either*.

quīēs, -ētis [**quīē-** (st. of †**quieo**, *keep quiet*, cf. **quiesco**) + **tis** (reduced)], F., *rest, sleep, repose*.

quīēscō, -ere, quīēvī, quīētus (adj.) [†**quīē-** (st. of †**quieo**) + **sco**], 3. v. n., *come to rest, rest, repose*. — **quīētus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *at rest, quiet, peaceable, settled, at peace, free from disturbance*.

quīētus, -a, -um, p. p. of **quiesco**.

quīn [**qui** (abl. or instr. of **quī**) + **ne**], interr. conj., *how not?* and rel., *by which not*: **quin etiam**, *nay even, in fact*. — After negative verbs of hindrance and doubt, *so but that, but that, that, from* (doing a thing), *to* (do a thing); **non dubito quin**, *I doubt not that*, (also, rarely) *I do not hesitate to*.

quīnam (**quis-**), quae-, quod- (**quid-**), cūius- [**qui-nam**], interr. pron., *who?* etc. (emph.): **quibusnam manibus** (*with what possible?* etc.).

quīncūnx, -ūncis [**quinque-uncia**, *ounce*], F., (an arrangement of dots in the form marked on the five-ounce piece of copper, ∴), *a quincunx*: **in quincuncem dispositis** (*in quincuncial or alternate order*).

quīndecim [**quinque-decem**], indecl. num. a.d.j., *fifteen*.

quīgentēsīmus, -a, -um [quingenti- + esīmus], num. adj., *five hundredth*.

quīgentī, -ae, -a [quinque-centum], num. adj., *five hundred*.

quīnī, -ae, -a [quinque + nus], distrib. num. adj., *five at a time, five (at a time)*.

quīnquāgēsīmus, -a, -um [quinquaginta (reduced) + esīmus], num. adj., *fiftieth*.

quīnquāgintā [quinque + unc. st.], indecl. num. adj., *fifty*.

quīnque [?], indecl. num. adj., *five*.

quīnquiēns (-ēs) [quinque- + iens], num. adv., *five times*.

Quīntius (Quinc-), -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. See **Flaminius**.

quīntus, -a, -um [quinque + tus], num. adj., *fifth*. — Esp. as a Roman prænomen (orig. the fifth born?).

Quīntus, -ī, see **quintus**.

quippe [quid-pe, cf. **nempe**], adv., *truly, no doubt, of course*. — Also explanatory, *for, since*.

Quirīs, -ītis [Curi (st. of **Cures**) + tis], M., a Roman citizen. — Plur., *Romans, fellow-citizens*.

quis (quī), quae (qua), quid (quod), cūius [st. quī- and quō-]: 1. Interr. adj. pron., *who? which? what? quid est, what's the matter? — Neut. acc. as adv., why? — 2. Indef., one, any one, any thing: ne quid, that nothing, that something (after timeo); ne quis, that nobody, let no one, that some one (after timeo); ne quid noceat, not to injure at all; ubi quis, when any one; si quis, if any one*.

quisnam, see **quinam**.

quispiam, quae-, quid- (quod-), cūius- [quis-piam (pe-iam, cf. **quippe, nempe**)], indef. adj. pron., *any, any one, anything, some*.

quisquam, no fem., quid- (quic-), cūius- [quis-quam], indef. pron. used substantively (cf. **ullus**), only with negatives and words implying a negative, making a universal negative, *any one, anything*. — As adj., *any*.

quisque, quae-, quid- (quod-), cūius- [quis-que], indef. adj. pron. (distrib. universal), *each, each one, every*. — Esp. with superlatives, implying that things are taken in the order of their quality: **clarissimus quisque**, *all the most famous*. — With **ut** and **ita** a proportion is indicated, *in proportion as . . . so, the more . . . the more*.

quisquis, quaequae, quicquid (quidquid), cūiuscūius [quis, doubled], indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whatever, every one who, all who*.

quīvis, quae-, quid- (quod-), cūius- [qui-vis], indef. adj. pron., *who you please, any one, any whatever* (affirmative), *any* (whatever).

¹ quō, see **quī**.

² quō [old dat. of **qui**], adv.: 1. Interr., *whither? what for? why?* — 2. Rel., *whither, into which, as far as* (i.e. to what end): **quo intrare** (*which*); **quo venire**, *come there; habere quo* (*have any place to go to, or the like*). — 3. Indef., *anywhere*.

³ quō [abl. of **qui**], as conj., *in order that* (with comparatives), *so that*,

that: magis eo quam quo (*than that, than because*). — Esp., *quō minus, that not, so that not*.

quoad [quo-ad], conj., (*up to which point*), *as far as, until, as long as*.

quōcirca (or separated) [quo (abl. or dat.) -circa], adv., *wherefore*.

quod [N. of *qui*], conj., (*as to which*), *because, inasmuch as, as, in that, as for the fact that, the fact that, that, as for* (with clause expressing the action): *quod si, now if, but if; quod nisi, but if not*.

quō minus (*quominus*), see ³ *quo*.

quondam [quom- (cum) -dam, cf. *quidam*], adv., (*at a certain time*), *once, formerly*.

quoniam [quom (cum) -iam], conj., (*when now*), *inasmuch as, since, as, seeing that*.

quoque [?], conj., following the word it affects, (*by all means?*), *also*,

too, as well. Cf. *etiam* (usually preceding).

quōque [old dat. of *quisque*], adv., *in every direction*.

quōque, quo with enclitic.

quōqueversus, see *versus*.

quōrsum (*quōrsus*) [quo-versus, towards], interr. adv., *to what place? whither? what for?*

quot [akin to *quis*], indecl. adj. pron.: 1. Interr., *how many?* — 2. Rel., *as many, as many as* (with implied antecedent), *the number which*.

quotannis [quot-annis], adv., (*as many years as there are*), *every year, yearly*.

quotiēscumque [quotiens- (*how often*) -cumque], adv., *however often, just as often as, whenever*.

quotquot [quot doubled], indecl. adj., *however many, as many as*.

R

radius, -ī [?], M., *a ray*.

rādīx, -īcis [?], F., *a root*. — Plur., *the roots* (of a tree), *the foot* (of a mountain).

rādō, *rādere*, *rāsī*, *rāsus* [?], 3. v. a., *shave, scrape*. — Fig., *graze, pass closely, coast along*.

rāmōsus, -a, -um [ramō- + osus], adj., *branching*.

rāmus, -ī [?], M., *a branch, a bough, a prong* (of antlers).

rapiditās, -ātis [rapidō- + tas], F., *swiftness, rapidity*.

rapīna, -ae [rapi- (as if st. of *rapio*) + na (F. of *nus*)], F., *plunder*. — Plur., *plundering, pillage*.

rapio, -ere, -uī, -tus [RAP, cf. *rapidus*], 3. v. a., *snatch, seize, carry off*.

rārus, -a, -um [?], adj., *thin, scattered, singly, in small bodies* (of soldiers), *a few at a time, few* (as being wide apart), *uncommon, rare*. — *rārō*, abl. as adv., *rarely, seldom*.

rāsus, -a, -um, p. p. of *rado*.

ratiō, -ōnis [†rati- (ra, in *reor*, + ti) + o], F., *a reckoning, an account, a roll*. — Also, *calculation, reason, prudence, terms, a plan, a scheme, science* (or art, or knowledge, as systematic), *a reason* (as consisting in a calculation), *a manner, a*

method, a consideration, a way. — Also, *a way of thinking, a view, an opinion, a conviction*: *rationem habere, take an account, take account of, have regard to, take into consideration, take measures, take care of*, a mercantile term, cf. *account*; *rei militaris (art, also nature)*; *omnibus rationibus, in all ways, in all respects*; *proeli (character)*; *rationem habere frumentandi (take measures for, etc.)*.

ratis, -is [?], F., *a raft, a bark, a vessel*.

ratus, -a, -um, p. p. of **reor**.

raucus, -a, -um [ravō- (or i, cf. **ravus** and **ravis**, *hoarseness*) + **cus**], adj., *hoarse, roaring* (Hadria).

Rauracī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., *a tribe on the upper Rhine*.

re-, **red**- [abl. of unc. st., perh. akin to **-rus**], insep. prep., *back, again, away, out, un-*. — Esp. implying a giving or taking something which is due, or which creates an obligation by the taking. See **recipio**, **refero**.

rebelliō, -ōnis [rebelli- + o], F., *a renewal of war, an uprising, a rebellion*.

rebellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-bello], I. v. n., *revolt, rebel, renew the war*.

Rebilus, -ī [?], M., *a Roman family name*. See **Caninius**.

recēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus [re-cedo], 3. v. n., *make way back, retire, withdraw, retreat, draw back*.

recēns, -entis [prob. p. of lost verb †*receo*, *be back* (cf. **recipero**)], adj., (? *just coming back*?), *new, fresh, late*.

recēnsēō, -cēnsēre, -cēnsuī, -cēn-

sus [re-censeo, *estimate*], 2. v. a., *review, inspect* (of troops).

receptāculum, -ī [receptā- + **culum**], N., *a retreat, a place of refuge*.

receptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **recipio**.

receptus, -ūs [re-captus, cf. **recipio**], M., *a retreat, a way of retreat, a refuge*.

recessūrus, -a, -um, fut. p. of **recedo**.

recidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus [re-cado], 3. v. n., *fall again, fall back, fall upon* (one after some one else).

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [re-capio], 3. v. a., *take back, get back, recover, take in, receive, admit*: *misericiordiam (admit of)*; *ad se (attach)*. — With reflex., *retreat, fly, return, retire, get off, withdraw, resort*: *e laboribus (recover)*.

reclinātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **reclino**.

reclinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-clino], I. v. a. and n., *lean back, lean over, lean*: *reclinātus, -a, -um, leaning, reclining*.

rēctē [old case-form of **rectus**], adv., *straight, right, rightly*: *recte factum, well done, a good action*.

rēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **rego**.

recumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitūrus [re-†*cumbo*, cf. **cubo**], 3. v. n., *lie down, sink down, fall*.

recuperō (-cip-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†*reciperō*-, from *recō*- (cf. *recens*) + *parus* (cf. *pario*)], I. v. a., *get back, recover, regain*.

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-†*causo* (cf. *excuso*)], I. v. a. and n., (*give*

an excuse for drawing back), refuse, reject, repudiate, object to, spurn.— Absolutely, *make objections* : quin (*refuse to*) ; periculum (*refuse to incur*).

redāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of redigo.

redditus, -a, -um, p. p. of reddo.

reddō, -dere, -didi, -ditus [re (red) -do], 3. v. a., *give back, restore, pay* (something due, cf. re), *render, make return* : supplicatio (*offer*).

redeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itūrus [re- (red-) -eo], irr. v. n., *go back, return, come down again* (collis ad planitiem) : eodem unde redierat (*come*) ; summa (*be referred*).

redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus [re- (red-) -ago], 3. v. a., *bring back, reduce, render, bring* (in potestatem), *make* (one thing out of another).

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēemptus [re- (red-) -emo], 3. v. a., *buy back, redeem, purchase, buy, ransom*.

redintegrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of redintegrō.

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re- (red-) -integrō], 1. v. a., *renew* (again), *restore, revive* (spem).

reditus, -ūs [re- (red-) -titus], M., *a return*.

Redones, -um [Celtic], M. plur., *a tribe of Brittany*.

redūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus [re-duco], 3. v. a., *lead back, bring back, draw back, draw in, extend back, restore*.

referō, -ferre, -ttulī, -lātus [re-fero], irr. v. a., *bring back, carry back, return, bring* (where something belongs), *report*. — Esp. : par referre, *return like for like* ; gratiam (*make*

return, show one's gratitude) ; pedem (*retreat, draw back*) ; se (*retreat, retire*).

reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [re-facio], irr. v. a., *repair, refresh* : se ex labore (*rest*).

refoveō, -fovere, -fōvī, -fōtus [re-foveo, *warm*], 2. v. a., *restore, revive*.

refrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of refringō.

refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctus [re-frango], 3. v. a., *break away, break in* (portas).

refugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus [re-fugio], 3. v. n., *run away, escape, flee back, flee for refuge*

rēgīna, -ae [reg- + ina, cf. gal-lina], F., *a queen*.

Rēgīnus, -ī [reg- + inus, cf. regina], M., *a Roman family name*. See Antistius.

regiō, -ōnis [REG + io, but cf. ratio], F., *a direction, a part* (of the country, etc.), *a region, a country, a district* : recta regione, see rego ; e regione, *over against, just opposite*.

rēgius, -a, -um [reg- + ius], adj., *of a king, a king's, regal, royal*.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [regnō-], 1. v. n., *rule, be in power, reign*.

rēgnum, -ī [REG + num (N. of -nus)], N., *a kingdom, royal power, supreme power, a throne*. — Plur., *the royal power* (of several cases).

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus [akin to rex], 3. v. a., *direct, manage, rule, have control of, control*. — rēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., (*directed*), *straight, right* : recta regione, *in a straight direction, parallel with*. — rēctā, abl. as adv. (sc. viā ?), *straight, directly*.

regredior, -gredi-, -gressus (**re-gra-**dior, *step*), 3. v. dep., *return, withdraw, retreat.*

rēciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [**re-**iacio], 3. v. a., *throw back, hurl back, drive back, throw away, drive off.*

reiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **reicio**.

relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languī, no p. p. [**re-languesco**], 3. v. n., *languish away, be relaxed, be weakened, be deadened.*

relātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **refero**.

relictus, -a, -um, p. p. of **relinquo**.

religiō, -ōnis [?, **re-legio** (cf. **re-lego**)], F., (the orig. meaning unc.), *a religious scruple, a religious observance, the service of the gods, a superstition, a superstitious terror, religion.* — Plur., *religious matters* (of all kinds).

relinquō, -linquere, -liquī, -lictus [**re-linquo**], 3. v. a., *leave behind, leave, abandon.* — Pass., *be left, remain.*

reliquiae, -ārum [**reliquō**- (reduced) + *ia*], F. plur., *remnants.*

reliquus, -a, -um [**re-liquus** (**LIQ** (*leave*) + *us*)], adj., *left, remaining, the rest, the rest of, the other, other* (meaning all other), *the others, all other.* — Also of time, *future, remaining*: *nihil est reliqui, there is nothing left; nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt, made the greatest possible speed.*

remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus [**re-maneo**], 2. v. n., *remain behind, remain, stay.*

remedium, -ī [as if **remedē**- (cf. **medeor**, *heal*) + *ium*], N., *a remedy.*

rēmex, -igis [**remō**- with unc. term. (prob. †*agus*)], M., *an oarsman, a rower.*

Rēmī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Belgæ about Rheims, which was their capital.

rēmigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [**remig-**], I. v. n., *row.*

remigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [**re-**migro], I. v. n., *move back, return.*

remissus, -a, -um, p. p. of **remitto**.

remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [**re-mitto**], 3. v. a., *let go back, send back, throw back.* — Fig., *relax, cease to use, give up*: **remissioribus frigidibus** (*less intense*).

remollēscō, -mollēscere, no perf., no p. p. [**re-mollesco**], 3. v. n., *soften away, soften, become feeble.*

remoror, -ārī, -ātus [**re-moror**], I. v. dep., *delay, retard.*

remōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **removeo**.

removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [**re-moveo**], 2. v. a., *move back, move away, send away, remove, draw away, get out of the way.* — **remōtus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *far away, remote.*

* **Rēmus**, -ī [?], M., one of the Remi.

rēmus, -ī [?], M., *an oar.*

rēnō, -ōnis [?], M., *a skin, a pelt.*

renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**re-novo**, fr. **novus**, *new*], I. v. a., *renew.*

renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**re-nun-**tio], I. v. a., *bring back word, report, proclaim.*

renuō, -nuere, -nuī, no p. p. [**re-nuo**], 3. v. n., (*nod back*, a gesture of denial), *refuse, decline.*

reor, **rērī**, **ratus** [**rē**- (of *res*) or *st. akin*], 2. v. dep., *reckon, think, deem.*

repellō, -pellere, -ppulī, -pulsus [re-pello], 3. v. a., *drive back, repel, repulse, refuse, confute*: ab hac spe repulsi, *disappointed in this hope*.

repente [?], adv., *suddenly*.

repentinus, -a, -um [repente + inus], adj., *sudden, hasty*. — repentinō, abl. as adv., *suddenly*.

reperiō, -perīre, -pperī, -pertus [re-pario], 4. v. a., *find out, discover, find* (by inquiry, cf. invenio).

repositor, -ōris [as if re-partor, cf. reperio], M., *a discoverer, an inventor*.

reptus, -a, -um, p. p. of reperio.

repetō, -petere, -petivī, -petitus [re-peto], 3. v. a., *try to get back, demand back, ask for, seek again, seek*. — repetundae, -ārum (with or without pecuniae), F., *extortion*.

repetundae, see repeto.

repleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus [re-pleo], 2. v. a., *fill up, fill*.

replētus, -a, -um, p. p. of repleo.

rēpō, rēpere, rēpsī, rēptus [SERP], 3. v. n., *creep, crawl*.

repōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [re-pono], 3. v. a., *lay by, store away, deposit, keep*.

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-porto], 1. v. a., *carry back, bring back*: prae-mium, victoriam (*carry off, win*).

repositus, -a, -um, p. p. of repono.

repraesentātiō, -ōnis [repraesentā + tio], F., (*a placing before one*), *a representation, an instance*.

repressus, -a, -um, p. p. of re-primō.

re-primō, -primere, -pressī, -pres-sus [re-premo], 3. v. a., *check*.

repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [repudiō-],

1. v. a., (*spurn with the feet*, cf. tripudium), *spurn, refuse, reject, put away*.

repūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-pugno, fight], 1. v. n., *resist, oppose*.

repulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of repello.

reputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-puto], 1. v. a., *reckon up, think over, reflect upon*.

rēs, rei [akin to reor, reckon], F., *property, business, an affair, a matter, a thing* (in the most general sense), *a fact, an occurrence, a circumstance, an event, a case, an action, an act, an undertaking, a scheme*. — Often to be translated from the context: veritate rei (*statement*); quid rei est, *what's the matter?* his rebus, *by these means, for these reasons, on this account, in this way*; ea res, *this*, (often equivalent to a pronoun); qua in re, *in which*; eius rei, *of this*; his rebus cognitis (*this*); qua ex re futurum, *the result of which would be*; huic rei, *for this purpose, for this*; omnibus rebus, *in every respect, in all ways*; rem deferre, *lay the matter before* (not for consultation, cf. referre), *bring information*; rerum omnium casus, *all accidents*; rem (res) gerere, *operate, conduct operations in war, succeed well or ill*; res gestae, *operations, events, exploits*; rerum natura, *nature, also, state of the case*; omnium rerum summa (*of the whole, of all the forces*); ei rei student (*this branch, cavalry*); cuius rei, *of which* (ships). — Esp., *the affairs* (of a person), *position, interests, condition, fortunes, circumstances*: rem esse in angusto (*discrimine*), (*affairs, things*); com-

mutatio rerum, change of fortunes. — *Esp.*: *res secundae*, or *adversae*, *success, prosperity, or adversity, want of success*; *rebus in arduis (bonis)*, *in adversity (prosperity)*; *res publica*, *the commonwealth, the state, the general interests, public business, politics*; *de re publica*, *in regard to the welfare of the state, about politics*; *res divina* (or plur.), *a religious ceremony, divine service, divine worship and everything pertaining to it, religion*; *res familiaris*, *property*; *res militaris*, *warfare, the art of war*; *res frumentaria*, *grain supply, grain*; *res alicui est*, *one has business with, has to do with, and the like*; *one's affair is*; *res est*, *it is a fact, it is so*; *novae res*, *a new form of government, revolution*.

resarciō, -sarcīre, no perf., -sartus [re-sarcio, *patch*], 4. v. a., *patch up, mend, repair*.

rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissus [re-scindo], 3. v. a., *cut away, tear down, break down, destroy*.

resciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scītus [re-scisco, *inquire*], 3. v. a., *find out, learn, discover*.

reservātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *reservo*.

reservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-servo], 1. v. a., *keep back, reserve, hold in reserve*.

resideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, no p. p. [re-sedeo], 2. v. n., *sit back, sit down, remain behind, remain*.

resistō, -sistere, -stitī, no p. p. [re-sisto], 3. v. n., *stand back, stop, withstand, make a stand, make opposition, resist, remain*.

resonō, -āre, -āvī, no p. p. [re-sono],

1. v. a., *make to resound, fill (with sound)*.

respiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectus [re-†specio], 3. v. a. and n., *look back, look back at, look behind one, see behind one, consider, look at*.

respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsus [re-spondeo, *promise*], 2. v. n., *reply, answer, respond*.

respōnsum, -ī [N. p. p. of *respondeo*], N., *a reply*.

rēs pūblica, see *res*.

restinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of *restinguo*.

restinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxī, -stīnctus [re-stinguo, *quench*], 3. v. a., *extinguish*.

restituō, -stituire, -stituī, -stitūtus [re-statuo], 3. v. a., *set up again, replace, restore, renew, make anew, rebuild*.

restitūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of *restituo*.

rēte, -is [?], N., *a net*.

retentus, -a, -um, p. p. of *retineo*.

retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [re-teneo], 2. v. a., *hold back, restrain, detain, retain, keep*: *memoriam*, *mores* (*preserve*); *passum* (*check*).

retrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [re-traho], 3. v. a., *drag back, bring back (a person)*.

retrō [dat. of †retrō- (re + terus, cf. *intro*)], adv., *back, backward*.

reus, -ī [rē- (of *res*) + *us* (or -ius)], M., *a party (to a suit, res)*. — *Esp.*, *a defendant, the accused*.

revellō, -vellere, -vellī, -volsus [re-vello, *pull*], 3. v. a., *tear away, pull away*.

reversus, -a, -um, p. p. of *revertō*.

revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [re-vertō], 3. v. n., *return* (in perf. tenses).—Pass. as dep. in tenses fr. pres. stem, *return, go back, come back*.

revinciō, -vincire, -vinxī, -vinctus [re-vincio], 4. v. a., *bind back* (to something), *make fast, fasten, bind*.

revinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **revincio**.

revocātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **revoco**.

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-voco], 1. v. a., *call back, call away, call off, recall*.—Also, *apply, refer* (*memoriam ad*).

rēx, rēgis [REG, *rule, as st.*], M., *a king*.

***Rhemius**, -a, -um [?], adj., *of Rheims, Rhemian* (lex).

Rhēnus, -ī [Celtic ?], M., *the Rhine*.

Rhodanus, -ī [Celtic ?], M., *the Rhone*.

Rhodium, -a, -um [Rhodō + ius], adj., *of Rhodes, Rhodian*.—Masc. plur. as noun, *the Rhodians*.

Rhodus, -ī [Gr.], F., *Rhodes*, an island on the coast of Asia Minor.

rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsus [?], 2. v. n., *laugh, smile*.—Fig., *smile, be serene*.

rīpa, -ae [?], F., *a bank*.

rīsus, -ūs [RID (in rideo) + tus], M., *a laugh, laughter*.

rīte [prob. abl. of st. akin to **ritus**, **rite**], adv., *in due form, duly*.

rīvus, -ī [akin to Gr.], M., *a brook, a stream* (not so large as **flumen**).

rixa, -ae [?], F., *a quarrel, a dispute*.

rōbur, -oris [?], N., *oak*.—Fig., *strength* (of resistance), *courage*.

rōbustus, -a, -um [robos- (orig. st.

of **robur**) + **tus**], adj., *strong, vigorous, powerful*.

rogātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **rogo**.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [?], 1. v. a. and n., *ask, request, ask for, beg*.

Rōma, -ae [?], F., *Rome*.

Rōmānus, -a, -um [Roma- + nus], M., *Roman*.—As noun, *a Roman*.

rosa, -ae [?], F., *a rose*.

rōstrum, -ī [ROD- (in **rodo**, *gnaw*) + **trum**], N., *a beak*.—Esp. of a ship, *the beak, the ram* (used as in modern naval fighting).—Plur., *the rostra or rostrum*, a platform in the Roman Forum ornamented with beaks of ships.

rota, -ae [?], F., *a wheel*.

rubeō, -ēre, no perf., no p. p. [rubō- (RUB + us, cf. **robus**, **rubigo**, **ruber**)], 2. v. n., *be red, redden*.

ruber, -bra, -brum [RUB + rus, cf. **rubeo**], adj., *red, ruddy*.

Rubico, -ōnis [†rubicō- (rubō- + cus) + o], M., (*red river*), *the Rubicon*, a small stream between Italy and Cisalpine Gaul, the boundary of Cæsar's province.

rubus, -ī [rub- (in **ruber**) + us], M., (*red-bush*), *a bramble*.

rudō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus [?], 3. v. n., *roar, bellow*.

Rūfus, -ī [prob. dial. form = **rubus**, *red*], M., *a Roman family name*.—Esp., *Minucius Rufus*, master of horse under Fabius, routed by Hannibal. See also **Sulpicius**.

rūga, -ae [?], F., *a wrinkle*.

rugiō, -īre, no perf., no p. p. [?], 4. v. n., (*late*) *roar*.

ruīna, -ae [†ruō- (reduced) + **ina**,

cf. *ruo*], F., a *downfall*.—Fig., a *ruin*.

rūmor, -ōris [?], M., a *rumor* (confused report), *report*.

ruō, -ruere, *ruī*, *rutus* [RU, cf. *ruina*], 3. v. n., *fall*, *rush headlong*, *rush*, *hasten*.

rūpēs, -is [RUP (cf. *rumpo*) + unc. term.], F., a *cliff*, a *rock* (in position).

rūrsus [for *reversus*], adv., *back again*, *back*, *again*, *in turn*.

rūs, *rūris* [?], N., the *country* (opp. to the city), a *field*, *land*, an *estate*.

rūsticus, -a, -um [rus- (orig. st. of rus) + ticus], adj., of the *country*, *country-*, *rustic*.

Rutēnī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe on the borders of Provence.

Rutilus, -ī [prob. akin to *ruber*], M., *red*.—As a Roman family name.—Esp., *Marcus Sempronius Rutilus*, a cavalry officer under Cæsar.

S

S., for *salutem* in letters.

Sabīnus, -ī [unc. st. (cf. *sabulus*, *sand*) + *inus*], M., (*Sabine*).—As a Roman family name. See *Titurius*.

Sabis, -is [Celtic], M., a river of Gaul flowing into the Meuse, now *Sambre*.

saccus, -ī [Gr.], M., a *bag*, a *sack*.

sacer, -cra, -crum [SAC (in *sancio*) + *rus*], adj., *sacred*.—Neut. plur. as noun, *sacred rites*.

sacerdōs, -ōtis [sacrō-dos (DA + tis)], C., (*arranger of sacred rites*?), a *priest*.

sacrificium, -ī [sacrificō- (sacrō-†facus, cf. *beneficus*) + *ium*], N., a *sacrifice*.

sacrificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†sacrificō- (sacrō-†facus, cf. *beneficus*)], 1. v. a., *sacrifice*.

**sacrificus*, -ī [sacrō-†facus, cf. *beneficus*], M., a *priest*.

saeculum (sēc-), -ī [SA (in *sero*, *sow*) + *culum*], N., a *generation*, an *age*, a *century*.

saepe [N. of †*saepis* (perh. same as *saepes*)], adv., *often*.

saepēs, -is [akin to *saepio*, *hedge in*], F., a *hedge*.

saetiger (sēt-), -era, -erum [saeta- (weakened) -ger (in *gero*) + *us*], adj., (*bristle bearing*), *bristly*.

saeviō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus [saevō-, *raging* (as if *saevi*)], 4. v. n., *be angry*, *rage*, *be violent*.

saevus, -a, -um [?], adj., *raging*, *savage*, *ferocious*, *furious*, *fell*, *cruel*.

sagīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sagina-, *stuffing*], 1. v. a., *fatten*, *feed*.

sagitta, -ae [?], F., an *arrow*.

sagittārius, -ī [sagitta- + *arius*], M., an *archer*, a *bowman*.

Saguntum, -ī [?], N., a city of Spain in alliance with Rome, besieged and captured by Hannibal.

saltus, -ūs [SAL (in *salio*, *leap*) + *tus*], M., (*a gap*?), a *wooded height*, a *glade*, a *forest pasture*, a *pass* (in the mountains).

saltō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [saltō- (cf. *salio*, *leap*)], 1. v. n. freq., *dance*.

salūs, -ūtis [salvō- (?), *safe*, + *tis* (cf. *virtus*)], F., *health*, *well-being*, *welfare*, *safety*, *preservation*, *deliver-*

ance, life (as saved or lost), *greeting*; *salute desperata, despairing of saving one's self*; *salutis suae causa, to protect one's self*.

salūtātor, -ōris [salutā- + tor], M., a *saluter*, one who makes complimentary visits, a *visitor*.

salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [salut- (in *salus*)], I. v. a., (*wish health to any one*), *salute, greet*.

sanciō, sancīre, sānxi, sānctus [SAC (in *sacer*)], 4. v. a., *bind* (in some religious manner), *make sacred, solemnly establish* (by law). — **sānctus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *holy, sacred, solemn, inviolable*.

sānctus, -a, -um, p. p. of *sancio*.

sānē [old case-form of *sanus*], adv., *truly, indeed, assuredly*.

sanguis, -inis [?], M., *blood* (as the vital fluid, generally in the body; cf. *cruor*).

sānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sanō-], I. v. a., *make sound, make good, repair*.

Santones, -um (-ī, -ōrum) [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe between the Loire and the Garonne.

sānus, -a, -um [SA- (akin to *salvus*) + nus], adj., *sound* (in body or mind), *sane, discreet*: *nihil pro sano facere* (*nothing discreet*).

sapiēns, -entis [p. of *sapio*, *be wise*], adj., *wise*. — Esp. as noun, a *wise man, a philosopher*.

sapientia, -ae [sapient- + ia], F., *wisdom*.

sarcina, -ae [sarci- (as if st. of *sarcio*, or a kindred noun-st.) + na (F. of *nus*)], F., a *pack* (sewed up?), a *bundle, a burden*. — Plur., *baggage*

(soldiers' *packs*, cf. *impedimenta*, baggage not carried by soldiers).

sarmentum, -ī [perh. SARP, *prune* (but cf. *sarcina*) + mentum], N., (either *prunings* or *tied fagots*), only in plur., *fagots, twigs, brushwood*.

satiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [st. of *satis*, cf. *satietas*], I. v. a., *satisfy, appease, satiate*.

satis [?], adv., *enough, sufficiently, fully, well enough*. — Often with partitive, equivalent to a noun or adj., *enough, sufficient*: *neque . . . satis commode* (*not very, etc.*). — Often a mild expression for *very* and the like.

satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factūrus [satis facio], irr. v. n., *do enough for, satisfy, make amends*.

satisfactiō, -ōnis [satis-factio (cf. *satisfacio*)], F., *amends, excuses, an apology*.

Sāturnus, -ī [st. from SA (in *sero*, *sow*) + turnus, cf. *taciturnus*], M., *Saturn*, an ancient Italian divinity who presided over agriculture. His supremacy was supposed to mark the golden age of primitive virtue and simplicity.

saucius, -a, -um [?], adj., *wounded*.

saxum, -ī [?], N., a *rock, a stone* (as movable), cf. *rupes*.

scālae, -ārum (sing. rare) [perh. *scad-* (in *scando*, *climb*) + *la*], F., a *ladder, a scaling ladder*.

scapha, -ae [Gr., orig. a "dug-out"], F., a *skiff, a boat*.

scelerātus, -a, -um [as if (perh. really) p. p. of *scelero* (*stain with crime*?)], adj., *villainous, accursed*.

scelus, -eris [?, perh. orig.

"crookedness," cf. **pravus** and "wrong"], N., *crime, wickedness*.

scienter [scient- (cf. **scio**) + ter], adv., *knowingly, skilfully*.

scientia, -ae [scient- (cf. **scio**) + ia], F., *knowledge, acquaintance with* (thing in the genitive), *skill*.

scilicet [sci- (imv. of **scio**) -licet], adv., (one may know), *evidently, namely, forsooth, no doubt*.

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus [?], 4. v. a., (*separate?*), *distinguish, know*.

Scīpiō, -ōnis [scīpiō, *staff*], M., a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. *Publius Cornelius Scipio*, repeatedly defeated by Hannibal. — 2. *Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus Maior*, who defeated Hannibal at Zama. — 3. *Publius Cornelius Scipio Æmilianus Africanus Minor*, see **Aemilianus**.

scissor, -ōris [SCID (in **scindo**, *cut*) + tor], M., *a carver*.

Scopās, -ae [Gr.], M., a very rich Thessalian in the time of Simonides.

scorpiō, -ōnis [?], M., *a scorpion; a machine for throwing darts*. Hence, *a shot from an engine* (of that kind).

scrībō, scribere, scrīpsī, scrīptus [?], 3. v. a. and n., *write, give an account* (in writing), *state*.

scrīnium, -ī [?], N., *a box, a chest, a despatch box, a portfolio*.

scrobis, -is [prob. akin to **scribo**], M. and F., *a ditch, a pit*.

scūtum, -ī [?], N., *a shield*, of the Roman legion, made of wood, convex, oblong (2½ by 4 ft.), covered with leather.

sē-, **sēd-** [old abl. of unc. 'st.],

prep., mostly as adv. in comp., *apart, away, aside, off, un-*.

sē, see **sui**.

sēbum, -ī [?], N., *tallow*.

sēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus [secedo], 3. v. n., *go away, withdraw*.

secō, secāre, secuī, sectus [?], 1. v. a., *cut, reap*.

sēcētus, -a, -um [p. p. of **se- cerno**, *separate*], adj., *separate, secret, concealed*.

sectiō, -ōnis [SEC (in **seco**) + tio], F., *a cutting*. Hence (prob. from dividing in lots), *a lot of booty, booty*.

secundus, -a, -um [partic. in -dus of **sequor**], adj., *following*. Hence, *second*. — Also (as not opposing), *favorable, favoring, successful*: **proelium secundum nostris** (*in favor of*); **mensae secundae**, *dessert*. — **secundum**, neut. acc. as prep. with acc., *along, in the direction of, in accordance with*.

secūris, -is [SEC + unc. term.], F., *an axe*. — Esp., *the axe of the lictor* (as a symbol of the power of life and death).

sēcūrus, -a, -um [se-cura- (weakened and decl. as adj.)], adj., *free from care, untroubled, quiet, serene*.

sēcus [SEQU (in **sequor**) + unc. term.], adv., (*inferior*), *otherwise*: **non secus**, *as well as*. — Compar., **secius** (**setius**), *less*: **nihilo secius**, *none the less, nevertheless*.

secūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **sequor**.

sed [abl. of unc. st., cf. **se**], conj., *apart* (cf. **seditio** and **securus**), *but* (stronger than **autem** or **at**), *but yet*.

sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessūrus [SED, prob. through adj.-st.], 2. v. n., *sit, sit down*. — Also, *remain, linger*.

sēdēs, -is [SED + es (M. and F. term. corresponding to N. -us)], F., *a seat*. Hence, *an abode, a dwelling* (both in sing. and plur.), *a settlement, a place, a spot*.

sēditio, -ōnis [sed- + titio (I + tio)], F., *a secession, a mutiny, an uprising, a sedition*.

Sedulius, -ī [?], M., a leader of the Lemovices.

Sedūnī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Alps.

Segonax (-ovax), -actis [Celtic], M., a British king.

Segontiācī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Britain.

sēgregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [segreg- (se-grex, *apart from the herd*)], 1. v. a., *separate, exclude*.

Segusiāvī (-ānī), -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a people west of the Rhone, near modern Lyons.

sēiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūctus [se-iungo], 3. v. a., *separate*.

sella, -ae [SED (*sit*) + la], F., *a seat, a chair*.

sēmēsus, -a, -um [semi-esus], adj., *half eaten*.

sēmet, see **-met**.

sēmīta, -ae [se- (sed-) + tmita (MI, in. meo, *go*, cf. comes)], F., *a side path, a by-path, a path* (over the mountains).

semper [†semō- (?) (in semel) -per (cf. parumper)], adv., *through all time, all the time, always*.

Semprōnius, -ī [?], M., a Roman

gentile name. See **Rutilus**, **Gracchus**, and **Longus**.

senātor, -ōris [†senā- (as if verb-st. akin to **senex**, perh. really so, cf. **senatus**) + tor], M., (*an elder*). Hence, *a senator*.

senātōrius, -a, -um [senator- + ius], adj., *of senators, senatorial*.

senātus, -ūs [†senā- (as if, perh. really, verb-st. akin to **senex**)], M., *a senate* (council of old men). — Esp., *the senate* (of Rome, the great body of nobles acting as an administrative council).

senecta, -ae [senec- (as st. of **senex**) + ta], F., *age, old age*.

senēscō, -ere, senuī, no p. p. [st. akin to **senex** + sco], 3. v. n., *grow old, wane*.

senex [seni- + cus (reduced)], gen. **senis** [?, cf. *seneschal*], adj. (only M.), *old*. — Esp. as noun, *an old man* (above forty-five). — Compar. **senior**, M. and F.

sēnī, -ae, -a [sec(s) + ni], distrib. num. adj., *six each, six* (where *each* is implied in Eng. by the context).

senium, -ī [seni- (cf. **senex**) + ium], N., *old age, senility*.

Senones, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul on the Seine, near Sens (their chief town, anciently Agedincum).

sententia, -ae [†sentent- (p. of simpler pres. of **sentio**) + ia], F., (*feeling, thinking*). Hence, *a way of thinking, an opinion, a view, a determination, a sentiment, a feeling, a purpose, a design, a wish, a desire*. — Esp. officially, *a judgment, an*

opinion, a sentence, a vote: in ea sententia permanere (of that mind).

sentio, sentire, sēnsī, sēnsus [?], 4. v. a., *perceive, feel, find* (by the senses), *know, see, think* (of an opinion made up), *learn about, learn, discover: alia sentire, have other feelings.*

sentis, -is [?], M., *a briar.*

sēparātim [as if acc. of †separatis (separā- + tis)], adv., *separately.*

sēparātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **separo**.

sēparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [se- (sed-) paro], 1. v. a., (*get apart?*), *separate.* — Esp., **sēparātus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *separate.*

sepeliō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), sepultus [?], 4. v. a., *bury.*

sēpositus, -a, -um [p. p. of **sepono**, *set apart*], adj., *choice, select.*

septem [?], indecl. num. adj., *seven.*

September, -bris, -bre [septem + bris], adj., *of September.*

septentrionēs (septem triones), -um, M. plur., *the seven plough oxen* (the stars of the Great Bear). Hence, *the north.*

Septimius, -ī [septimō- + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Septimius*, one of the murderers of Pompey.

septimus, -a, -um [septem + mus, cf. **primus**], num. adj., *seventh.*

septingentēsimus, -a, -um [septingenti- (reduced) + esimus], num. adj., *seven hundredth.*

septingentī, -ae, -a [septem (in some form) -centum (?)], num. adj., *seven hundred.*

septuagēsimus, -a, -um [septua-

ginta (reduced) + esimus], num. adj., *seventieth.*

septuāgintā [from **septem**, in some unc. manner], indecl. num. adj., *seventy.*

sepulcrum, -ī [†sepel- (as if root of **sepelio**) + crum], N., *a grave, a tomb, a sepulchre.*

Sēquanus, -a, -um [Celtic], adj., *of the Sequani* (a tribe of Gaul, on the Rhone, north of Macon). — Masc. sing., *one of the Sequani, a Sequanian.* — Masc. plur., *the Sequani.*

sequor, sequī, secūtus [SEQU], 3. v. dep., *follow, accompany: eventus (ensue); fidem (hold to, remain under, come under, surrender one's self to, etc.): aestūs commutationem (take advantage of).*

sēriō [abl. of **serius**], adv., *in earnest, seriously.*

sermō, -ōnis [SER (in **sero**, *twine*) + mo (prob. -mō- + o)], M., (*series?*). Hence, *conversation* (continuous series of speech), *speech, discourse, talk, intercourse: Graecus (language).*

serō, serere, sēvī, satus [SA, redupl.], 3. v. a., *plant, sow.*

serpēns, -entis [p. of **serpo**, *creep*], M., *a serpent, a snake.*

sērus, -a, -um [?], adj., *late.* — **sērō**, abl. as adv., *late, too late: serius ocius, sooner or later.*

servātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **servo**. **servilis**, -e [servi- (as if st. of **servus** or akin, cf. **servio**) + lis], adj., *of slaves, of a slave, servile: in servilem modum, as with slaves (i.e. by torture).*

Servilius, -ī [servili- + ius], M., a

Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Cnæus Servilius Geminus*, an ex-consul killed at Cannæ.

serviō, -īre, -iī (-īvi), -itūrus [servi- (as if st. of *servus* or akin)], 4. v. n., *be a slave* (to some one or something); *rumoribus* (*be blindly guided by, follow*).

servitūs, -ūtis [†servitu- (*servō* + *tus*) + *tis*, cf. *iuventus*, *sementis*], F., *slavery, servitude*.

servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [servō-], 1. v. a., *watch, guard, keep, preserve*: *praesidia* (*hold, maintain*).

servulus, -ī [servō- + *lus*, dim. end.], M., *a little slave, a mean slave*.

servus, -ī [unc. root (SER, *bind*?) + *vus*], M., *a slave, a servant*.

sēsē, see *sui*.

sēsquipedālis, -e [†sesquiped- (*a foot and a half*) + *alis*], adj., *of a foot and a half, eighteen-inch* (beams, etc.).

sēstertius, -ī [semis- (*half*) -*tertius* (*third*)], M. of adj. (with *nummus*), *two and a half asses, a sesterce*, a sum of money worth about 5 cents.

seu, see *sive*.

sevērē [old case-form of *severus*], adv., *gravely, severely*.

sevērītās, -ātis [severō- + *tas*], F., *strictness, harshness, severity*.

sevērus, -a, -um [?], adj., *stern, strict, severe, harsh*.

sēvocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [se (*sed*) -*voco*], 1. v. a., *call aside, call out* (aside).

sex [?], indecl. num. adj., *six*.

sexāgēsimus, -a, -um [sexaginta (reduced) + *esimus*], num. adj., *sixtieth*.

sexāgintā [sex + unc. term.], indecl. num. adj., *sixty*.

sexcentī (ses-), -ae, -a [sex-centum], num. adj., *six hundred*.

Sextilius, -ī [sextili- + *ius*], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Sextilius*, a Roman prætor, who expelled Marius from Africa.

Sextius, -ī [sextō- + *ius*], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Titus Sextius*, a legatus of Cæsar.

sextus, -a, -um [sex + *tus*], num. adj., *sixth*.

sī [loc. prob. akin to *se*], conj., (*in this way, in this case, so, cf. sic*), *if, in case*. — Esp., *to see if, whether*.

sibi, see *sui*.

sīc [si-ce, cf. *hic*], adv., *so, in this manner, in such a manner, thus*: *sic . . . ut, so . . . that, so well . . . that*. — Equal to *hoc, this, such*: *sic reperiebat* (*this*). — **sīcutī**, as conj., *just as, just as if*.

sīca, -ae [prob. akin to *seco, cut*], F., *a dagger*.

siccītās, -ātis [siccō- + *tas*], F., *dryness, drought, dry weather*. — Plur. in same sense, of different occasions.

siccō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [siccō-, *dry*], 1. v. a., *dry, drain*.

Sicilia, -ae [Gr.], F., *Sicily*.

sīcut (**sīcutī**), see *sic*.

sīdus, -eris [SED + *us*], N., (*position*?), *a heavenly body*.

signifer, -erī [signo-fer (*FER* (*bear*) + *us*)], M., *a standard-bearer*.

significātiō, -ōnis [significā- + *tio*], F., *a making of signs, a signal, an intimation, a warning*.

significō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [†sig-

nificō- (signō-ficus, cf. facio)], I. v. n., *make signs, indicate, make known, spread news, give an intimation, give information, show, mean, signify*: hac re significari, *this is an indication*; de fuga.

signō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [signō-], I. v. a., *seal, sign*.

signum, -ī [unc. root + num (N. of nus)], N., (*a device?*), *a sign, a signal*. — Esp., *a standard* (for military purposes, carried by any body of men, consisting of some device in metal on a pole). — signa convertere, *wheel, change front, face about*; signa inferre, *advance to attack, charge*; conversa signa inferre, *change front and charge*; signa ferre, *move, move on, march*; signa subsequi, *keep the line of march*; signa relinquere, *leave the ranks*; a signis discedere, *desert, leave the ranks*; ad signa consistere, *rally around the standard*.

silentium, -ī [silent- + ium], N., *stillness, silence*. — silentiō, abl. as adv., *in silence, silently*.

Silēnus, -ī [Gr.], M., a Greek historian.

sileō, -ēre, -uī, no p. p. [?], 2. v. n., *be silent*.

Silius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Titus Silius*, a military tribune in Cæsar's army.

silva, -ae [?], F., *a forest, woods, forests*. — Plur. in same sense.

silvester (-tris), -tris, -tre [silva- (as if silves-, cf. palustris) + tris], adj., *woody, wooded*.

sīmia, -ae [simō- (*flat-nosed*) + ia (F. of -ius)], F., *an ape, a monkey*.

similis, -e [†simō- (cf. simplex, semper) + lis], adj., *like, similar*.

similiter [simili- + ter], adv., *similarly, in a similar way*.

similitūdō, -inis [simili- + tudo], F., *likeness, resemblance (to, gen.)*.

Simōnidēs, -is [Gr.], M., a Greek lyric poet.

simul [N. of similis, cf. facul], adv., *at the same time, together with (one)*: simul atque (or without atque), *as soon as*; simul . . . simul, *both . . . and*; simul cum dicto, *no sooner said than done*.

simulācrum, -ī [simulā- + crum], N., *an image, a likeness, a phantom*.

simulātiō, -ōnis [simulā- + tio], F., *a pretence, a show, deceit*.

simulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [simili- (as if, perh. orig., †simulō-)], I. v. a., *pretend, make a show of (something), feign*.

simultās, -ātis [simili- (cf. simul) + tas], F., (*likeness?, equality?*), *rivalry, jealousy, grudge*.

sincērē [old case-form of since-rus], adv., *honestly, truly, frankly*.

sine [?], prep. with abl., *without*.

singillātīm (singul-) [as if singulā- (singulus) + tim (acc. of -tis)], adv., *singly, one by one, individually*.

singulāris, -e [singulō- + aris], adj., *solitary, single*. Hence, *unique, extraordinary, unparalleled, unequalled, marvellous*.

singulī, -ae, -a [sim (in similis) + unc. term.], adj., *one at a time, single, each, one by one, several (severally)*. — Often to denote distribution, *one to each*: singuli singulos, (with verb), *one . . . each*; singulis

singulas virgas (one to each); *ab singulis legionibus singulos legatos discedere* (each from his); *inter singulas legiones* (between each two, one to each); *sevocare singulos* (individuals, one by one).

sinister, -tra, -trum [?], adj., *left*: *sub sinistra (manu)*, on the left.

sinistrōrsus [sinistro-vorsus (versus)], adv., to the left.

sinō, *sinere*, *sīvī*, *situs* [SI (of unc. meaning)], 3. v. a., (lay down, cf. *pono*), leave. Hence, *permit, allow*. — In orig. meaning, *situs*, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *lying, situated*.

sinus, -ūs [?], M., a bend, a fold, a curve, a bellying (swelling) sail. — Also, a bay.

sistō, -ere, *stitī*, *status* [STA redupl.], 3. v. a., set, place. — **status**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., set, fixed, stated.

Sisypheus, -ī [Gr.], M., mythical founder of Corinth, son of Æolus, who was killed by Theseus and condemned forever to roll to the top of a hill a stone which continually rolled back again.

sitiō, -īre, -īvī (-iū), no p. p. [siti-], 4. v. n., be thirsty, be dry. — *sitiēns*, -entis, p. as adj., thirsty, parched, dry.

sitis, -is [?], F., thirst.

situs, -ūs [SI + tus], M., (a laying, a leaving), situation, position, site.

situs, -a, -um, p. p. of *sino*.

sive, seu [si-ve], conj., if either, or if: *sive . . . sive*, either . . . or, whether . . . or.

sobrius, -a, -um [?, cf. *ebrius*], adj., sober, not drunk.

socer, -erī [?], M., a father-in-law. **societās**, -ātis [sociō- + tas], F., an alliance, a league, fellowship, society, company.

socius, -ī [SEQU (follow) + ius], M., a companion, an ally, a comrade.

sōl, *sōlis* [?], M., the sun. — Also personified, *Sol*, the Sun. — See also under *orior*, *occido*, *occasus*.

sōlācium (*sōlāt-*), -ī [†solacō- + ium (cf. *solor*, console)], N., a consolation, a comfort.

solea, -ae [sōlō- (sole) + ea (F. of *eus*)], F., a sole.

soleō, *solēre*, *solitus* [?], 2. v. n., be wont, be accustomed: *ut solent*, as is usual.

sōlitārius, -a, -um [sōlō- (as if *sōlitō-*) + *arius*], adj., lonely, solitary.

sōlitūdō, -inis [solō- + tudo], F., loneliness. Hence, a wilderness.

sollertia, -ae [sollert- (sollō- + *ars*, with complete skill, cf. *sollicito*) + *ia*], F., skill, ingenuity, shrewdness.

sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sollicitō- (sollō-citus, entirely roused)], 1. v. a., stir up, instigate, make overtures to, tamper with, approach (with money, etc.), offer bribes to, tempt. — Also, disturb, trouble, make anxious.

sollicitus, -a, -um [†sollō-citus], adj., (violently agitated), troubled, anxious.

Solōn, -ōnis [Gr.], M., a famous lawgiver of Athens, one of the seven wise men of Greece.

sōlor, -ārī, -ātus [?], 1. v. dep., console, comfort, cheer.

solum, -ī [?], N., the soil, the

ground, the foundation, the bottom: *solum agri, the bare ground*; *ab infimo solo, from the very bottom*.

sōlus, -a, -um [?], adj., *alone, only*. — *sōlum*, n. as adv., *alone, only*.

solūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of *solvo*.

solvō, *solvere*, *solvi*, *solūtus* [prob. *se-luo, loose*], 3. v. a., *unbind, untie, loose*: *poenam (pay)*; *animum (relax, unbend)*. — Esp. with *navis*, *weigh anchor, set sail*. — Also without *navis*, abs., *set sail*. — *solūtus*, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *exempt, free*.

somniō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [somniō-], 1. v. a., *dream*.

somnium, -ī [somnō- (reduced) + *ium*], n., *a dream*.

somnus, -ī [SOP (cf. *sopio, put to sleep*) + *nus*], m., *sleep*: *somno se dare, go to sleep*.

sonitus, -ūs [soni- (as st. of *sono*) + *tus*], m., *a sound, noise*.

sonōrus, -a, -um [perh. *sonor* + *us*, but cf. *decorus*], adj., *resounding, roaring, noisy*.

sonus, -ī [SON + *us*], m., *a sound*.

sopor, -ōris [SOP (cf. *sopio, put to sleep*) + *or*], m., *sleep*.

sordidē [old case-form of *sordidus*], adv., *meanly, basely*.

sordidus, -a, -um [sordi- (*filth*) + *dus*], adj., *unclean, foul, mean*.

soror, -ōris [?], f., *a sister*.

sors, *sortis* [perh. SER (in *sero*) + *tis*, but the orig. sense is unc.], f., *a lot* (for divination), *chance, fate*.

sortior, -īrī, -ītus [sorti-], 4. v. dep., *cast lots, draw lots*. — Hence, *obtain by lot*: *animas (with the destiny of, be endowed with)*.

sortitus, -a, -um, p. p. of *sortior*.

Sōsilus, -ī [Gr.], m., a Spartan teacher and historian.

Sparta, -ae [Gr.], f., also called *Lacedæmon*, the capital of Laconia.

spatiōsus, -a, -um [spatiō- + *osus*], adj., *large, spacious*.

spatium, -ī [?], n., *space, room, extent, a space, a distance, a region*.

— Transf., *time, space of time, lapse of time, a period*. — *quantum fuit diei spatium, as much as there was time for*; *intermisso spatio, after an interval*; *spatia omnis temporis, the whole course of time*.

speciēs, -ēi [SPEC + *ies* (akin to -ia)], f., (*a sight*, prob. both act. and pass.). — Passively, *a sight, a show, an appearance, a pretence, likeness, form* (humana): *summa species earum stantium, a perfect appearance of standing trees* (lit. 'of them standing').

spectāculum, -ī [spectā- + *culum*], n., *a sight, a show, a spectacle*.

spectātor, -ōris [spectā- + *tor*], m., *a spectator, a witness*.

spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [spectō-], 1. v. a. and n., *look at, behold, see, regard, have regard to, lie towards* (of a country), *face*.

speculātor, -ōris [speculā- + *tor*], m., *a spy, a scout*.

speculātōrius, -a, -um [speculātor + *ius*], adj., (*of a scout*), *scouting, reconnoitring* (navigia).

spēlunca, -ae [Gr.], f., *a cave, a cavern*.

spernō, -ere, *sprēvi*, *sprētus* [?, SPER], 3. v. a., *remove* (prob. orig. with violence), *spurn, scorn, reject*.

spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [spes-

(prob. orig. st. of spēs) with r for s],
I. v. a. and n., *hope, hope for, expect.*

spēs, -eī [?], F., *hope, expectation*:
summam (magnam) in spem venire,
have the greatest (great) hope.

spīna, -aē [perh. akin to spica,
ear of grain], F., *a thorn.*

spīritus, -ūs [spiri- (as st. of
spiro, *breathe*) + tus], M., *breath.* —
Also, *spirit.* Hence, in plur., *pride,*
spirit, arrogance, temper.

splendidus, -a, -um [†splendō- (cf.
splendeo, *shine*) + dus], adj., *mag-*
nificent, grand, splendid.

spoliātus, -a, -um, p. p. of spolio.

spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [spoliō-,
booty], I. v. a., *despoil, strip.* — Fig.,
rob, deprive, despoil.

spondeō, -ēre, spondō, spōnsus
[SPOND, *pour* (libations), through
noun-st.], 2. v. a., *promise* (sol-
emly).

spontis (gen.), sponte (abl.) [prob.
akin to spondeo, *promise*], F., only
with possess. or gen. (poetic), *of one's*
own accord, voluntarily, on one's
own account.

Spūrinna, -ae [?], M., a Roman
family name. — Esp., *Vestitius Spu-*
rinna, the soothsayer who warned
Cæsar to beware of the Ides of
March.

squālor, -ōris [SQUAL (cf. squalleo,
be rough) + or], M., (*roughness*),
filth, squalor.

stabiliō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus [sta-
bili-], 4. v. a., *make firm.*

stabilis, -e [STA (cf. sto) + bilis],
adj., *firm, enduring, stable.*

stabilitās, -ātis [stabili- + tas], F.,
steadiness, firmness.

statim [acc. of †statis (sta- +
tis)], adv., (*as one stands, on the*
spot), *at once, forthwith, immediately.*

statiō, -ōnis [apparently STA + tio,
prob. †stati- + o, whence the com-
mon -tio used as ending without
regard to its origin], F., (*a standing*),
a position, a post, a picket: in sta-
tione, *on guard.*

statua, -ae [statu- (cf. sto) + a
or va)], F., *a statue.*

statuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [statu-],
3. v. a., *set up.* Hence, *establish,*
resolve upon, settle upon, fix upon,
determine, consider (make up one's
mind).

statūra, -ae [statu- + ra (F. of
rus)], F., (*a standing*), *stature, size,*
height.

status, -a, -um, p. p. of sisto.

status, -ūs [STA + tus], M., (*a*
standing), *a position, a condition, a*
state, a situation.

stercus, -oris [?], N., *dung, ordure,*
filth.

sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātus [STER],
3. v. a., *scatter, spread.* — Pass. im-
pers., sterni, *a bed to be made.*

stilus, -ī [?], M., a pointed instru-
ment for writing on wax tablets, *a*
style, a pen.

stimulus, -ī [stigmō- (STIG + mus)
+ lus], M., *a goad, a spur.* — As
name of a calthorp or instrument
of defence, "*spur.*"

stipendiārius, -a, -um [stipendiō-
+ arius], adj., *tributary, under trib-*
ute, subject to tribute. — Masc. as
noun, *a tributary.*

stipendium, -ī [stipi-, *gift*, and st.
akin to pendo (perh. †pendus, cf.

pendulus) + **ium**], N., *a tribute*. — Also, *pay* (for military service), *service*, *a campaign*.

stīpes, **stīpit**is [?], M., *a trunk* (of a tree).

stō, **stāre**, **stetī**, **statūrus** [STA], I. v. n., *stand, be placed*: **decreto** (*stand by, abide by*).

strāgēs, -is [STER, STRA (in **sterno**) + unc. term.], F., *overthrow, defeat, slaughter*.

strepitus, -ūs [strepī- (as st. of **strepo**, *roar*) + **tus**], M., *a noise, a confused din, a din, a rattling*.

strictus, -a, -um, p. p. of **stringo**.

stringō, -ere, **strīnxī**, **strictus** [STRIG, *squeeze?*], 3. v. a., *bind*. — Esp. of weapons, *bare, draw, unsheathe*.

strūctor, -ōris [STRUG (in **struo**) + **tor**], M., (*one who spreads the table*), *a server*.

studeō, **studēre**, **studuī**, no p. p. [studō- (or †studa-), cf. **studium**], 2. v. n., *be eager for, be devoted to, pay attention to, attend to, desire* (a thing in the dat. or with infin.), *strive*.

studiōsē [old case-form of **studiosus**], adv., *eagerly, zealously*.

studium, -ī [prob. †studō- + **ium**, cf. **studeo**], N., *eagerness, zeal, devotion, fondness* (for a thing), *enthusiasm*. Hence, *a pursuit* (to which one is devoted), *an occupation*.

stultē [old case-form of **stultus**], adv., *foolishly*.

stultitia, -ae [stultō- (*foolish*) + **tia**], F., *folly*.

stultus, -a, -um [STOL (in **stolidus**) + **tus**], adj., *foolish*.

stupēns, -entis [p. of **stupeo**, *be amazed*], adj., *amazed, dazed, confused*.

suādeō, -ēre, **suāsī**, **suāsus** [suadō- (SUAD + **us**, cf. **malesuada**)], 2. v. a. and n., *advise, counsel*.

suāvītās, -ātis [suavi- (*sweet*) + **tas**], F., *agreeableness, attractiveness*.

sub [unc. case, prob. abl., akin to **super**], adv. (in comp.) and prep.:

a. With abl. (of rest in a place), *under*: **sub oculis**, *before the eyes*. — Also, *just by*: **sub colle** (*at the foot of*); **sub sinistra**, *at the left*; **sub muro**, *just under the wall*; **sera sub nocte**, *late at night*.

b. With acc. (of motion towards a place), *under, close to*. — Of time, *just at, just before*: **sub vesperum**.

c. In comp., *under, up* (from under), *away* (from beneath), *secretly* (underhand), *in succession, a little, slightly*.

subāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **subigo**.

subdolus, -a, -um [sub-dolus, *artifice*], adj., *cunning, wily*.

subdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [sub-duco], 3. v. a., *draw up, lead up, take away, remove secretly*: **navis** (*beach, draw up*). — With reflex., *withdraw*.

subductiō, -ōnis [sub-†ductio, cf. **subduco**], F., *a drawing up, a beaching* (of ships).

subeō, -īre, -īī, -ītus [sub-eo], irr. v. a., *go under, undergo, submit to* (*iuga*), *encounter, come up, approach*.

subfodiō (suff-), -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus [sub-fodio], 3. v. a., *dig under, stab* (underneath).

subfossus, -a -um, p. p. of **subfodio**.

subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [sub-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw under, place below, place under, subject, expose to*. — Also, *throw up*. — **subiectus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *lying near*.

subiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **subicio**.

subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus [sub-ago], 3. v. a., *bring under, subject, subdue*.

subitus, -a, -um [p. p. of **subeo**], adj., *(coming up secretly from under), sudden, suddenly* (as if adv. taken with the verb), *quick, hasty*. — **subitō**, abl. as adv., *suddenly, of a sudden*.

sublātus, -a, -um [sub-(t)latus], p. p. of **tollo**.

sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sub-levō], 1. v. a., *lighten up, lighten, raise, raise up, assist, render assistance*. — With reflex., *rise up*.

publica, -ae [?], F., *a pile*.

subluō, -luere, no perf., -lūtus [sub-luo], 3. v. a., *wash underneath, wash: flumen collis radices*.

submergō, -mergere, -mersī, -mersus [sub-mergo], 3. v. a., *submerge, sink, swallow up in the waves*.

subministrō (sum-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sub-ministro], 1. v. a., *supply (as needed), furnish (from time to time), provide*.

submittō (sum-), -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [sub-mitto], 3. v. a., *send up, send to one's assistance, send as reënforcements, send (as help), reënforce*.

submōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **submoveo**.

submoveō (sum-), -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [sub-moveo], 2. v. a., *drive off, dislodge*.

subrēpō, -rēpere, -rēpsī, -rēptus [sub-repo], 3. v. a. and n., *creep under, steal into*.

subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus [sub-ruo], 3. v. a., *dig under, undermine*.

subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus [subsequor], 3. v. dep., *follow up, follow on, succeed to*.

subsidium, -ī [sub-†sedium (SED + ium)], N., *(a sitting in reserve), a reserve, a reënforcement, help, relief, support, assistance, resources, provisions: subsidio mittere, send assistance; subsidium ferre, rescue; subsidium comparare, make provision*.

subsistō, -sistere, -stitī, no p. p. [sub-sisto], 3. v. n., *stop behind, halt, remain, stay: ancorae (hold)*.

subsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus [subsum], irr. v. n., *be under, be near, be close by (a certain distance off), be near at hand, approach*.

subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [sub-traho], 3. v. a., *take away, (underneath), carry away, take away (generally)*.

subvectiō, -ōnis [sub-vectio, cf. **subveho**], F., *bringing up, transportation, conveyance*.

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus [sub-cedo], 3. v. n., *come up, advance, come in place of, succeed to, take the place of, come next*. — Also, *be successful, prosper*.

succendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsus [sub-†cando (cf. **candeo**, *glow*)], 3. v. a., *set on fire (as if beneath)*.

succēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **succendo**.

successus, -ūs [sub-cessus (cf. **succedo**)], M., *a coming up, an advance, a close approach, success*.

succidō -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [sub-caedo], 3. v. a., *cut under, cut down*.

succinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **succingo**.

succingō, -cingere, -cīnxī, -cīnctus [sub-cingo], 3. v. a., *gird about, gird up*. — **succinctus**, p. p. as noun, *a waiter*.

succinō, -cinere, no perf., no p. p. [sub-cano, *sing*], 3. v. n., *accord, agree, chime in*.

succīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **succido**.

succumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitūrus [sub-cumbo], 3. v. n., *lie down (under), give way, succumb*.

succurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursūrus [sub-curro], 3. v. n., *rush to support, rush to one's rescue, succor*.

sudis, -is [?], F., *a stake*.

sūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sūd, prob. through adj.-st., †sudō-], 1. v. n., *sweat, perspire*.

Suessiōnes, -um [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of the Belgians between the Marne and the Isère. Their town Noviodunum was later called from them Soissons.

Suēvus (Suēb-), -a, -um [Teutonic], adj., *Swabian*. — As noun, *a Swabian* (man or woman). — m. plur., *Swabians*, name of the tribes inhabiting a large part of Germany.

suffectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **sufficio**.

sufficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [sub-facio], 3. v. a., *make (appoint) in place of, substitute, elect as successor, supply the place of*. Hence, *suffice, be sufficient, be adequate*.

suffigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus [sub-figo], 3. v. a., *fasten to, nail to: cruce suffigere, crucify*.

suffocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†suffocō- (sub-faux, throat)], 1. v. a., *choke, throttle, strangle*.

suffrāgātor, -ōris [suffragā- (*vote for*) + tor], m., *a favorer, a supporter, a partisan*.

suffrāgium, -ī [akin to **suffringo**, *break up*], n., (*a pastern bone, or a potsherd, either used as a ballot*), *a ballot, vote*.

Sugambri (Sig-), -ōrum [Teutonic], m., *a German tribe*.

suggestus, -ūs [sub-gestus, cf. **sugerō**], m., (*earth brought up*), *a raised mound, a tribunal, a platform* (whence the Roman commander addressed his troops).

suī (prop. gen. n. of **suus**), sibi, sē [sva], reflex. pron., *himself*, etc. — Often to be translated by the personal, *he*, etc., also *each other*. — Esp.: *inter se, from, with, by, etc., each other; inter sese dant, give each other, exchange; per se, of himself*, etc. (without outside influence or excitement). See **ipse**.

Sulla, -ae [?], m., *a Roman family name*. — Esp., *Lucius Cornelius Sulla*, the great partisan of the nobility, and opponent of Marius, called the Dictator Sulla.

Sulpicius, -ī [?], m., *a Roman gentile name*. — Esp.: 1. *Publius Sulpicius Galba*, a Roman consul in Hannibal's time. — 2. *Sulpicius Blitho*, a Roman historian. — 3. *Servius Sulpicius Rufus*, tribune of the people in B.C. 88, a partisan of Marius, killed by Sulla. — 4. *Caius Sulpicius Gallus*, a tribune of the soldiers who predicted an

eclipse of the moon. — 5. *Sulpicius Rufus*, a legatus of Cæsar. — 6. *Servius Sulpicius Galba*, a legatus of Cæsar.

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus [ES, cf. *am, is*], irr. v. n., *be* (exist). — Also, with weakened force, *be* (as a mere copula); *eorum est, they have*; *multum sunt in venationibus (much engaged)*. — *futūrum*, -ī, f. p. N. as noun, *the future*.

summa, -ae [F. of *summus*, as noun], F., *the top, the sum, the total, the main-part*: *summa omnium rerum, the whole amount*; *belli (the general management, the chief control)*; *imperii (the chief command, the supremacy)*; *imperii bellicque administrandi (the chief management, etc.)*; *rerum consiliorumque (chief control)*; *summam victoriae, the whole victory*; *summa pecuniae (a sum)*.

summus, see *superus*.

sūmō, sūmere, sūpsī, sūptus [sub-emo, *take*], 3. v. a., *take away, take, get, assume*: *poenas (inflict, cf. capere)*; *laborem (spend)*.

sūmptuārius, -a, -um [sumptu- (*expense*) + *arius*], adj., *of expense, sumptuary*.

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um [sumptu- + *osus*], adj., *expensive, costly*.

super [mutilated case-form of *superus*], prep. with acc., *above, upon, on*. — Also, *during, at*.

superātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *supero*.

superbia, -ae [superbō- (reduced) + *ia*], F., *pride, arrogance*.

superbus, -a, -um [super (as st.) + *bus*, cf. *morbus*], adj., *proud*,

haughty, disdainful. — Also, *splendid, stately*.

Superbus, see *Tarquinius*.

superior, see *superus*.

superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [superō-], 1. v. a. and n., *overtop*. Hence, *get the upper hand of, overcome, conquer, defeat, be superior to, prevail, overmatch, survive (vita), surpass*.

supersedeō, -sedēre, -sedī, -sessūrus [super-sedeo], 2. v. n., *sit above*. Hence, *be above, decline, refrain from*.

supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus [super-sum], irr. v. n., *be over and above, be left, remain, survive*.

superus, -a, -um [†*supe-* (st. akin to *sub*, perh. same) + *rus* (cf. *inferus*)], adj., *higher, being above* (of space only). — Compar. (in wider meanings), *superior, higher, upper, preceding* (of time), *past, before, superior, victorious*. — As noun, *a superior*. — **Superl.**, **suprēmus** [supra- (?) + *imus* (?)], *highest*. — Also, **summus** [sup- + *mus*], *highest, the highest part of, the top of*. — **vestis** (*outermost, outer*). — **Fig.**, *greatest, most important, very great, most perfect, perfect, supreme, most violent*: **ab summo**, *from the top, at the end*; **summis copiis**, *with all the forces, in force, with all one's might*.

supervivō, -vivere, -vixī, no p. p. [super-vivo], 3. v. n., (*live beyond another*), *outlive, survive*.

suppetō, -petere, -petivī, -petitūrus [sub-peto, *aim at*], 3. v. n. (?), but cf. *sufficio* and *subvenio*), *be on hand, be supplied, be to be found, hold out*.

supplémentum, -ī [supplē- (as st. of *suppleo*, *fill up*) + *mentum*], N., *a supply* (to fill up), *a reinforcement*.

supplex, -icis [sub-†plex (PLIC (*fold*)) as st., cf. *duplex*], C., *a suppliant*.

supplicātiō, -ōnis [supplicā- + *tio*], F., *a supplication*. — Esp., *a thanksgiving* (prayer to the gods upon any signal success, decreed by the senate).

supplicium, -ī [supplic- (st. of *supplex*) + *ium*], N., *a supplication*, *a sacrifice*. — Also, esp., *a punishment* (usually of death).

supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sub-*porto*], I. v. a., *bring up*, *convey*, *supply*, *furnish*.

suprā [instr. (?) of *superus*], adv. and prep. with acc., *above*, *before*, *beyond*.

sūs, **suis** [prob. *su* (*produce*), strengthened as st., cf. Eng. "sow," "swine"], M. and F., *a swine*, *a pig*.

susceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of *suscipio*.

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [sub(s)-*cipio*], 3. v. a., *take up*, *assume*, *undertake*, *engage in*, *undergo*.

suspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *suspicio*.

suspiciātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *suspicio*.

suspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectus [sub-*specio*], 3. v. a. and n., *look up*, *look up at*, *look askance at*. Hence, *suspect*. — **suspectus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *suspected*, *suspicious* (*vilitas*), *an object of suspicion*.

suspiciō (-spitiō), -ōnis [sub-†*specio*, cf. *suspicio*], F., *suspicion*. — Objectively, *an indication*.

suspicio, -ārī, -ātus [†*suspicio* (cf. *suspicio*)], I. v. dep., *suspect*. — P. p. as adj., *under suspicion*.

sustentātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *sustento*.

sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [su(b)-*tento* (cf. *sustineo*)], I. v. a. and n., *sustain*, *hold out*: *bella* (*hold out against*); *pecore famem* (*keep from starvation by means of*, etc.).

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [sub(s)-*teneo*], 2. v. a. and n., *hold up* *under*, *withstand*, *endure*, *sustain*, *hold out*, *bear*, *stop*, *rein in* (horses), *wear* (*iugum*): *sustinere se*, *stand up*, *keep up*.

sustulī, see *tollo*.

sūtor, -ōris [su- (*sew*) + *tor*], M., *a shoemaker*.

suus, -a, -um [sva + *ius*, cf. *se*], adj. pron. (reflex., referring back to subject), *his*, *hers*, *its*, *theirs*, etc. — Sometimes emphatic, *his own*, etc.: *sua clementia* (*fortuna*), *his characteristic clemency* (*good fortune*); *sua morte defungi*, *die a natural death*. — Often without noun, *suī*, *their* (*his*) *men*, *countrymen*, *their* (*his*) *friends*; *sua*, *their* (*his*) *possessions*, *their property*: *se suaque omnia*, *themselves and all they had*.

S. V. B. E. E. V., for *si vales*, *bene est*, *ego valeo*.

Sybaris, -is [Gr.], F., a town of southern Italy, noted for the effeminacy of its inhabitants.

Sybarīta, -ae [Gr.], M., *an inhabitant of Sybaris*, *a Sybarite*.

syngrapha, -ae [Gr.], F., *a written promise to pay, a note, a receipt*.

Syria, -ae [Gr.], F., *the country*

lying at the eastern end of the Mediterranean.

T

T., for **Titus**.

tabula, -ae [†tabō- (TA (*stretch*) + bus ?) + la], F., *a board*. Hence, *a tablet, a picture*.

tabulātus, -a, -um [tabulā- (as if st. of †tabulo) + tus], adj., *made with boards*. — **tabulātum**, N. as noun, *a flooring, a story*.

taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitus [†tacō- (TAC + us)?], 2. v. n., *be silent*. — **tacitus**, p. p. as adj., *silent, in silence*.

tacitē [old case-form of tacitus], adv., *silently*.

tacitus, -a, -um, p. p. of taceo.

taedium, -ī [†taedō- (whence *taedet, it wearies*) + ium], N., *weariness*: *taedium me cepit, I grew weary*.

tālea, -ae [perh. akin to tālus, *ankle-bone*], F., *a rod, a bar*.

talentum, -ī [Gr.], N., *a talent*, a Greek standard of value equal to about \$1080.

tālis, -e [TA (akin to *that*) + alis], adj. pron., *such, so great, this the following*. — Also, *the preceding*.

tam [unc. case of TA (cf. *quam, nam*)], adv., *so* (as indicated in the context), *so much*: *tam . . . quam, as . . . as*.

tamen [unc. case-form of TA (locative?)], adv., (introducing a thought opposed to some preceding concession expressed or im-

plied), *yet, nevertheless, still, however, for all that, notwithstanding, after all, at least*.

Tamesis, -is [Celtic], M., *the Thames*.

Tamphilus, -ī, M., see *Baebius*.

tamquam (tan-) [tam quam], adv., *as if, just as if, as*.

tandem [tam-dem, cf. *idem*], adv., (*just so, even so?*), *at last, at length*.

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus [TAG], 3. v. a., *touch, taste, border on*.

Tantalus, -ī [Gr.], M., *a king of Phrygia, father of Niobe*.

tantillus, -a, -um [tantulō- + lus, dim. end.], adj., *so little*.

antisper [unc. form of *tantus* + per, cf. *nuper*], adv., *for so long, meanwhile*.

tantopere, see *opus*.

tantulus, -a, -um [tantō- + lus], adj., *so small, so little, so trifling*.

tantundem (tantum-dem, cf. *idem*), adv., *just so far*.

tantus, -a, -um [prob. TA + vant (adj. term.) + us], adj., *so much, so great, such* (of magnitude): *tantus est, is of so much weight*; *tanta exiguitas temporis, so little time*. — Esp., *so much* (and no more), *so small, only so much*. — **tantum**, N. as adv., *only, alone, merely*.

tardātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *tardo*.

tardē [old case-form of *tardus*], adv., *slowly, tardily, with delay*.

tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [tardō-], I. v. a., *retard, check, hinder*: *Romanos ad insequendum* (*hinder from pursuing, retard the pursuit of, etc.*).

tardus, -a, -um [?], adj., *slow, slack, sluggish, without alacrity*.

Tarentīnus, -a, -um [Tarentō- + inus], adj., of *Tarentum*, a city of southern Italy.

Tarquīnius, -ī [Etruscan], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Tarquīnius Superbus*, the last king of Rome.

taurus, -ī [perh. STAV + rus, akin to *steer*], M., a *bull, a bullock*.

Taximagulus, -ī [Celtic], M., a prince of Britain.

Tectosages, -um [Celtic], M. plur., a branch of the *Volcae*.

tēctum, -ī [N. p. p. of *tego*], N., a *roof, a house, a dwelling, a palace*.

tēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of *tego*.

tegimentum (tegu-), -ī [tegi- (st. of *tego*) + mentum], N., a *covering*.

tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus [TEG], 3. v. a., *cover, thatch, hide, conceal*. — Also, *protect*.

tēla, -ae [prob. TEX (in *texo*, *weave*) + la], F., a *web* (in the loom), a *loom*.

tellūs, -ūris [?], F., *the earth*.

tēlum, -ī [?], N., a *weapon* (of offence), a *missile, a javelin, a spear*.

temerārius, -a, -um [†temerō- + arius], adj., *reckless, rash, hasty*.

temerē [old case-form of †temer- + rus], adv., *blindly, without reason, without cause*. Hence, *recklessly, hastily, rashly*.

temeritās, -ātis [†temerō- (*hasty*) + tas], F., *blindness, thoughtlessness, recklessness, hasty temper*.

tēmō, -ōnis [?], M., a *pole* (of a wagon, etc.).

temperantia, -ae [temperant- + ia], F., *self-control, prudence*.

temperātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *tempero*.

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [temper- (st. of *tempus*)], I. v. a., (*divide*), *mix properly*. Hence, *control, control one's self, refrain, restrain one's self from* (abl.). — Esp., **temperātus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *temperate, mild*.

tempestās, -ātis [tempes- (st. of *tempus*) + tas], F., a *point of time, time*. — Less exactly, *the weather, a season*. — Esp., *bad weather, a storm, a tempest*.

templum, -ī [prob. †temō- (TEM (*cut*) + us) + lum], N., (*a place set apart*), a *consecrated spot, a temple*.

temptō (tentō), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [tentō-, p. p. of *teneo*, *hold*], I. v. a., *handle*. Hence, *try, attempt, make an attempt upon, test, tempt*.

tempus, -oris [TEM (*cut*, with root determinative or accidental p) + us], N., (*a cutting*). — Esp., a *division of time, a time, time* (in general), a *season, an occasion, an emergency, a crisis*. — Plur., *times, circumstances, condition*: *omni tempore, at all times, always*; *in reliquum tempus, for the future*; *uno tempore, at once*.

Tencterī (-therī), -ōrum [Teu- tonic], M. plur., a branch of the *Usipetes*.

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tēnsus

(tentus) [TEN + do (of unc. origin)], 3. v. a. and n., *stretch, stretch out*. — Also, *aim, aim at, direct* (insidias). — Also, *hold one's course, go*.

tenebrae, -ārum [?, perh. akin to temere], F. plur., *darkness, the shades*.

tenebricōsus, -a, -um [†tenebricō- (cf. tenebrae) + osus], adj., *dark, gloomy*.

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus (?) [†tenō- (TEN + us)], 2. v. a., *hold, retain, keep, possess, occupy, grasp* (aram): circuitus milia (*occupy, extend*). — Also, *restrain, keep back, detain*: tenete furem, *stop thief!* memoriā tenere, *remember*.

tener, -era, -erum [TEN + rus], adj., (*stretched, thin*), *delicate, tender, young*.

tentō, see tempto.

tenuis, -e [TEN + us, with accidental i, cf. gravis], adj., *thin, delicate, feeble, meagre, poor, common*.

tenuitās, -ātis [tenui- + tas], F., *thinness, weakness, slenderness, poverty*.

tenuiter [tenui- + ter], adv., *thinly, slightly*.

ter [petrified form of tres], num. adv., *three times, thrice, threefold*.

Terentia, -ae [?], F., the name of Cicero's wife.

Terentius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Caius Terentius Varro*, a Roman consul defeated by Hannibal at Cannæ.

teres, -etis [tere- (as st. of tero) + tis], adj., (*rubbed*), *smooth and round, tapering*.

tergum, -ī [?], N., *the back, the body*: terga vertere, *turn and fly*; a tergo, *in the rear, behind*.

terminus, -ī [TER (in trans) + minus], M., *a boundary, a limit*.

ternī, -ae, -a [tri- + nus], distrib. num. adj., *three each, three at once*.

terra, -ae [TERS (?) + a, cf. torreo, *dry up*], F., (*the dry land*), *the earth, the land, the shore*. — Also, *a land, a region*. — Also, *the ground, the soil*. — Plur., *the world*.

Terrasidius, -ī [Celtic], M., a Roman gentile (?) name. — Esp., *Titus Terrasidius*, a military tribune in Cæsar's army.

terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus, [†terrō- (?)], 2. v. a., *frighten, alarm, terrify, frighten off, deter*.

terrestris, -e [terra- (as if terret, cf. equestris) + tris], adj., *of the earth, earthly, terrestrial*.

terribilis, -e [as if (or really) †terrō- (whence terreo) + bilis], adj., *frightful, dreadful, terrible*.

territō, -āre, no perf., no p. p. [territō-], 1. v. a., *frighten*: metu (*alarm with fears, keep alarmed*).

territus, -a, -um, p. p. of terreo.

terror, -ōris [TERR + or], M., *fright, alarm, terror, dread, panic*.

Tertia, -ae [F. of tertius], F., a child's name (i.e. the third daughter).

tertius, -a, -um [prob. tri- + tius], num. adj., *third* (in order); pars (*one-third*). — tertium, N. acc. as adv., *a third time*. — tertiō, abl. as adv., *a third time*.

testimōnium, -ī [testi- + monium], N., *proof, evidence*.

testis, -is [?], M. and F., *a witness*.

testor, -ārī, -ātus [testi-], I. v. dep., *call to witness, bear witness, declare, attest*.

testūdō, -inis [†testu- (akin to *testa*, *tile*) + *dō*], F., *a tortoise*. — Esp., *a covered column* (made by lapping the shields of one rank over those of another).

Teutobochus, -ī [?], M., a chief of the Teutones.

Teutones, -um (-ī, -ōrum) [Teutonic], M. plur., a great German people in Jutland who along with the Cimbri overran Gaul in B.C. 113. They were defeated by Marius in B.C. 102 at Aquæ Sextiæ (Aix).

Thēbae, -ārum [Gr.], F. plur., *Thebes*, a famous city of Greece.

Thēbānus, -a, -um [Theba- + *nus*], adj., *of Thebes, Theban*. — Masc. plur. as noun, *the Thebans*.

Themistoclēs, -is [Gr.], M., a famous Athenian statesman and general in the time of the Persian War.

Thermopylae, -ārum [Gr.], F. plur., a famous pass in northern Greece, where Leonidas fell.

thēsaurus, -ī [Gr.], M., *a hoard, a treasure*. — Also, *a treasure-house*.

Thespiēnsis, -e [Gr.], adj., *of Thespiæ*, a city of Greece, *Thespian*. — Masc. plur. as noun, *the Thespians*.

Thessalia, -ae [Gr.], F., *Thessaly*, a division of northern Greece.

Tiberis, -is [?], M., *the Tiber*.

Tiberius, -ī [?], M., a Roman prænomen.

tibi, see *tu*.

tibia, -ae [?], F., *the leg-bone, the shin*. — Also, *a pipe, a flute*.

tibīcen, -inis [tibia-cen (in *cano*, *play*)], M., *a piper, a flute-player*.

tignum, -ī [?], N., *a log, a timber, a pile*.

tigris, -idis (-is) [Gr.], M. and F., *a tiger*.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, no p. p. [†timō- (cf. *timidus*)], 2. v. a. and n., *be afraid, fear*. — With dat., *be anxious for, be anxious about*: *nihil* (*have nothing to fear*); *timentēs*, p. as noun, *the timid, the fearful*.

timor, -ōris [tim- (cf. *timeo*) + *or*], M., *alarm, fear, dread*.

tinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of *tingo*.

tingō (-guō), -ere, tinxī, tinctus [TING], 3. v. a., *wet, moisten*. — Also, *dye, color, tinge*.

tirōcinium, -ī [tirō- (cf. *tirō*, a raw recruit) + *cinium*], N., *a soldier's first service, a beginning*.

titulus, -ī [?], M., *an inscription, a placard, a notice*.

Titūrius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, a legatus of Cæsar.

Titus, -ī [?], M., a Roman prænomen.

Tityos, -ī [Gr.], M., a giant killed by Apollo and Diana for insulting Latona. His punishment in the underworld was to have a vulture ever feeding on his liver.

toga, -ae [TEG (*cover*) + *a*], F., *a toga*, the outer garment of the Romans in civil life.

togātus, -a, -um [toga- + *tus*], adj., *clad in the toga*. Hence, *unarmed, in the garb of peace*.

tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†toler- (TOL + *us*)], I. v. a. and n.,

(raise up), bear, endure, hold out, support.

tollō, -tollere, sustulī, sublātus [TOL], 3. v. a., raise, lift, carry, carry off. Hence, take up, remove, take away, destroy, kill: ancoris sublatis, (weigh).

Tolōsātēs, -ium [Tolosa + tis], M. plur., the people of Toulouse.

Tomyris, -is [?], F., queen of the Massagetæ.

tormentum, -ī [TORQU + mentum], N., (means of twisting), torture. — Also, an engine (for throwing missiles by twisted ropes). Hence, a shot from an engine, a missile.

torvē [old case-form of torvus], adv., sternly.

tot [TA + ti], indecl. adj., so many.

totidem [toti- (cf. tot) + dem], indecl. adj., just as many, as many, the same number.

tōtus, -a, -um [TA + tus], adj., whole, the whole, the whole of, all, entire. — Often translated by an adverb, entirely, throughout, wholly, all.

trabs (trabēs), trabis [?], F., a beam, a timber.

tractō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [tractō- (cf. traho)], 1. v. a. freq., touch, handle, feel of.

trāditus, -a, -um, p. p. of tradō.

trādō, -dere, -didi, -ditus [trans-do], 3. v. a., hand over, give up, give over, deliver, deliver up, surrender, commend, recommend. — Also, pass along, hand down, report, teach, communicate.

trādūcō (trans-), -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [trans-duco], 3. v. a., lead

over (with two accs.), lead across, bring over, lead through, transport, draw over, win over, transfer, lead (along).

trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus [TRAH (for †TRAGH)], 3. v. a., drag, draw. — Fig., refer, ascribe, set down to.

trāiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [trans-iacio], 3. v. a. and n., throw across, throw over, pass over, cross. — Also, strike through, transfix, pierce.

trāiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of traicio.

trāiectus, -ūs [trans-iactus, cf. traicio], M., (a throwing across), a passage, a route.

tranquillitās, -ātis [tranquillō + tas], F., stillness, calm.

trāns [?, akin to terebra, auger], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with acc., across, over. Hence, on the other side of. — In comp., over, across, through.

Trānsalpīnus, -a, -um [trans-Alpes + inus], adj., Transalpine (lying beyond the Alps from Rome).

trānsceūdō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsūrus [trans-scando], 3. v. n., climb across, board (ships).

trānsdūcō, see traduco.

trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itus [trans-eo], irr. v. a. and n., go across, cross, pass over, go over, pass through, pass, migrate, pass by.

trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [trans-fero], irr. v. a., carry over, transfer, change the place of: ad se bellum (direct against, draw upon, from somewhere else).

trānsfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus [trans-figo], 3. v. a., pierce through, stab.

trānsfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus [trans-fodio], 3. v. a., *dig through*. — Also, *pierce, pierce through, wound* (by stabbing).

trānsgridior, -gridī, -gressus [trans-gridior], 3. v. dep., *step across, step over, cross*.

trānsgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of transgridior.

trānsitus, -ūs [trans-itus, cf. transeo], M., *a crossing, a passage*.

trānslātus, -a, -um, p. p. of transfero.

trānsmarīnus, -a, -um [trans-mare (sea) + inus], adj., *foreign*.

trānsmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of transmitto.

trānsmissus, -ūs [trans-missus, cf. transmitto], M., *a crossing, a distance across*: *pari spatio transmissus*, *with a passage of the same length*.

trānsmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [trans-mitto], 3. v. a. and n., *send over, cross over*.

trānsportātus, -a, -um, p. p. of transporto.

trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [transporto], 1. v. a., *bring over* (with two accs.), *transport, carry over*.

Trānshēnānus, -a, -um [trans-Rhenum + anus], adj., *living across the Rhine*. — Plur. as noun, *the people across the Rhine*.

trānstrum, -ī [trans (trant-?) + trum], N., *a thwart, a cross-beam*.

trānsversus, -a, -um [p. p. of transverto], as adj., *across, athwart, oblique, transverse*: *fossa* (*a cross-ditch*).

Trasumēnus, -ī [?], M., *a lake in*

Etruria, famous for Hannibal's victory over the Romans in B.C. 217.

Trebia, -ae [?], M., *a river of northern Italy, where Hannibal defeated the Romans in B.C. 218*.

Trebius, -ī [?], M., *a Roman gentile name*. — Esp., *Marcus Trebius Gallus*, an officer of Cæsar's army.

Trebōnius, -ī [?], M., *a Roman gentile name*. — Esp., *Caius Trebonius*, a legatus in Cæsar's army.

trecēnī, -ae, -a [tri-centum (reduced) + nus], distrib. num. adj., *three hundred each, three hundred*.

trecentī, -ae, -a [tri-centum], num. adj., *three hundred*.

tremō, -ere, -uī, no p. p. [TREM], 3. v. n., *tremble, quake with fear*.

trepidātiō, -ōnis [trepidā- + tio], F., *alarm, confusion*.

trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [trepidō-], 1. v. n., *tremble*. — Also, *bustle about, hurry*.

trēs, tria, gen. trium [st. tri-], num. adj., *three*.

Trēverī (-virī), -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., *a people in Gaul, originally German, on the Moselle*.

Triboces, -um (-ī, -ōrum) [Celtic], M. plur., *a German tribe on the Rhine, about Strasburg*.

tribūnus, -ī [tribu- + nus], M., (*a chief of a tribe*). With or without plebis, *a tribune* (one of several magistrates elected in the assembly of the plebs voting by tribes, to watch over the interests of the commons). — With militum or militāris, *a tribune of the soldiers, a military tribune*.

tribuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [tribu-],

3. v. a., (*distribute by tribes*), *distribute*. Hence, *grant, render, award, assign, attribute*: tantum dignitatis (*pay such respect*).

tribūtum, -ī [N. p. p. of tribuo], N., *a tribute*.

trīcēsīmus, -a, -um [trīginta (reduced) + esīmus], num. adj., *thirtieth*.

trīclīnium, -ī [Gr.], N., *a couch* for three persons reclining at meals. — Also, *an eating-room, a dining-room*.

tridēns, -entis [tri-dens (decl. as adj.)], adj., *three-toothed, three-pronged*. — As noun, *a three-pronged spear, a trident*.

trīduum, -ī [tri- + st. akin to dies, cf. bīduum], N., *three days' time, three days*.

triennium, -ī [trienni- (tri-annus) + ium], N., *three years*.

trīgintā [tri-, unc. st., cf. vigintī], indecl. num. adj., *thirty*.

Trinobantēs, -um [Celtic], M. plur., *a people of southern Britain, in the region of Colchester*.

tripartītus (tripert-), -a, -um [tri-partitus, p. p. of partio], adj., *divided in three*. — Esp., tripartitō, abl. as adv., *in three divisions*.

triplex, -icis [tri-plex (PLIC as st.)], adj., *threefold*: acies (*in three divisions or lines*), *triple*.

triquetrus, -a, -um [tri-+quatus (quattuor), cf. "three-square"], adj., *three-cornered, triangular*.

trīsticulus, -a, -um [tristi-+ culus, dim. end.], adj., *somewhat sad, downcast*.

trīstis, -e [unc. root + tis], adj., *sad, gloomy, dejected, dismal*.

trīstītia, -ae [tristi- + tia], F., *sadness, sorrow, a gloomy state* (of mind).

trīumphālis, -e [trīumphō- + alis], adj., *belonging to a triumph, triumphal*.

trīumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [trīumphō-], I. v. n., *have or enjoy a triumph, triumph*.

trīumphus, -ī [prob. Gr.], M., *a triumphal procession, a triumph*. — Less exactly, *a triumph* (generally), *a victory*.

Trōia, -ae [Gr.], F., *Troy, a city in Asia Minor, the scene of the Trojan War*.

tropaeum, -ī [Gr.], N., *a trophy*.

truncus, -ī [?], M., *a trunk*.

trux, trucus [?], adj., *savage, harsh, fierce, stern*.

tū, tuī [TVA], plur. vōs [VA], pron. 2d person, *you* (sing.), *you* (plur.).

tuba, -ae [?], F., *a trumpet* (a straight instrument for infantry).

tubicen, -inis [tuba-cen (in cano, play)], M., *a trumpeter*.

tueor, tuērī, tūtus (tuitus) [?], 2. v. dep., *watch, guard, protect, defend*. See also tutus.

tulī, perf. of fero.

Tullius, -ī [Tullo- + ius], M., *a Roman gentile name*. See Cicero.

Tullus, -ī [?], M., *a Roman family name*. See Volcatius.

tum [prob. acc. of TA (cf. is-te)], adv., *then* (at a time indicated by the context), *at this time, at that time, at the same time, in that case*: cum . . . tum, see cum; tum vero (*then, with emphasis, of the decisive point of a narrative*).

tumultus, -ūs [tumulō- (perh. reduced) + tus], M., (*a swelling, an uprising?*), *an uproar, confusion, a commotion*.—Esp., *an uprising, a rebellion, a commotion* (of revolt, or a war not regularly declared).

tumulus, -ī [†tumō- (whence *tumeo*, *swell*) + lus], M., (*a swelling?*), *a hill, a mound*.

tunc [tum-ce, cf. *hic*], adj., *just then, then, at that time*.

turbō, -inis [turba- + o, cf. *homo*], M., (*a whirling*), *a whirlwind, a hurricane*.

turbulentus, -a, -um [turba- (as if turbō-) + lentus], adj., *disturbed; of fluids, thick, muddy, roily*.

turgidulus, -a, -um [turgidō- + lus, dim. end.], adj., *swollen*.

turgidus, -a, -um [turgē- (*swell*) + idus], adj., *swollen, distended*.

turma, -ae [TUR (cf. *turba*, *turbo*) + ma], F., (*a throng?*), *a squadron, a troop* (of horse, consisting of thirty men).

Turones, -um (-ī, -ōrum) [Celtic],

M. plur., *a tribe of Gaul on the Loire. Their city became afterwards Tours*.

turpis, -e [?], adj., *ugly* (in appearance). Hence, *unbecoming, disgraceful, base, dishonorable*.

turpiter [turpi- + ter], adv., *dishonorably: turpiter factum*, *an inglorious deed*.

turpitūdō, -inis [turpi- + tūdo], F., *baseness*. Hence, *disgrace*.

turris, -is [?], F., *a tower, a dove-tower, a dove-cote*.

tūs, tūris [Gr.], N., *incense*.

Tusculānus, -a, -um [Tusculō- + ānus], adj., *of Tusculum*, *a town of Latium*.—Esp., N. as noun, *a villa at Tusculum*.

tūtus, -a, -um [p. p. of *tueor*], as adj., *protected, safe, secure: victis nihil tutum*, *no safety for the conquered*.—tūtō, abl. as adv., *in safety, safely*.

tuus, -a, -um [TVA + ius], adj. pron., *your, yours*.

tyrannus, -ī [Gr.], M., *a tyrant*.

U

ūber, -eris [?, cf. Eng. “udder”], N., *an udder, a teat*.

ubi [supposed to be quō- + bi, cf. *tibi*], adv., *where, in which*.—Also, of time, *when: ubi primum*, *as soon as*.

Ubiī, -ōrum [Teutonic], M. plur., *a German tribe on the Rhine, opposite Cologne, near which city they were afterwards settled*.

ubīque [ubi-que, cf. *quisque*], adv., *everywhere, anywhere*.

ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus [?], 3. v. dep., *punish* (an injury, or the doer), *avenge* (an injury).

Ulixēs, -is [Gr.], M., *Ulysses*, *a hero of the Trojan War, afterwards famed for his wanderings and adventures*.

ūllus, -a, -um, gen. -īus [unō- + lus], adj., *a single* (with negatives), *any*.—As noun (less common), *anybody, any one*.

ulterior, -us, -ōris [compar. of

ulterō-, cf. *ultra*], adj., *farther, more remote*: *ulteriores, those farther off*. — Superl., *ultimus, -a, -um* [*ul- + timus*], *farthest, last*. — As noun, *the last, the end*.

ultiō, -ōnis [*ULC* (in *ulciscor*) + *tio*], F., *vengeance, revenge*.

ultrā [unc. case, perh. instr., of *†ulter*], adv. and prep. with acc., *beyond*.

ultrō [dat. of *†ulter*], adv., *to the farther side, beyond*. — Esp. beyond what is expected or required, *voluntarily, of one's own accord, without provocation, freely, besides*: *sibi parcere cogi* (*in spite of himself*); *ad se venire* (*without his asking it*).

ululātus, -ūs [*ululā- + tus*], M., *a yell, a loud cry, a wailing*.

ululō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ulula-, a wail*], I. v. n. and a., *wail, howl*.

umbra, -ae [?], F., *a shade, a shadow*.

umerus, -ī [?], M., *the shoulder*.

umquam (unquam) [supposed to be for *cum-quam* (cf. *quisquam*)], adv. (with neg.), *ever*.

ūnā [instr. (or abl.?) of *unus*], adv., *together, along with them, etc., at the same time, in the same place, also*.

undā, -ae [*UND* (*water*) + *a*], F., *a wave*. — Fig., *a stream, water, the waters*.

unde [supposed to be for *†cunde* (*cum*, cf. *umquam*, + *de*, cf. *inde*)], adv., *whence, from which, from whom*.

ūndecim [*unus-decem*], indecl. num. adj., *eleven*.

ūndecimus, -a, -um [*unus-decimus*], num. adj., *eleventh*.

undēquadrāgēsīmus, -a, -um [*undequadraginta* (reduced) + *esimus*], num. adj., *thirty-eighth*.

undique [*unde-que*, cf. *quique*], adv., *from every side, from all quarters*. — Also (cf. *ab*), *on every side*.

ungō (-guō), -ere, ūnxī, ūnctus [*UNG*], 3. v. a., *smear, besmear, anoint*.

unguentum, -ī [akin to *ungo*], N., *an ointment, a perfume*.

ūniversus, -a, -um [*unō-versus*], adj., *all together, all* (in a mass), *entire*.

ūnus, -a, -um, gen. -īus [?], old *oenus*], adj., *one, a single, the same, alone* (as adv.): *una celeritate* (*alone*); *ad unum*, *to a man*; *unus quisque*, *each one*.

ūnusquisque, see *unus*.

urbānus, -a, -um [*urbi-* (reduced) + *anus*], adj., *of a city, city* (adj.). — Esp., *of the city* (Rome), *in the city*. — Masc. as noun, *a citizen, a wit, a wag*.

urbs, urbis [?], F., *a city*. — Esp., *the city* (Rome).

urgeō (*urgueō*), urgēre, ursī, no p. p. [*VARG, press*, cf. *volgus*], 2. v. a., *press, press hard, urge*.

urna, -ae [?], F., *a jar, an urn*, esp. used for drawing lots.

urō, urere, ussī, ūstus [*US*], 3. v. a., *burn*.

ursus, -ī [?], M., *a bear*.

ūrus, -ī [*Teutonic*], M., *a wild ox*.

Usipetes, -um [*Teutonic*], M. plur., *a German tribe who migrated*

from eastern Germany to the lower Rhine.

ūsītātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *usitor*.

ūsitor, -ārī, -ātus [†usitō- (as if p. p. of †uso, freq. of utor)], i. v. dep., *practise*. — ūsitātus, -a, -um, p. p. in pass. sense, *used, practised, customary, much practised*.

ūsque [supposed unc. case of quō (cf. usquam) -que (cf. quisque)], adv., (*everywhere*), *all the way, even to, even, to that degree* (with eo ut), *all the time, till, even till*.

ūsūrpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†usūrpō- (usu-†rapus, RAP + us, cf. bustirap-)], i. v. a., (*appropriate*), *seize upon, make use of, employ*.

ūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of ūtor.

ūsus, -us [UT (in utor) + tus], M., *use, practice, experience*. Hence, *advantage, service*. — Esp.: *usus est*, *it is necessary, there is need, is necessary* (with personal subject); also, *ex usu, usui, of advantage, of service, advantageous, to the advantage*; *usu venire, happen, occur, turn out, come to pass* (on trial, in practice); *usum navium eripi, be deprived of all use of the ships*; *quae sunt usui, which are serviceable, are needed, are of use*.

ut (utī) [supposed to be for quoti (quō- + ti?)], adv. and conj.: *a*. Interr., *how?* — *b*. Rel., *as, so as, when, inasmuch as, considering that it was, just as if*. — Esp. with subjv., *that, in order that, to, so that, so as to, although, granting that*. — Often with object-clause compressed in Eng. into some other form of

speech: *id facere ut, do this, namely*. — Esp.: *timere ut, fear that not*; *ut quisque est . . . ita* (*in proportion as . . . so*).

uter, -tra, -trum; gen. -trīus [quō (cf. ubi) + terus (reduced), cf. alter], adj. *a*. Interr., *which* (of two)? — *b*. Rel., *whichever* (of two), *the one who* (of two). — *utrum*, neut. as adv., (*which of the two*), *whether*; sometimes not translated.

ūter, ūtris [?], M., *a hide, a skin, a bag* (of skin), *a leathern bottle*.

uterque, utra, utrum, gen. utrius- [uter-que, cf. quisque], adj., *both, each*. — Plur., of sets: *utraque castra, both camps*; *utrique, both parties*.

utī, see ut.

ūtilis, -e [†uti- (st. akin to utor) + lis], adj., *useful, of use, helpful*.

ūtilitās, -ātis [utili- + tas], F., *advantage, benefit, service*.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus [?, old oetor, akin to aveo?], 3. v. dep., *avail one's self of, use, exercise, practise, enjoy, adopt, employ, have* (in sense of enjoy or employ), *possess, show* (qualities which one exercises), *occupy* (a town), *navigate* (a sea): *pace* (*remain at peace*). — Esp. with two nouns, *employ as, have as, and the like*. — ūsus, -a, -um, p. p., often merely *with*.

utpote [ut-potis, able], adv., (*as is possible*), *as being, inasmuch as, since, as*.

utrimque [unc. case of uter (cf. interim) + que (cf. quisque)], adv., *on both sides*.

utrobique [utrō-ubique], adv., *on*

both sides, in both ways (i.e. by land and sea).

ūva, -ae [F. of †uvō- (cf. uvidus,

moist) + a], F., a grape. — Plur., grapes, bunches of grapes.

uxor, -ōris [?], F., a wife.

V

V, for *quīque*, five.

Vacalus, -ī [?], M., the west branch of the Rhine, at its mouth.

vacātiō, -ōnis [vacā- + tio], F., freedom (from something), exemption, immunity.

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [prob. †vacō- (cf. vacuus)], I. v. n., be vacant, be free from, be unoccupied, lie waste. — Fig., be at leisure, have time.

vacuus, -a, -um [prob. VAC (empty) + vus], adj., free, unoccupied, vacant, empty, destitute of (ab or abl.).

vadum, -ī [VAD (in vado, go) + um], N., a ford. — Plur., a ford, shoals, shallows.

vagātus, -ā, -um, p. p. of *vagor*.

vāgīna, -ae [?], F., a sheath.

vagor, -ārī, -ātus [vagō-, roving], I. v. dep., roam about, roam, wander.

vagus, -a, -um [VAG (?) + us], adj., wandering, roving.

valeō, valēre, valui, valitūrus [?, prob. from adj.-st., cf. validus, strong], 2. v. n., be strong, be well, have weight, have influence, be powerful. — Often with N. pron. or adj. as cog. acc.: plurimum valere, be very strong, have great weight, have great influence; minus valet, is not very strong; nihil valere, have no power; quicquid possunt pedestribus copiis valent, whatever strength they have is in infantry. — Esp. in imv.,

farewell, adieu, good-by. — Also, valeas, good-by. — **valēns**, -entis, p. as adj., strong.

Valerius, -ī [akin to valeo], M., a Roman gentile name. See **Catullus**.

valētūdō, -inis [prob. valent- + tudo], F., health. — Also, ill health, illness, sickness.

validus, -a, -um [†valō- (whence valeo ?) + dus], adj., strong, stout, sturdy, vigorous.

vallēs, -is [?], F., a valley.

vāllum, -ī [N. of vallus], N., a palisade, a rampart (the regular fortification of the Romans, made of stakes and built up with earth), a wall.

vāllus, -ī [?], M., a stake.

valva, -ae [?], F., a fold of a door. — Usually plur., folding doors, doors.

vānus, -a, -um [prob. VAC (in vacuus) + nus], adj., empty. — Fig., groundless, empty, vain, idle.

varietās, -ātis [variō- + tas], F., diversity, variety: **pellium** (different colors).

varius, -a, -um [prob. akin to vārus, bent], adj., various, diverse, varied.

varix, -icis [akin to varus, bent], M., a dilated vein, a varix.

vās, vāsis (plur. -a, -ōrum) [?], N., a vessel, a jar.

vāstātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *vasto*.

vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [vastō-],
I. v. a., *lay waste, devastate, ravage.*

vāstus, -a, -um [?], adj., *waste.* —
Also, *immense, vast.*

vātēs, -is [?], M., *a soothsayer, a seer.*

-ve [?], enclit. conj., *or.*

vectīgal, -ālis [N. of vectigalis],
N., *an impost, tribute.* — Plur., *revenues* (of a state).

vectīgālis, -e [†vectigō- (vecti-,
akin to **veho**, + unc. term., cf. **castigo**) + alis], adj., *tributary*:
vectigalis habent, *make tributary.*

vectōrius, -a, -um [vector- (cf. **veho**,
carry) + ius], adj., *carrying*:
navigia (*transports*).

vectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **veho**.

vegetus, -a, -um [†vege- (VEG,
wake) + tus], adj., *bright, animated.*

vehementer [vehement- (*violent*)
+ ter], adv., *violently, severely, strongly, hotly, exceedingly, very well.*

veho, -ere, vēxī, vectus [VEGH,
cf. Eng. "wagon"], 3. v. a., *carry, bear.* — Pass., *be borne, ride, sail.*

vel [prob. inv. of **volo**, *wish*],
conj., *or*: **vel . . . vel**, *either . . . or.*

Velānius, -ī [?], M., *a Roman gentile name.* — Esp., *Quintus Velanius*, *a tribune of the soldiers in Cæsar's army.*

Veliocassēs, -ium (-ī, -ōrum)
[Celtic], M. plur., *a Gallic tribe of Normandy, about Rouen.*

Vellaunodūnum, -ī [Celtic], N.,
a town of the Senones.

Vellāviī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur.,
a tribe of Gaul in the Cevennes Mountains.

vēlōcitās, -ātis [veloci- (*swift*) +
tas], F., *swiftness, fleetness, speed.*

vēlum, -ī [?, cf. **vexillum**], N., *a curtain, a veil.* — Also, *a sail.*

velut (**velutī**) [vel-ut], adv., *even as, just as, just as if*: **velut si**, *just as if, as if, no less than if.*

vēnātiō, -ōnis [venā- (*hunt*) +
tio], F., *hunting, the chase.* — Plur.,
hunting, hunting excursions, hunting spectacles.

vēnātor, -ōris [venā- (*hunt*) +
tor], M., *a hunter.*

vēnditor, -ōris [vendi- (as st. of
vendo) + tor], M., *a seller, a vender.*

vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [venum-
do], 3. v. a., *put to sale, sell.*

Venellī (**Unellī**), -ōrum [Celtic],
M. plur., *a tribe of Gaul in modern Normandy.*

venēnātus, -a, -um [venenō- +
atus], adj., (*filled with poison*),
poisonous, venomous.

venēnum, -ī [?], N., *poison.* —
Less exactly, *a drug, a magic potion, a magic herb.*

venerātiō, -ōnis [venerā- (*reverence*) +
tio], F., *reverence, respect, veneration.*

Venetī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur.,
a tribe of Gaul in modern Brittany.

Venetia, -ae [venetō- + ia (F. of
-ius)], F., *the territory of the Veneti.*

Veneticus, -a, -um [Venetō- +
cus], adj., *of the Veneti.*

venia, -ae [?], F., *indulgence, favor, pardon*: **petentibus veniam dare**, *grant their request.*

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventūrus [GAM
(for gvenio)], 4. v. n., *come, go*: **in spem** (*have hopes*). See also **usus**.

vēnor, -ārī, -ātus [?], I. v. dep., *hunt*: **venantum voces** (of hunters).

venter, -tris [?], M., *the belly*.

ventitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [as if **ventitō**- (from †**vento**, old freq. of **venio**)], I. v. n., *come often, visit*.

ventus, -ī [?], M., *the wind*: **vento** (**ventis**) *se dare*, *run before the wind*.

Venus, -eris [VEN + us, cf. **genus**], F., *grace, beauty*. — Esp., *Venus*, the goddess of love and beauty.

Venusia, -ae [?], F., a town in southern Italy, the birthplace of Horace.

Venusīnus, -a, -um [Venusia- + **inus**], adj., *belonging to Venusia, Venusian*.

venustus, -a, -um [venes- (cf. **Venus**) + **tus**], adj., *charming, lovely*.

verbum, -ī [?, cf. **morbis**], N., a word, a remark: **facit verba**, *speak for*, etc.; **magna contumelia verborum**, *with most insulting words*; **verba dare**, *deceive, cheat*.

Vercassivellaunus, -ī [Celtic], M., one of the Arverni, the uncle of Vercingetorix.

Vercingetorīx, -īgis [Celtic], M., a noble of the Arverni. Being chosen king, he made a stout resistance to Cæsar, but was finally overpowered by the Romans and surrendered by his followers.

vērē [old case-form of **verus**], adv., *truly, with truth, with justice*.

verēcundia, -ae [verecundō- + **ia**], F., *modesty, sense of shame*.

vereor, -ērī, -itus [prob. †**verō**- (akin to *wary*)], 2. v. dep., *fear, be*

afraid, dread. — **veritus**, p. p. in pres. sense, *fearing*.

vergō, -ere, no perf., no p. p. [?], 3. v. n., *incline, slope, look towards* (of an exposure), *lie towards*.

vērīsimilis, -e [veri similis], adj., (like the truth), *probable, likely*.

vērītās, -ātis [verō- + **tas**], F., *truth*.

veritus, -a, -um, p. p. of **vereor**.

vernīliter [vernili- (of a slave) + **ter**], adv., *slavishly, like a slave*.

vērō [abl. of **vērus**], adv., *in truth, in fact, certainly*. — With weakened force, *but, on the other hand, however*. — Often untranslatable, expressing an intensive (emphatic) opposition, or pointing to the main time, circumstance, fact, or agent in the narrative.

versiculus, -ī [versu- + **culus**, dim. end.], M., *a short line, a verse*.

versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [versō-], I. v. a., *turn* (this way and that): **sors** (*shake*). — Esp. in pass. as dep., *turn one's self, engage in, be involved, be, fight* (as indicated by the context).

versus, -a, -um, p. p. of **verto**.

versus (**versum**) [orig. p. p. of **verto**], adv. and prep. with acc., *towards, in the direction of*: **quoque versus** (or as one word), *in every direction, all about*.

versus, -ūs [VERT + **tus**], M., *a turning*. — Esp., *a verse* (of poetry, where the rhythm turns and begins anew), *a line*.

vertō, **vertere**, **vertī**, **versus** [VERT], 3. v. a., *turn*: **terga** (**puppīs**) **vertere**, *turn and flee*.

vērūs, -a, -um [?, VER (in vereor) + us], adj., (? *seen, visible*), *true, real*. — Neut. as noun, *the truth*: *repperit esse vera, found the truth to be*. — Also, *just, right*: *re vera, in truth*. See also **vero**.

vescor, -ī, no p. p. [?], 3. v. dep., *feed upon, eat, enjoy*.

vesper, -erī [?], M., *the evening*.

vester, -tra, -trum [ves- + ter (us)], possess. adj. pron., *your, yours*.

vestigium, -ī [†vestigō- (cf. vestigo) + ium], N., *the footstep, the footprint, a track, a spot, a mark*. — Esp.: *e vēstigio, forthwith* (from one's tracks?); *eodem vestigio, in the same spot*; *in illo vestigio temporis, at that instant of time*; *vestigia ponere, set foot*.

vestigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†vestigō- (cf. vestigium)], I. v. a., *track, trace*. — Less exactly, *hunt, search for*.

vestiō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus [vesti-], 4. v. a., *clothe, cover*. — Pass., *clothe one's self with* (with thing in abl.), *wear*.

vestis, -is [VES (*cover*) + tis], F., *clothing, garments, a robe, a vestment*. — Also, *drapery, tapestry*.

vestītus, -ūs [vesti- + tus], M., *clothing, garments*.

Vesuvius, -ī [?], M., *a volcano near Naples*.

veterānus, -a, -um [veterā- (as if st. of vetero) + nus], adj., *veteran* (long in service).

vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus [st. akin to vetus], I. v. a., *forbid*.

vetus, -eris [?], adj., *old, former, of long standing*.

vēxātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **vexo**.

vēxillum, -ī [?, apparently a dim. of **velum**], N., *a banner, a flag*.

vēxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†vexō- (as if p. p. of veho)], I. v. a., (*carry this way and that*), *harass, annoy, commit depredations on, overrun* (a country), *ravage* (lands).

via, -ae [for voha? (veh- + a)], F., *a road, a way, a route, a march, a journey*: *tridui viam, three days' journey*.

viātor, -ōris [†viā- (as st. of †vio) + tor], M., *a traveller*.

vicārius, -a, -um [vici- + arius], adj., *substituted*. — Masc. as noun, *a substitute, a proxy*.

vicēnī, -ae, -a [akin to viginti], distrib. num. adj., *twenty* (apiece).

vicēsīmus, -a, -um [akin to viginti], num. adj., *twentieth*.

viciēs (-ēns) [akin to viginti], num. adv., *twenty times*: *vicies centena milia passuum, two thousand miles*.

vicis, gen. (nom. not found), *change, turn*: *in vicem, in turn*.

victima, -ae [akin to vinco, perh. going back to the sacrifice of prisoners], F., *a victim, a sacrifice*.

victor, -ōris [VIC (in vinco) + tor], M., *a victor, a conqueror*. — Often as adj., *victorious, triumphant*.

victōria, -ae [victor- + ia], F., *victory, success* (in war), *a victory*.

victus, -a, -um, p. p. of **vinco**.

vīctus, -ūs [VIG (?) (cf. vixi) + tus], M., *living, life*. — Also, *means of living, food*: *domus victusque, intercourse, life in common*.

vīcus, -ī [VIC (*enter*) + us], M.,

(a dwelling), a village (a collection of dwellings).

vidēlicet [vidē- (imv. of video) -licet], adv., (one may see), of course, no doubt, to be sure.

videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsus [VID, perh. through a noun-st.], 2. v. a., see, observe, examine (reconnoitre), take care (see that). — In pass., be seen, appear, seem, seem best.

Vienna, -ae [Celtic], F., a town of the Allobroges, on the Rhone, now Vienne.

vigilia, -ae [vigil- (awake) + ia], F., a watch, watching. The Romans divided the night into four watches, and reckoned the time thereby.

vigilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vigil- (wakeful)], 1. v. n. and a., be awake, watch, watch for: noctes (spend in watching). — Esp., vigilāns, -antis, p. as adj., watchful, vigilant.

vigintī [dvi- (st. of duo) + form akin to centum (perh. the same)], indecl. num. adj., twenty.

vigor, -ōris [VIG (in vigeo, be strong) + or], M., activity, force, vigor.

VII, for septem, seven, and septimus, seventh.

VIII, for octō, eight.

vilitās, -ātis [vili- (low) + tas], F., cheapness, low price.

villa, -ae [?] F., a country-house, a villa.

vīmen, -inis [root (or st.) vi (twine) + men], N., a twig. (flexible, for weaving), osier, a wither.

vinciō, vincire, vinxi, vinctus [perh. akin to vinco], 4. v. a., bind, fetter.

vinclum, see **vinculum**.

vincō, vincere, vici, victus [VIC], 3. v. a. and n., conquer, defeat, overcome, prevail.

vinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of vincio.

vinculum (vinclum), -ī [†vincō- (st. akin to vincio, perh. primitive of it) + lum (N. of lus)], N., a chain, a rope. — Plur., fetters, bonds: in vincula, into prison, into confinement; in vincla concludere, put in chains (confinement).

vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vindic- (defender)], 1. v. a., claim, claim one's rights against, defend, avenge, punish: in aliquem (punish); Galliam in libertatem (establish the liberty of, a phrase derived from the formal defence of freedom in a Roman court).

vīnea, -ae [vinō + ea (F. of eus)], a shed (defence, for a besieging party, made like an arbor).

vīnum, -ī [?], N., wine.

violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [?], 1. v. a., abuse, violate (a sacred object), outrage, lay waste: hospitem (injure, a guest being held sacred).

vir, virī [?], M., a man, a husband.

vireō, -ēre, no perf., no p. p. [†virō- (cf. viridis, green)], 2. v. n., be green, put forth leaves.

vīrēs, see vis.

virga, -ae [akin to vireo], F., a twig, a rod, a stick.

virginālis, -e [virgin- + alis], adj., of a maiden, maidenly.

virgō, -inis [akin to vireo], F., a maiden, a maid, a virgin.

virgula, -ae [virga- + ula, dim. end.], F., a small rod, a twig, a little stick.

virgultum, -ī [†virgula- (?) + tum, cf. tumultus], N., only in plur., *shrubbery, a thicket, bushes* (cut for military purposes).

Viridomārus, -ī [Celtic], M., a noble of the Hædūi.

virītim [vir + itim, as if acc. of verbal in tis], adv., *man by man* (of distribution), *to each individual*.

Viromandūī, -ōrum [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in modern Picardy.

virtūs, -ūtis [virō- (reduced) + tus], F., *manliness, valor, prowess, courage*. — Also, *merit* (generally), *noble conduct, virtue*: virtute (with gen.), *thanks to*. — Plur., *virtues, merits, good qualities, brave acts*.

vīs, see volo.

vīs, vīs (?) [?], F., *force, might, strength, power, violence*. — Esp.: **vi cogere** (*forcibly*); **vim facere**, *use violence*; **vim hostium** (*violent attack*); **vi fluminis oppressi**, *overcome by the violent current*. — Plur., *strength, force, powers, bodily vigor*.

vīsō, -ere, vīsī, vīsus [old desiderative of video], 3. v. a., (*desire to see*), *go to see, visit*.

vīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of video.

vīsus, -ūs [VID (of video) + tus], M., *a sight, a vision*.

vīta, -ae [root of vivo + ta], F., *life, the course of life*.

vitium, -ī [?], N., *a defect, a fault, a vice*.

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [?, vita- (?)], I. v. a., (*escape with life, live through?*), *escape, avoid, dodge, shun*.

vitrum, -ī [?], N., *woad*, a plant used by the Britons for dyeing blue.

vituperātiō, -ōnis [vituperā- + tio], F., *blame, censure*.

vituperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [†vituperō- (vitiō- + †parus, cf. opiparus)], I. v. a., *censure, find fault with, blame*.

vīvō, vivere, vīxī, victus [VIG, cf. victus], 3. v. n., *live: lacte* (*live on*). — Esp. in imv., *may you live, farewell, I wish you well*.

vīvus, -a, -um [VIG (?) + us], adj., *alive, living*.

vix [poss. VIC (in vinco)], adv., *with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely*.

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [voc- (st. of vox)], I. v. a., *call by name, call, summon, invite: digito* (*beckon*).

Volcae, -ārum [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Gaul in the Roman province. See Tectosages and Arecomici.

Volcānus (Vul-), -ī [?], M., *Vulcan*, the god of fire and metals.

Volcātius, -ī [?], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., *Caius Volcatius Tullus*, a young man in Cæsar's suite.

volgāris (vul-), -e [volgō- + aris], adj., *common, ordinary*.

volgus (vul-), -ī [VOLG (press) + us], N., *the crowd, the common people, the mass: in volgus efferri*, *be spread abroad*. — **volgō**, abl. as adv., *commonly, generally, everywhere*.

volitō, -āre, -āvī, no p. p. [as if volitō- (supposed p. p. of volo, fly), cf. agito], I. v. n. freq., *flit about*. — Less exactly, *rush to and fro, hasten*.

volnerātus, -a, -um, p. p. of volnerō.

volnerō (vul-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus [volner-], I. v. a., *wound, hurt*.

volnus (vul-), -eris [prob. akin to *vello*, *pluck*], N., a wound.

¹ **volō**, *velle*, voluī [VOL], irr. v. a. and n., *wish, be willing, want*.

² **volō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [?], I. v. n., *fly* (lit. and fig.).

volpēs (vul-), -is [?], F., a fox.

Volsō, -ōnis, see **Manlius**.

voltus (vul-), -ūs [VOL + tus], M., (*wish, expression of countenance*), *look, countenance, face*.

voluntās, -ātis [volent- (p. of *volo*) + tas], F., *willingness, good-will, consent, desire, will, approval, an inclination*.

voluptās, -ātis [volup- (akin to *volo*) + tas], F., *pleasure, delight*.

Volusēnus, -ī [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., *Caius Volusenus Quadratus*, a military tribune in Cæsar's army.

vōs, see **tu**.

Vosegus, -ī [Celtic], M., *the Vosges Mountains*, running northerly from the Jura along the Rhine.

vōtum, -ī [N. p. p. of *voveo*], N., a *vow, a prayer*.

voveō, *vovēre*, vōvī, vōtus [?], 2. v. a., *vow, make a vow*.

vōx, vōcis [VOC as st.], F., a *voice, a word, an expression, a shout, a speech, a sentence*. — Collectively, *cries, words, talk*. — Plur., *talk, reports*: *nulla vox audita* (*not a word*).

X

X, for *decem, ten, and decimus, tenth*.

Xerxēs, -is [Gr.], M., a Persian king who invaded Greece in B.C. 480.

XII, for *duodecim, twelve*.

XL, for *quadrāgintā, forty*.

XV, for *quīndecim, fifteen*.

XVI, for *sēdecim, sixteen*.

XVIII, for *duodēvigintī, eighteen*.

XX, for *vīgintī, twenty*.

XXV, for *vīgintī quīnque, twenty-five*.

XXVIII, for *duodētrīgintā, twenty-eight*.

XXX, for *trīgintā, thirty*.

Z

Zama, -ae [?], F., a town in Africa, near which Hannibal was defeated by Scipio, B.C. 202.

Zephyrus, -ī [Gr.], M., *Zephyr, the west wind*.

Zeuxis, -is [Gr.] M., a famous Grecian painter, about B.C. 420.

zōna, -ae [Gr.], F., a *belt*.



E Ethel Bartlett

1903

1903

